

C O R E

# JAVA

Volume I—Fundamentals

ELEVENTH EDITION



CAY S. HORSTMANN

---



# **Core Java**

## **Volume I—Fundamentals**

**Eleventh Edition**

---

*This page intentionally left blank*

---



# **Core Java**

## **Volume I—Fundamentals**

**Eleventh Edition**

---

**Cay S. Horstmann**



Boston • Columbus • New York • San Francisco • Amsterdam • Cape Town

Dubai • London • Madrid • Milan • Munich • Paris • Montreal • Toronto • Delhi • Mexico City

São Paulo • Sydney • Hong Kong • Seoul • Singapore • Taipei • Tokyo

The author and publisher have taken care in the preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

For information about buying this title in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities (which may include electronic versions; custom cover designs; and content particular to your business, training goals, marketing focus, or branding interests), please contact our corporate sales department at [corpsales@pearsoned.com](mailto:corpsales@pearsoned.com) or (800) 382-3419.

For government sales inquiries, please contact [governmentsales@pearsoned.com](mailto:governmentsales@pearsoned.com).

For questions about sales outside the United States, please contact [international@pearsoned.com](mailto:international@pearsoned.com).

Visit us on the Web: [informit.com](http://informit.com)

Library of Congress Preassigned Control Number: 2018942070

Copyright © 2019 Pearson Education Inc.

Portions copyright © 1996-2013 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.

Oracle America Inc. does not make any representations or warranties as to the accuracy, adequacy or completeness of any information contained in this work, and is not responsible for any errors or omissions.

Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers make no representations about the suitability of the information contained in the documents and related graphics published as part of the services for any purpose. All such documents and related graphics are provided "as is" without warranty of any kind. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers hereby disclaim all warranties and conditions with regard to this information, including all warranties and conditions of merchantability, whether express, implied or statutory, fitness for a particular purpose, title and non-infringement. In no event shall Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, whether in an action of contract, negligence or other tortious action, arising out of or in connection with the use or performance of information available from the services. The documents and related graphics contained herein could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically added to the information herein. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described herein at any time. Partial screen shots may be viewed in full within the software version specified.

Microsoft® Windows®, and Microsoft Office® are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. This book is not sponsored or endorsed by or affiliated with the Microsoft Corporation.

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions Department, please visit [www.pearson.com/permissions/](http://www.pearson.com/permissions/).

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-516630-7

ISBN-10: 0-13-516630-6

ScoutAutomatedPrintCode

# Contents

---

<i>Preface</i> .....	<i>xix</i>
<i>Acknowledgments</i> .....	<i>xxv</i>
<b>Chapter 1: An Introduction to Java .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Java as a Programming Platform .....	1
1.2 The Java “White Paper” Buzzwords .....	2
1.2.1 Simple .....	3
1.2.2 Object-Oriented .....	4
1.2.3 Distributed .....	4
1.2.4 Robust .....	4
1.2.5 Secure .....	5
1.2.6 Architecture-Neutral .....	6
1.2.7 Portable .....	6
1.2.8 Interpreted .....	7
1.2.9 High-Performance .....	7
1.2.10 Multithreaded .....	8
1.2.11 Dynamic .....	8
1.3 Java Applets and the Internet .....	9
1.4 A Short History of Java .....	10
1.5 Common Misconceptions about Java .....	13
<b>Chapter 2: The Java Programming Environment .....</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1 Installing the Java Development Kit .....	18
2.1.1 Downloading the JDK .....	18
2.1.2 Setting up the JDK .....	20
2.1.3 Installing Source Files and Documentation .....	22
2.2 Using the Command-Line Tools .....	23
2.3 Using an Integrated Development Environment .....	29
2.4 JShell .....	32

<b>Chapter 3: Fundamental Programming Structures in Java .....</b>	<b>37</b>
3.1 A Simple Java Program .....	38
3.2 Comments .....	41
3.3 Data Types .....	42
3.3.1 Integer Types .....	43
3.3.2 Floating-Point Types .....	44
3.3.3 The <code>char</code> Type .....	46
3.3.4 Unicode and the <code>char</code> Type .....	47
3.3.5 The <code>boolean</code> Type .....	48
3.4 Variables and Constants .....	48
3.4.1 Declaring Variables .....	48
3.4.2 Initializing Variables .....	50
3.4.3 Constants .....	51
3.4.4 Enumerated Types .....	52
3.5 Operators .....	52
3.5.1 Arithmetic Operators .....	52
3.5.2 Mathematical Functions and Constants .....	54
3.5.3 Conversions between Numeric Types .....	56
3.5.4 Casts .....	57
3.5.5 Combining Assignment with Operators .....	58
3.5.6 Increment and Decrement Operators .....	58
3.5.7 Relational and <code>boolean</code> Operators .....	59
3.5.8 Bitwise Operators .....	60
3.5.9 Parentheses and Operator Hierarchy .....	61
3.6 Strings .....	62
3.6.1 Substrings .....	62
3.6.2 Concatenation .....	63
3.6.3 Strings Are Immutable .....	63
3.6.4 Testing Strings for Equality .....	65
3.6.5 Empty and Null Strings .....	66
3.6.6 Code Points and Code Units .....	66
3.6.7 The <code>String</code> API .....	68
3.6.8 Reading the Online API Documentation .....	71
3.6.9 Building Strings .....	74
3.7 Input and Output .....	75

3.7.1	Reading Input .....	75
3.7.2	Formatting Output .....	78
3.7.3	File Input and Output .....	83
3.8	Control Flow .....	86
3.8.1	Block Scope .....	86
3.8.2	Conditional Statements .....	87
3.8.3	Loops .....	91
3.8.4	Determinate Loops .....	95
3.8.5	Multiple Selections The switch Statement .....	99
3.8.6	Statements That Break Control Flow .....	102
3.9	Big Numbers .....	105
3.10	Arrays .....	108
3.10.1	Declaring Arrays .....	108
3.10.2	Accessing Array Elements .....	109
3.10.3	The “for each” Loop .....	110
3.10.4	Array Copying .....	111
3.10.5	Command-Line Parameters .....	112
3.10.6	Array Sorting .....	113
3.10.7	Multidimensional Arrays .....	116
3.10.8	Ragged Arrays .....	120
<b>Chapter 4: Objects and Classes .....</b>		<b>125</b>
4.1	Introduction to Object-Oriented Programming .....	126
4.1.1	Classes .....	127
4.1.2	Objects .....	128
4.1.3	Identifying Classes .....	129
4.1.4	Relationships between Classes .....	129
4.2	Using Predefined Classes .....	131
4.2.1	Objects and Object Variables .....	132
4.2.2	The LocalDate Class of the Java Library .....	135
4.2.3	Mutator and Accessor Methods .....	138
4.3	Defining Your Own Classes .....	141
4.3.1	An Employee Class .....	142
4.3.2	Use of Multiple Source Files .....	145
4.3.3	Dissecting the Employee Class .....	146
4.3.4	First Steps with Constructors .....	146

4.3.5	Declaring Local Variables with <code>var</code> .....	148
4.3.6	Working with <code>null</code> References .....	148
4.3.7	Implicit and Explicit Parameters .....	150
4.3.8	Benefits of Encapsulation .....	151
4.3.9	Class-Based Access Privileges .....	154
4.3.10	Private Methods .....	155
4.3.11	Final Instance Fields .....	155
4.4	Static Fields and Methods .....	156
4.4.1	Static Fields .....	156
4.4.2	Static Constants .....	157
4.4.3	Static Methods .....	158
4.4.4	Factory Methods .....	159
4.4.5	The <code>main</code> Method .....	160
4.5	Method Parameters .....	163
4.6	Object Construction .....	170
4.6.1	Overloading .....	170
4.6.2	Default Field Initialization .....	171
4.6.3	The Constructor with No Arguments .....	172
4.6.4	Explicit Field Initialization .....	173
4.6.5	Parameter Names .....	174
4.6.6	Calling Another Constructor .....	175
4.6.7	Initialization Blocks .....	175
4.6.8	Object Destruction and the <code>finalize</code> Method .....	180
4.7	Packages .....	180
4.7.1	Package Names .....	181
4.7.2	Class Importation .....	181
4.7.3	Static Imports .....	183
4.7.4	Addition of a Class into a Package .....	184
4.7.5	Package Access .....	187
4.7.6	The Class Path .....	189
4.7.7	Setting the Class Path .....	191
4.8	JAR Files .....	192
4.8.1	Creating JAR files .....	192
4.8.2	The Manifest .....	193
4.8.3	Executable JAR Files .....	194

4.8.4	Multi-Release JAR Files .....	195
4.8.5	A Note about Command-Line Options .....	197
4.9	Documentation Comments .....	198
4.9.1	Comment Insertion .....	199
4.9.2	Class Comments .....	199
4.9.3	Method Comments .....	200
4.9.4	Field Comments .....	201
4.9.5	General Comments .....	201
4.9.6	Package Comments .....	202
4.9.7	Comment Extraction .....	203
4.10	Class Design Hints .....	204
<b>Chapter 5: Inheritance .....</b>		<b>207</b>
5.1	Classes, Superclasses, and Subclasses .....	208
5.1.1	Defining Subclasses .....	208
5.1.2	Overriding Methods .....	210
5.1.3	Subclass Constructors .....	211
5.1.4	Inheritance Hierarchies .....	216
5.1.5	Polymorphism .....	217
5.1.6	Understanding Method Calls .....	218
5.1.7	Preventing Inheritance: Final Classes and Methods .....	221
5.1.8	Casting .....	223
5.1.9	Abstract Classes .....	225
5.1.10	Protected Access .....	231
5.2	<code>Object</code> : The Cosmic Superclass .....	232
5.2.1	Variables of Type <code>Object</code> .....	232
5.2.2	The <code>equals</code> Method .....	233
5.2.3	Equality Testing and Inheritance .....	234
5.2.4	The <code>hashCode</code> Method .....	238
5.2.5	The <code>toString</code> Method .....	241
5.3	Generic Array Lists .....	248
5.3.1	Declaring Array Lists .....	248
5.3.2	Accessing Array List Elements .....	251
5.3.3	Compatibility between Typed and Raw Array Lists .....	255
5.4	Object Wrappers and Autoboxing .....	256
5.5	Methods with a Variable Number of Parameters .....	260

5.6	Enumeration Classes .....	261
5.7	Reflection .....	264
5.7.1	The Class Class .....	264
5.7.2	A Primer on Declaring Exceptions .....	267
5.7.3	Resources .....	268
5.7.4	Using Reflection to Analyze the Capabilities of Classes	271
5.7.5	Using Reflection to Analyze Objects at Runtime .....	277
5.7.6	Using Reflection to Write Generic Array Code .....	283
5.7.7	Invoking Arbitrary Methods and Constructors .....	286
5.8	Design Hints for Inheritance .....	290

**Chapter 6: Interfaces, Lambda Expressions, and Inner Classes ..... 295**

6.1	Interfaces .....	296
6.1.1	The Interface Concept .....	296
6.1.2	Properties of Interfaces .....	303
6.1.3	Interfaces and Abstract Classes .....	305
6.1.4	Static and Private Methods .....	306
6.1.5	Default Methods .....	307
6.1.6	Resolving Default Method Conflicts .....	308
6.1.7	Interfaces and Callbacks .....	310
6.1.8	The Comparator Interface .....	313
6.1.9	Object Cloning .....	314
6.2	Lambda Expressions .....	322
6.2.1	Why Lambdas? .....	322
6.2.2	The Syntax of Lambda Expressions .....	323
6.2.3	Functional Interfaces .....	326
6.2.4	Method References .....	328
6.2.5	Constructor References .....	332
6.2.6	Variable Scope .....	333
6.2.7	Processing Lambda Expressions .....	335
6.2.8	More about Comparators .....	339
6.3	Inner Classes .....	340
6.3.1	Use of an Inner Class to Access Object State .....	341
6.3.2	Special Syntax Rules for Inner Classes .....	345
6.3.3	Are Inner Classes Useful? Actually Necessary? Secure?	346
6.3.4	Local Inner Classes .....	349

6.3.5	Accessing Variables from Outer Methods .....	350
6.3.6	Anonymous Inner Classes .....	352
6.3.7	Static Inner Classes .....	356
6.4	Service Loaders .....	360
6.5	Proxies .....	362
6.5.1	When to Use Proxies .....	363
6.5.2	Creating Proxy Objects .....	363
6.5.3	Properties of Proxy Classes .....	368
<b>Chapter 7: Exceptions, Assertions, and Logging .....</b>	<b>371</b>	
7.1	Dealing with Errors .....	372
7.1.1	The Classification of Exceptions .....	373
7.1.2	Declaring Checked Exceptions .....	375
7.1.3	How to Throw an Exception .....	378
7.1.4	Creating Exception Classes .....	380
7.2	Catching Exceptions .....	381
7.2.1	Catching an Exception .....	381
7.2.2	Catching Multiple Exceptions .....	383
7.2.3	Rethrowing and Chaining Exceptions .....	384
7.2.4	The <code>finally</code> Clause .....	386
7.2.5	The <code>try-with-Resources</code> Statement .....	389
7.2.6	Analyzing Stack Trace Elements .....	391
7.3	Tips for Using Exceptions .....	396
7.4	Using Assertions .....	399
7.4.1	The Assertion Concept .....	399
7.4.2	Assertion Enabling and Disabling .....	400
7.4.3	Using Assertions for Parameter Checking .....	401
7.4.4	Using Assertions for Documenting Assumptions .....	402
7.5	Logging .....	403
7.5.1	Basic Logging .....	404
7.5.2	Advanced Logging .....	405
7.5.3	Changing the Log Manager Configuration .....	407
7.5.4	Localization .....	409
7.5.5	Handlers .....	410
7.5.6	Filters .....	414
7.5.7	Formatters .....	415

7.5.8	A Logging Recipe .....	415
7.6	Debugging Tips .....	425
<b>Chapter 8: Generic Programming .....</b>	<b>431</b>	
8.1	Why Generic Programming? .....	432
8.1.1	The Advantage of Type Parameters .....	432
8.1.2	Who Wants to Be a Generic Programmer? .....	433
8.2	Defining a Simple Generic Class .....	434
8.3	Generic Methods .....	437
8.4	Bounds for Type Variables .....	438
8.5	Generic Code and the Virtual Machine .....	441
8.5.1	Type Erasure .....	441
8.5.2	Translating Generic Expressions .....	442
8.5.3	Translating Generic Methods .....	443
8.5.4	Calling Legacy Code .....	445
8.6	Restrictions and Limitations .....	447
8.6.1	Type Parameters Cannot Be Instantiated with Primitive Types .....	447
8.6.2	Runtime Type Inquiry Only Works with Raw Types .....	447
8.6.3	You Cannot Create Arrays of Parameterized Types .....	448
8.6.4	Varargs Warnings .....	448
8.6.5	You Cannot Instantiate Type Variables .....	450
8.6.6	You Cannot Construct a Generic Array .....	451
8.6.7	Type Variables Are Not Valid in Static Contexts of Generic Classes .....	452
8.6.8	You Cannot Throw or Catch Instances of a Generic Class .....	453
8.6.9	You Can Defeat Checked Exception Checking .....	454
8.6.10	Beware of Clashes after Erasure .....	455
8.7	Inheritance Rules for Generic Types .....	457
8.8	Wildcard Types .....	459
8.8.1	The Wildcard Concept .....	459
8.8.2	Supertype Bounds for Wildcards .....	461
8.8.3	Unbounded Wildcards .....	464
8.8.4	Wildcard Capture .....	465
8.9	Reflection and Generics .....	467

8.9.1	The Generic Class Class .....	467
8.9.2	Using <code>Class&lt;T&gt;</code> Parameters for Type Matching .....	469
8.9.3	Generic Type Information in the Virtual Machine .....	469
8.9.4	Type Literals .....	473
<b>Chapter 9: Collections .....</b>	<b>481</b>	
9.1	The Java Collections Framework .....	482
9.1.1	Separating Collection Interfaces and Implementation ....	482
9.1.2	The Collection Interface .....	485
9.1.3	Iterators .....	485
9.1.4	Generic Utility Methods .....	489
9.2	Interfaces in the Collections Framework .....	492
9.3	Concrete Collections .....	494
9.3.1	Linked Lists .....	496
9.3.2	Array Lists .....	507
9.3.3	Hash Sets .....	507
9.3.4	Tree Sets .....	511
9.3.5	Queues and Deques .....	516
9.3.6	Priority Queues .....	518
9.4	Maps .....	519
9.4.1	Basic Map Operations .....	519
9.4.2	Updating Map Entries .....	523
9.4.3	Map Views .....	525
9.4.4	Weak Hash Maps .....	526
9.4.5	Linked Hash Sets and Maps .....	527
9.4.6	Enumeration Sets and Maps .....	529
9.4.7	Identity Hash Maps .....	530
9.5	Views and Wrappers .....	532
9.5.1	Small Collections .....	532
9.5.2	Subranges .....	534
9.5.3	Unmodifiable Views .....	535
9.5.4	Synchronized Views .....	536
9.5.5	Checked Views .....	536
9.5.6	A Note on Optional Operations .....	537
9.6	Algorithms .....	541
9.6.1	Why Generic Algorithms? .....	541

9.6.2	Sorting and Shuffling .....	543
9.6.3	Binary Search .....	546
9.6.4	Simple Algorithms .....	547
9.6.5	Bulk Operations .....	549
9.6.6	Converting between Collections and Arrays .....	550
9.6.7	Writing Your Own Algorithms .....	551
9.7	Legacy Collections .....	552
9.7.1	The <code>Hashtable</code> Class .....	553
9.7.2	Enumerations .....	553
9.7.3	Property Maps .....	555
9.7.4	Stacks .....	558
9.7.5	Bit Sets .....	559
<b>Chapter 10: Graphical User Interface Programming .....</b>		<b>565</b>
10.1	A History of Java User Interface Toolkits .....	565
10.2	Displaying Frames .....	567
10.2.1	Creating a Frame .....	568
10.2.2	Frame Properties .....	570
10.3	Displaying Information in a Component .....	574
10.3.1	Working with 2D Shapes .....	579
10.3.2	Using Color .....	587
10.3.3	Using Fonts .....	589
10.3.4	Displaying Images .....	597
10.4	Event Handling .....	598
10.4.1	Basic Event Handling Concepts .....	598
10.4.2	Example: Handling a Button Click .....	600
10.4.3	Specifying Listeners Concisely .....	604
10.4.4	Adapter Classes .....	605
10.4.5	Actions .....	608
10.4.6	Mouse Events .....	614
10.4.7	The AWT Event Hierarchy .....	620
10.5	The Preferences API .....	624
<b>Chapter 11: User Interface Components with Swing .....</b>		<b>631</b>
11.1	Swing and the Model-View-Controller Design Pattern .....	632
11.2	Introduction to Layout Management .....	636

11.2.1	Layout Managers .....	637
11.2.2	Border Layout .....	639
11.2.3	Grid Layout .....	642
11.3	Text Input .....	643
11.3.1	Text Fields .....	643
11.3.2	Labels and Labeling Components .....	645
11.3.3	Password Fields .....	647
11.3.4	Text Areas .....	647
11.3.5	Scroll Panes .....	648
11.4	Choice Components .....	651
11.4.1	Checkboxes .....	651
11.4.2	Radio Buttons .....	654
11.4.3	Borders .....	658
11.4.4	Combo Boxes .....	661
11.4.5	Sliders .....	665
11.5	Menus .....	671
11.5.1	Menu Building .....	672
11.5.2	Icons in Menu Items .....	675
11.5.3	Checkbox and Radio Button Menu Items .....	676
11.5.4	Pop-Up Menus .....	677
11.5.5	Keyboard Mnemonics and Accelerators .....	679
11.5.6	Enabling and Disabling Menu Items .....	682
11.5.7	Toolbars .....	687
11.5.8	Tooltips .....	689
11.6	Sophisticated Layout Management .....	690
11.6.1	The Grid Bag Layout .....	691
11.6.1.1	The <code>gridx</code> , <code>gridy</code> , <code>gridwidth</code> , and <code>gridheight</code> Parameters .....	693
11.6.1.2	Weight Fields .....	694
11.6.1.3	The <code>fill</code> and <code>anchor</code> Parameters .....	694
11.6.1.4	Padding .....	694
11.6.1.5	Alternative Method to Specify the <code>gridx</code> , <code>gridy</code> , <code>gridwidth</code> , and <code>gridheight</code> Parameters .....	695
11.6.1.6	A Grid Bag Layout Recipe .....	695
11.6.1.7	A Helper Class to Tame the Grid Bag Constraints .....	696

11.6.2	Custom Layout Managers .....	702
11.7	Dialog Boxes .....	706
11.7.1	Option Dialogs .....	707
11.7.2	Creating Dialogs .....	712
11.7.3	Data Exchange .....	716
11.7.4	File Dialogs .....	723
<b>Chapter 12: Concurrency .....</b>	<b>733</b>	
12.1	What Are Threads? .....	734
12.2	Thread States .....	739
12.2.1	New Threads .....	740
12.2.2	Runnable Threads .....	740
12.2.3	Blocked and Waiting Threads .....	741
12.2.4	Terminated Threads .....	742
12.3	Thread Properties .....	743
12.3.1	Interrupting Threads .....	743
12.3.2	Daemon Threads .....	746
12.3.3	Thread Names .....	747
12.3.4	Handlers for Uncaught Exceptions .....	747
12.3.5	Thread Priorities .....	749
12.4	Synchronization .....	750
12.4.1	An Example of a Race Condition .....	750
12.4.2	The Race Condition Explained .....	752
12.4.3	Lock Objects .....	755
12.4.4	Condition Objects .....	758
12.4.5	The <code>synchronized</code> Keyword .....	764
12.4.6	Synchronized Blocks .....	768
12.4.7	The Monitor Concept .....	770
12.4.8	Volatile Fields .....	771
12.4.9	Final Variables .....	772
12.4.10	Atomics .....	773
12.4.11	Deadlocks .....	775
12.4.12	Thread-Local Variables .....	778
12.4.13	Why the <code>stop</code> and <code>suspend</code> Methods Are Deprecated .....	779
12.5	Thread-Safe Collections .....	781
12.5.1	Blocking Queues .....	781

---

12.5.2	Efficient Maps, Sets, and Queues .....	789
12.5.3	Atomic Update of Map Entries .....	790
12.5.4	Bulk Operations on Concurrent Hash Maps .....	794
12.5.5	Concurrent Set Views .....	796
12.5.6	Copy on Write Arrays .....	797
12.5.7	Parallel Array Algorithms .....	797
12.5.8	Older Thread-Safe Collections .....	799
12.6	Tasks and Thread Pools .....	800
12.6.1	Callables and Futures .....	800
12.6.2	Executors .....	802
12.6.3	Controlling Groups of Tasks .....	806
12.6.4	The Fork-Join Framework .....	811
12.7	Asynchronous Computations .....	814
12.7.1	CompletableFuture .....	815
12.7.2	Composing CompletableFuture .....	817
12.7.3	Long-Running Tasks in User Interface Callbacks .....	823
12.8	Processes .....	831
12.8.1	Building a Process .....	832
12.8.2	Running a Process .....	834
12.8.3	Process Handles .....	835
<b>Appendix</b>	.....	<b>839</b>
<i>Index</i>	.....	843

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Preface

---

## To the Reader

In late 1995, the Java programming language burst onto the Internet scene and gained instant celebrity status. The promise of Java technology was that it would become the *universal glue* that connects users with information wherever it comes from—web servers, databases, information providers, or any other imaginable source. Indeed, Java is in a unique position to fulfill this promise. It is an extremely solidly engineered language that has gained wide acceptance. Its built-in security and safety features are reassuring both to programmers and to the users of Java programs. Java has built-in support for advanced programming tasks, such as network programming, database connectivity, and concurrency.

Since 1995, eleven major revisions of the Java Development Kit have been released. Over the course of the last 20 years, the Application Programming Interface (API) has grown from about 200 to over 4,000 classes. The API now spans such diverse areas as user interface construction, database management, internationalization, security, and XML processing.

The book that you are reading right now is the first volume of the eleventh edition of *Core Java*. Each edition closely followed a release of the Java Development Kit, and each time, we rewrote the book to take advantage of the newest Java features. This edition has been updated to reflect the features of Java Standard Edition (SE) 9, 10, and 11.

As with the previous editions of this book, *we still target serious programmers who want to put Java to work on real projects*. We think of you, our reader, as a programmer with a solid background in a programming language other than Java, and we assume that you don't like books filled with toy examples (such as toasters, zoo animals, or "nervous text"). You won't find any of these in our book. Our goal is to enable you to fully understand the Java language and library, not to give you an illusion of understanding.

In this book you will find lots of sample code demonstrating almost every language and library feature that we discuss. We keep the sample programs purposefully simple to focus on the major points, but, for the most part, they

aren't fake and they don't cut corners. They should make good starting points for your own code.

We assume you are willing, even eager, to learn about all the advanced features that Java puts at your disposal. For example, we give you a detailed treatment of

- Object-oriented programming
- Reflection and proxies
- Interfaces and inner classes
- Exception handling
- Generic programming
- The collections framework
- The event listener model
- Graphical user interface design
- Concurrency

With the explosive growth of the Java class library, a one-volume treatment of all the features of Java that serious programmers need to know is no longer possible. Hence, we decided to break up the book into two volumes. This first volume concentrates on the fundamental concepts of the Java language, along with the basics of user-interface programming. The second volume, *Core Java, Volume II—Advanced Features*, goes further into the enterprise features and advanced user-interface programming. It includes detailed discussions of

- The Stream API
- File processing and regular expressions
- Databases
- XML processing
- Annotations
- Internationalization
- Network programming
- Advanced GUI components
- Advanced graphics
- Native methods

When writing a book, errors and inaccuracies are inevitable. We'd very much like to know about them. But, of course, we'd prefer to learn about each of them only once. We have put up a list of frequently asked questions, bug fixes, and workarounds on a web page at <http://horstmann.com/corejava>. Strategically placed at the end of the errata page (to encourage you to read through

it first) is a form you can use to report bugs and suggest improvements. Please don't be disappointed if we don't answer every query or don't get back to you immediately. We do read all e-mail and appreciate your input to make future editions of this book clearer and more informative.

## A Tour of This Book

**Chapter 1** gives an overview of the capabilities of Java that set it apart from other programming languages. We explain what the designers of the language set out to do and to what extent they succeeded. Then, we give a short history of how Java came into being and how it has evolved.

In **Chapter 2**, we tell you how to download and install the JDK and the program examples for this book. Then we guide you through compiling and running a console application and a graphical application. You will see how to use the plain JDK, a Java IDE, and the JShell tool.

**Chapter 3** starts the discussion of the Java language. In this chapter, we cover the basics: variables, loops, and simple functions. If you are a C or C++ programmer, this is smooth sailing because the syntax for these language features is essentially the same as in C. If you come from a non-C background such as Visual Basic, you will want to read this chapter carefully.

Object-oriented programming (OOP) is now in the mainstream of programming practice, and Java is an object-oriented programming language. **Chapter 4** introduces encapsulation, the first of two fundamental building blocks of object orientation, and the Java language mechanism to implement it—that is, classes and methods. In addition to the rules of the Java language, we also give advice on sound OOP design. Finally, we cover the marvelous javadoc tool that formats your code comments as a set of hyperlinked web pages. If you are familiar with C++, you can browse through this chapter quickly. Programmers coming from a non-object-oriented background should expect to spend some time mastering the OOP concepts before going further with Java.

Classes and encapsulation are only one part of the OOP story, and **Chapter 5** introduces the other—namely, *inheritance*. Inheritance lets you take an existing class and modify it according to your needs. This is a fundamental technique for programming in Java. The inheritance mechanism in Java is quite similar to that in C++. Once again, C++ programmers can focus on the differences between the languages.

**Chapter 6** shows you how to use Java’s notion of an *interface*. Interfaces let you go beyond the simple inheritance model of Chapter 5. Mastering interfaces allows you to have full access to the power of Java’s completely object-oriented approach to programming. After we cover interfaces, we move on to *lambda expressions*, a concise way for expressing a block of code that can be executed at a later point in time. We then cover a useful technical feature of Java called *inner classes*.

**Chapter 7** discusses *exception handling*—Java’s robust mechanism to deal with the fact that bad things can happen to good programs. Exceptions give you an efficient way of separating the normal processing code from the error handling. Of course, even after hardening your program by handling all exceptional conditions, it still might fail to work as expected. In the final part of this chapter, we give you a number of useful debugging tips.

**Chapter 8** gives an overview of generic programming. Generic programming makes your programs easier to read and safer. We show you how to use strong typing and remove unsightly and unsafe casts, and how to deal with the complexities that arise from the need to stay compatible with older versions of Java.

The topic of **Chapter 9** is the collections framework of the Java platform. Whenever you want to collect multiple objects and retrieve them later, you should use a collection that is best suited for your circumstances, instead of just tossing the elements into an array. This chapter shows you how to take advantage of the standard collections that are prebuilt for your use.

**Chapter 10** provides an introduction into GUI programming. We show how you can make windows, how to paint on them, how to draw with geometric shapes, how to format text in multiple fonts, and how to display images. Next, you’ll see how to write code that responds to events, such as mouse clicks or key presses.

**Chapter 11** discusses the Swing GUI toolkit in great detail. The Swing toolkit allows you to build cross-platform graphical user interfaces. You’ll learn all about the various kinds of buttons, text components, borders, sliders, list boxes, menus, and dialog boxes. However, some of the more advanced components are discussed in Volume II.

**Chapter 12** finishes the book with a discussion of concurrency, which enables you to program tasks to be done in parallel. This is an important and exciting application of Java technology in an era where most processors have multiple cores that you want to keep busy.

A **bonus JavaFX chapter** contains a rapid introduction into JavaFX, a modern GUI toolkit for desktop applications. If you read the print book, download the chapter from the book companion site at <http://horstmann.com/corejava>.

The **Appendix** lists the reserved words of the Java language.

## Conventions

As is common in many computer books, we use monospace type to represent computer code.



**NOTE:** Notes are tagged with “note” icons that look like this.

---



**TIP:** Tips are tagged with “tip” icons that look like this.

---



**CAUTION:** When there is danger ahead, we warn you with a “caution” icon.

---



**C++ NOTE:** There are many C++ notes that explain the differences between Java and C++. You can skip over them if you don’t have a background in C++ or if you consider your experience with that language a bad dream of which you’d rather not be reminded.

---

Java comes with a large programming library, or Application Programming Interface (API). When using an API call for the first time, we add a short summary description at the end of the section. These descriptions are a bit more informal but, we hope, also a little more informative than those in the official online API documentation. The names of interfaces are in italics, just like in the official documentation. The number after a class, interface, or method name is the JDK version in which the feature was introduced, as shown in the following example:

Application Programming Interface 9
-------------------------------------

Programs whose source code is on the book's companion web site are presented as listings, for instance:

---

**Listing 1.1** InputTest/InputTest.java

---

## Sample Code

The web site for this book at <http://horstmann.com/corejava> contains all sample code from the book. See Chapter 2 for more information on installing the Java Development Kit and the sample code.

Register your copy of *Core Java, Volume I—Fundamentals, Eleventh Edition*, on the InformIT site for convenient access to updates and/or corrections as they become available. To start the registration process, go to [informit.com/register](http://informit.com/register) and log in or create an account. Enter the product ISBN (9780135166307) and click Submit. Look on the Registered Products tab for an Access Bonus Content link next to this product, and follow that link to access any available bonus materials. If you would like to be notified of exclusive offers on new editions and updates, please check the box to receive email from us.

# Acknowledgments

---

Writing a book is always a monumental effort, and rewriting it doesn't seem to be much easier, especially with the continuous change in Java technology. Making a book a reality takes many dedicated people, and it is my great pleasure to acknowledge the contributions of the entire *Core Java* team.

A large number of individuals at Pearson provided valuable assistance but managed to stay behind the scenes. I'd like them all to know how much I appreciate their efforts. As always, my warm thanks go to my editor, Greg Doench, for steering the book through the writing and production process, and for allowing me to be blissfully unaware of the existence of all those folks behind the scenes. I am very grateful to Julie Nahil for production support, and to Dmitry Kirsanov and Alina Kirsanova for copyediting and typesetting the manuscript. My thanks also to my coauthor of earlier editions, Gary Cornell, who has since moved on to other ventures.

Thanks to the many readers of earlier editions who reported embarrassing errors and made lots of thoughtful suggestions for improvement. I am particularly grateful to the excellent reviewing team who went over the manuscript with an amazing eye for detail and saved me from many embarrassing errors.

Reviewers of this and earlier editions include Chuck Allison (Utah Valley University), Lance Andersen (Oracle), Paul Anderson (Anderson Software Group), Alec Beaton (IBM), Cliff Berg, Andrew Binstock (Oracle), Joshua Bloch, David Brown, Corky Cartwright, Frank Cohen (PushToTest), Chris Crane (devXsolution), Dr. Nicholas J. De Lillo (Manhattan College), Rakesh Dhoopar (Oracle), David Geary (Clarity Training), Jim Gish (Oracle), Brian Goetz (Oracle), Angela Gordon, Dan Gordon (Electric Cloud), Rob Gordon, John Gray (University of Hartford), Cameron Gregory (olabs.com), Marty Hall (coreservlets.com, Inc.), Vincent Hardy (Adobe Systems), Dan Harkey (San Jose State University), William Higgins (IBM), Vladimir Ivanovic (PointBase), Jerry Jackson (CA Technologies), Tim Kimmet (Walmart), Chris Laffra, Charlie Lai (Apple), Angelika Langer, Doug Langston, Hang Lau (McGill University), Mark Lawrence, Doug Lea (SUNY Oswego), Gregory Longshore, Bob Lynch (Lynch Associates), Philip Milne (consultant), Mark Morrissey (The Oregon Graduate Institute), Mahesh Neelakanta (Florida Atlantic University), Hao Pham, Paul Phlion, Blake Ragsdell, Stuart Reges (University of Arizona), Simon Ritter (Azul Systems), Rich Rosen (Interactive Data Corporation), Peter Sanders (ESSI University, Nice, France), Dr. Paul Sanghera (San

Jose State University and Brooks College), Paul Sevinc (Teamup AG), Devang Shah (Sun Microsystems), Yoshiki Shibata, Bradley A. Smith, Steven Stelting (Oracle), Christopher Taylor, Luke Taylor (Valtech), George Thiruvathukal, Kim Topley (StreamingEdge), Janet Traub, Paul Tyma (consultant), Peter van der Linden, Christian Ullenboom, Burt Walsh, Dan Xu (Oracle), and John Zavgren (Oracle).

*Cay Horstmann  
San Francisco, California  
June 2018*

# An Introduction to Java

## In this chapter

- 1.1 Java as a Programming Platform, page 1
- 1.2 The Java “White Paper” Buzzwords, page 2
- 1.3 Java Applets and the Internet, page 9
- 1.4 A Short History of Java, page 10
- 1.5 Common Misconceptions about Java, page 13

The first release of Java in 1996 generated an incredible amount of excitement, not just in the computer press, but in mainstream media such as the *New York Times*, the *Washington Post*, and *BusinessWeek*. Java has the distinction of being the first and only programming language that had a ten-minute story on National Public Radio. A \$100,000,000 venture capital fund was set up solely for products using a *specific* computer language. I hope you will enjoy a brief history of Java that you will find in this chapter.

## 1.1 Java as a Programming Platform

In the first edition of this book, my coauthor Gary Cornell and I had this to write about Java:

“As a computer language, Java’s hype is overdone: Java is certainly a *good* programming language. There is no doubt that it is one of the better languages available to serious programmers. We think it could *potentially* have been a

great programming language, but it is probably too late for that. Once a language is out in the field, the ugly reality of compatibility with existing code sets in.”

Our editor got a lot of flack for this paragraph from someone very high up at Sun Microsystems, the company that originally developed Java. The Java language has a lot of nice features that we will examine in detail later in this chapter. It has its share of warts, and some of the newer additions to the language are not as elegant as the original features because of compatibility requirements.

But, as we already said in the first edition, Java was never just a language. There are lots of programming languages out there, but few of them make much of a splash. Java is a whole *platform*, with a huge library, containing lots of reusable code, and an execution environment that provides services such as security, portability across operating systems, and automatic garbage collection.

As a programmer, you will want a language with a pleasant syntax and comprehensible semantics (i.e., not C++). Java fits the bill, as do dozens of other fine languages. Some languages give you portability, garbage collection, and the like, but they don’t have much of a library, forcing you to roll your own if you want fancy graphics or networking or database access. Well, Java has everything—a good language, a high-quality execution environment, and a vast library. That combination is what makes Java an irresistible proposition to so many programmers.

## 1.2 The Java “White Paper” Buzzwords

The authors of Java wrote an influential white paper that explains their design goals and accomplishments. They also published a shorter overview that is organized along the following 11 buzzwords:

1. Simple
2. Object-Oriented
3. Distributed
4. Robust
5. Secure
6. Architecture-Neutral
7. Portable
8. Interpreted

9. High-Performance
10. Multithreaded
11. Dynamic

In the following subsections, you will find a summary, with excerpts from the white paper, of what the Java designers say about each buzzword, together with a commentary based on my experiences with the current version of Java.



**NOTE:** The white paper can be found at [www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/langenv-140151.html](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/langenv-140151.html). You can retrieve the overview with the 11 buzzwords at <http://horstmann.com/corejava/java-an-overview/7Gosling.pdf>.

### 1.2.1 Simple

*We wanted to build a system that could be programmed easily without a lot of esoteric training and which leveraged today’s standard practice. So even though we found that C++ was unsuitable, we designed Java as closely to C++ as possible in order to make the system more comprehensible. Java omits many rarely used, poorly understood, confusing features of C++ that, in our experience, bring more grief than benefit.*

The syntax for Java is, indeed, a cleaned-up version of C++ syntax. There is no need for header files, pointer arithmetic (or even a pointer syntax), structures, unions, operator overloading, virtual base classes, and so on. (See the C++ notes interspersed throughout the text for more on the differences between Java and C++.) The designers did not, however, attempt to fix all of the clumsy features of C++. For example, the syntax of the `switch` statement is unchanged in Java. If you know C++, you will find the transition to the Java syntax easy.

At the time Java was released, C++ was actually not the most commonly used programming language. Many developers used Visual Basic and its drag-and-drop programming environment. These developers did not find Java simple. It took several years for Java development environments to catch up. Nowadays, Java development environments are far ahead of those for most other programming languages.

*Another aspect of being simple is being small. One of the goals of Java is to enable the construction of software that can run stand-alone on small machines. The size of the basic interpreter and class support is about 40K; the basic standard libraries and thread support (essentially a self-contained microkernel) add another 175K.*

This was a great achievement at the time. Of course, the library has since grown to huge proportions. There is now a separate Java Micro Edition with a smaller library, suitable for embedded devices.

### 1.2.2 Object-Oriented

*Simply stated, object-oriented design is a programming technique that focuses on the data—objects—and on the interfaces to those objects. To make an analogy with carpentry, an “object-oriented” carpenter would be mostly concerned with the chair he is building, and secondarily with the tools used to make it; a “non-object-oriented” carpenter would think primarily of his tools. The object-oriented facilities of Java are essentially those of C++.*

Object orientation was pretty well established when Java was developed. The object-oriented features of Java are comparable to those of C++. The major difference between Java and C++ lies in multiple inheritance, which Java has replaced with a simpler concept of interfaces. Java has a richer capacity for runtime introspection (discussed in Chapter 5) than C++.

### 1.2.3 Distributed

*Java has an extensive library of routines for coping with TCP/IP protocols like HTTP and FTP. Java applications can open and access objects across the Net via URLs with the same ease as when accessing a local file system.*

Nowadays, one takes this for granted—but in 1995, connecting to a web server from a C++ or Visual Basic program was a major undertaking.

### 1.2.4 Robust

*Java is intended for writing programs that must be reliable in a variety of ways. Java puts a lot of emphasis on early checking for possible problems, later dynamic (runtime) checking, and eliminating situations that are error-prone. . . . The single biggest difference between Java and C/C++ is that Java has a pointer model that eliminates the possibility of overwriting memory and corrupting data.*

The Java compiler detects many problems that in other languages would show up only at runtime. As for the second point, anyone who has spent hours chasing memory corruption caused by a pointer bug will be very happy with this aspect of Java.

### 1.2.5 Secure

*Java is intended to be used in networked/distributed environments. Toward that end, a lot of emphasis has been placed on security. Java enables the construction of virus-free, tamper-free systems.*

From the beginning, Java was designed to make certain kinds of attacks impossible, among them:

- Overrunning the runtime stack—a common attack of worms and viruses
- Corrupting memory outside its own process space
- Reading or writing files without permission

Originally, the Java attitude towards downloaded code was “Bring it on!” Untrusted code was executed in a sandbox environment where it could not impact the host system. Users were assured that nothing bad could happen because Java code, no matter where it came from, could never escape from the sandbox.

However, the security model of Java is complex. Not long after the first version of the Java Development Kit was shipped, a group of security experts at Princeton University found subtle bugs that allowed untrusted code to attack the host system.

Initially, security bugs were fixed quickly. Unfortunately, over time, hackers got quite good at spotting subtle flaws in the implementation of the security architecture. Sun, and then Oracle, had a tough time keeping up with bug fixes.

After a number of high-profile attacks, browser vendors and Oracle became increasingly cautious. Java browser plug-ins no longer trust remote code unless it is digitally signed and users have agreed to its execution.



**NOTE:** Even though in hindsight, the Java security model was not as successful as originally envisioned, Java was well ahead of its time. A competing code delivery mechanism from Microsoft relied on digital signatures alone for security. Clearly this was not sufficient: As any user of Microsoft’s own products can confirm, programs from well-known vendors do crash and create damage.

### 1.2.6 Architecture-Neutral

*The compiler generates an architecture-neutral object file format. The compiled code is executable on many processors, given the presence of the Java runtime system. The Java compiler does this by generating bytecode instructions which have nothing to do with a particular computer architecture. Rather, they are designed to be both easy to interpret on any machine and easy to translate into native machine code on the fly.*

Generating code for a “virtual machine” was not a new idea at the time. Programming languages such as Lisp, Smalltalk, and Pascal had employed this technique for many years.

Of course, interpreting virtual machine instructions is slower than running machine instructions at full speed. However, virtual machines have the option of translating the most frequently executed bytecode sequences into machine code—a process called just-in-time compilation.

Java’s virtual machine has another advantage. It increases security because it can check the behavior of instruction sequences.

### 1.2.7 Portable

*Unlike C and C++, there are no “implementation-dependent” aspects of the specification. The sizes of the primitive data types are specified, as is the behavior of arithmetic on them.*

For example, an `int` in Java is always a 32-bit integer. In C/C++, `int` can mean a 16-bit integer, a 32-bit integer, or any other size that the compiler vendor likes. The only restriction is that the `int` type must have at least as many bytes as a `short int` and cannot have more bytes than a `long int`. Having a fixed size for number types eliminates a major porting headache. Binary data is stored and transmitted in a fixed format, eliminating confusion about byte ordering. Strings are saved in a standard Unicode format.

*The libraries that are a part of the system define portable interfaces. For example, there is an abstract `Window` class and implementations of it for UNIX, Windows, and the Macintosh.*

The example of a `Window` class was perhaps poorly chosen. As anyone who has ever tried knows, it is an effort of heroic proportions to implement a user interface that looks good on Windows, the Macintosh, and ten flavors of UNIX. Java 1.0 made the heroic effort, delivering a simple toolkit that provided common user interface elements on a number of platforms. Unfortunately, the result was a library that, with a lot of work, could give barely acceptable

results on different systems. That initial user interface toolkit has since been replaced, and replaced again, and portability across platforms remains an issue.

However, for everything that isn't related to user interfaces, the Java libraries do a great job of letting you work in a platform-independent manner. You can work with files, regular expressions, XML, dates and times, databases, network connections, threads, and so on, without worrying about the underlying operating system. Not only are your programs portable, but the Java APIs are often of higher quality than the native ones.

### 1.2.8 Interpreted

*The Java interpreter can execute Java bytecodes directly on any machine to which the interpreter has been ported. Since linking is a more incremental and lightweight process, the development process can be much more rapid and exploratory.*

This was a real stretch. Anyone who has used Lisp, Smalltalk, Visual Basic, Python, R, or Scala knows what a “rapid and exploratory” development process is. You try out something, and you instantly see the result. For the first 20 years of Java's existence, development environments were not focused on that experience. It wasn't until Java 9 that the `jshell` tool supported rapid and exploratory programming.

### 1.2.9 High-Performance

*While the performance of interpreted bytecodes is usually more than adequate, there are situations where higher performance is required. The bytecodes can be translated on the fly (at runtime) into machine code for the particular CPU the application is running on.*

In the early years of Java, many users disagreed with the statement that the performance was “more than adequate.” Today, however, the just-in-time compilers have become so good that they are competitive with traditional compilers and, in some cases, even outperform them because they have more information available. For example, a just-in-time compiler can monitor which code is executed frequently and optimize just that code for speed. A more sophisticated optimization is the elimination (or “inlining”) of function calls. The just-in-time compiler knows which classes have been loaded. It can use inlining when, based upon the currently loaded collection of classes, a particular function is never overridden, and it can undo that optimization later if necessary.

### 1.2.10 Multithreaded

*[The] benefits of multithreading are better interactive responsiveness and real-time behavior.*

Nowadays, we care about concurrency because Moore's law has come to an end. Instead of faster processors, we just get more of them, and we have to keep them busy. Yet when you look at most programming languages, they show a shocking disregard for this problem.

Java was well ahead of its time. It was the first mainstream language to support concurrent programming. As you can see from the white paper, its motivation was a little different. At the time, multicore processors were exotic, but web programming had just started, and processors spent a lot of time waiting for a response from the server. Concurrent programming was needed to make sure the user interface didn't freeze.

Concurrent programming is never easy, but Java has done a very good job making it manageable.

### 1.2.11 Dynamic

*In a number of ways, Java is a more dynamic language than C or C++. It was designed to adapt to an evolving environment. Libraries can freely add new methods and instance variables without any effect on their clients. In Java, finding out runtime type information is straightforward.*

This is an important feature in situations where code needs to be added to a running program. A prime example is code that is downloaded from the Internet to run in a browser. In C or C++, this is indeed a major challenge, but the Java designers were well aware of dynamic languages that made it easy to evolve a running program. Their achievement was to bring this feature to a mainstream programming language.



**NOTE:** Shortly after the initial success of Java, Microsoft released a product called J++ with a programming language and virtual machine that were almost identical to Java. This effort failed to gain traction, and Microsoft followed through with another language called C# that also has many similarities to Java but runs on a different virtual machine. This book does not cover J++ or C#.

---

## 1.3 Java Applets and the Internet

The idea here is simple: Users will download Java bytecodes from the Internet and run them on their own machines. Java programs that work on web pages are called *applets*. To use an applet, you only need a Java-enabled web browser, which will execute the bytecodes for you. You need not install any software. You get the latest version of the program whenever you visit the web page containing the applet. Most importantly, thanks to the security of the virtual machine, you never need to worry about attacks from hostile code.

Inserting an applet into a web page works much like embedding an image. The applet becomes a part of the page, and the text flows around the space used for the applet. The point is, this image is *alive*. It reacts to user commands, changes its appearance, and exchanges data between the computer presenting the applet and the computer serving it.

Figure 1.1 shows the Jmol applet that displays molecular structures. By using the mouse, you can rotate and zoom each molecule to better understand its structure. At the time that applets were invented, this kind of direct manipulation was not achievable with web pages—there was only rudimentary JavaScript and no HTML canvas.

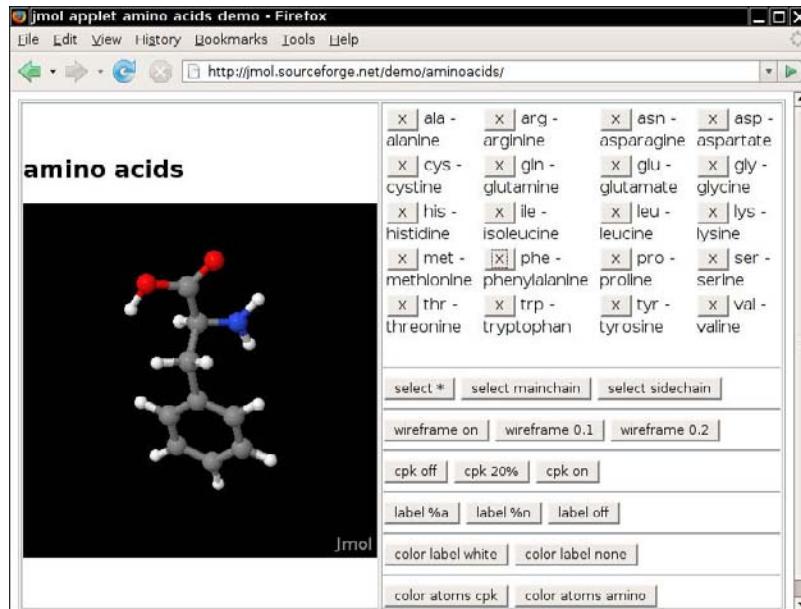


Figure 1.1 The Jmol applet

When applets first appeared, they created a huge amount of excitement. Many people believe that the lure of applets was responsible for the astonishing popularity of Java. However, the initial excitement soon turned into frustration. Various versions of the Netscape and Internet Explorer browsers ran different versions of Java, some of which were seriously outdated. This sorry situation made it increasingly difficult to develop applets that took advantage of the most current Java version. Instead, Adobe's Flash technology became popular for achieving dynamic effects in the browser. Later, when Java was dogged by serious security issues, browsers and the Java browser plug-in became increasingly restrictive. Nowadays, it requires skill and dedication to get applets to work in your browser. For example, if you visit the Jmol web site at <http://jmol.sourceforge.net/demo/aminoacids/>, you will likely encounter a message exhorting you to configure your browser for allowing applets to run.

## 1.4 A Short History of Java

This section gives a short history of Java's evolution. It is based on various published sources (most importantly an interview with Java's creators in the July 1995 issue of *SunWorld's* online magazine).

Java goes back to 1991, when a group of Sun engineers, led by Patrick Naughton and James Gosling (a Sun Fellow and an all-around computer wizard), wanted to design a small computer language that could be used for consumer devices like cable TV switchboxes. Since these devices do not have a lot of power or memory, the language had to be small and generate very tight code. Also, as different manufacturers may choose different central processing units (CPUs), it was important that the language not be tied to any single architecture. The project was code-named "Green."

The requirements for small, tight, and platform-neutral code led the team to design a portable language that generated intermediate code for a virtual machine.

The Sun people came from a UNIX background, so they based their language on C++ rather than Lisp, Smalltalk, or Pascal. But, as Gosling says in the interview, "All along, the language was a tool, not the end." Gosling decided to call his language "Oak" (presumably because he liked the look of an oak tree that was right outside his window at Sun). The people at Sun later realized that Oak was the name of an existing computer language, so they changed the name to Java. This turned out to be an inspired choice.

In 1992, the Green project delivered its first product, called "\*7." It was an extremely intelligent remote control. Unfortunately, no one was interested in producing this at Sun, and the Green people had to find other ways to market

their technology. However, none of the standard consumer electronics companies were interested either. The group then bid on a project to design a cable TV box that could deal with emerging cable services such as video-on-demand. They did not get the contract. (Amusingly, the company that did was led by the same Jim Clark who started Netscape—a company that did much to make Java successful.)

The Green project (with a new name of “First Person, Inc.”) spent all of 1993 and half of 1994 looking for people to buy its technology. No one was found. (Patrick Naughton, one of the founders of the group and the person who ended up doing most of the marketing, claims to have accumulated 300,000 air miles in trying to sell the technology.) First Person was dissolved in 1994.

While all of this was going on at Sun, the World Wide Web part of the Internet was growing bigger and bigger. The key to the World Wide Web was the browser translating hypertext pages to the screen. In 1994, most people were using Mosaic, a noncommercial web browser that came out of the supercomputing center at the University of Illinois in 1993. (Mosaic was partially written by Marc Andreessen as an undergraduate student on a work-study project, for \$6.85 an hour. He moved on to fame and fortune as one of the cofounders and the chief of technology at Netscape.)

In the *SunWorld* interview, Gosling says that in mid-1994, the language developers realized that “We could build a real cool browser. It was one of the few things in the client/server mainstream that needed some of the weird things we’d done: architecture-neutral, real-time, reliable, secure—issues that weren’t terribly important in the workstation world. So we built a browser.”

The actual browser was built by Patrick Naughton and Jonathan Payne and evolved into the HotJava browser, which was designed to show off the power of Java. The browser was capable of executing Java code inside web pages. This “proof of technology” was shown at SunWorld ’95 on May 23, 1995, and inspired the Java craze that continues today.

Sun released the first version of Java in early 1996. People quickly realized that Java 1.0 was not going to cut it for serious application development. Sure, you could use Java 1.0 to make a nervous text applet that moved text randomly around in a canvas. But you couldn’t even *print* in Java 1.0. To be blunt, Java 1.0 was not ready for prime time. Its successor, version 1.1, filled in the most obvious gaps, greatly improved the reflection capability, and added a new event model for GUI programming. It was still rather limited, though.

The big news of the 1998 JavaOne conference was the upcoming release of Java 1.2, which replaced the early toylike GUI and graphics toolkits with sophisticated scalable versions. Three days (!) after its release in December

1998, Sun's marketing department changed the name to the catchy *Java 2 Standard Edition Software Development Kit Version 1.2*.

Besides the Standard Edition, two other editions were introduced: the Micro Edition for embedded devices such as cell phones, and the Enterprise Edition for server-side processing. This book focuses on the Standard Edition.

Versions 1.3 and 1.4 of the Standard Edition were incremental improvements over the initial Java 2 release, with an ever-growing standard library, increased performance, and, of course, quite a few bug fixes. During this time, much of the initial hype about Java applets and client-side applications abated, but Java became the platform of choice for server-side applications.

Version 5.0 was the first release since version 1.1 that updated the Java *language* in significant ways. (This version was originally numbered 1.5, but the version number jumped to 5.0 at the 2004 JavaOne conference.) After many years of research, generic types (roughly comparable to C++ templates) have been added—the challenge was to add this feature without requiring changes in the virtual machine. Several other useful language features were inspired by C#: a “for each” loop, autoboxing, and annotations.

Version 6 (without the .0 suffix) was released at the end of 2006. Again, there were no language changes but additional performance improvements and library enhancements.

As datacenters increasingly relied on commodity hardware instead of specialized servers, Sun Microsystems fell on hard times and was purchased by Oracle in 2009. Development of Java stalled for a long time. In 2011, Oracle released a new version, with simple enhancements, as Java 7.

In 2014, the release of Java 8 followed, with the most significant changes to the Java language in almost two decades. Java 8 embraces a “functional” style of programming that makes it easy to express computations that can be executed concurrently. All programming languages must evolve to stay relevant, and Java has shown a remarkable capacity to do so.

The main feature of Java 9 goes all the way back to 2008. At that time, Mark Reinhold, the chief engineer of the Java platform, started an effort to break up the huge, monolithic Java platform. This was to be achieved by introducing *modules*, self-contained units of code that provide a specific functionality. It took eleven years to design and implement a module system that is a good fit for the Java platform, and it remains to be seen whether it is also a good fit for Java applications and libraries. Java 9, released in 2017, has other appealing features that we cover in this book.

Starting in 2018, Java versions are released every six months, to enable faster introduction of features. Certain versions, such as Java 11, are designated as long-term support versions.

Table 1.1 shows the evolution of the Java language and library. As you can see, the size of the application programming interface (API) has grown tremendously.

**Table 1.1** Evolution of the Java Language

Version	Year	New Language Features	Number of Classes and Interfaces
1.0	1996	The language itself	211
1.1	1997	Inner classes	477
1.2	1998	The <code>strictfp</code> modifier	1,524
1.3	2000	None	1,840
1.4	2002	Assertions	2,723
5.0	2004	Generic classes, “for each” loop, varargs, autoboxing, metadata, enumerations, static import	3,279
6	2006	None	3,793
7	2011	Switch with strings, diamond operator, binary literals, exception handling enhancements	4,024
8	2014	Lambda expressions, interfaces with default methods, stream and date/time libraries	4,240
9	2017	Modules, miscellaneous language and library enhancements	6,005

## 1.5 Common Misconceptions about Java

This chapter closes with a commented list of some common misconceptions about Java.

*Java is an extension of HTML.*

Java is a programming language; HTML is a way to describe the structure of a web page. They have nothing in common except that there are HTML extensions for placing Java applets on a web page.

*I use XML, so I don't need Java.*

Java is a programming language; XML is a way to describe data. You can process XML data with any programming language, but the Java API contains excellent support for XML processing. In addition, many important XML tools are implemented in Java. See Volume II for more information.

*Java is an easy programming language to learn.*

No programming language as powerful as Java is easy. You always have to distinguish between how easy it is to write toy programs and how hard it is to do serious work. Also, consider that only seven chapters in this book discuss the Java language. The remaining chapters of both volumes show how to put the language to work, using the Java *libraries*. The Java libraries contain thousands of classes and interfaces and tens of thousands of functions. Luckily, you do not need to know every one of them, but you do need to know surprisingly many to use Java for anything realistic.

*Java will become a universal programming language for all platforms.*

This is possible in theory. But in practice, there are domains where other languages are entrenched. Objective C and its successor, Swift, are not going to be replaced on iOS devices. Anything that happens in a browser is controlled by JavaScript. Windows programs are written in C++ or C#. Java has the edge in server-side programming and in cross-platform client applications.

*Java is just another programming language.*

Java is a nice programming language; most programmers prefer it to C, C++, or C#. But there have been hundreds of nice programming languages that never gained widespread popularity, whereas languages with obvious flaws, such as C++ and Visual Basic, have been wildly successful.

Why? The success of a programming language is determined far more by the utility of the *support system* surrounding it than by the elegance of its syntax. Are there useful, convenient, and standard libraries for the features that you need to implement? Are there tool vendors that build great programming and debugging environments? Do the language and the toolset integrate with the rest of the computing infrastructure? Java is successful because its libraries let you easily do things such as networking, web applications, and concurrency. The fact that Java reduces pointer errors is a bonus, so programmers seem to be more productive with Java—but these factors are not the source of its success.

*Java is proprietary, and should therefore be avoided.*

When Java was first created, Sun gave free licenses to distributors and end users. Although Sun had ultimate control over Java, they involved many

other companies in the development of language revisions and the design of new libraries. Source code for the virtual machine and the libraries has always been freely available, but only for inspection, not for modification and redistribution. Java was “closed source, but playing nice.”

This situation changed dramatically in 2007, when Sun announced that future versions of Java would be available under the General Public License (GPL), the same open source license that is used by Linux. Oracle has committed to keeping Java open source. There is only one fly in the ointment—patents. Everyone is given a patent grant to use and modify Java, subject to the GPL, but only on desktop and server platforms. If you want to use Java in embedded systems, you need a different license and will likely need to pay royalties. However, these patents will expire within the next decade, and at that point Java will be entirely free.

*Java is interpreted, so it is too slow for serious applications.*

In the early days of Java, the language was interpreted. Nowadays, the Java virtual machine uses a just-in-time compiler. The “hot spots” of your code will run just as fast in Java as they would in C++, and in some cases even faster.

*All Java programs run inside a web page.*

All Java *applets* run inside a web browser. That is the definition of an applet—a Java program running inside a browser. But most Java programs are stand-alone applications that run outside of a web browser. In fact, many Java programs run on web servers and produce the code for web pages.

*Java programs are a major security risk.*

In the early days of Java, there were some well-publicized reports of failures in the Java security system. Researchers viewed it as a challenge to find chinks in the Java armor and to defy the strength and sophistication of the applet security model. The technical failures that they found have all been quickly corrected. Later, there were more serious exploits, to which Sun, and later Oracle, responded too slowly. Browser manufacturers reacted, and perhaps overreacted, by deactivating Java by default. To keep this in perspective, consider the far greater number of virus attacks in Windows executable files that cause real grief but surprisingly little criticism of the weaknesses of the attacked platform. Even 20 years after its creation, Java is far safer than any other commonly available execution platform.

*JavaScript is a simpler version of Java.*

JavaScript, a scripting language that can be used inside web pages, was invented by Netscape and originally called LiveScript. JavaScript has a syntax

that is reminiscent of Java, and the languages' names sound similar, but otherwise they are unrelated. In particular, Java is *strongly typed*—the compiler catches many errors that arise from type misuse. In JavaScript, such errors are only found when the program runs, which makes their elimination far more laborious.

*With Java, I can replace my desktop computer with a cheap "Internet appliance."*

When Java was first released, some people bet big that this was going to happen. Companies produced prototypes of Java-powered network computers, but users were not ready to give up a powerful and convenient desktop for a limited machine with no local storage. Nowadays, of course, the world has changed, and for a large majority of end users, the platform that matters is a mobile phone or tablet. The majority of these devices are controlled by the Android platform, which is a derivative of Java. Learning Java programming will help you with Android programming as well.

# 2

## CHAPTER

# The Java Programming Environment

---

### In this chapter

- 2.1 Installing the Java Development Kit, page 18
- 2.2 Using the Command-Line Tools, page 23
- 2.3 Using an Integrated Development Environment, page 29
- 2.4 JShell, page 32

In this chapter, you will learn how to install the Java Development Kit (JDK) and how to compile and run various types of programs: console programs, graphical applications, and applets. You can run the JDK tools by typing commands in a terminal window. However, many programmers prefer the comfort of an integrated development environment. You will learn how to use a freely available development environment to compile and run Java programs. Once you have mastered the techniques in this chapter and picked your development tools, you are ready to move on to Chapter 3, where you will begin exploring the Java programming language.

## 2.1 Installing the Java Development Kit

The most complete and up-to-date versions of the Java Development Kit (JDK) are available from Oracle for Linux, Mac OS, Solaris, and Windows. Versions in various states of development exist for many other platforms, but those versions are licensed and distributed by the vendors of those platforms.

### 2.1.1 Downloading the JDK

To download the Java Development Kit, visit the web site at [www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads) and be prepared to decipher an amazing amount of jargon before you can get the software you need. See Table 2.1 for a summary.

**Table 2.1** Java Jargon

Name	Acronym	Explanation
Java Development Kit	JDK	The software for programmers who want to write Java programs
Java Runtime Environment	JRE	The software for consumers who want to run Java programs
Server JRE	—	The software for running Java programs on servers
Standard Edition	SE	The Java platform for use on desktops and simple server applications
Enterprise Edition	EE	The Java platform for complex server applications
Micro Edition	ME	The Java platform for use on small devices
JavaFX	—	An alternate toolkit for graphical user interfaces that is included with certain Java SE distributions prior to Java 11
OpenJDK	—	A free and open source implementation of Java SE
Java 2	J2	An outdated term that described Java versions from 1998 until 2006
Software Development Kit	SDK	An outdated term that described the JDK from 1998 until 2006
Update	u	Oracle's term for a bug fix release up to Java 8
NetBeans	—	Oracle's integrated development environment

You already saw the abbreviation JDK for Java Development Kit. Somewhat confusingly, versions 1.2 through 1.4 of the kit were known as the Java SDK (Software Development Kit). You will still find occasional references to the old term. Up to Java 10, there is also a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) that contains only the virtual machine. That is not what you want as a developer. It is intended for end users who have no need for the compiler.

Next, you'll see the term Java SE everywhere. That is the Java Standard Edition, in contrast to Java EE (Enterprise Edition) and Java ME (Micro Edition).

You might run into the term Java 2 that was coined in 1998 when the marketing folks at Sun felt that a fractional version number increment did not properly communicate the momentous advances of JDK 1.2. However, since they had that insight only after the release, they decided to keep the version number 1.2 for the *development kit*. Subsequent releases were numbered 1.3, 1.4, and 5.0. The *platform*, however, was renamed from Java to Java 2. Thus, we had Java 2 Standard Edition Software Development Kit Version 5.0, or J2SE SDK 5.0.

Fortunately, in 2006, the numbering was simplified. The next version of the Java Standard Edition was called Java SE 6, followed by Java SE 7 and Java SE 8.

However, the “internal” version numbers are 1.6.0, 1.7.0, and 1.8.0. This minor madness finally ran its course with Java SE 9, when the version number became 9, and then 9.0.1. (Why not 9.0.0 for the initial version? To keep a modicum of excitement, the version number specification requires that trailing zeroes are dropped for the fleeting interval between a major release and its first security update.)



**NOTE:** For the remainder of the book, we will drop the “SE” acronym. When you see “Java 9”, that means “Java SE 9”.

---

Prior to Java 9, there were 32-bit and 64-bit versions of the Java Development Kit. The 32-bit versions are no longer developed by Oracle. You need to have a 64-bit operating system to use the Oracle JDK.

With Linux, you have a choice between an RPM file and a .tar.gz file. We recommend the latter—you can simply uncompress it anywhere you like.

Now you know how to pick the right JDK. To summarize:

- You want the JDK (Java SE Development Kit), not the JRE.
- Linux: Pick the .tar.gz version.

Accept the license agreement and download the file.



**NOTE:** Depending on the constellation of the planets, Oracle may offer you a bundle that contains both the Java Development Kit and the NetBeans integrated development environment. I suggest that you stay away from all bundles and install only the Java Development Kit at this time. If you later decide to use NetBeans, simply download it from <http://netbeans.org>.

---

### 2.1.2 Setting up the JDK

After downloading the JDK, you need to install it and figure out where it was installed—you’ll need that information later.

- Under Windows, launch the setup program. You will be asked where to install the JDK. It is best not to accept a default location with spaces in the path name, such as c:\Program Files\Java\jdk-11.0.x. Just take out the Program Files part of the path name.
- On the Mac, run the installer. It installs the software into /Library/Java/JavaVirtualMachines/jdk-11.0.x.jdk/Contents/Home. Locate it with the Finder.
- On Linux, simply uncompress the .tar.gz file to a location of your choice, such as your home directory or /opt. Or, if you installed from the RPM file, double-check that it is installed in /usr/java/jdk-11.0.x.

In this book, the installation directory is denoted as *jdk*. For example, when referring to the *jdk/bin* directory, I mean the directory with a name such as /opt/jdk-11.0.4/bin or c:\Java\jdk-11.0.4\bin.

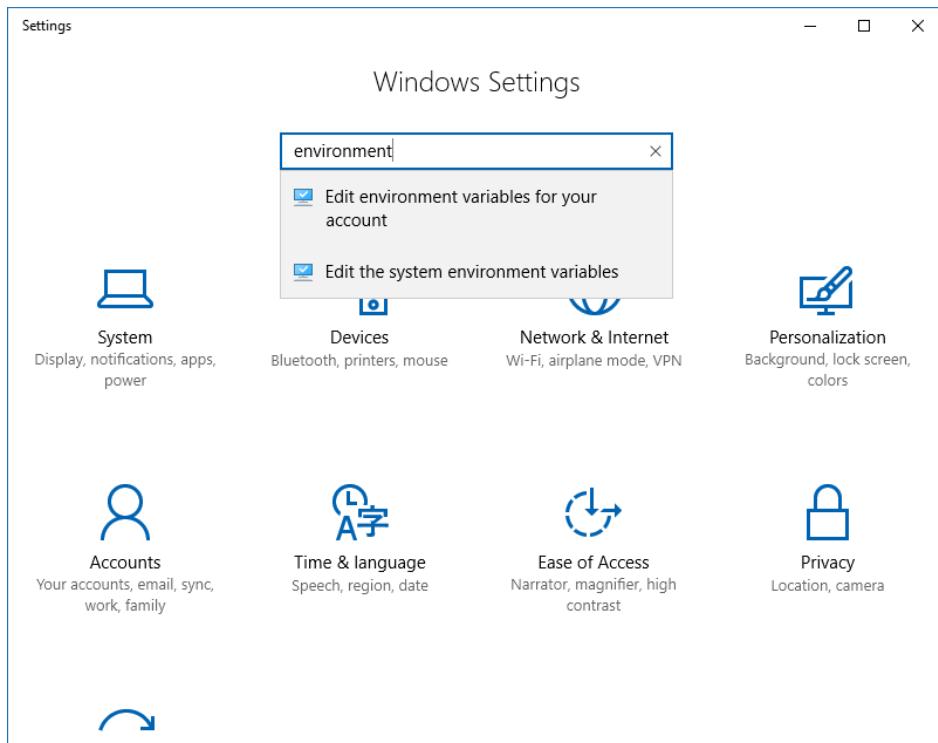
When you install the JDK on Windows or Linux, you need to carry out one additional step: Add the *jdk/bin* directory to the executable path—the list of directories that the operating system traverses to locate executable files.

- On Linux, add a line such as the following to the end of your *~/.bashrc* or *~/.bash\_profile* file:

```
export PATH=~/jdk/bin:$PATH
```

Be sure to use the correct path to the JDK, such as /opt/jdk-11.0.4.

- Under Windows 10, type “environment” into the search bar of the Windows Settings, and select “Edit environment variables for your account” (see Figure 2.1). An Environment Variables dialog should appear. (It may hide



**Figure 2.1** Setting system properties in Windows 10

behind the Windows Settings dialog. If you can't find it anywhere, try running `sysdm.cpl` from the Run dialog that you get by holding down the Windows and R key at the same time, and then select the Advanced tab and click the Environment Variables button.) Locate and select a variable named `Path` in the User Variables list. Click the Edit button, then the New button, and add an entry with the `jdk\bin` directory (see Figure 2.2).

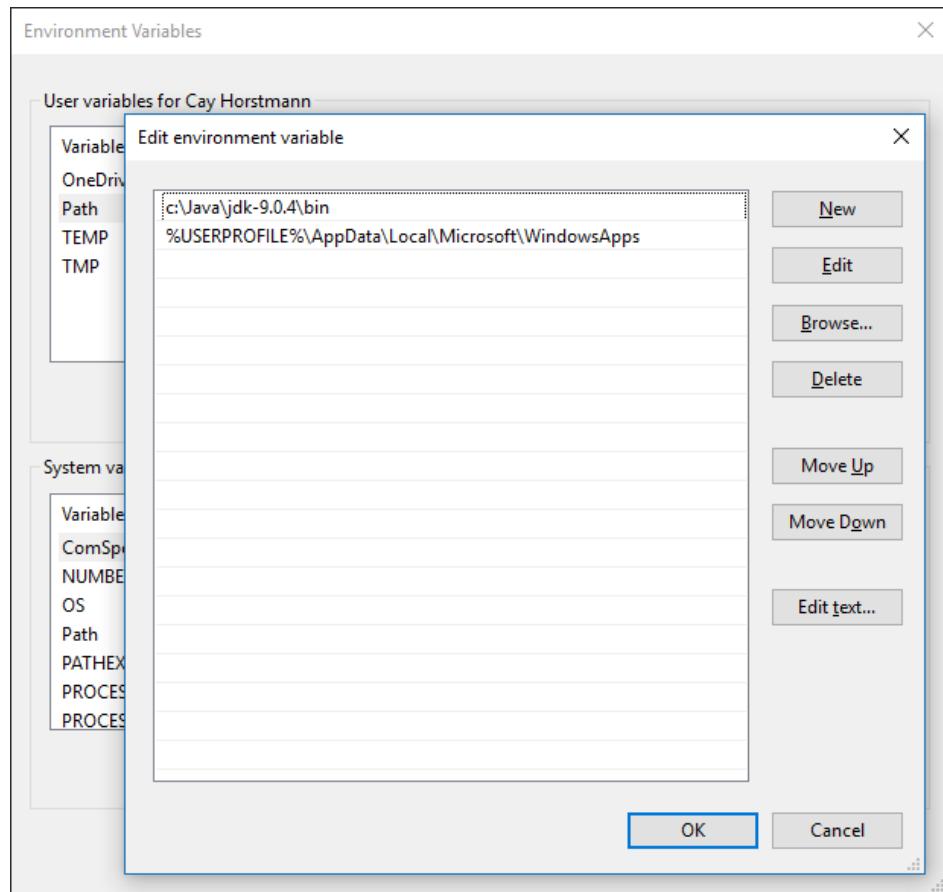
Save your settings. Any new “Command Prompt” windows that you start will have the correct path.

Here is how you test whether you did it right: Start a terminal window. Type the line

```
javac --version
```

and press the Enter key. You should get a display such as this one:

```
javac 11.0.1
```



**Figure 2.2** Setting the Path environment variable in Windows 10

If instead you get a message such as “javac: command not found” or “The name specified is not recognized as an internal or external command, operable program or batch file,” then you need to go back and double-check your installation.

### 2.1.3 Installing Source Files and Documentation

The library source files are delivered in the JDK as a compressed file `lib/src.zip`. Unpack that file to get access to the source code. Simply do the following:

1. Make sure the JDK is installed and the `jdk/bin` directory is on the executable path.

2. Make a directory `javadocs` in your home directory. If you like, you can do this from a terminal window.

```
mkdir javadocs
```

3. Inside the `jdk/lib` directory, locate the file `src.zip`.

4. Unzip the `src.zip` file into the `javadocs` directory. In a terminal window, you can execute the commands

```
cd javadocs  
jar xvf jdk/lib/src.zip  
cd ..
```



**TIP:** The `src.zip` file contains the source code for all public libraries. To obtain even more source (for the compiler, the virtual machine, the native methods, and the private helper classes), go to <http://openjdk.java.net>.

The documentation is contained in a compressed file that is separate from the JDK. You can download the documentation from [www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads). Follow these steps:

1. Download the documentation zip file. It is called `jdk-11.0.x_doc-all.zip`.
2. Unzip the file and rename the `doc` directory into something more descriptive, like `javadoc`. If you like, you can do this from the command line:

```
jar xvf Downloads/jdk-11.0.x_doc-all.zip  
mv docs jdk-11-docs
```

3. In your browser, navigate to `jdk-11-docs/index.html` and add this page to your bookmarks.

You should also install the *Core Java* program examples. You can download them from <http://horstmann.com/corejava>. The programs are packaged into a zip file `corejava.zip`. Just unzip them into your home directory. They will be located in a directory `corejava`. If you like, you can do this from the command line:

```
jar xvf Downloads/corejava.zip
```

## 2.2 Using the Command-Line Tools

If your programming experience comes from a development environment such as Microsoft Visual Studio, you are accustomed to a system with a built-in text editor, menus to compile and launch a program, and a debugger. The JDK contains nothing even remotely similar. You do *everything* by typing in commands in a terminal window. This sounds cumbersome, but it is

nevertheless an essential skill. When you first install Java, you will want to troubleshoot your installation before you install a development environment. Moreover, by executing the basic steps yourself, you gain a better understanding of what a development environment does behind your back.

However, after you have mastered the basic steps of compiling and running Java programs, you will want to use a professional development environment. You will see how to do that in the following section.

Let's get started the hard way: compiling and launching a Java program from the command line.

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Go to the `corejava/v1ch02/Welcome` directory. (The `corejava` directory is where you installed the source code for the book examples, as explained in Section 2.1.3, "Installing Source Files and Documentation," on p. 22.)
3. Enter the following commands:

```
javac Welcome.java  
java Welcome
```

You should see the output shown in Figure 2.3 in the terminal window.



The screenshot shows a Terminal window with the title bar "Terminal". The window contains the following text:

```
-$ cd corejava/v1ch02/Welcome  
~/corejava/v1ch02/Welcome$ javac Welcome.java  
~/corejava/v1ch02/Welcome$ java Welcome  
Welcome to Core Java!  
=====
```

**Figure 2.3** Compiling and running `Welcome.java`

Congratulations! You have just compiled and run your first Java program.

What happened? The `javac` program is the Java compiler. It compiles the file `Welcome.java` into the file `Welcome.class`. The `java` program launches the Java virtual machine. It executes the bytecodes that the compiler placed in the class file.

The `Welcome` program is extremely simple. It merely prints a message to the terminal. You may enjoy looking inside the program, shown in Listing 2.1. You will see how it works in the next chapter.

### **Listing 2.1** Welcome/Welcome.java

```
1 /**
2  * This program displays a greeting for the reader.
3  * @version 1.30 2014-02-27
4  * @author Cay Horstmann
5 */
6 public class Welcome
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         String greeting = "Welcome to Core Java!";
11         System.out.println(greeting);
12         for (int i = 0; i < greeting.length(); i++)
13             System.out.print "=";
14         System.out.println();
15     }
16 }
```

In the age of integrated development environments, many programmers are unfamiliar with running programs in a terminal window. Any number of things can go wrong, leading to frustrating results.

Pay attention to the following points:

- If you type in the program by hand, make sure you correctly enter the uppercase and lowercase letters. In particular, the class name is `Welcome` and not `welcome` or `WELCOME`.
- The compiler requires a *file name* (`Welcome.java`). When you run the program, you specify a *class name* (`Welcome`) without a `.java` or `.class` extension.
- If you get a message such as “Bad command or file name” or “javac: command not found”, go back and double-check your installation, in particular the executable path setting.
- If `javac` reports that it cannot find the file `Welcome.java`, you should check whether that file is present in the directory.

Under Linux, check that you used the correct capitalization for `Welcome.java`.

Under Windows, use the `dir` command, *not* the graphical Explorer tool. Some text editors (in particular Notepad) insist on adding an extension `.txt` to every file's name. If you use Notepad to edit `Welcome.java`, it will actually save it as `Welcome.java.txt`. Under the default Windows settings, Explorer conspires with Notepad and hides the `.txt` extension because it belongs to a “known file type.” In that case, you need to rename the file, using the `ren` command, or save it again, placing quotes around the file name: “`Welcome.java`”.

- If you launch your program and get an error message complaining about a `java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError`, then carefully check the name of the offending class.

If you get a complaint about `welcome` (with a lowercase `w`), then you should reissue the `java Welcome` command with an uppercase `W`. As always, case matters in Java.

If you get a complaint about `Welcome/java`, it means you accidentally typed `java Welcome.java`. Reissue the command as `java Welcome`.

- If you typed `java Welcome` and the virtual machine can't find the `Welcome` class, check if someone has set the `CLASSPATH` environment variable on your system. It is not a good idea to set this variable globally, but some poorly written software installers in Windows do just that. Follow the same procedure as for setting the `PATH` environment variable, but this time, remove the setting.



**TIP:** The excellent tutorial at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/getStarted/cupojava> goes into much greater detail about the “gotchas” that beginners can run into.

---



**NOTE:** In JDK 11, the `javac` command is not required with a single source file. This feature is intended to support shell scripts starting with a “shebang” line  
`#!/path/to/java`.

---

The `Welcome` program was not terribly exciting. Next, try out a graphical application. This program is a simple image file viewer that loads and displays an image. As before, compile and run the program from the command line.

1. Open a terminal window.
2. Change to the directory `corejava/v1ch02/ImageViewer`.

3. Enter the following:

```
javac ImageViewer.java  
java ImageViewer
```

A new program window pops up with the ImageViewer application. Now, select File → Open and look for an image file to open. (There are a couple of sample files in the same directory.) The image is displayed (see Figure 2.4). To close the program, click on the Close box in the title bar or select File → Exit from the menu.



**Figure 2.4** Running the ImageViewer application

Have a quick look at the source code (Listing 2.2). The program is substantially longer than the first program, but it is not too complex if you consider how much code it would take in C or C++ to write a similar application. You'll learn how to write graphical user interfaces like this in Chapter 10.

**Listing 2.2** ImageViewer/ImageViewer.java

```
1 import java.awt.*;  
2 import java.io.*;  
3 import javax.swing.*;  
4  
5 /**  
6  * A program for viewing images.  
7  * @version 1.31 2018-04-10
```

(Continues)

**Listing 2.2 (Continued)**

```
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9  */
10 public class ImageViewer
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         EventQueue.invokeLater(() -> {
15             var frame = new ImageViewerFrame();
16             frame.setTitle("ImageViewer");
17             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
18             frame.setVisible(true);
19         });
20     }
21 }
22 /**
23 * A frame with a label to show an image.
24 */
25 class ImageViewerFrame extends JFrame
26 {
27     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
28     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 400;
29
30     public ImageViewerFrame()
31     {
32         setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
33
34         // use a label to display the images
35         var label = new JLabel();
36         add(label);
37
38         // set up the file chooser
39         var chooser = new JFileChooser();
40         chooser.setCurrentDirectory(new File("."));
41
42         // set up the menu bar
43         var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
44         setJMenuBar(menuBar);
45
46         var menu = new JMenu("File");
47         menuBar.add(menu);
48
49         var openItem = new JMenuItem("Open");
```

```
51     menu.add(openItem);
52     openItem.addActionListener(event -> {
53         // show file chooser dialog
54         int result = chooser.showOpenDialog(null);
55
56         // if file selected, set it as icon of the label
57         if (result == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
58         {
59             String name = chooser.getSelectedFile().getPath();
60             label.setIcon(new ImageIcon(name));
61         }
62     });
63
64     var exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
65     menu.add(exitItem);
66     exitItem.addActionListener(event -> System.exit(0));
67 }
68 }
```

## 2.3 Using an Integrated Development Environment

In the preceding section, you saw how to compile and run a Java program from the command line. That is a useful skill for troubleshooting, but for most day-to-day work, you should use an integrated development environment. These environments are so powerful and convenient that it simply doesn't make much sense to labor on without them. Excellent choices are the freely available Eclipse, IntelliJ IDEA, and NetBeans. In this chapter, you will learn how to get started with Eclipse. Of course, if you prefer a different development environment, you can certainly use it with this book.

Get started by downloading Eclipse from <http://eclipse.org/downloads>. Versions exist for Linux, Mac OS X, and Windows. Run the installation program and pick the installation set called "Eclipse IDE for Java Developers".

Here are the steps to write a program with Eclipse.

1. After starting Eclipse, select File → New → Project from the menu.
2. Select "Java Project" from the wizard dialog (see Figure 2.5).
3. Click the Next button. *Uncheck* the "Use default location" checkbox. Click on Browse and navigate to the corejava/v1ch02/Welcome directory (Figure 2.6).

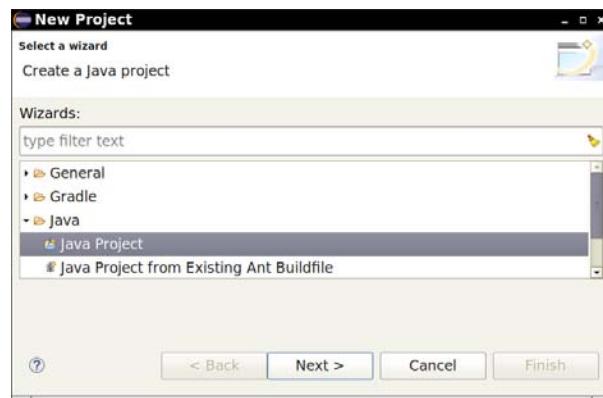


Figure 2.5 The New Project dialog in Eclipse

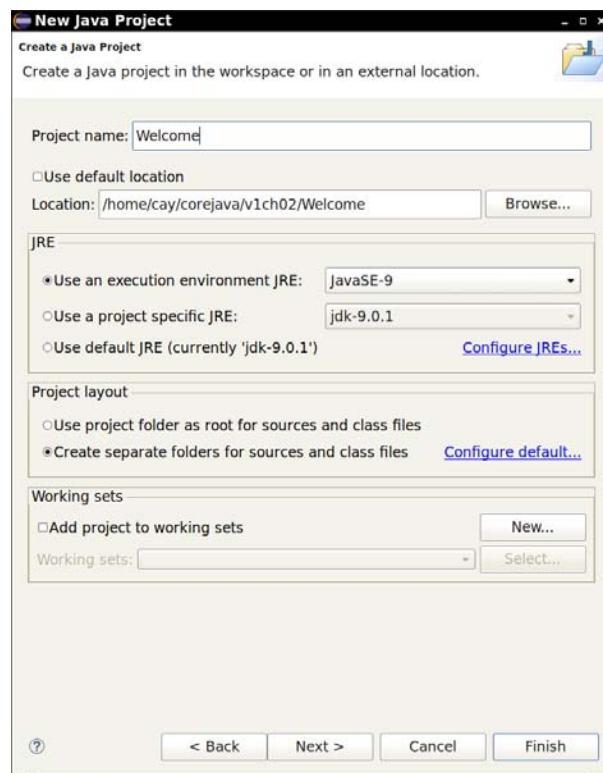
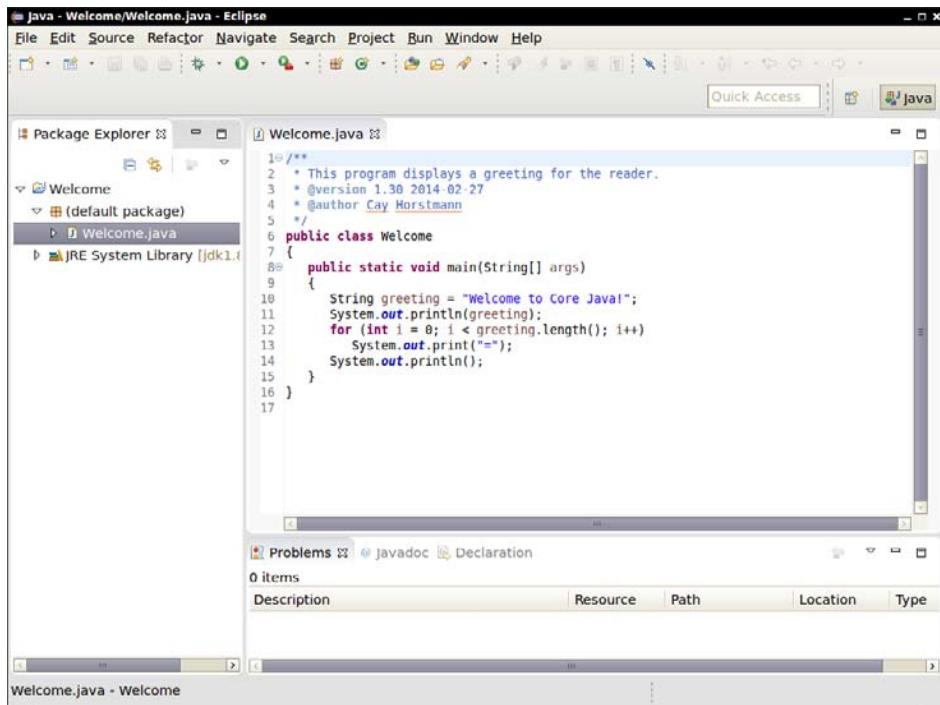


Figure 2.6 Configuring a project in Eclipse

4. Click the Finish button. The project is now created.
5. Click on the triangles in the left pane next to the project until you locate the file `Welcome.java`, and double-click on it. You should now see a pane with the program code (see Figure 2.7).



**Figure 2.7** Editing a source file with Eclipse

6. With the right mouse button, click on the project name (Welcome) in the left pane. Select Run → Run As → Java Application. The program output is displayed in the console pane.

Presumably, this program does not have typos or bugs. (It was only a few lines of code, after all.) Let us suppose, for the sake of argument, that your code occasionally contains a typo (perhaps even a syntax error). Try it out—ruin your file, for example, by changing the capitalization of `String` as follows:

```
string greeting = "Welcome to Core Java!";
```

Note the wiggly line under `string`. In the tabs below the source code, click on Problems and expand the triangles until you see an error message that complains about an unknown string type (see Figure 2.8). Click on the error message. The cursor moves to the matching line in the edit pane, where you can correct your error. This allows you to fix your errors quickly.

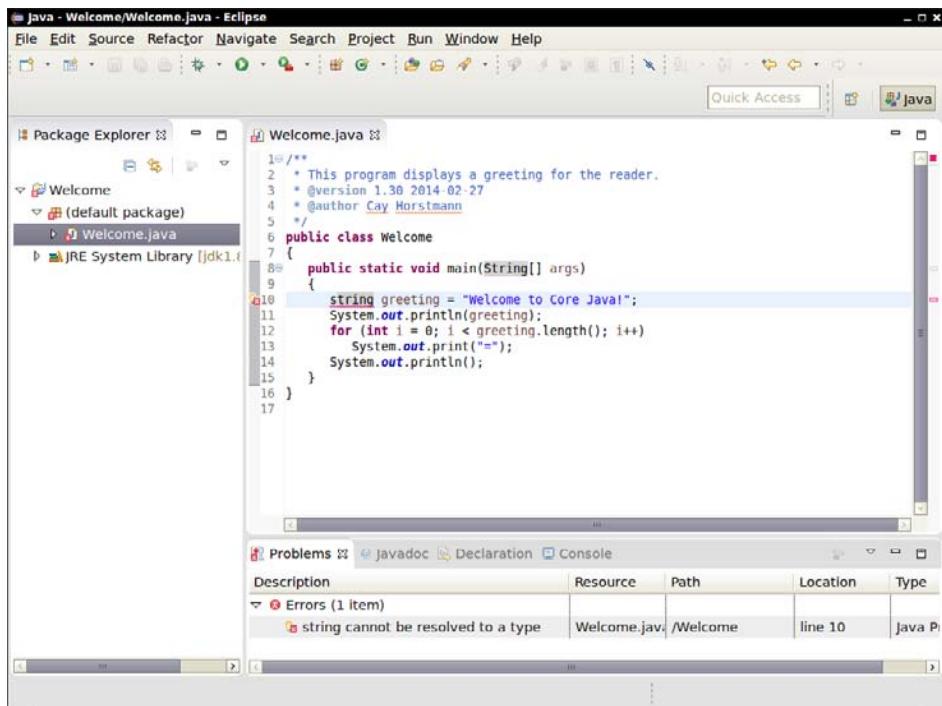


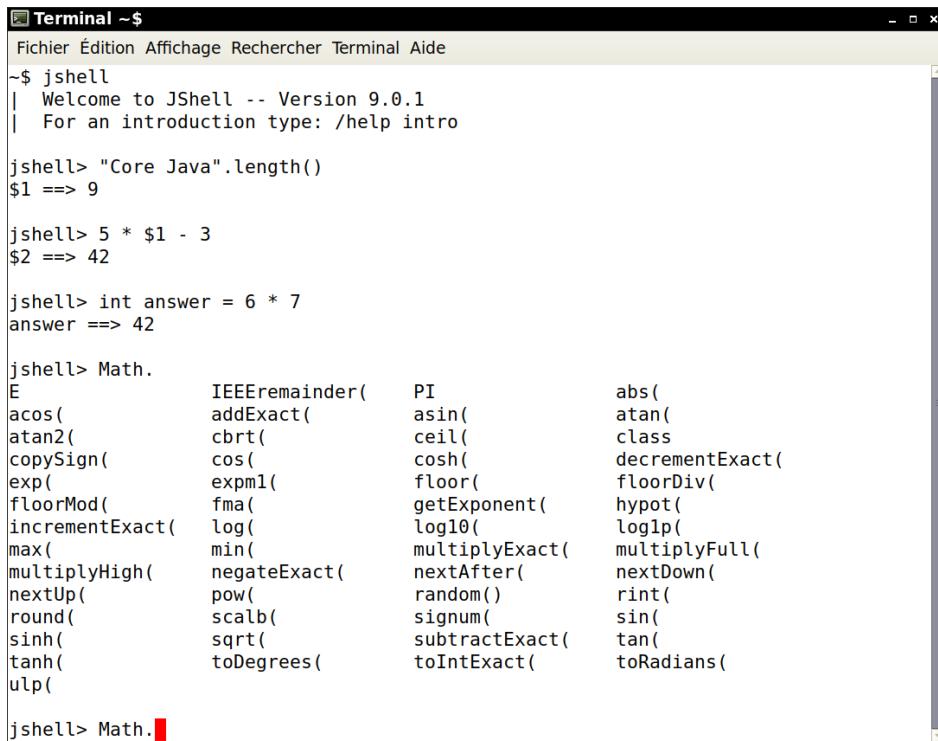
Figure 2.8 Error messages in Eclipse



**TIP:** Often, an Eclipse error report is accompanied by a lightbulb icon. Click on the lightbulb to get a list of suggested fixes.

## 2.4 JShell

In the preceding section, you saw how to compile and run a Java program. Java 9 introduces another way of working with Java. The JShell program provides a “read-evaluate-print loop,” or REPL. You type a Java expression; JShell evaluates your input, prints the result, and waits for your next input. To start JShell, simply type `jshell` in a terminal window (see Figure 2.9).



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Terminal ~\$". The menu bar includes "Fichier", "Édition", "Affichage", "Rechercher", "Terminal", and "Aide". The main area displays the JShell command-line interface. It starts with a welcome message: "Welcome to JShell -- Version 9.0.1" and "For an introduction type: /help intro". The user then types several commands:

- "Core Java".length() results in \$1 ==> 9
- 5 \* \$1 - 3 results in \$2 ==> 42
- int answer = 6 \* 7; answer ==> 42
- A long list of Math class methods is displayed, starting with E, acos(), atan2(), copySign(), exp(), floorMod(), incrementExact(), max(), multiplyHigh(), nextUp(), round(), sinh(), tanh(), ulp(), followed by PI, abs(), atan(), ceil(), cosh(), decrementExact(), floorDiv(), getExponent(), hypot(), log10(), log1p(), multiplyExact(), multiplyFull(), nextAfter(), random(), signum(), subtractExact(), toIntExact(), toRadians(), and toDegrees().

**Figure 2.9** Running JShell

JShell starts with a greeting, followed by a prompt:

```
| Welcome to JShell -- Version 11.0.1  
| For an introduction type: /help intro
```

```
jshell>
```

Now type an expression, such as

```
"Core Java".length()
```

JShell responds with the result—in this case, the number of characters in the string “Core Java”.

```
$1 ==> 9
```

Note that you do *not* type `System.out.println`. JShell automatically prints the value of every expression that you enter.

The \$1 in the output indicates that the result is available in further calculations. For example, if you type

```
5 * $1 - 3
```

the response is

```
$2 ==> 42
```

If you need a variable many times, you can give it a more memorable name. However, you have to follow the Java syntax and specify both the type and the name. (We will cover the syntax in Chapter 3.) For example,

```
jshell> int answer = 6 * 7  
answer ==> 42
```

Another useful feature is tab completion. Type

```
Math.
```

followed by the Tab key. You get a list of all methods that you can invoke with the `Math` class:

```
jshell> Math.  
E           IEEEremainder(   PI           abs()  
acos(       addExact(      asin(        atan()  
atan2(      cbrt(         ceil(        class  
copySign(   cos(          cosh(        decrementExact()  
exp(        expm1(        floor(       floorDiv()  
floorMod(  fma(          getExponent(  hypot()  
incrementExact( log(         log10(       log1p()  
max(        min(          multiplyExact( multiplyFull()  
multiplyHigh( negateExact( nextAfter(    nextDown()  
nextUp(     pow(          random()    rint()  
round(      scalb(        signum(     sin()  
sinh(       sqrt(         subtractExact( tan()  
tanh(      toDegrees(    toIntExact(  toRadians()  
ulp(
```

Now type `l` and hit the Tab key again. The method name is completed to `log`, and you get a shorter list:

```
jshell> Math.log  
log(    log10(  log1p(
```

Now you can fill in the rest by hand:

```
jshell> Math.log10(0.001)  
$3 ==> -3.0
```

To repeat a command, hit the ↑ key until you see the line that you want to reissue or edit. You can move the cursor in the line with the ← and → keys,

and add or delete characters. Hit Enter when you are done. For example, hit and replace `0.001` with `1000`, then hit Enter:

```
jshell> Math.log10(1000)  
$4 ==> 3.0
```

JShell makes it easy and fun to learn about the Java language and library without having to launch a heavy-duty development environment and without fussing with `public static void main`.

In this chapter, you learned about the mechanics of compiling and running Java programs. You are now ready to move on to Chapter 3 where you will start learning the Java language.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Fundamental Programming Structures in Java

## In this chapter

- 3.1 A Simple Java Program, page 38
- 3.2 Comments, page 41
- 3.3 Data Types, page 42
- 3.4 Variables and Constants, page 48
- 3.5 Operators, page 52
- 3.6 Strings, page 62
- 3.7 Input and Output, page 75
- 3.8 Control Flow, page 86
- 3.9 Big Numbers, page 105
- 3.10 Arrays, page 108

At this point, we are assuming that you successfully installed the JDK and were able to run the sample programs that we showed you in Chapter 2.

It's time to start programming. This chapter shows you how the basic programming concepts such as data types, branches, and loops are implemented in Java.

## 3.1 A Simple Java Program

Let's look more closely at one of the simplest Java programs you can have—one that merely prints a message to console:

```
public class FirstSample
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("We will not use 'Hello, World!'");
    }
}
```

It is worth spending all the time you need to become comfortable with the framework of this sample; the pieces will recur in all applications. First and foremost, *Java is case sensitive*. If you made any mistakes in capitalization (such as typing `Main` instead of `main`), the program will not run.

Now let's look at this source code line by line. The keyword `public` is called an *access modifier*; these modifiers control the level of access other parts of a program have to this code. We'll have more to say about access modifiers in Chapter 5. The keyword `class` reminds you that everything in a Java program lives inside a class. Although we will spend a lot more time on classes in the next chapter, for now think of a class as a container for the program logic that defines the behavior of an application. As mentioned in Chapter 1, classes are the building blocks with which all Java applications and applets are built. *Everything* in a Java program must be inside a class.

Following the keyword `class` is the name of the class. The rules for class names in Java are quite generous. Names must begin with a letter, and after that, they can have any combination of letters and digits. The length is essentially unlimited. You cannot use a Java reserved word (such as `public` or `class`) for a class name. (See the appendix for a list of reserved words.)

The standard naming convention (which we follow in the name `FirstSample`) is that class names are nouns that start with an uppercase letter. If a name consists of multiple words, use an initial uppercase letter in each of the words. (This use of uppercase letters in the middle of a word is sometimes called "camel case" or, self-referentially, "CamelCase".

You need to make the file name for the source code the same as the name of the public class, with the extension .java appended. Thus, you must store this code in a file called `FirstSample.java`. (Again, case is important—don't use `firstsample.java`.)

If you have named the file correctly and not made any typos in the source code, then when you compile this source code, you end up with a file containing the bytecodes for this class. The Java compiler automatically names the bytecode file `FirstSample.class` and stores it in the same directory as the source file. Finally, launch the program by issuing the following command:

```
java FirstSample
```

(Remember to leave off the .class extension.) When the program executes, it simply displays the string `We will not use 'Hello, World!'` on the console.

When you use

```
java ClassName
```

to run a compiled program, the Java virtual machine always starts execution with the code in the `main` method in the class you indicate. (The term "method" is Java-speak for a function.) Thus, you *must* have a `main` method in the source of your class for your code to execute. You can, of course, add your own methods to a class and call them from the `main` method. (We cover writing your own methods in the next chapter.)



**NOTE:** According to the Java Language Specification, the `main` method must be declared `public`. (The Java Language Specification is the official document that describes the Java language. You can view or download it from <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs>.)

However, several versions of the Java launcher were willing to execute Java programs even when the `main` method was not `public`. A programmer filed a bug report. To see it, visit <http://bugs.java.com/bugdatabase/index.jsp> and enter the Bug ID 4252539. In 1999, that bug was marked as "closed, will not be fixed." A Sun engineer added an explanation that the Java Virtual Machine Specification (at <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jvms/se8/html>) does not mandate that `main` is `public` and that "fixing it will cause potential troubles." Fortunately, sanity finally prevailed. The Java launcher in Java 1.4 and beyond enforces that the `main` method is `public`.

There are a couple of interesting aspects about this story. On the one hand, it is frustrating to have quality assurance engineers, who are often overworked and not always experts in the fine points of Java, make questionable decisions about bug reports. On the other hand, it is remarkable that Sun made the bug

reports and their resolutions available for anyone to scrutinize, long before Java was open source. At one point, Sun even let programmers vote for their most despised bugs and used the vote counts to decide which of them would get fixed in the next JDK release.

---

Notice the braces {} in the source code. In Java, as in C/C++, braces delineate the parts (usually called *blocks*) in your program. In Java, the code for any method must be started by an opening brace { and ended by a closing brace }.

Brace styles have inspired an inordinate amount of useless controversy. We follow a style that lines up matching braces. As whitespace is irrelevant to the Java compiler, you can use whatever brace style you like. We will have more to say about the use of braces when we talk about the various kinds of loops.

For now, don't worry about the keywords static void—just think of them as part of what you need to get a Java program to compile. By the end of Chapter 4, you will understand this incantation completely. The point to remember for now is that every Java application must have a main method that is declared in the following way:

```
public class ClassName
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        program statements
    }
}
```



**C++ NOTE:** As a C++ programmer, you know what a class is. Java classes are similar to C++ classes, but there are a few differences that can trap you. For example, in Java *all* functions are methods of some class. (The standard terminology refers to them as methods, not member functions.) Thus, in Java you must have a shell class for the main method. You may also be familiar with the idea of *static member functions* in C++. These are member functions defined inside a class that do not operate on objects. The main method in Java is always static. Finally, as in C/C++, the void keyword indicates that this method does not return a value. Unlike C/C++, the main method does not return an “exit code” to the operating system. If the main method exits normally, the Java program has the exit code 0, indicating successful completion. To terminate the program with a different exit code, use the System.exit method.

---

Next, turn your attention to this fragment:

```
{  
    System.out.println("We will not use 'Hello, World!'");  
}
```

Braces mark the beginning and end of the *body* of the method. This method has only one statement in it. As with most programming languages, you can think of Java statements as sentences of the language. In Java, every statement must end with a semicolon. In particular, carriage returns do not mark the end of a statement, so statements can span multiple lines if need be.

The body of the `main` method contains a statement that outputs a single line of text to the console.

Here, we are using the `System.out` object and calling its `println` method. Notice the periods used to invoke a method. Java uses the general syntax

*object.method(parameters)*

as its equivalent of a function call.

In this case, we are calling the `println` method and passing it a string parameter. The method displays the string parameter on the console. It then terminates the output line, so that each call to `println` displays its output on a new line. Notice that Java, like C/C++, uses double quotes to delimit strings. (You can find more information about strings later in this chapter.)

Methods in Java, like functions in any programming language, can use zero, one, or more *parameters* (some programmers call them *arguments*). Even if a method takes no parameters, you must still use empty parentheses. For example, a variant of the `println` method with no parameters just prints a blank line. You invoke it with the call

```
System.out.println();
```



**NOTE:** `System.out` also has a `print` method that doesn't add a newline character to the output. For example, `System.out.print("Hello")` prints `Hello` without a newline. The next output appears immediately after the letter `o`.

## 3.2 Comments

Comments in Java, as in most programming languages, do not show up in the executable program. Thus, you can add as many comments as needed without fear of bloating the code. Java has three ways of marking comments.

The most common form is a `//`. Use this for a comment that runs from the `//` to the end of the line.

```
System.out.println("We will not use 'Hello, World!'"); // is this too cute?
```

When longer comments are needed, you can mark each line with a `//`, or you can use the `/*` and `*/` comment delimiters that let you block off a longer comment.

Finally, a third kind of comment is used to generate documentation automatically. This comment uses a `/**` to start and a `*/` to end. You can see this type of comment in Listing 3.1. For more on this type of comment and on automatic documentation generation, see Chapter 4.

---

#### Listing 3.1 FirstSample/FirstSample.java

---

```
1 /**
2  * This is the first sample program in Core Java Chapter 3
3  * @version 1.01 1997-03-22
4  * @author Gary Cornell
5 */
6 public class FirstSample
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         System.out.println("We will not use 'Hello, World!'");
11     }
12 }
```

---



**CAUTION:** `/* */` comments do not nest in Java. That is, you might not be able to deactivate code simply by surrounding it with `/*` and `*/` because the code you want to deactivate might itself contain a `/*` delimiter.

---

### 3.3 Data Types

Java is a *strongly typed language*. This means that every variable must have a declared type. There are eight *primitive types* in Java. Four of them are integer types; two are floating-point number types; one is the character type `char`, used for code units in the Unicode encoding scheme (see Section 3.3.3, “The `char` Type,” on p. 46); and one is a `boolean` type for truth values.



**NOTE:** Java has an arbitrary-precision arithmetic package. However, “big numbers,” as they are called, are Java *objects* and not a primitive Java type. You will see how to use them later in this chapter.

### 3.3.1 Integer Types

The integer types are for numbers without fractional parts. Negative values are allowed. Java provides the four integer types shown in Table 3.1.

**Table 3.1** Java Integer Types

Type	Storage Requirement	Range (Inclusive)
int	4 bytes	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647 (just over 2 billion)
short	2 bytes	-32,768 to 32,767
long	8 bytes	-9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807
byte	1 byte	-128 to 127

In most situations, the `int` type is the most practical. If you want to represent the number of inhabitants of our planet, you’ll need to resort to a `long`. The `byte` and `short` types are mainly intended for specialized applications, such as low-level file handling, or for large arrays when storage space is at a premium.

Under Java, the ranges of the integer types do not depend on the machine on which you will be running the Java code. This alleviates a major pain for the programmer who wants to move software from one platform to another, or even between operating systems on the same platform. In contrast, C and C++ programs use the most efficient integer type for each processor. As a result, a C program that runs well on a 32-bit processor may exhibit integer overflow on a 16-bit system. Since Java programs must run with the same results on all machines, the ranges for the various types are fixed.

Long integer numbers have a suffix `L` or `l` (for example, `400000000L`). Hexadecimal numbers have a prefix `0x` or `0X` (for example, `0xCAFE`). Octal numbers have a prefix `0` (for example, `010` is 8)—naturally, this can be confusing, so we recommend against the use of octal constants.

Starting with Java 7, you can write numbers in binary, with a prefix `0b` or `0B`. For example, `0b1001` is 9. Also starting with Java 7, you can add underscores to number literals, such as `1_000_000` (or `0b1111_0100_0010_0100_0000`) to denote one million. The underscores are for human eyes only. The Java compiler simply removes them.



**C++ NOTE:** In C and C++, the sizes of types such as `int` and `long` depend on the target platform. On a 16-bit processor such as the 8086, integers are 2 bytes, but on a 32-bit processor like a Pentium or SPARC they are 4-byte quantities. Similarly, `long` values are 4-byte on 32-bit processors and 8-byte on 64-bit processors. These differences make it challenging to write cross-platform programs. In Java, the sizes of all numeric types are platform-independent.

Note that Java does not have any `unsigned` versions of the `int`, `long`, `short`, or `byte` types.

---



**NOTE:** If you work with integer values that can never be negative and you really need an additional bit, you can, with some care, interpret signed integer values as `unsigned`. For example, instead of having a `byte` value `b` represent the range from -128 to 127, you may want a range from 0 to 255. You can store it in a `byte`. Due to the nature of binary arithmetic, addition, subtraction, and multiplication will work provided they don't overflow. For other operations, call `Byte.toUnsignedInt(b)` to get an `int` value between 0 and 255, then process the integer value and cast back to `byte`. The `Integer` and `Long` classes have methods for `unsigned` division and remainder.

---

### 3.3.2 Floating-Point Types

The floating-point types denote numbers with fractional parts. The two floating-point types are shown in Table 3.2.

**Table 3.2** Floating-Point Types

Type	Storage Requirement	Range
<code>float</code>	4 bytes	Approximately $\pm 3.40282347E+38F$ (6–7 significant decimal digits)
<code>double</code>	8 bytes	Approximately $\pm 1.79769313486231570E+308$ (15 significant decimal digits)

---

The name `double` refers to the fact that these numbers have twice the precision of the `float` type. (Some people call these *double-precision* numbers.) The limited precision of `float` (6–7 significant digits) is simply not sufficient for many situations. Use `float` values only when you work with a library that requires them, or when you need to store a very large number of them.

Numbers of type `float` have a suffix `F` or `f` (for example, `3.14F`). Floating-point numbers without an `F` suffix (such as `3.14`) are always considered to be of type `double`. You can optionally supply the `D` or `d` suffix (for example, `3.14D`).



**NOTE:** You can specify floating-point literals in hexadecimal. For example,  $0.125 = 2^{-3}$  can be written as `0x1.0p-3`. In hexadecimal notation, you use a `p`, not an `e`, to denote the exponent. (An `e` is a hexadecimal digit.) Note that the mantissa is written in hexadecimal and the exponent in decimal. The base of the exponent is 2, not 10.

All floating-point computations follow the IEEE 754 specification. In particular, there are three special floating-point values to denote overflows and errors:

- Positive infinity
- Negative infinity
- `NaN` (not a number)

For example, the result of dividing a positive number by 0 is positive infinity. Computing `0/0` or the square root of a negative number yields `NaN`.



**NOTE:** The constants `Double.POSITIVE_INFINITY`, `Double.NEGATIVE_INFINITY`, and `Double.NaN` (as well as corresponding `Float` constants) represent these special values, but they are rarely used in practice. In particular, you cannot test

```
if (x == Double.NaN) // is never true
```

to check whether a particular result equals `Double.NaN`. All “not a number” values are considered distinct. However, you can use the `Double.isNaN` method:

```
if (Double.isNaN(x)) // check whether x is "not a number"
```



**CAUTION:** Floating-point numbers are *not* suitable for financial calculations in which roundoff errors cannot be tolerated. For example, the command `System.out.println(2.0 - 1.1)` prints `0.8999999999999999`, not `0.9` as you would expect. Such roundoff errors are caused by the fact that floating-point numbers are represented in the binary number system. There is no precise binary representation of the fraction `1/10`, just as there is no accurate representation of the fraction `1/3` in the decimal system. If you need precise numerical computations without roundoff errors, use the `BigDecimal` class, which is introduced later in this chapter.

### 3.3.3 The `char` Type

The `char` type was originally intended to describe individual characters. However, this is no longer the case. Nowadays, some Unicode characters can be described with one `char` value, and other Unicode characters require two `char` values. Read the next section for the gory details.

Literal values of type `char` are enclosed in single quotes. For example, '`A`' is a character constant with value 65. It is different from "`A`", a string containing a single character. Values of type `char` can be expressed as hexadecimal values that run from `\u0000` to `\uFFFF`. For example, `\u2122` is the trademark symbol (™) and `\u03c0` is the Greek letter pi ( $\pi$ ).

Besides the `\u` escape sequences, there are several escape sequences for special characters, as shown in Table 3.3. You can use these escape sequences inside quoted character literals and strings, such as '`\u2122`' or "`Hello\n`". The `\u` escape sequence (but none of the other escape sequences) can even be used *outside* quoted character constants and strings. For example,

```
public static void main(String[] args)
```

is perfectly legal—`\u005B` and `\u005D` are the encodings for [ and ].

**Table 3.3** Escape Sequences for Special Characters

Escape Sequence	Name	Unicode Value
<code>\b</code>	Backspace	<code>\u0008</code>
<code>\t</code>	Tab	<code>\u0009</code>
<code>\n</code>	Linefeed	<code>\u000a</code>
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return	<code>\u000d</code>
<code>\"</code>	Double quote	<code>\u0022</code>
<code>\'</code>	Single quote	<code>\u0027</code>
<code>\\"</code>	Backslash	<code>\u005c</code>



**CAUTION:** Unicode escape sequences are processed before the code is parsed. For example, "`\u0022+\u0022`" is *not* a string consisting of a plus sign surrounded by quotation marks (U+0022). Instead, the `\u0022` are converted into " before parsing, yielding "+", or an empty string.

Even more insidiously, you must beware of `\u` inside comments. The comment

```
// \u000A is a newline
```

yields a syntax error since \u000A is replaced with a newline when the program is read. Similarly, a comment

```
// look inside c:\users
```

yields a syntax error because the \u is not followed by four hex digits.

---

### 3.3.4 Unicode and the char Type

To fully understand the `char` type, you have to know about the Unicode encoding scheme. Unicode was invented to overcome the limitations of traditional character encoding schemes. Before Unicode, there were many different standards: ASCII in the United States, ISO 8859-1 for Western European languages, KOI-8 for Russian, GB18030 and BIG-5 for Chinese, and so on. This caused two problems. First, a particular code value corresponds to different letters in the different encoding schemes. Second, the encodings for languages with large character sets have variable length: Some common characters are encoded as single bytes, others require two or more bytes.

Unicode was designed to solve these problems. When the unification effort started in the 1980s, a fixed 2-byte code was more than sufficient to encode all characters used in all languages in the world, with room to spare for future expansion—or so everyone thought at the time. In 1991, Unicode 1.0 was released, using slightly less than half of the available 65,536 code values. Java was designed from the ground up to use 16-bit Unicode characters, which was a major advance over other programming languages that used 8-bit characters.

Unfortunately, over time, the inevitable happened. Unicode grew beyond 65,536 characters, primarily due to the addition of a very large set of ideographs used for Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. Now, the 16-bit `char` type is insufficient to describe all Unicode characters.

We need a bit of terminology to explain how this problem is resolved in Java, beginning with Java 5. A *code point* is a code value that is associated with a character in an encoding scheme. In the Unicode standard, code points are written in hexadecimal and prefixed with U+, such as U+0041 for the code point of the Latin letter A. Unicode has code points that are grouped into 17 *code planes*. The first code plane, called the *basic multilingual plane*, consists of the “classic” Unicode characters with code points U+0000 to U+FFFF. Sixteen additional planes, with code points U+10000 to U+10FFFF, hold the *supplementary characters*.

The UTF-16 encoding represents all Unicode code points in a variable-length code. The characters in the basic multilingual plane are represented as 16-bit values, called *code units*. The supplementary characters are encoded as consecutive pairs of code units. Each of the values in such an encoding pair falls

into a range of 2048 unused values of the basic multilingual plane, called the *surrogates area* (U+D800 to U+DBFF for the first code unit, U+DC00 to U+DFFF for the second code unit). This is rather clever, because you can immediately tell whether a code unit encodes a single character or it is the first or second part of a supplementary character. For example, ℬ (the mathematical symbol for the set of octonions, <http://math.ucr.edu/home/baez/octonions>) has code point U+1D546 and is encoded by the two code units U+D835 and U+DD46. (See <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2781> for a description of the encoding algorithm.)

In Java, the `char` type describes a *code unit* in the UTF-16 encoding.

Our strong recommendation is not to use the `char` type in your programs unless you are actually manipulating UTF-16 code units. You are almost always better off treating strings (which we will discuss in Section 3.6, “Strings,” on p. 62) as abstract data types.

### 3.3.5 The boolean Type

The `boolean` type has two values, `false` and `true`. It is used for evaluating logical conditions. You cannot convert between integers and `boolean` values.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, numbers and even pointers can be used in place of `boolean` values. The value 0 is equivalent to the `bool` value `false`, and a nonzero value is equivalent to `true`. This is *not* the case in Java. Thus, Java programmers are shielded from accidents such as

```
if (x = 0) // oops... meant x == 0
```

In C++, this test compiles and runs, always evaluating to `false`. In Java, the test does not compile because the integer expression `x = 0` cannot be converted to a `boolean` value.

---

## 3.4 Variables and Constants

As in every programming language, variables are used to store values. Constants are variables whose values don’t change. In the following sections, you will learn how to declare variables and constants.

### 3.4.1 Declaring Variables

In Java, every variable has a *type*. You declare a variable by placing the type first, followed by the name of the variable. Here are some examples:

```
double salary;  
int vacationDays;  
long earthPopulation;  
boolean done;
```

Notice the semicolon at the end of each declaration. The semicolon is necessary because a declaration is a complete Java statement, and all Java statements end in semicolons.

A variable name must begin with a letter and must be a sequence of letters or digits. Note that the terms “letter” and “digit” are much broader in Java than in most languages. A letter is defined as 'A'-'Z', 'a'-'z', '\_', '\$', or *any* Unicode character that denotes a letter in a language. For example, German users can use umlauts such as 'ä' in variable names; Greek speakers could use a π. Similarly, digits are '0'-'9' and *any* Unicode characters that denote a digit in a language. Symbols like '+' or '@' cannot be used inside variable names, nor can spaces. *All* characters in the name of a variable are significant and *case is also significant*. The length of a variable name is essentially unlimited.



**TIP:** If you are really curious as to what Unicode characters are “letters” as far as Java is concerned, you can use the `isJavaIdentifierStart` and `isJavaIdentifierPart` methods in the `Character` class to check.



**TIP:** Even though \$ is a valid Java letter, you should not use it in your own code. It is intended for names that are generated by the Java compiler and other tools.

You also cannot use a Java reserved word as a variable name.

As of Java 9, a single underscore \_ cannot be used as a variable name. A future version of Java may use \_ as a wildcard symbol.

You can declare multiple variables on a single line:

```
int i, j; // both are integers
```

However, we don't recommend this style. If you declare each variable separately, your programs are easier to read.



**NOTE:** As you saw, names are case sensitive, for example, `hireday` and `hireDay` are two separate names. In general, you should not have two names that only differ in their letter case. However, sometimes it is difficult to come up with a

good name for a variable. Many programmers then give the variable the same name as the type, for example

```
Box box; // "Box" is the type and "box" is the variable name
```

Other programmers prefer to use an “a” prefix for the variable:

```
Box aBox;
```

---

### 3.4.2 Initializing Variables

After you declare a variable, you must explicitly initialize it by means of an assignment statement—you can never use the value of an uninitialized variable. For example, the Java compiler flags the following sequence of statements as an error:

```
int vacationDays;  
System.out.println(vacationDays); // ERROR--variable not initialized
```

You assign to a previously declared variable by using the variable name on the left, an equal sign (=), and then some Java expression with an appropriate value on the right.

```
int vacationDays;  
vacationDays = 12;
```

You can both declare and initialize a variable on the same line. For example:

```
int vacationDays = 12;
```

Finally, in Java you can put declarations anywhere in your code. For example, the following is valid code in Java:

```
double salary = 65000.0;  
System.out.println(salary);  
int vacationDays = 12; // OK to declare a variable here
```

In Java, it is considered good style to declare variables as closely as possible to the point where they are first used.



**NOTE:** Starting with Java 10, you do not need to declare the types of local variables if they can be inferred from the initial value. Simply use the keyword var instead of the type:

```
var vacationDays = 12; // vacationDays is an int  
var greeting = "Hello"; // greeting is a String
```

We will start using this feature in the next chapter.

---



**C++ NOTE:** C and C++ distinguish between the *declaration* and *definition* of a variable. For example,

```
int i = 10;
```

is a definition, whereas

```
extern int i;
```

is a declaration. In Java, no declarations are separate from definitions.

### 3.4.3 Constants

In Java, you use the keyword `final` to denote a constant. For example:

```
public class Constants
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        final double CM_PER_INCH = 2.54;
        double paperWidth = 8.5;
        double paperHeight = 11;
        System.out.println("Paper size in centimeters: "
            + paperWidth * CM_PER_INCH + " by " + paperHeight * CM_PER_INCH);
    }
}
```

The keyword `final` indicates that you can assign to the variable once, and then its value is set once and for all. It is customary to name constants in all uppercase.

It is probably more common in Java to create a constant so it's available to multiple methods inside a single class. These are usually called *class constants*. Set up a class constant with the keywords `static final`. Here is an example of using a class constant:

```
public class Constants2
{
    public static final double CM_PER_INCH = 2.54;

    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double paperWidth = 8.5;
        double paperHeight = 11;
        System.out.println("Paper size in centimeters: "
            + paperWidth * CM_PER_INCH + " by " + paperHeight * CM_PER_INCH);
    }
}
```

Note that the definition of the class constant appears *outside* the `main` method. Thus, the constant can also be used in other methods of the same class. Furthermore, if the constant is declared, as in our example, `public`, methods of other classes can also use it—in our example, as `Constants2.CM_PER_INCH`.



**C++ NOTE:** `const` is a reserved Java keyword, but it is not currently used for anything. You must use `final` for a constant.

---

### 3.4.4 Enumerated Types

Sometimes, a variable should only hold a restricted set of values. For example, you may sell clothes or pizza in four sizes: small, medium, large, and extra large. Of course, you could encode these sizes as integers 1, 2, 3, 4 or characters S, M, L, and X. But that is an error-prone setup. It is too easy for a variable to hold a wrong value (such as 0 or m).

You can define your own *enumerated type* whenever such a situation arises. An enumerated type has a finite number of named values. For example,

```
enum Size { SMALL, MEDIUM, LARGE, EXTRA_LARGE };
```

Now you can declare variables of this type:

```
Size s = Size.MEDIUM;
```

A variable of type `Size` can hold only one of the values listed in the type declaration, or the special value `null` that indicates that the variable is not set to any value at all.

We discuss enumerated types in greater detail in Chapter 5.

## 3.5 Operators

Operators are used to combine values. As you will see in the following sections, Java has a rich set of arithmetic and logical operators and mathematical functions.

### 3.5.1 Arithmetic Operators

The usual arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `*`, `/` are used in Java for addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The `/` operator denotes integer division if both arguments are integers, and floating-point division otherwise. Integer remainder (sometimes called *modulus*) is denoted by `%`. For example, `15 / 2` is 7, `15 % 2` is 1, and `15.0 / 2` is 7.5.

Note that integer division by 0 raises an exception, whereas floating-point division by 0 yields an infinite or NaN result.



**NOTE:** One of the stated goals of the Java programming language is portability. A computation should yield the same results no matter which virtual machine executes it. For arithmetic computations with floating-point numbers, it is surprisingly difficult to achieve this portability. The `double` type uses 64 bits to store a numeric value, but some processors use 80-bit floating-point registers. These registers yield added precision in intermediate steps of a computation. For example, consider the following computation:

```
double w = x * y / z;
```

Many Intel processors compute `x * y`, leave the result in an 80-bit register, then divide by `z`, and finally truncate the result back to 64 bits. That can yield a more accurate result, and it can avoid exponent overflow. But the result may be *different* from a computation that uses 64 bits throughout. For that reason, the initial specification of the Java virtual machine mandated that all intermediate computations must be truncated. The numeric community hated it. Not only can the truncated computations cause overflow, they are actually *slower* than the more precise computations because the truncation operations take time. For that reason, the Java programming language was updated to recognize the conflicting demands for optimum performance and perfect reproducibility. By default, virtual machine designers are now permitted to use extended precision for intermediate computations. However, methods tagged with the `strictfp` keyword must use strict floating-point operations that yield reproducible results.

For example, you can tag `main` as

```
public static strictfp void main(String[] args)
```

Then all instructions inside the `main` method will use strict floating-point computations. If you tag a class as `strictfp`, then all of its methods must use strict floating-point computations.

The gory details are very much tied to the behavior of the Intel processors. In the default mode, intermediate results are allowed to use an extended exponent, but not an extended mantissa. (The Intel chips support truncation of the mantissa without loss of performance.) Therefore, the only difference between the default and strict modes is that strict computations may overflow when default computations don't.

If your eyes glazed over when reading this note, don't worry. Floating-point overflow isn't a problem that one encounters for most common programs. We don't use the `strictfp` keyword in this book.

### 3.5.2 Mathematical Functions and Constants

The `Math` class contains an assortment of mathematical functions that you may occasionally need, depending on the kind of programming that you do.

To take the square root of a number, use the `sqrt` method:

```
double x = 4;  
double y = Math.sqrt(x);  
System.out.println(y); // prints 2.0
```



**NOTE:** There is a subtle difference between the `println` method and the `sqrt` method. The `println` method operates on the `System.out` object. But the `sqrt` method in the `Math` class does not operate on any object. Such a method is called a *static* method. You can learn more about static methods in Chapter 4.

---

The Java programming language has no operator for raising a quantity to a power: You must use the `pow` method in the `Math` class. The statement

```
double y = Math.pow(x, a);
```

sets `y` to be `x` raised to the power `a` ( $x^a$ ). The `pow` method's parameters are both of type `double`, and it returns a `double` as well.

The `floorMod` method aims to solve a long-standing problem with integer remainders. Consider the expression `n % 2`. Everyone knows that this is `0` if `n` is even and `1` if `n` is odd. Except, of course, when `n` is odd and negative. Then it is `-1`. Why? When the first computers were built, someone had to make rules for how integer division and remainder should work for negative operands. Mathematicians had known the optimal (or "Euclidean") rule for a few hundred years: always leave the remainder  $\geq 0$ . But, rather than open a math textbook, those pioneers came up with rules that seemed reasonable but are actually inconvenient.

Consider this problem. You compute the position of the hour hand of a clock. An adjustment is applied, and you want to normalize to a number between `0` and `11`. That is easy: `(position + adjustment) % 12`. But what if the adjustment is negative? Then you might get a negative number. So you have to introduce a branch, or use `((position + adjustment) % 12 + 12) % 12`. Either way, it is a hassle.

The `floorMod` method makes it easier: `floorMod(position + adjustment, 12)` always yields a value between `0` and `11`. (Unfortunately, `floorMod` gives negative results for negative divisors, but that situation doesn't often occur in practice.)

The `Math` class supplies the usual trigonometric functions:

```
Math.sin  
Math.cos  
Math.tan  
Math.atan  
Math.atan2
```

and the exponential function with its inverse, the natural logarithm, as well as the decimal logarithm:

```
Math.exp  
Math.log  
Math.log10
```

Finally, two constants denote the closest possible approximations to the mathematical constants  $\pi$  and  $e$ :

```
Math.PI  
Math.E
```



**TIP:** You can avoid the `Math` prefix for the mathematical methods and constants by adding the following line to the top of your source file:

```
import static java.lang.Math.*;
```

For example:

```
System.out.println("The square root of \u03c0 is " + sqrt(PI));
```

We discuss static imports in Chapter 4.



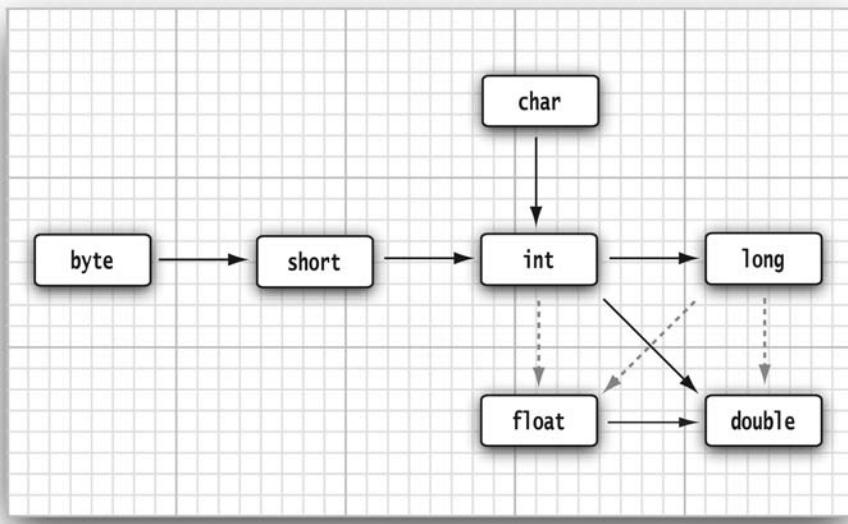
**NOTE:** The methods in the `Math` class use the routines in the computer's floating-point unit for fastest performance. If completely predictable results are more important than performance, use the `StrictMath` class instead. It implements the algorithms from the "Freely Distributable Math Library" ([www.netlib.org/fdlibm](http://www.netlib.org/fdlibm)), guaranteeing identical results on all platforms.



**NOTE:** The `Math` class provides several methods to make integer arithmetic safer. The mathematical operators quietly return wrong results when a computation overflows. For example, one billion times three (`1000000000 * 3`) evaluates to -1294967296 because the largest `int` value is just over two billion. If you call `Math.multiplyExact(1000000000, 3)` instead, an exception is generated. You can catch that exception or let the program terminate rather than quietly continue with a wrong result. There are also methods `addExact`, `subtractExact`, `incrementExact`, `decrementExact`, `negateExact`, all with `int` and `long` parameters.

### 3.5.3 Conversions between Numeric Types

It is often necessary to convert from one numeric type to another. Figure 3.1 shows the legal conversions.



**Figure 3.1** Legal conversions between numeric types

The six solid arrows in Figure 3.1 denote conversions without information loss. The three dotted arrows denote conversions that may lose precision. For example, a large integer such as 123456789 has more digits than the `float` type can represent. When the integer is converted to a `float`, the resulting value has the correct magnitude but loses some precision.

```
int n = 123456789;  
float f = n; // f is 1.23456792E8
```

When two values are combined with a binary operator (such as `n + f` where `n` is an integer and `f` is a floating-point value), both operands are converted to a common type before the operation is carried out.

- If either of the operands is of type `double`, the other one will be converted to a `double`.
- Otherwise, if either of the operands is of type `float`, the other one will be converted to a `float`.

- Otherwise, if either of the operands is of type `long`, the other one will be converted to a `long`.
- Otherwise, both operands will be converted to an `int`.

### 3.5.4 Casts

In the preceding section, you saw that `int` values are automatically converted to `double` values when necessary. On the other hand, there are obviously times when you want to consider a `double` as an integer. Numeric conversions are possible in Java, but of course information may be lost. Conversions in which loss of information is possible are done by means of *casts*. The syntax for casting is to give the target type in parentheses, followed by the variable name. For example:

```
double x = 9.997;  
int nx = (int) x;
```

Now, the variable `nx` has the value 9 because casting a floating-point value to an integer discards the fractional part.

If you want to *round* a floating-point number to the *nearest* integer (which in most cases is a more useful operation), use the `Math.round` method:

```
double x = 9.997;  
int nx = (int) Math.round(x);
```

Now the variable `nx` has the value 10. You still need to use the cast (`int`) when you call `round`. The reason is that the return value of the `round` method is a `long`, and a `long` can only be assigned to an `int` with an explicit cast because there is the possibility of information loss.



**CAUTION:** If you try to cast a number of one type to another that is out of range for the target type, the result will be a truncated number that has a different value. For example, `(byte) 300` is actually 44.



**C++ NOTE:** You cannot cast between `boolean` values and any numeric type. This convention prevents common errors. In the rare case when you want to convert a `boolean` value to a number, you can use a conditional expression such as `b ? 1 : 0`.

### 3.5.5 Combining Assignment with Operators

There is a convenient shortcut for using binary operators in an assignment. For example,

```
x += 4;
```

is equivalent to

```
x = x + 4;
```

(In general, place the operator to the left of the = sign, such as \*= or %=.)



**NOTE:** If the operator yields a value whose type is different from that of the left-hand side, then it is coerced to fit. For example, if x is an int, then the statement

```
x += 3.5;
```

is valid, setting x to (int)(x + 3.5).

---

### 3.5.6 Increment and Decrement Operators

Programmers, of course, know that one of the most common operations with a numeric variable is to add or subtract 1. Java, following in the footsteps of C and C++, has both increment and decrement operators: n++ adds 1 to the current value of the variable n, and n-- subtracts 1 from it. For example, the code

```
int n = 12;  
n++;
```

changes n to 13. Since these operators change the value of a variable, they cannot be applied to numbers themselves. For example, 4++ is not a legal statement.

There are two forms of these operators; you've just seen the postfix form of the operator that is placed after the operand. There is also a prefix form, ++n. Both change the value of the variable by 1. The difference between the two appears only when they are used inside expressions. The prefix form does the addition first; the postfix form evaluates to the old value of the variable.

```
int m = 7;  
int n = 7;  
int a = 2 * ++m; // now a is 16, m is 8  
int b = 2 * n++; // now b is 14, n is 8
```

We recommend against using ++ inside expressions because this often leads to confusing code and annoying bugs.

### 3.5.7 Relational and boolean Operators

Java has the full complement of relational operators. To test for equality, use a double equal sign, `==`. For example, the value of

```
3 == 7
```

is false.

Use a `!=` for inequality. For example, the value of

```
3 != 7
```

is true.

Finally, you have the usual `<` (less than), `>` (greater than), `<=` (less than or equal), and `>=` (greater than or equal) operators.

Java, following C++, uses `&&` for the logical “and” operator and `||` for the logical “or” operator. As you can easily remember from the `!=` operator, the exclamation point `!` is the logical negation operator. The `&&` and `||` operators are evaluated in “short circuit” fashion: The second argument is not evaluated if the first argument already determines the value. If you combine two expressions with the `&&` operator,

```
expression1 && expression2
```

and the truth value of the first expression has been determined to be false, then it is impossible for the result to be true. Thus, the value for the second expression is *not* calculated. This behavior can be exploited to avoid errors. For example, in the expression

```
x != 0 && 1 / x > x + y // no division by 0
```

the second part is never evaluated if `x` equals zero. Thus, `1 / x` is not computed if `x` is zero, and no divide-by-zero error can occur.

Similarly, the value of `expression1 || expression2` is automatically true if the first expression is true, without evaluating the second expression.

Finally, Java supports the ternary `? :` operator that is occasionally useful. The expression

```
condition ? expression1 : expression2
```

evaluates to the first expression if the condition is true, to the second expression otherwise. For example,

```
x < y ? x : y
```

gives the smaller of `x` and `y`.

### 3.5.8 Bitwise Operators

For any of the integer types, you have operators that can work directly with the bits that make up the integers. This means that you can use masking techniques to get at individual bits in a number. The bitwise operators are

& (“and”) | (“or”) ^ (“xor”) ~ (“not”)

These operators work on bit patterns. For example, if `n` is an integer variable, then

```
int fourthBitFromRight = (n & 0b1000) / 0b1000;
```

gives you a 1 if the fourth bit from the right in the binary representation of `n` is 1, and 0 otherwise. Using `&` with the appropriate power of 2 lets you mask out all but a single bit.



**NOTE:** When applied to boolean values, the `&` and `|` operators yield a boolean value.

These operators are similar to the `&&` and `||` operators, except that the `&` and `|` operators are not evaluated in “short circuit” fashion—that is, both arguments are evaluated before the result is computed.

---

There are also `>>` and `<<` operators which shift a bit pattern right or left. These operators are convenient when you need to build up bit patterns to do bit masking:

```
int fourthBitFromRight = (n & (1 << 3)) >> 3;
```

Finally, a `>>>` operator fills the top bits with zero, unlike `>>` which extends the sign bit into the top bits. There is no `<<<` operator.



**CAUTION:** The right-hand argument of the shift operators is reduced modulo 32 (unless the left-hand argument is a `long`, in which case the right-hand argument is reduced modulo 64). For example, the value of `1 << 35` is the same as `1 << 3` or 8.

---



**C++ NOTE:** In C/C++, there is no guarantee as to whether `>>` performs an arithmetic shift (extending the sign bit) or a logical shift (filling in with zeroes). Implementors are free to choose whichever is more efficient. That means the C/C++ `>>` operator may yield implementation-dependent results for negative numbers. Java removes that uncertainty.

---

### 3.5.9 Parentheses and Operator Hierarchy

Table 3.4 shows the precedence of operators. If no parentheses are used, operations are performed in the hierarchical order indicated. Operators on the same level are processed from left to right, except for those that are right-associative, as indicated in the table. For example, `&&` has a higher precedence than `||`, so the expression

`a && b || c`

means

`(a && b) || c`

**Table 3.4** Operator Precedence

Operators	Associativity
<code>[] . ()</code> (method call)	Left to right
<code>! ~ ++ -- + (unary) - (unary) () (cast) new</code>	Right to left
<code>* / %</code>	Left to right
<code>+ -</code>	Left to right
<code>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt; &gt;&gt;&gt;</code>	Left to right
<code>&lt; &lt;= &gt; &gt;= instanceof</code>	Left to right
<code>== !=</code>	Left to right
<code>&amp;</code>	Left to right
<code>^</code>	Left to right
<code> </code>	Left to right
<code>&amp;&amp;</code>	Left to right
<code>  </code>	Left to right
<code>?:</code>	Right to left
<code>= += -= *= /= %= &amp;=  = ^= &lt;&lt;= &gt;&gt;= &gt;&gt;&gt;=</code>	Right to left

Since `+=` associates right to left, the expression

`a += b += c`

means

`a += (b += c)`

That is, the value of `b += c` (which is the value of `b` after the addition) is added to `a`.



**C++ NOTE:** Unlike C or C++, Java does not have a comma operator. However, you can use a *comma-separated list of expressions* in the first and third slot of a `for` statement.

---

## 3.6 Strings

Conceptually, Java strings are sequences of Unicode characters. For example, the string "Java\u2122" consists of the five Unicode characters J, a, v, a, and ™. Java does not have a built-in string type. Instead, the standard Java library contains a predefined class called, naturally enough, `String`. Each quoted string is an instance of the `String` class:

```
String e = ""; // an empty string
String greeting = "Hello";
```

### 3.6.1 Substrings

You can extract a substring from a larger string with the `substring` method of the `String` class. For example,

```
String greeting = "Hello";
String s = greeting.substring(0, 3);
```

creates a string consisting of the characters "Hel".



**NOTE:** Like C and C++, Java counts code units and code points in strings starting with 0.

---

The second parameter of `substring` is the first position that you *do not* want to copy. In our case, we want to copy positions 0, 1, and 2 (from position 0 to position 2 inclusive). As `substring` counts it, this means from position 0 inclusive to position 3 *exclusive*.

There is one advantage to the way `substring` works: Computing the length of the substring is easy. The string `s.substring(a, b)` always has length  $b - a$ . For example, the substring "Hel" has length  $3 - 0 = 3$ .

### 3.6.2 Concatenation

Java, like most programming languages, allows you to use `+` to join (concatenate) two strings.

```
String expletive = "Expletive";
String PG13 = "deleted";
String message = expletive + PG13;
```

The preceding code sets the variable `message` to the string `"Expletive deleted"`. (Note the lack of a space between the words: The `+` operator joins two strings in the order received, *exactly* as they are given.)

When you concatenate a string with a value that is not a string, the latter is converted to a string. (As you will see in Chapter 5, every Java object can be converted to a string.) For example,

```
int age = 13;
String rating = "PG" + age;
```

sets `rating` to the string `"PG13"`.

This feature is commonly used in output statements. For example,

```
System.out.println("The answer is " + answer);
```

is perfectly acceptable and prints what you would expect (and with correct spacing because of the space after the word `is`).

If you need to put multiple strings together, separated by a delimiter, use the static `join` method:

```
String all = String.join(" / ", "S", "M", "L", "XL");
// all is the string "S / M / L / XL"
```

As of Java 11, there is a `repeat` method:

```
String repeated = "Java".repeat(3); // repeated is "JavaJavaJava"
```

### 3.6.3 Strings Are Immutable

The `String` class gives no methods that let you *change* a character in an existing string. If you want to turn `greeting` into `"Help!"`, you cannot directly change the last positions of `greeting` into `'p'` and `'!'`. If you are a C programmer, this can make you feel pretty helpless. How are we going to modify the string? In Java, it is quite easy: Concatenate the substring that you want to keep with the characters that you want to replace.

```
greeting = greeting.substring(0, 3) + "p!";
```

This declaration changes the current value of the `greeting` variable to "Help!".

Since you cannot change the individual characters in a Java string, the documentation refers to the objects of the `String` class as *immutable*. Just as the number 3 is always 3, the string "Hello" will always contain the code-unit sequence for the characters H, e, l, l, o. You cannot change these values. Yet you can, as you just saw, change the contents of the string *variable* `greeting` and make it refer to a different string, just as you can make a numeric variable currently holding the value 3 hold the value 4.

Isn't that a lot less efficient? It would seem simpler to change the code units than to build up a whole new string from scratch. Well, yes and no. Indeed, it isn't efficient to generate a new string that holds the concatenation of "Hel" and "p!". But immutable strings have one great advantage: The compiler can arrange that strings are *shared*.

To understand how this works, think of the various strings as sitting in a common pool. String variables then point to locations in the pool. If you copy a string variable, both the original and the copy share the same characters.

Overall, the designers of Java decided that the efficiency of sharing outweighs the inefficiency of string editing by extracting substrings and concatenating. Look at your own programs; we suspect that most of the time, you don't change strings—you just compare them. (There is one common exception—assembling strings from individual characters or from shorter strings that come from the keyboard or a file. For these situations, Java provides a separate class that we describe in Section 3.6.9, "Building Strings," on p. 74.)



**C++ NOTE:** C programmers are generally bewildered when they see Java strings for the first time because they think of strings as arrays of characters:

```
char greeting[] = "Hello";
```

That is a wrong analogy: A Java string is roughly analogous to a `char*` pointer,

```
char* greeting = "Hello";
```

When you replace `greeting` with another string, the Java code does roughly the following:

```
char* temp = malloc(6);
strncpy(temp, greeting, 3);
strncpy(temp + 3, "p!", 3);
greeting = temp;
```

Sure, now `greeting` points to the string "Help!". And even the most hardened C programmer must admit that the Java syntax is more pleasant than a sequence of `strncpy` calls. But what if we make another assignment to `greeting`?

```
greeting = "Howdy";
```

Don't we have a memory leak? After all, the original string was allocated on the heap. Fortunately, Java does automatic garbage collection. If a block of memory is no longer needed, it will eventually be recycled.

If you are a C++ programmer and use the `string` class defined by ANSI C++, you will be much more comfortable with the Java `String` type. C++ `string` objects also perform automatic allocation and deallocation of memory. The memory management is performed explicitly by constructors, assignment operators, and destructors. However, C++ strings are mutable—you can modify individual characters in a string.

### 3.6.4 Testing Strings for Equality

To test whether two strings are equal, use the `equals` method. The expression

```
s.equals(t)
```

returns `true` if the strings `s` and `t` are equal, `false` otherwise. Note that `s` and `t` can be string variables or string literals. For example, the expression

```
"Hello".equals(greeting)
```

is perfectly legal. To test whether two strings are identical except for the upper/lowercase letter distinction, use the `equalsIgnoreCase` method.

```
"Hello".equalsIgnoreCase("hello")
```

Do *not* use the `=` operator to test whether two strings are equal! It only determines whether or not the strings are stored in the same location. Sure, if strings are in the same location, they must be equal. But it is entirely possible to store multiple copies of identical strings in different places.

```
String greeting = "Hello"; // initialize greeting to a string
if (greeting == "Hello") . .
    // probably true
if (greeting.substring(0, 3) == "Hel") . .
    // probably false
```

If the virtual machine always arranges for equal strings to be shared, then you could use the `=` operator for testing equality. But only string *literals* are shared, not strings that are the result of operations like `+` or `substring`. Therefore, *never* use `=` to compare strings lest you end up with a program with the worst kind of bug—an intermittent one that seems to occur randomly.



**C++ NOTE:** If you are used to the C++ string class, you have to be particularly careful about equality testing. The C++ string class does overload the == operator to test for equality of the string contents. It is perhaps unfortunate that Java goes out of its way to give strings the same “look and feel” as numeric values but then makes strings behave like pointers for equality testing. The language designers could have redefined == for strings, just as they made a special arrangement for +. Oh well, every language has its share of inconsistencies.

C programmers never use == to compare strings but use strcmp instead. The Java method compareTo is the exact analog of strcmp. You can use

```
if (greeting.compareTo("Hello") == 0) . . .
```

but it seems clearer to use equals instead.

---

### 3.6.5 Empty and Null Strings

The empty string "" is a string of length 0. You can test whether a string is empty by calling

```
if (str.length() == 0)
```

or

```
if (str.equals(""))
```

An empty string is a Java object which holds the string length (namely, 0) and an empty contents. However, a String variable can also hold a special value, called null, that indicates that no object is currently associated with the variable. (See Chapter 4 for more information about null.) To test whether a string is null, use

```
if (str == null)
```

Sometimes, you need to test that a string is neither null nor empty. Then use

```
if (str != null && str.length() != 0)
```

You need to test that str is not null first. As you will see in Chapter 4, it is an error to invoke a method on a null value.

### 3.6.6 Code Points and Code Units

Java strings are sequences of char values. As we discussed in Section 3.3.3, “The char Type,” on p. 46, the char data type is a code unit for representing Unicode code points in the UTF-16 encoding. The most commonly used Unicode characters can be represented with a single code unit. The supplementary characters require a pair of code units.

The `length` method yields the number of code units required for a given string in the UTF-16 encoding. For example:

```
String greeting = "Hello";
int n = greeting.length(); // is 5
```

To get the true length—that is, the number of code points—call

```
int cpCount = greeting.codePointCount(0, greeting.length());
```

The call `s.charAt(n)` returns the code unit at position `n`, where `n` is between 0 and `s.length() - 1`. For example:

```
char first = greeting.charAt(0); // first is 'H'
char last = greeting.charAt(4); // last is 'o'
```

To get at the `i`th code point, use the statements

```
int index = greeting.offsetByCodePoints(0, i);
int cp = greeting.codePointAt(index);
```

Why are we making a fuss about code units? Consider the sentence

⌚ is the set of octonions.

The character ⌚ (U+1D546) requires two code units in the UTF-16 encoding. Calling

```
char ch = sentence.charAt(1)
```

doesn't return a space but the second code unit of ⌚. To avoid this problem, you should not use the `char` type. It is too low-level.



**NOTE:** Don't think that you can ignore exotic characters with code units above U+FFFF. Your emoji-loving users may put characters such as ☕ (U+1F37A, beer mug) into strings.

If your code traverses a string, and you want to look at each code point in turn, you can use these statements:

```
int cp = sentence.codePointAt(i);
if (Character.isSupplementaryCodePoint(cp)) i += 2;
else i++;
```

You can move backwards with the following statements:

```
i--;
if (Character.isSurrogate(sentence.charAt(i))) i--;
int cp = sentence.codePointAt(i);
```

Obviously, that is quite painful. An easier way is to use the `codePoints` method that yields a “stream” of int values, one for each code point. (We will discuss streams in Chapter 2 of Volume II.) You can just turn the stream into an array (see Section 3.10, “Arrays,” on p. 108) and traverse that.

```
int[] codePoints = str.codePoints().toArray();
```

Conversely, to turn an array of code points to a string, use a *constructor*. (We discuss constructors and the `new` operator in detail in Chapter 4.)

```
String str = new String(codePoints, 0, codePoints.length);
```



**NOTE:** The virtual machine does not have to implement strings as sequences of code units. In Java 9, strings that hold only single-byte code units use a byte array, and all others a char array.

---

### 3.6.7 The String API

The `String` class in Java contains more than 50 methods. A surprisingly large number of them are sufficiently useful that we can imagine using them frequently. The following API note summarizes the ones we found most useful.

These API notes, found throughout the book, will help you understand the Java Application Programming Interface (API). Each API note starts with the name of a class, such as `java.lang.String`. (The significance of the so-called *package* name `java.lang` is explained in Chapter 4.) The class name is followed by the names, explanations, and parameter descriptions of one or more methods.

We typically do not list all methods of a particular class but select those that are most commonly used and describe them in a concise form. For a full listing, consult the online documentation (see Section 3.6.8, “Reading the Online API Documentation,” on p. 71).

We also list the version number in which a particular class was introduced. If a method has been added later, it has a separate version number.

<b>java.lang.String 1.0</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>char charAt(int index)</code></li></ul>
returns the code unit at the specified location. You probably don't want to call this method unless you are interested in low-level code units.



(Continues)

**java.lang.String 1.0 (Continued)**

- **int codePointAt(int index) 5**  
returns the code point that starts at the specified location.
- **int offsetByCodePoints(int startIndex, int cpCount) 5**  
returns the index of the code point that is cpCount code points away from the code point at startIndex.
- **int compareTo(String other)**  
returns a negative value if the string comes before other in dictionary order, a positive value if the string comes after other in dictionary order, or 0 if the strings are equal.
- **IntStream codePoints() 8**  
returns the code points of this string as a stream. Call toArray to put them in an array.
- **new String(int[] codePoints, int offset, int count) 5**  
constructs a string with the count code points in the array starting at offset.
- **boolean isEmpty()**  
**boolean isBlank() 11**  
returns true if the string is empty or consists of whitespace.
- **boolean equals(Object other)**  
returns true if the string equals other.
- **boolean equalsIgnoreCase(String other)**  
returns true if the string equals other, except for upper/lowercase distinction.
- **boolean startsWith(String prefix)**
- **boolean endsWith(String suffix)**  
returns true if the string starts with prefix or ends with suffix.
- **int indexOf(String str)**
- **int indexOf(String str, int fromIndex)**
- **int indexOf(int cp)**
- **int indexOf(int cp, int fromIndex)**  
returns the start of the first substring equal to the string str or the code point cp, starting at index 0 or at fromIndex, or -1 if str does not occur in this string.

*(Continues)*

**java.lang.String 1.0 (Continued)**

- `int lastIndexOf(String str)`
- `int lastIndexOf(String str, int fromIndex)`
- `int lastIndexOf(int cp)`
- `int lastIndexOf(int cp, int fromIndex)`

returns the start of the last substring equal to the string str or the code point cp, starting at the end of the string or at fromIndex.
- `int length()`

returns the number of code units of the string.
- `int codePointCount(int startIndex, int endIndex) 5`

returns the number of code points between startIndex and endIndex – 1.
- `String replace(CharSequence oldString, CharSequence newString)`

returns a new string that is obtained by replacing all substrings matching oldString in the string with the string newString. You can supply String or StringBuilder objects for the CharSequence parameters.
- `String substring(int beginIndex)`
- `String substring(int beginIndex, int endIndex)`

returns a new string consisting of all code units from beginIndex until the end of the string or until endIndex – 1.
- `String toLowerCase()`
- `String toUpperCase()`

returns a new string containing all characters in the original string, with uppercase characters converted to lowercase, or lowercase characters converted to uppercase.
- `String trim()`  
`String strip() 11`

returns a new string by eliminating all leading and trailing characters that are ≤ U+0020 (trim) or whitespace (strip) in the original string.
- `String join(CharSequence delimiter, CharSequence... elements) 8`

returns a new string joining all elements with the given delimiter.
- `String repeat(int count) 11`

returns a string that repeats this string count times.



**NOTE:** In the API notes, there are a few parameters of type CharSequence. This is an *interface* type to which all strings belong. You will learn about interface types in Chapter 6. For now, you just need to know that you can pass arguments of type String whenever you see a CharSequence parameter.

### 3.6.8 Reading the Online API Documentation

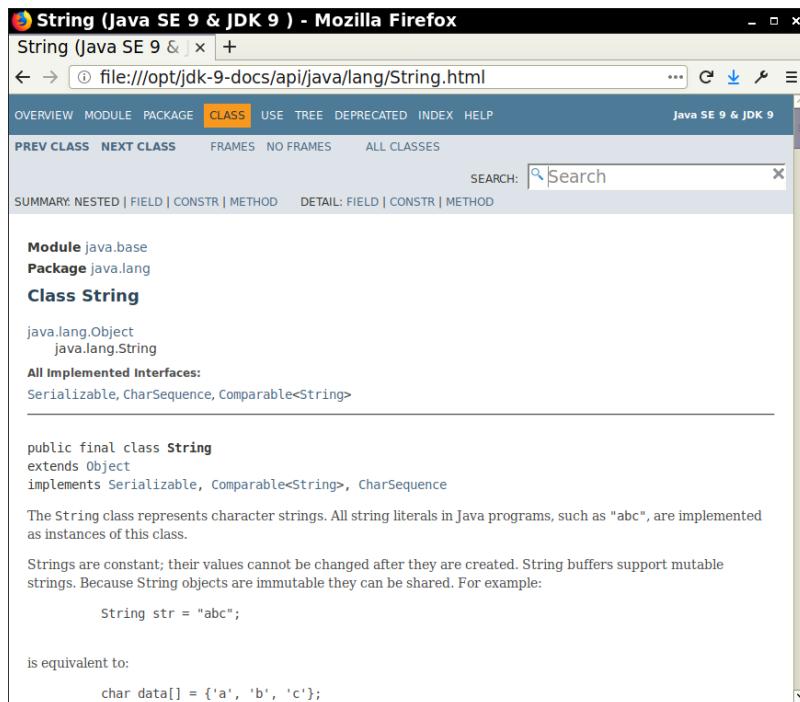
As you just saw, the String class has lots of methods. Furthermore, there are thousands of classes in the standard libraries, with many more methods. It is plainly impossible to remember all useful classes and methods. Therefore, it is essential that you become familiar with the online API documentation that lets you look up all classes and methods in the standard library. You can download the API documentation from Oracle and save it locally, or you can point your browser to <https://docs.oracle.com/en/java/javase/11/docs/api>.

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the Java SE 9 API documentation. The URL in the address bar is <file:///opt/jdk-9-docs/api/overview-summary.html>. The page title is "Overview (Java SE 9 x +)". The search bar at the top right contains the text "String". A dropdown menu titled "Types" is open, showing a list of classes related to "String". Below the search bar, there's a navigation menu with links like OVERVIEW, MODULE, PACKAGE, CLASS, USE, TREE, DEPRECATED, INDEX, and HELP. The "OVERVIEW" tab is selected. On the left side, there's a sidebar with sections for Java SE, JDK, and JavaFX, each providing a brief description of its purpose. At the bottom, there's a table titled "Java SE" with columns for "Module" and "Description".

Module	Description
java.activation	Defines the Java Activation Framework API.
java.base	Defines the Java SE Platform Core API.
java.compiler	Defines the Java Language Model, Annotation Processing, and Java Compiler APIs.

**Figure 3.2** The Java API documentation

As of Java 9, the API documentation has a search box (see Figure 3.2). Older versions have frames with lists of packages and classes. You can still get those lists by clicking on the Frames menu item. For example, to get more information on the methods of the `String` class, type “`String`” into the search box and select the type `java.lang.String`, or locate the link in the frame with class names and click it. You get the class description, as shown in Figure 3.3.



**Figure 3.3** Class description for the `String` class

When you scroll down, you reach a summary of all methods, sorted in alphabetical order (see Figure 3.4). Click on any method name for a detailed description of that method (see Figure 3.5). For example, if you click on the `compareToIgnoreCase` link, you'll get the description of the `compareToIgnoreCase` method.



**TIP:** If you have not already done so, download the JDK documentation, as described in Chapter 2. Bookmark the `jdk-11-docs/index.html` page in your browser right now.

---

**Method Summary**

All Methods	Static Methods	Instance Methods	Concrete Methods
<b>Deprecated Methods</b>			
Modifier and Type	Method	Description	
char	charAt(int index)	Returns the char value at the specified index.	
InputStream	chars()	Returns a stream of int zero-extending the char values from this sequence.	
int	codePointAt(int index)	Returns the character (Unicode code point) at the specified index.	
int	codePointBefore(int index)	Returns the character (Unicode code point) before the specified index.	
int	codePointCount(int beginIndex, int endIndex)	Returns the number of Unicode code points in the specified text range of this String.	
InputStream	codePoints()	Returns a stream of code point values from this sequence.	
int	compareTo(String anotherString)	Compares two strings lexicographically.	

**Figure 3.4** Method summary of the String class

**compareToIgnoreCase**

```
public int compareToIgnoreCase(String str)
```

Compares two strings lexicographically, ignoring case differences. This method returns an integer whose sign is that of calling compareTo with normalized versions of the strings where case differences have been eliminated by calling Character.toLowerCase(Character.toUpperCase(character)) on each character.

Note that this method does not take locale into account, and will result in an unsatisfactory ordering for certain locales. The Collator class provides locale-sensitive comparison.

**Parameters:**  
str - the String to be compared.

**Returns:**  
a negative integer, zero, or a positive integer as the specified String is greater than, equal to, or less than this String, ignoring case considerations.

**Since:**  
1.2

**See Also:**  
Collator

**Figure 3.5** Detailed description of a String method

### 3.6.9 Building Strings

Occasionally, you need to build up strings from shorter strings, such as keystrokes or words from a file. It would be inefficient to use string concatenation for this purpose. Every time you concatenate strings, a new String object is constructed. This is time consuming and wastes memory. Using the StringBuilder class avoids this problem.

Follow these steps if you need to build a string from many small pieces. First, construct an empty string builder:

```
StringBuilder builder = new StringBuilder();
```

Each time you need to add another part, call the `append` method.

```
builder.append(ch); // appends a single character  
builder.append(str); // appends a string
```

When you are done building the string, call the `toString` method. You will get a String object with the character sequence contained in the builder.

```
String completedString = builder.toString();
```



**NOTE:** The `StringBuilder` class was introduced in Java 5. Its predecessor, `StringBuffer`, is slightly less efficient, but it allows multiple threads to add or remove characters. If all string editing happens in a single thread (which is usually the case), you should use `StringBuilder` instead. The APIs of both classes are identical.

---

The following API notes contain the most important methods for the `StringBuilder` class.

#### `java.lang.StringBuilder` 5

- `StringBuilder()`  
constructs an empty string builder.
- `int length()`  
returns the number of code units of the builder or buffer.
- `StringBuilder append(String str)`  
appends a string and returns this.

(Continues)

**java.lang.StringBuilder 5 (Continued)**

- `StringBuilder append(char c)`  
appends a code unit and returns this.
- `StringBuilder appendCodePoint(int cp)`  
appends a code point, converting it into one or two code units, and returns this.
- `void setCharAt(int i, char c)`  
sets the *i*th code unit to *c*.
- `StringBuilder insert(int offset, String str)`  
inserts a string at position *offset* and returns this.
- `StringBuilder insert(int offset, char c)`  
inserts a code unit at position *offset* and returns this.
- `StringBuilder delete(int startIndex, int endIndex)`  
deletes the code units with offsets *startIndex* to *endIndex* – 1 and returns this.
- `String toString()`  
returns a string with the same data as the builder or buffer contents.

## 3.7 Input and Output

To make our example programs more interesting, we want to accept input and properly format the program output. Of course, modern programs use a GUI for collecting user input. However, programming such an interface requires more tools and techniques than we have at our disposal at this time. Our first order of business is to become more familiar with the Java programming language, so we use the humble console for input and output.

### 3.7.1 Reading Input

You saw that it is easy to print output to the “standard output stream” (that is, the console window) just by calling `System.out.println`. Reading from the “standard input stream” `System.in` isn’t quite as simple. To read console input, you first construct a `Scanner` that is attached to `System.in`:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
```

(We discuss constructors and the `new` operator in detail in Chapter 4.)

Now you can use the various methods of the `Scanner` class to read input. For example, the `nextLine` method reads a line of input.

```
System.out.print("What is your name? ");
String name = in.nextLine();
```

Here, we use the `nextLine` method because the input might contain spaces. To read a single word (delimited by whitespace), call

```
String firstName = in.next();
```

To read an integer, use the `nextInt` method.

```
System.out.print("How old are you? ");
int age = in.nextInt();
```

Similarly, the `nextDouble` method reads the next floating-point number.

The program in Listing 3.2 asks for the user's name and age and then prints a message like

```
Hello, Cay. Next year, you'll be 57
```

Finally, note the line

```
import java.util.*;
```

at the beginning of the program. The `Scanner` class is defined in the `java.util` package. Whenever you use a class that is not defined in the basic `java.lang` package, you need to use an `import` directive. We look at packages and `import` directives in more detail in Chapter 4.

---

### Listing 3.2 InputTest/InputTest.java

---

```
1 import java.util.*;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates console input.
5  * @version 1.10 2004-02-10
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class InputTest
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
12         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
13
14         // get first input
15         System.out.print("What is your name? ");
16         String name = in.nextLine();
```

```
17     // get second input
18     System.out.print("How old are you? ");
19     int age = in.nextInt();
20
21
22     // display output on console
23     System.out.println("Hello, " + name + ". Next year, you'll be " + (age + 1));
24 }
25 }
```



**NOTE:** The Scanner class is not suitable for reading a password from a console since the input is plainly visible to anyone. Java 6 introduces a Console class specifically for this purpose. To read a password, use the following code:

```
Console cons = System.console();
String username = cons.readLine("User name: ");
char[] passwd = cons.readPassword("Password: ");
```

For security reasons, the password is returned in an array of characters rather than a string. After you are done processing the password, you should immediately overwrite the array elements with a filler value. (Array processing is discussed in Section 3.10, “Arrays,” on p. 108.)

Input processing with a Console object is not as convenient as with a Scanner. You must read the input a line at a time. There are no methods for reading individual words or numbers.

#### java.util.Scanner 5

- `Scanner(InputStream in)`  
constructs a Scanner object from the given input stream.
- `String nextLine()`  
reads the next line of input.
- `String next()`  
reads the next word of input (delimited by whitespace).
- `int nextInt()`
- `double nextDouble()`  
reads and converts the next character sequence that represents an integer or floating-point number.
- `boolean hasNext()`  
tests whether there is another word in the input.

(Continues)

**java.util.Scanner 5 (Continued)**

- `boolean hasNextInt()`
- `boolean hasNextDouble()`

tests whether the next character sequence represents an integer or floating-point number.

**java.lang.System 1.0**

- `static Console console() 6`

returns a `Console` object for interacting with the user through a console window if such interaction is possible, `null` otherwise. A `Console` object is available for any program that is launched in a console window. Otherwise, the availability is system-dependent.

**java.io.Console 6**

- `static char[] readPassword(String prompt, Object... args)`
- `static String readLine(String prompt, Object... args)`

displays the prompt and reads the user input until the end of the input line. The `args` parameters can be used to supply formatting arguments, as described in the next section.

### 3.7.2 Formatting Output

You can print a number `x` to the console with the statement `System.out.print(x)`. That command will print `x` with the maximum number of nonzero digits for that type. For example,

```
double x = 10000.0 / 3.0;  
System.out.print(x);
```

prints

3333.333333333333

That is a problem if you want to display, for example, dollars and cents.

In early versions of Java, formatting numbers was a bit of a hassle. Fortunately, Java 5 brought back the venerable `printf` method from the C library. For example, the call

```
System.out.printf("%8.2f", x);
```

prints `x` with a *field width* of 8 characters and a *precision* of 2 characters. That is, the printout contains a leading space and the seven characters

```
3333.33
```

You can supply multiple parameters to `printf`. For example:

```
System.out.printf("Hello, %s. Next year, you'll be %d", name, age);
```

Each of the *format specifiers* that start with a % character is replaced with the corresponding argument. The *conversion character* that ends a format specifier indicates the type of the value to be formatted: `f` is a floating-point number, `s` a string, and `d` a decimal integer. Table 3.5 shows all conversion characters.

**Table 3.5** Conversions for `printf`

Conversion Character	Type	Example
<code>d</code>	Decimal integer	159
<code>x</code>	Hexadecimal integer	9f
<code>o</code>	Octal integer	237
<code>f</code>	Fixed-point floating-point	15.9
<code>e</code>	Exponential floating-point	1.59e+01
<code>g</code>	General floating-point (the shorter of e and f)	—
<code>a</code>	Hexadecimal floating-point	0x1.fccdp3
<code>s</code>	String	Hello
<code>c</code>	Character	H
<code>b</code>	boolean	true
<code>h</code>	Hash code	42628b2
<code>Tx</code> or <code>Tx</code>	Date and time (T forces uppercase)	Obsolete, use the <code>java.time</code> classes instead—see Chapter 6 of Volume II
<code>%</code>	The percent symbol	%
<code>n</code>	The platform-dependent line separator	—

In addition, you can specify *flags* that control the appearance of the formatted output. Table 3.6 shows all flags. For example, the comma flag adds group separators. That is,

```
System.out.printf("%.2f", 10000.0 / 3.0);
```

prints

3,333.33

You can use multiple flags, for example "%,(.2f" to use group separators and enclose negative numbers in parentheses.

**Table 3.6** Flags for printf

Flag	Purpose	Example
+	Prints sign for positive and negative numbers.	+3333.33
space	Adds a space before positive numbers.	3333.33
0	Adds leading zeroes.	003333.33
-	Left-justifies field.	3333.33
(	Encloses negative numbers in parentheses.	(3333.33)
,	Adds group separators.	3,333.33
# (for f format)	Always includes a decimal point.	3,333.
# (for x or o format)	Adds 0x or 0 prefix.	0xcafe
\$	Specifies the index of the argument to be formatted; for example, %1\$d %1\$x prints the first argument in decimal and hexadecimal.	159 9F
<	Formats the same value as the previous specification; for example, %d %<x prints the same number in decimal and hexadecimal.	159 9F



**NOTE:** You can use the s conversion to format arbitrary objects. If an arbitrary object implements the Formattable interface, the object's formatTo method is invoked. Otherwise, the toString method is invoked to turn the object into a string. We discuss the toString method in Chapter 5 and interfaces in Chapter 6.

---

You can use the static String.format method to create a formatted string without printing it:

```
String message = String.format("Hello, %s. Next year, you'll be %d", name, age);
```

In the interest of completeness, we briefly discuss the date and time formatting options of the `printf` method. For new code, you should use the methods of the `java.time` package described in Chapter 6 of Volume II. But you may encounter the `Date` class and the associated formatting options in legacy code. The format consists of two letters, starting with t and ending in one of the letters of Table 3.7; for example,

```
System.out.printf("%tc", new Date());
```

prints the current date and time in the format

```
Mon Feb 09 18:05:19 PST 2015
```

**Table 3.7** Date and Time Conversion Characters

Conversion Character	Type	Example
c	Complete date and time	Mon Feb 09 18:05:19 PST 2015
F	ISO 8601 date	2015-02-09
D	U.S. formatted date (month/day/year)	02/09/2015
T	24-hour time	18:05:19
r	12-hour time	06:05:19 pm
R	24-hour time, no seconds	18:05
Y	Four-digit year (with leading zeroes)	2015
y	Last two digits of the year (with leading zeroes)	15
C	First two digits of the year (with leading zeroes)	20
B	Full month name	February
b or h	Abbreviated month name	Feb
m	Two-digit month (with leading zeroes)	02
d	Two-digit day (with leading zeroes)	09
e	Two-digit day (without leading zeroes)	9
A	Full weekday name	Monday

(Continues)

**Table 3.7** (Continued)

Conversion Character	Type	Example
a	Abbreviated weekday name	Mon
j	Three-digit day of year (with leading zeroes), between 001 and 366	069
H	Two-digit hour (with leading zeroes), between 00 and 23	18
k	Two-digit hour (without leading zeroes), between 0 and 23	18
I	Two-digit hour (with leading zeroes), between 01 and 12	06
l	Two-digit hour (without leading zeroes), between 1 and 12	6
M	Two-digit minutes (with leading zeroes)	05
S	Two-digit seconds (with leading zeroes)	19
L	Three-digit milliseconds (with leading zeroes)	047
N	Nine-digit nanoseconds (with leading zeroes)	047000000
p	Morning or afternoon marker	pm
z	RFC 822 numeric offset from GMT	-0800
Z	Time zone	PST
s	Seconds since 1970–01–01 00:00:00 GMT	1078884319
Q	Milliseconds since 1970–01–01 00:00:00 GMT	1078884319047

As you can see in Table 3.7, some of the formats yield only a part of a given date—for example, just the day or just the month. It would be a bit silly if you had to supply the date multiple times to format each part. For that reason, a format string can indicate the *index* of the argument to be formatted. The index must immediately follow the %, and it must be terminated by a \$. For example,

```
System.out.printf("%1$s %2$tB %2$te, %2$tY", "Due date:", new Date());
```

prints

Due date: February 9, 2015

Alternatively, you can use the < flag. It indicates that the same argument as in the preceding format specification should be used again. That is, the statement

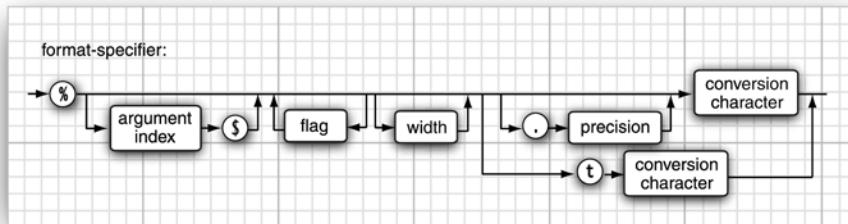
```
System.out.printf("%s %tB %<te, %<tY", "Due date:", new Date());
```

yields the same output as the preceding statement.



**CAUTION:** Argument index values start with 1, not with 0: %\$1. . . formats the first argument. This avoids confusion with the 0 flag.

You have now seen all features of the printf method. Figure 3.6 shows a syntax diagram for format specifiers.



**Figure 3.6** Format specifier syntax



**NOTE:** The formatting of numbers and dates is *locale-specific*. For example, in Germany, the group separator is a period, not a comma, and Monday is formatted as Montag. Chapter 7 of Volume II shows how to control the international behavior of your applications.

### 3.7.3 File Input and Output

To read from a file, construct a Scanner object like this:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(Path.of("myfile.txt"), StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
```

If the file name contains backslashes, remember to escape each of them with an additional backslash: "c:\\mydirectory\\myfile.txt".



**NOTE:** Here, we specify the UTF-8 character encoding, which is common (but not universal) for files on the Internet. You need to know the character encoding when you read a text file (see Volume II, Chapter 2 for more information). If you omit the character encoding, then the “default encoding” of the computer running the Java program is used. That is not a good idea—the program might act differently depending on where it is run.

---

Now you can read from the file, using any of the `Scanner` methods that we already described.

To write to a file, construct a `PrintWriter` object. In the constructor, supply the file name and the character encoding:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("myfile.txt", StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
```

If the file does not exist, it is created. You can use the `print`, `println`, and `printf` commands as you did when printing to `System.out`.



**CAUTION:** You can construct a `Scanner` with a string parameter, but the scanner interprets the string as data, not a file name. For example, if you call

```
Scanner in = new Scanner("myfile.txt"); // ERROR?
```

then the scanner will see ten characters of data: 'm', 'y', 'f', and so on. That is probably not what was intended in this case.

---



**NOTE:** When you specify a relative file name, such as "myfile.txt", "mydirectory/myfile.txt", or "../myfile.txt", the file is located relative to the directory in which the Java virtual machine was started. If you launched your program from a command shell, by executing

```
java MyProg
```

then the starting directory is the current directory of the command shell. However, if you use an integrated development environment, it controls the starting directory. You can find the directory location with this call:

```
String dir = System.getProperty("user.dir");
```

If you run into grief with locating files, consider using absolute path names such as "c:\\mydirectory\\myfile.txt" or "/home/me/mydirectory/myfile.txt".

---

As you saw, you can access files just as easily as you can use `System.in` and `System.out`. There is just one catch: If you construct a `Scanner` with a file that does not exist or a `PrintWriter` with a file name that cannot be created, an exception occurs. The Java compiler considers these exceptions to be more serious than a “divide by zero” exception, for example. In Chapter 7, you will learn various ways of handling exceptions. For now, you should simply tell the compiler that you are aware of the possibility of an “input/output” exception. You do this by tagging the `main` method with a `throws` clause, like this:

```
public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
{
    Scanner in = new Scanner(Path.of("myfile.txt"), StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
    ...
}
```

You have now seen how to read and write files that contain textual data. For more advanced topics, such as dealing with different character encodings, processing binary data, reading directories, and writing zip files, turn to Chapter 2 of Volume II.



**NOTE:** When you launch a program from a command shell, you can use the redirection syntax of your shell and attach any file to `System.in` and `System.out`:

```
java MyProg < myfile.txt > output.txt
```

Then, you need not worry about handling the `IOException`.

#### java.util.Scanner 5

- `Scanner(Path p, String encoding)`  
constructs a `Scanner` that reads data from the given path, using the given character encoding.
- `Scanner(String data)`  
constructs a `Scanner` that reads data from the given string.

#### java.io.PrintWriter 1.1

- `PrintWriter(String fileName)`  
constructs a `PrintWriter` that writes data to the file with the given file name.

*java.nio.file.Path*

- static Path of(String pathname) 11

constructs a Path from the given path name.

## 3.8 Control Flow

Java, like any programming language, supports both conditional statements and loops to determine control flow. We will start with the conditional statements, then move on to loops, to end with the somewhat cumbersome `switch` statement that you can use to test for many values of a single expression.



**C++ NOTE:** The Java control flow constructs are identical to those in C and C++, with a few exceptions. There is no `goto`, but there is a “labeled” version of `break` that you can use to break out of a nested loop (where, in C, you perhaps would have used a `goto`). Finally, there is a variant of the `for` loop that is similar to the range-based `for` loop in C++ and the `foreach` loop in C#.

### 3.8.1 Block Scope

Before learning about control structures, you need to know more about *blocks*.

A block, or compound statement, consists of a number of Java statements, surrounded by a pair of braces. Blocks define the scope of your variables. A block can be *nested* inside another block. Here is a block that is nested inside the block of the `main` method:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int n;
    . .
    {
        int k;
        .
        } // k is only defined up to here
}
```

You may not declare identically named variables in two nested blocks. For example, the following is an error and will not compile:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int n;
    . . .
```

```
{  
    int k;  
    int n; // ERROR--can't redefine n in inner block  
    ...  
}  
}
```



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, it is possible to redefine a variable inside a nested block. The inner definition then shadows the outer one. This can be a source of programming errors; hence, Java does not allow it.

### 3.8.2 Conditional Statements

The conditional statement in Java has the form

```
if (condition) statement
```

The condition must be surrounded by parentheses.

In Java, as in most programming languages, you will often want to execute multiple statements when a single condition is true. In this case, use a *block statement* that takes the form

```
{  
    statement1  
    statement2  
    ...  
}
```

For example:

```
if (yourSales >= target)  
{  
    performance = "Satisfactory";  
    bonus = 100;  
}
```

In this code all the statements surrounded by the braces will be executed when *yourSales* is greater than or equal to *target* (see Figure 3.7).



**NOTE:** A block (sometimes called a *compound statement*) enables you to have more than one (simple) statement in any Java programming structure that otherwise allows for a single (simple) statement.

The more general conditional in Java looks like this (see Figure 3.8):

```
if (condition) statement1 else statement2
```



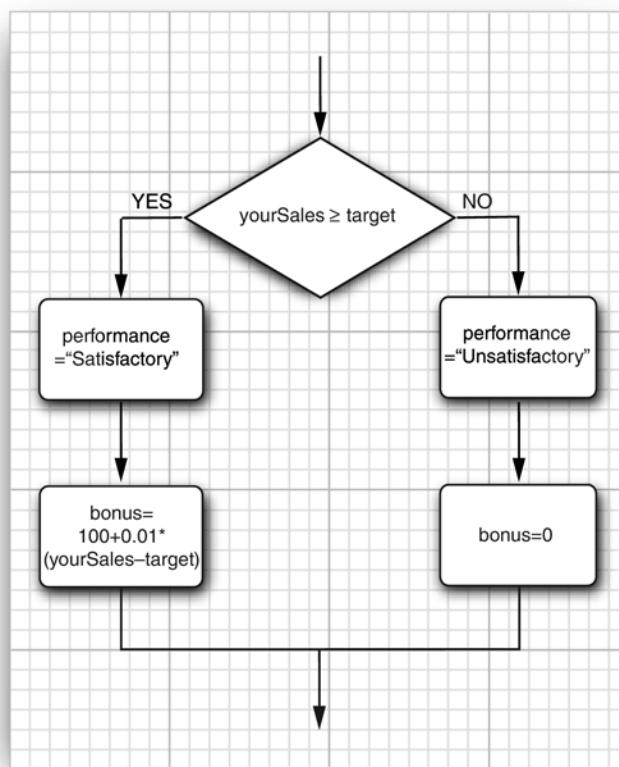
**Figure 3.7** Flowchart for the if statement

For example:

```
if (yourSales >= target)
{
    performance = "Satisfactory";
    bonus = 100 + 0.01 * (yourSales - target);
}
else
{
    performance = "Unsatisfactory";
    bonus = 0;
}
```

The else part is always optional. An else groups with the closest if. Thus, in the statement

```
if (x <= 0) if (x == 0) sign = 0; else sign = -1;
```



**Figure 3.8** Flowchart for the if/else statement

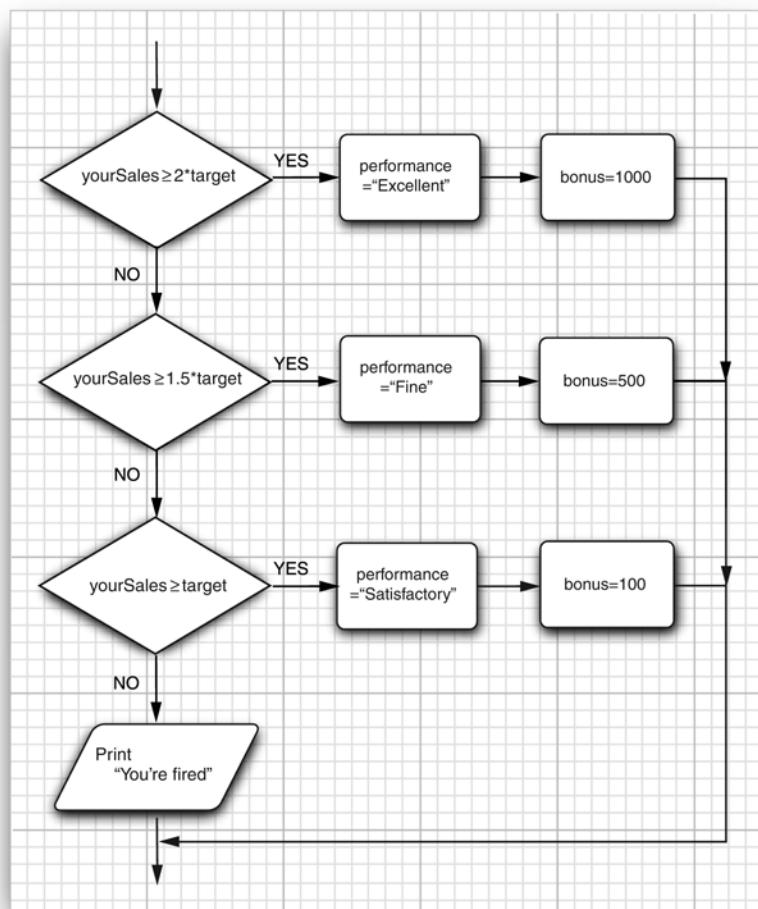
the else belongs to the second if. Of course, it is a good idea to use braces to clarify this code:

```
if (x <= 0) { if (x == 0) sign = 0; else sign = -1; }
```

Repeated if . . . else if . . . alternatives are common (see Figure 3.9). For example:

```
if (yourSales >= 2 * target)
{
    performance = "Excellent";
    bonus = 1000;
}
else if (yourSales >= 1.5 * target)
{
    performance = "Fine";
    bonus = 500;
```

```
    }
else if (yourSales >= target)
{
    performance = "Satisfactory";
    bonus = 100;
}
else
{
    System.out.println("You're fired");
}
```



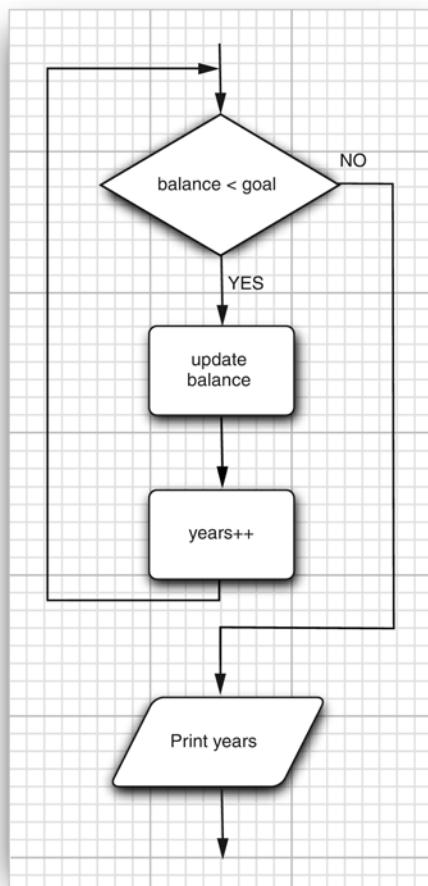
**Figure 3.9** Flowchart for the if/else if (multiple branches)

### 3.8.3 Loops

The `while` loop executes a statement (which may be a block statement) while a condition is true. The general form is

```
while (condition) statement
```

The `while` loop will never execute if the condition is false at the outset (see Figure 3.10).



**Figure 3.10** Flowchart for the `while` statement

The program in Listing 3.3 determines how long it will take to save a specific amount of money for your well-earned retirement, assuming you deposit the same amount of money per year and the money earns a specified interest rate.

In the example, we are incrementing a counter and updating the amount currently accumulated in the body of the loop until the total exceeds the targeted amount.

```
while (balance < goal)
{
    balance += payment;
    double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
    balance += interest;
    years++;
}
System.out.println(years + " years.");
```

(Don't rely on this program to plan for your retirement. We left out a few niceties such as inflation and your life expectancy.)

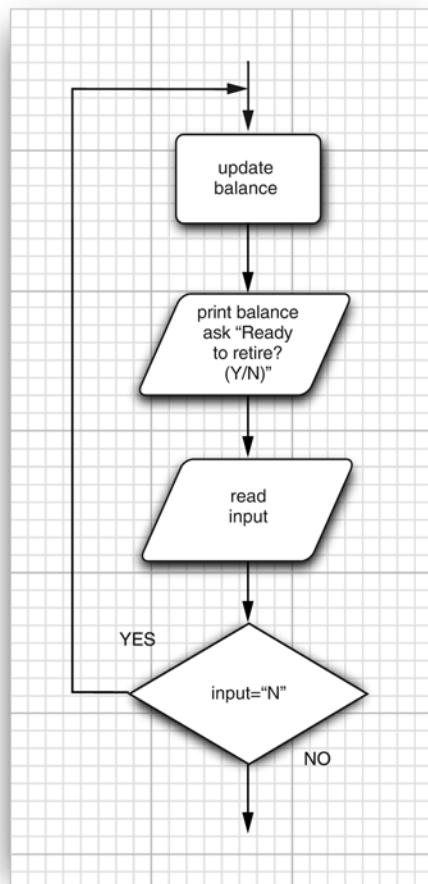
A while loop tests at the top. Therefore, the code in the block might never be executed. If you want to make sure a block is executed at least once, you need to move the test to the bottom, using the do/while loop. Its syntax looks like this:

```
do statement while (condition);
```

This loop executes the statement (which is typically a block) and only then tests the condition. If it's true, it repeats the statement and retests the condition, and so on. The code in Listing 3.4 computes the new balance in your retirement account and then asks if you are ready to retire:

```
do
{
    balance += payment;
    double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
    balance += interest;
    year++;
    // print current balance
    . .
    // ask if ready to retire and get input
    . .
}
while (input.equals("N"));
```

As long as the user answers "N", the loop is repeated (see Figure 3.11). This program is a good example of a loop that needs to be entered at least once, because the user needs to see the balance before deciding whether it is sufficient for retirement.



**Figure 3.11** Flowchart for the do/while statement

**Listing 3.3** Retirement/Retirement.java

```
1 import java.util.*;  
2  
3 /**  
4  * This program demonstrates a <code>while</code> loop.  
5  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10  
6  * @author Cay Horstmann  
7  */  
8 public class Retirement  
9 {
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 3.3** *(Continued)*

```
10  public static void main(String[] args)
11  {
12      // read inputs
13      Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
14
15      System.out.print("How much money do you need to retire? ");
16      double goal = in.nextDouble();
17
18      System.out.print("How much money will you contribute every year? ");
19      double payment = in.nextDouble();
20
21      System.out.print("Interest rate in %: ");
22      double interestRate = in.nextDouble();
23
24      double balance = 0;
25      int years = 0;
26
27      // update account balance while goal isn't reached
28      while (balance < goal)
29      {
30          // add this year's payment and interest
31          balance += payment;
32          double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
33          balance += interest;
34          years++;
35      }
36
37      System.out.println("You can retire in " + years + " years.");
38  }
```

---

**Listing 3.4** Retirement2/Retirement2.java

```
1 import java.util.*;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates a <code>do/while</code> loop.
5  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class Retirement2
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
```

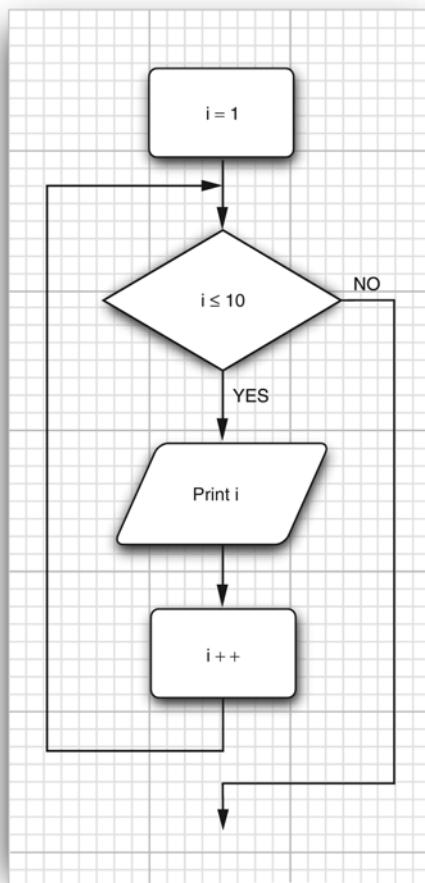
```
12 Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
13
14 System.out.print("How much money will you contribute every year? ");
15 double payment = in.nextDouble();
16
17 System.out.print("Interest rate in %: ");
18 double interestRate = in.nextDouble();
19
20 double balance = 0;
21 int year = 0;
22
23 String input;
24
25 // update account balance while user isn't ready to retire
26 do
27 {
28     // add this year's payment and interest
29     balance += payment;
30     double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
31     balance += interest;
32
33     year++;
34
35     // print current balance
36     System.out.printf("After year %d, your balance is %,.2f\n", year, balance);
37
38     // ask if ready to retire and get input
39     System.out.print("Ready to retire? (Y/N) ");
40     input = in.next();
41 }
42 while (input.equals("N"));
43
44 }
```

### 3.8.4 Determinate Loops

The `for` loop is a general construct to support iteration controlled by a counter or similar variable that is updated after every iteration. As Figure 3.12 shows, the following loop prints the numbers from 1 to 10 on the screen:

```
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
    System.out.println(i);
```

The first slot of the `for` statement usually holds the counter initialization. The second slot gives the condition that will be tested before each new pass through the loop, and the third slot specifies how to update the counter.



**Figure 3.12** Flowchart for the for statement

Although Java, like C++, allows almost any expression in the various slots of a for loop, it is an unwritten rule of good taste that the three slots should only initialize, test, and update the same counter variable. One can write very obscure loops by disregarding this rule.

Even within the bounds of good taste, much is possible. For example, you can have loops that count down:

```
for (int i = 10; i > 0; i--)  
    System.out.println("Counting down . . . " + i);  
    System.out.println("Blastoff!");
```



**CAUTION:** Be careful with testing for equality of floating-point numbers in loops.

A `for` loop like this one

```
for (double x = 0; x != 10; x += 0.1) . . .
```

might never end. Because of roundoff errors, the final value might not be reached exactly. In this example, `x` jumps from 9.9999999999998 to 10.0999999999998 because there is no exact binary representation for 0.1.

When you declare a variable in the first slot of the `for` statement, the scope of that variable extends until the end of the body of the `for` loop.

```
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    . .
}
// i no longer defined here
```

In particular, if you define a variable inside a `for` statement, you cannot use its value outside the loop. Therefore, if you wish to use the final value of a loop counter outside the `for` loop, be sure to declare it outside the loop header.

```
int i;
for (i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    . .
}
// i is still defined here
```

On the other hand, you can define variables with the same name in separate `for` loops:

```
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    . .
}
for (int i = 11; i <= 20; i++) // OK to define another variable named i
{
    . .
}
```

A `for` loop is merely a convenient shortcut for a `while` loop. For example,

```
for (int i = 10; i > 0; i--)
    System.out.println("Counting down . . . " + i);
```

can be rewritten as

```
int i = 10;
while (i > 0)
{
    System.out.println("Counting down . . . " + i);
    i--;
}
```

Listing 3.5 shows a typical example of a `for` loop.

The program computes the odds of winning a lottery. For example, if you must pick six numbers from the numbers 1 to 50 to win, then there are  $(50 \times 49 \times 48 \times 47 \times 46 \times 45)/(1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \times 6)$  possible outcomes, so your chance is 1 in 15,890,700. Good luck!

In general, if you pick  $k$  numbers out of  $n$ , there are

$$\frac{n \times (n - 1) \times (n - 2) \times \dots \times (n - k + 1)}{1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times \dots \times k}$$

possible outcomes. The following `for` loop computes this value:

```
int lotteryOdds = 1;
for (int i = 1; i <= k; i++)
    lotteryOdds = lotteryOdds * (n - i + 1) / i;
```



**NOTE:** See Section 3.10.3, “The ‘for each’ Loop,” on p. 110 for a description of the “generalized `for` loop” (also called “`for each`” loop) that was added to the Java language in Java 5.

---

---

### Listing 3.5 LotteryOdds/LotteryOdds.java

---

```
1 import java.util.*;
2 /**
3  * This program demonstrates a <code>for</code> loop.
4  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6  */
7
8 public class LotteryOdds
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
12         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
13
14         System.out.print("How many numbers do you need to draw? ");
15         int k = in.nextInt();
```

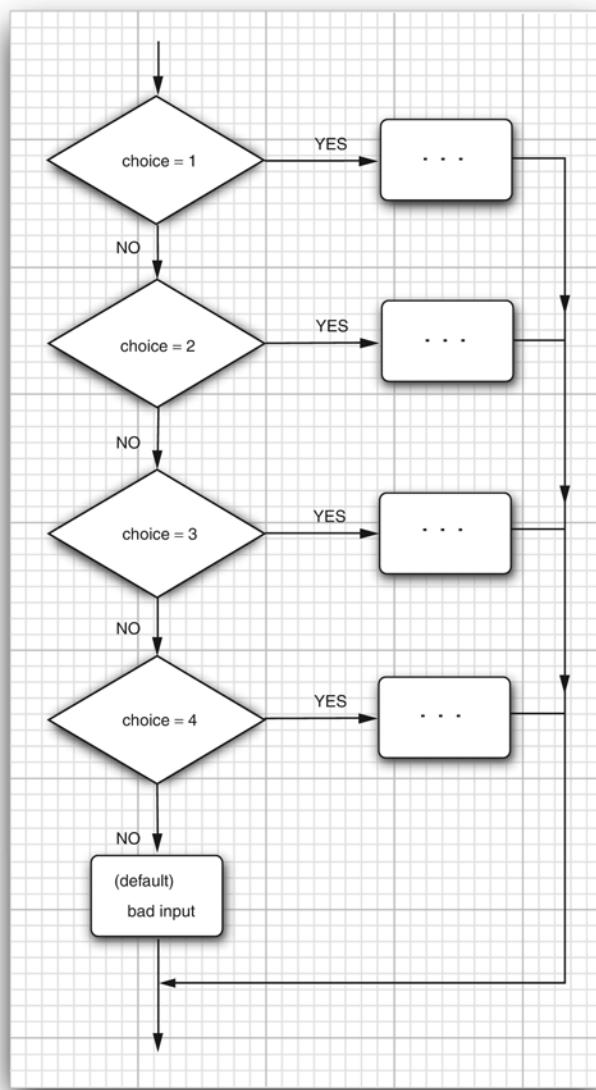
```
16     System.out.print("What is the highest number you can draw? ");
17     int n = in.nextInt();
18
19
20     /*
21      * compute binomial coefficient n*(n-1)*(n-2)*...*(n-k+1)/(1*2*3*...*k)
22      */
23
24     int lotteryOdds = 1;
25     for (int i = 1; i <= k; i++)
26         lotteryOdds = lotteryOdds * (n - i + 1) / i;
27
28     System.out.println("Your odds are 1 in " + lotteryOdds + ". Good luck!");
29 }
30 }
```

### 3.8.5 Multiple Selections—The switch Statement

The if/else construct can be cumbersome when you have to deal with multiple selections with many alternatives. Java has a switch statement that is exactly like the switch statement in C and C++, warts and all.

For example, if you set up a menu system with four alternatives like that in Figure 3.13, you could use code that looks like this:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
System.out.print("Select an option (1, 2, 3, 4) ");
int choice = in.nextInt();
switch (choice)
{
    case 1:
        . . .
        break;
    case 2:
        . . .
        break;
    case 3:
        . . .
        break;
    case 4:
        . . .
        break;
    default:
        // bad input
        . . .
        break;
}
```



**Figure 3.13** Flowchart for the `switch` statement

Execution starts at the case label that matches the value on which the selection is performed and continues until the next break or the end of the switch. If none of the case labels match, then the default clause is executed, if it is present.



**CAUTION:** It is possible for multiple alternatives to be triggered. If you forget to add a break at the end of an alternative, execution falls through to the next alternative! This behavior is plainly dangerous and a common cause for errors. For that reason, we never use the switch statement in our programs.

If you like the switch statement better than we do, consider compiling your code with the -Xlint:fallthrough option, like this:

```
javac -Xlint:fallthrough Test.java
```

Then the compiler will issue a warning whenever an alternative does not end with a break statement.

If you actually want to use the fallthrough behavior, tag the surrounding method with the annotation `@SuppressWarnings("fallthrough")`. Then no warnings will be generated for that method. (An annotation is a mechanism for supplying information to the compiler or a tool that processes Java source or class files. We discuss annotations in detail in Chapter 8 of Volume II.)

---

A case label can be

- A constant expression of type char, byte, short, or int
- An enumerated constant
- Starting with Java 7, a string literal

For example,

```
String input = . . .;
switch (input.toLowerCase())
{
    case "yes": // OK since Java 7
        .
        .
        break;
    .
}
```

When you use the switch statement with enumerated constants, you need not supply the name of the enumeration in each label—it is deduced from the switch value. For example:

```
Size sz = . . .;
switch (sz)
{
    case SMALL: // no need to use Size.SMALL
        .
        .
        break;
    .
}
```

### 3.8.6 Statements That Break Control Flow

Although the designers of Java kept `goto` as a reserved word, they decided not to include it in the language. In general, `goto` statements are considered poor style. Some programmers feel the anti-`goto` forces have gone too far (see, for example, the famous article of Donald Knuth called “Structured Programming with `goto` statements”). They argue that unrestricted use of `goto` is error-prone but that an occasional jump *out of a loop* is beneficial. The Java designers agreed and even added a new statement, the labeled `break`, to support this programming style.

Let us first look at the unlabeled `break` statement. The same `break` statement that you use to exit a `switch` can also be used to break out of a `loop`. For example:

```
while (years <= 100)
{
    balance += payment;
    double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
    balance += interest;
    if (balance >= goal) break;
    years++;
}
```

Now the loop is exited if either `years > 100` occurs at the top of the loop or `balance >= goal` occurs in the middle of the loop. Of course, you could have computed the same value for `years` without a `break`, like this:

```
while (years <= 100 && balance < goal)
{
    balance += payment;
    double interest = balance * interestRate / 100;
    balance += interest;
    if (balance < goal)
        years++;
}
```

But note that the test `balance < goal` is repeated twice in this version. To avoid this repeated test, some programmers prefer the `break` statement.

Unlike C++, Java also offers a *labeled break* statement that lets you break out of multiple nested loops. Occasionally something weird happens inside a deeply nested loop. In that case, you may want to break completely out of all the nested loops. It is inconvenient to program that simply by adding extra conditions to the various loop tests.

Here's an example that shows the break statement at work. Notice that the label must precede the outermost loop out of which you want to break. It also must be followed by a colon.

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
int n;
read_data:
while (. . .) // this loop statement is tagged with the label
{
    . .
    for (. . .) // this inner loop is not labeled
    {
        System.out.print("Enter a number >= 0: ");
        n = in.nextInt();
        if (n < 0) // should never happen-can't go on
            break read_data;
        // break out of read_data loop
    }
}
// this statement is executed immediately after the labeled break
if (n < 0) // check for bad situation
{
    // deal with bad situation
}
else
{
    // carry out normal processing
}
```

If there is a bad input, the labeled break moves past the end of the labeled block. As with any use of the `break` statement, you then need to test whether the loop exited normally or as a result of a break.



**NOTE:** Curiously, you can apply a label to any statement, even an `if` statement or a block statement, like this:

```
label:
{
    . .
    if (condition) break label; // exits block
    . .
}
// jumps here when the break statement executes
```

Thus, if you are lustng after a `goto` but you can place a block that ends just before the place to which you want to jump, you can use a `break` statement! Naturally, we don't recommend this approach. Note, however, that you can only jump *out of* a block, never *into* a block.

---

Finally, there is a `continue` statement that, like the `break` statement, breaks the regular flow of control. The `continue` statement transfers control to the header of the innermost enclosing loop. Here is an example:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
while (sum < goal)
{
    System.out.print("Enter a number: ");
    n = in.nextInt();
    if (n < 0) continue;
    sum += n; // not executed if n < 0
}
```

If `n < 0`, then the `continue` statement jumps immediately to the loop header, skipping the remainder of the current iteration.

If the `continue` statement is used in a `for` loop, it jumps to the “update” part of the `for` loop. For example:

```
for (count = 1; count <= 100; count++)
{
    System.out.print("Enter a number, -1 to quit: ");
    n = in.nextInt();
    if (n < 0) continue;
    sum += n; // not executed if n < 0
}
```

If `n < 0`, then the `continue` statement jumps to the `count++` statement.

There is also a labeled form of the `continue` statement that jumps to the header of the loop with the matching label.



**TIP:** Many programmers find the `break` and `continue` statements confusing. These statements are entirely optional—you can always express the same logic without them. In this book, we never use `break` or `continue`.

---

## 3.9 Big Numbers

If the precision of the basic integer and floating-point types is not sufficient, you can turn to a couple of handy classes in the `java.math` package: `BigInteger` and `BigDecimal`. These are classes for manipulating numbers with an arbitrarily long sequence of digits. The `BigInteger` class implements arbitrary-precision integer arithmetic, and `BigDecimal` does the same for floating-point numbers.

Use the static `valueOf` method to turn an ordinary number into a big number:

```
BigInteger a = BigInteger.valueOf(100);
```

For longer numbers, use a constructor with a string parameter:

```
BigInteger reallyBig  
= new BigInteger("222232244629420445529739893461909967206666939096499764990979600");
```

There are also constants `BigInteger.ZERO`, `BigInteger.ONE`, `BigInteger.TEN`, and, since Java 9, `BigInteger.TWO`.

Unfortunately, you cannot use the familiar mathematical operators such as `+` and `*` to combine big numbers. Instead, you must use methods such as `add` and `multiply` in the big number classes.

```
BigInteger c = a.add(b); // c = a + b  
BigInteger d = c.multiply(b.add(BigInteger.valueOf(2))); // d = c * (b + 2)
```



**C++ NOTE:** Unlike C++, Java has no programmable operator overloading.

There was no way for the programmers of the `BigInteger` class to redefine the `+` and `*` operators to give the `add` and `multiply` operations of the `BigInteger` classes. The language designers did overload the `+` operator to denote concatenation of strings. They chose not to overload other operators, and they did not give Java programmers the opportunity to overload operators in their own classes.

Listing 3.6 shows a modification of the lottery odds program of Listing 3.5, updated to work with big numbers. For example, if you are invited to participate in a lottery in which you need to pick 60 numbers out of a possible 490 numbers, you can use this program to tell you your odds of winning. They are 1 in 71639584346199555741511622254009293341171761278926349349351013459481104668848. Good luck!

The program in Listing 3.5 computed the statement

```
lotteryOdds = lotteryOdds * (n - i + 1) / i;
```

When big numbers are used, the equivalent statement becomes

```
lotteryOdds  
= lotteryOdds.multiply(BigInteger.valueOf(n - i + 1)).divide(BigInteger.valueOf(i));
```

---

#### **Listing 3.6** BigIntegerTest/BigIntegerTest.java

---

```
1 import java.math.*;  
2 import java.util.*;  
3  
4 /**  
5  * This program uses big numbers to compute the odds of winning the grand prize in a lottery.  
6  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10  
7  * @author Cay Horstmann  
8 */  
9 public class BigIntegerTest  
10 {  
11     public static void main(String[] args)  
12     {  
13         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);  
14  
15         System.out.print("How many numbers do you need to draw? ");  
16         int k = in.nextInt();  
17  
18         System.out.print("What is the highest number you can draw? ");  
19         int n = in.nextInt();  
20  
21         /*  
22          * compute binomial coefficient n*(n-1)*(n-2)*...*(n-k+1)/(1*2*3*...*k)  
23         */  
24  
25         BigInteger lotteryOdds = BigInteger.valueOf(1);  
26  
27         for (int i = 1; i <= k; i++)  
28             lotteryOdds = lotteryOdds.multiply(BigInteger.valueOf(n - i + 1)).divide(  
29                 BigInteger.valueOf(i));  
30  
31         System.out.println("Your odds are 1 in " + lotteryOdds + ". Good luck!");  
32     }  
33 }
```

---

**java.math.BigInteger 1.1**

- BigInteger add(BigInteger other)
  - BigInteger subtract(BigInteger other)
  - BigInteger multiply(BigInteger other)
  - BigInteger divide(BigInteger other)
  - BigInteger mod(BigInteger other)
- returns the sum, difference, product, quotient, and remainder of this big integer and other.
- BigInteger sqrt() 9
- yields the square root of this BigInteger.
- int compareTo(BigInteger other)
- returns 0 if this big integer equals other, a negative result if this big integer is less than other, and a positive result otherwise.
- static BigInteger valueOf(long x)
- returns a big integer whose value equals x.

**java.math.BigDecimal 1.1**

- BigDecimal add(BigDecimal other)
- BigDecimal subtract(BigDecimal other)
- BigDecimal multiply(BigDecimal other)
- BigDecimal divide(BigDecimal other)
- BigDecimal divide(BigDecimal other, RoundingMode mode) 5

returns the sum, difference, product, or quotient of this big decimal and other. The first divide method throws an exception if the quotient does not have a finite decimal expansion. To obtain a rounded result, use the second method. The mode RoundingMode.HALF\_UP is the rounding mode that you learned in school: round down the digits 0 to 4, round up the digits 5 to 9. It is appropriate for routine calculations. See the API documentation for other rounding modes.

- int compareTo(BigDecimal other)
- returns 0 if this big decimal equals other, a negative result if this big decimal is less than other, and a positive result otherwise.
- static BigDecimal valueOf(long x)
  - static BigDecimal valueOf(long x, int scale)
- returns a big decimal whose value equals x or  $x / 10^{\text{scale}}$ .

## 3.10 Arrays

Arrays hold sequences of values of the same type. In the following sections, you will see how to work with arrays in Java.

### 3.10.1 Declaring Arrays

An array is a data structure that stores a collection of values of the same type. You access each individual value through an integer *index*. For example, if *a* is an array of integers, then *a[i]* is the *i*th integer in the array.

Declare an array variable by specifying the array type—which is the element type followed by `[]`—and the array variable name. For example, here is the declaration of an array *a* of integers:

```
int[] a;
```

However, this statement only declares the variable *a*. It does not yet initialize *a* with an actual array. Use the `new` operator to create the array.

```
int[] a = new int[100]; // or var a = new int[100];
```

This statement declares and initializes an array of 100 integers.

The array length need not be a constant: `new int[n]` creates an array of length *n*.

Once you create an array, you cannot change its length (although you can, of course, change an individual array element). If you frequently need to expand the length of arrays while your program is running, you should use *array lists*, which are covered in Chapter 5.



**NOTE:** You can define an array variable either as

```
int[] a;
```

or as

```
int a[];
```

Most Java programmers prefer the former style because it neatly separates the type `int[]` (integer array) from the variable name.

---

Java has a shortcut for creating an array object and supplying initial values:

```
int[] smallPrimes = { 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13 };
```

Notice that you do not use `new` with this syntax, and you don't specify the length.

A comma after the last value is allowed, which can be convenient for an array to which you keep adding values over time:

```
String[] authors = {  
    "James Gosling",  
    "Bill Joy",  
    "Guy Steele",  
    // add more names here and put a comma after each name  
};
```

You can declare an *anonymous array*:

```
new int[] { 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37 }
```

This expression allocates a new array and fills it with the values inside the braces. It counts the number of initial values and sets the array size accordingly. You can use this syntax to reinitialize an array without creating a new variable. For example,

```
smallPrimes = new int[] { 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37 };
```

is shorthand for

```
int[] anonymous = { 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37 };  
smallPrimes = anonymous;
```



**NOTE:** It is legal to have arrays of length 0. Such an array can be useful if you write a method that computes an array result and the result happens to be empty. Construct an array of length 0 as

```
new elementType[0]
```

or

```
new elementType[] {}
```

Note that an array of length 0 is not the same as `null`.

### 3.10.2 Accessing Array Elements

The array elements are *numbered from 0 to 99* (and not 1 to 100). Once the array is created, you can fill the elements in an array, for example, by using a loop:

```
int[] a = new int[100];  
for (int i = 0; i < 100; i++)  
    a[i] = i; // fills the array with numbers 0 to 99
```

When you create an array of numbers, all elements are initialized with zero. Arrays of `boolean` are initialized with `false`. Arrays of objects are initialized with

the special value `null`, which indicates that they do not (yet) hold any objects. This can be surprising for beginners. For example,

```
String[] names = new String[10];
```

creates an array of ten strings, all of which are `null`. If you want the array to hold empty strings, you must supply them:

```
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) names[i] = "";
```



**CAUTION:** If you construct an array with 100 elements and then try to access the element `a[100]` (or any other index outside the range from 0 to 99), an “array index out of bounds” exception will occur.

---

To find the number of elements of an array, use `array.length`. For example:

```
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    System.out.println(a[i]);
```

### 3.10.3 The “for each” Loop

Java has a powerful looping construct that allows you to loop through each element in an array (or any other collection of elements) without having to fuss with index values.

The *enhanced for* loop

```
for (variable : collection) statement
```

sets the given variable to each element of the collection and then executes the statement (which, of course, may be a block). The *collection* expression must be an array or an object of a class that implements the `Iterable` interface, such as `ArrayList`. We discuss array lists in Chapter 5 and the `Iterable` interface in Chapter 9.

For example,

```
for (int element : a)
    System.out.println(element);
```

prints each element of the array `a` on a separate line.

You should read this loop as “for each element in `a`”. The designers of the Java language considered using keywords, such as `foreach` and `in`. But this loop was a late addition to the Java language, and in the end nobody wanted to break the old code that already contained methods or variables with these names (such as `System.in`).

Of course, you could achieve the same effect with a traditional `for` loop:

```
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    System.out.println(a[i]);
```

However, the “for each” loop is more concise and less error-prone, as you don’t have to worry about those pesky start and end index values.



**NOTE:** The loop variable of the “for each” loop traverses the *elements* of the array, not the index values.

The “for each” loop is a pleasant improvement over the traditional loop if you need to process all elements in a collection. However, there are still plenty of opportunities to use the traditional `for` loop. For example, you might not want to traverse the entire collection, or you may need the index value inside the loop.



**TIP:** There is an even easier way to print all values of an array, using the `toString` method of the `Arrays` class. The call `Arrays.toString(a)` returns a string containing the array elements, enclosed in brackets and separated by commas, such as “[2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13]”. To print the array, simply call

```
System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
```

### 3.10.4 Array Copying

You can copy one array variable into another, but then *both variables refer to the same array*:

```
int[] luckyNumbers = smallPrimes;
luckyNumbers[5] = 12; // now smallPrimes[5] is also 12
```

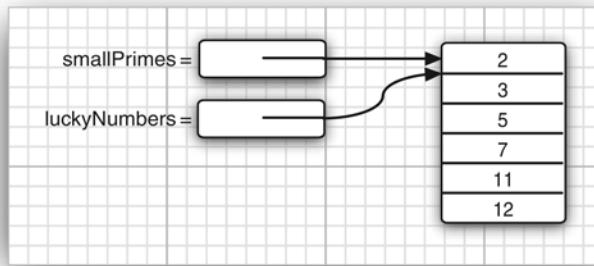
Figure 3.14 shows the result. If you actually want to copy all values of one array into a new array, use the `copyOf` method in the `Arrays` class:

```
int[] copiedLuckyNumbers = Arrays.copyOf(luckyNumbers, luckyNumbers.length);
```

The second parameter is the length of the new array. A common use of this method is to increase the size of an array:

```
luckyNumbers = Arrays.copyOf(luckyNumbers, 2 * luckyNumbers.length);
```

The additional elements are filled with `0` if the array contains numbers, `false` if the array contains `boolean` values. Conversely, if the length is less than the length of the original array, only the initial values are copied.



**Figure 3.14** Copying an array variable



**C++ NOTE:** A Java array is quite different from a C++ array on the stack. It is, however, essentially the same as a pointer to an array allocated on the *heap*. That is,

```
int[] a = new int[100]; // Java
```

is not the same as

```
int a[100]; // C++
```

but rather

```
int* a = new int[100]; // C++
```

In Java, the `[]` operator is predefined to perform *bounds checking*. Furthermore, there is no pointer arithmetic—you can't increment `a` to point to the next element in the array.

---

### 3.10.5 Command-Line Parameters

You have already seen one example of a Java array repeated quite a few times. Every Java program has a `main` method with a `String[] args` parameter. This parameter indicates that the `main` method receives an array of strings—namely, the arguments specified on the command line.

For example, consider this program:

```
public class Message
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        if (args.length == 0 || args[0].equals("-h"))
            System.out.print("Hello,");
```

```
        else if (args[0].equals("-g"))
            System.out.print("Goodbye,");
        // print the other command-line arguments
        for (int i = 1; i < args.length; i++)
            System.out.print(" " + args[i]);
        System.out.println("!");
    }
}
```

If the program is called as

```
java Message -g cruel world
```

then the args array has the following contents:

```
args[0]: "-g"
args[1]: "cruel"
args[2]: "world"
```

The program prints the message

```
Goodbye, cruel world!
```



**C++ NOTE:** In the `main` method of a Java program, the name of the program is not stored in the args array. For example, when you start up a program as

```
java Message -h world
```

from the command line, then `args[0]` will be `"-h"` and not `"Message"` or `"java"`.

### 3.10.6 Array Sorting

To sort an array of numbers, you can use one of the `sort` methods in the `Arrays` class:

```
int[] a = new int[10000];
...
Arrays.sort(a)
```

This method uses a tuned version of the QuickSort algorithm that is claimed to be very efficient on most data sets. The `Arrays` class provides several other convenience methods for arrays that are included in the API notes at the end of this section.

The program in Listing 3.7 puts arrays to work. This program draws a random combination of numbers for a lottery game. For example, if you play a “choose 6 numbers from 49” lottery, the program might print this:

Bet the following combination. It'll make you rich!

4  
7  
8  
19  
30  
44

To select such a random set of numbers, we first fill an array `numbers` with the values 1, 2, . . . , `n`:

```
int[] numbers = new int[n];
for (int i = 0; i < numbers.length; i++)
    numbers[i] = i + 1;
```

A second array holds the numbers to be drawn:

```
int[] result = new int[k];
```

Now we draw `k` numbers. The `Math.random` method returns a random floating-point number that is between 0 (inclusive) and 1 (exclusive). By multiplying the result with `n`, we obtain a random number between 0 and `n - 1`.

```
int r = (int) (Math.random() * n);
```

We set the `i`th result to be the number at that index. Initially, that is just `r + 1`, but as you'll see presently, the contents of the `numbers` array are changed after each draw.

```
result[i] = numbers[r];
```

Now we must be sure never to draw that number again—all lottery numbers must be distinct. Therefore, we overwrite `numbers[r]` with the *last* number in the array and reduce `n` by 1.

```
numbers[r] = numbers[n - 1];
n--;
```

The point is that in each draw we pick an *index*, not the actual value. The index points into an array that contains the values that have not yet been drawn.

After drawing `k` lottery numbers, we sort the `result` array for a more pleasing output:

```
Arrays.sort(result);
for (int r : result)
    System.out.println(r);
```

**Listing 3.7** LotteryDrawing/LotteryDrawing.java

```
1 import java.util.*;
2 /**
3  * This program demonstrates array manipulation.
4  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6  */
7 public class LotteryDrawing
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
12
13        System.out.print("How many numbers do you need to draw? ");
14        int k = in.nextInt();
15
16        System.out.print("What is the highest number you can draw? ");
17        int n = in.nextInt();
18
19        // fill an array with numbers 1 2 3 . . . n
20        int[] numbers = new int[n];
21        for (int i = 0; i < numbers.length; i++)
22            numbers[i] = i + 1;
23
24
25        // draw k numbers and put them into a second array
26        int[] result = new int[k];
27        for (int i = 0; i < result.length; i++)
28        {
29            // make a random index between 0 and n - 1
30            int r = (int) (Math.random() * n);
31
32            // pick the element at the random location
33            result[i] = numbers[r];
34
35            // move the last element into the random location
36            numbers[r] = numbers[n - 1];
37            n--;
38        }
39
40        // print the sorted array
41        Arrays.sort(result);
42        System.out.println("Bet the following combination. It'll make you rich!");
43        for (int r : result)
44            System.out.println(r);
45    }
46 }
```

**java.util.Arrays 1.2**

- static String `toString(xxx[] a)` 5

returns a string with the elements of a, enclosed in brackets and delimited by commas. In this and the following methods, the component type *xxx* of the array can be int, long, short, char, byte, boolean, float, or double.

- static `xxx[] copyOf(xxx[] a, int end)` 6

- static `xxx[] copyOfRange(xxx[] a, int start, int end)` 6

returns an array of the same type as a, of length either end or end – start, filled with the values of a. If end is larger than a.length, the result is padded with 0 or false values.

- static void `sort(xxx[] a)`

sorts the array, using a tuned QuickSort algorithm.

- static int `binarySearch(xxx[] a, xxx v)`

- static int `binarySearch(xxx[] a, int start, int end, xxx v)` 6

uses the binary search algorithm to search for the value v in the sorted array a. If v is found, its index is returned. Otherwise, a negative value r is returned; -r - 1 is the spot at which v should be inserted to keep a sorted.

- static void `fill(xxx[] a, xxx v)`

sets all elements of the array to v.

- static boolean `equals(xxx[] a, xxx[] b)`

returns true if the arrays have the same length and if the elements at corresponding indexes match.

### 3.10.7 Multidimensional Arrays

Multidimensional arrays use more than one index to access array elements. They are used for tables and other more complex arrangements. You can safely skip this section until you have a need for this storage mechanism.

Suppose you want to make a table of numbers that shows how much an investment of \$10,000 will grow under different interest rate scenarios in which interest is paid annually and reinvested (Table 3.8).

You can store this information in a two-dimensional array (matrix), which we call balances.

Declaring a two-dimensional array in Java is simple enough. For example:

```
double[][][] balances;
```

**Table 3.8** Growth of an Investment at Different Interest Rates

<b>10%</b>	<b>11%</b>	<b>12%</b>	<b>13%</b>	<b>14%</b>	<b>15%</b>
10,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00
11,000.00	11,100.00	11,200.00	11,300.00	11,400.00	11,500.00
12,100.00	12,321.00	12,544.00	12,769.00	12,996.00	13,225.00
13,310.00	13,676.31	14,049.28	14,428.97	14,815.44	15,208.75
14,641.00	15,180.70	15,735.19	16,304.74	16,889.60	17,490.06
16,105.10	16,850.58	17,623.42	18,424.35	19,254.15	20,113.57
17,715.61	18,704.15	19,738.23	20,819.52	21,949.73	23,130.61
19,487.17	20,761.60	22,106.81	23,526.05	25,022.69	26,600.20
21,435.89	23,045.38	24,759.63	26,584.44	28,525.86	30,590.23
23,579.48	25,580.37	27,730.79	30,040.42	32,519.49	35,178.76

You cannot use the array until you initialize it. In this case, you can do the initialization as follows:

```
balances = new double[NYEARS][NRATES];
```

In other cases, if you know the array elements, you can use a shorthand notation for initializing a multidimensional array without a call to `new`. For example:

```
int[][] magicSquare =
{
    {16, 3, 2, 13},
    {5, 10, 11, 8},
    {9, 6, 7, 12},
    {4, 15, 14, 1}
};
```

Once the array is initialized, you can access individual elements by supplying two pairs of brackets—for example, `balances[i][j]`.

The example program stores a one-dimensional array `interest` of interest rates and a two-dimensional array `balances` of account balances, one for each year and interest rate. We initialize the first row of the array with the initial balance:

```
for (int j = 0; j < balances[0].length; j++)
    balances[0][j] = 10000;
```

Then we compute the other rows, as follows:

```
for (int i = 1; i < balances.length; i++)
{
    for (int j = 0; j < balances[i].length; j++)
    {
        double oldBalance = balances[i - 1][j];
        double interest = . . .;
        balances[i][j] = oldBalance + interest;
    }
}
```

Listing 3.8 shows the full program.



**NOTE:** A “for each” loop does not automatically loop through all elements in a two-dimensional array. Instead, it loops through the rows, which are themselves one-dimensional arrays. To visit all elements of a two-dimensional array *a*, nest two loops, like this:

```
for (double[] row : a)
    for (double value : row)
        do something with value
```



**TIP:** To print out a quick-and-dirty list of the elements of a two-dimensional array, call

```
System.out.println(Arrays.deepToString(a));
```

The output is formatted like this:

```
[[16, 3, 2, 13], [5, 10, 11, 8], [9, 6, 7, 12], [4, 15, 14, 1]]
```

---

#### Listing 3.8 CompoundInterest/CompoundInterest.java

---

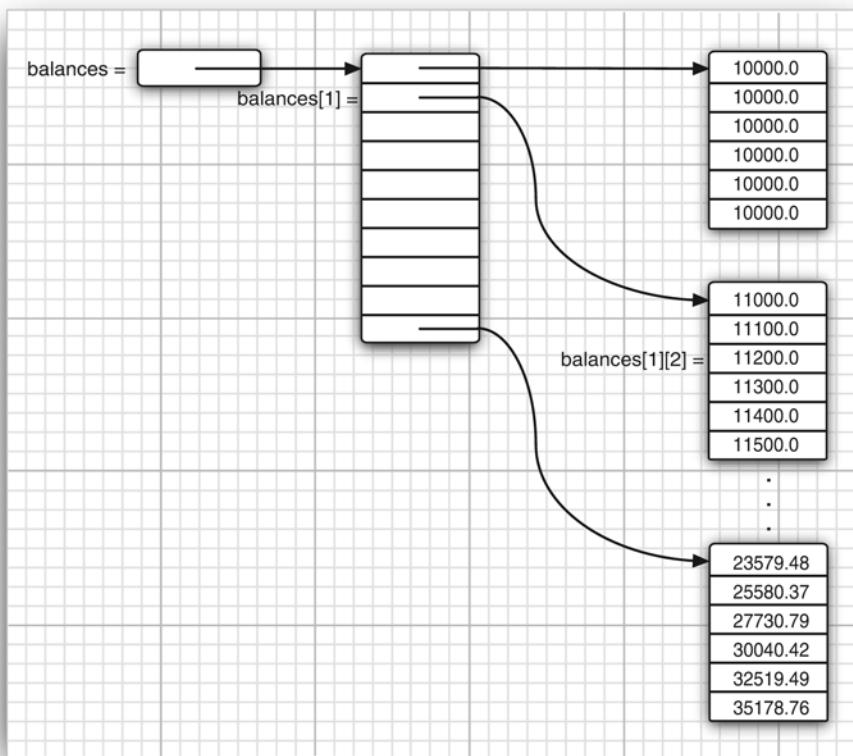
```
1 /**
2  * This program shows how to store tabular data in a 2D array.
3  * @version 1.40 2004-02-10
4  * @author Cay Horstmann
5 */
6 public class CompoundInterest
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
```

```
10     final double STARTRATE = 10;
11     final int NRATES = 6;
12     final int NYEARS = 10;
13
14     // set interest rates to 10 . . . 15%
15     double[] interestRate = new double[NRATES];
16     for (int j = 0; j < interestRate.length; j++)
17         interestRate[j] = (STARTRATE + j) / 100.0;
18
19     double[][] balances = new double[NYEARS][NRATES];
20
21     // set initial balances to 10000
22     for (int j = 0; j < balances[0].length; j++)
23         balances[0][j] = 10000;
24
25     // compute interest for future years
26     for (int i = 1; i < balances.length; i++)
27     {
28         for (int j = 0; j < balances[i].length; j++)
29         {
30             // get last year's balances from previous row
31             double oldBalance = balances[i - 1][j];
32
33             // compute interest
34             double interest = oldBalance * interestRate[j];
35
36             // compute this year's balances
37             balances[i][j] = oldBalance + interest;
38         }
39     }
40
41     // print one row of interest rates
42     for (int j = 0; j < interestRate.length; j++)
43         System.out.printf("%9.0f%%", 100 * interestRate[j]);
44
45     System.out.println();
46
47     // print balance table
48     for (double[] row : balances)
49     {
50         // print table row
51         for (double b : row)
52             System.out.printf("%10.2f", b);
53
54         System.out.println();
55     }
56 }
```

### 3.10.8 Ragged Arrays

So far, what you have seen is not too different from other programming languages. But there is actually something subtle going on behind the scenes that you can sometimes turn to your advantage: Java has *no* multidimensional arrays at all, only one-dimensional arrays. Multidimensional arrays are faked as “arrays of arrays.”

For example, the `balances` array in the preceding example is actually an array that contains ten elements, each of which is an array of six floating-point numbers (Figure 3.15).



**Figure 3.15** A two-dimensional array

The expression `balances[i]` refers to the *i*th subarray—that is, the *i*th row of the table. It is itself an array, and `balances[i][j]` refers to the *j*th element of that array.

Since rows of arrays are individually accessible, you can actually swap them!

```
double[] temp = balances[i];
balances[i] = balances[i + 1];
balances[i + 1] = temp;
```

It is also easy to make “ragged” arrays—that is, arrays in which different rows have different lengths. Here is the standard example. Let us make an array in which the element at row *i* and column *j* equals the number of possible outcomes of a “choose *j* numbers from *i* numbers” lottery.

```
1
1 1
1 2 1
1 3 3 1
1 4 6 4 1
1 5 10 10 5 1
1 6 15 20 15 6 1
```

As *j* can never be larger than *i*, the matrix is triangular. The *i*th row has *i* + 1 elements. (We allow choosing 0 elements; there is one way to make such a choice.) To build this ragged array, first allocate the array holding the rows:

```
int[][] odds = new int[NMAX + 1][];
```

Next, allocate the rows:

```
for (int n = 0; n <= NMAX; n++)
    odds[n] = new int[n + 1];
```

Now that the array is allocated, we can access the elements in the normal way, provided we do not overstep the bounds:

```
for (int n = 0; n < odds.length; n++)
    for (int k = 0; k < odds[n].length; k++)
    {
        // compute lotteryOdds
        .
        .
        odds[n][k] = lotteryOdds;
    }
```

Listing 3.9 gives the complete program.

**C++ NOTE:** In C++, the Java declaration

```
double[][] balances = new double[10][6]; // Java
```

is not the same as

```
double balances[10][6]; // C++
```

or even

```
double (*balances)[6] = new double[10][6]; // C++
```

Instead, an array of ten pointers is allocated:

```
double** balances = new double*[10]; // C++
```

Then, each element in the pointer array is filled with an array of six numbers:

```
for (i = 0; i < 10; i++)
    balances[i] = new double[6];
```

Mercifully, this loop is automatic when you ask for a new `double[10][6]`. When you want ragged arrays, you allocate the row arrays separately.

---

**Listing 3.9** LotteryArray/LotteryArray.java

```
1 /**
2  * This program demonstrates a triangular array.
3  * @version 1.20 2004-02-10
4  * @author Cay Horstmann
5 */
6 public class LotteryArray
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         final int NMAX = 10;
11
12         // allocate triangular array
13         int[][] odds = new int[NMAX + 1][];
14         for (int n = 0; n <= NMAX; n++)
15             odds[n] = new int[n + 1];
16
17         // fill triangular array
18         for (int n = 0; n < odds.length; n++)
19             for (int k = 0; k < odds[n].length; k++)
20             {
21                 /*
22                  * compute binomial coefficient n*(n-1)*(n-2)*...*(n-k+1)/(1*2*3*...*k)
23                 */
```

```
24     int lotteryOdds = 1;
25     for (int i = 1; i <= k; i++)
26         lotteryOdds = lotteryOdds * (n - i + 1) / i;
27
28     odds[n][k] = lotteryOdds;
29 }
30
31 // print triangular array
32 for (int[] row : odds)
33 {
34     for (int odd : row)
35         System.out.printf("%4d", odd);
36     System.out.println();
37 }
38 }
39 }
```

You have now seen the fundamental programming structures of the Java language. The next chapter covers object-oriented programming in Java.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# 4

## CHAPTER

# Objects and Classes

### In this chapter

- 4.1 Introduction to Object-Oriented Programming, page 126
- 4.2 Using Predefined Classes, page 131
- 4.3 Defining Your Own Classes, page 141
- 4.4 Static Fields and Methods, page 156
- 4.5 Method Parameters, page 163
- 4.6 Object Construction, page 170
- 4.7 Packages, page 180
- 4.8 JAR Files, page 192
- 4.9 Documentation Comments, page 198
- 4.10 Class Design Hints, page 204

In this chapter, we

- Introduce you to object-oriented programming;
- Show you how you can create objects that belong to classes from the standard Java library; and
- Show you how to write your own classes.

If you do not have a background in object-oriented programming, you will want to read this chapter carefully. Object-oriented programming requires a different way of thinking than procedural languages. The transition is not

always easy, but you do need some familiarity with object concepts to go further with Java.

For experienced C++ programmers, this chapter, like the previous chapter, presents familiar information; however, there are enough differences between the two languages that you should read the later sections of this chapter carefully. You'll find the C++ notes helpful for making the transition.

## 4.1 Introduction to Object-Oriented Programming

Object-oriented programming, or OOP for short, is the dominant programming paradigm these days, having replaced the “structured” or procedural programming techniques that were developed in the 1970s. Since Java is object-oriented, you have to be familiar with OOP to become productive with Java.

An object-oriented program is made of objects. Each object has a specific functionality, exposed to its users, and a hidden implementation. Many objects in your programs will be taken “off-the-shelf” from a library; others will be custom-designed. Whether you build an object or buy it might depend on your budget or time. But, basically, as long as an object satisfies your specifications, you don't care how the functionality is implemented.

Traditional structured programming consists of designing a set of procedures (or *algorithms*) to solve a problem. Once the procedures are determined, the traditional next step was to find appropriate ways to store the data. This is why the designer of the Pascal language, Niklaus Wirth, called his famous book on programming *Algorithms + Data Structures = Programs* (Prentice Hall, 1975). Notice that in Wirth's title, algorithms come first, and data structures second. This reflects the way programmers worked at that time. First, they decided on the procedures for manipulating the data; then, they decided what structure to impose on the data to make the manipulations easier. OOP reverses the order: puts the data first, then looks at the algorithms to operate on the data.

For small problems, the breakdown into procedures works very well. But objects are more appropriate for larger problems. Consider a simple web browser. It might require 2,000 procedures for its implementation, all of which manipulate a set of global data. In the object-oriented style, there might be 100 classes with an average of 20 methods per class (see Figure 4.1). This structure is much easier for a programmer to grasp. It is also much easier to find bugs in. Suppose the data of a particular object is in an incorrect state. It is far easier to search for the culprit among the 20 methods that had access to that data item than among 2,000 procedures.

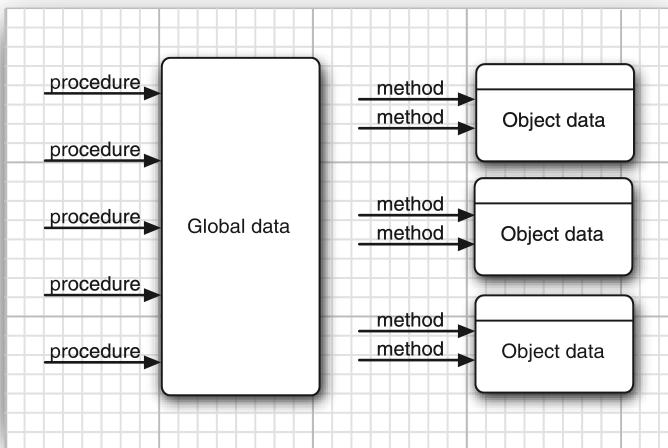


Figure 4.1 Procedural vs. OO programming

### 4.1.1 Classes

A *class* specifies how objects are made. Think of classes as cookie cutters; objects are the cookies themselves. When you *construct* an object from a class, you are said to have created an *instance* of the class.

As you have seen, all code that you write in Java is inside a class. The standard Java library supplies several thousand classes for such diverse purposes as user interface design, dates and calendars, and network programming. Nonetheless, in Java you still have to create your own classes to describe the objects of your application's problem domain.

*Encapsulation* (sometimes called *information hiding*) is a key concept in working with objects. Formally, encapsulation is simply combining data and behavior in one package and hiding the implementation details from the users of the object. The bits of data in an object are called its *instance fields*, and the procedures that operate on the data are called its *methods*. A specific object that is an instance of a class will have specific values of its instance fields. The set of those values is the *current state* of the object. Whenever you invoke a method on an object, its state may change.

The key to making encapsulation work is to have methods *never* directly access instance fields in a class other than their own. Programs should interact with object data *only* through the object's methods. Encapsulation is the way to

give an object its “black box” behavior, which is the key to reuse and reliability. This means a class may totally change how it stores its data, but as long as it continues to use the same methods to manipulate the data, no other object will know or care.

When you start writing your own classes in Java, another tenet of OOP will make this easier: Classes can be built by *extending* other classes. Java, in fact, comes with a “cosmic superclass” called `Object`. All other classes extend this class. You will learn more about the `Object` class in the next chapter.

When you extend an existing class, the new class has all the properties and methods of the class that you extend. You then supply new methods and data fields that apply to your new class only. The concept of extending a class to obtain another class is called *inheritance*. See the next chapter for more on inheritance.

### 4.1.2 Objects

To work with OOP, you should be able to identify three key characteristics of objects:

- The object’s *behavior*—what can you do with this object, or what methods can you apply to it?
- The object’s *state*—how does the object react when you invoke those methods?
- The object’s *identity*—how is the object distinguished from others that may have the same behavior and state?

All objects that are instances of the same class share a family resemblance by supporting the same *behavior*. The behavior of an object is defined by the methods that you can call.

Next, each object stores information about what it currently looks like. This is the object’s *state*. An object’s state may change over time, but not spontaneously. A change in the state of an object must be a consequence of method calls. (If an object’s state changed without a method call on that object, someone broke encapsulation.)

However, the state of an object does not completely describe it, because each object has a distinct *identity*. For example, in an order processing system, two orders are distinct even if they request identical items. Notice that the individual objects that are instances of a class *always* differ in their identity and *usually* differ in their state.

These key characteristics can influence each other. For example, the state of an object can influence its behavior. (If an order is “shipped” or “paid,” it may

reject a method call that asks it to add or remove items. Conversely, if an order is “empty”—that is, no items have yet been ordered—it should not allow itself to be shipped.)

### 4.1.3 Identifying Classes

In a traditional procedural program, you start the process at the top, with the `main` function. When designing an object-oriented system, there is no “top,” and newcomers to OOP often wonder where to begin. The answer is: Identify your classes and then add methods to each class.

A simple rule of thumb in identifying classes is to look for nouns in the problem analysis. Methods, on the other hand, correspond to verbs.

For example, in an order-processing system, some of the nouns are

- Item
- Order
- Shipping address
- Payment
- Account

These nouns may lead to the classes `Item`, `Order`, and so on.

Next, look for verbs. Items are *added* to orders. Orders are *shipped* or *canceled*. Payments are *applied* to orders. With each verb, such as “add,” “ship,” “cancel,” or “apply,” you identify the object that has the major responsibility for carrying it out. For example, when a new item is added to an order, the `Order` object should be the one in charge because it knows how it stores and sorts items. That is, `add` should be a method of the `Order` class that takes an `Item` object as a parameter.

Of course, the “noun and verb” is but a rule of thumb; only experience can help you decide which nouns and verbs are the important ones when building your classes.

### 4.1.4 Relationships between Classes

The most common relationships between classes are

- *Dependence* (“uses-a”)
- *Aggregation* (“has-a”)
- *Inheritance* (“is-a”)

The *dependence*, or “uses-a” relationship, is the most obvious and also the most general. For example, the `Order` class uses the `Account` class because `Order` objects need to access `Account` objects to check for credit status. But the `Item` class does not depend on the `Account` class, because `Item` objects never need to worry about customer accounts. Thus, a class depends on another class if its methods use or manipulate objects of that class.

Try to minimize the number of classes that depend on each other. The point is, if a class `A` is unaware of the existence of a class `B`, it is also unconcerned about any changes to `B`. (And this means that changes to `B` do not introduce bugs into `A`.) In software engineering terminology, you want to minimize the *coupling* between classes.

The *aggregation*, or “has-a” relationship, is easy to understand because it is concrete; for example, an `Order` object contains `Item` objects. Containment means that objects of class `A` contain objects of class `B`.

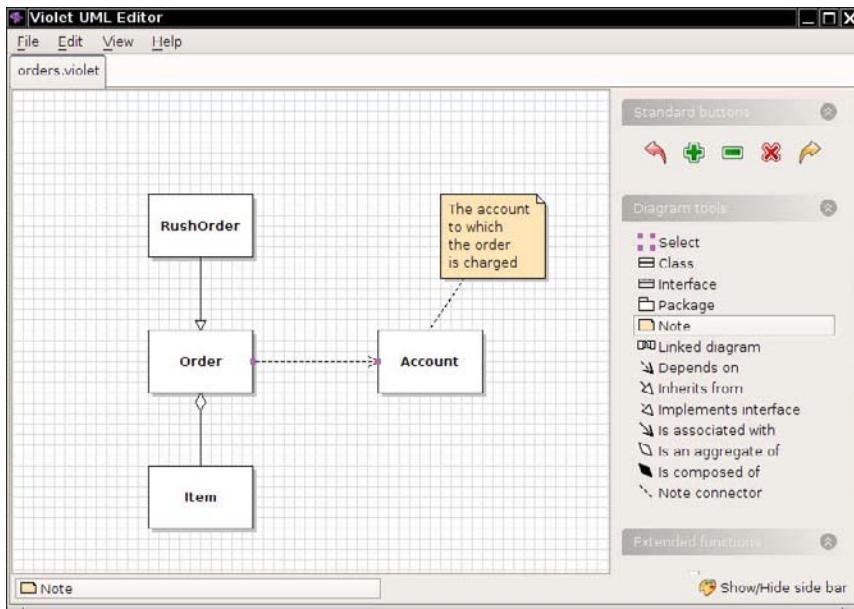


**NOTE:** Some methodologists view the concept of aggregation with disdain and prefer to use a more general “association” relationship. From the point of view of modeling, that is understandable. But for programmers, the “has-a” relationship makes a lot of sense. We like to use aggregation for another reason as well: The standard notation for associations is less clear. See Table 4.1.

---

The *inheritance*, or “is-a” relationship, expresses a relationship between a more special and a more general class. For example, a `RushOrder` class inherits from an `Order` class. The specialized `RushOrder` class has special methods for priority handling and a different method for computing shipping charges, but its other methods, such as adding items and billing, are inherited from the `Order` class. In general, if class `A` extends class `B`, class `A` inherits methods from class `B` but has more capabilities. (See the next chapter in which we discuss this important notion at some length.)

Many programmers use the UML (Unified Modeling Language) notation to draw *class diagrams* that describe the relationships between classes. You can see an example of such a diagram in Figure 4.2. You draw classes as rectangles, and relationships as arrows with various adornments. Table 4.1 shows the most common UML arrow styles.



**Figure 4.2** A class diagram

**Table 4.1** UML Notation for Class Relationships

Relationship	UML Connector
Inheritance	————→
Interface implementation	- - - - - →
Dependency	- - - - - →
Aggregation	◇————
Association	————
Directed association	————→

## 4.2 Using Predefined Classes

You can't do anything in Java without classes, and you have already seen several classes at work. However, not all of these show off the typical features

of object orientation. Take, for example, the `Math` class. You have seen that you can use methods of the `Math` class, such as `Math.random`, without needing to know how they are implemented—all you need to know is the name and parameters (if any). That's the point of encapsulation, and it will certainly be true of all classes. But the `Math` class *only* encapsulates functionality; it neither needs nor hides data. Since there is no data, you do not need to worry about making objects and initializing their instance fields—there aren't any!

In the next section, we will look at a more typical class, the `Date` class. You will see how to construct objects and call methods of this class.

### 4.2.1 Objects and Object Variables

To work with objects, you first construct them and specify their initial state. Then you apply methods to the objects.

In the Java programming language, you use *constructors* to construct new instances. A constructor is a special method whose purpose is to construct and initialize objects. Let us look at an example. The standard Java library contains a `Date` class. Its objects describe points in time, such as December 31, 1999, 23:59:59 GMT.



**NOTE:** You may be wondering: Why use a class to represent dates rather than (as in some languages) a built-in type? For example, Visual Basic has a built-in date type, and programmers can specify dates in the format #6/1/1995#. On the surface, this sounds convenient—programmers can simply use the built-in date type without worrying about classes. But actually, how suitable is the Visual Basic design? In some locales, dates are specified as month/day/year, in others as day/month/year. Are the language designers really equipped to foresee these kinds of issues? If they do a poor job, the language becomes an unpleasant muddle, but unhappy programmers are powerless to do anything about it. With classes, the design task is offloaded to a library designer. If the class is not perfect, other programmers can easily write their own classes to enhance or replace the system classes. (To prove the point: The Java date library started out a bit muddled, and it has been redesigned twice.)

---

Constructors always have the same name as the class name. Thus, the constructor for the `Date` class is called `Date`. To construct a `Date` object, combine the constructor with the `new` operator, as follows:

```
new Date()
```

This expression constructs a new object. The object is initialized to the current date and time.

If you like, you can pass the object to a method:

```
System.out.println(new Date());
```

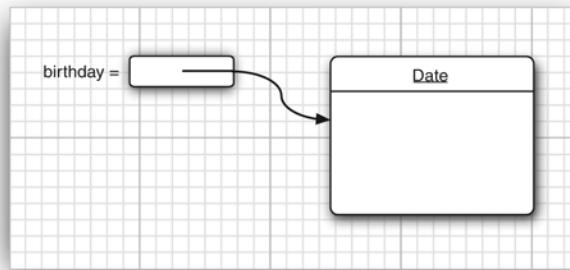
Alternatively, you can apply a method to the object that you just constructed. One of the methods of the `Date` class is the `toString` method. That method yields a string representation of the date. Here is how you would apply the `toString` method to a newly constructed `Date` object:

```
String s = new Date().toString();
```

In these two examples, the constructed object is used only once. Usually, you will want to hang on to the objects that you construct so that you can keep using them. Simply store the object in a variable:

```
Date birthday = new Date();
```

Figure 4.3 shows the object variable `birthday` that refers to the newly constructed object.



**Figure 4.3** Creating a new object

There is an important difference between objects and object variables. For example, the statement

```
Date deadline; // deadline doesn't refer to any object
```

defines an object variable, `deadline`, that can refer to objects of type `Date`. It is important to realize that the variable `deadline` is *not an object* and, in fact, does not even refer to an object yet. You cannot use any `Date` methods on this variable at this time. The statement

```
s = deadline.toString(); // not yet
```

would cause a compile-time error.

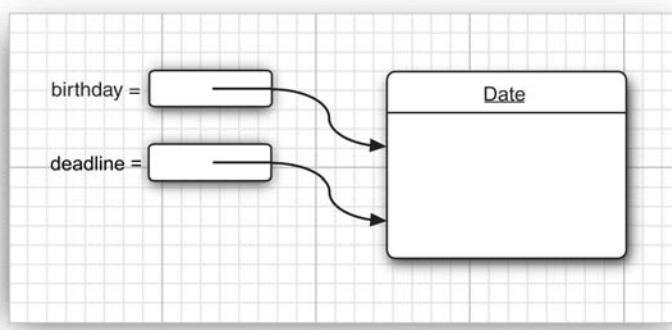
You must first initialize the `deadline` variable. You have two choices. Of course, you can initialize the variable so that it refers to a newly constructed object:

```
deadline = new Date();
```

Or you can set the variable to refer to an existing object:

```
deadline = birthday;
```

Now both variables refer to the *same* object (see Figure 4.4).



**Figure 4.4** Object variables that refer to the same object

It is important to realize that an object variable doesn't actually contain an object. It only *refers* to an object.

In Java, the value of any object variable is a reference to an object that is stored elsewhere. The return value of the `new` operator is also a reference. A statement such as

```
Date deadline = new Date();
```

has two parts. The expression `new Date()` makes an object of type `Date`, and its value is a reference to that newly created object. That reference is then stored in the `deadline` variable.

You can explicitly set an object variable to `null` to indicate that it currently refers to no object.

```
deadline = null;  
.  
if (deadline != null)  
    System.out.println(deadline);
```

We will discuss `null` in more detail in Section 4.3.6, “Working with `null` References,” on p. 148.



**C++ NOTE:** Some people mistakenly believe that Java object variables behave like C++ references. But in C++ there are no null references, and references cannot be assigned. You should think of Java object variables as analogous to *object pointers* in C++. For example,

```
Date birthday; // Java
```

is really the same as

```
Date* birthday; // C++
```

Once you make this association, everything falls into place. Of course, a `Date*` pointer isn’t initialized until you initialize it with a call to `new`. The syntax is almost the same in C++ and Java.

```
Date* birthday = new Date(); // C++
```

If you copy one variable to another, then both variables refer to the same date—they are pointers to the same object. The equivalent of the Java `null` reference is the C++ `NULL` pointer.

All Java objects live on the heap. When an object contains another object variable, it contains just a pointer to yet another heap object.

In C++, pointers make you nervous because they are so error-prone. It is easy to create bad pointers or to mess up memory management. In Java, these problems simply go away. If you use an uninitialized pointer, the runtime system will reliably generate a runtime error instead of producing random results. You don’t have to worry about memory management, because the garbage collector takes care of it.

C++ makes quite an effort, with its support for copy constructors and assignment operators, to allow the implementation of objects that copy themselves automatically. For example, a copy of a linked list is a new linked list with the same contents but with an independent set of links. This makes it possible to design classes with the same copy behavior as the built-in types. In Java, you must use the `clone` method to get a complete copy of an object.

#### 4.2.2 The `LocalDate` Class of the Java Library

In the preceding examples, we used the `Date` class that is a part of the standard Java library. An instance of the `Date` class has a state—namely, *a particular point in time*.

Although you don't need to know this when you use the `Date` class, the time is represented by the number of milliseconds (positive or negative) from a fixed point, the so-called *epoch*, which is 00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970. UTC is the Coordinated Universal Time, the scientific time standard which is, for practical purposes, the same as the more familiar GMT, or Greenwich Mean Time.

But as it turns out, the `Date` class is not very useful for manipulating the kind of calendar information that humans use for dates, such as "December 31, 1999". This particular description of a day follows the Gregorian calendar, which is the calendar used in most countries of the world. The same point in time would be described quite differently in the Chinese or Hebrew lunar calendars, not to mention the calendar used by your customers from Mars.



**NOTE:** Throughout human history, civilizations grappled with the design of calendars to attach names to dates and bring order to the solar and lunar cycles. For a fascinating explanation of calendars around the world, from the French Revolutionary calendar to the Mayan long count, see *Calendrical Calculations* by Nachum Dershowitz and Edward M. Reingold (Cambridge University Press, 3rd ed., 2007).

---

The library designers decided to separate the concerns of keeping time and attaching names to points in time. Therefore, the standard Java library contains two separate classes: the `Date` class, which represents a point in time, and the `LocalDate` class, which expresses days in the familiar calendar notation. Java 8 introduced quite a few other classes for manipulating various aspects of date and time—see Chapter 6 of Volume II.

Separating time measurement from calendars is good object-oriented design. In general, it is a good idea to use different classes to express different concepts.

You do not use a constructor to construct objects of the `LocalDate` class. Instead, use static *factory methods* that call constructors on your behalf. The expression

```
LocalDate.now()
```

constructs a new object that represents the date at which the object was constructed.

You can construct an object for a specific date by supplying year, month, and day:

```
LocalDate.of(1999, 12, 31)
```

Of course, you will usually want to store the constructed object in an object variable:

```
LocalDate newYearsEve = LocalDate.of(1999, 12, 31);
```

Once you have a `LocalDate` object, you can find out the year, month, and day with the methods `getYear`, `getMonthValue`, and `getDayOfMonth`:

```
int year = newYearsEve.getYear(); // 1999
int month = newYearsEve.getMonthValue(); // 12
int day = newYearsEve.getDayOfMonth(); // 31
```

This may seem pointless because they are the very same values that you just used to construct the object. But sometimes, you have a date that has been computed, and then you will want to invoke those methods to find out more about it. For example, the `plusDays` method yields a new `LocalDate` that is a given number of days away from the object to which you apply it:

```
LocalDate aThousandDaysLater = newYearsEve.plusDays(1000);
year = aThousandDaysLater.getYear(); // 2002
month = aThousandDaysLater.getMonthValue(); // 09
day = aThousandDaysLater.getDayOfMonth(); // 26
```

The `LocalDate` class has encapsulated instance fields to maintain the date to which it is set. Without looking at the source code, it is impossible to know the representation that the class uses internally. But, of course, the point of encapsulation is that this doesn't matter. What matters are the methods that a class exposes.



**NOTE:** Actually, the `Date` class also has methods to get the day, month, and year, called `getDay`, `getMonth`, and `getYear`, but these methods are *deprecated*. A method is deprecated when a library designer realizes that the method should have never been introduced in the first place.

These methods were a part of the `Date` class before the library designers realized that it makes more sense to supply separate classes to deal with calendars. When an earlier set of calendar classes was introduced in Java 1.1, the `Date` methods were tagged as deprecated. You can still use them in your programs, but you will get unsightly compiler warnings if you do. It is a good idea to stay away from using deprecated methods because they may be removed in a future version of the library.



**TIP:** The JDK provides the `jdeprscan` tool for checking whether your code uses deprecated features of the Java API. See <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/tools/jdeprscan.htm> for instructions.

### 4.2.3 Mutator and Accessor Methods

Have another look at the `plusDays` method call that you saw in the preceding section:

```
LocalDate aThousandDaysLater = newYearsEve.plusDays(1000);
```

What happens to `newYearsEve` after the call? Has it been changed to be a thousand days later? As it turns out, it has not. The `plusDays` method yields a new `LocalDate` object, which is then assigned to the `aThousandDaysLater` variable. The original object remains unchanged. We say that the `plusDays` method does not *mutate* the object on which it is invoked. (This is similar to the `toUpperCase` method of the `String` class that you saw in Chapter 3. When you call `toUpperCase` on a string, that string stays the same, and a new string with uppercase characters is returned.)

An earlier version of the Java library had a different class for dealing with calendars, called `GregorianCalendar`. Here is how you add a thousand days to a date represented by that class:

```
GregorianCalendar someDay = new GregorianCalendar(1999, 11, 31);
    // odd feature of that class: month numbers go from 0 to 11
someDay.add(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH, 1000);
```

Unlike the `LocalDate.plusDays` method, the `GregorianCalendar.add` method is a *mutator method*. After invoking it, the state of the `someDay` object has changed. Here is how you can find out the new state:

```
year = someDay.get(Calendar.YEAR); // 2002
month = someDay.get(Calendar.MONTH) + 1; // 09
day = someDay.get(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH); // 26
```

That's why we called the variable `someDay` and not `newYearsEve`—it no longer is new year's eve after calling the mutator method.

In contrast, methods that only access objects without modifying them are sometimes called *accessor methods*. For example, `LocalDate.getYear` and `GregorianCalendar.get` are accessor methods.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, the `const` suffix denotes accessor methods. A method that is not declared as `const` is assumed to be a mutator. However, in the Java programming language, no special syntax distinguishes accessors from mutators.

---

We finish this section with a program that puts the `LocalDate` class to work. The program displays a calendar for the current month, like this:

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun
					1	
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26*	27	28	29
30						

The current day is marked with an asterisk (\*). As you can see, the program needs to know how to compute the length of a month and the weekday of a given day.

Let us go through the key steps of the program. First, we construct an object that is initialized with the current date.

```
LocalDate date = LocalDate.now();
```

We capture the current month and day.

```
int month = date.getMonthValue();
int today = date.getDayOfMonth();
```

Then we set date to the first of the month and get the weekday of that date.

```
date = date.minusDays(today - 1); // set to start of month
DayOfWeek weekday = date.getDayOfWeek();
int value = weekday.getValue(); // 1 = Monday, . . . , 7 = Sunday
```

The variable `weekday` is set to an object of type `DayOfWeek`. We call the `getValue` method of that object to get a numerical value for the weekday. This yields an integer that follows the international convention where the weekend comes at the end of the week, returning 1 for Monday, 2 for Tuesday, and so on. Sunday has value 7.

Note that the first line of the calendar is indented, so that the first day of the month falls on the appropriate weekday. Here is the code to print the header and the indentation for the first line:

```
System.out.println("Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun");
for (int i = 1; i < value; i++)
    System.out.print("    ");
```

Now, we are ready to print the body of the calendar. We enter a loop in which `date` traverses the days of the month.

In each iteration, we print the date value. If `date` is today, the date is marked with an \*. Then, we advance `date` to the next day. When we reach the beginning of each new week, we print a new line:

```
while (date.getMonthValue() == month)
{
    System.out.printf("%3d", date.getDayOfMonth());
    if (date.getDayOfMonth() == today)
        System.out.print("*");
    else
        System.out.print(" ");
    date = date.plusDays(1);
    if (date.getDayOfWeek().getValue() == 1) System.out.println();
}
```

When do we stop? We don't know whether the month has 31, 30, 29, or 28 days. Instead, we keep iterating while `date` is still in the current month.

Listing 4.1 shows the complete program.

As you can see, the `LocalDate` class makes it possible to write a calendar program that takes care of complexities such as weekdays and the varying month lengths. You don't need to know *how* the `LocalDate` class computes months and weekdays. You just use the *interface* of the class—the methods such as `plusDays` and `getDayOfWeek`.

The point of this example program is to show you how you can use the interface of a class to carry out fairly sophisticated tasks without having to know the implementation details.

---

**Listing 4.1** CalendarTest/CalendarTest.java

---

```
1 import java.time.*;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.5 2015-05-08
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6 */
7 public class CalendarTest
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11         LocalDate date = LocalDate.now();
12         int month = date.getMonthValue();
13         int today = date.getDayOfMonth();
14
15         date = date.minusDays(today - 1); // set to start of month
16         DayOfWeek weekday = date.getDayOfWeek();
17         int value = weekday.getValue(); // 1 = Monday, . . . , 7 = Sunday
18
19         System.out.println("Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun");
}
```

```
20     for (int i = 1; i < value; i++)
21         System.out.print("    ");
22     while (date.getMonthValue() == month)
23     {
24         System.out.printf("%3d", date.getDayOfMonth());
25         if (date.getDayOfMonth() == today)
26             System.out.print("*");
27         else
28             System.out.print(" ");
29         date = date.plusDays(1);
30         if (date.getDayOfWeek().getValue() == 1) System.out.println();
31     }
32     if (date.getDayOfWeek().getValue() != 1) System.out.println();
33 }
34 }
```

#### java.time.LocalDate 8

- static LocalDate now()  
constructs an object that represents the current date.
- static LocalDate of(int year, int month, int day)  
constructs an object that represents the given date.
- int getYear()  
• int getMonthValue()  
• int getDayOfMonth()  
gets the year, month, and day of this date.
- DayOfWeek getDayOfWeek  
gets the weekday of this date as an instance of the DayOfWeek class. Call getValue to get a weekday between 1 (Monday) and 7 (Sunday).
- LocalDate plusDays(int n)  
• LocalDate minusDays(int n)  
yields the date that is n days after or before this date.

## 4.3 Defining Your Own Classes

In Chapter 3, you started writing simple classes. However, all those classes had just a single `main` method. Now the time has come to show you how to write the kind of “workhorse classes” that are needed for more sophisticated applications. These classes typically do not have a `main` method. Instead, they have their own instance fields and methods. To build a complete program, you combine several classes, one of which has a `main` method.

### 4.3.1 An Employee Class

The simplest form for a class definition in Java is

```
class ClassName
{
    field1
    field2
    . . .
    constructor1
    constructor2
    . . .
    method1
    method2
    . . .
}
```

Consider the following, very simplified, version of an `Employee` class that might be used by a business in writing a payroll system:

```
class Employee
{
    // instance fields
    private String name;
    private double salary;
    private LocalDate hireDay;

    // constructor
    public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
    {
        name = n;
        salary = s;
        hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
    }

    // a method
    public String getName()
    {
        return name;
    }

    // more methods
    . . .
}
```

We break down the implementation of this class, in some detail, in the sections that follow. First, though, Listing 4.2 is a program that shows the `Employee` class in action.

In the program, we construct an `Employee` array and fill it with three `Employee` objects:

```
Employee[] staff = new Employee[3];  
  
staff[0] = new Employee("Carl Cracker", . . .);  
staff[1] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", . . .);  
staff[2] = new Employee("Tony Tester", . . .);
```

Next, we use the `raiseSalary` method of the `Employee` class to raise each employee's salary by 5%:

```
for (Employee e : staff)  
    e.raiseSalary(5);
```

Finally, we print out information about each employee, by calling the `getName`, `getSalary`, and `getHireDay` methods:

```
for (Employee e : staff)  
    System.out.println("name=" + e.getName()  
        + ",salary=" + e.getSalary()  
        + ",hireDay=" + e.getHireDay());
```

Note that the example program consists of *two* classes: the `Employee` class and a class `EmployeeTest` with the `public` access specifier. The `main` method with the instructions that we just described is contained in the `EmployeeTest` class.

The name of the source file is `EmployeeTest.java` because the name of the file must match the name of the public class. You can only have one public class in a source file, but you can have any number of nonpublic classes.

Next, when you compile this source code, the compiler creates two class files in the directory: `EmployeeTest.class` and `Employee.class`.

You then start the program by giving the bytecode interpreter the name of the class that contains the `main` method of your program:

```
java EmployeeTest
```

The bytecode interpreter starts running the code in the `main` method in the `EmployeeTest` class. This code in turn constructs three new `Employee` objects and shows you their state.

**Listing 4.2** EmployeeTest/EmployeeTest.java

```
1 import java.time.*;
2 
3 /**
4  * This program tests the Employee class.
5  * @version 1.13 2018-04-10
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7  */
8 public class EmployeeTest
9 {
10    public static void main(String[] args)
11    {
12        // fill the staff array with three Employee objects
13        Employee[] staff = new Employee[3];
14
15        staff[0] = new Employee("Carl Cracker", 75000, 1987, 12, 15);
16        staff[1] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
17        staff[2] = new Employee("Tony Tester", 40000, 1990, 3, 15);
18
19        // raise everyone's salary by 5%
20        for (Employee e : staff)
21            e.raiseSalary(5);
22
23        // print out information about all Employee objects
24        for (Employee e : staff)
25            System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",salary=" + e.getSalary() + ",hireDay="
26                            + e.getHireDay());
27    }
28 }
29
30 class Employee
31 {
32     private String name;
33     private double salary;
34     private LocalDate hireDay;
35
36     public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
37     {
38         name = n;
39         salary = s;
40         hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
41     }
42
43     public String getName()
44     {
45         return name;
46     }
47 }
```

```
48     public double getSalary()
49     {
50         return salary;
51     }
52
53     public LocalDate getHireDay()
54     {
55         return hireDay;
56     }
57
58     public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
59     {
60         double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
61         salary += raise;
62     }
63 }
```

### 4.3.2 Use of Multiple Source Files

The program in Listing 4.2 has two classes in a single source file. Many programmers prefer to put each class into its own source file. For example, you can place the `Employee` class into a file `Employee.java` and the `EmployeeTest` class into `EmployeeTest.java`.

If you like this arrangement, you have two choices for compiling the program. You can invoke the Java compiler with a wildcard:

```
javac Employee*.java
```

Then, all source files matching the wildcard will be compiled into class files. Or, you can simply type

```
javac EmployeeTest.java
```

You may find it surprising that the second choice works even though the `Employee.java` file is never explicitly compiled. However, when the Java compiler sees the `Employee` class being used inside `EmployeeTest.java`, it will look for a file named `Employee.class`. If it does not find that file, it automatically searches for `Employee.java` and compiles it. Moreover, if the timestamp of the version of `Employee.java` that it finds is newer than that of the existing `Employee.class` file, the Java compiler will *automatically* recompile the file.



**NOTE:** If you are familiar with the `make` facility of UNIX (or one of its Windows cousins, such as `nmake`), you can think of the Java compiler as having the `make` functionality already built in.

### 4.3.3 Dissecting the Employee Class

In the sections that follow, we will dissect the `Employee` class. Let's start with the methods in this class. As you can see by examining the source code, this class has one constructor and four methods:

```
public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
public String getName()
public double getSalary()
public LocalDate getHireDay()
public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
```

All methods of this class are tagged as `public`. The keyword `public` means that any method in any class can call the method. (The four possible access levels are covered in this and the next chapter.)

Next, notice the three instance fields that will hold the data manipulated inside an instance of the `Employee` class.

```
private String name;
private double salary;
private LocalDate hireDay;
```

The `private` keyword makes sure that the *only* methods that can access these instance fields are the methods of the `Employee` class itself. No outside method can read or write to these fields.



**NOTE:** You could use the `public` keyword with your instance fields, but it would be a very bad idea. Having `public` data fields would allow any part of the program to read and modify the instance fields, completely ruining encapsulation. Any method of any class can modify public fields—and, in our experience, some code *will* take advantage of that access privilege when you least expect it. We strongly recommend to make all your instance fields `private`.

---

Finally, notice that two of the instance fields are themselves objects: The `name` and `hireDay` fields are references to `String` and `LocalDate` objects. This is quite usual: Classes will often contain instance fields of class type.

### 4.3.4 First Steps with Constructors

Let's look at the constructor listed in our `Employee` class.

```
public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
{
    name = n;
    salary = s;
```

```
    hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
}
```

As you can see, the name of the constructor is the same as the name of the class. This constructor runs when you construct objects of the `Employee` class—giving the instance fields the initial state you want them to have.

For example, when you create an instance of the `Employee` class with code like this:

```
new Employee("James Bond", 100000, 1950, 1, 1)
```

you have set the instance fields as follows:

```
name = "James Bond";
salary = 100000;
hireDay = LocalDate.of(1950, 1, 1); // January 1, 1950
```

There is an important difference between constructors and other methods. A constructor can only be called in conjunction with the `new` operator. You can't apply a constructor to an existing object to reset the instance fields. For example,

```
james.Employee("James Bond", 250000, 1950, 1, 1) // ERROR
```

is a compile-time error.

We will have more to say about constructors later in this chapter. For now, keep the following in mind:

- A constructor has the same name as the class.
- A class can have more than one constructor.
- A constructor can take zero, one, or more parameters.
- A constructor has no return value.
- A constructor is always called with the `new` operator.



**C++ NOTE:** Constructors work the same way in Java as they do in C++.

Keep in mind, however, that all Java objects are constructed on the heap and that a constructor must be combined with `new`. It is a common error of C++ programmers to forget the `new` operator:

```
Employee number007("James Bond", 100000, 1950, 1, 1); // C++, not Java
```

That works in C++ but not in Java.



**CAUTION:** Be careful not to introduce local variables with the same names as the instance fields. For example, the following constructor will not set the salary:

```
public Employee(String n, double s, . . .)
{
    String name = n; // ERROR
    double salary = s; // ERROR
    . . .
}
```

The constructor declares *local* variables `name` and `salary`. These variables are only accessible inside the constructor. They *shadow* the instance fields with the same name. Some programmers accidentally write this kind of code when they type faster than they think, because their fingers are used to adding the data type. This is a nasty error that can be hard to track down. You just have to be careful in all of your methods to not use variable names that equal the names of instance fields.

---

### 4.3.5 Declaring Local Variables with var

As of Java 10, you can declare local variables with the `var` keyword instead of specifying their type, provided their type can be inferred from the initial value. For example, instead of declaring

```
Employee harry = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
```

you simply write

```
var harry = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
```

This is nice since it avoids the repetition of the type name `Employee`.

From now on, we will use the `var` notation in those cases where the type is obvious from the right-hand side without any knowledge of the Java API. But we won't use `var` with numeric types such as `int`, `long`, or `double` so that you don't have to look out for the difference between `0`, `0L`, and `0.0`. Once you are more experienced with the Java API, you may want to use the `var` keyword more frequently.

Note that the `var` keyword can only be used with *local* variables inside methods. You must always declare the types of parameters and fields.

### 4.3.6 Working with null References

In Section 4.2.1, "Objects and Object Variables," on p. 132, you saw that an object variable holds a reference to an object, or the special value `null` to indicate the absence of an object.

This sounds like a convenient mechanism for dealing with special situations, such as an unknown name or hire date. But you need to be very careful with `null` values.

If you apply a method to a `null` value, a `NullPointerException` occurs.

```
LocalDate birthday = null;
String s = birthday.toString(); // NullPointerException
```

This is a serious error, similar to an “index out of bounds” exception. If your program does not “catch” an exception, it is terminated. Normally, programs don’t catch these kinds of exceptions but rely on programmers not to cause them in the first place.

When you define a class, it is a good idea to be clear about which fields can be `null`. In our example, we don’t want the `name` or `hireDay` field to be `null`. (We don’t have to worry about the `salary` field. It has primitive type and can never be `null`.)

The `hireDay` field is guaranteed to be non-`null` because it is initialized with a new `LocalDate` object. But `name` will be `null` if the constructor is called with a `null` argument for `n`.

There are two solutions. The “permissive” approach is to turn a `null` argument into an appropriate non-`null` value:

```
if (n == null) name = "unknown"; else name = n;
```

As of Java 9, the `Objects` class has a convenience method for this purpose:

```
public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
{
    name = Objects.requireNonNullElse(n, "unknown");
    ...
}
```

The “tough love” approach is to reject a `null` argument:

```
public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
{
    Objects.requireNonNull(n, "The name cannot be null");
    name = n;
    ...
}
```

If someone constructs an `Employee` object with a `null` `name`, then a `NullPointerException` occurs. At first glance, that may not seem a useful remedy. But there are two advantages:

1. The exception report has a description of the problem.
2. The exception report pinpoints the location of the problem. Otherwise, a `NullPointerException` would have occurred elsewhere, with no easy way of tracing it back to the faulty constructor argument.



**NOTE:** Whenever you accept an object reference as a construction parameter, ask yourself whether you really intend to model values that can be present or absent. If not, the “tough love” approach is preferred.

---

### 4.3.7 Implicit and Explicit Parameters

Methods operate on objects and access their instance fields. For example, the method

```
public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
{
    double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
    salary += raise;
}
```

sets a new value for the `salary` instance field in the object on which this method is invoked. Consider the call

```
number007.raiseSalary(5);
```

The effect is to increase the value of the `number007.salary` field by 5%. More specifically, the call executes the following instructions:

```
double raise = number007.salary * 5 / 100;
number007.salary += raise;
```

The `raiseSalary` method has two parameters. The first parameter, called the *implicit* parameter, is the object of type `Employee` that appears before the method name. The second parameter, the number inside the parentheses after the method name, is an *explicit* parameter. (Some people call the implicit parameter the *target* or *receiver* of the method call.)

As you can see, the explicit parameters are explicitly listed in the method declaration—for example, `double byPercent`. The implicit parameter does not appear in the method declaration.

In every method, the keyword `this` refers to the implicit parameter. If you like, you can write the `raiseSalary` method as follows:

```
public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
{
    double raise = this.salary * byPercent / 100;
    this.salary += raise;
}
```

Some programmers prefer that style because it clearly distinguishes between instance fields and local variables.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, you generally define methods outside the class:

```
void Employee::raiseSalary(double byPercent) // C++, not Java
{
    ...
}
```

If you define a method inside a class, then it is, automatically, an inline method.

```
class Employee
{
    ...
    int getName() { return name; } // inline in C++
}
```

In Java, all methods are defined inside the class itself. This does not make them inline. Finding opportunities for inline replacement is the job of the Java virtual machine. The just-in-time compiler watches for calls to methods that are short, commonly called, and not overridden, and optimizes them away.

#### 4.3.8 Benefits of Encapsulation

Finally, let's look more closely at the rather simple `getName`, `getSalary`, and `getHireDay` methods.

```
public String getName()
{
    return name;
}

public double getSalary()
{
    return salary;
}

public LocalDate getHireDay()
{
    return hireDay;
}
```

These are obvious examples of accessor methods. As they simply return the values of instance fields, they are sometimes called *field accessors*.

Wouldn't it be easier to make the `name`, `salary`, and `hireDay` fields public, instead of having separate accessor methods?

However, the `name` field is read-only. Once you set it in the constructor, there is no method to change it. Thus, we have a guarantee that the `name` field will never be corrupted.

The `salary` field is not read-only, but it can only be changed by the `raiseSalary` method. In particular, should the value ever turn out wrong, only that method needs to be debugged. Had the `salary` field been public, the culprit for messing up the value could have been anywhere.

Sometimes, it happens that you want to get and set the value of an instance field. Then you need to supply *three* items:

- A private data field;
- A public field accessor method; and
- A public field mutator method.

This is a lot more tedious than supplying a single public data field, but there are considerable benefits.

First, you can change the internal implementation without affecting any code other than the methods of the class. For example, if the storage of the `name` is changed to

```
String firstName;  
String lastName;
```

then the `getName` method can be changed to return

```
firstName + " " + lastName
```

This change is completely invisible to the remainder of the program.

Of course, the accessor and mutator methods may need to do a lot of work to convert between the old and the new data representation. That leads us to our second benefit: Mutator methods can perform error checking, whereas code that simply assigns to a field may not go into the trouble. For example, a `setSalary` method might check that the salary is never less than 0.



**CAUTION:** Be careful not to write accessor methods that return references to mutable objects. In a previous edition of this book, we violated that rule in our `Employee` class in which the `getHireDay` method returned an object of class `Date`:

```
class Employee
{
    private Date hireDay;
    ...
    public Date getHireDay()
    {
        return hireDay; // BAD
    }
    ...
}
```

Unlike the `LocalDate` class, which has no mutator methods, the `Date` class has a mutator method, `setTime`, where you can set the number of milliseconds.

The fact that `Date` objects are mutable breaks encapsulation! Consider the following rogue code:

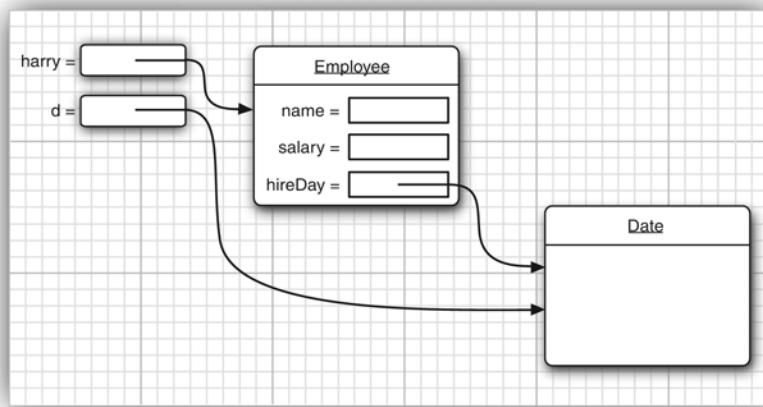
```
Employee harry = . . .;
Date d = harry.getHireDay();
double tenYearsInMilliSeconds = 10 * 365.25 * 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000;
d.setTime(d.getTime() - (long) tenYearsInMilliSeconds);
// let's give Harry ten years of added seniority
```

The reason is subtle. Both `d` and `harry.hireDay` refer to the same object (see Figure 4.5). Applying mutator methods to `d` automatically changes the private state of the `Employee` object!

If you need to return a reference to a mutable object, you should *clone* it first. A clone is an exact copy of an object stored in a new location. We discuss cloning in detail in Chapter 6. Here is the corrected code:

```
class Employee
{
    ...
    public Date getHireDay()
    {
        return (Date) hireDay.clone(); // OK
    }
    ...
}
```

As a rule of thumb, always use `clone` whenever you need to return a copy of a mutable field.



**Figure 4.5** Returning a reference to a mutable data field

### 4.3.9 Class-Based Access Privileges

You know that a method can access the private data of the object on which it is invoked. What people often find surprising is that a method can access the private data of *all objects of its class*. For example, consider a method `equals` that compares two employees.

```
class Employee
{
    ...
    public boolean equals(Employee other)
    {
        return name.equals(other.name);
    }
}
```

A typical call is

```
if (harry.equals(boss)) . . .
```

This method accesses the private fields of `harry`, which is not surprising. It also accesses the private fields of `boss`. This is legal because `boss` is an object of type `Employee`, and a method of the `Employee` class is permitted to access the private fields of *any* object of type `Employee`.



**C++ NOTE:** C++ has the same rule. A method can access the private features of any object of its class, not just of the implicit parameter.

---

### 4.3.10 Private Methods

When implementing a class, we make all data fields private because public data are dangerous. But what about the methods? While most methods are public, private methods are useful in certain circumstances. Sometimes, you may wish to break up the code for a computation into separate helper methods. Typically, these helper methods should not be part of the public interface—they may be too close to the current implementation or require a special protocol or calling order. Such methods are best implemented as private.

To implement a private method in Java, simply change the `public` keyword to `private`.

By making a method private, you are under no obligation to keep it available if you change your implementation. The method may well be *harder* to implement or *unnecessary* if the data representation changes; this is irrelevant. The point is that as long as the method is private, the designers of the class can be assured that it is never used elsewhere, so they can simply drop it. If a method is public, you cannot simply drop it because other code might rely on it.

### 4.3.11 Final Instance Fields

You can define an instance field as `final`. Such a field must be initialized when the object is constructed. That is, you must guarantee that the field value has been set after the end of every constructor. Afterwards, the field may not be modified again. For example, the `name` field of the `Employee` class may be declared as `final` because it never changes after the object is constructed—there is no `setName` method.

```
class Employee
{
    private final String name;
    ...
}
```

The `final` modifier is particularly useful for fields whose type is primitive or an *immutable class*. (A class is immutable if none of its methods ever mutate its objects. For example, the `String` class is immutable.)

For mutable classes, the `final` modifier can be confusing. For example, consider a field

```
private final StringBuilder evaluations;
```

that is initialized in the `Employee` constructor as

```
evaluations = new StringBuilder();
```

The `final` keyword merely means that the object reference stored in the `evaluations` variable will never again refer to a different `StringBuilder` object. But the object can be mutated:

```
public void giveGoldStar()
{
    evaluations.append(LocalDate.now() + ": Gold star!\n");
}
```

## 4.4 Static Fields and Methods

In all sample programs that you have seen, the `main` method is tagged with the `static` modifier. We are now ready to discuss the meaning of this modifier.

### 4.4.1 Static Fields

If you define a field as `static`, then there is only one such field per class. In contrast, each object has its own copy of nonstatic instance fields. For example, let's suppose we want to assign a unique identification number to each employee. We add an instance field `id` and a static field `nextId` to the `Employee` class:

```
class Employee
{
    private static int nextId = 1;

    private int id;
    ...
}
```

Every `Employee` object now has its own `id` field, but there is only one `nextId` field that is shared among all instances of the class. Let's put it another way. If there are 1,000 objects of the `Employee` class, then there are 1,000 instance fields `id`, one for each object. But there is a single static field `nextId`. Even if there are no `Employee` objects, the static field `nextId` is present. It belongs to the class, not to any individual object.



**NOTE:** In some object-oriented programming languages, static fields are called *class fields*. The term “static” is a meaningless holdover from C++.

---

Let's implement a simple method:

```
public void setId()
{
    id = nextId;
    nextId++;
}
```

Suppose you set the employee identification number for `harry`:

```
harry.setId();
```

Then, the `id` field of `harry` is set to the current value of the static field `nextId`, and the value of the static field is incremented:

```
harry.id = Employee.nextId;
Employee.nextId++;
```

#### 4.4.2 Static Constants

Static variables are quite rare. However, static constants are more common. For example, the `Math` class defines a static constant:

```
public class Math
{
    ...
    public static final double PI = 3.14159265358979323846;
    ...
}
```

You can access this constant in your programs as `Math.PI`.

If the keyword `static` had been omitted, then `PI` would have been an instance field of the `Math` class. That is, you would need an object of this class to access `PI`, and every `Math` object would have its own copy of `PI`.

Another static constant that you have used many times is `System.out`. It is declared in the `System` class as follows:

```
public class System
{
    ...
    public static final PrintStream out = . . .;
    ...
}
```

As we mentioned several times, it is never a good idea to have public fields, because everyone can modify them. However, public constants (that is, `final`

fields) are fine. Since `out` has been declared as `final`, you cannot reassign another print stream to it:

```
System.out = new PrintStream(. . .); // ERROR--out is final
```



**NOTE:** If you look at the `System` class, you will notice a method `setOut` that sets `System.out` to a different stream. You may wonder how that method can change the value of a `final` variable. However, the `setOut` method is a *native* method, not implemented in the Java programming language. Native methods can bypass the access control mechanisms of the Java language. This is a very unusual workaround that you should not emulate in your programs.

---

#### 4.4.3 Static Methods

Static methods are methods that do not operate on objects. For example, the `pow` method of the `Math` class is a static method. The expression

```
Math.pow(x, a)
```

computes the power  $x^a$ . It does not use any `Math` object to carry out its task. In other words, it has no implicit parameter.

You can think of static methods as methods that don't have a `this` parameter. (In a nonstatic method, the `this` parameter refers to the implicit parameter of the method—see Section 4.3.7, “Implicit and Explicit Parameters,” on p. 150.)

A static method of the `Employee` class cannot access the `id` instance field because it does not operate on an object. However, a static method can access a static field. Here is an example of such a static method:

```
public static int getNextId()
{
    return nextId; // returns static field
}
```

To call this method, you supply the name of the class:

```
int n = Employee.getNextId();
```

Could you have omitted the keyword `static` for this method? Yes, but then you would need to have an object reference of type `Employee` to invoke the method.



**NOTE:** It is legal to use an object to call a static method. For example, if harry is an Employee object, then you can call harry.getNextId() instead of Employee.getNextId(). However, we find that notation confusing. The getNextId method doesn't look at harry at all to compute the result. We recommend that you use class names, not objects, to invoke static methods.

Use static methods in two situations:

- When a method doesn't need to access the object state because all needed parameters are supplied as explicit parameters (example: Math.pow).
- When a method only needs to access static fields of the class (example: Employee.getNextId).



**C++ NOTE:** Static fields and methods have the same functionality in Java and C++. However, the syntax is slightly different. In C++, you use the :: operator to access a static field or method outside its scope, such as Math::PI.

The term “static” has a curious history. At first, the keyword static was introduced in C to denote local variables that don’t go away when a block is exited. In that context, the term “static” makes sense: The variable stays around and is still there when the block is entered again. Then static got a second meaning in C, to denote global variables and functions that cannot be accessed from other files. The keyword static was simply reused to avoid introducing a new keyword. Finally, C++ reused the keyword for a third, unrelated, interpretation—to denote variables and functions that belong to a class but not to any particular object of the class. That is the same meaning the keyword has in Java.

#### 4.4.4 Factory Methods

Here is another common use for static methods. Classes such as LocalDate and NumberFormat use static *factory methods* that construct objects. You have already seen the factory methods LocalDate.now and LocalDate.of. Here is how the NumberFormat class yields formatter objects for various styles:

```
NumberFormat currencyFormatter = NumberFormat.getCurrencyInstance();
NumberFormat percentFormatter = NumberFormat.getPercentInstance();
double x = 0.1;
System.out.println(currencyFormatter.format(x)); // prints $0.10
System.out.println(percentFormatter.format(x)); // prints 10%
```

Why doesn't the `NumberFormat` class use a constructor instead? There are two reasons:

- You can't give names to constructors. The constructor name is always the same as the class name. But we want two different names to get the currency instance and the percent instance.
- When you use a constructor, you can't vary the type of the constructed object. But the factory methods actually return objects of the class `DecimalFormat`, a subclass that inherits from `NumberFormat`. (See Chapter 5 for more on inheritance.)

#### 4.4.5 The `main` Method

Note that you can call static methods without having any objects. For example, you never construct any objects of the `Math` class to call `Math.pow`.

For the same reason, the `main` method is a static method.

```
public class Application
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        // construct objects here
        ...
    }
}
```

The `main` method does not operate on any objects. In fact, when a program starts, there aren't any objects yet. The static `main` method executes, and constructs the objects that the program needs.

---



**TIP:** Every class can have a `main` method. That is a handy trick for unit testing of classes. For example, you can add a `main` method to the `Employee` class:

```
class Employee
{
    public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
    {
        name = n;
        salary = s;
        hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
    }
    ...

    public static void main(String[] args) // unit test
    {
```

```
var e = new Employee("Romeo", 50000, 2003, 3, 31);
e.raiseSalary(10);
System.out.println(e.getName() + " " + e.getSalary());
}
...
}
```

If you want to test the `Employee` class in isolation, simply execute

```
java Employee
```

If the `Employee` class is a part of a larger application, you start the application with

```
java Application
```

and the `main` method of the `Employee` class is never executed.

---

The program in Listing 4.3 contains a simple version of the `Employee` class with a static field `nextId` and a static method `getNextId`. We fill an array with three `Employee` objects and then print the employee information. Finally, we print the next available identification number, to demonstrate the static method.

Note that the `Employee` class also has a static `main` method for unit testing. Try running both

```
java Employee
```

and

```
java StaticTest
```

to execute both `main` methods.

---

**Listing 4.3** StaticTest/StaticTest.java

---

```
1 /**
2  * This program demonstrates static methods.
3  * @version 1.02 2008-04-10
4  * @author Cay Horstmann
5  */
6 public class StaticTest
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         // fill the staff array with three Employee objects
11         var staff = new Employee[3];
12     }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 4.3 (Continued)**

```
13     staff[0] = new Employee("Tom", 40000);
14     staff[1] = new Employee("Dick", 60000);
15     staff[2] = new Employee("Harry", 65000);
16
17     // print out information about all Employee objects
18     for (Employee e : staff)
19     {
20         e.setId();
21         System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",id=" + e.getId() + ",salary="
22             + e.getSalary());
23     }
24
25     int n = Employee.getNextId(); // calls static method
26     System.out.println("Next available id=" + n);
27 }
28 }
29
30 class Employee
31 {
32     private static int nextId = 1;
33
34     private String name;
35     private double salary;
36     private int id;
37
38     public Employee(String n, double s)
39     {
40         name = n;
41         salary = s;
42         id = 0;
43     }
44
45     public String getName()
46     {
47         return name;
48     }
49
50     public double getSalary()
51     {
52         return salary;
53     }
54
55     public int getId()
56     {
57         return id;
58     }
59 }
```

```
60  public void setId()
61  {
62      id = nextId; // set id to next available id
63      nextId++;
64  }
65
66  public static int getNextId()
67  {
68      return nextId; // returns static field
69  }
70
71  public static void main(String[] args) // unit test
72  {
73      var e = new Employee("Harry", 50000);
74      System.out.println(e.getName() + " " + e.getSalary());
75  }
76 }
```

#### java.util.Objects 7

- static <T> void requireNonNull(T obj)
- static <T> void requireNonNull(T obj, String message)
- static <T> void requireNonNull(T obj, Supplier<String> messageSupplier) 8

If obj is null, these methods throw a NullPointerException with no message or the given message. (Chapter 6 explains how to obtain a value lazily with a supplier. Chapter 8 explains the <T> syntax.)

- static <T> T requireNonNullElse(T obj, T defaultObj)
- static <T> T requireNonNullElseGet(T obj, Supplier<T> defaultSupplier)

Returns obj if it is not null, or the default object if obj is null.

## 4.5 Method Parameters

Let us review the computer science terms that describe how parameters can be passed to a method (or a function) in a programming language. The term *call by value* means that the method gets just the value that the caller provides. In contrast, *call by reference* means that the method gets the *location* of the variable that the caller provides. Thus, a method can *modify* the value stored in a variable passed by reference but not in one passed by value. These “call by . . .” terms are standard computer science terminology describing the behavior of method parameters in various programming languages, not just Java. (There is also a *call by name* that is mainly of historical interest, being employed in the Algol programming language, one of the oldest high-level languages.)

The Java programming language *always* uses call by value. That means that the method gets a copy of all parameter values. In particular, the method cannot modify the contents of any parameter variables passed to it.

For example, consider the following call:

```
double percent = 10;  
harry.raiseSalary(percent);
```

No matter how the method is implemented, we know that after the method call, the value of percent is still 10.

Let us look a little more closely at this situation. Suppose a method tried to triple the value of a method parameter:

```
public static void tripleValue(double x) // doesn't work  
{  
    x = 3 * x;  
}
```

Let's call this method:

```
double percent = 10;  
tripleValue(percent);
```

However, this does not work. After the method call, the value of percent is still 10. Here is what happens:

1. x is initialized with a copy of the value of percent (that is, 10).
2. x is tripled—it is now 30. But percent is still 10 (see Figure 4.6).
3. The method ends, and the parameter variable x is no longer in use.

There are, however, two kinds of method parameters:

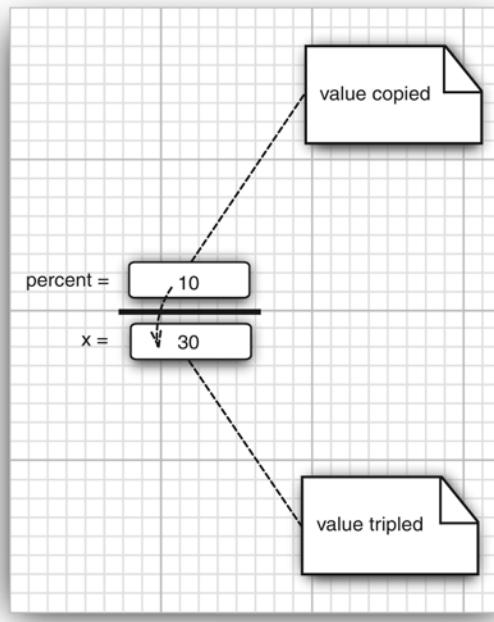
- Primitive types (numbers, boolean values)
- Object references

You have seen that it is impossible for a method to change a primitive type parameter. The situation is different for object parameters. You can easily implement a method that triples the salary of an employee:

```
public static void tripleSalary(Employee x) // works  
{  
    x.raiseSalary(200);  
}
```

When you call

```
harry = new Employee(. . .);  
tripleSalary(harry);
```



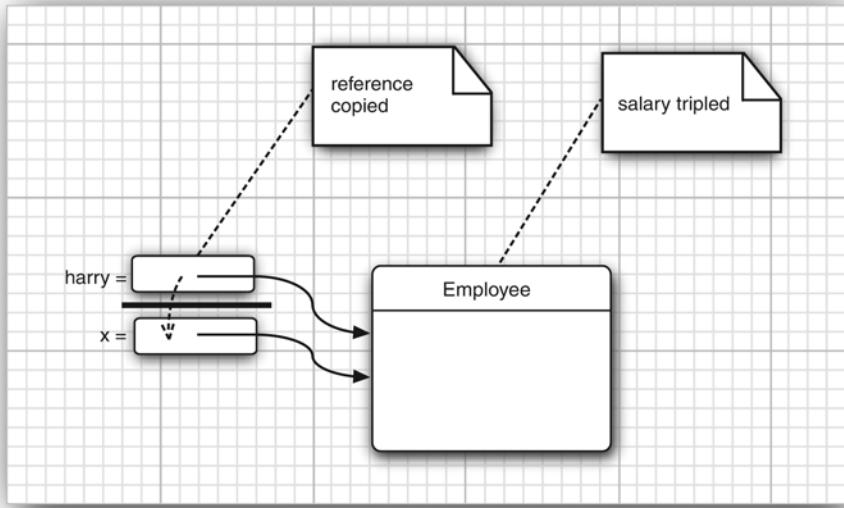
**Figure 4.6** Modifying a numeric parameter has no lasting effect.

then the following happens:

1. `x` is initialized with a copy of the value of `harry`—that is, an object reference.
2. The `raiseSalary` method is applied to that object reference. The `Employee` object to which both `x` and `harry` refer gets its salary raised by 200 percent.
3. The method ends, and the parameter variable `x` is no longer in use. Of course, the object variable `harry` continues to refer to the object whose salary was tripled (see Figure 4.7).

As you have seen, it is easily possible—and in fact very common—to implement methods that change the state of an object parameter. The reason is simple. The method gets a copy of the object reference, and both the original and the copy refer to the same object.

Many programming languages (in particular, C++ and Pascal) have two mechanisms for parameter passing: call by value and call by reference. Some programmers (and unfortunately even some book authors) claim that Java uses call by reference for objects. That is false. As this is such a common misunderstanding, it is worth examining a counterexample in detail.



**Figure 4.7** Modifying an object parameter has a lasting effect.

Let's try to write a method that swaps two `Employee` objects:

```
public static void swap(Employee x, Employee y) // doesn't work
{
    Employee temp = x;
    x = y;
    y = temp;
}
```

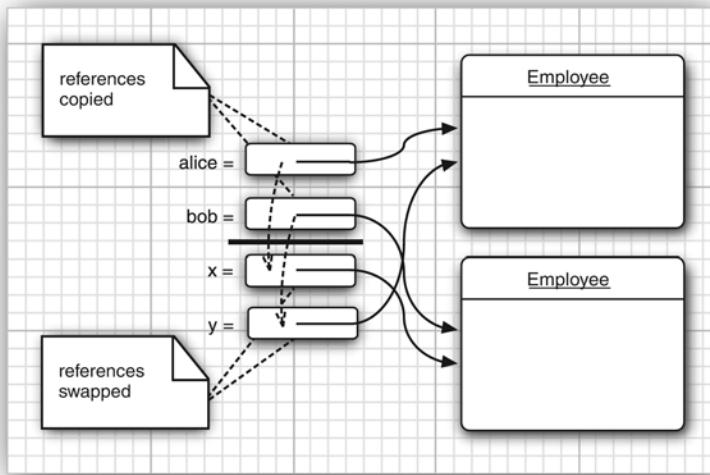
If Java used call by reference for objects, this method would work:

```
var a = new Employee("Alice", . . .);
var b = new Employee("Bob", . . .);
swap(a, b);
// does a now refer to Bob, b to Alice?
```

However, the method does not actually change the object references that are stored in the variables `a` and `b`. The `x` and `y` parameters of the `swap` method are initialized with *copies* of these references. The method then proceeds to swap these copies.

```
// x refers to Alice, y to Bob
Employee temp = x;
x = y;
y = temp;
// now x refers to Bob, y to Alice
```

But ultimately, this is a wasted effort. When the method ends, the parameter variables `x` and `y` are abandoned. The original variables `a` and `b` still refer to the same objects as they did before the method call (see Figure 4.8).



**Figure 4.8** Swapping object parameters has no lasting effect.

This demonstrates that the Java programming language does not use call by reference for objects. Instead, *object references are passed by value*.

Here is a summary of what you can and cannot do with method parameters in Java:

- A method cannot modify a parameter of a primitive type (that is, numbers or `boolean` values).
- A method can change the *state* of an object parameter.
- A method cannot make an object parameter refer to a new object.

The program in Listing 4.4 demonstrates these facts. The program first tries to triple the value of a number parameter and does not succeed:

```
Testing tripleValue:  
Before: percent=10.0  
End of method: x=30.0  
After: percent=10.0
```

It then successfully triples the salary of an employee:

```
Testing tripleSalary:  
Before: salary=50000.0  
End of method: salary=150000.0  
After: salary=150000.0
```

After the method, the state of the object to which `harry` refers has changed. This is possible because the method modified the state through a copy of the object reference.

Finally, the program demonstrates the failure of the `swap` method:

```
Testing swap:  
Before: a=Alice  
Before: b=Bob  
End of method: x=Bob  
End of method: y=Alice  
After: a=Alice  
After: b=Bob
```

As you can see, the parameter variables `x` and `y` are swapped, but the variables `a` and `b` are not affected.



**C++ NOTE:** C++ has both call by value and call by reference. You tag reference parameters with &. For example, you can easily implement methods `void tripleValue(double& x)` or `void swap(Employee& x, Employee& y)` that modify their reference parameters.

---

#### **Listing 4.4** ParamTest/ParamTest.java

---

```
1 /**
2  * This program demonstrates parameter passing in Java.
3  * @version 1.01 2018-04-10
4  * @author Cay Horstmann
5 */
6 public class ParamTest
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         /*
11          * Test 1: Methods can't modify numeric parameters
12          */
13         System.out.println("Testing tripleValue:");
14         double percent = 10;
15         System.out.println("Before: percent=" + percent);
16         tripleValue(percent);
17         System.out.println("After: percent=" + percent);
18 }
```

```
19      /*
20       * Test 2: Methods can change the state of object parameters
21       */
22     System.out.println("\nTesting tripleSalary:");
23     var harry = new Employee("Harry", 50000);
24     System.out.println("Before: salary=" + harry.getSalary());
25     tripleSalary(harry);
26     System.out.println("After: salary=" + harry.getSalary());
27
28     /*
29      * Test 3: Methods can't attach new objects to object parameters
30      */
31     System.out.println("\nTesting swap:");
32     var a = new Employee("Alice", 70000);
33     var b = new Employee("Bob", 60000);
34     System.out.println("Before: a=" + a.getName());
35     System.out.println("Before: b=" + b.getName());
36     swap(a, b);
37     System.out.println("After: a=" + a.getName());
38     System.out.println("After: b=" + b.getName());
39   }
40
41   public static void tripleValue(double x) // doesn't work
42   {
43     x = 3 * x;
44     System.out.println("End of method: x=" + x);
45   }
46
47   public static void tripleSalary(Employee x) // works
48   {
49     x.raiseSalary(200);
50     System.out.println("End of method: salary=" + x.getSalary());
51   }
52
53   public static void swap(Employee x, Employee y)
54   {
55     Employee temp = x;
56     x = y;
57     y = temp;
58     System.out.println("End of method: x=" + x.getName());
59     System.out.println("End of method: y=" + y.getName());
60   }
61 }
62
63 class Employee // simplified Employee class
64 {
65   private String name;
66   private double salary;
67 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 4.4 (Continued)**

```
68  public Employee(String n, double s)
69  {
70      name = n;
71      salary = s;
72  }
73
74  public String getName()
75  {
76      return name;
77  }
78
79  public double getSalary()
80  {
81      return salary;
82  }
83
84  public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
85  {
86      double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
87      salary += raise;
88  }
89 }
```

---

## 4.6 Object Construction

You have seen how to write simple constructors that define the initial state of your objects. However, since object construction is so important, Java offers quite a variety of mechanisms for writing constructors. We go over these mechanisms in the sections that follow.

### 4.6.1 Overloading

Some classes have more than one constructor. For example, you can construct an empty `StringBuilder` object as

```
var messages = new StringBuilder();
```

Alternatively, you can specify an initial string:

```
var todoList = new StringBuilder("To do:\n");
```

This capability is called *overloading*. Overloading occurs if several methods have the same name (in this case, the `StringBuilder` constructor method) but different parameters. The compiler must sort out which method to call. It

picks the correct method by matching the parameter types in the headers of the various methods with the types of the values used in the specific method call. A compile-time error occurs if the compiler cannot match the parameters, either because there is no match at all or because there is not one that is better than all others. (The process of finding a match is called *overloading resolution*.)



**NOTE:** Java allows you to overload any method—not just constructor methods.

Thus, to completely describe a method, you need to specify its name together with its parameter types. This is called the *signature* of the method. For example, the `String` class has four public methods called `indexOf`. They have signatures

```
indexOf(int)  
indexOf(int, int)  
indexOf(String)  
indexOf(String, int)
```

The return type is not part of the method signature. That is, you cannot have two methods with the same names and parameter types but different return types.

#### 4.6.2 Default Field Initialization

If you don't set a field explicitly in a constructor, it is automatically set to a default value: numbers to `0`, boolean values to `false`, and object references to `null`. Some people consider it poor programming practice to rely on the defaults. Certainly, it makes it harder for someone to understand your code if fields are being initialized invisibly.



**NOTE:** This is an important difference between fields and local variables. You must always explicitly initialize local variables in a method. But in a class, if you don't initialize a field, it is automatically initialized to a default (`0`, `false`, or `null`).

For example, consider the `Employee` class. Suppose you don't specify how to initialize some of the fields in a constructor. By default, the `salary` field would be initialized with `0` and the `name` and `hireDay` fields would be initialized with `null`.

However, that would not be a good idea. If anyone called the `getName` or `getHireDay` method, they would get a `null` reference that they probably don't expect:

```
LocalDate h = harry.getHireDay();  
int year = h.getYear(); // throws exception if h is null
```

### 4.6.3 The Constructor with No Arguments

Many classes contain a constructor with no arguments that creates an object whose state is set to an appropriate default. For example, here is a no-argument constructor for the `Employee` class:

```
public Employee()
{
    name = "";
    salary = 0;
    hireDay = LocalDate.now();
}
```

If you write a class with no constructors whatsoever, then a no-argument constructor is provided for you. This constructor sets *all* the instance fields to their default values. So, all numeric data contained in the instance fields would be 0, all boolean values would be false, and all object variables would be `null`.

If a class supplies at least one constructor but does not supply a no-argument constructor, it is illegal to construct objects without supplying arguments. For example, our original `Employee` class in Listing 4.2 provided a single constructor:

```
public Employee(String n, double s, int year, int month, int day)
```

With that class, it was not legal to construct default employees. That is, the call

```
e = new Employee();
```

would have been an error.



**CAUTION:** Please keep in mind that you get a free no-argument constructor *only* when your class has no other constructors. If you write your class with even a single constructor of your own and you want the users of your class to have the ability to create an instance by a call to

```
new ClassName()
```

then you must provide a no-argument constructor. Of course, if you are happy with the default values for all fields, you can simply supply

```
public ClassName()
{
}
```

---



**C++ NOTE:** C++ uses the “initializer list” syntax for constructing fields:

```
Employee::Employee(String n, double s, int y, int m, int d) // C++
: name(n),
  salary(s),
  hireDay(y, m, d)
{}
```

C++ uses this special syntax to avoid unnecessary invocations of no-argument constructors. In Java, there is no need for that because objects have no subobjects, only pointers to other objects.

#### 4.6.4 Explicit Field Initialization

By overloading the constructor methods in a class, you can build many ways to set the initial state of the instance fields of your classes. It is always a good idea to make sure that, regardless of the constructor call, every instance field is set to something meaningful.

You can simply assign a value to any field in the class definition. For example:

```
class Employee
{
    private String name = "";
    ...
}
```

This assignment is carried out before the constructor executes. This syntax is particularly useful if all constructors of a class need to set a particular instance field to the same value.

The initialization value doesn't have to be a constant value. Here is an example in which a field is initialized with a method call. Consider an `Employee` class where each employee has an `id` field. You can initialize it as follows:

```
class Employee
{
    private static int nextId;
    private int id = assignId();
    ...
    private static int assignId()
    {
        int r = nextId;
        nextId++;
        return r;
    }
    ...
}
```

### 4.6.5 Parameter Names

When you write very trivial constructors (and you'll write a lot of them), it can be somewhat frustrating to come up with parameter names.

We have generally opted for single-letter parameter names:

```
public Employee(String n, double s)
{
    name = n;
    salary = s;
}
```

However, the drawback is that you need to read the code to tell what the `n` and `s` parameters mean.

Some programmers prefix each parameter with an "a":

```
public Employee(String aName, double aSalary)
{
    name = aName;
    salary = aSalary;
}
```

That is quite neat. Any reader can immediately figure out the meaning of the parameters.

Another commonly used trick relies on the fact that parameter variables *shadow* instance fields with the same name. For example, if you call a parameter `salary`, then `salary` refers to the parameter, not the instance field. But you can still access the instance field as `this.salary`. Recall that `this` denotes the implicit parameter—that is, the object being constructed. Here is an example:

```
public Employee(String name, double salary)
{
    this.name = name;
    this.salary = salary;
}
```



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, it is common to prefix instance fields with an underscore or a fixed letter. (The letters `m` and `x` are common choices.) For example, the `salary` field might be called `_salary`, `mSalary`, or `xSalary`. Java programmers don't usually do that.

---

### 4.6.6 Calling Another Constructor

The keyword `this` refers to the implicit parameter of a method. However, this keyword has a second meaning.

If *the first statement of a constructor* has the form `this(...)`, then the constructor calls another constructor of the same class. Here is a typical example:

```
public Employee(double s)
{
    // calls Employee(String, double)
    this("Employee #" + nextId, s);
    nextId++;
}
```

When you call `new Employee(60000)`, the `Employee(double)` constructor calls the `Employee(String, double)` constructor.

Using the `this` keyword in this manner is useful—you only need to write common construction code once.



**C++ NOTE:** The `this` reference in Java is identical to the `this` pointer in C++.

However, in C++ it is not possible for one constructor to call another. If you want to factor out common initialization code in C++, you must write a separate method.

### 4.6.7 Initialization Blocks

You have already seen two ways to initialize a data field:

- By setting a value in a constructor
- By assigning a value in the declaration

There is a third mechanism in Java, called an *initialization block*. Class declarations can contain arbitrary blocks of code. These blocks are executed whenever an object of that class is constructed. For example:

```
class Employee
{
    private static int nextId;

    private int id;
    private String name;
    private double salary;

    // object initialization block
{
```

```
    id = nextId;
    nextId++;
}

public Employee(String n, double s)
{
    name = n;
    salary = s;
}

public Employee()
{
    name = "";
    salary = 0;
}
...
}
```

In this example, the `id` field is initialized in the object initialization block, no matter which constructor is used to construct an object. The initialization block runs first, and then the body of the constructor is executed.

This mechanism is never necessary and is not common. It is usually more straightforward to place the initialization code inside a constructor.



**NOTE:** It is legal to set fields in initialization blocks even if they are only defined later in the class. However, to avoid circular definitions, it is not legal to read from fields that are only initialized later. The exact rules are spelled out in Section 8.3.2.3 of the Java Language Specification (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs>). The rules are complex enough to baffle the compiler implementors—early versions of Java implemented them with subtle errors. Therefore, we suggest that you always place initialization blocks after the field definitions.

---

With so many ways of initializing data fields, it can be quite confusing to give all possible pathways for the construction process. Here is what happens in detail when a constructor is called:

1. If the first line of the constructor calls a second constructor, then the second constructor executes with the provided arguments.
2. Otherwise,
  - a) All data fields are initialized to their default values (`0`, `false`, or `null`).
  - b) All field initializers and initialization blocks are executed, in the order in which they occur in the class declaration.

### 3. The body of the constructor is executed.

Naturally, it is always a good idea to organize your initialization code so that another programmer could easily understand it without having to be a language lawyer. For example, it would be quite strange and somewhat error-prone to have a class whose constructors depend on the order in which the data fields are declared.

To initialize a static field, either supply an initial value or use a static initialization block. You have already seen the first mechanism:

```
private static int nextId = 1;
```

If the static fields of your class require complex initialization code, use a static initialization block.

Place the code inside a block and tag it with the keyword `static`. Here is an example. We want the employee ID numbers to start at a random integer less than 10,000.

```
// static initialization block
static
{
    var generator = new Random();
    nextId = generator.nextInt(10000);
}
```

Static initialization occurs when the class is first loaded. Like instance fields, static fields are `0`, `false`, or `null` unless you explicitly set them to another value. All static field initializers and static initialization blocks are executed in the order in which they occur in the class declaration.



**NOTE:** Amazingly enough, up to JDK 6, it was possible to write a “Hello, World” program in Java without ever writing a `main` method.

```
public class Hello
{
    static
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, World");
    }
}
```

When you invoked the class with `java Hello`, the class was loaded, the static initialization block printed “Hello, World”, and only then was a message displayed that `main` is not defined. Since Java 7, the java program first checks that there is a `main` method.

The program in Listing 4.5 shows many of the features that we discussed in this section:

- Overloaded constructors
- A call to another constructor with `this(...)`
- A no-argument constructor
- An object initialization block
- A static initialization block
- An instance field initialization

---

**Listing 4.5** ConstructorTest/ConstructorTest.java

---

```
1 import java.util.*;
2 
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates object construction.
5  * @version 1.02 2018-04-10
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class ConstructorTest
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
12         // fill the staff array with three Employee objects
13         var staff = new Employee[3];
14 
15         staff[0] = new Employee("Harry", 40000);
16         staff[1] = new Employee(60000);
17         staff[2] = new Employee();
18 
19         // print out information about all Employee objects
20         for (Employee e : staff)
21             System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",id=" + e.getId() + ",salary="
22                             + e.getSalary());
23     }
24 }
25 
26 class Employee
27 {
28     private static int nextId;
29 
30     private int id;
31     private String name = ""; // instance field initialization
32     private double salary;
33 }
```

```
34 // static initialization block
35 static
36 {
37     var generator = new Random();
38     // set nextId to a random number between 0 and 9999
39     nextId = generator.nextInt(10000);
40 }
41
42 // object initialization block
43 {
44     id = nextId;
45     nextId++;
46 }
47
48 // three overloaded constructors
49 public Employee(String n, double s)
50 {
51     name = n;
52     salary = s;
53 }
54
55 public Employee(double s)
56 {
57     // calls the Employee(String, double) constructor
58     this("Employee #" + nextId, s);
59 }
60
61 // the default constructor
62 public Employee()
63 {
64     // name initialized to ""--see above
65     // salary not explicitly set--initialized to 0
66     // id initialized in initialization block
67 }
68
69 public String getName()
70 {
71     return name;
72 }
73
74 public double getSalary()
75 {
76     return salary;
77 }
78
79 public int getId()
80 {
81     return id;
82 }
83 }
```

```
java.util.Random 1.0
```

- `Random()`  
constructs a new random number generator.
- `int nextInt(int n)` **1.2**  
returns a random number between 0 and `n - 1`.

#### 4.6.8 Object Destruction and the `finalize` Method

Some object-oriented programming languages, notably C++, have explicit destructor methods for any cleanup code that may be needed when an object is no longer used. The most common activity in a destructor is reclaiming the memory set aside for objects. Since Java does automatic garbage collection, manual memory reclamation is not needed, so Java does not support destructors.

Of course, some objects utilize a resource other than memory, such as a file or a handle to another object that uses system resources. In this case, it is important that the resource be reclaimed and recycled when it is no longer needed.

If a resource needs to be closed as soon as you have finished using it, supply a `close` method that does the necessary cleanup. You can call the `close` method when you are done with the object. In Chapter 7, you will see how you can ensure that this method is called automatically.

If you can wait until the virtual machine exits, add a “shutdown hook” with the method `Runtime.addShutdownHook`. As of Java 9, you can use the `Cleaner` class to register an action that is carried out when an object is no longer reachable (other than by the cleaner). These are uncommon situations in practice. See the API documentation for details on these two approaches.



**CAUTION:** Do not use the `finalize` method for cleanup. That method was intended to be called before the garbage collector sweeps away an object. However, you simply cannot know when this method will be called, and it is now deprecated.

---

### 4.7 Packages

Java allows you to group classes in a collection called a *package*. Packages are convenient for organizing your work and for separating your work from code

libraries provided by others. In the following sections, you will learn how to use and create packages.

### 4.7.1 Package Names

The main reason for using packages is to guarantee the uniqueness of class names. Suppose two programmers come up with the bright idea of supplying an `Employee` class. As long as both of them place their class into different packages, there is no conflict. In fact, to absolutely guarantee a unique package name, use an Internet domain name (which is known to be unique) written in reverse. You then use subpackages for different projects. For example, consider the domain `horstmann.com`. When written in reverse order, it turns into the package name `com.horstmann`. You can then append a project name, such as `com.horstmann.corejava`. If you then place the `Employee` class into that package, the “fully qualified” name becomes `com.horstmann.corejava.Employee`.



**NOTE:** From the point of view of the compiler, there is absolutely no relationship between nested packages. For example, the packages `java.util` and `java.util.jar` have nothing to do with each other. Each is its own independent collection of classes.

### 4.7.2 Class Importation

A class can use all classes from its own package and all *public* classes from other packages.

You can access the public classes in another package in two ways. The first is simply to use the *fully qualified name*; that is, the package name followed by the class name. For example:

```
java.time.LocalDate today = java.time.LocalDate.now();
```

That is obviously tedious. A simpler, and more common, approach is to use the `import` statement. The point of the `import` statement is to give you a shorthand to refer to the classes in the package. Once you add an `import`, you no longer have to give the classes their full names.

You can import a specific class or the whole package. You place `import` statements at the top of your source files (but below any `package` statements). For example, you can import all classes in the `java.time` package with the statement

```
import java.time.*;
```

Then you can use

```
LocalDate today = LocalDate.now();
```

without a package prefix. You can also import a specific class inside a package:

```
import java.time.LocalDate;
```

The `java.time.*` syntax is less tedious. It has no negative effect on code size. However, if you import classes explicitly, the reader of your code knows exactly which classes you use.



**TIP:** In Eclipse, you can select the menu option Source → Organize Imports.

Package statements such as `import java.util.*;` are automatically expanded into a list of specific imports such as

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Date;
```

This is an extremely convenient feature.

---

However, note that you can only use the `*` notation to import a single package. You cannot use `import java.*` or `import java.*.*` to import all packages with the `java` prefix.

Most of the time, you just import the packages that you need, without worrying too much about them. The only time that you need to pay attention to packages is when you have a name conflict. For example, both the `java.util` and `java.sql` packages have a `Date` class. Suppose you write a program that imports both packages.

```
import java.util.*;
import java.sql.*;
```

If you now use the `Date` class, you get a compile-time error:

```
Date today; // ERROR--java.util.Date or java.sql.Date?
```

The compiler cannot figure out which `Date` class you want. You can solve this problem by adding a specific `import` statement:

```
import java.util.*;
import java.sql.*;
import java.util.Date;
```

What if you really need both `Date` classes? Then use the full package name with every class name:

```
var deadline = new java.util.Date();
var today = new java.sql.Date(. . .);
```

Locating classes in packages is an activity of the *compiler*. The bytecodes in class files always use full package names to refer to other classes.



**C++ NOTE:** C++ programmers sometimes confuse `import` with `#include`. The two have nothing in common. In C++, you must use `#include` to include the declarations of external features because the C++ compiler does not look inside any files except the one that it is compiling and its explicitly included header files. The Java compiler will happily look inside other files provided you tell it where to look.

In Java, you can entirely avoid the `import` mechanism by explicitly naming all classes, such as `java.util.Date`. In C++, you cannot avoid the `#include` directives.

The only benefit of the `import` statement is convenience. You can refer to a class by a name shorter than the full package name. For example, after an `import java.util.*` (or `import java.util.Date`) statement, you can refer to the `java.util.Date` class simply as `Date`.

In C++, the construction analogous to the package mechanism is the namespace feature. Think of the package and `import` statements in Java as the analogs of the namespace and using directives in C++.

### 4.7.3 Static Imports

A form of the `import` statement permits the importing of static methods and fields, not just classes.

For example, if you add the directive

```
import static java.lang.System.*;
```

to the top of your source file, then you can use the static methods and fields of the `System` class without the class name prefix:

```
out.println("Goodbye, World!"); // i.e., System.out  
exit(0); // i.e., System.exit
```

You can also import a specific method or field:

```
import static java.lang.System.out;
```

In practice, it seems doubtful that many programmers will want to abbreviate `System.out` or `System.exit`. The resulting code seems less clear. On the other hand,

```
sqrt(pow(x, 2) + pow(y, 2))
```

seems much clearer than

```
Math.sqrt(Math.pow(x, 2) + Math.pow(y, 2))
```

#### 4.7.4 Addition of a Class into a Package

To place classes inside a package, put the name of the package at the top of your source file, *before* the code that defines the classes in the package. For example, the file `Employee.java` in Listing 4.7 starts out like this:

```
package com.horstmann.corejava;

public class Employee
{
    ...
}
```

If you don't put a `package` statement in the source file, then the classes in that source file belong to the *unnamed package*. The unnamed package has no package name. Up to now, all our example classes were located in the unnamed package.

Place source files into a subdirectory that matches the full package name. For example, all source files in the `com.horstmann.corejava` package should be in a subdirectory `com/horstmann/corejava` (`com\horstmann\corejava` on Windows). The compiler places the class files into the same directory structure.

The program in Listings 4.6 and 4.7 is distributed over two packages: The `PackageTest` class belongs to the unnamed package, and the `Employee` class belongs to the `com.horstmann.corejava` package. Therefore, the `Employee.java` file must be in a subdirectory `com/horstmann/corejava`. In other words, the directory structure is as follows:

```
. (base directory)
└── PackageTest.java
└── PackageTest.class
└── com/
    └── horstmann/
        └── corejava/
            └── Employee.java
            └── Employee.class
```

To compile this program, simply change to the base directory and run the command

```
javac PackageTest.java
```

The compiler automatically finds the file `com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.java` and compiles it.

Let's look at a more realistic example, in which we don't use the unnamed package but have classes distributed over several packages (`com.horstmann.corejava` and `com.mycompany`).

```
. (base directory)
└ com/
  └ horstmann/
    └ corejava/
      └ Employee.java
      └ Employee.class
  └ mycompany/
    └ PayrollApp.java
    └ PayrollApp.class
```

In this situation, you still must compile and run classes from the *base* directory—that is, the directory containing the `com` directory:

```
javac com/mycompany/PayrollApp.java
java com.mycompany.PayrollApp
```

Note again that the compiler operates on *files* (with file separators and an extension `.java`), whereas the Java interpreter loads a *class* (with dot separators).



**TIP:** Starting with the next chapter, we will use packages for the source code. That way, you can make an IDE project for each chapter instead of each section.



**CAUTION:** The compiler does *not* check the directory structure when it compiles source files. For example, suppose you have a source file that starts with the directive

```
package com.mycompany;
```

You can compile the file even if it is not contained in a subdirectory `com/mycompany`. The source file will compile without errors *if it doesn't depend on other packages*. However, the resulting program will not run unless you first move all class files to the right place. The *virtual machine* won't find the classes if the packages don't match the directories.

#### **Listing 4.6** PackageTest/PackageTest.java

```
1 import com.horstmann.corejava.*;
2 // the Employee class is defined in that package
3
4 import static java.lang.System.*;
5
6 /**
7 * This program demonstrates the use of packages.
```

(Continues)

**Listing 4.6** *(Continued)*

```
8  * @version 1.11 2004-02-19
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class PackageTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         // because of the import statement, we don't have to use
16         // com.horstmann.corejava.Employee here
17         var harry = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
18
19         harry.raiseSalary(5);
20
21         // because of the static import statement, we don't have to use System.out here
22         out.println("name=" + harry.getName() + ",salary=" + harry.getSalary());
23     }
24 }
```

---

**Listing 4.7** PackageTest/com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.java

```
1 package com.horstmann.corejava;
2
3 // the classes in this file are part of this package
4
5 import java.time.*;
6
7 // import statements come after the package statement
8
9 /**
10  * @version 1.11 2015-05-08
11  * @author Cay Horstmann
12  */
13 public class Employee
14 {
15     private String name;
16     private double salary;
17     private LocalDate hireDay;
18
19     public Employee(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
20     {
21         this.name = name;
22         this.salary = salary;
23         hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
24     }
25 }
```

```
26     public String getName()
27     {
28         return name;
29     }
30
31     public double getSalary()
32     {
33         return salary;
34     }
35
36     public LocalDate getHireDay()
37     {
38         return hireDay;
39     }
40
41     public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
42     {
43         double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
44         salary += raise;
45     }
46 }
```

#### 4.7.5 Package Access

You have already encountered the access modifiers `public` and `private`. Features tagged as `public` can be used by any class. Private features can be used only by the class that defines them. If you don't specify either `public` or `private`, the feature (that is, the class, method, or variable) can be accessed by all methods in the same *package*.

Consider the program in Listing 4.2. The `Employee` class was not defined as a `public` class. Therefore, only the other classes (such as `EmployeeTest`) in the same package—the unnamed package in this case—can access it. For classes, this is a reasonable default. However, for variables, this was an unfortunate choice. Variables must explicitly be marked `private`, or they will default to having package access. This, of course, breaks encapsulation. The problem is that it is awfully easy to forget to type the `private` keyword. Here is an example from the `Window` class in the `java.awt` package, which is part of the source code supplied with the JDK:

```
public class Window extends Container
{
    String warningString;
    ...
}
```

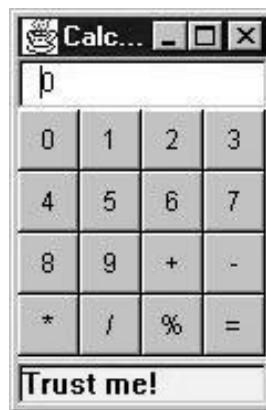
Note that the `warningString` variable is not `private`! That means the methods of all classes in the `java.awt` package can access this variable and set it to whatever

they like (such as "Trust me!"). Actually, the only methods that access this variable are in the `Window` class, so it would have been entirely appropriate to make the variable private. Perhaps the programmer typed the code in a hurry and simply forgot the `private` modifier? Perhaps nobody cared? After more than twenty years, that variable is still not private. Not only that—new fields have been added to the class over time, and about half of them aren't private either.

This can be a problem. By default, packages are not closed entities. That is, anyone can add more classes to a package. Of course, hostile or clueless programmers can then add code that modifies variables with package access. For example, in early versions of Java, it was an easy matter to smuggle another class into the `java.awt` package. Simply start out the class with

```
package java.awt;
```

Then, place the resulting class file inside a subdirectory `java/awt` somewhere on the class path, and you have gained access to the internals of the `java.awt` package. Through this subterfuge, it was possible to set the warning string (see Figure 4.9).



**Figure 4.9** Changing the warning string in an applet window

Starting with version 1.2, the JDK implementors rigged the class loader to explicitly disallow loading of user-defined classes whose package name starts with "java.". Of course, your own classes don't benefit from that protection. Another mechanism, now obsolete, lets a JAR file declare packages as *sealed*, preventing third parties from augmenting them. Nowadays, you should use modules to encapsulate packages. We discuss modules in detail in Chapter 9 of Volume II.

#### 4.7.6 The Class Path

As you have seen, classes are stored in subdirectories of the file system. The path to the class must match the package name.

Class files can also be stored in a JAR (Java archive) file. A JAR file contains multiple class files and subdirectories in a compressed format, saving space and improving performance. When you use a third-party library in your programs, you will usually be given one or more JAR files to include. You will see in Chapter 11 how to create your own JAR files.



**TIP:** JAR files use the ZIP format to organize files and subdirectories. You can use any ZIP utility to peek inside JAR files.

To share classes among programs, you need to do the following:

1. Place your class files inside a directory—for example, `/home/user/classdir`. Note that this directory is the *base* directory for the package tree. If you add the class `com.horstmann.corejava.Employee`, then the `Employee.class` file must be located in the subdirectory `/home/user/classdir/com/horstmann/corejava`.
2. Place any JAR files inside a directory—for example, `/home/user/archives`.
3. Set the *class path*. The class path is the collection of all locations that can contain class files.

In UNIX, the elements on the class path are separated by colons:

`/home/user/classdir:::/home/user/archives/archive.jar`

In Windows, they are separated by semicolons:

`c:\classdir;.;c:\archives\archive.jar`

In both cases, the period denotes the current directory.

This class path contains

- The base directory `/home/user/classdir` or `c:\classdir`;
- The current directory `(.)`; and
- The JAR file `/home/user/archives/archive.jar` or `c:\archives\archive.jar`.

Starting with Java 6, you can specify a wildcard for a JAR file directory, like this:

`/home/user/classdir:::/home/user/archives/*`

or

```
c:\classdir;;c:\archives\*
```

In UNIX, the \* must be escaped to prevent shell expansion.

All JAR files (but not .class files) in the archives directory are included in this class path.

The Java API is always searched for classes; don't include it explicitly in the class path.



**CAUTION:** The javac compiler always looks for files in the current directory, but the java virtual machine launcher only looks into the current directory if the “.” directory is on the class path. If you have no class path set, it's not a problem—the default class path consists of the “.” directory. But if you have set the class path and forgot to include the “.” directory, your programs will compile without error, but they won't run.

---

The class path lists all directories and archive files that are *starting points* for locating classes. Let's consider our sample class path:

```
/home/user/classdir:::/home/user/archives/archive.jar
```

Suppose the virtual machine searches for the class file of the com.horstmann.corejava.Employee class. It first looks in the Java API classes. It won't find the class file there, so it turns to the class path. It then looks for the following files:

- /home/user/classdir/com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.class
- com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.class starting from the current directory
- com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.class inside /home/user/archives/archive.jar

The compiler has a harder time locating files than does the virtual machine. If you refer to a class without specifying its package, the compiler first needs to find out the package that contains the class. It consults all import directives as possible sources for the class. For example, suppose the source file contains directives

```
import java.util.*;
import com.horstmann.corejava.*;
```

and the source code refers to a class Employee. The compiler then tries to find java.lang.Employee (because the java.lang package is always imported by default), java.util.Employee, com.horstmann.corejava.Employee, and Employee in the current package. It searches for *each* of these classes in all of the locations of the class path. It

is a compile-time error if more than one class is found. (Fully qualified class names must be unique, so the order of the `import` statements doesn't matter.)

The compiler goes one step further. It looks at the *source files* to see if the source is newer than the class file. If so, the source file is recompiled automatically. Recall that you can import only public classes from other packages. A source file can only contain one public class, and the names of the file and the public class must match. Therefore, the compiler can easily locate source files for public classes. However, you can import nonpublic classes from the current package. These classes may be defined in source files with different names. If you import a class from the current package, the compiler searches *all* source files of the current package to see which one defines the class.

#### 4.7.7 Setting the Class Path

It is best to specify the class path with the option `-classpath` (or `-cp` or, as of Java 9, `--class-path`):

```
java -classpath /home/user/classdir.:./home/user/archives/archive.jar MyProg
```

or

```
java -classpath c:\classdir;.;c:\archives\archive.jar MyProg
```

The entire command must be typed onto a single line. It is a good idea to place such a long command line into a shell script or a batch file.

Using the `-classpath` option is the preferred approach for setting the class path. An alternate approach is the `CLASSPATH` environment variable. The details depend on your shell. With the Bourne Again shell (bash), use the command

```
export CLASSPATH=/home/user/classdir.:./home/user/archives/archive.jar
```

With the Windows shell, use

```
set CLASSPATH=c:\classdir;.;c:\archives\archive.jar
```

The class path is set until the shell exits.



**CAUTION:** Some people recommend to set the `CLASSPATH` environment variable permanently. This is generally a bad idea. People forget the global setting, and are surprised when their classes are not loaded properly. A particularly reprehensible example is Apple's QuickTime installer in Windows. For several years, it globally set `CLASSPATH` to point to a JAR file it needed, but did not include the current directory in the classpath. As a result, countless Java programmers were driven to distraction when their programs compiled but failed to run.



**CAUTION:** In the past, some people recommended to bypass the class path altogether, by dropping all JAR files into the `jre/lib/ext` directory. That mechanism is obsolete with Java 9, but it was always bad advice. It was easy to get confused when long-forgotten classes were loaded from the extension directory.

---



**NOTE:** As of Java 9, classes can also be loaded from the *module path*. We discuss modules and the module path in Chapter 9 of Volume II.

---

## 4.8 JAR Files

When you package your application, you want to give your users a single file, not a directory structure filled with class files. Java Archive (JAR) files were designed for this purpose. A JAR file can contain both class files and other file types such as image and sound files. Moreover, JAR files are compressed, using the familiar ZIP compression format.

### 4.8.1 Creating JAR files

Use the `jar` tool to make JAR files. (In the default JDK installation, it's in the `jdk/bin` directory.) The most common command to make a new JAR file uses the following syntax:

```
jar cvf jarFileName file1 file2 . . .
```

For example:

```
jar cvf CalculatorClasses.jar *.class icon.gif
```

In general, the `jar` command has the following format:

```
jar options file1 file2 . . .
```

Table 4.2 lists all the options for the `jar` program. They are similar to the options of the UNIX `tar` command.

You can package application programs and code libraries into JAR files. For example, if you want to send mail in a Java program, you use a library that is packaged in a file `javax.mail.jar`.

**Table 4.2** jar Program Options

Option	Description
c	Creates a new or empty archive and adds files to it. If any of the specified file names are directories, the jar program processes them recursively.
C	Temporarily changes the directory. For example, <code>jar cvf jarFileName.jar -C classes *.class</code> changes to the classes subdirectory to add class files.
e	Creates an entry point in the manifest (see Section 4.8.3).
f	Specifies the JAR file name as the second command-line argument. If this parameter is missing, jar will write the result to standard output (when creating a JAR file) or read it from standard input (when extracting or tabulating a JAR file).
i	Creates an index file (for speeding up lookups in a large archive).
m	Adds a <i>manifest</i> to the JAR file. A manifest is a description of the archive contents and origin. Every archive has a default manifest, but you can supply your own if you want to authenticate the contents of the archive.
M	Does not create a manifest file for the entries.
t	Displays the table of contents.
u	Updates an existing JAR file.
v	Generates verbose output.
x	Extracts files. If you supply one or more file names, only those files are extracted. Otherwise, all files are extracted.
ø	Stores without ZIP compression.

## 4.8.2 The Manifest

In addition to class files, images, and other resources, each JAR file contains a *manifest* file that describes special features of the archive.

The manifest file is called `MANIFEST.MF` and is located in a special `META-INF` subdirectory of the JAR file. The minimum legal manifest is quite boring—just

`Manifest-Version: 1.0`

Complex manifests can have many more entries. The manifest entries are grouped into sections. The first section in the manifest is called the *main section*. It applies to the whole JAR file. Subsequent entries can specify properties of named entities such as individual files, packages, or URLs. Those entries must begin with a `Name` entry. Sections are separated by blank lines. For example:

`Manifest-Version: 1.0`  
*lines describing this archive*

`Name: Woozle.class`  
*lines describing this file*  
`Name: com/mycompany/mypkg/`  
*lines describing this package*

To edit the manifest, place the lines that you want to add to the manifest into a text file. Then run

`jar cfm jarFileName manifestFileName . . .`

For example, to make a new JAR file with a manifest, run

`jar cfm MyArchive.jar manifest.mf com/mycompany/mypkg/*.class`

To update the manifest of an existing JAR file, place the additions into a text file and use a command such as

`jar ufm MyArchive.jar manifest-additions.mf`



**NOTE:** See <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/10/docs/specs/jar/jar.html> for more information on the JAR and manifest file formats.

---

### 4.8.3 Executable JAR Files

You can use the `e` option of the `jar` command to specify the *entry point* of your program—the class that you would normally specify when invoking the `java` program launcher:

`jar cvfe MyProgram.jar com.mycompany.mypkg.MainAppClass files to add`

Alternatively, you can specify the *main class* of your program in the manifest, including a statement of the form

`Main-Class: com.mycompany.mypkg.MainAppClass`

Do not add a `.class` extension to the main class name.



**CAUTION:** The last line in the manifest must end with a newline character. Otherwise, the manifest will not be read correctly. It is a common error to produce a text file containing just the Main-Class line without a line terminator.

With either method, users can simply start the program as

```
java -jar MyProgram.jar
```

Depending on the operating system configuration, users may even be able to launch the application by double-clicking the JAR file icon. Here are behaviors for various operating systems:

- On Windows, the Java runtime installer creates a file association for the “.jar” extension that launches the file with the `javaw -jar` command. (Unlike the `java` command, the `javaw` command doesn’t open a shell window.)
- On Mac OS X, the operating system recognizes the “.jar” file extension and executes the Java program when you double-click a JAR file.

However, a Java program in a JAR file does not have the same feel as a native application. On Windows, you can use third-party wrapper utilities that turn JAR files into Windows executables. A wrapper is a Windows program with the familiar .exe extension that locates and launches the Java virtual machine (JVM) or tells the user what to do when no JVM is found. There are a number of commercial and open source products, such as Launch4J (<http://launch4j.sourceforge.net>) and IzPack (<http://izpack.org>).

#### 4.8.4 Multi-Release JAR Files

With the introduction of modules and strong encapsulation of packages, some previously accessible internal APIs are no longer available. For example, JavaFX 8 had an internal class `com.sun.javafx.css.CssParser`. If you used it to parse a style sheet, then you will find that your program no longer compiles. The remedy is simple—switch to `javafx.css.CssParser`, which is available in Java 9. But now you have a problem. You need to distribute different applications for Java 8 and Java 9 users, or you need to play tricks with class loading and reflection.

To solve problems such as this one, Java 9 introduces *multi-release JARs* that can contain class files for different Java releases.

For backwards compatibility, the additional class files are placed in the `META-INF/versions` directory:

```
Application.class
BuildingBlocks.class
Util.class
META-INF
└ MANIFEST.MF (with line Multi-Release: true)
  versions
    └ 9
      └ Application.class
        └ BuildingBlocks.class
    └ 10
      └ BuildingBlocks.class
```

Suppose the `Application` class makes use of the `CssParser` class. Then the legacy `Application.class` file can be compiled to use `com.sun.javafx.css.CssParser`, while the Java 9 version uses `javafx.css.CssParser`.

Java 8 knows nothing about the `META-INF/versions` directory and will simply load the legacy classes. When the JAR file is read by Java 9, the new version is used instead.

To add versioned class files, use the `--release` flag:

```
jar uf MyProgram.jar --release 9 Application.class
```

To build a multi-release JAR file from scratch, use the `-C` option and switch to a different class file directory for each version:

```
jar cf MyProgram.jar -C bin/8 . --release 9 -C bin/9 Application.class
```

When compiling for different releases, use the `--release` flag and the `-d` flag to specify the output directory:

```
javac -d bin/8 --release 8 . . .
```

As of Java 9, the `-d` option creates the directory if it doesn't exist.

The `--release` flag is also new with Java 9. In older versions, you needed to use the `-source`, `-target`, and `-bootclasspath` flags. The JDK now ships with symbol files for two prior versions of the API. In Java 9, you can compile with `--release` set to 9, 8, or 7.

Multi-release JARs are not intended for different versions of a program or library. The public API of all classes should be the same for both releases. The sole purpose of multi-release JARs is to enable a particular version of your program or library to work with multiple JDK releases. If you add functionality or change an API, you should provide a new version of the JAR instead.



**NOTE:** Tools such as `javap` are not retrofitted to handle multi-release JAR files. If you call

```
javap -classpath MyProgram.jar Application.class
```

you get the base version of the class (which, after all, is supposed to have the same public API as the newer version). If you must look at the newer version, call

```
javap -classpath MyProgram.jar\!/META-INF/versions/9/Application.class
```

#### 4.8.5 A Note about Command-Line Options

The options of commands in the Java Development Kit have traditionally used single dashes followed by multiletter option names, such as

```
java -jar . . .
javac -Xlint:unchecked -classpath . . .
```

The exception was the `jar` command, which followed the classic option format of the `tar` command without dashes:

```
jar cvf . . .
```

Starting with Java 9, the Java tools are moving towards a more common option format where multiletter option names are preceded by double dashes, with single-letter shortcuts for common options. For example, the Linux `ls` command can be called with a “human-readable” option as

```
ls --human-readable
```

or

```
ls -h
```

As of Java 9, you can use `--version` instead of `-version` and `--class-path` instead of `-classpath`. As you will see in Chapter 9 of Volume II, the `--module-path` option has a shortcut `-p`.

You can find the details in the JEP 293 enhancement request at <http://openjdk.java.net/jeps/293>. As part of this cleanup, the authors also propose to standardize option arguments. Arguments of options with `--` and multiple letters are separated by whitespace or an `=` sign:

```
javac --class-path /home/user/classdir . . .
```

or

```
javac --class-path=/home/user/classdir . . .
```

Arguments of single-letter options can be separated by whitespace or directly follow the option:

```
javac -p moduledir . . .
```

or

```
javac -pmoduledir . . .
```



**CAUTION:** The latter doesn't currently work, and it also seems like a bad idea in general. Why invite conflicts with legacy options if the module directory happens to be a parameters or processor?

---

Single-letter options without arguments can be grouped together:

```
jar -cvf MyProgram.jar -e mypackage.MyProgram */*.class
```



**CAUTION:** That doesn't currently work, and it is bound to lead to confusion. Suppose javac gains a -c option. Does javac -cp mean javac -c -p, or does the legacy -cp take precedence?

---

This has created a muddle that will hopefully get cleaned up over time. As much as we'd like to move away from the archaic jar options, it seems best to wait until the dust has settled. But if you want to be thoroughly modern, you can safely use the long options of the jar command:

```
jar --create --verbose --file jarFileName file1 file2 . . .
```

Single-letter options also work if you don't group them:

```
jar -c -v -f jarFileName file1 file2 . . .
```

## 4.9 Documentation Comments

The JDK contains a very useful tool, called javadoc, that generates HTML documentation from your source files. In fact, the online API documentation that we described in Chapter 3 is simply the result of running javadoc on the source code of the standard Java library.

If you add comments that start with the special delimiter `/**` to your source code, you too can easily produce professional-looking documentation. This is a very nice approach because it lets you keep your code and documentation in one place. If you put your documentation into a separate file, then, as you probably know, the code and comments tend to diverge over time. When

documentation comments are in the same file as the source code, it is an easy matter to update both and run javadoc again.

### 4.9.1 Comment Insertion

The javadoc utility extracts information for the following items:

- Modules
- Packages
- Public classes and interfaces
- Public and protected fields
- Public and protected constructors and methods

Protected features are introduced in Chapter 5, interfaces in Chapter 6, and modules in Chapter 9 of Volume II.

You can (and should) supply a comment for each of these features. Each comment is placed immediately *above* the feature it describes. A comment starts with a `/**` and ends with a `*/`.

Each `/** . . . */` documentation comment contains *free-form text* followed by tags. A tag starts with an @, such as `@since` or `@param`.

The *first sentence* of the free-form text should be a *summary statement*. The javadoc utility automatically generates summary pages that extract these sentences.

In the free-form text, you can use HTML modifiers such as `<em>. . .</em>` for emphasis, `<strong>. . .</strong>` for strong emphasis, `<ul>/<li>` for bulleted lists, and `<img . . ./>` to include an image. To type monospaced code, use `{@code . . . }` instead of `<code>. . .</code>`—then you don't have to worry about escaping < characters inside the code.



**NOTE:** If your comments contain links to other files such as images (for example, diagrams or images of user interface components), place those files into a subdirectory, named `doc-files`, of the directory containing the source file. The javadoc utility will copy the `doc-files` directories and their contents from the source directory to the documentation directory. You need to use the `doc-files` directory in your link, for example ``.

### 4.9.2 Class Comments

The class comment must be placed *after* any `import` statements, directly before the class definition.

Here is an example of a class comment:

```
/**  
 * A {code Card} object represents a playing card, such  
 * as "Queen of Hearts". A card has a suit (Diamond, Heart,  
 * Spade or Club) and a value (1 = Ace, 2 . . . 10, 11 = Jack,  
 * 12 = Queen, 13 = King)  
 */  
public class Card  
{  
    . . .  
}
```



**NOTE:** There is no need to add an \* in front of every line. For example, the following comment is equally valid:

```
/**  
 * A <code>Card</code> object represents a playing card, such  
 * as "Queen of Hearts". A card has a suit (Diamond, Heart,  
 * Spade or Club) and a value (1 = Ace, 2 . . . 10, 11 = Jack,  
 * 12 = Queen, 13 = King).  
 */
```

However, most IDEs supply the asterisks automatically and rearrange them when the line breaks change.

---

### 4.9.3 Method Comments

Each method comment must immediately precede the method that it describes. In addition to the general-purpose tags, you can use the following tags:

- `@param variable description`

This tag adds an entry to the “parameters” section of the current method. The description can span multiple lines and can use HTML tags. All `@param` tags for one method must be kept together.

- `@return description`

This tag adds a “returns” section to the current method. The description can span multiple lines and can use HTML tags.

- `@throws class description`

This tag adds a note that this method may throw an exception. Exceptions are the topic of Chapter 7.

Here is an example of a method comment:

```
/**  
 * Raises the salary of an employee.  
 * @param byPercent the percentage by which to raise the salary (e.g., 10 means 10%)  
 * @return the amount of the raise  
 */  
public double raiseSalary(double byPercent)  
{  
    double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;  
    salary += raise;  
    return raise;  
}
```

#### 4.9.4 Field Comments

You only need to document public fields—generally that means static constants. For example:

```
/**  
 * The "Hearts" card suit  
 */  
public static final int HEARTS = 1;
```

#### 4.9.5 General Comments

The tag `@since text` makes a “since” entry. The `text` can be any description of the version that introduced this feature. For example, `@since 1.7.1`.

The following tags can be used in class documentation comments:

- `@author name`

This tag makes an “author” entry. You can have multiple `@author` tags, one for each author. Don’t feel compelled to use this tag—your version control system does a more thorough job tracking authorship.

- `@version text`

This tag makes a “version” entry. The `text` can be any description of the current version.

You can use hyperlinks to other relevant parts of the javadoc documentation, or to external documents, with the `@see` and `@link` tags.

The tag `@see reference` adds a hyperlink in the “see also” section. It can be used with both classes and methods. Here, `reference` can be one of the following:

```
package.class#feature label  
<a href=". . .">label</a>  
"text"
```

The first case is the most useful. You supply the name of a class, method, or variable, and javadoc inserts a hyperlink to the documentation. For example,

```
@see com.horstmann.corejava.Employee#raiseSalary(double)
```

makes a link to the `raiseSalary(double)` method in the `com.horstmann.corejava.Employee` class. You can omit the name of the package, or both the package and class names. Then, the feature will be located in the current package or class.

Note that you must use a #, not a period, to separate the class from the method or variable name. The Java compiler itself is highly skilled in determining the various meanings of the period character as separator between packages, subpackages, classes, inner classes, and methods and variables. But the javadoc utility isn't quite as clever, so you have to help it along.

If the `@see` tag is followed by a < character, then you need to specify a hyperlink. You can link to any URL you like. For example:

```
@see <a href="www.horstmann.com/corejava.html">The Core Java home page</a>
```

In each of these cases, you can specify an optional *label* that will appear as the link anchor. If you omit the label, the user will see the target code name or URL as the anchor.

If the `@see` tag is followed by a " character, then the text is displayed in the "see also" section. For example:

```
@see "Core Java 2 volume 2"
```

You can add multiple `@see` tags for one feature, but you must keep them all together.

If you like, you can place hyperlinks to other classes or methods anywhere in any of your documentation comments. Insert a special tag of the form

```
{@link package.class#feature label}
```

anywhere in a comment. The feature description follows the same rules as for the `@see` tag.

Finally, as of Java 9, you can use the `{@index entry}` tag to add an entry to the search box.

#### 4.9.6 Package Comments

Place the class, method, and variable comments directly into the Java source files, delimited by `/** ... */` documentation comments. However, to generate *package* comments, you need to add a separate file in each package directory. You have two choices:

1. Supply a Java file named `package-info.java`. The file must contain an initial Javadoc comment, delimited with `/**` and `*/`, followed by a `package` statement. It should contain no further code or comments.
2. Supply an HTML file named `package.html`. All text between the tags `<body>. . .</body>` is extracted.

#### 4.9.7 Comment Extraction

Here, `docDirectory` is the name of the directory where you want the HTML files to go. Follow these steps:

1. Change to the directory that contains the source files you want to document. If you have nested packages to document, such as `com.horstmann.corejava`, you must be working in the directory that contains the subdirectory `com`. (This is the directory that contains the `overview.html` file, if you supplied one.)
2. Run the command

```
javadoc -d docDirectory nameOfPackage
```

for a single package. Or, run

```
javadoc -d docDirectory nameOfPackage1 nameOfPackage2. . .
```

to document multiple packages. If your files are in the unnamed package, run instead

```
javadoc -d docDirectory *.java
```

If you omit the `-d docDirectory` option, the HTML files are extracted to the current directory. That can get messy, and we don't recommend it.

The `javadoc` program can be fine-tuned by numerous command-line options. For example, you can use the `-author` and `-version` options to include the `@author` and `@version` tags in the documentation. (By default, they are omitted.) Another useful option is `-link`, to include hyperlinks to standard classes. For example, if you use the command

```
javadoc -link http://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/docs/api *.java
```

all standard library classes are automatically linked to the documentation on the Oracle web site.

If you use the `-linksource` option, each source file is converted to HTML (without color coding, but with line numbers), and each class and method name turns into a hyperlink to the source.

You can also supply an overview comment for all source files. Place it in a file such as `overview.html` and run the `javadoc` tool with the command line option `-overview filename`. All text between the tags `<body> . . . </body>` is extracted. The content is displayed when the user selects “Overview” from the navigation bar.

For additional options, we refer you to the online documentation of the `javadoc` utility at <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/javadoc/javadoc.htm>.

## 4.10 Class Design Hints

Without trying to be comprehensive or tedious, we want to end this chapter with some hints that will make your classes more acceptable in well-mannered OOP circles.

1. *Always keep data private.*

This is first and foremost; doing anything else violates encapsulation. You may need to write an accessor or mutator method occasionally, but you are still better off keeping the instance fields private. Bitter experience shows that the data representation may change, but how this data are used will change much less frequently. When data are kept private, changes in their representation will not affect the users of the class, and bugs are easier to detect.

2. *Always initialize data.*

Java won’t initialize local variables for you, but it will initialize instance fields of objects. Don’t rely on the defaults, but initialize all variables explicitly, either by supplying a default or by setting defaults in all constructors.

3. *Don’t use too many basic types in a class.*

The idea is to replace multiple *related* uses of basic types with other classes. This keeps your classes easier to understand and to change. For example, replace the following instance fields in a `Customer` class:

```
private String street;  
private String city;  
private String state;  
private int zip;
```

with a new class called `Address`. This way, you can easily cope with changes to addresses, such as the need to deal with international addresses.

4. Not all fields need individual field accessors and mutators.

You may need to get and set an employee's salary. You certainly won't need to change the hiring date once the object is constructed. And, quite often, objects have instance fields that you don't want others to get or set, such as an array of state abbreviations in an Address class.

5. Break up classes that have too many responsibilities.

This hint is, of course, vague: "too many" is obviously in the eye of the beholder. However, if there is an obvious way to break one complicated class into two classes that are conceptually simpler, seize the opportunity. (On the other hand, don't go overboard; ten classes, each with only one method, are usually an overkill.)

Here is an example of a bad design:

```
public class CardDeck // bad design
{
    private int[] value;
    private int[] suit;

    public CardDeck() { . . . }
    public void shuffle() { . . . }
    public int getTopValue() { . . . }
    public int getTopSuit() { . . . }
    public void draw() { . . . }
}
```

This class really implements two separate concepts: a *deck of cards*, with its `shuffle` and `draw` methods, and a *card*, with the methods to inspect its value and suit. It makes sense to introduce a `Card` class that represents an individual card. Now you have two classes, each with its own responsibilities:

```
public class CardDeck
{
    private Card[] cards;

    public CardDeck() { . . . }
    public void shuffle() { . . . }
    public Card getTop() { . . . }
    public void draw() { . . . }
}

public class Card
{
    private int value;
    private int suit;
```

```
public Card(int aValue, int aSuit) { . . . }
public int getValue() { . . . }
public int getSuit() { . . . }
}
```

6. *Make the names of your classes and methods reflect their responsibilities.*

Just as variables should have meaningful names that reflect what they represent, so should classes. (The standard library certainly contains some dubious examples, such as the `Date` class that describes time.)

A good convention is that a class name should be a noun (`Order`), or a noun preceded by an adjective (`RushOrder`) or a gerund (an “-ing” word, as in `BillingAddress`). As for methods, follow the standard convention that accessor methods begin with a lowercase `get` (`getSalary`) and mutator methods use a lowercase `set` (`setSalary`).

7. *Prefer immutable classes.*

The `LocalDate` class, and other classes from the `java.time` package, are immutable—no method can modify the state of an object. Instead of mutating objects, methods such as `plusDays` return new objects with the modified state.

The problem with mutation is that it can happen concurrently when multiple threads try to update an object at the same time. The results are unpredictable. When classes are immutable, it is safe to share their objects among multiple threads.

Therefore, it is a good idea to make classes immutable when you can. This is particularly easy with classes that represent values, such as a string or a point in time. Computations can simply yield new values instead of updating existing ones.

Of course, not all classes should be immutable. It would be strange to have the `raiseSalary` method return a new `Employee` object when an employee gets a raise.

In this chapter, we covered the fundamentals of objects and classes that make Java an “object-based” language. In order to be truly object-oriented, a programming language must also support inheritance and polymorphism. The Java support for these features is the topic of the next chapter.

# Inheritance

## In this chapter

- 5.1 Classes, Superclasses, and Subclasses, page 208
- 5.2 Object: The Cosmic Superclass, page 232
- 5.3 Generic Array Lists, page 248
- 5.4 Object Wrappers and Autoboxing, page 256
- 5.5 Methods with a Variable Number of Parameters, page 260
- 5.6 Enumeration Classes, page 261
- 5.7 Reflection, page 264
- 5.8 Design Hints for Inheritance, page 290

Chapter 4 introduced you to classes and objects. In this chapter, you will learn about *inheritance*, another fundamental concept of object-oriented programming. The idea behind inheritance is that you can create new classes that are built on existing classes. When you inherit from an existing class, you reuse (or inherit) its methods, and you can add new methods and fields to adapt your new class to new situations. This technique is essential in Java programming.

This chapter also covers *reflection*, the ability to find out more about classes and their properties in a running program. Reflection is a powerful feature, but it is undeniably complex. Since reflection is of greater interest to tool builders than to application programmers, you can probably glance over that part of the chapter upon first reading and come back to it later.

## 5.1 Classes, Superclasses, and Subclasses

Let's return to the `Employee` class that we discussed in the previous chapter. Suppose (alas) you work for a company where managers are treated differently from other employees. Managers are, of course, just like employees in many respects. Both employees and managers are paid a salary. However, while employees are expected to complete their assigned tasks in return for receiving their salary, managers get *bonuses* if they actually achieve what they are supposed to do. This is the kind of situation that cries out for inheritance. Why? Well, you need to define a new class, `Manager`, and add functionality. But you can retain some of what you have already programmed in the `Employee` class, and *all* the fields of the original class can be preserved. More abstractly, there is an obvious "is-a" relationship between `Manager` and `Employee`. Every manager *is an* employee: This "is-a" relationship is the hallmark of inheritance.



**NOTE:** In this chapter, we use the classic example of employees and managers, but we must ask you to take this example with a grain of salt. In the real world, an employee can become a manager, so you would want to model being a manager as a role of an employee, not a subclass. In our example, however, we assume the corporate world is populated by two kinds of people: those who are forever employees, and those who have always been managers.

---

### 5.1.1 Defining Subclasses

Here is how you define a `Manager` class that inherits from the `Employee` class. Use the Java keyword `extends` to denote inheritance.

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    added methods and fields
}
```



**C++ NOTE:** Inheritance is similar in Java and C++. Java uses the `extends` keyword instead of the `:` token. All inheritance in Java is public inheritance; there is no analog to the C++ features of private and protected inheritance.

---

The keyword `extends` indicates that you are making a new class that derives from an existing class. The existing class is called the *superclass*, *base class*, or *parent class*. The new class is called the *subclass*, *derived class*, or *child class*. The terms *superclass* and *subclass* are those most commonly used by Java programmers, although some programmers prefer the parent/child analogy, which also ties in nicely with the "inheritance" theme.

The `Employee` class is a superclass, but not because it is superior to its subclass or contains more functionality. *In fact, the opposite is true:* Subclasses have *more* functionality than their superclasses. For example, as you will see when we go over the rest of the `Manager` class code, the `Manager` class encapsulates more data and has more functionality than its superclass `Employee`.



**NOTE:** The prefixes *super* and *sub* come from the language of sets used in theoretical computer science and mathematics. The set of all employees contains the set of all managers, and thus is said to be a *superset* of the set of managers. Or, to put it another way, the set of all managers is a *subset* of the set of all employees.

Our `Manager` class has a new field to store the bonus, and a new method to set it:

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    private double bonus;
    ...
    public void setBonus(double bonus)
    {
        this.bonus = bonus;
    }
}
```

There is nothing special about these methods and fields. If you have a `Manager` object, you can simply apply the `setBonus` method.

```
Manager boss = . . .;
boss.setBonus(5000);
```

Of course, if you have an `Employee` object, you cannot apply the `setBonus` method—it is not among the methods defined in the `Employee` class.

However, you *can* use methods such as `getName` and `getHireDay` with `Manager` objects. Even though these methods are not explicitly defined in the `Manager` class, they are automatically inherited from the `Employee` superclass.

Similarly, the fields `name`, `salary`, and `hireDay` are taken from the superclass. Every `Manager` object has four fields: `name`, `salary`, `hireDay`, and `bonus`.

When defining a subclass by extending its superclass, you only need to indicate the *differences* between the subclass and the superclass. When designing classes, you place the most general methods in the superclass and more specialized methods in its subclasses. Factoring out common functionality by moving it to a superclass is routine in object-oriented programming.

### 5.1.2 Overriding Methods

Some of the superclass methods are not appropriate for the Manager subclass. In particular, the `getSalary` method should return the sum of the base salary and the bonus. You need to supply a new method to *override* the superclass method:

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    ...
    public double getSalary()
    {
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

How can you implement this method? At first glance, it appears to be simple—just return the sum of the `salary` and `bonus` fields:

```
public double getSalary()
{
    return salary + bonus; // won't work
}
```

However, that won't work. Recall that only the `Employee` methods have direct access to the private fields of the `Employee` class. This means that the `getSalary` method of the `Manager` class cannot directly access the `salary` field. If the `Manager` methods want to access those private fields, they have to do what every other method does—use the public interface, in this case the public `getSalary` method of the `Employee` class.

So, let's try again. You need to call `getSalary` instead of simply accessing the `salary` field:

```
public double getSalary()
{
    double baseSalary = getSalary(); // still won't work
    return baseSalary + bonus;
}
```

Now, the problem is that the call to `getSalary` simply calls *itself*, because the `Manager` class has a `getSalary` method (namely, the method we are trying to implement). The consequence is an infinite chain of calls to the same method, leading to a program crash.

We need to indicate that we want to call the `getSalary` method of the `Employee` superclass, not the current class. You use the special keyword `super` for this purpose. The call

```
super.getSalary()
```

calls the `getSalary` method of the `Employee` class. Here is the correct version of the `getSalary` method for the `Manager` class:

```
public double getSalary()
{
    double baseSalary = super.getSalary();
    return baseSalary + bonus;
}
```



**NOTE:** Some people think of `super` as being analogous to the `this` reference. However, that analogy is not quite accurate: `super` is not a reference to an object. For example, you cannot assign the value `super` to another object variable. Instead, `super` is a special keyword that directs the compiler to invoke the superclass method.

As you saw, a subclass can *add* fields, and it can *add* methods or *override* the methods of the superclass. However, inheritance can never take away any fields or methods.



**C++ NOTE:** Java uses the keyword `super` to call a superclass method. In C++, you would use the name of the superclass with the `::` operator instead. For example, the `getSalary` method of the `Manager` class would call `Employee::getSalary` instead of `super.getSalary`.

### 5.1.3 Subclass Constructors

To complete our example, let us supply a constructor.

```
public Manager(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
{
    super(name, salary, year, month, day);
    bonus = 0;
}
```

Here, the keyword `super` has a different meaning. The instruction

```
super(name, salary, year, month, day);
```

is shorthand for “call the constructor of the `Employee` superclass with `n`, `s`, `year`, `month`, and `day` as parameters.”

Since the `Manager` constructor cannot access the private fields of the `Employee` class, it must initialize them through a constructor. The constructor is invoked

with the special `super` syntax. The call using `super` must be the first statement in the constructor for the subclass.

If the subclass constructor does not call a superclass constructor explicitly, the no-argument constructor of the superclass is invoked. If the superclass does not have a no-argument constructor and the subclass constructor does not call another superclass constructor explicitly, the Java compiler reports an error.



**NOTE:** Recall that the `this` keyword has two meanings: to denote a reference to the implicit parameter and to call another constructor of the same class.

Likewise, the `super` keyword has two meanings: to invoke a superclass method and to invoke a superclass constructor. When used to invoke constructors, the `this` and `super` keywords are closely related. The constructor calls can only occur as the first statement in another constructor. The constructor parameters are either passed to another constructor of the same class (`this`) or a constructor of the superclass (`super`).

---



**C++ NOTE:** In a C++ constructor, you do not call `super`, but you use the initializer list syntax to construct the superclass. The `Manager` constructor would look like this in C++:

```
// C++
Manager::Manager(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
: Employee(name, salary, year, month, day)
{
    bonus = 0;
}
```

---

After you redefine the `getSalary` method for `Manager` objects, managers will automatically have the bonus added to their salaries.

Here's an example of this at work. We make a new manager and set the manager's bonus:

```
Manager boss = new Manager("Carl Cracker", 80000, 1987, 12, 15);
boss.setBonus(5000);
```

We make an array of three employees:

```
var staff = new Employee[3];
```

We populate the array with a mix of managers and employees:

```
staff[0] = boss;
staff[1] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
staff[2] = new Employee("Tony Tester", 40000, 1990, 3, 15);
```

We print out everyone's salary:

```
for (Employee e : staff)
    System.out.println(e.getName() + " " + e.getSalary());
```

This loop prints the following data:

```
Carl Cracker 85000.0
Harry Hacker 50000.0
Tommy Tester 40000.0
```

Now `staff[1]` and `staff[2]` each print their base salary because they are `Employee` objects. However, `staff[0]` is a `Manager` object whose `getSalary` method adds the bonus to the base salary.

What is remarkable is that the call

```
e.getSalary()
```

picks out the *correct* `getSalary` method. Note that the *declared* type of `e` is `Employee`, but the *actual* type of the object to which `e` refers can be either `Employee` or `Manager`.

When `e` refers to an `Employee` object, the call `e.getSalary()` calls the `getSalary` method of the `Employee` class. However, when `e` refers to a `Manager` object, then the `getSalary` method of the `Manager` class is called instead. The virtual machine knows about the actual type of the object to which `e` refers, and therefore can invoke the correct method.

The fact that an object variable (such as the variable `e`) can refer to multiple actual types is called *polymorphism*. Automatically selecting the appropriate method at runtime is called *dynamic binding*. We discuss both topics in more detail in this chapter.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, you need to declare a member function as `virtual` if you want dynamic binding. In Java, dynamic binding is the default behavior; if you do *not* want a method to be `virtual`, you tag it as `final`. (We discuss the `final` keyword later in this chapter.)

---

Listing 5.1 contains a program that shows how the salary computation differs for `Employee` (Listing 5.2) and `Manager` (Listing 5.3) objects.

**Listing 5.1** inheritance/ManagerTest.java

```
1 package inheritance;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates inheritance.
5  * @version 1.21 2004-02-21
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class ManagerTest
9 {
10    public static void main(String[] args)
11    {
12        // construct a Manager object
13        var boss = new Manager("Carl Cracker", 80000, 1987, 12, 15);
14        boss.setBonus(5000);
15
16        var staff = new Employee[3];
17
18        // fill the staff array with Manager and Employee objects
19
20        staff[0] = boss;
21        staff[1] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
22        staff[2] = new Employee("Tommy Tester", 40000, 1990, 3, 15);
23
24        // print out information about all Employee objects
25        for (Employee e : staff)
26            System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",salary=" + e.getSalary());
27    }
28 }
```

**Listing 5.2** inheritance/Employee.java

```
1 package inheritance;
2
3 import java.time.*;
4
5 public class Employee
6 {
7     private String name;
8     private double salary;
9     private LocalDate hireDay;
10
11    public Employee(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
12    {
13        this.name = name;
14        this.salary = salary;
```

```
15     hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
16 }
17
18 public String getName()
19 {
20     return name;
21 }
22
23 public double getSalary()
24 {
25     return salary;
26 }
27
28 public LocalDate getHireDay()
29 {
30     return hireDay;
31 }
32
33 public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
34 {
35     double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
36     salary += raise;
37 }
38 }
```

**Listing 5.3** inheritance/Manager.java

```
1 package inheritance;
2
3 public class Manager extends Employee
4 {
5     private double bonus;
6
7     /**
8      * @param name the employee's name
9      * @param salary the salary
10     * @param year the hire year
11     * @param month the hire month
12     * @param day the hire day
13     */
14     public Manager(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
15     {
16         super(name, salary, year, month, day);
17         bonus = 0;
18     }
19 }
```

*(Continues)*

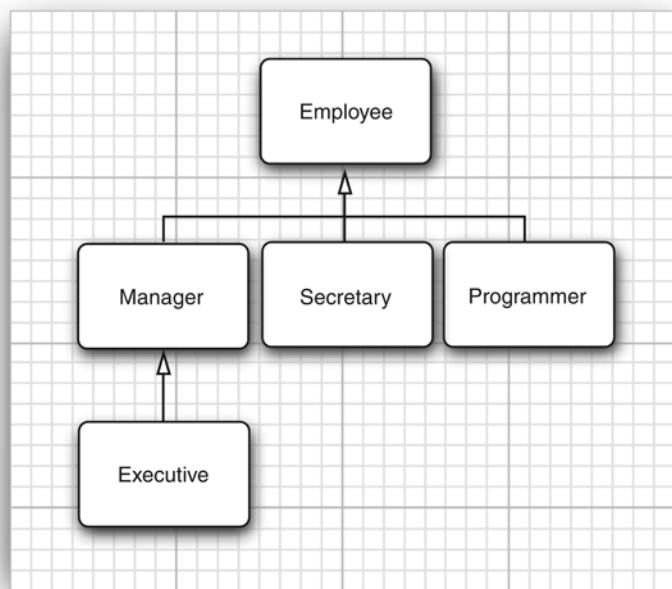
**Listing 5.3 (Continued)**

```
20     public double getSalary()
21     {
22         double baseSalary = super.getSalary();
23         return baseSalary + bonus;
24     }
25
26     public void setBonus(double b)
27     {
28         bonus = b;
29     }
30 }
```

---

### 5.1.4 Inheritance Hierarchies

Inheritance need not stop at deriving one layer of classes. We could have an Executive class that extends Manager, for example. The collection of all classes extending a common superclass is called an *inheritance hierarchy*, as shown in Figure 5.1. The path from a particular class to its ancestors in the inheritance hierarchy is its *inheritance chain*.



**Figure 5.1** Employee inheritance hierarchy

There is usually more than one chain of descent from a distant ancestor class. You could form subclasses `Programmer` or `Secretary` that extend `Employee`, and they would have nothing to do with the `Manager` class (or with each other). This process can continue as long as is necessary.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, a class can have multiple superclasses. Java does not support multiple inheritance. For ways to recover much of the functionality of multiple inheritance, see Section 6.1, “Interfaces,” on p. 296.

### 5.1.5 Polymorphism

A simple rule can help you decide whether or not inheritance is the right design for your data. The “is-a” rule states that every object of the subclass is an object of the superclass. For example, every manager is an employee. Thus, it makes sense for the `Manager` class to be a subclass of the `Employee` class. Naturally, the opposite is not true—not every employee is a manager.

Another way of formulating the “is-a” rule is the *substitution principle*. That principle states that you can use a subclass object whenever the program expects a superclass object.

For example, you can assign a subclass object to a superclass variable.

```
Employee e;  
e = new Employee(. . .); // Employee object expected  
e = new Manager(. . .); // OK, Manager can be used as well
```

In the Java programming language, object variables are *polymorphic*. A variable of type `Employee` can refer to an object of type `Employee` or to an object of any subclass of the `Employee` class (such as `Manager`, `Executive`, `Secretary`, and so on).

We took advantage of this principle in Listing 5.1:

```
Manager boss = new Manager(. . .);  
Employee[] staff = new Employee[3];  
staff[0] = boss;
```

In this case, the variables `staff[0]` and `boss` refer to the same object. However, `staff[0]` is considered to be only an `Employee` object by the compiler.

That means you can call

```
boss.setBonus(5000); // OK
```

but you can't call

```
staff[0].setBonus(5000); // ERROR
```

The declared type of `staff[0]` is `Employee`, and the `setBonus` method is not a method of the `Employee` class.

However, you cannot assign a superclass reference to a subclass variable. For example, it is not legal to make the assignment

```
Manager m = staff[i]; // ERROR
```

The reason is clear: Not all employees are managers. If this assignment were to succeed and `m` were to refer to an `Employee` object that is not a manager, then it would later be possible to call `m.setBonus(...)` and a runtime error would occur.



**CAUTION:** In Java, arrays of subclass references can be converted to arrays of superclass references without a cast. For example, consider this array of managers:

```
Manager[] managers = new Manager[10];
```

It is legal to convert this array to an `Employee[]` array:

```
Employee[] staff = managers; // OK
```

Sure, why not, you may think. After all, if `managers[i]` is a `Manager`, it is also an `Employee`. But actually, something surprising is going on. Keep in mind that `managers` and `staff` are references to the same array. Now consider the statement

```
staff[0] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", ...);
```

The compiler will cheerfully allow this assignment. But `staff[0]` and `managers[0]` are the same reference, so it looks as if we managed to smuggle a mere employee into the management ranks. That would be very bad—calling `managers[0].setBonus(1000)` would try to access a nonexistent instance field and would corrupt neighboring memory.

To make sure no such corruption can occur, all arrays remember the element type with which they were created, and they monitor that only compatible references are stored into them. For example, the array created as `new Manager[10]` remembers that it is an array of managers. Attempting to store an `Employee` reference causes an `ArrayStoreException`.

---

### 5.1.6 Understanding Method Calls

It is important to understand exactly how a method call is applied to an object. Let's say we call `x.f(args)`, and the implicit parameter `x` is declared to be an object of class `C`. Here is what happens:

1. The compiler looks at the declared type of the object and the method name. Note that there may be multiple methods, all with the same name, *f*, but with different parameter types. For example, there may be a method *f(int)* and a method *f(String)*. The compiler enumerates all methods called *f* in the class *C* and all accessible methods called *f* in the superclasses of *C*. (Private methods of the superclass are not accessible.)

Now the compiler knows all possible candidates for the method to be called.

2. Next, the compiler determines the types of the arguments supplied in the method call. If among all the methods called *f* there is a unique method whose parameter types are a best match for the supplied arguments, that method is chosen to be called. This process is called *overloading resolution*. For example, in a call *x.f("Hello")*, the compiler picks *f(String)* and not *f(int)*. The situation can get complex because of type conversions (*int* to *double*, *Manager* to *Employee*, and so on). If the compiler cannot find any method with matching parameter types or if multiple methods all match after applying conversions, the compiler reports an error.

Now the compiler knows the name and parameter types of the method that needs to be called.



**NOTE:** Recall that the name and parameter type list for a method is called the method's *signature*. For example, *f(int)* and *f(String)* are two methods with the same name but different signatures. If you define a method in a subclass that has the same signature as a superclass method, you override the superclass method.

The return type is not part of the signature. However, when you override a method, you need to keep the return type compatible. A subclass may change the return type to a subtype of the original type. For example, suppose the *Employee* class has a method

```
public Employee getBuddy() { . . . }
```

A manager would never want to have a lowly employee as a buddy. To reflect that fact, the *Manager* subclass can override this method as

```
public Manager getBuddy() { . . . } // OK to change return type
```

We say that the two *getBuddy* methods have *covariant* return types.

3. If the method is `private`, `static`, `final`, or a constructor, then the compiler knows exactly which method to call. (The `final` modifier is explained in the next section.) This is called *static binding*. Otherwise, the method to be called depends on the actual type of the implicit parameter, and dynamic binding must be used at runtime. In our example, the compiler would generate an instruction to call `f(String)` with dynamic binding.
4. When the program runs and uses dynamic binding to call a method, the virtual machine must call the version of the method that is appropriate for the *actual* type of the object to which `x` refers. Let's say the actual type is `D`, a subclass of `C`. If the class `D` defines a method `f(String)`, that method is called. If not, `D`'s superclass is searched for a method `f(String)`, and so on.

It would be time-consuming to carry out this search every time a method is called. Instead, the virtual machine precomputes for each class a *method table* that lists all method signatures and the actual methods to be called. When a method is actually called, the virtual machine simply makes a table lookup. In our example, the virtual machine consults the method table for the class `D` and looks up the method to call for `f(String)`. That method may be `D.f(String)` or `X.f(String)`, where `X` is some superclass of `D`. There is one twist to this scenario. If the call is `super.f(param)`, then the compiler consults the method table of the superclass of the implicit parameter.

Let's look at this process in detail in the call `e.getSalary()` in Listing 5.1. The declared type of `e` is `Employee`. The `Employee` class has a single method, called `getSalary`, with no method parameters. Therefore, in this case, we don't worry about overloading resolution.

The `getSalary` method is not `private`, `static`, or `final`, so it is dynamically bound. The virtual machine produces method tables for the `Employee` and `Manager` classes. The `Employee` table shows that all methods are defined in the `Employee` class itself:

```
Employee:  
  getName() -> Employee.getName()  
  getSalary() -> Employee.getSalary()  
  getHireDay() -> Employee.getHireDay()  
  raiseSalary(double) -> Employee.raiseSalary(double)
```

Actually, that isn't the whole story—as you will see later in this chapter, the `Employee` class has a superclass `Object` from which it inherits a number of methods. We ignore the `Object` methods for now.

The `Manager` method table is slightly different. Three methods are inherited, one method is redefined, and one method is added.

```
Manager:  
    getName() -> Employee.getName()  
    getSalary() -> Manager.getSalary()  
    getHireDay() -> Employee.getHireDay()  
    raiseSalary(double) -> Employee.raiseSalary(double)  
    setBonus(double) -> Manager.setBonus(double)
```

At runtime, the call `e.getSalary()` is resolved as follows:

1. First, the virtual machine fetches the method table for the actual type of `e`. That may be the table for `Employee`, `Manager`, or another subclass of `Employee`.
2. Then, the virtual machine looks up the defining class for the `getSalary()` signature. Now it knows which method to call.
3. Finally, the virtual machine calls the method.

Dynamic binding has a very important property: It makes programs *extensible* without the need for modifying existing code. Suppose a new class `Executive` is added and there is the possibility that the variable `e` refers to an object of that class. The code containing the call `e.getSalary()` need not be recompiled. The `Executive.getSalary()` method is called automatically if `e` happens to refer to an object of type `Executive`.



**CAUTION:** When you override a method, the subclass method must be *at least as visible* as the superclass method. In particular, if the superclass method is `public`, the subclass method must also be declared `public`. It is a common error to accidentally omit the `public` specifier for the subclass method. The compiler then complains that you try to supply a more restrictive access privilege.

### 5.1.7 Preventing Inheritance: Final Classes and Methods

Occasionally, you want to prevent someone from forming a subclass of one of your classes. Classes that cannot be extended are called *final* classes, and you use the `final` modifier in the definition of the class to indicate this. For example, suppose we want to prevent others from subclassing the `Executive` class. Simply declare the class using the `final` modifier, as follows:

```
public final class Executive extends Manager  
{  
    ...  
}
```

You can also make a specific method in a class `final`. If you do this, then no subclass can override that method. (All methods in a `final` class are automatically `final`.) For example:

```
public class Employee
{
    ...
    public final String getName()
    {
        return name;
    }
    ...
}
```



**NOTE:** Recall that fields can also be declared as `final`. A `final` field cannot be changed after the object has been constructed. However, if a class is declared `final`, only the methods, not the fields, are automatically `final`.

---

There is only one good reason to make a method or class `final`: to make sure its semantics cannot be changed in a subclass. For example, the `getTime` and `setTime` methods of the `Calendar` class are `final`. This indicates that the designers of the `Calendar` class have taken over responsibility for the conversion between the `Date` class and the calendar state. No subclass should be allowed to mess up this arrangement. Similarly, the `String` class is a `final` class. That means nobody can define a subclass of `String`. In other words, if you have a `String` reference, you know it refers to a `String` and nothing but a `String`.

Some programmers believe that you should declare all methods as `final` unless you have a good reason to want polymorphism. In fact, in C++ and C#, methods do not use polymorphism unless you specifically request it. That may be a bit extreme, but we agree that it is a good idea to think carefully about `final` methods and classes when you design a class hierarchy.

In the early days of Java, some programmers used the `final` keyword hoping to avoid the overhead of dynamic binding. If a method is not overridden, and it is short, then a compiler can optimize the method call away—a process called *inlining*. For example, inlining the call `e.getName()` replaces it with the field access `e.name`. This is a worthwhile improvement—CPUs hate branching because it interferes with their strategy of prefetching instructions while processing the current one. However, if `getName` can be overridden in another class, then the compiler cannot inline it because it has no way of knowing what the overriding code may do.

Fortunately, the just-in-time compiler in the virtual machine can do a better job than a traditional compiler. It knows exactly which classes extend a given class, and it can check whether any class actually overrides a given method. If a method is short, frequently called, and not actually overridden, the just-in-time compiler can inline it. What happens if the virtual machine loads

another subclass that overrides an inlined method? Then the optimizer must undo the inlining. That takes time, but it happens rarely.

### 5.1.8 Casting

Recall from Chapter 3 that the process of forcing a conversion from one type to another is called casting. The Java programming language has a special notation for casts. For example,

```
double x = 3.405;
int nx = (int) x;
```

converts the value of the expression `x` into an integer, discarding the fractional part.

Just as you occasionally need to convert a floating-point number to an integer, you may need to convert an object reference from one class to another. To actually make a cast of an object reference, use a syntax similar to what you use for casting numeric expressions. Surround the target class name with parentheses and place it before the object reference you want to cast. For example:

```
Manager boss = (Manager) staff[0];
```

There is only one reason why you would want to make a cast—to use an object in its full capacity after its actual type has been temporarily forgotten. For example, in the `ManagerTest` class, the `staff` array had to be an array of `Employee` objects because *some* of its elements were regular employees. We would need to cast the managerial elements of the array back to `Manager` to access any of its new variables. (Note that in the sample code for the first section, we made a special effort to avoid the cast. We initialized the `boss` variable with a `Manager` object before storing it in the array. We needed the correct type to set the bonus of the manager.)

As you know, in Java every variable has a type. The type describes the kind of object the variable refers to and what it can do. For example, `staff[i]` refers to an `Employee` object (so it can also refer to a `Manager` object).

The compiler checks that you do not promise too much when you store a value in a variable. If you assign a subclass reference to a superclass variable, you are promising less, and the compiler will simply let you do it. If you assign a superclass reference to a subclass variable, you are promising more. Then you must use a cast so that your promise can be checked at runtime.

What happens if you try to cast down an inheritance chain and are “lying” about what an object contains?

```
Manager boss = (Manager) staff[1]; // ERROR
```

When the program runs, the Java runtime system notices the broken promise and generates a `ClassCastException`. If you do not catch the exception, your program terminates. Thus, it is good programming practice to find out whether a cast will succeed before attempting it. Simply use the `instanceof` operator. For example:

```
if (staff[1] instanceof Manager)
{
    boss = (Manager) staff[1];
    ...
}
```

Finally, the compiler will not let you make a cast if there is no chance for the cast to succeed. For example, the cast

```
String c = (String) staff[1];
```

is a compile-time error because `String` is not a subclass of `Employee`.

To sum up:

- You can cast only within an inheritance hierarchy.
- Use `instanceof` to check before casting from a superclass to a subclass.



**NOTE:** The test

`x instanceof C`

does not generate an exception if `x` is `null`. It simply returns `false`. That makes sense: `null` refers to no object, so it certainly doesn't refer to an object of type `C`.

---

Actually, converting the type of an object by a cast is not usually a good idea. In our example, you do not need to cast an `Employee` object to a `Manager` object for most purposes. The `getSalary` method will work correctly on both objects of both classes. The dynamic binding that makes polymorphism work locates the correct method automatically.

The only reason to make the cast is to use a method that is unique to managers, such as `setBonus`. If for some reason you find yourself wanting to call `setBonus` on `Employee` objects, ask yourself whether this is an indication of a design flaw in the superclass. It may make sense to redesign the superclass and add a `setBonus` method. Remember, it takes only one uncaught `ClassCastException` to terminate your program. In general, it is best to minimize the use of casts and the `instanceof` operator.



**C++ NOTE:** Java uses the cast syntax from the “bad old days” of C, but it works like the safe `dynamic_cast` operation of C++. For example,

```
Manager boss = (Manager) staff[1]; // Java
```

is the same as

```
Manager* boss = dynamic_cast<Manager*>(staff[1]); // C++
```

with one important difference. If the cast fails, it does not yield a null object but throws an exception. In this sense, it is like a C++ cast of *references*. This is a pain in the neck. In C++, you can take care of the type test and type conversion in one operation.

```
Manager* boss = dynamic_cast<Manager*>(staff[1]); // C++  
if (boss != NULL) . . .
```

In Java, you need to use a combination of the `instanceof` operator and a cast.

```
if (staff[1] instanceof Manager)  
{  
    Manager boss = (Manager) staff[1];  
    . . .  
}
```

## 5.1.9 Abstract Classes

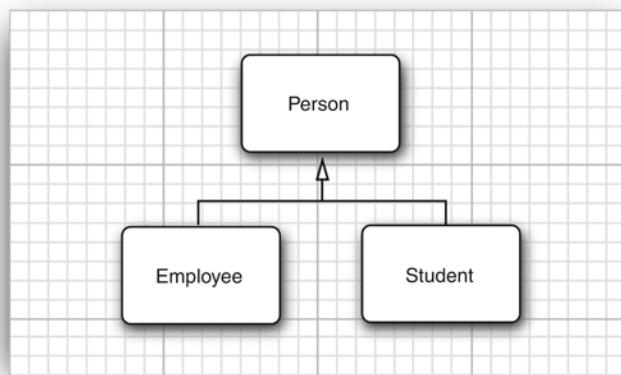
As you move up the inheritance hierarchy, classes become more general and probably more abstract. At some point, the ancestor class becomes *so* general that you think of it more as a basis for other classes than as a class with specific instances you want to use. Consider, for example, an extension of our `Employee` class hierarchy. An employee is a person, and so is a student. Let us extend our class hierarchy to include classes `Person` and `Student`. Figure 5.2 shows the inheritance relationships between these classes.

Why bother with so high a level of abstraction? There are some attributes that make sense for every person, such as name. Both students and employees have names, and introducing a common superclass lets us factor out the `getName` method to a higher level in the inheritance hierarchy.

Now let’s add another method, `getDescription`, whose purpose is to return a brief description of the person, such as

```
an employee with a salary of $50,000.00  
a student majoring in computer science
```

It is easy to implement this method for the `Employee` and `Student` classes. But what information can you provide in the `Person` class? The `Person` class knows nothing about the person except the name. Of course, you could implement



**Figure 5.2** Inheritance diagram for Person and its subclasses

`Person.getDescription()` to return an empty string. But there is a better way. If you use the `abstract` keyword, you do not need to implement the method at all.

```
public abstract String getDescription();
// no implementation required
```

For added clarity, a class with one or more abstract methods must itself be declared abstract.

```
public abstract class Person
{
    .
    public abstract String getDescription();
}
```

In addition to abstract methods, abstract classes can have fields and concrete methods. For example, the `Person` class stores the name of the person and has a concrete method that returns it.

```
public abstract class Person
{
    private String name;

    public Person(String name)
    {
        this.name = name;
    }

    public abstract String getDescription();

    public String getName()
    {
```

```
    return name;  
}  
}
```



**TIP:** Some programmers don't realize that abstract classes can have concrete methods. You should always move common fields and methods (whether abstract or not) to the superclass (whether abstract or not).

Abstract methods act as placeholders for methods that are implemented in the subclasses. When you extend an abstract class, you have two choices. You can leave some or all of the abstract methods undefined; then you must tag the subclass as abstract as well. Or you can define all methods, and the subclass is no longer abstract.

For example, we will define a `Student` class that extends the abstract `Person` class and implements the `getDescription` method. None of the methods of the `Student` class are abstract, so it does not need to be declared as an abstract class.

A class can even be declared as `abstract` though it has no abstract methods.

Abstract classes cannot be instantiated. That is, if a class is declared as `abstract`, no objects of that class can be created. For example, the expression

```
new Person("Vince Vu")
```

is an error. However, you can create objects of concrete subclasses.

Note that you can still create *object variables* of an abstract class, but such a variable must refer to an object of a nonabstract subclass. For example:

```
Person p = new Student("Vince Vu", "Economics");
```

Here `p` is a variable of the abstract type `Person` that refers to an instance of the nonabstract subclass `Student`.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, an abstract method is called a *pure virtual function* and is tagged with a trailing `= 0`, such as in

```
class Person // C++  
{  
public:  
    virtual string getDescription() = 0;  
    . . .  
};
```

A C++ class is abstract if it has at least one pure virtual function. In C++, there is no special keyword to denote abstract classes.

Let us define a concrete subclass `Student` that extends the abstract class `Person`:

```
public class Student extends Person
{
    private String major;

    public Student(String name, String major)
    {
        super(name);
        this.major = major;
    }

    public String getDescription()
    {
        return "a student majoring in " + major;
    }
}
```

The `Student` class defines the `getDescription` method. Therefore, all methods in the `Student` class are concrete, and the class is no longer an abstract class.

The program shown in Listing 5.4 defines the abstract superclass `Person` (Listing 5.5) and two concrete subclasses, `Employee` (Listing 5.6) and `Student` (Listing 5.7). We fill an array of `Person` references with employee and student objects:

```
var people = new Person[2];
people[0] = new Employee(. . .);
people[1] = new Student(. . .);
```

We then print the names and descriptions of these objects:

```
for (Person p : people)
    System.out.println(p.getName() + ", " + p.getDescription());
```

Some people are baffled by the call

```
p.getDescription()
```

Isn't this a call to an undefined method? Keep in mind that the variable `p` never refers to a `Person` object because it is impossible to construct an object of the abstract `Person` class. The variable `p` always refers to an object of a concrete subclass such as `Employee` or `Student`. For these objects, the `getDescription` method is defined.

Could you have omitted the abstract method altogether from the `Person` superclass, simply defining the `getDescription` methods in the `Employee` and `Student` subclasses? If you did that, you wouldn't have been able to invoke the `getDescription` method on the variable `p`. The compiler ensures that you invoke only methods that are declared in the class.

Abstract methods are an important concept in the Java programming language. You will encounter them most commonly inside *interfaces*. For more information about interfaces, turn to Chapter 6.

**Listing 5.4** abstractClasses/PersonTest.java

```
1 package abstractClasses;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates abstract classes.
5  * @version 1.01 2004-02-21
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class PersonTest
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
12         var people = new Person[2];
13
14         // fill the people array with Student and Employee objects
15         people[0] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
16         people[1] = new Student("Maria Morris", "computer science");
17
18         // print out names and descriptions of all Person objects
19         for (Person p : people)
20             System.out.println(p.getName() + ", " + p.getDescription());
21     }
22 }
```

**Listing 5.5** abstractClasses/Person.java

```
1 package abstractClasses;
2
3 public abstract class Person
4 {
5     public abstract String getDescription();
6     private String name;
7
8     public Person(String name)
9     {
10         this.name = name;
11     }
12
13     public String getName()
14     {
15         return name;
16     }
17 }
```

**Listing 5.6** abstractClasses/Employee.java

```
1 package abstractClasses;
2
3 import java.time.*;
4
5 public class Employee extends Person
6 {
7     private double salary;
8     private LocalDate hireDay;
9
10    public Employee(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
11    {
12        super(name);
13        this.salary = salary;
14        hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
15    }
16
17    public double getSalary()
18    {
19        return salary;
20    }
21
22    public LocalDate getHireDay()
23    {
24        return hireDay;
25    }
26
27    public String getDescription()
28    {
29        return String.format("an employee with a salary of %.2f", salary);
30    }
31
32    public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
33    {
34        double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
35        salary += raise;
36    }
37 }
```

**Listing 5.7** abstractClasses/Student.java

```
1 package abstractClasses;
2
3 public class Student extends Person
4 {
5     private String major;
6
```

```
7  /**
8   * @param name the student's name
9   * @param major the student's major
10  */
11 public Student(String name, String major)
12 {
13     // pass name to superclass constructor
14     super(name);
15     this.major = major;
16 }
17
18 public String getDescription()
19 {
20     return "a student majoring in " + major;
21 }
22 }
```

### 5.1.10 Protected Access

As you know, fields in a class are best tagged as `private`, and methods are usually tagged as `public`. Any features declared `private` won't be accessible in other classes. As we said at the beginning of this chapter, this is also true for subclasses: A subclass cannot access the `private` fields of its superclass.

There are times, however, when you want to restrict a method to subclasses only or, less commonly, to allow subclass methods to access a superclass field. In that case, you declare a class feature as `protected`. For example, if the superclass `Employee` declares the `hireDay` field as `protected` instead of `private`, then the `Manager` methods can access it directly.

In Java, a `protected` field is accessible by any class in the same package. Now consider an `Administrator` subclass in a different package. The methods of the `Administrator` class can peek inside the `hireDay` field of `Administrator` objects only, not of other `Employee` objects. This restriction is made so that you can't abuse the `protected` mechanism by forming subclasses just to gain access to the `protected` fields.

In practice, use `protected` fields with caution. Suppose your class is used by other programmers and you designed it with `protected` fields. Unknown to you, other programmers may inherit classes from your class and start accessing your `protected` fields. In this case, you can no longer change the implementation of your class without upsetting those programmers. That is against the spirit of OOP, which encourages data encapsulation.

`Protected` methods make more sense. A class may declare a method as `protected` if it is tricky to use. This indicates that the subclasses (which, presumably,

know their ancestor well) can be trusted to use the method correctly, but other classes cannot.

A good example of this kind of method is the `clone` method of the `Object` class—see Chapter 6 for more details.



**C++ NOTE:** As already mentioned, protected features in Java are accessible to all subclasses as well as to all other classes in the same package. This is slightly different from the C++ meaning of protected, and it makes the notion of protected in Java even less safe than in C++.

---

Here is a summary of the four access control modifiers in Java:

1. Accessible in the class only (`private`).
2. Accessible by the world (`public`).
3. Accessible in the package and all subclasses (`protected`).
4. Accessible in the package—the (unfortunate) default. No modifiers are needed.

## 5.2 Object: The Cosmic Superclass

The `Object` class is the ultimate ancestor—every class in Java extends `Object`. However, you never have to write

```
public class Employee extends Object
```

The ultimate superclass `Object` is taken for granted if no superclass is explicitly mentioned. Since *every* class in Java extends `Object`, it is important to be familiar with the services provided by the `Object` class. We go over the basic ones in this chapter; consult the later chapters or view the online documentation for what is not covered here. (Several methods of `Object` come up only when dealing with concurrency—see Chapter 12.)

### 5.2.1 Variables of Type `Object`

You can use a variable of type `Object` to refer to objects of any type:

```
Object obj = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 35000);
```

Of course, a variable of type `Object` is only useful as a generic holder for arbitrary values. To do anything specific with the value, you need to have some knowledge about the original type and apply a cast:

```
Employee e = (Employee) obj;
```

In Java, only the values of *primitive types* (numbers, characters, and boolean values) are not objects.

All array types, no matter whether they are arrays of objects or arrays of primitive types, are class types that extend the `Object` class.

```
Employee[] staff = new Employee[10];
obj = staff; // OK
obj = new int[10]; // OK
```



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, there is no cosmic root class. However, every pointer can be converted to a `void*` pointer.

### 5.2.2 The `equals` Method

The `equals` method in the `Object` class tests whether one object is considered equal to another. The `equals` method, as implemented in the `Object` class, determines whether two object references are identical. This is a pretty reasonable default—if two objects are identical, they should certainly be equal. For quite a few classes, nothing else is required. For example, it makes little sense to compare two `PrintStream` objects for equality. However, you will often want to implement state-based equality testing, in which two objects are considered equal when they have the same state.

For example, let us consider two employees equal if they have the same name, salary, and hire date. (In an actual employee database, it would be more sensible to compare IDs instead. We use this example to demonstrate the mechanics of implementing the `equals` method.)

```
public class Employee
{
    ...
    public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
    {
        // a quick test to see if the objects are identical
        if (this == otherObject) return true;

        // must return false if the explicit parameter is null
        if (otherObject == null) return false;

        // if the classes don't match, they can't be equal
        if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass())
            return false;

        // now we know otherObject is a non-null Employee
```

```

Employee other = (Employee) otherObject;

// test whether the fields have identical values
return name.equals(other.name)
    && salary == other.salary
    && hireDay.equals(other.hireDay);
}
}

```

The `getClass` method returns the class of an object—we discuss this method in detail later in this chapter. In our test, two objects can only be equal when they belong to the same class.



**TIP:** To guard against the possibility that `name` or `hireDay` are `null`, use the `Objects.equals` method. The call `Objects.equals(a, b)` returns `true` if both arguments are `null`, `false` if only one is `null`, and calls `a.equals(b)` otherwise. With that method, the last statement of the `Employee.equals` method becomes

```

return Objects.equals(name, other.name)
    && salary == other.salary
    && Objects.equals(hireDay, other.hireDay);

```

---

When you define the `equals` method for a subclass, first call `equals` on the superclass. If that test doesn't pass, then the objects can't be equal. If the superclass fields are equal, you are ready to compare the instance fields of the subclass.

```

public class Manager extends Employee
{
    ...
    public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
    {
        if (!super.equals(otherObject)) return false;
        // super.equals checked that this and otherObject belong to the same class
        Manager other = (Manager) otherObject;
        return bonus == other.bonus;
    }
}

```

### 5.2.3 Equality Testing and Inheritance

How should the `equals` method behave if the implicit and explicit parameters don't belong to the same class? This has been an area of some controversy. In the preceding example, the `equals` method returns `false` if the classes don't match exactly. But many programmers use an `instanceof` test instead:

```
if (!(otherObject instanceof Employee)) return false;
```

This leaves open the possibility that `otherObject` can belong to a subclass. However, this approach can get you into trouble. Here is why. The Java Language Specification requires that the `equals` method has the following properties:

1. It is *reflexive*: For any non-null reference `x`, `x.equals(x)` should return true.
2. It is *symmetric*: For any references `x` and `y`, `x.equals(y)` should return true if and only if `y.equals(x)` returns true.
3. It is *transitive*: For any references `x`, `y`, and `z`, if `x.equals(y)` returns true and `y.equals(z)` returns true, then `x.equals(z)` should return true.
4. It is *consistent*: If the objects to which `x` and `y` refer haven't changed, then repeated calls to `x.equals(y)` return the same value.
5. For any non-null reference `x`, `x.equals(null)` should return false.

These rules are certainly reasonable. You wouldn't want a library implementor to ponder whether to call `x.equals(y)` or `y.equals(x)` when locating an element in a data structure.

However, the symmetry rule has subtle consequences when the parameters belong to different classes. Consider a call

```
e.equals(m)
```

where `e` is an `Employee` object and `m` is a `Manager` object, both of which happen to have the same name, salary, and hire date. If `Employee.equals` uses an `instanceof` test, the call returns true. But that means that the reverse call

```
m.equals(e)
```

also needs to return true—the symmetry rule does not allow it to return false or to throw an exception.

That leaves the `Manager` class in a bind. Its `equals` method must be willing to compare itself to any `Employee`, without taking manager-specific information into account! All of a sudden, the `instanceof` test looks less attractive.

Some authors have gone on record that the `getClass` test is wrong because it violates the substitution principle. A commonly cited example is the `equals` method in the `AbstractSet` class that tests whether two sets have the same elements. The `AbstractSet` class has two concrete subclasses, `TreeSet` and `HashSet`, that use different algorithms for locating set elements. You really want to be able to compare any two sets, no matter how they are implemented.

However, the set example is rather specialized. It would make sense to declare `AbstractSet.equals` as `final`, because nobody should redefine the semantics of set

equality. (The method is not actually `final`. This allows a subclass to implement a more efficient algorithm for the equality test.)

The way we see it, there are two distinct scenarios:

- If subclasses can have their own notion of equality, then the symmetry requirement forces you to use the `getClass` test.
- If the notion of equality is fixed in the superclass, then you can use the `instanceof` test and allow objects of different subclasses to be equal to one another.

In the example with employees and managers, we consider two objects to be equal when they have matching fields. If we have two `Manager` objects with the same name, salary, and hire date, but with different bonuses, we want them to be different. Therefore, we use the `getClass` test.

But suppose we used an employee ID for equality testing. This notion of equality makes sense for all subclasses. Then we could use the `instanceof` test, and we should have declared `Employee.equals` as `final`.



**NOTE:** The standard Java library contains over 150 implementations of `equals` methods, with a mishmash of using `instanceof`, calling `getClass`, catching a `ClassCastException`, or doing nothing at all. Check out the API documentation of the `java.sql.Timestamp` class, where the implementors note with some embarrassment that they have painted themselves in a corner. The `Timestamp` class inherits from `java.util.Date`, whose `equals` method uses an `instanceof` test, and it is impossible to override `equals` to be both symmetric and accurate.

---

Here is a recipe for writing the perfect `equals` method:

1. Name the explicit parameter `otherObject`—later, you will need to cast it to another variable that you should call `other`.
2. Test whether this happens to be identical to `otherObject`:

```
if (this == otherObject) return true;
```

This statement is just an optimization. In practice, this is a common case. It is much cheaper to check for identity than to compare the fields.

3. Test whether `otherObject` is `null` and return `false` if it is. This test is required.
4. Compare the classes of `this` and `otherObject`. If the semantics of `equals` can change in subclasses, use the `getClass` test:

```
if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass()) return false;
```

If the same semantics holds for *all* subclasses, you can use an instanceof test:

```
if (!(otherObject instanceof ClassName)) return false;
```

5. Cast otherObject to a variable of your class type:

```
ClassName other = (ClassName) otherObject
```

6. Now compare the fields, as required by your notion of equality. Use == for primitive type fields, Objects.equals for object fields. Return true if all fields match, false otherwise.

```
return field1 == other.field1  
    && Objects.equals(field2, other.field2)  
    && . . .;
```

If you redefine equals in a subclass, include a call to super.equals(other).



**TIP:** If you have fields of array type, you can use the static Arrays.equals method to check that the corresponding array elements are equal.



**CAUTION:** Here is a common mistake when implementing the equals method.

Can you spot the problem?

```
public class Employee  
{  
    public boolean equals(Employee other)  
    {  
        return other != null  
            && getClass() == other.getClass()  
            && Objects.equals(name, other.name)  
            && salary == other.salary  
            && Objects.equals(hireDay, other.hireDay);  
    }  
    . . .  
}
```

This method declares the explicit parameter type as Employee. As a result, it does not override the equals method of the Object class but defines a completely unrelated method.

You can protect yourself against this type of error by tagging methods that are intended to override superclass methods with @Override:

```
@Override public boolean equals(Object other)
```

If you made a mistake and are defining a new method, the compiler reports an error. For example, suppose you add the following declaration to the `Employee` class:

```
@Override public boolean equals(Employee other)
```

An error is reported because this method doesn't override any method from the `Object` superclass.

---

#### java.util.Arrays 1.2

- static boolean equals(xxx[] a, xxx[] b) 5

returns true if the arrays have equal lengths and equal elements in corresponding positions. The component type `xxx` of the array can be `Object`, `int`, `long`, `short`, `char`, `byte`, `boolean`, `float`, or `double`.

#### java.util.Objects 7

- static boolean equals(Object a, Object b)

returns true if `a` and `b` are both `null`, false if exactly one of them is `null`, and `a.equals(b)` otherwise.

### 5.2.4 The hashCode Method

A hash code is an integer that is derived from an object. Hash codes should be scrambled—if `x` and `y` are two distinct objects, there should be a high probability that `x.hashCode()` and `y.hashCode()` are different. Table 5.1 lists a few examples of hash codes that result from the `hashCode` method of the `String` class.

**Table 5.1** Hash Codes Resulting from the `hashCode` Method

String	Hash Code
Hello	69609650
Harry	69496448
Hacker	-2141031506

The `String` class uses the following algorithm to compute the hash code:

```
int hash = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < length(); i++)
    hash = 31 * hash + charAt(i);
```

The `hashCode` method is defined in the `Object` class. Therefore, every object has a default hash code. That hash code is derived from the object's memory address. Consider this example:

```
var s = "Ok";
var sb = new StringBuilder(s);
System.out.println(s.hashCode() + " " + sb.hashCode());
var t = new String("Ok");
var tb = new StringBuilder(t);
System.out.println(t.hashCode() + " " + tb.hashCode());
```

Table 5.2 shows the result.

**Table 5.2** Hash Codes of Strings and String Builders

Object	Hash Code	Object	Hash Code
s	2556	t	2556
sb	20526976	tb	20527144

Note that the strings `s` and `t` have the same hash code because, for strings, the hash codes are derived from their *contents*. The string builders `sb` and `tb` have different hash codes because no `hashCode` method has been defined for the `StringBuilder` class and the default `hashCode` method in the `Object` class derives the hash code from the object's memory address.

If you redefine the `equals` method, you will also need to redefine the `hashCode` method for objects that users might insert into a hash table. (We discuss hash tables in Chapter 9.)

The `hashCode` method should return an integer (which can be negative). Just combine the hash codes of the instance fields so that the hash codes for different objects are likely to be widely scattered.

For example, here is a `hashCode` method for the `Employee` class:

```
public class Employee
{
    public int hashCode()
    {
        return 7 * name.hashCode()
            + 11 * new Double(salary).hashCode()
            + 13 * hireDay.hashCode();
    }
    ...
}
```

However, you can do better. First, use the null-safe method `Objects.hashCode`. It returns 0 if its argument is null and the result of calling `hashCode` on the argument otherwise. Also, use the static `Double.hashCode` method to avoid creating a `Double` object:

```
public int hashCode()
{
    return 7 * Objects.hashCode(name)
        + 11 * Double.hashCode(salary)
        + 13 * Objects.hashCode(hireDay);
}
```

Even better, when you need to combine multiple hash values, call `Objects.hash` with all of them. It will call `Objects.hashCode` for each argument and combine the values. Then the `Employee.hashCode` method is simply

```
public int hashCode()
{
    return Objects.hash(name, salary, hireDay);
}
```

Your definitions of `equals` and `hashCode` must be compatible: If `x.equals(y)` is true, then `x.hashCode()` must return the same value as `y.hashCode()`. For example, if you define `Employee.equals` to compare employee IDs, then the `hashCode` method needs to hash the IDs, not employee names or memory addresses.



**TIP:** If you have fields of an array type, you can use the static `Arrays.hashCode` method to compute a hash code composed of the hash codes of the array elements.

---

**java.lang.Object 1.0**

- `int hashCode()`

returns a hash code for this object. A hash code can be any integer, positive or negative. Equal objects need to return identical hash codes.

**java.util.Objects 7**

- `static int hash(Object... objects)`

returns a hash code that is combined from the hash codes of all supplied objects.

- `static int hashCode(Object a)`

returns 0 if a is null or `a.hashCode()` otherwise.

**java.lang.(Integer|Long|Short|Byte|Double|Float|Character|Boolean) 1.0**

- static int hashCode(xxx value) 8

returns the hash code of the given value. Here *xxx* is the primitive type corresponding to the given wrapper type.

**java.util.Arrays 1.2**

- static int hashCode(xxx[] a) 5

computes the hash code of the array *a*. The component type *xxx* of the array can be Object, int, long, short, char, byte, boolean, float, or double.

### 5.2.5 The `toString` Method

Another important method in `Object` is the `toString` method that returns a string representing the value of this object. Here is a typical example. The `toString` method of the `Point` class returns a string like this:

```
java.awt.Point[x=10,y=20]
```

Most (but not all) `toString` methods follow this format: the name of the class, then the field values enclosed in square brackets. Here is an implementation of the `toString` method for the `Employee` class:

```
public String toString()
{
    return "Employee[name=" + name
           + ",salary=" + salary
           + ",hireDay=" + hireDay
           + "]";
}
```

Actually, you can do a little better. Instead of hardwiring the class name into the `toString` method, call `getClass().getName()` to obtain a string with the class name.

```
public String toString()
{
    return getClass().getName()
           + "[name=" + name
           + ",salary=" + salary
           + ",hireDay=" + hireDay
           + "]";
}
```

Such `toString` method will also work for subclasses.

Of course, the subclass programmer should define its own `toString` method and add the subclass fields. If the superclass uses `getClass().getName()`, then the subclass can simply call `super.toString()`. For example, here is a `toString` method for the `Manager` class:

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    ...
    public String toString()
    {
        return super.toString()
            + "[bonus=" + bonus
            + "]";
    }
}
```

Now a `Manager` object is printed as

```
Manager[name=...,salary=...,hireDay=...][bonus=...]
```

The `toString` method is ubiquitous for an important reason: Whenever an object is concatenated with a string by the "+" operator, the Java compiler automatically invokes the `toString` method to obtain a string representation of the object. For example:

```
var p = new Point(10, 20);
String message = "The current position is " + p;
// automatically invokes p.toString()
```



**TIP:** Instead of writing `x.toString()`, you can write "`" + x`". This statement concatenates the empty string with the string representation of `x` that is exactly `x.toString()`. Unlike `toString`, this statement even works if `x` is of primitive type.

---

If `x` is any object and you call

```
System.out.println(x);
```

then the `println` method simply calls `x.toString()` and prints the resulting string.

The `Object` class defines the `toString` method to print the class name and the hash code of the object. For example, the call

```
System.out.println(System.out)
```

produces an output that looks like this:

```
java.io.PrintStream@2f6684
```

The reason is that the implementor of the `PrintStream` class didn't bother to override the `toString` method.



**CAUTION:** Annoyingly, arrays inherit the `toString` method from `Object`, with the added twist that the array type is printed in an archaic format. For example,

```
int[] luckyNumbers = { 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13 };
String s = "" + luckyNumbers;
```

yields the string "[I@1a46e30". (The prefix [I denotes an array of integers.) The remedy is to call the static `Arrays.toString` method instead. The code

```
String s = Arrays.toString(luckyNumbers);
```

yields the string "[2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13]".

To correctly print multidimensional arrays (that is, arrays of arrays), use `Arrays.deepToString`.

---

The `toString` method is a great tool for logging. Many classes in the standard class library define the `toString` method so that you can get useful information about the state of an object. This is particularly useful in logging messages like this:

```
System.out.println("Current position = " + position);
```

As we explain in Chapter 7, an even better solution is to use an object of the `Logger` class and call

```
Logger.global.info("Current position = " + position);
```



---

**TIP:** We strongly recommend that you add a `toString` method to each class that you write. You, as well as other programmers who use your classes, will be grateful for the logging support.

---

The program in Listing 5.8 tests the `equals`, `hashCode`, and `toString` methods for the classes `Employee` (Listing 5.9) and `Manager` (Listing 5.10).

**Listing 5.8** equals/EqualsTest.java

```
1 package equals;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the equals method.
5  * @version 1.12 2012-01-26
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class EqualsTest
9 {
10    public static void main(String[] args)
11    {
12        var alice1 = new Employee("Alice Adams", 75000, 1987, 12, 15);
13        var alice2 = alice1;
14        var alice3 = new Employee("Alice Adams", 75000, 1987, 12, 15);
15        var bob = new Employee("Bob Brandson", 50000, 1989, 10, 1);
16
17        System.out.println("alice1 == alice2: " + (alice1 == alice2));
18
19        System.out.println("alice1 == alice3: " + (alice1 == alice3));
20
21        System.out.println("alice1.equals(alice3): " + alice1.equals(alice3));
22
23        System.out.println("alice1.equals(bob): " + alice1.equals(bob));
24
25        System.out.println("bob.toString(): " + bob);
26
27        var carl = new Manager("Carl Cracker", 80000, 1987, 12, 15);
28        var boss = new Manager("Carl Cracker", 80000, 1987, 12, 15);
29        boss.setBonus(5000);
30        System.out.println("boss.toString(): " + boss);
31        System.out.println("carl.equals(boss): " + carl.equals(boss));
32        System.out.println("alice1.hashCode(): " + alice1.hashCode());
33        System.out.println("alice3.hashCode(): " + alice3.hashCode());
34        System.out.println("bob.hashCode(): " + bob.hashCode());
35        System.out.println("carl.hashCode(): " + carl.hashCode());
36    }
37 }
```

**Listing 5.9** equals/Employee.java

```
1 package equals;
2
3 import java.time.*;
4 import java.util.Objects;
5
```

```
6 public class Employee
7 {
8     private String name;
9     private double salary;
10    private LocalDate hireDay;
11
12    public Employee(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
13    {
14        this.name = name;
15        this.salary = salary;
16        hireDay = LocalDate.of(year, month, day);
17    }
18
19    public String getName()
20    {
21        return name;
22    }
23
24    public double getSalary()
25    {
26        return salary;
27    }
28
29    public LocalDate getHireDay()
30    {
31        return hireDay;
32    }
33
34    public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
35    {
36        double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
37        salary += raise;
38    }
39
40    public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
41    {
42        // a quick test to see if the objects are identical
43        if (this == otherObject) return true;
44
45        // must return false if the explicit parameter is null
46        if (otherObject == null) return false;
47
48        // if the classes don't match, they can't be equal
49        if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass()) return false;
50
51        // now we know otherObject is a non-null Employee
52        var other = (Employee) otherObject;
53    }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 5.9** *(Continued)*

```
54     // test whether the fields have identical values
55     return Objects.equals(name, other.name)
56         && salary == other.salary && Objects.equals(hireDay, other.hireDay);
57 }
58
59     public int hashCode()
60 {
61     return Objects.hash(name, salary, hireDay);
62 }
63
64     public String toString()
65 {
66     return getClass().getName() + "[name=" + name + ",salary=" + salary + ",hireDay="
67         + hireDay + "]";
68 }
69 }
```

---

**Listing 5.10** equals/Manager.java

```
1 package equals;
2
3 public class Manager extends Employee
4 {
5     private double bonus;
6
7     public Manager(String name, double salary, int year, int month, int day)
8     {
9         super(name, salary, year, month, day);
10        bonus = 0;
11    }
12
13    public double getSalary()
14    {
15        double baseSalary = super.getSalary();
16        return baseSalary + bonus;
17    }
18
19    public void setBonus(double bonus)
20    {
21        this.bonus = bonus;
22    }
23
```

```
24  public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
25  {
26      if (!super.equals(otherObject)) return false;
27      var other = (Manager) otherObject;
28      // super.equals checked that this and other belong to the same class
29      return bonus == other.bonus;
30  }
31
32  public int hashCode()
33  {
34      return java.util.Objects.hash(super.hashCode(), bonus);
35  }
36
37  public String toString()
38  {
39      return super.toString() + "[bonus=" + bonus + "]";
40  }
41 }
```

**java.lang.Object 1.0**

- **Class getClass()**  
returns a class object that contains information about the object. As you will see later in this chapter, Java has a runtime representation for classes that is encapsulated in the Class class.
- **boolean equals(Object otherObject)**  
compares two objects for equality; returns true if the objects point to the same area of memory, and false otherwise. You should override this method in your own classes.
- **String toString()**  
returns a string that represents the value of this object. You should override this method in your own classes.

**java.lang.Class 1.0**

- **String getName()**  
returns the name of this class.
- **Class getSuperclass()**  
returns the superclass of this class as a Class object.

## 5.3 Generic Array Lists

In some programming languages—in particular, in C and C++—you have to fix the sizes of all arrays at compile time. Programmers hate this because it forces them into uncomfortable tradeoffs. How many employees will be in a department? Surely no more than 100. What if there is a humongous department with 150 employees? Do we want to waste 90 entries for every department with just 10 employees?

In Java, the situation is somewhat better. You can set the size of an array at runtime.

```
int actualSize = . . .;
var staff = new Employee[actualSize];
```

Of course, this code does not completely solve the problem of dynamically modifying arrays at runtime. Once you set the array size, you cannot change it easily. Instead, in Java you can deal with this common situation by using another Java class, called `ArrayList`. The `ArrayList` class is similar to an array, but it automatically adjusts its capacity as you add and remove elements, without any additional code.

`ArrayList` is a *generic class* with a *type parameter*. To specify the type of the element objects that the array list holds, you append a class name enclosed in angle brackets, such as `ArrayList<Employee>`. You will see in Chapter 8 how to define your own generic class, but you don't need to know any of those technicalities to use the `ArrayList` type.

The following sections show you how to work with array lists.

### 5.3.1 Declaring Array Lists

Here is how to declare and construct an array list that holds `Employee` objects:

```
ArrayList<Employee> staff = new ArrayList<Employee>();
```

As of Java 10, it is a good idea to use the `var` keyword to avoid duplicating the class name:

```
var staff = new ArrayList<Employee>();
```

If you don't use the `var` keyword, you can omit the type parameter on the right-hand side:

```
ArrayList<Employee> staff = new ArrayList<>();
```

This is called the “diamond” syntax because the empty brackets  $\diamond$  resemble a diamond. Use the diamond syntax together with the `new` operator. The

compiler checks what happens to the new value. If it is assigned to a variable, passed into a method, or returned from a method, then the compiler checks the generic type of the variable, parameter, or method. It then places that type into the `< >`. In our example, the new `ArrayList<>()` is assigned to a variable of type `ArrayList<Employee>`. Therefore, the generic type is `Employee`.



**CAUTION:** If you declare an `ArrayList` with `var`, do *not* use the diamond syntax.

The declaration

```
var elements = new ArrayList<>();
```

yields an `ArrayList<Object>`.



**NOTE:** Before Java 5, there were no generic classes. Instead, there was a single `ArrayList` class, a one-size-fits-all collection holding elements of type `Object`. You can still use `ArrayList` without a `< . . . >` suffix. It is considered a “raw” type, with the type parameter erased.



**NOTE:** In even older versions of Java, programmers used the `Vector` class for dynamic arrays. However, the `ArrayList` class is more efficient, and there is no longer any good reason to use the `Vector` class.

Use the `add` method to add new elements to an array list. For example, here is how you populate an array list with `Employee` objects:

```
staff.add(new Employee("Harry Hacker", . . .));  
staff.add(new Employee("Tony Tester", . . .));
```

The array list manages an internal array of object references. Eventually, that array will run out of space. This is where array lists work their magic: If you call `add` and the internal array is full, the array list automatically creates a bigger array and copies all the objects from the smaller to the bigger array.

If you already know, or have a good guess, how many elements you want to store, call the `ensureCapacity` method before filling the array list:

```
staff.ensureCapacity(100);
```

That call allocates an internal array of 100 objects. Then, the first 100 calls to `add` will not involve any costly reallocation.

You can also pass an initial capacity to the `ArrayList` constructor:

```
ArrayList<Employee> staff = new ArrayList<>(100);
```

**CAUTION:** Allocating an array list as

```
new ArrayList<>(100) // capacity is 100
```

is *not* the same as allocating a new array as

```
new Employee[100] // size is 100
```

There is an important distinction between the capacity of an array list and the size of an array. If you allocate an array with 100 entries, then the array has 100 slots, ready for use. An array list with a capacity of 100 elements has the *potential* of holding 100 elements (and, in fact, more than 100, at the cost of additional reallocations)—but at the beginning, even after its initial construction, an array list holds no elements at all.

---

The `size` method returns the actual number of elements in the array list. For example,

```
staff.size()
```

returns the current number of elements in the `staff` array list. This is the equivalent of

```
a.length
```

for an array `a`.

Once you are reasonably sure that the array list is at its permanent size, you can call the `trimToSize` method. This method adjusts the size of the memory block to use exactly as much storage space as is required to hold the current number of elements. The garbage collector will reclaim any excess memory.

Once you trim the size of an array list, adding new elements will move the block again, which takes time. You should only use `trimToSize` when you are sure you won't add any more elements to the array list.



**C++ NOTE:** The `ArrayList` class is similar to the C++ `vector` template. Both `ArrayList` and `vector` are generic types. But the C++ `vector` template overloads the `[]` operator for convenient element access. Java does not have operator overloading, so it must use explicit method calls instead. Moreover, C++ vectors are copied by value. If `a` and `b` are two vectors, then the assignment `a = b` makes `a` into a new vector with the same length as `b`, and all elements are copied from `b` to `a`. The same assignment in Java makes both `a` and `b` refer to the same array list.

---

**java.util.ArrayList<E> 1.2**

- `ArrayList<E>()`  
constructs an empty array list.
- `ArrayList<E>(int initialCapacity)`  
constructs an empty array list with the specified capacity.
- `boolean add(E obj)`  
appends `obj` at the end of the array list. Always returns true.
- `int size()`  
returns the number of elements currently stored in the array list. (Of course, this is never larger than the array list's capacity.)
- `void ensureCapacity(int capacity)`  
ensures that the array list has the capacity to store the given number of elements without reallocating its internal storage array.
- `void trimToSize()`  
reduces the storage capacity of the array list to its current size.

### 5.3.2 Accessing Array List Elements

Unfortunately, nothing comes for free. The automatic growth convenience of array lists requires a more complicated syntax for accessing the elements. The reason is that the `ArrayList` class is not a part of the Java programming language; it is just a utility class programmed by someone and supplied in the standard library.

Instead of the pleasant `[]` syntax to access or change the element of an array, you use the `get` and `set` methods.

For example, to set the *i*th element, use

```
staff.set(i, harry);
```

This is equivalent to

```
a[i] = harry;
```

for an array `a`. (As with arrays, the index values are zero-based.)



**CAUTION:** Do not call `list.set(i, x)` until the `size` of the array list is larger than `i`. For example, the following code is wrong:

```
var list = new ArrayList<Employee>(100); // capacity 100, size 0
list.set(0, x); // no element 0 yet
```

Use the `add` method instead of `set` to fill up an array, and use `set` only to replace a previously added element.

---

To get an array list element, use

```
Employee e = staff.get(i);
```

This is equivalent to

```
Employee e = a[i];
```



**NOTE:** When there were no generic classes, the `get` method of the raw `ArrayList` class had no choice but to return an `Object`. Consequently, callers of `get` had to cast the returned value to the desired type:

```
Employee e = (Employee) staff.get(i);
```

The raw `ArrayList` is also a bit dangerous. Its `add` and `set` methods accept objects of any type. A call

```
staff.set(i, "Harry Hacker");
```

compiles without so much as a warning, and you run into grief only when you retrieve the object and try to cast it. If you use an `ArrayList<Employee>` instead, the compiler will detect this error.

---

You can sometimes get the best of both worlds—flexible growth and convenient element access—with the following trick. First, make an array list and add all the elements:

```
var list = new ArrayList<X>();
while (. . .)
{
    x = . . .;
    list.add(x);
}
```

When you are done, use the `toArray` method to copy the elements into an array:

```
var a = new X[list.size()];
list.toArray(a);
```

Sometimes, you need to add elements in the middle of an array list. Use the `add` method with an index parameter:

```
int n = staff.size() / 2;  
staff.add(n, e);
```

The elements at locations `n` and above are shifted up to make room for the new entry. If the new size of the array list after the insertion exceeds the capacity, the array list reallocates its storage array.

Similarly, you can remove an element from the middle of an array list:

```
Employee e = staff.remove(n);
```

The elements located above it are copied down, and the size of the array is reduced by one.

Inserting and removing elements is not terribly efficient. It is probably not worth worrying about for small array lists. But if you store many elements and frequently insert and remove in the middle of a collection, consider using a linked list instead. We explain how to program with linked lists in Chapter 9.

You can use the “for each” loop to traverse the contents of an array list:

```
for (Employee e : staff)  
    do something with e
```

This loop has the same effect as

```
for (int i = 0; i < staff.size(); i++)  
{  
    Employee e = staff.get(i);  
    do something with e  
}
```

Listing 5.11 is a modification of the `EmployeeTest` program of Chapter 4. The `Employee[]` array is replaced by an `ArrayList<Employee>`. Note the following changes:

- You don’t have to specify the array size.
- You use `add` to add as many elements as you like.
- You use `size()` instead of `length` to count the number of elements.
- You use `a.get(i)` instead of `a[i]` to access an element.

---

**Listing 5.11** `arrayList/ArrayListTest.java`

```
1 package arrayList;  
2  
3 import java.util.*;
```

(Continues)

**Listing 5.11 (Continued)**

```
4 /**
5  * This program demonstrates the ArrayList class.
6  * @version 1.11 2012-01-26
7  * @author Cay Horstmann
8  */
9
10 public class ArrayListTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         // fill the staff array list with three Employee objects
15         var staff = new ArrayList<Employee>();
16
17         staff.add(new Employee("Carl Cracker", 75000, 1987, 12, 15));
18         staff.add(new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 1989, 10, 11));
19         staff.add(new Employee("Tony Tester", 40000, 1990, 3, 15));
20
21         // raise everyone's salary by 5%
22         for (Employee e : staff)
23             e.raiseSalary(5);
24
25         // print out information about all Employee objects
26         for (Employee e : staff)
27             System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",salary=" + e.getSalary() + ",hireDay="
28                             + e.getHireDay());
29     }
30 }
```

**java.util.ArrayList<E> 1.2**

- **E set(int index, E obj)**  
puts the value *obj* in the array list at the specified index, returning the previous contents.
- **E get(int index)**  
gets the value stored at a specified index.
- **void add(int index, E obj)**  
shifts up elements to insert *obj* at the specified index.
- **E remove(int index)**  
removes the element at the given index and shifts down all elements above it.  
The removed element is returned.

### 5.3.3 Compatibility between Typed and Raw Array Lists

In your own code, you will always want to use type parameters for added safety. In this section, you will see how to interoperate with legacy code that does not use type parameters.

Suppose you have the following legacy class:

```
public class EmployeeDB
{
    public void update(ArrayList list) { . . . }
    public ArrayList find(String query) { . . . }
}
```

You can pass a typed array list to the `update` method without any casts.

```
ArrayList<Employee> staff = . . .;
employeeDB.update(staff);
```

The `staff` object is simply passed to the `update` method.



**CAUTION:** Even though you get no error or warning from the compiler, this call is not completely safe. The `update` method might add elements into the array list that are not of type `Employee`. When these elements are retrieved, an exception occurs. This sounds scary, but if you think about it, the behavior is simply as it was before generics were added to Java. The integrity of the virtual machine is never jeopardized. In this situation, you do not lose security, but you also do not benefit from the compile-time checks.

Conversely, when you assign a raw `ArrayList` to a typed one, you get a warning.

```
ArrayList<Employee> result = employeeDB.find(query); // yields warning
```



**NOTE:** To see the text of the warning, compile with the option `-Xlint:unchecked`.

Using a cast does not make the warning go away.

```
ArrayList<Employee> result = (ArrayList<Employee>) employeeDB.find(query);
// yields another warning
```

Instead, you get a different warning, telling you that the cast is misleading.

This is the consequence of a somewhat unfortunate limitation of generic types in Java. For compatibility, the compiler translates all typed array lists into raw `ArrayList` objects after checking that the type rules were not violated. In a

running program, all array lists are the same—there are no type parameters in the virtual machine. Thus, the casts (`ArrayList`) and (`ArrayList<Employee>`) carry out identical runtime checks.

There isn't much you can do about that situation. When you interact with legacy code, study the compiler warnings and satisfy yourself that the warnings are not serious.

Once you are satisfied, you can tag the variable that receives the cast with the `@SuppressWarnings("unchecked")` annotation, like this:

```
@SuppressWarnings("unchecked") ArrayList<Employee> result  
= (ArrayList<Employee>) employeeDB.find(query); // yields another warning
```

## 5.4 Object Wrappers and Autoboxing

Occasionally, you need to convert a primitive type like `int` to an object. All primitive types have class counterparts. For example, a class `Integer` corresponds to the primitive type `int`. These kinds of classes are usually called *wrappers*. The wrapper classes have obvious names: `Integer`, `Long`, `Float`, `Double`, `Short`, `Byte`, `Character`, and `Boolean`. (The first six inherit from the common superclass `Number`.) The wrapper classes are immutable—you cannot change a wrapped value after the wrapper has been constructed. They are also `final`, so you cannot subclass them.

Suppose we want an array list of integers. Unfortunately, the type parameter inside the angle brackets cannot be a primitive type. It is not possible to form an `ArrayList<int>`. Here, the `Integer` wrapper class comes in. It is OK to declare an array list of `Integer` objects.

```
var list = new ArrayList<Integer>();
```



**CAUTION:** An `ArrayList<Integer>` is far less efficient than an `int[]` array because each value is separately wrapped inside an object. You would only want to use this construct for small collections when programmer convenience is more important than efficiency.

---

Fortunately, there is a useful feature that makes it easy to add an element of type `int` to an `ArrayList<Integer>`. The call

```
list.add(3);
```

is automatically translated to

```
list.add(Integer.valueOf(3));
```

This conversion is called *autoboxing*.



**NOTE:** You might think that *autowrapping* would be more consistent, but the “boxing” metaphor was taken from C#.

Conversely, when you assign an `Integer` object to an `int` value, it is automatically unboxed. That is, the compiler translates

```
int n = list.get(i);
```

into

```
int n = list.get(i).intValue();
```

Automatic boxing and unboxing even works with arithmetic expressions. For example, you can apply the increment operator to a wrapper reference:

```
Integer n = 3;  
n++;
```

The compiler automatically inserts instructions to unbox the object, increment the resulting value, and box it back.

In most cases, you get the illusion that the primitive types and their wrappers are one and the same. There is just one point in which they differ considerably: identity. As you know, the `==` operator, applied to wrapper objects, only tests whether the objects have identical memory locations. The following comparison would therefore probably fail:

```
Integer a = 1000;  
Integer b = 1000;  
if (a == b) . . .
```

However, a Java implementation *may*, if it chooses, wrap commonly occurring values into identical objects, and thus the comparison might succeed. This ambiguity is not what you want. The remedy is to call the `equals` method when comparing wrapper objects.



**NOTE:** The autoboxing specification requires that `boolean`, `byte`, `char <= 127`, `short`, and `int` between -128 and 127 are wrapped into fixed objects. For example, if `a` and `b` had been initialized with 100 in the preceding example, then the comparison would have had to succeed.

There are a couple of other subtleties about autoboxing. First off, since wrapper class references can be null, it is possible for autounboxing to throw a `NullPointerException`:

```
Integer n = null;
System.out.println(2 * n); // throws NullPointerException
```

Also, if you mix `Integer` and `Double` types in a conditional expression, then the `Integer` value is unboxed, promoted to `double`, and boxed into a `Double`:

```
Integer n = 1;
Double x = 2.0;
System.out.println(true ? n : x); // prints 1.0
```

Finally, let us emphasize that boxing and unboxing is a courtesy of the *compiler*, not the virtual machine. The compiler inserts the necessary calls when it generates the bytecodes of a class. The virtual machine simply executes those bytecodes.

You will often see the number wrappers for another reason. The designers of Java found the wrappers a convenient place to put certain basic methods, such as those for converting strings of digits to numbers.

To convert a string to an integer, use the following statement:

```
int x = Integer.parseInt(s);
```

This has nothing to do with `Integer` objects—`parseInt` is a static method. But the `Integer` class was a good place to put it.

The API notes show some of the more important methods of the `Integer` class. The other number classes implement corresponding methods.



**CAUTION:** Some people think that the wrapper classes can be used to implement methods that can modify numeric parameters. However, that is not correct. Recall from Chapter 4 that it is impossible to write a Java method that increments an integer parameter because parameters to Java methods are always passed by value.

```
public static void triple(int x) // won't work
{
    x = 3 * x; // modifies local variable
}
```

Could we overcome this by using an `Integer` instead of an `int`?

```
public static void triple(Integer x) // won't work
{
    ...
}
```

The problem is that `Integer` objects are *immutable*: The information contained inside the wrapper can't change. You cannot use these wrapper classes to create a method that modifies numeric parameters.

If you really want to write a method to change numeric parameters, you can use one of the *holder* types defined in the `org.omg.CORBA` package: `IntHolder`, `BooleanHolder`, and so on. Each holder type has a public (!) field `value` through which you can access the stored value.

```
public static void triple(IntHolder x)
{
    x.value = 3 * x.value;
}
```

#### java.lang.Integer 1.0

- `int intValue()`  
returns the value of this `Integer` object as an `int` (overrides the `intValue` method in the `Number` class).
- `static String toString(int i)`  
returns a new `String` object representing the number `i` in base 10.
- `static String toString(int i, int radix)`  
lets you return a representation of the number `i` in the base specified by the `radix` parameter.
- `static int parseInt(String s)`
- `static int parseInt(String s, int radix)`  
returns the integer whose digits are contained in the string `s`. The string must represent an integer in base 10 (for the first method) or in the base given by the `radix` parameter (for the second method).
- `static Integer valueOf(String s)`
- `static Integer valueOf(String s, int radix)`  
returns a new `Integer` object initialized to the integer whose digits are contained in the string `s`. The string must represent an integer in base 10 (for the first method) or in the base given by the `radix` parameter (for the second method).

**java.text.NumberFormat 1.1**

- Number parse(String s)

returns the numeric value, assuming the specified String represents a number.

## 5.5 Methods with a Variable Number of Parameters

It is possible to provide methods that can be called with a variable number of parameters. (These are sometimes called “varargs” methods.)

You have already seen such a method: `printf`. For example, the calls

```
System.out.printf("%d", n);
```

and

```
System.out.printf("%d %s", n, "widgets");
```

both call the same method, even though one call has two parameters and the other has three.

The `printf` method is defined like this:

```
public class PrintStream
{
    public PrintStream printf(String fmt, Object... args) { return format(fmt, args); }
}
```

Here, the ellipsis `...` is part of the Java code. It denotes that the method can receive an arbitrary number of objects (in addition to the `fmt` parameter).

The `printf` method actually receives two parameters: the format string and an `Object[]` array that holds all other parameters. (If the caller supplies integers or other primitive type values, autoboxing turns them into objects.) It now faces the unenviable task of scanning the `fmt` string and matching up the *i*th format specifier with the value `args[i]`.

In other words, for the implementor of `printf`, the `Object...` parameter type is exactly the same as `Object[]`.

The compiler needs to transform each call to `printf`, bundling the parameters into an array and autoboxing as necessary:

```
System.out.printf("%d %s", new Object[] { new Integer(n), "widgets" } );
```

You can define your own methods with variable parameters, and you can specify any type for the parameters, even a primitive type. Here is a simple

example: a function that computes the maximum of a variable number of values.

```
public static double max(double... values)
{
    double largest = Double.NEGATIVE_INFINITY;
    for (double v : values) if (v > largest) largest = v;
    return largest;
}
```

Simply call the function like this:

```
double m = max(3.1, 40.4, -5);
```

The compiler passes a new `double[] { 3.1, 40.4, -5 }` to the `max` function.



**NOTE:** It is legal to pass an array as the last parameter of a method with variable parameters. For example:

```
System.out.printf("%d %s", new Object[] { new Integer(1), "widgets" } );
```

Therefore, you can redefine an existing function whose last parameter is an array to a method with variable parameters, without breaking any existing code. For example, `MessageFormat.format` was enhanced in this way in Java 5. If you like, you can even declare the `main` method as

```
public static void main(String... args)
```

## 5.6 Enumeration Classes

You saw in Chapter 3 how to define enumerated types. Here is a typical example:

```
public enum Size { SMALL, MEDIUM, LARGE, EXTRA_LARGE }
```

The type defined by this declaration is actually a class. The class has exactly four instances—it is not possible to construct new objects.

Therefore, you never need to use `equals` for values of enumerated types. Simply use `==` to compare them.

You can, if you like, add constructors, methods, and fields to an enumerated type. Of course, the constructors are only invoked when the enumerated constants are constructed. Here is an example:

```
public enum Size
{
```

```
        SMALL("S"), MEDIUM("M"), LARGE("L"), EXTRA_LARGE("XL");

    private String abbreviation;

    private Size(String abbreviation) { this.abbreviation = abbreviation; }
    public String getAbbreviation() { return abbreviation; }
}
```

The constructor of an enumeration is always private. You can omit the `private` modifier, as in the preceding example. It is a syntax error to declare an enum constructor as `public` or `protected`.

All enumerated types are subclasses of the class `Enum`. They inherit a number of methods from that class. The most useful one is `toString`, which returns the name of the enumerated constant. For example, `Size.SMALL.toString()` returns the string "SMALL".

The converse of `toString` is the static `valueOf` method. For example, the statement

```
Size s = Enum.valueOf(Size.class, "SMALL");
```

sets `s` to `Size.SMALL`.

Each enumerated type has a static `values` method that returns an array of all values of the enumeration. For example, the call

```
Size[] values = Size.values();
```

returns the array with elements `Size.SMALL`, `Size.MEDIUM`, `Size.LARGE`, and `Size.EXTRA_LARGE`.

The `ordinal` method yields the position of an enumerated constant in the `enum` declaration, counting from zero. For example, `Size.MEDIUM.ordinal()` returns 1.

The short program in Listing 5.12 demonstrates how to work with enumerated types.



**NOTE:** The `Enum` class has a type parameter that we have ignored for simplicity.

For example, the enumerated type `Size` actually extends `Enum<Size>`. The type parameter is used in the `compareTo` method. (We discuss the `compareTo` method in Chapter 6 and type parameters in Chapter 8.)

---

#### **Listing 5.12** enums/EnumTest.java

```
1 package enums;
2
3 import java.util.*;
```

```
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates enumerated types.
7  * @version 1.0 2004-05-24
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class EnumTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var in = new Scanner(System.in);
15         System.out.print("Enter a size: (SMALL, MEDIUM, LARGE, EXTRA_LARGE) ");
16         String input = in.next().toUpperCase();
17         Size size = Enum.valueOf(Size.class, input);
18         System.out.println("size=" + size);
19         System.out.println("abbreviation=" + size.getAbbreviation());
20         if (size == Size.EXTRA_LARGE)
21             System.out.println("Good job--you paid attention to the _.");
22     }
23 }
24
25 enum Size
26 {
27     SMALL("S"), MEDIUM("M"), LARGE("L"), EXTRA_LARGE("XL");
28
29     private Size(String abbreviation) { this.abbreviation = abbreviation; }
30     public String getAbbreviation() { return abbreviation; }
31
32     private String abbreviation;
33 }
```

**java.lang.Enum<E> 5**

- `static E valueOf(Class enumClass, String name)`  
returns the enumerated constant of the given class with the given name.
- `String toString()`  
returns the name of this enumerated constant.
- `int ordinal()`  
returns the zero-based position of this enumerated constant in the enum declaration.
- `int compareTo(E other)`  
returns a negative integer if this enumerated constant comes before other, zero if this == other, and a positive integer otherwise. The ordering of the constants is given by the enum declaration.

## 5.7 Reflection

The *reflection library* gives you a very rich and elaborate toolset to write programs that manipulate Java code dynamically. Using reflection, Java can support user interface builders, object-relational mappers, and many other development tools that dynamically inquire about the capabilities of classes.

A program that can analyze the capabilities of classes is called *reflective*. The reflection mechanism is extremely powerful. As the next sections show, you can use it to

- Analyze the capabilities of classes at runtime
- Inspect objects at runtime—for example, to write a single `toString` method that works for *all* classes
- Implement generic array manipulation code
- Take advantage of `Method` objects that work just like function pointers in languages such as C++

Reflection is a powerful and complex mechanism; however, it is of interest mainly to tool builders, not application programmers. If you are interested in programming applications rather than tools for other Java programmers, you can safely skip the remainder of this chapter and return to it later.

### 5.7.1 The `Class` Class

While your program is running, the Java runtime system always maintains what is called *runtime type identification* on all objects. This information keeps track of the class to which each object belongs. Runtime type information is used by the virtual machine to select the correct methods to execute.

However, you can also access this information by working with a special Java class. The class that holds this information is called, somewhat confusingly, `Class`. The `getClass()` method in the `Object` class returns an instance of `Class` type.

```
Employee e;  
.  
.  
Class cl = e.getClass();
```

Just like an `Employee` object describes the properties of a particular employee, a `Class` object describes the properties of a particular class. Probably the most commonly used method of `Class` is `getName`. This returns the name of the class. For example, the statement

```
System.out.println(e.getClass().getName() + " " + e.getName());
```

prints

```
Employee Harry Hacker
```

if e is an employee, or

```
Manager Harry Hacker
```

if e is a manager.

If the class is in a package, the package name is part of the class name:

```
var generator = new Random();
Class cl = generator.getClass();
String name = cl.getName(); // name is set to "java.util.Random"
```

You can obtain a `Class` object corresponding to a class name by using the static `forName` method.

```
String className = "java.util.Random";
Class cl = Class.forName(className);
```

Use this method if the class name is stored in a string that varies at runtime. This works if `className` is the name of a class or interface. Otherwise, the `forName` method throws a *checked exception*. See Section 5.7.2, “A Primer on Declaring Exceptions,” on p. 267 for how to supply an *exception handler* whenever you use this method.



**TIP:** At startup, the class containing your `main` method is loaded. It loads all classes that it needs. Each of those loaded classes loads the classes that it needs, and so on. That can take a long time for a big application, frustrating the user. You can give the users of your program an illusion of a faster start with the following trick. Make sure the class containing the `main` method does not explicitly refer to other classes. In it, display a splash screen. Then manually force the loading of other classes by calling `Class.forName`.

A third method for obtaining an object of type `Class` is a convenient shorthand. If `T` is any Java type (or the `void` keyword), then `T.class` is the matching class object. For example:

```
Class cl1 = Random.class; // if you import java.util.*;
Class cl2 = int.class;
Class cl3 = Double[].class;
```

Note that a `Class` object really describes a *type*, which may or may not be a class. For example, `int` is not a class, but `int.class` is nevertheless an object of type `Class`.



**NOTE:** The `Class` class is actually a generic class. For example, `Employee.class` is of type `Class<Employee>`. We are not dwelling on this issue because it would further complicate an already abstract concept. For most practical purposes, you can ignore the type parameter and work with the raw `Class` type. See Chapter 8 for more information on this issue.

---



**CAUTION:** For historical reasons, the `getName` method returns somewhat strange names for array types:

- `Double[].class.getName()` returns "[Ljava.lang.Double;".
  - `int[].class.getName()` returns "[I".
- 

The virtual machine manages a unique `Class` object for each type. Therefore, you can use the `==` operator to compare `Class` objects. For example:

```
if (e.getClass() == Employee.class) . . .
```

This test passes if `e` is an instance of `Employee`. Unlike the condition `e instanceof Employee`, this test fails if `e` is an instance of a subclass such as `Manager`.

If you have an object of type `Class`, you can use it to construct instances of the class. Call the `getConstructor` method to get an object of type `Constructor`, then use the `newInstance` method to construct an instance. For example:

```
var className = "java.util.Random"; // or any other name of a class with
                                   // a no-arg constructor
Class cl = Class.forName(className);
Object obj = cl.getConstructor().newInstance();
```

If the class doesn't have a constructor without arguments, the `getConstructor` method throws an exception. You will see in Section 5.7.7, "Invoking Arbitrary Methods and Constructors," on p. 286 how to invoke other constructors.



**NOTE:** There is a deprecated `Class.toInstance` method that also constructs an instance with the no-argument constructor. However, if the constructor throws a checked exception, the exception is rethrown without being checked. This violates the compile-time checking of exceptions. In contrast, `Constructor.newInstance` wraps any constructor exception into an `InvocationTargetException`.

---



**C++ NOTE:** The `newInstance` method corresponds to the idiom of a *virtual constructor* in C++. However, virtual constructors in C++ are not a language feature but just an idiom that needs to be supported by a specialized library. The `Class` class is similar to the `type_info` class in C++, and the `getClass` method is equivalent to the `typeid` operator. The Java `Class` is quite a bit more versatile than `type_info`, though. The C++ `type_info` can only reveal a string with the name of the type, not create new objects of that type.

#### `java.lang.Class` 1.0

- `static Class forName(String className)`  
returns the `Class` object representing the class with name `className`.
- `Constructor getConstructor(Class... parameterTypes)` 1.1  
yields an object describing the constructor with the given parameter types. See Section 5.7.7, “Invoking Arbitrary Methods and Constructors,” on p. 286 for more information on how to supply parameter types.

#### `java.lang.reflect.Constructor` 1.1

- `Object newInstance(Object... params)`  
constructs a new instance of the constructor’s declaring class, passing `params` to the constructor. See Section 5.7.7, “Invoking Arbitrary Methods and Constructors,” on p. 286 for more information on how to supply parameters.

#### `java.lang.Throwable` 1.0

- `void printStackTrace()`  
prints the `Throwable` object and the stack trace to the standard error stream.

## 5.7.2 A Primer on Declaring Exceptions

We cover exception handling fully in Chapter 7, but in the meantime you will occasionally encounter methods that threaten to throw exceptions.

When an error occurs at runtime, a program can “throw an exception.” Throwing an exception is more flexible than terminating the program because you can provide a *handler* that “catches” the exception and deals with it.

If you don't provide a handler, the program terminates and prints a message to the console, giving the type of the exception. You may have already seen exception reports when you accidentally used a `null` reference or overstepped the bounds of an array.

There are two kinds of exceptions: *unchecked* exceptions and *checked* exceptions. With checked exceptions, the compiler checks that you, the programmer, are aware of the exception and are prepared to deal with the consequences. However, many common exceptions, such as bounds errors, or accessing a `null` reference, are unchecked. The compiler does not expect that you provide a handler—after all, you should spend your mental energy on avoiding these mistakes rather than coding handlers for them.

But not all errors are avoidable. If an exception can occur despite your best efforts, then most Java APIs will throw a checked exception. One example is the `Class.forName` method. There is no way for you to ensure that a class with the given name exists. In Chapter 7, you will see several strategies for exception handling. For now, we just show you the simplest strategy.

Whenever a method contains a statement that might throw a checked exception, add a `throws` clause to the method name.

```
public static void doSomethingWithClass(String name)
    throws ReflectiveOperationException
{
    Class cl = Class.forName(name); // might throw exception
    do something with cl
}
```

Any method that calls this method also needs a `throws` declaration. This includes the `main` method. If an exception actually occurs, the `main` method terminates with a stack trace. (You will learn in Chapter 7 how to catch exceptions instead of having them terminate your programs.)

You only need to supply a `throws` clause for checked exceptions. It is easy to find out which methods throw checked exceptions—the compiler will complain whenever you call a method that threatens to throw a checked exception and you don't supply a handler.

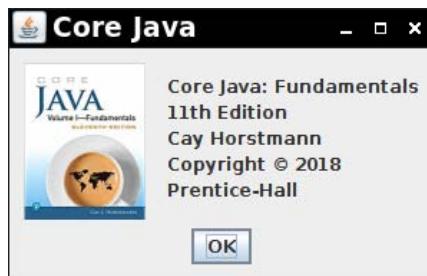
### 5.7.3 Resources

Classes often have associated data files, such as:

- Image and sound files
- Text files with message strings and button labels

In Java, such an associated file is called a *resource*.

For example, consider a dialog box that displays a message such as the one in Figure 5.3.



**Figure 5.3** Displaying image and text resources

Of course, the book title and copyright year in the panel will change for the next edition of the book. To make it easy to track this change, we will put the text inside a file and not hardcode it as a string.

But where should you put a file such as `about.txt`? Of course, it would be convenient to simply place it with the rest of the program files inside a JAR file.

The `Class` class provides a useful service for locating resource files. Here are the necessary steps:

1. Get the `Class` object of the class that has a resource—for example, `ResourceTest.class`.
2. Some methods, such as the `getImage` method of the `ImageIcon` class, accept URLs that describe resource locations. Then you call

```
URL url = cl.getResource("about.gif");
```

3. Otherwise, use the `getResourceAsStream` method to obtain an input stream for reading the data in the file.

The point is that the Java virtual machine knows how to locate a class, so it can then search for the associated resource *in the same location*. For example, suppose the `ResourceTest` class is in a package `resources`. Then the `ResourceTest.class` file is located in a `resources` directory, and you place an icon file into the same directory.

Instead of placing a resource file inside the same directory as the class file, you can provide a relative or absolute path such as

```
data/about.txt  
/corejava/title.txt
```

Automating the loading of files is all the resource loading feature does. There are no standard methods for interpreting the contents of resource files. Each program must have its own way of interpreting its resource files.

Another common application of resources is the internationalization of programs. Language-dependent strings, such as messages and user interface labels, are stored in resource files, with one file per language. The *internationalization API*, which is discussed in Chapter 7 of Volume II, supports a standard method for organizing and accessing these localization files.

Listing 5.13 is a program that demonstrates resource loading. (Do not worry about the code for reading text and displaying dialogs—we cover those details later.) Compile, build a JAR file, and execute it:

```
javac resource/ResourceTest.java  
jar cvfe ResourceTest.jar resources.ResourceTest \  
    resources/*.class resources/*.gif resources/data/*.txt corejava/*.txt  
java -jar ResourceTest.jar
```

Move the JAR file to a different directory and run it again to check that the program reads the resource files from the JAR file, not from the current directory.

---

**Listing 5.13** resources/ResourceTest.java

---

```
1 package resources;  
2  
3 import java.io.*;  
4 import java.net.*;  
5 import java.nio.charset.*;  
6 import javax.swing.*;  
7  
8 /**  
9  * @version 1.5 2018-03-15  
10 * @author Cay Horstmann  
11 */  
12 public class ResourceTest  
13 {  
14     public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException  
15     {  
16         Class cl = ResourceTest.class;  
17         URL aboutURL = cl.getResource("about.gif");  
18         var icon = new ImageIcon(aboutURL);  
19  
20         InputStream stream = cl.getResourceAsStream("data/about.txt");  
21         var about = new String(stream.readAllBytes(), "UTF-8");  
22     }
```

```
23     InputStream stream2 = cl.getResourceAsStream("/corejava/title.txt");
24     var title = new String(stream2.readAllBytes(), StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();
25
26     JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, about, title, JOptionPane.INFORMATION_MESSAGE, icon);
27 }
28 }
```

**java.lang.Class 1.0**

- URL getResource(String name) 1.1
- InputStream getResourceAsStream(String name) 1.1

finds the resource in the same place as the class and then returns a URL or input stream that you can use for loading the resource. Returns `null` if the resource isn't found, so does not throw an exception for an I/O error.

#### 5.7.4 Using Reflection to Analyze the Capabilities of Classes

Here is a brief overview of the most important parts of the reflection mechanism for letting you examine the structure of a class.

The three classes `Field`, `Method`, and `Constructor` in the `java.lang.reflect` package describe the fields, methods, and constructors of a class, respectively. All three classes have a method called `getName` that returns the name of the item. The `Field` class has a method `getType` that returns an object, again of type `Class`, that describes the field type. The `Method` and `Constructor` classes have methods to report the types of the parameters, and the `Method` class also reports the return type. All three of these classes also have a method called `getModifiers` that returns an integer, with various bits turned on and off, that describes the modifiers used, such as `public` and `static`. You can then use the static methods in the `Modifier` class in the `java.lang.reflect` package to analyze the integer that `getModifiers` returns. Use methods like `isPublic`, `isPrivate`, or `isFinal` in the `Modifier` class to tell whether a method or constructor was `public`, `private`, or `final`. All you have to do is have the appropriate method in the `Modifier` class work on the integer that `getModifiers` returns. You can also use the `Modifier.toString` method to print the modifiers.

The `getFields`, `getMethods`, and `getConstructors` methods of the `Class` class return arrays of the *public* fields, methods, and constructors that the class supports. This includes public members of superclasses. The `getDeclaredFields`, `getDeclaredMethods`, and `getDeclaredConstructors` methods of the `Class` class return arrays consisting of all fields, methods, and constructors that are declared in the class. This includes private, package, and protected members, but not members of superclasses.

Listing 5.14 shows you how to print out all information about a class. The program prompts you for the name of a class and writes out the signatures of all methods and constructors as well as the names of all instance fields of a class. For example, if you enter

```
java.lang.Double
```

the program prints

```
public class java.lang.Double extends java.lang.Number
{
    public java.lang.Double(java.lang.String);
    public java.lang.Double(double);

    public int hashCode();
    public int compareTo(java.lang.Object);
    public int compareTo(java.lang.Double);
    public boolean equals(java.lang.Object);
    public java.lang.String toString();
    public static java.lang.String toString(double);
    public static java.lang.Double valueOf(java.lang.String);
    public static boolean isNaN(double);
    public boolean isNaN();
    public static boolean isInfinite(double);
    public boolean isInfinite();
    public byte byteValue();
    public short shortValue();
    public int intValue();
    public long longValue();
    public float floatValue();
    public double doubleValue();
    public static double parseDouble(java.lang.String);
    public static native long doubleToLongBits(double);
    public static native long doubleToRawLongBits(double);
    public static native double longBitsToDouble(long);

    public static final double POSITIVE_INFINITY;
    public static final double NEGATIVE_INFINITY;
    public static final double NaN;
    public static final double MAX_VALUE;
    public static final double MIN_VALUE;
    public static final java.lang.Class TYPE;
    private double value;
    private static final long serialVersionUID;
}
```

What is remarkable about this program is that it can analyze any class that the Java interpreter can load, not just the classes that were available when the program was compiled. We will use this program in the next chapter to peek inside the inner classes that the Java compiler generates automatically.

**Listing 5.14** reflection/ReflectionTest.java

```
1 package reflection;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4 import java.lang.reflect.*;
5
6 /**
7  * This program uses reflection to print all features of a class.
8  * @version 1.11 2018-03-16
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class ReflectionTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14         throws ReflectiveOperationException
15     {
16         // read class name from command line args or user input
17         String name;
18         if (args.length > 0) name = args[0];
19         else
20         {
21             var in = new Scanner(System.in);
22             System.out.println("Enter class name (e.g. java.util.Date): ");
23             name = in.next();
24         }
25
26         // print class name and superclass name (if != Object)
27         Class cl = Class.forName(name);
28         Class supercl = cl.getSuperclass();
29         String modifiers = Modifier.toString(cl.getModifiers());
30         if (modifiers.length() > 0) System.out.print(modifiers + " ");
31         System.out.print("class " + name);
32         if (supercl != null && supercl != Object.class) System.out.print(" extends "
33             + supercl.getName());
34
35         System.out.print("\n{\n");
36         printConstructors(cl);
37         System.out.println();
38         printMethods(cl);
39         System.out.println();
40         printFields(cl);
41         System.out.println("}");
42     }
43
44 /**
45  * Prints all constructors of a class
46  * @param cl a class
47 */
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 5.14 (Continued)**

```
48     public static void printConstructors(Class cl)
49     {
50         Constructor[] constructors = cl.getDeclaredConstructors();
51
52         for (Constructor c : constructors)
53         {
54             String name = c.getName();
55             System.out.print("    ");
56             String modifiers = Modifier.toString(c.getModifiers());
57             if (modifiers.length() > 0) System.out.print(modifiers + " ");
58             System.out.print(name + "(");
59
60             // print parameter types
61             Class[] paramTypes = c.getParameterTypes();
62             for (int j = 0; j < paramTypes.length; j++)
63             {
64                 if (j > 0) System.out.print(", ");
65                 System.out.print(paramTypes[j].getName());
66             }
67             System.out.println(");");
68         }
69     }
70
71 /**
72 * Prints all methods of a class
73 * @param cl a class
74 */
75 public static void printMethods(Class cl)
76 {
77     Method[] methods = cl.getDeclaredMethods();
78
79     for (Method m : methods)
80     {
81         Class retType = m.getReturnType();
82         String name = m.getName();
83
84         System.out.print("    ");
85         // print modifiers, return type and method name
86         String modifiers = Modifier.toString(m.getModifiers());
87         if (modifiers.length() > 0) System.out.print(modifiers + " ");
88         System.out.print(retType.getName() + " " + name + "(");
89
90         // print parameter types
91         Class[] paramTypes = m.getParameterTypes();
```

```
92         for (int j = 0; j < paramTypes.length; j++)
93     {
94         if (j > 0) System.out.print(", ");
95         System.out.print(paramTypes[j].getName());
96     }
97     System.out.println(";");
98 }
99 }
100
101 /**
102 * Prints all fields of a class
103 * @param cl a class
104 */
105 public static void printFields(Class cl)
106 {
107     Field[] fields = cl.getDeclaredFields();
108
109     for (Field f : fields)
110     {
111         Class type = f.getType();
112         String name = f.getName();
113         System.out.print(" ");
114         String modifiers = Modifier.toString(f.getModifiers());
115         if (modifiers.length() > 0) System.out.print(modifiers + " ");
116         System.out.println(type.getName() + " " + name + ";");
117     }
118 }
119 }
```

#### java.lang.Class 1.0

- `Field[] getFields()` 1.1
- `Field[] getDeclaredFields()` 1.1

`getFields` returns an array containing `Field` objects for the public fields of this class or its superclasses; `getDeclaredField` returns an array of `Field` objects for all fields of this class. The methods return an array of length 0 if there are no such fields or if the `Class` object represents a primitive or array type.

- `Method[] getMethods()` 1.1
- `Method[] getDeclaredMethods()` 1.1

returns an array containing `Method` objects: `getMethods` returns public methods and includes inherited methods; `getDeclaredMethods` returns all methods of this class or interface but does not include inherited methods.

(Continues)

**java.lang.Class 1.0 (Continued)**

- **Constructor[] getConstructors() 1.1**
- **Constructor[] getDeclaredConstructors() 1.1**

returns an array containing **Constructor** objects that give you all the public constructors (for **getConstructors**) or all constructors (for **getDeclaredConstructors**) of the class represented by this **Class** object.

- **String getPackageName() 9**

gets the name of the package containing this type, or the package of the element type if this type is an array type, or "java.lang" if this type is a primitive type.

**java.lang.reflect.Field 1.1****java.lang.reflect.Method 1.1****java.lang.reflect.Constructor 1.1**

- **Class getDeclaringClass()**

returns the **Class** object for the class that defines this constructor, method, or field.

- **Class[] getExceptionTypes() (in Constructor and Method classes)**

returns an array of **Class** objects that represent the types of the exceptions thrown by the method.

- **int getModifiers()**

returns an integer that describes the modifiers of this constructor, method, or field. Use the methods in the **Modifier** class to analyze the return value.

- **String getName()**

returns a string that is the name of the constructor, method, or field.

- **Class[] getParameterTypes() (in Constructor and Method classes)**

returns an array of **Class** objects that represent the types of the parameters.

- **Class getReturnType() (in Method class)**

returns a **Class** object that represents the return type.

**java.lang.reflect.Modifier 1.1**

- **static String toString(int modifiers)**

returns a string with the modifiers that correspond to the bits set in **modifiers**.

*(Continues)*

**java.lang.reflect.Modifier 1.1 (Continued)**

- static boolean isAbstract(int modifiers)
- static boolean isFinal(int modifiers)
- static boolean isInterface(int modifiers)
- static boolean isNative(int modifiers)
- static boolean isPrivate(int modifiers)
- static boolean isProtected(int modifiers)
- static boolean isPublic(int modifiers)
- static boolean isStatic(int modifiers)
- static boolean isStrict(int modifiers)
- static boolean isSynchronized(int modifiers)
- static boolean isVolatile(int modifiers)

tests the bit in the `modifiers` value that corresponds to the modifier in the method name.

### 5.7.5 Using Reflection to Analyze Objects at Runtime

In the preceding section, we saw how we can find out the *names* and *types* of the data fields of any object:

- Get the corresponding `Class` object.
- Call `getDeclaredFields` on the `Class` object.

In this section, we will go one step further and actually look at the *contents* of the fields. Of course, it is easy to look at the contents of a specific field of an object whose name and type are known when you write a program. But reflection lets you look at fields of objects that were not known at compile time.

The key method to achieve this is the `get` method in the `Field` class. If `f` is an object of type `Field` (for example, one obtained from `getDeclaredFields`) and `obj` is an object of the class of which `f` is a field, then `f.get(obj)` returns an object whose value is the current value of the field of `obj`. This is all a bit abstract, so let's run through an example.

```
var harry = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 50000, 10, 1, 1989);
Class cl = harry.getClass();
    // the class object representing Employee
Field f = cl.getDeclaredField("name");
    // the name field of the Employee class
Object v = f.get(harry);
    // the value of the name field of the harry object, i.e.,
    // the String object "Harry Hacker"
```

Of course, you can also set the values that you can get. The call `f.set(obj, value)` sets the field represented by `f` of the object `obj` to the new value.

Actually, there is a problem with this code. Since the `name` field is a private field, the `get` and `set` methods will throw an `IllegalAccessException`. You can only use `get` and `set` with accessible fields. The security mechanism of Java lets you find out what fields an object has, but it won't let you read and write the values of those fields unless you have permission.

The default behavior of the reflection mechanism is to respect Java access control. However, you can override access control by invoking the `setAccessible` method on a `Field`, `Method`, or `Constructor` object. For example:

```
f.setAccessible(true); // now OK to call f.get(harry)
```

The `setAccessible` method is a method of the `AccessibleObject` class, the common superclass of the `Field`, `Method`, and `Constructor` classes. This feature is provided for debuggers, persistent storage, and similar mechanisms. We use it for a generic `toString` method later in this section.

The call to `setAccessible` throws an exception if the access is not granted. The access can be denied by the module system (Chapter 9 of Volume II) or a security manager (Chapter 10 of Volume II). The use of security managers is not common. However, as of Java 9, every program contains modules since the Java API is modularized.

Because so many libraries make use of reflection, Java 9 and 10 only give a warning when you use reflection to access a nonpublic feature inside a module. For example, the sample program at the end of this section looks into the internals of `ArrayList` and `Integer` objects. When you run the program, the following ominous message appears in the console:

```
WARNING: An illegal reflective access operation has occurred
WARNING: Illegal reflective access by objectAnalyzer.ObjectAnalyzer (file:/home/cay
          /books/cj11/code/v1ch05/bin/) to field java.util.ArrayList serialVersionUID
WARNING: Please consider reporting this to the maintainers of
          objectAnalyzer.ObjectAnalyzer
WARNING: Use --illegal-access=warn to enable warnings of further illegal
          reflective access operations
WARNING: All illegal access operations will be denied in a future release
```

For now, you can deactivate the warning. You need to “open” the `java.util` and `java.lang` packages in the `java.base` module to the “unnamed module.” The details are in Chapter 9 of Volume II. Here is the syntax:

```
java --add-opens java.base/java.util=ALL-UNNAMED \
      --add-opens java.base/java.lang=ALL-UNNAMED \
      objectAnalyzer.ObjectAnalyzerTest
```

Alternatively, you can see how the program will behave in a future version of Java, by running:

```
java --illegal-access=deny objectAnalyzer/ObjectAnalyzerTest
```

Then the program will simply fail with an `IllegalAccessException`.



**NOTE:** It is possible that future libraries will use *variable handles* instead of reflection for reading and writing fields. A `VarHandle` is similar to a `Field`. You can use it to read or write a specific field of any instance of a specific class. However, to obtain a `VarHandle`, the library code needs a `Lookup` object:

```
public Object getFieldValue(Object obj, String fieldName, Lookup lookup)
    throws NoSuchFieldException, IllegalAccessException
{
    Class<?> cl = obj.getClass();
    Field field = cl.getDeclaredField(fieldName);
    VarHandle handle = MethodHandles.privateLookupIn(cl, lookup)
        .unreflectVarHandle(field);
    return handle.get(obj);
}
```

This works provided the `Lookup` object is generated in the module that has the permission to access the field. Some method in the module simply calls `MethodHandles.lookup()`, which yields an object encapsulating the access rights of the caller. In this way, one module can give permission for accessing private members to another module. The practical issue is how those permissions can be given with a minimum of hassle.

While we can still do so, let us look at a generic `toString` method that works for *any* class (see Listing 5.15). The generic `toString` method uses `getDeclaredFields` to obtain all data fields and the `setAccessible` convenience method to make all fields accessible. For each field, it obtains the name and the value. Each value is turned into a string by recursively invoking `toString`.

The generic `toString` method needs to address a couple of complexities. Cycles of references could cause an infinite recursion. Therefore, the `ObjectAnalyzer` keeps track of objects that were already visited. Also, to peek inside arrays, you need a different approach. You'll learn about the details in the next section.

You can use this `toString` method to peek inside any object. For example, the call

```
var squares = new ArrayList<Integer>();
for (int i = 1; i <= 5; i++) squares.add(i * i);
System.out.println(new ObjectAnalyzer().toString(squares));
```

yields the printout

```
java.util.ArrayList[elementData=class java.lang.Object[]{}java.lang.Integer[value=1][][][],  
java.lang.Integer[value=4][][][],java.lang.Integer[value=9][][][],  
java.lang.Integer[value=16][][][],  
java.lang.Integer[value=25][][][],null,null,null,null,null],size=5][modCount=5][][][]
```

You can use this generic `toString` method to implement the `toString` methods of your own classes, like this:

```
public String toString()  
{  
    return new ObjectAnalyzer().toString(this);  
}
```

This is a hassle-free and undoubtedly useful method for supplying a universal `toString` method. However, before you get too excited about never having to implement `toString` again, remember that the days of uncontrolled access to internals are numbered.

---

#### **Listing 5.15** objectAnalyzer/ObjectAnalyzerTest.java

---

```
1 package objectAnalyzer;  
2  
3 import java.util.*;  
4  
5 /**  
6  * This program uses reflection to spy on objects.  
7  * @version 1.13 2018-03-16  
8  * @author Cay Horstmann  
9 */  
10 public class ObjectAnalyzerTest  
11 {  
12     public static void main(String[] args)  
13         throws ReflectiveOperationException  
14     {  
15         var squares = new ArrayList<Integer>();  
16         for (int i = 1; i <= 5; i++)  
17             squares.add(i * i);  
18         System.out.println(new ObjectAnalyzer().toString(squares));  
19     }  
20 }
```

---

---

#### **Listing 5.16** objectAnalyzer/ObjectAnalyzer.java

---

```
1 package objectAnalyzer;  
2  
3 import java.lang.reflect.AccessibleObject;  
4 import java.lang.reflect.Array;
```

```
5 import java.lang.reflect.Field;
6 import java.lang.reflect.Modifier;
7 import java.util.ArrayList;
8
9 public class ObjectAnalyzer
10 {
11     private ArrayList<Object> visited = new ArrayList<>();
12
13     /**
14      * Converts an object to a string representation that lists all fields.
15      * @param obj an object
16      * @return a string with the object's class name and all field names and values
17     */
18     public String toString(Object obj)
19         throws ReflectiveOperationException
20     {
21         if (obj == null) return "null";
22         if (visited.contains(obj)) return "...";
23         visited.add(obj);
24         Class cl = obj.getClass();
25         if (cl == String.class) return (String) obj;
26         if (cl.isArray())
27         {
28             String r = cl.getComponentType() + "[{}";
29             for (int i = 0; i < Array.getLength(obj); i++)
30             {
31                 if (i > 0) r += ",";
32                 Object val = Array.get(obj, i);
33                 if (cl.getComponentType().isPrimitive()) r += val;
34                 else r += toString(val);
35             }
36             return r + "]";
37         }
38
39         String r = cl.getName();
40         // inspect the fields of this class and all superclasses
41         do
42         {
43             r += "[";
44             Field[] fields = cl.getDeclaredFields();
45             AccessibleObject.setAccessible(fields, true);
46             // get the names and values of all fields
47             for (Field f : fields)
48             {
49                 if (!Modifier.isStatic(f.getModifiers()))
50                 {
51                     if (!r.endsWith("[")) r += ",";
52                     r += f.getName() + "=";
```

(Continues)

**Listing 5.16 (Continued)**

```

53         Class t = f.getType();
54         Object val = f.get(obj);
55         if (t.isPrimitive()) r += val;
56         else r += toString(val);
57     }
58 }
59 r += "]";
60 cl = cl.getSuperclass();
61 }
62 while (cl != null);
63
64 return r;
65 }
66 }
```

**java.lang.reflect.AccessibleObject 1.2**

- **void setAccessible(boolean flag)**  
sets or clears the accessibility flag for this accessible object, or throws an `IllegalAccessException` if the access is denied.
- **boolean trySetAccessible() 9**  
sets the accessibility flag for this accessible object, or returns `false` if the access is denied.
- **boolean isAccessible()**  
gets the value of the accessibility flag for this accessible object.
- **static void setAccessible(AccessibleObject[] array, boolean flag)**  
is a convenience method to set the accessibility flag for an array of objects.

**java.lang.Class 1.1**

- **Field getField(String name)**
- **Field[] getFields()**  
gets the public field with the given name, or an array of all fields.
- **Field getDeclaredField(String name)**
- **Field[] getDeclaredFields()**  
gets the field that is declared in this class with the given name, or an array of all fields.

**java.lang.reflect.Field 1.1**

- `Object get(Object obj)`  
gets the value of the field described by this `Field` object in the object `obj`.
- `void set(Object obj, Object newValue)`  
sets the field described by this `Field` object in the object `obj` to a new value.

### 5.7.6 Using Reflection to Write Generic Array Code

The `Array` class in the `java.lang.reflect` package allows you to create arrays dynamically. This is used, for example, in the implementation of the `copyOf` method in the `Arrays` class. Recall how this method can be used to grow an array that has become full.

```
var a = new Employee[100];
...
// array is full
a = Arrays.copyOf(a, 2 * a.length);
```

How can one write such a generic method? It helps that an `Employee[]` array can be converted to an `Object[]` array. That sounds promising. Here is a first attempt:

```
public static Object[] badCopyOf(Object[] a, int newLength) // not useful
{
    var newArray = new Object[newLength];
    System.arraycopy(a, 0, newArray, 0, Math.min(a.length, newLength));
    return newArray;
}
```

However, there is a problem with actually *using* the resulting array. The type of array that this code returns is an array of *objects* (`Object[]`) because we created the array using the line of code

```
new Object[newLength]
```

An array of objects *cannot* be cast to an array of employees (`Employee[]`). The virtual machine would generate a `ClassCastException` at runtime. The point is that, as we mentioned earlier, a Java array remembers the type of its entries—that is, the element type used in the `new` expression that created it. It is legal to cast an `Employee[]` temporarily to an `Object[]` array and then cast it back, but an array that started its life as an `Object[]` array can never be cast into an `Employee[]` array. To write this kind of generic array code, we need to be able to make a new array of the *same* type as the original array. For this, we need the methods of the `Array` class in the `java.lang.reflect` package. The key is the static `newInstance` method of the `Array` class that constructs a new array. You

must supply the type for the entries and the desired length as parameters to this method.

```
Object newArray = Array.newInstance(componentType, newLength);
```

To actually carry this out, we need to get the length and the component type of the new array.

We obtain the length by calling `Array.getLength(a)`. The static `getLength` method of the `Array` class returns the length of an array. To get the component type of the new array:

1. First, get the class object of `a`.
2. Confirm that it is indeed an array.
3. Use the `getComponentType` method of the `Class` class (which is defined only for class objects that represent arrays) to find the right type for the array.

Why is `getLength` a method of `Array` but `getComponentType` a method of `Class`? We don't know—the distribution of the reflection methods seems a bit ad hoc at times.

Here's the code:

```
public static Object goodCopyOf(Object a, int newLength)
{
    Class cl = a.getClass();
    if (!cl.isArray()) return null;
    Class componentType = cl.getComponentType();
    int length = Array.getLength(a);
    Object newArray = Array.newInstance(componentType, newLength);
    System.arraycopy(a, 0, newArray, 0, Math.min(length, newLength));
    return newArray;
}
```

Note that this `copyOf` method can be used to grow arrays of any type, not just arrays of objects.

```
int[] a = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };
a = (int[]) goodCopyOf(a, 10);
```

To make this possible, the parameter of `goodCopyOf` is declared to be of type `Object`, *not an array of objects* (`Object[]`). The integer array type `int[]` can be converted to an `Object`, but not to an array of objects!

Listing 5.17 shows both methods in action. Note that the cast of the return value of `badcopyOf` will throw an exception.

**Listing 5.17** arrays/CopyOfTest.java

```
1 package arrays;
2
3 import java.lang.reflect.*;
4 import java.util.*;
5
6 /**
7  * This program demonstrates the use of reflection for manipulating arrays.
8  * @version 1.2 2012-05-04
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class CopyOfTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         int[] a = { 1, 2, 3 };
16         a = (int[]) goodCopyOf(a, 10);
17         System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
18
19         String[] b = { "Tom", "Dick", "Harry" };
20         b = (String[]) goodCopyOf(b, 10);
21         System.out.println(Arrays.toString(b));
22
23         System.out.println("The following call will generate an exception.");
24         b = (String[]) badCopyOf(b, 10);
25     }
26
27 /**
28  * This method attempts to grow an array by allocating a new array and copying all elements.
29  * @param a the array to grow
30  * @param newLength the new length
31  * @return a larger array that contains all elements of a. However, the returned
32  * array has type Object[], not the same type as a
33 */
34 public static Object[] badCopyOf(Object[] a, int newLength) // not useful
35 {
36     var newArray = new Object[newLength];
37     System.arraycopy(a, 0, newArray, 0, Math.min(a.length, newLength));
38     return newArray;
39 }
40
41 /**
42  * This method grows an array by allocating a new array of the same type and
43  * copying all elements.
44  * @param a the array to grow. This can be an object array or a primitive
45  * type array
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 5.17 (Continued)**

```
46     * @return a larger array that contains all elements of a.  
47     */  
48     public static Object goodCopyOf(Object a, int newLength)  
49     {  
50         Class cl = a.getClass();  
51         if (!cl.isArray()) return null;  
52         Class componentType = cl.getComponentType();  
53         int length = Array.getLength(a);  
54         Object newArray = Array.newInstance(componentType, newLength);  
55         System.arraycopy(a, 0, newArray, 0, Math.min(length, newLength));  
56         return newArray;  
57     }  
58 }
```

---

**java.lang.reflect.Array 1.1**

- static Object get(Object array, int index)
- static xxx getXxx(Object array, int index)

(xxx is one of the primitive types boolean, byte, char, double, float, int, long, or short.) These methods return the value of the given array that is stored at the given index.

- static void set(Object array, int index, Object newValue)
- static setXxx(Object array, int index, xxx newValue)

(xxx is one of the primitive types boolean, byte, char, double, float, int, long, or short.) These methods store a new value into the given array at the given index.

- static int getLength(Object array)  
returns the length of the given array.
- static Object newInstance(Class componentType, int length)
- static Object newInstance(Class componentType, int[] lengths)  
returns a new array of the given component type with the given dimensions.

### 5.7.7 Invoking Arbitrary Methods and Constructors

In C and C++, you can execute an arbitrary function through a function pointer. On the surface, Java does not have method pointers—that is, ways of giving the location of a method to another method, so that the second method can invoke it later. In fact, the designers of Java have said that method pointers are dangerous and error-prone, and that Java interfaces and lambda expressions (discussed in the next chapter) are a superior solution. However, the reflection mechanism allows you to call arbitrary methods.

Recall that you can inspect a field of an object with the `get` method of the `Field` class. Similarly, the `Method` class has an `invoke` method that lets you call the method that is wrapped in the current `Method` object. The signature for the `invoke` method is

```
Object invoke(Object obj, Object... args)
```

The first parameter is the implicit parameter, and the remaining objects provide the explicit parameters.

For a static method, the first parameter is ignored—you can set it to `null`.

For example, if `m1` represents the `getName` method of the `Employee` class, the following code shows how you can call it:

```
String n = (String) m1.invoke(harry);
```

If the return type is a primitive type, the `invoke` method will return the wrapper type instead. For example, suppose that `m2` represents the `getSalary` method of the `Employee` class. Then, the returned object is actually a `Double`, and you must cast it accordingly. Use automatic unboxing to turn it into a `double`:

```
double s = (Double) m2.invoke(harry);
```

How do you obtain a `Method` object? You can, of course, call `getDeclaredMethods` and search through the returned array of `Method` objects until you find the method you want. Or, you can call the `getMethod` method of the `Class` class. This is similar to the `getField` method that takes a string with the field name and returns a `Field` object. However, there may be several methods with the same name, so you need to be careful that you get the right one. For that reason, you must also supply the parameter types of the desired method. The signature of `getMethod` is

```
Method getMethod(String name, Class... parameterTypes)
```

For example, here is how you can get method pointers to the `getName` and `raiseSalary` methods of the `Employee` class:

```
Method m1 = Employee.class.getMethod("getName");
Method m2 = Employee.class.getMethod("raiseSalary", double.class);
```

Use a similar approach for invoking arbitrary constructors. Supply the constructor's parameter types to the `Class.getConstructor` method, and supply the parameter values to the `Constructor.newInstance` method:

```
Class cl = Random.class; // or any other class with a constructor that
                       // accepts a long parameter
Constructor cons = cl.getConstructor(long.class);
Object obj = cons.newInstance(42L);
```

Now that you have seen the rules for using `Method` objects, let's put them to work. Listing 5.18 is a program that prints a table of values for a mathematical function such as `Math.sqrt` or `Math.sin`. The printout looks like this:

```
public static native double java.lang.Math.sqrt(double)
 1.0000 | 1.0000
 2.0000 | 1.4142
 3.0000 | 1.7321
 4.0000 | 2.0000
 5.0000 | 2.2361
 6.0000 | 2.4495
 7.0000 | 2.6458
 8.0000 | 2.8284
 9.0000 | 3.0000
10.0000 | 3.1623
```

The code for printing a table is, of course, independent of the actual function that is being tabulated.

```
double dx = (to - from) / (n - 1);
for (double x = from; x <= to; x += dx)
{
    double y = (Double) f.invoke(null, x);
    System.out.printf("%10.4f | %10.4f\n", x, y);
}
```

Here, `f` is an object of type `Method`. The first parameter of `invoke` is `null` because we are calling a static method.

To tabulate the `Math.sqrt` function, we set `f` to

```
Math.class.getMethod("sqrt", double.class)
```

That is the method of the `Math` class that has the name `sqrt` and a single parameter of type `double`.

Listing 5.18 shows the complete code of the generic tabulator and a couple of test runs.

---

#### Listing 5.18 methods/MethodTableTest.java

---

```
1 package methods;
2
3 import java.lang.reflect.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program shows how to invoke methods through reflection.
7  * @version 1.2 2012-05-04
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
```

```
10 public class MethodTableTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13         throws ReflectiveOperationException
14     {
15         // get method pointers to the square and sqrt methods
16         Method square = MethodTableTest.class.getMethod("square", double.class);
17         Method sqrt = Math.class.getMethod("sqrt", double.class);
18
19         // print tables of x- and y-values
20         printTable(1, 10, 10, square);
21         printTable(1, 10, 10, sqrt);
22     }
23
24     /**
25      * Returns the square of a number
26      * @param x a number
27      * @return x squared
28      */
29     public static double square(double x)
30     {
31         return x * x;
32     }
33
34     /**
35      * Prints a table with x- and y-values for a method
36      * @param from the lower bound for the x-values
37      * @param to the upper bound for the x-values
38      * @param n the number of rows in the table
39      * @param f a method with a double parameter and double return value
40      */
41     public static void printTable(double from, double to, int n, Method f)
42         throws ReflectiveOperationException
43     {
44         // print out the method as table header
45         System.out.println(f);
46
47         double dx = (to - from) / (n - 1);
48
49         for (double x = from; x <= to; x += dx)
50         {
51             double y = (Double) f.invoke(null, x);
52             System.out.printf("%10.4f | %10.4f%n", x, y);
53         }
54     }
55 }
```

As this example clearly shows, you can do anything with `Method` objects that you can do with function pointers in C (or delegates in C#). Just as in C, this style of programming is usually quite inconvenient, and always error-prone.

What happens if you invoke a method with the wrong parameters? The `invoke` method throws an exception.

Also, the parameters and return values of `invoke` are necessarily of type `Object`. That means you must cast back and forth a lot. As a result, the compiler is deprived of the chance to check your code, so errors surface only during testing, when they are more tedious to find and fix. Moreover, code that uses reflection to get at method pointers is significantly slower than code that simply calls methods directly.

For that reason, we suggest that you use `Method` objects in your own programs only when absolutely necessary. Using interfaces and, as of Java 8, lambda expressions (the subject of the next chapter) is almost always a better idea. In particular, we echo the developers of Java and suggest not using `Method` objects for callback functions. Using interfaces for the callbacks leads to code that runs faster and is a lot more maintainable.

#### `java.lang.reflect.Method` 1.1

- `public Object invoke(Object implicitParameter, Object[] explicitParameters)`

invokes the method described by this object, passing the given parameters and returning the value that the method returns. For static methods, pass `null` as the implicit parameter. Pass primitive type values by using wrappers. Primitive type return values must be unwrapped.

## 5.8 Design Hints for Inheritance

We want to end this chapter with some hints that we have found useful when using inheritance.

1. *Place common operations and fields in the superclass.*

This is why we put the `name` field into the `Person` class instead of replicating it in the `Employee` and `Student` classes.

2. *Don't use protected fields.*

Some programmers think it is a good idea to define most instance fields as `protected`, “just in case,” so that subclasses can access these fields if they need to. However, the `protected` mechanism doesn’t give much protection,

for two reasons. First, the set of subclasses is unbounded—anyone can form a subclass of your classes and then write code that directly accesses protected instance fields, thereby breaking encapsulation. And second, in Java, all classes in the same package have access to protected fields, whether or not they are subclasses.

However, protected methods can be useful to indicate methods that are not ready for general use and should be redefined in subclasses.

3. *Use inheritance to model the “is-a” relationship.*

Inheritance is a handy code-saver, but sometimes people overuse it. For example, suppose we need a Contractor class. Contractors have names and hire dates, but they do not have salaries. Instead, they are paid by the hour, and they do not stay around long enough to get a raise. There is the temptation to form a subclass Contractor from Employee and add an hourlyWage field.

```
public class Contractor extends Employee
{
    private double hourlyWage;
    ...
}
```

This is *not* a good idea, however, because now each contractor object has both a salary and hourly wage field. It will cause you no end of grief when you implement methods for printing paychecks or tax forms. You will end up writing more code than you would have written by not inheriting in the first place.

The contractor-employee relationship fails the “is-a” test. A contractor is not a special case of an employee.

4. *Don’t use inheritance unless all inherited methods make sense.*

Suppose we want to write a Holiday class. Surely every holiday is a day, and days can be expressed as instances of the GregorianCalendar class, so we can use inheritance.

```
class Holiday extends GregorianCalendar { . . . }
```

Unfortunately, the set of holidays is not *closed* under the inherited operations. One of the public methods of GregorianCalendar is add. And add can turn holidays into nonholidays:

```
Holiday christmas;
christmas.add(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH, 12);
```

Therefore, inheritance is not appropriate in this example.

Note that this problem does not arise if you extend `LocalDate`. Because that class is immutable, there is no method that could turn a holiday into a nonholiday.

5. *Don't change the expected behavior when you override a method.*

The substitution principle applies not just to syntax but, more importantly, to behavior. When you override a method, you should not unreasonably change its behavior. The compiler can't help you—it cannot check whether your redefinitions make sense. For example, you can "fix" the issue of the `add` method in the `Holiday` class by redefining `add`, perhaps to do nothing, or to throw an exception, or to move on to the next holiday.

However, such a fix violates the substitution principle. The sequence of statements

```
int d1 = x.get(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH);
x.add(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH, 1);
int d2 = x.get(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH);
System.out.println(d2 - d1);
```

should have the *expected behavior*, no matter whether `x` is of type `GregorianCalendar` or `Holiday`.

Of course, therein lies the rub. Reasonable and unreasonable people can argue at length about what the expected behavior is. For example, some authors argue that the substitution principle requires `Manager.equals` to ignore the `bonus` field because `Employee.equals` ignores it. These discussions are pointless if they occur in a vacuum. Ultimately, what matters is that you do not circumvent the intent of the original design when you override methods in subclasses.

6. *Use polymorphism, not type information.*

Whenever you find code of the form

```
if (x is of type 1)
    action1(x);
else if (x is of type 2)
    action2(x);
```

think polymorphism.

Do `action1` and `action2` represent a common concept? If so, make the concept a method of a common superclass or interface of both types. Then, you can simply call

```
x.action();
```

and have the dynamic dispatch mechanism inherent in polymorphism launch the correct action.

Code that uses polymorphic methods or interface implementations is much easier to maintain and extend than code using multiple type tests.

7. *Don't overuse reflection.*

The reflection mechanism lets you write programs with amazing generality, by detecting fields and methods at runtime. This capability can be extremely useful for systems programming, but it is usually not appropriate in applications. Reflection is fragile—with it, the compiler cannot help you find programming errors. Any errors are found at runtime and result in exceptions.

You have now seen how Java supports the fundamentals of object-oriented programming: classes, inheritance, and polymorphism. In the next chapter, we will tackle two advanced topics that are very important for using Java effectively: interfaces and lambda expressions.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Interfaces, Lambda Expressions, and Inner Classes

---

## In this chapter

- 6.1 Interfaces, page 296
- 6.2 Lambda Expressions, page 322
- 6.3 Inner Classes, page 340
- 6.4 Service Loaders, page 360
- 6.5 Proxies, page 362

You have now learned about classes and inheritance, the key concepts of object-oriented programming in Java. This chapter shows you several advanced techniques that are commonly used. Despite their less obvious nature, you will need to master them to complete your Java tool chest.

The first technique, called *interfaces*, is a way of describing *what* classes should do, without specifying *how* they should do it. A class can *implement* one or more interfaces. You can then use objects of these implementing classes whenever conformance to the interface is required. After we cover interfaces,

we move on to *lambda expressions*, a concise way to create blocks of code that can be executed at a later point in time. Using lambda expressions, you can express code that uses callbacks or variable behavior in an elegant and concise fashion.

We then discuss the mechanism of *inner classes*. Inner classes are technically somewhat complex—they are defined inside other classes, and their methods can access the fields of the surrounding class. Inner classes are useful when you design collections of cooperating classes.

This chapter concludes with a discussion of *proxies*, objects that implement arbitrary interfaces. A proxy is a very specialized construct that is useful for building system-level tools. You can safely skip that section on first reading.

## 6.1 Interfaces

In the following sections, you will learn what Java interfaces are and how to use them. You will also find out how interfaces have been made more powerful in recent versions of Java.

### 6.1.1 The Interface Concept

In the Java programming language, an interface is not a class but a set of *requirements* for the classes that want to conform to the interface.

Typically, the supplier of some service states: “If your class conforms to a particular interface, then I’ll perform the service.” Let’s look at a concrete example. The `sort` method of the `Arrays` class promises to sort an array of objects, but under one condition: The objects must belong to classes that implement the `Comparable` interface.

Here is what the `Comparable` interface looks like:

```
public interface Comparable
{
    int compareTo(Object other);
}
```

This means that any class that implements the `Comparable` interface is required to have a `compareTo` method, and the method must take an `Object` parameter and return an integer.



**NOTE:** As of Java 5, the Comparable interface has been enhanced to be a generic type.

```
public interface Comparable<T>
{
    int compareTo(T other); // parameter has type T
}
```

For example, a class that implements Comparable<Employee> must supply a method

```
int compareTo(Employee other)
```

You can still use the “raw” Comparable type without a type parameter. Then the compareTo method has a parameter of type Object, and you have to manually cast that parameter of the compareTo method to the desired type. We will do just that for a little while so that you don’t have to worry about two new concepts at the same time.

---

All methods of an interface are automatically public. For that reason, it is not necessary to supply the keyword public when declaring a method in an interface.

Of course, there is an additional requirement that the interface cannot spell out: When calling `x.compareTo(y)`, the compareTo method must actually be able to *compare* the two objects and return an indication whether `x` or `y` is larger. The method is supposed to return a negative number if `x` is smaller than `y`, zero if they are equal, and a positive number otherwise.

This particular interface has a single method. Some interfaces have multiple methods. As you will see later, interfaces can also define constants. What is more important, however, is what interfaces *cannot* supply. Interfaces never have instance fields. Before Java 8, methods were never implemented in interfaces. (As you will see in Section 6.1.4, “Static and Private Methods,” on p. 306 and Section 6.1.5, “Default Methods,” on p. 307, it is now possible to supply simple methods in interfaces. Of course, those methods cannot refer to instance fields—interfaces don’t have any.)

Supplying instance fields and methods that operate on them is the job of the classes that implement the interface. You can think of an interface as an abstract class with no instance fields. However, there are some differences between these two concepts—we look at them later in some detail.

Now, suppose we want to use the `sort` method of the `Arrays` class to sort an array of `Employee` objects. Then the `Employee` class must *implement* the Comparable interface.

To make a class implement an interface, you carry out two steps:

1. You declare that your class intends to implement the given interface.
2. You supply definitions for all methods in the interface.

To declare that a class implements an interface, use the `implements` keyword:

```
class Employee implements Comparable
```

Of course, now the `Employee` class needs to supply the `compareTo` method. Let's suppose that we want to compare employees by their salary. Here is an implementation of the `compareTo` method:

```
public int compareTo(Object otherObject)
{
    Employee other = (Employee) otherObject;
    return Double.compare(salary, other.salary);
}
```

Here, we use the static `Double.compare` method that returns a negative if the first argument is less than the second argument, 0 if they are equal, and a positive value otherwise.



**CAUTION:** In the interface declaration, the `compareTo` method was not declared `public` because all methods in an *interface* are automatically public. However, when implementing the interface, you must declare the method as `public`. Otherwise, the compiler assumes that the method has package access—the default for a *class*. The compiler then complains that you're trying to supply a more restrictive access privilege.

---

We can do a little better by supplying a type parameter for the generic `Comparable` interface:

```
class Employee implements Comparable<Employee>
{
    public int compareTo(Employee other)
    {
        return Double.compare(salary, other.salary);
    }
    ...
}
```

Note that the unsightly cast of the `Object` parameter has gone away.



**TIP:** The `compareTo` method of the `Comparable` interface returns an integer. If the objects are not equal, it does not matter what negative or positive value you return. This flexibility can be useful when you are comparing integer fields. For example, suppose each employee has a unique integer `id` and you want to sort by the employee ID number. Then you can simply return `id - other.id`. That value will be some negative value if the first ID number is less than the other, 0 if they are the same ID, and some positive value otherwise. However, there is one caveat: The range of the integers must be small enough so that the subtraction does not overflow. If you know that the IDs are not negative or that their absolute value is at most `(Integer.MAX_VALUE - 1) / 2`, you are safe. Otherwise, call the static `Integer.compare` method.

Of course, the subtraction trick doesn't work for floating-point numbers. The difference `salary - other.salary` can round to 0 if the salaries are close together but not identical. The call `Double.compare(x, y)` simply returns -1 if  $x < y$  or 1 if  $x > y$ .



**NOTE:** The documentation of the `Comparable` interface suggests that the `compareTo` method should be compatible with the `equals` method. That is, `x.compareTo(y)` should be zero exactly when `x.equals(y)`. Most classes in the Java API that implement `Comparable` follow this advice. A notable exception is `BigDecimal`. Consider `x = new BigDecimal("1.0")` and `y = new BigDecimal("1.00")`. Then `x.equals(y)` is false because the numbers differ in precision. But `x.compareTo(y)` is zero. Ideally, it shouldn't be, but there was no obvious way of deciding which one should come first.

Now you saw what a class must do to avail itself of the sorting service—it must implement a `compareTo` method. That's eminently reasonable. There needs to be some way for the `sort` method to compare objects. But why can't the `Employee` class simply provide a `compareTo` method without implementing the `Comparable` interface?

The reason for interfaces is that the Java programming language is *strongly typed*. When making a method call, the compiler needs to be able to check that the method actually exists. Somewhere in the `sort` method will be statements like this:

```
if (a[i].compareTo(a[j]) > 0)
{
    // rearrange a[i] and a[j]
    ...
}
```

The compiler must know that `a[i]` actually has a `compareTo` method. If `a` is an array of `Comparable` objects, then the existence of the method is assured because every class that implements the `Comparable` interface must supply the method.



**NOTE:** You would expect that the `sort` method in the `Arrays` class is defined to accept a `Comparable[]` array so that the compiler can complain if anyone ever calls `sort` with an array whose element type doesn't implement the `Comparable` interface. Sadly, that is not the case. Instead, the `sort` method accepts an `Object[]` array and uses a clumsy cast:

```
// approach used in the standard library--not recommended
if (((Comparable) a[i]).compareTo(a[j]) > 0)
{
    // rearrange a[i] and a[j]
    . .
}
```

If `a[i]` does not belong to a class that implements the `Comparable` interface, the virtual machine throws an exception.

---

Listing 6.1 presents the full code for sorting an array of instances of the class `Employee` (Listing 6.2).

#### Listing 6.1 `interfaces/EmployeeSortTest.java`

```
1 package interfaces;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates the use of the Comparable interface.
7  * @version 1.30 2004-02-27
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class EmployeeSortTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var staff = new Employee[3];
15
16         staff[0] = new Employee("Harry Hacker", 35000);
17         staff[1] = new Employee("Carl Cracker", 75000);
18         staff[2] = new Employee("Tony Tester", 38000);
19
20         Arrays.sort(staff);
21 }
```

```
22     // print out information about all Employee objects
23     for (Employee e : staff)
24         System.out.println("name=" + e.getName() + ",salary=" + e.getSalary());
25     }
26 }
```

**Listing 6.2** interfaces/Employee.java

```
1 package interfaces;
2
3 public class Employee implements Comparable<Employee>
4 {
5     private String name;
6     private double salary;
7
8     public Employee(String name, double salary)
9     {
10         this.name = name;
11         this.salary = salary;
12     }
13
14     public String getName()
15     {
16         return name;
17     }
18
19     public double getSalary()
20     {
21         return salary;
22     }
23
24     public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
25     {
26         double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
27         salary += raise;
28     }
29
30 /**
31  * Compares employees by salary
32  * @param other another Employee object
33  * @return a negative value if this employee has a lower salary than
34  * otherObject, 0 if the salaries are the same, a positive value otherwise
35  */
36     public int compareTo(Employee other)
37     {
38         return Double.compare(salary, other.salary);
39     }
40 }
```

**java.lang.Comparable<T> 1.0**

- int compareTo(T other)

compares this object with other and returns a negative integer if this object is less than other, zero if they are equal, and a positive integer otherwise.

**java.util.Arrays 1.2**

- static void sort(Object[] a)

sorts the elements in the array a. All elements in the array must belong to classes that implement the Comparable interface, and they must all be comparable to each other.

**java.lang.Integer 1.0**

- static int compare(int x, int y) [7](#)

returns a negative integer if  $x < y$ , zero if  $x$  and  $y$  are equal, and a positive integer otherwise.

**java.lang.Double 1.0**

- static int compare(double x, double y) [1.4](#)

returns a negative integer if  $x < y$ , zero if  $x$  and  $y$  are equal, and a positive integer otherwise.



**NOTE:** According to the language standard: “The implementor must ensure  $\text{sgn}(x.\text{compareTo}(y)) = -\text{sgn}(y.\text{compareTo}(x))$  for all  $x$  and  $y$ . (This implies that  $x.\text{compareTo}(y)$  must throw an exception if  $y.\text{compareTo}(x)$  throws an exception.)” Here, sgn is the *sign* of a number:  $\text{sgn}(n)$  is  $-1$  if  $n$  is negative,  $0$  if  $n$  equals  $0$ , and  $1$  if  $n$  is positive. In plain English, if you flip the parameters of `compareTo`, the sign (but not necessarily the actual value) of the result must also flip.

As with the `equals` method, problems can arise when inheritance comes into play.

Since `Manager` extends `Employee`, it implements `Comparable<Employee>` and not `Comparable<Manager>`. If `Manager` chooses to override `compareTo`, it must be prepared to compare managers to employees. It can’t simply cast an employee to a manager:

```
class Manager extends Employee
{
    public int compareTo(Employee other)
    {
        Manager otherManager = (Manager) other; // NO
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

That violates the “antisymmetry” rule. If `x` is an `Employee` and `y` is a `Manager`, then the call `x.compareTo(y)` doesn’t throw an exception—it simply compares `x` and `y` as employees. But the reverse, `y.compareTo(x)`, throws a `ClassCastException`.

This is the same situation as with the `equals` method that we discussed in Chapter 5, and the remedy is the same. There are two distinct scenarios.

If subclasses have different notions of comparison, then you should outlaw comparison of objects that belong to different classes. Each `compareTo` method should start out with the test

```
if (getClass() != other.getClass()) throw new ClassCastException();
```

If there is a common algorithm for comparing subclass objects, simply provide a single `compareTo` method in the superclass and declare it as `final`.

For example, suppose you want managers to be better than regular employees, regardless of salary. What about other subclasses such as `Executive` and `Secretary`?

If you need to establish a pecking order, supply a method such as `rank` in the `Employee` class. Have each subclass override `rank`, and implement a single `compareTo` method that takes the `rank` values into account.

## 6.1.2 Properties of Interfaces

Interfaces are not classes. In particular, you can never use the `new` operator to instantiate an interface:

```
x = new Comparable(. . .); // ERROR
```

However, even though you can’t construct interface objects, you can still declare interface variables.

```
Comparable x; // OK
```

An interface variable must refer to an object of a class that implements the interface:

```
x = new Employee(. . .); // OK provided Employee implements Comparable
```

Next, just as you use `instanceof` to check whether an object is of a specific class, you can use `instanceof` to check whether an object implements an interface:

```
if (anObject instanceof Comparable) { . . . }
```

Just as you can build hierarchies of classes, you can extend interfaces. This allows for multiple chains of interfaces that go from a greater degree of generality to a greater degree of specialization. For example, suppose you had an interface called `Moveable`.

```
public interface Moveable
{
    void move(double x, double y);
}
```

Then, you could imagine an interface called `Powered` that extends it:

```
public interface Powered extends Moveable
{
    double milesPerGallon();
}
```

Although you cannot put instance fields in an interface, you can supply constants in them. For example:

```
public interface Powered extends Moveable
{
    double milesPerGallon();
    double SPEED_LIMIT = 95; // a public static final constant
}
```

Just as methods in an interface are automatically `public`, fields are always `public static final`.



**NOTE:** It is legal to tag interface methods as `public`, and fields as `public static final`. Some programmers do that, either out of habit or for greater clarity. However, the Java Language Specification recommends that the redundant keywords not be supplied, and we follow that recommendation.

---

Some interfaces define just constants and no methods. For example, the standard library contains an interface `SwingConstants` that defines constants `NORTH`, `SOUTH`, `HORIZONTAL`, and so on. Any class that chooses to implement the `SwingConstants` interface automatically inherits these constants. Its methods can simply refer to `NORTH` rather than the more cumbersome `SwingConstants.NORTH`. However, this use of interfaces seems rather degenerate, and we do not recommend it.

While each class can have only one superclass, classes can implement *multiple* interfaces. This gives you the maximum amount of flexibility in defining a class's behavior. For example, the Java programming language has an important interface built into it, called `Cloneable`. (We will discuss this interface in detail in Section 6.1.9, "Object Cloning," on p. 314.) If your class implements `Cloneable`, the `clone` method in the `Object` class will make an exact copy of your class's objects. If you want both cloneability and comparability, simply implement both interfaces. Use commas to separate the interfaces that you want to implement:

```
class Employee implements Cloneable, Comparable
```

### 6.1.3 Interfaces and Abstract Classes

If you read the section about abstract classes in Chapter 5, you may wonder why the designers of the Java programming language bothered with introducing the concept of interfaces. Why can't `Comparable` simply be an abstract class:

```
abstract class Comparable // why not?  
{  
    public abstract int compareTo(Object other);  
}
```

The `Employee` class would then simply extend this abstract class and supply the `compareTo` method:

```
class Employee extends Comparable // why not?  
{  
    public int compareTo(Object other) { . . . }  
}
```

There is, unfortunately, a major problem with using an abstract base class to express a generic property. A class can only extend a single class. Suppose the `Employee` class already extends a different class, say, `Person`. Then it can't extend a second class.

```
class Employee extends Person, Comparable // ERROR
```

But each class can implement as many interfaces as it likes:

```
class Employee extends Person implements Comparable // OK
```

Other programming languages, in particular C++, allow a class to have more than one superclass. This feature is called *multiple inheritance*. The designers of Java chose not to support multiple inheritance, because it makes the language either very complex (as in C++) or less efficient (as in Eiffel).

Instead, interfaces afford most of the benefits of multiple inheritance while avoiding the complexities and inefficiencies.



**C++ NOTE:** C++ has multiple inheritance and all the complications that come with it, such as virtual base classes, dominance rules, and transverse pointer casts. Few C++ programmers use multiple inheritance, and some say it should never be used. Other programmers recommend using multiple inheritance only for the “mix-in” style of inheritance. In the mix-in style, a primary base class describes the parent object, and additional base classes (the so-called mix-ins) may supply auxiliary characteristics. That style is similar to a Java class with a single superclass and additional interfaces.

---

### 6.1.4 Static and Private Methods

As of Java 8, you are allowed to add static methods to interfaces. There was never a technical reason why this should be outlawed. It simply seemed to be against the spirit of interfaces as abstract specifications.

Up to now, it has been common to place static methods in companion classes. In the standard library, you’ll find pairs of interfaces and utility classes such as `Collection/Collections` or `Path/Paths`.

You can construct a path to a file or directory from a URI, or from a sequence of strings, such as `Paths.get("jdk-11", "conf", "security")`. In Java 11, equivalent methods are provided in the `Path` interface:

```
public interface Path
{
    public static Path of(URI uri) { . . . }
    public static Path of(String first, String... more) { . . . }
    . .
}
```

Then the `Paths` class is no longer necessary.

Similarly, when you implement your own interfaces, there is no longer a reason to provide a separate companion class for utility methods.

As of Java 9, methods in an interface can be private. A private method can be static or an instance method. Since private methods can only be used in the methods of the interface itself, their use is limited to being helper methods for the other methods of the interface.

### 6.1.5 Default Methods

You can supply a *default* implementation for any interface method. You must tag such a method with the `default` modifier.

```
public interface Comparable<T>
{
    default int compareTo(T other) { return 0; }
        // by default, all elements are the same
}
```

Of course, that is not very useful since every realistic implementation of `Comparable` would override this method. But there are other situations where default methods can be useful. For example, in Chapter 9 you will see an `Iterator` interface for visiting elements in a data structure. It declares a `remove` method as follows:

```
public interface Iterator<E>
{
    boolean hasNext();
    E next();
    default void remove() { throw new UnsupportedOperationException("remove"); }
    ...
}
```

If you implement an iterator, you need to provide the `hasNext` and `next` methods. There are no defaults for these methods—they depend on the data structure that you are traversing. But if your iterator is read-only, you don't have to worry about the `remove` method.

A default method can call other methods. For example, a `Collection` interface can define a convenience method

```
public interface Collection
{
    int size(); // an abstract method
    default boolean isEmpty() { return size() == 0; }
    ...
}
```

Then a programmer implementing `Collection` doesn't have to worry about implementing an `isEmpty` method.



**NOTE:** The `Collection` interface in the Java API does not actually do this. Instead, there is a class `AbstractCollection` that implements `Collection` and defines `isEmpty` in terms of `size`. Implementors of a collection are advised to extend `AbstractCollection`. That technique is obsolete. Just implement the methods in the interface.

An important use for default methods is *interface evolution*. Consider, for example, the `Collection` interface that has been a part of Java for many years. Suppose that a long time ago, you provided a class

```
public class Bag implements Collection
```

Later, in Java 8, a `stream` method was added to the interface.

Suppose the `stream` method was not a default method. Then the `Bag` class would no longer compile since it doesn't implement the new method. Adding a nondefault method to an interface is not *source-compatible*.

But suppose you don't recompile the class and simply use an old JAR file containing it. The class will still load, even with the missing method. Programs can still construct `Bag` instances, and nothing bad will happen. (Adding a method to an interface is *binary compatible*.) However, if a program calls the `stream` method on a `Bag` instance, an `AbstractMethodError` occurs.

Making the method a default method solves both problems. The `Bag` class will again compile. And if the class is loaded without being recompiled and the `stream` method is invoked on a `Bag` instance, the `Collection.stream` method is called.

### 6.1.6 Resolving Default Method Conflicts

What happens if the exact same method is defined as a default method in one interface and then again as a method of a superclass or another interface? Languages such as Scala and C++ have complex rules for resolving such ambiguities. Fortunately, the rules in Java are much simpler. Here they are:

1. Superclasses win. If a superclass provides a concrete method, default methods with the same name and parameter types are simply ignored.
2. Interfaces clash. If an interface provides a default method, and another interface contains a method with the same name and parameter types (default or not), then you must resolve the conflict by overriding that method.

Let's look at the second rule. Consider two interfaces with a `getName` method:

```
interface Person
{
    default String getName() { return ""; }

interface Named
{
    default String getName() { return getClass().getName() + "_" + hashCode(); }
}
```

What happens if you form a class that implements both of them?

```
class Student implements Person, Named { . . . }
```

The class inherits two inconsistent `getName` methods provided by the `Person` and `Named` interfaces. Instead of choosing one over the other, the Java compiler reports an error and leaves it up to the programmer to resolve the ambiguity. Simply provide a `getName` method in the `Student` class. In that method, you can choose one of the two conflicting methods, like this:

```
class Student implements Person, Named
{
    public String getName() { return Person.super.getName(); }
    . .
}
```

Now assume that the `Named` interface does not provide a default implementation for `getName`:

```
interface Named
{
    String getName();
}
```

Can the `Student` class inherit the default method from the `Person` interface? This might be reasonable, but the Java designers decided in favor of uniformity. It doesn't matter how two interfaces conflict. If at least one interface provides an implementation, the compiler reports an error, and the programmer must resolve the ambiguity.



**NOTE:** Of course, if neither interface provides a default for a shared method, then we are in the situation before Java 8, and there is no conflict. An implementing class has two choices: implement the method, or leave it unimplemented. In the latter case, the class is itself abstract.

We just discussed name clashes between two interfaces. Now consider a class that extends a superclass and implements an interface, inheriting the same method from both. For example, suppose that `Person` is a class and `Student` is defined as

```
class Student extends Person implements Named { . . . }
```

In that case, only the superclass method matters, and any default method from the interface is simply ignored. In our example, `Student` inherits the `getName` method from `Person`, and it doesn't make any difference whether the `Named` interface provides a default for `getName` or not. This is the "class wins" rule.

The “class wins” rule ensures compatibility with Java 7. If you add default methods to an interface, it has no effect on code that worked before there were default methods.



**CAUTION:** You can never make a default method that redefines one of the methods in the `Object` class. For example, you can't define a default method for `toString` or `equals`, even though that might be attractive for interfaces such as `List`. As a consequence of the “class wins” rule, such a method could never win against `Object.toString` or `Objects.equals`.

---

### 6.1.7 Interfaces and Callbacks

A common pattern in programming is the *callback* pattern. In this pattern, you specify the action that should occur whenever a particular event happens. For example, you may want a particular action to occur when a button is clicked or a menu item is selected. However, as you have not yet seen how to implement user interfaces, we will consider a similar but simpler situation.

The `javax.swing` package contains a `Timer` class that is useful if you want to be notified whenever a time interval has elapsed. For example, if a part of your program contains a clock, you can ask to be notified every second so that you can update the clock face.

When you construct a timer, you set the time interval and tell it what it should do whenever the time interval has elapsed.

How do you tell the timer what it should do? In many programming languages, you supply the name of a function that the timer should call periodically. However, the classes in the Java standard library take an object-oriented approach. You pass an object of some class. The timer then calls one of the methods on that object. Passing an object is more flexible than passing a function because the object can carry additional information.

Of course, the timer needs to know what method to call. The timer requires that you specify an object of a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface of the `java.awt.event` package. Here is that interface:

```
public interface ActionListener
{
    void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event);
}
```

The timer calls the `actionPerformed` method when the time interval has expired.

Suppose you want to print a message “At the tone, the time is . . .”, followed by a beep, once every second. You would define a class that implements the ActionListener interface. You would then place whatever statements you want to have executed inside the actionPerformed method.

```
class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
            + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
        Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
    }
}
```

Note the ActionEvent parameter of the actionPerformed method. This parameter gives information about the event, such as the time when the event happened. The call event.getWhen() returns the event time, measured in milliseconds since the “epoch” (January 1, 1970). By passing it to the static Instant.ofEpochMilli method, we get a more readable description.

Next, construct an object of this class and pass it to the Timer constructor.

```
var listener = new TimePrinter();
Timer t = new Timer(1000, listener);
```

The first parameter of the Timer constructor is the time interval that must elapse between notifications, measured in milliseconds. We want to be notified every second. The second parameter is the listener object.

Finally, start the timer.

```
t.start();
```

Every second, a message like

```
At the tone, the time is 2017-12-16T05:01:49.550Z
```

is displayed, followed by a beep.

Listing 6.3 puts the timer and its action listener to work. After the timer is started, the program puts up a message dialog and waits for the user to click the OK button to stop. While the program waits for the user, the current time is displayed every second. (If you omit the dialog, the program would terminate as soon as the main method exits.)

**Listing 6.3** timer/TimerTest.java

```
1 package timer;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.02 2017-12-14
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6 */
7
8 import java.awt.*;
9 import java.awt.event.*;
10 import java.time.*;
11 import javax.swing.*;
12
13 public class TimerTest
14 {
15     public static void main(String[] args)
16     {
17         var listener = new TimePrinter();
18
19         // construct a timer that calls the listener
20         // once every second
21         var timer = new Timer(1000, listener);
22         timer.start();
23
24         // keep program running until the user selects "OK"
25         JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Quit program?");
26         System.exit(0);
27     }
28 }
29
30 class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
31 {
32     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
33     {
34         System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
35             + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
36         Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
37     }
38 }
```

**javax.swing.JOptionPane 1.2**

- static void showMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message)

displays a dialog box with a message prompt and an OK button. The dialog is centered over the parent component. If parent is null, the dialog is centered on the screen.

**javax.swing.Timer 1.2**

- `Timer(int interval, ActionListener listener)`  
constructs a timer that notifies listener whenever interval milliseconds have elapsed.
- `void start()`  
starts the timer. Once started, the timer calls `actionPerformed` on its listeners.
- `void stop()`  
stops the timer. Once stopped, the timer no longer calls `actionPerformed` on its listeners.

**java.awt.Toolkit 1.0**

- `static Toolkit getDefaultToolkit()`  
gets the default toolkit. A toolkit contains information about the GUI environment.
- `void beep()`  
emits a beep sound.

### 6.1.8 The Comparator Interface

In Section 6.1.1, “The Interface Concept,” on p. 296, you have seen how you can sort an array of objects, provided they are instances of classes that implement the `Comparable` interface. For example, you can sort an array of strings since the `String` class implements `Comparable<String>`, and the `String.compareTo` method compares strings in dictionary order.

Now suppose we want to sort strings by increasing length, not in dictionary order. We can’t have the `String` class implement the `compareTo` method in two ways—and at any rate, the `String` class isn’t ours to modify.

To deal with this situation, there is a second version of the `Arrays.sort` method whose parameters are an array and a *comparator*—an instance of a class that implements the `Comparator` interface.

```
public interface Comparator<T>
{
    int compare(T first, T second);
}
```

To compare strings by length, define a class that implements `Comparator<String>`:

```
class LengthComparator implements Comparator<String>
{
    public int compare(String first, String second)
    {
        return first.length() - second.length();
    }
}
```

To actually do the comparison, you need to make an instance:

```
var comp = new LengthComparator();
if (comp.compare(words[i], words[j]) > 0) . . .
```

Contrast this call with `words[i].compareTo(words[j])`. The `compare` method is called on the comparator object, not the string itself.



**NOTE:** Even though the `LengthComparator` object has no state, you still need to make an instance of it. You need the instance to call the `compare` method—it is not a static method.

---

To sort an array, pass a `LengthComparator` object to the `Arrays.sort` method:

```
String[] friends = { "Peter", "Paul", "Mary" };
Arrays.sort(friends, new LengthComparator());
```

Now the array is either `["Paul", "Mary", "Peter"]` or `["Mary", "Paul", "Peter"]`.

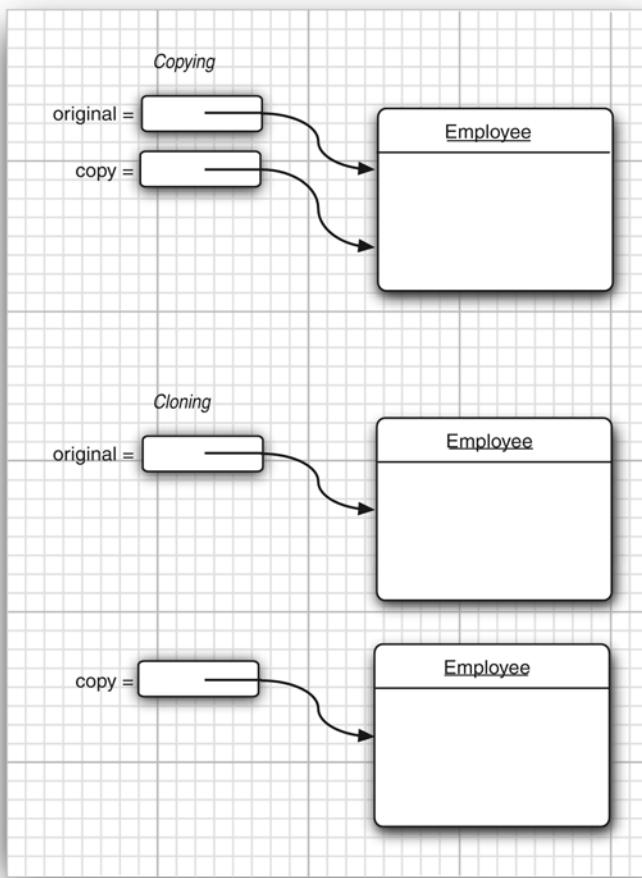
You will see in Section 6.2, “Lambda Expressions,” on p. 322 how to use a `Comparator` much more easily with a lambda expression.

### 6.1.9 Object Cloning

In this section, we discuss the `Cloneable` interface that indicates that a class has provided a safe `clone` method. Since cloning is not all that common, and the details are quite technical, you may just want to glance at this material until you need it.

To understand what cloning means, recall what happens when you make a copy of a variable holding an object reference. The original and the copy are references to the same object (see Figure 6.1). This means a change to either variable also affects the other.

```
var original = new Employee("John Public", 50000);
Employee copy = original;
copy.raiseSalary(10); // oops--also changed original
```



**Figure 6.1** Copying and cloning

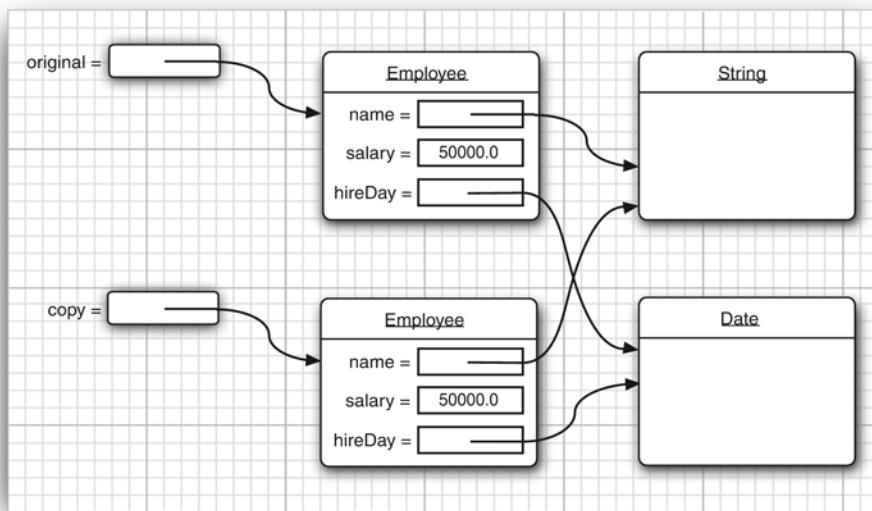
If you would like `copy` to be a new object that begins its life being identical to `original` but whose state can diverge over time, use the `clone` method.

```
Employee copy = original.clone();
copy.raiseSalary(10); // OK - original unchanged
```

But it isn't quite so simple. The `clone` method is a protected method of `Object`, which means that your code cannot simply call it. Only the `Employee` class can clone `Employee` objects. There is a reason for this restriction. Think about the way in which the `Object` class can implement `clone`. It knows nothing about the object at all, so it can make only a field-by-field copy. If all data fields

in the object are numbers or other basic types, copying the fields is just fine. But if the object contains references to subobjects, then copying the field gives you another reference to the same subobject, so the original and the cloned objects still share some information.

To visualize that, consider the `Employee` class that was introduced in Chapter 4. Figure 6.2 shows what happens when you use the `clone` method of the `Object` class to clone such an `Employee` object. As you can see, the default cloning operation is “shallow”—it doesn’t clone objects that are referenced inside other objects. (The figure shows a shared `Date` object. For reasons that will become clear shortly, this example uses a version of the `Employee` class in which the hire day is represented as a `Date`.)



**Figure 6.2** A shallow copy

Does it matter if the copy is shallow? It depends. If the subobject shared between the original and the shallow clone is *immutable*, then the sharing is safe. This certainly happens if the subobject belongs to an immutable class, such as `String`. Alternatively, the subobject may simply remain constant throughout the lifetime of the object, with no mutators touching it and no methods yielding a reference to it.

Quite frequently, however, subobjects are mutable, and you must redefine the `clone` method to make a *deep copy* that clones the subobjects as well. In

our example, the `hireDay` field is a `Date`, which is mutable, so it too must be cloned. (For that reason, this example uses a field of type `Date`, not `LocalDate`, to demonstrate the cloning process. Had `hireDay` been an instance of the immutable `LocalDate` class, no further action would have been required.)

For every class, you need to decide whether

1. The default `clone` method is good enough;
2. The default `clone` method can be patched up by calling `clone` on the mutable subobjects; or
3. `clone` should not be attempted.

The third option is actually the default. To choose either the first or the second option, a class must

1. Implement the `Cloneable` interface; and
2. Redefine the `clone` method with the `public` access modifier.



**NOTE:** The `clone` method is declared `protected` in the `Object` class, so that your code can't simply call `anObject.clone()`. But aren't protected methods accessible from any subclass, and isn't every class a subclass of `Object`? Fortunately, the rules for protected access are more subtle (see Chapter 5). A subclass can call a protected `clone` method only to clone *its own* objects. You must redefine `clone` to be public to allow objects to be cloned by any method.

In this case, the appearance of the `Cloneable` interface has nothing to do with the normal use of interfaces. In particular, it does *not* specify the `clone` method—that method is inherited from the `Object` class. The interface merely serves as a tag, indicating that the class designer understands the cloning process. Objects are so paranoid about cloning that they generate a checked exception if an object requests cloning but does not implement that interface.



**NOTE:** The `Cloneable` interface is one of a handful of *tagging interfaces* that Java provides. (Some programmers call them *marker interfaces*.) Recall that the usual purpose of an interface such as `Comparable` is to ensure that a class implements a particular method or set of methods. A tagging interface has no methods; its only purpose is to allow the use of `instanceof` in a type inquiry:

```
if (obj instanceof Cloneable) . . .
```

We recommend that you do not use tagging interfaces in your own programs.

Even if the default (shallow copy) implementation of `clone` is adequate, you still need to implement the `Cloneable` interface, redefine `clone` to be public, and call `super.clone()`. Here is an example:

```
class Employee implements Cloneable
{
    // public access, change return type
    public Employee clone() throws CloneNotSupportedException
    {
        return (Employee) super.clone();
    }
    ...
}
```



**NOTE:** Up to Java 1.4, the `clone` method always had return type `Object`. Nowadays, you can specify the correct return type for your `clone` methods. This is an example of covariant return types (see Chapter 5).

---

The `clone` method that you just saw adds no functionality to the shallow copy provided by `Object.clone`. It merely makes the method public. To make a deep copy, you have to work harder and clone the mutable instance fields.

Here is an example of a `clone` method that creates a deep copy:

```
class Employee implements Cloneable
{
    ...
    public Employee clone() throws CloneNotSupportedException
    {
        // call Object.clone()
        Employee cloned = (Employee) super.clone();

        // clone mutable fields
        cloned.hireDay = (Date) hireDay.clone();

        return cloned;
    }
}
```

The `clone` method of the `Object` class threatens to throw a `CloneNotSupportedException`—it does that whenever `clone` is invoked on an object whose class does not implement the `Cloneable` interface. Of course, the `Employee` and `Date` classes implement the `Cloneable` interface, so the exception won't be thrown. However, the compiler does not know that. Therefore, we declared the exception:

```
public Employee clone() throws CloneNotSupportedException
```



**NOTE:** Would it be better to catch the exception instead? (See Chapter 7 for details on catching exceptions.)

```
public Employee clone()
{
    try
    {
        Employee cloned = (Employee) super.clone();
        ...
    }
    catch (CloneNotSupportedException e) { return null; }
    // this won't happen, since we are Cloneable
}
```

This is appropriate for final classes. Otherwise, it is better to leave the throws specifier in place. That gives subclasses the option of throwing a `CloneNotSupportedException` if they can't support cloning.

You have to be careful about cloning of subclasses. For example, once you have defined the `clone` method for the `Employee` class, anyone can use it to clone `Manager` objects. Can the `Employee` `clone` method do the job? It depends on the fields of the `Manager` class. In our case, there is no problem because the `bonus` field has primitive type. But `Manager` might have acquired fields that require a deep copy or are not cloneable. There is no guarantee that the implementor of the subclass has fixed `clone` to do the right thing. For that reason, the `clone` method is declared as protected in the `Object` class. But you don't have that luxury if you want the users of your classes to invoke `clone`.

Should you implement `clone` in your own classes? If your clients need to make deep copies, then you probably should. Some authors feel that you should avoid `clone` altogether and instead implement another method for the same purpose. We agree that `clone` is rather awkward, but you'll run into the same issues if you shift the responsibility to another method. At any rate, cloning is less common than you may think. Less than 5 percent of the classes in the standard library implement `clone`.

The program in Listing 6.4 clones an instance of the class `Employee` (Listing 6.5), then invokes two mutators. The `raiseSalary` method changes the value of the `salary` field, whereas the `setHireDay` method changes the state of the `hireDay` field. Neither mutation affects the original object because `clone` has been defined to make a deep copy.



**NOTE:** All array types have a `clone` method that is public, not protected. You can use it to make a new array that contains copies of all elements. For example:

```
int[] luckyNumbers = { 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13 };
int[] cloned = luckyNumbers.clone();
cloned[5] = 12; // doesn't change luckyNumbers[5]
```

---



**NOTE:** Chapter 2 of Volume II shows an alternate mechanism for cloning objects, using the object serialization feature of Java. That mechanism is easy to implement and safe, but not very efficient.

---

#### **Listing 6.4** clone/CloneTest.java

```
1 package clone;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates cloning.
5  * @version 1.11 2018-03-16
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class CloneTest
9 {
10     public static void main(String[] args) throws CloneNotSupportedException
11     {
12         var original = new Employee("John Q. Public", 50000);
13         original.setHireDay(2000, 1, 1);
14         Employee copy = original.clone();
15         copy.raiseSalary(10);
16         copy.setHireDay(2002, 12, 31);
17         System.out.println("original=" + original);
18         System.out.println("copy=" + copy);
19     }
20 }
```

---

#### **Listing 6.5** clone/Employee.java

```
1 package clone;
2
3 import java.util.Date;
4 import java.util.GregorianCalendar;
5
6 public class Employee implements Cloneable
7 {
```

```
8  private String name;
9  private double salary;
10 private Date hireDay;
11
12 public Employee(String name, double salary)
13 {
14     this.name = name;
15     this.salary = salary;
16     hireDay = new Date();
17 }
18
19 public Employee clone() throws CloneNotSupportedException
20 {
21     // call Object.clone()
22     Employee cloned = (Employee) super.clone();
23
24     // clone mutable fields
25     cloned.hireDay = (Date) hireDay.clone();
26
27     return cloned;
28 }
29
30 /**
31 * Set the hire day to a given date.
32 * @param year the year of the hire day
33 * @param month the month of the hire day
34 * @param day the day of the hire day
35 */
36 public void setHireDay(int year, int month, int day)
37 {
38     Date newHireDay = new GregorianCalendar(year, month - 1, day).getTime();
39
40     // example of instance field mutation
41     hireDay.setTime(newHireDay.getTime());
42 }
43
44 public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
45 {
46     double raise = salary * byPercent / 100;
47     salary += raise;
48 }
49
50 public String toString()
51 {
52     return "Employee[name=" + name + ",salary=" + salary + ",hireDay=" + hireDay + "]";
53 }
54 }
```

## 6.2 Lambda Expressions

In the following sections, you will learn how to use lambda expressions for defining blocks of code with a concise syntax, and how to write code that consumes lambda expressions.

### 6.2.1 Why Lambdas?

A lambda expression is a block of code that you can pass around so it can be executed later, once or multiple times. Before getting into the syntax (or even the curious name), let's step back and observe where we have used such code blocks in Java.

In Section 6.1.7, “Interfaces and Callbacks,” on p. 310, you saw how to do work in timed intervals. Put the work into the `actionPerformed` method of an `ActionListener`:

```
class Worker implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        // do some work
    }
}
```

Then, when you want to repeatedly execute this code, you construct an instance of the `Worker` class. You then submit the instance to a `Timer` object.

The key point is that the `actionPerformed` method contains code that you want to execute later.

Or consider sorting with a custom comparator. If you want to sort strings by length instead of the default dictionary order, you can pass a `Comparator` object to the `sort` method:

```
class LengthComparator implements Comparator<String>
{
    public int compare(String first, String second)
    {
        return first.length() - second.length();
    }
}
...
Arrays.sort(strings, new LengthComparator());
```

The `compare` method isn't called right away. Instead, the `sort` method keeps calling the `compare` method, rearranging the elements if they are out of order, until the array is sorted. You give the `sort` method a snippet of code needed

to compare elements, and that code is integrated into the rest of the sorting logic, which you'd probably not care to reimplement.

Both examples have something in common. A block of code was passed to someone—a timer, or a `sort` method. That code block was called at some later time.

Up to now, giving someone a block of code hasn't been easy in Java. You couldn't just pass code blocks around. Java is an object-oriented language, so you had to construct an object belonging to a class that has a method with the desired code.

In other languages, it is possible to work with blocks of code directly. The Java designers have resisted adding this feature for a long time. After all, a great strength of Java is its simplicity and consistency. A language can become an unmaintainable mess if it includes every feature that yields marginally more concise code. However, in those other languages it isn't just easier to spawn a thread or to register a button click handler; large swaths of their APIs are simpler, more consistent, and more powerful. In Java, one could have written similar APIs taking objects of classes that implement a particular interface, but such APIs would be unpleasant to use.

For some time, the question was not whether to augment Java for functional programming, but how to do it. It took several years of experimentation before a design emerged that is a good fit for Java. In the next section, you will see how you can work with blocks of code in Java.

## 6.2.2 The Syntax of Lambda Expressions

Consider again the sorting example from the preceding section. We pass code that checks whether one string is shorter than another. We compute

```
first.length() - second.length()
```

What are `first` and `second`? They are both strings. Java is a strongly typed language, and we must specify that as well:

```
(String first, String second)  
-> first.length() - second.length()
```

You have just seen your first *lambda expression*. Such an expression is simply a block of code, together with the specification of any variables that must be passed to the code.

Why the name? Many years ago, before there were any computers, the logician Alonzo Church wanted to formalize what it means for a mathematical function to be effectively computable. (Curiously, there are functions that are known to exist, but nobody knows how to compute their values.) He used the Greek

letter lambda ( $\lambda$ ) to mark parameters. Had he known about the Java API, he would have written

```
 $\lambda$ first. $\lambda$ second.first.length() - second.length()
```



**NOTE:** Why the letter  $\lambda$ ? Did Church run out of other letters of the alphabet?

Actually, the venerable *Principia Mathematica* used the  $\wedge$  accent to denote free variables, which inspired Church to use an uppercase lambda  $\Lambda$  for parameters. But in the end, he switched to the lowercase version. Ever since, an expression with parameter variables has been called a lambda expression.

---

You have just seen one form of lambda expressions in Java: parameters, the  $\rightarrow$  arrow, and an expression. If the code carries out a computation that doesn't fit in a single expression, write it exactly like you would have written a method: enclosed in {} and with explicit return statements. For example,

```
(String first, String second) ->
{
    if (first.length() < second.length()) return -1;
    else if (first.length() > second.length()) return 1;
    else return 0;
}
```

If a lambda expression has no parameters, you still supply empty parentheses, just as with a parameterless method:

```
() -> { for (int i = 100; i >= 0; i--) System.out.println(i); }
```

If the parameter types of a lambda expression can be inferred, you can omit them. For example,

```
Comparator<String> comp
= (first, second) // same as (String first, String second)
-> first.length() - second.length();
```

Here, the compiler can deduce that first and second must be strings because the lambda expression is assigned to a string comparator. (We will have a closer look at this assignment in the next section.)

If a method has a single parameter with inferred type, you can even omit the parentheses:

```
ActionListener listener = event ->
    System.out.println("The time is "
        + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
    // instead of (event) -> . . . or (ActionEvent event) -> . . .
```

You never specify the result type of a lambda expression. It is always inferred from context. For example, the expression

```
(String first, String second) -> first.length() - second.length()
```

can be used in a context where a result of type `int` is expected.



**NOTE:** It is illegal for a lambda expression to return a value in some branches but not in others. For example, `(int x) -> { if (x >= 0) return 1; }` is invalid.

The program in Listing 6.6 shows how to use lambda expressions for a comparator and an action listener.

#### **Listing 6.6** lambda/LambdaTest.java

```
1 package lambda;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 import javax.swing.*;
6 import javax.swing.Timer;
7
8 /**
9  * This program demonstrates the use of lambda expressions.
10 * @version 1.0 2015-05-12
11 * @author Cay Horstmann
12 */
13 public class LambdaTest
14 {
15     public static void main(String[] args)
16     {
17         var planets = new String[] { "Mercury", "Venus", "Earth", "Mars",
18             "Jupiter", "Saturn", "Uranus", "Neptune" };
19         System.out.println(Arrays.toString(planets));
20         System.out.println("Sorted in dictionary order:");
21         Arrays.sort(planets);
22         System.out.println(Arrays.toString(planets));
23         System.out.println("Sorted by length:");
24         Arrays.sort(planets, (first, second) -> first.length() - second.length());
25         System.out.println(Arrays.toString(planets));
26
27         var timer = new Timer(1000, event ->
28             System.out.println("The time is " + new Date()));
29         timer.start();
30     }
}
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 6.6 (Continued)**

```
31     // keep program running until user selects "OK"
32     JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Quit program?");
33     System.exit(0);
34 }
35 }
```

---

### 6.2.3 Functional Interfaces

As we discussed, there are many existing interfaces in Java that encapsulate blocks of code, such as `ActionListener` or `Comparator`. Lambdas are compatible with these interfaces.

You can supply a lambda expression whenever an object of an interface with a single abstract method is expected. Such an interface is called a *functional interface*.



**NOTE:** You may wonder why a functional interface must have a single *abstract* method. Aren't all methods in an interface abstract? Actually, it has always been possible for an interface to redeclare methods from the `Object` class such as `toString` or `clone`, and these declarations do not make the methods abstract. (Some interfaces in the Java API redeclare `Object` methods in order to attach javadoc comments. Check out the `Comparator` API for an example.) More importantly, as you saw in Section 6.1.5, “Default Methods,” on p. 307, interfaces can declare nonabstract methods.

---

To demonstrate the conversion to a functional interface, consider the `Arrays.sort` method. Its second parameter requires an instance of `Comparator`, an interface with a single method. Simply supply a lambda:

```
Arrays.sort(words,
            (first, second) -> first.length() - second.length());
```

Behind the scenes, the `Arrays.sort` method receives an object of some class that implements `Comparator<String>`. Invoking the `compare` method on that object executes the body of the lambda expression. The management of these objects and classes is completely implementation-dependent, and it can be much more efficient than using traditional inner classes. It is best to think of a lambda expression as a function, not an object, and to accept that it can be passed to a functional interface.

This conversion to interfaces is what makes lambda expressions so compelling. The syntax is short and simple. Here is another example:

```
var timer = new Timer(1000, event ->
{
    System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
        + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
    Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
});
```

That's a lot easier to read than the alternative with a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface.

In fact, conversion to a functional interface is the *only* thing that you can do with a lambda expression in Java. In other programming languages that support function literals, you can declare function types such as `(String, String) -> int`, declare variables of those types, and use the variables to save function expressions. However, the Java designers decided to stick with the familiar concept of interfaces instead of adding function types to the language.



**NOTE:** You can't even assign a lambda expression to a variable of type `Object`—`Object` is not a functional interface.

The Java API defines a number of very generic functional interfaces in the `java.util.function` package. One of the interfaces, `BiFunction<T, U, R>`, describes functions with parameter types `T` and `U` and return type `R`. You can save our string comparison lambda in a variable of that type:

```
BiFunction<String, String, Integer> comp
    = (first, second) -> first.length() - second.length();
```

However, that does not help you with sorting. There is no `Arrays.sort` method that wants a `BiFunction`. If you have used a functional programming language before, you may find this curious. But for Java programmers, it's pretty natural. An interface such as `Comparator` has a specific purpose, not just a method with given parameter and return types. When you want to do something with lambda expressions, you still want to keep the purpose of the expression in mind, and have a specific functional interface for it.

A particularly useful interface in the `java.util.function` package is `Predicate`:

```
public interface Predicate<T>
{
    boolean test(T t);
    // additional default and static methods
}
```

The `ArrayList` class has a `removeIf` method whose parameter is a `Predicate`. It is specifically designed to pass a lambda expression. For example, the following statement removes all `null` values from an array list:

```
list.removeIf(e -> e == null);
```

Another useful functional interface is `Supplier<T>`:

```
public interface Supplier<T>
{
    T get();
}
```

A supplier has no arguments and yields a value of type `T` when it is called. Suppliers are used for *lazy evaluation*. For example, consider the call

```
LocalDate hireDay = Objects.requireNonNullElse(day,
    LocalDate.of(1970, 1, 1));
```

This is not optimal. We expect that `day` is rarely `null`, so we only want to construct the default `LocalDate` when necessary. By using the supplier, we can defer the computation:

```
LocalDate hireDay = Objects.requireNonNullElseGet(day,
    () -> LocalDate.of(1970, 1, 1));
```

The `requireNonNullElseGet` method only calls the supplier when the value is needed.

#### 6.2.4 Method References

Sometimes, a lambda expression involves a single method. For example, suppose you simply want to print the event object whenever a timer event occurs. Of course, you could call

```
var timer = new Timer(1000, event -> System.out.println(event));
```

It would be nicer if you could just pass the `println` method to the `Timer` constructor. Here is how you do that:

```
var timer = new Timer(1000, System.out::println);
```

The expression `System.out::println` is a *method reference*. It directs the compiler to produce an instance of a functional interface, overriding the single abstract method of the interface to call the given method. In this example, an `ActionListener` is produced whose `actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)` method calls `System.out.println(e)`.



**NOTE:** Like a lambda expression, a method reference is not an object. It gives rise to an object when assigned to a variable whose type is a functional interface.



**NOTE:** There are ten overloaded `println` methods in the `PrintStream` class (of which `System.out` is an instance). The compiler needs to figure out which one to use, depending on context. In our example, the method reference `System.out::println` must be turned into an `ActionListener` instance with a method

```
void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)
```

The `println(Object x)` method is selected from the ten overloaded `println` methods since `Object` is the best match for `ActionEvent`. When the `actionPerformed` method is called, the event object is printed.

Now suppose we assign the same method reference to a different functional interface:

```
Runnable task = System.out::println;
```

The `Runnable` functional interface has a single abstract method with no parameters

```
void run()
```

In this case, the `println()` method with no parameters is chosen. Calling `task.run()` prints a blank line to `System.out`.

As another example, suppose you want to sort strings regardless of letter case. You can pass this method expression:

```
Arrays.sort(strings, String::compareToIgnoreCase)
```

As you can see from these examples, the `::` operator separates the method name from the name of an object or class. There are three variants:

1. *object::instanceMethod*
2. *Class::instanceMethod*
3. *Class::staticMethod*

In the first variant, the method reference is equivalent to a lambda expression whose parameters are passed to the method. In the case of `System.out::println`, the object is `System.out`, and the method expression is equivalent to `x -> System.out.println(x)`.

In the second variant, the first parameter becomes the implicit parameter of the method. For example, `String::compareToIgnoreCase` is the same as `(x, y) -> x.compareToIgnoreCase(y)`.

In the third variant, all parameters are passed to the static method: `Math::pow` is equivalent to `(x, y) -> Math.pow(x, y)`.

Table 6.1 walks you through additional examples.

Note that a lambda expression can only be rewritten as a method reference if the body of the lambda expression calls a single method and doesn't do anything else. Consider the lambda expression

```
s -> s.length() == 0
```

There is a single method call. But there is also a comparison, so you can't use a method reference here.



**NOTE:** When there are multiple overloaded methods with the same name, the compiler will try to find from the context which one you mean. For example, there are two versions of the `Math.max` method, one for integers and one for double values. Which one gets picked depends on the method parameters of the functional interface to which `Math::max` is converted. Just like lambda expressions, method references don't live in isolation. They are always turned into instances of functional interfaces.



**NOTE:** Sometimes, the API contains methods that are specifically intended to be used as method references. For example, the `Objects` class has a method `isNull` to test whether an object reference is `null`. At first glance, this doesn't seem useful because the test `obj == null` is easier to read than `Objects.isNull(obj)`. But you can pass the method reference to any method with a `Predicate` parameter. For example, to remove all `null` references from a list, you can call

```
list.removeIf(Objects::isNull);
// A bit easier to read than list.removeIf(e -> e == null);
```



**NOTE:** There is a tiny difference between a method reference with an object and its equivalent lambda expression. Consider a method reference such as `separator::equals`. If `separator` is `null`, forming `separator::equals` immediately throws a `NullPointerException`. The lambda expression `x -> separator.equals(x)` only throws a `NullPointerException` if it is invoked.

You can capture the `this` parameter in a method reference. For example, `this::equals` is the same as `x -> this.equals(x)`. It is also valid to use `super`. The method expression

```
super::instanceMethod
```

**Table 6.1** Method Reference Examples

Method Reference	Equivalent Lambda Expression	Notes
separator::equals	<code>x -&gt; separator.equals(x)</code>	This is a method expression with an <i>object</i> and an instance method. The lambda parameter is passed as the explicit parameter of the method.
String::trim	<code>x -&gt; x.trim()</code>	This is a method expression with a <i>class</i> and an instance method. The lambda parameter becomes the implicit parameter.
String::concat	<code>(x, y) -&gt; x.concat(y)</code>	Again, we have an instance method, but this time, with an explicit parameter. As before, the <i>first</i> lambda parameter becomes the implicit parameter, and the remaining ones are passed to the method.
Integer.valueOf	<code>x -&gt; Integer.valueOf(x)</code>	This is a method expression with a <i>static</i> method. The lambda parameter is passed to the static method.
Integer.sum	<code>(x, y) -&gt; Integer.sum(x, y)</code>	This is another static method, but this time with two parameters. Both lambda parameters are passed to the static method. The Integer.sum method was specifically created to be used as a method reference. As a lambda, you could just write <code>(x, y) -&gt; x + y</code> .
Integer::new	<code>x -&gt; new Integer(x)</code>	This is a constructor reference—see Section 6.2.5. The lambda parameters are passed to the constructor.
Integer[]::new	<code>n -&gt; new Integer[n]</code>	This is an array constructor reference—see Section 6.2.5. The lambda parameter is the array length.

uses this as the target and invokes the superclass version of the given method. Here is an artificial example that shows the mechanics:

```
class Greeter
{
    public void greet(ActionEvent event)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, the time is "
            + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
    }
}

class RepeatedGreeter extends Greeter
{
    public void greet(ActionEvent event)
    {
        var timer = new Timer(1000, super::greet);
        timer.start();
    }
}
```

When the `RepeatedGreeter.greet` method starts, a `Timer` is constructed that executes the `super::greet` method on every timer tick.

### 6.2.5 Constructor References

Constructor references are just like method references, except that the name of the method is `new`. For example, `Person::new` is a reference to a `Person` constructor. Which constructor? It depends on the context. Suppose you have a list of strings. Then you can turn it into an array of `Person` objects, by calling the constructor on each of the strings, with the following invocation:

```
ArrayList<String> names = . . .;
Stream<Person> stream = names.stream().map(Person::new);
List<Person> people = stream.collect(Collectors.toList());
```

We will discuss the details of the `stream`, `map`, and `collect` methods in Chapter 1 of Volume II. For now, what's important is that the `map` method calls the `Person(String)` constructor for each list element. If there are multiple `Person` constructors, the compiler picks the one with a `String` parameter because it infers from the context that the constructor is called with a string.

You can form constructor references with array types. For example, `int[]::new` is a constructor reference with one parameter: the length of the array. It is equivalent to the lambda expression `x -> new int[x]`.

Array constructor references are useful to overcome a limitation of Java. It is not possible to construct an array of a generic type `T`. The expression `new T[n]` is an error since it would be erased to `new Object[n]`. That is a problem for library

authors. For example, suppose we want to have an array of Person objects. The Stream interface has a `toArray` method that returns an `Object` array:

```
Object[] people = stream.toArray();
```

But that is unsatisfactory. The user wants an array of references to Person, not references to Object. The stream library solves that problem with constructor references. Pass `Person[]::new` to the `toArray` method:

```
Person[] people = stream.toArray(Person[]::new);
```

The `toArray` method invokes this constructor to obtain an array of the correct type. Then it fills and returns the array.

### 6.2.6 Variable Scope

Often, you want to be able to access variables from an enclosing method or class in a lambda expression. Consider this example:

```
public static void repeatMessage(String text, int delay)
{
    ActionListener listener = event ->
    {
        System.out.println(text);
        Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
    };
    new Timer(delay, listener).start();
}
```

Consider a call

```
repeatMessage("Hello", 1000); // prints Hello every 1,000 milliseconds
```

Now look at the variable `text` inside the lambda expression. Note that this variable is *not* defined in the lambda expression. Instead, it is a parameter variable of the `repeatMessage` method.

If you think about it, something nonobvious is going on here. The code of the lambda expression may run long after the call to `repeatMessage` has returned and the parameter variables are gone. How does the `text` variable stay around?

To understand what is happening, we need to refine our understanding of a lambda expression. A lambda expression has three ingredients:

1. A block of code
2. Parameters
3. Values for the *free* variables—that is, the variables that are not parameters and not defined inside the code

In our example, the lambda expression has one free variable, `text`. The data structure representing the lambda expression must store the values for the free variables—in our case, the string "Hello". We say that such values have been *captured* by the lambda expression. (It's an implementation detail how that is done. For example, one can translate a lambda expression into an object with a single method, so that the values of the free variables are copied into instance variables of that object.)



**NOTE:** The technical term for a block of code together with the values of the free variables is a *closure*. If someone gloats that their language has closures, rest assured that Java has them as well. In Java, lambda expressions are closures.

---

As you have seen, a lambda expression can capture the value of a variable in the enclosing scope. In Java, to ensure that the captured value is well-defined, there is an important restriction. In a lambda expression, you can only reference variables whose value doesn't change. For example, the following is illegal:

```
public static void countDown(int start, int delay)
{
    ActionListener listener = event ->
    {
        start--; // ERROR: Can't mutate captured variable
        System.out.println(start);
    };
    new Timer(delay, listener).start();
}
```

There is a reason for this restriction. Mutating variables in a lambda expression is not safe when multiple actions are executed concurrently. This won't happen for the kinds of actions that we have seen so far, but in general, it is a serious problem. See Chapter 12 for more information on this important issue.

It is also illegal to refer, in a lambda expression, to a variable that is mutated outside. For example, the following is illegal:

```
public static void repeat(String text, int count)
{
    for (int i = 1; i <= count; i++)
    {
        ActionListener listener = event ->
        {
            System.out.println(i + ": " + text);
            // ERROR: Cannot refer to changing i
        };
    }
}
```

```
    new Timer(1000, listener).start();
}
```

The rule is that any captured variable in a lambda expression must be *effectively final*. An effectively final variable is a variable that is never assigned a new value after it has been initialized. In our case, `text` always refers to the same `String` object, and it is OK to capture it. However, the value of `i` is mutated, and therefore `i` cannot be captured.

The body of a lambda expression has *the same scope as a nested block*. The same rules for name conflicts and shadowing apply. It is illegal to declare a parameter or a local variable in the lambda that has the same name as a local variable.

```
Path first = Path.of("/usr/bin");
Comparator<String> comp
    = (first, second) -> first.length() - second.length();
// ERROR: Variable first already defined
```

Inside a method, you can't have two local variables with the same name, and therefore, you can't introduce such variables in a lambda expression either.

When you use the `this` keyword in a lambda expression, you refer to the `this` parameter of the method that creates the lambda. For example, consider

```
public class Application
{
    public void init()
    {
        ActionListener listener = event ->
        {
            System.out.println(this.toString());
            ...
        }
        ...
    }
}
```

The expression `this.toString()` calls the `toString` method of the `Application` object, *not* the `ActionListener` instance. There is nothing special about the use of `this` in a lambda expression. The scope of the lambda expression is nested inside the `init` method, and `this` has the same meaning anywhere in that method.

### 6.2.7 Processing Lambda Expressions

Up to now, you have seen how to produce lambda expressions and pass them to a method that expects a functional interface. Now let us see how to write methods that can consume lambda expressions.

The point of using lambdas is *deferred execution*. After all, if you wanted to execute some code right now, you'd do that, without wrapping it inside a lambda. There are many reasons for executing code later, such as:

- Running the code in a separate thread
- Running the code multiple times
- Running the code at the right point in an algorithm (for example, the comparison operation in sorting)
- Running the code when something happens (a button was clicked, data has arrived, and so on)
- Running the code only when necessary

Let's look at a simple example. Suppose you want to repeat an action  $n$  times. The action and the count are passed to a repeat method:

```
repeat(10, () -> System.out.println("Hello, World!"));
```

To accept the lambda, we need to pick (or, in rare cases, provide) a functional interface. Table 6.2 lists the most important functional interfaces that are provided in the Java API. In this case, we can use the `Runnable` interface:

```
public static void repeat(int n, Runnable action)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < n; i++) action.run();
}
```

Note that the body of the lambda expression is executed when `action.run()` is called.

Now let's make this example a bit more sophisticated. We want to tell the action in which iteration it occurs. For that, we need to pick a functional interface that has a method with an `int` parameter and a `void` return. The standard interface for processing `int` values is

```
public interface IntConsumer
{
    void accept(int value);
}
```

Here is the improved version of the repeat method:

```
public static void repeat(int n, IntConsumer action)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < n; i++) action.accept(i);
}
```

And here is how you call it:

```
repeat(10, i -> System.out.println("Countdown: " + (9 - i)));
```

**Table 6.2** Common Functional Interfaces

Functional Interface	Parameter Types	Return Type	Abstract Method Name	Description	Other Methods
Runnable	none	void	run	Runs an action without arguments or return value	
Supplier<T>	none	T	get	Supplies a value of type T	
Consumer<T>	T	void	accept	Consumes a value of type T	andThen
BiConsumer<T, U>	T, U	void	accept	Consumes values of types T and U	andThen
Function<T, R>	T	R	apply	A function with argument of type T	compose, andThen, identity
BiFunction<T, U, R>	T, U	R	apply	A function with arguments of types T and U	andThen
UnaryOperator<T>	T	T	apply	A unary operator on the type T	compose, andThen, identity
BinaryOperator<T>	T, T	T	apply	A binary operator on the type T	andThen, maxBy, minBy
Predicate<T>	T	boolean	test	A boolean-valued function	and, or, negate, isEqual
BiPredicate<T, U>	T, U	boolean	test	A boolean-valued function with two arguments	and, or, negate

Table 6.3 lists the 34 available specializations for primitive types int, long, and double. As you will see in Chapter 8, it is more efficient to use these specializations than the generic interfaces. For that reason, I used an IntConsumer instead of a Consumer<Integer> in the example of the preceding section.

**Table 6.3** Functional Interfaces for Primitive Types

*p, q* is int, long, double; *P, Q* is Int, Long, Double

Functional Interface	Parameter Types	Return Type	Abstract Method Name
BooleanSupplier	none	boolean	getAsBoolean
PSupplier	none	<i>p</i>	getAs <i>P</i>
PConsumer	<i>p</i>	void	accept
ObjPConsumer< <i>T</i> >	<i>T, p</i>	void	accept
PFunction< <i>T</i> >	<i>p</i>	<i>T</i>	apply
PToQFunction	<i>p</i>	<i>q</i>	applyAs <i>Q</i>
ToPFunction< <i>T</i> >	<i>T</i>	<i>p</i>	applyAs <i>P</i>
ToPBiFunction< <i>T, U</i> >	<i>T, U</i>	<i>p</i>	applyAs <i>P</i>
PUnaryOperator	<i>p</i>	<i>p</i>	applyAs <i>P</i>
PBinaryOperator	<i>p, p</i>	<i>p</i>	applyAs <i>P</i>
PPredicate	<i>p</i>	boolean	test



**TIP:** It is a good idea to use an interface from Tables 6.2 or 6.3 whenever you can. For example, suppose you write a method to process files that match a certain criterion. There is a legacy interface java.io.FileFilter, but it is better to use the standard Predicate<File>. The only reason not to do so would be if you already have many useful methods producing FileFilter instances.



**NOTE:** Most of the standard functional interfaces have nonabstract methods for producing or combining functions. For example, Predicate.isEqual(a) is the same as *a::equals*, but it also works if *a* is null. There are default methods and, or, negate for combining predicates. For example, Predicate.isEqual(a).or(Predicate.isEqual(b)) is the same as *x -> a.equals(x) || b.equals(x)*.



**NOTE:** If you design your own interface with a single abstract method, you can tag it with the `@FunctionalInterface` annotation. This has two advantages. The compiler gives an error message if you accidentally add another abstract method. And the javadoc page includes a statement that your interface is a functional interface.

It is not required to use the annotation. Any interface with a single abstract method is, by definition, a functional interface. But using the `@FunctionalInterface` annotation is a good idea.

### 6.2.8 More about Comparators

The `Comparator` interface has a number of convenient static methods for creating comparators. These methods are intended to be used with lambda expressions or method references.

The static `comparing` method takes a “key extractor” function that maps a type `T` to a comparable type (such as `String`). The function is applied to the objects to be compared, and the comparison is then made on the returned keys. For example, suppose you have an array of `Person` objects. Here is how you can sort them by name:

```
Arrays.sort(people, Comparator.comparing(Person::getName));
```

This is certainly much easier than implementing a `Comparator` by hand. Moreover, the code is clearer since it is obvious that we want to compare people by name.

You can chain comparators with the `thenComparing` method for breaking ties. For example,

```
Arrays.sort(people,
    Comparator.comparing(Person::getLastName)
        .thenComparing(Person::getFirstName));
```

If two people have the same last name, then the second comparator is used.

There are a few variations of these methods. You can specify a comparator to be used for the keys that the `comparing` and `thenComparing` methods extract. For example, here we sort people by the length of their names:

```
Arrays.sort(people, Comparator.comparing(Person::getName,
    (s, t) -> Integer.compare(s.length(), t.length())));
```

Moreover, both the `comparing` and `thenComparing` methods have variants that avoid boxing of `int`, `long`, or `double` values. An easier way of producing the preceding operation would be

```
Arrays.sort(people, Comparator.comparing(p -> p.getName().length()));
```

If your key function can return `null`, you will like the `nullsFirst` and `nullsLast` adapters. These static methods take an existing comparator and modify it so that it doesn't throw an exception when encountering `null` values but ranks them as smaller or larger than regular values. For example, suppose `getMiddleName` returns a `null` when a person has no middle name. Then you can use `Comparator.comparing(Person::getMiddleName, Comparator.nullsFirst(. . .))`.

The `nullsFirst` method needs a comparator—in this case, one that compares two strings. The `naturalOrder` method makes a comparator for any class implementing `Comparable`. A `Comparator.<String>naturalOrder()` is what we need. Here is the complete call for sorting by potentially null middle names. I use a static import of `java.util.Comparator.*`, to make the expression more legible. Note that the type for `naturalOrder` is inferred.

```
Arrays.sort(people, comparing(Person::getMiddleName, nullsFirst(naturalOrder())));
```

The static `reverseOrder` method gives the reverse of the natural order. To reverse any comparator, use the `reversed` instance method. For example, `naturalOrder().reversed()` is the same as `reverseOrder()`.

## 6.3 Inner Classes

An *inner class* is a class that is defined inside another class. Why would you want to do that? There are two reasons:

- Inner classes can be hidden from other classes in the same package.
- Inner class methods can access the data from the scope in which they are defined—including the data that would otherwise be private.

Inner classes used to be very important for concisely implementing callbacks, but nowadays lambda expressions do a much better job. Still, inner classes can be very useful for structuring your code. The following sections walk you through all the details.



**C++ NOTE:** C++ has *nested classes*. A nested class is contained inside the scope of the enclosing class. Here is a typical example: A linked list class defines a class to hold the links, and a class to define an iterator position.

```
class LinkedList
{
public:
    class Iterator // a nested class
    {
    public:
        void insert(int x);
        int erase();
        ...
    private:
        Link* current;
        LinkedList* owner;
    };
    ...
private:
    Link* head;
    Link* tail;
};
```

Nested classes are similar to inner classes in Java. However, the Java inner classes have an additional feature that makes them richer and more useful than nested classes in C++. An object that comes from an inner class has an implicit reference to the outer class object that instantiated it. Through this pointer, it gains access to the total state of the outer object. For example, in Java, the Iterator class would not need an explicit pointer to the LinkedList into which it points.

In Java, static inner classes do not have this added pointer. They are the Java analog to nested classes in C++.

### 6.3.1 Use of an Inner Class to Access Object State

The syntax for inner classes is rather complex. For that reason, we present a simple but somewhat artificial example to demonstrate the use of inner classes. We refactor the TimerTest example and extract a TalkingClock class. A talking clock is constructed with two parameters: the interval between announcements and a flag to turn beeps on or off.

```
public class TalkingClock
{
    private int interval;
    private boolean beep;

    public TalkingClock(int interval, boolean beep) { . . . }
    public void start() { . . . }

    public class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
        // an inner class
    {
        . .
    }
}
```

Note that the `TimePrinter` class is now located inside the `TalkingClock` class. This does *not* mean that every `TalkingClock` has a `TimePrinter` instance field. As you will see, the `TimePrinter` objects are constructed by methods of the `TalkingClock` class.

Here is the `TimePrinter` class in greater detail. Note that the `actionPerformed` method checks the `beep` flag before emitting a beep.

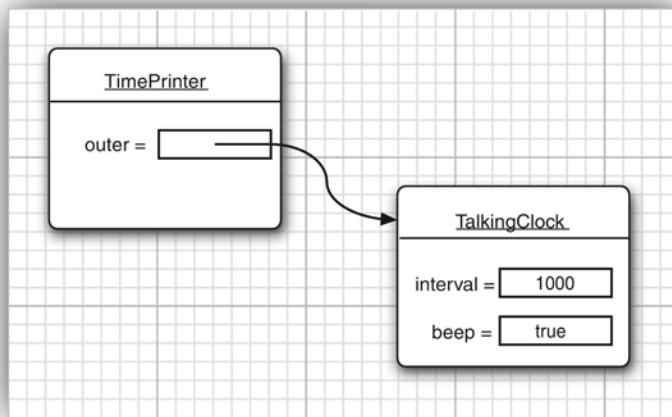
```
public class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
            + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
        if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
    }
}
```

Something surprising is going on. The `TimePrinter` class has no instance field or variable named `beep`. Instead, `beep` refers to the field of the `TalkingClock` object that created this `TimePrinter`. As you can see, an inner class method gets to access both its own data fields *and* those of the outer object creating it.

For this to work, an object of an inner class always gets an implicit reference to the object that created it (see Figure 6.3).

This reference is invisible in the definition of the inner class. However, to illuminate the concept, let us call the reference to the outer object `outer`. Then the `actionPerformed` method is equivalent to the following:

```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
{
    System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
        + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
    if (outer.beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
}
```



**Figure 6.3** An inner class object has a reference to an outer class object.

The outer class reference is set in the constructor. The compiler modifies all inner class constructors, adding a parameter for the outer class reference. The `TimePrinter` class defines no constructors; therefore, the compiler synthesizes a no-argument constructor, generating code like this:

```
public TimePrinter(TalkingClock clock) // automatically generated code
{
    outer = clock;
}
```

Again, please note that `outer` is not a Java keyword. We just use it to illustrate the mechanism involved in an inner class.

When a `TimePrinter` object is constructed in the `start` method, the compiler passes the `this` reference to the current talking clock into the constructor:

```
var listener = new TimePrinter(this); // parameter automatically added
```

Listing 6.7 shows the complete program that tests the inner class. Have another look at the access control. Had the `TimePrinter` class been a regular class, it would have needed to access the `beep` flag through a public method of the `TalkingClock` class. Using an inner class is an improvement. There is no need to provide accessors that are of interest only to one other class.



**NOTE:** We could have declared the `TimePrinter` class as private. Then only `TalkingClock` methods would be able to construct `TimePrinter` objects. Only inner classes can be private. Regular classes always have either package or public access.

---

### Listing 6.7 innerClass/InnerClassTest.java

---

```
1 package innerClass;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import java.time.*;
6
7 import javax.swing.*;
8
9 /**
10  * This program demonstrates the use of inner classes.
11  * @version 1.11 2017-12-14
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13 */
14 public class InnerClassTest
15 {
16     public static void main(String[] args)
17     {
18         var clock = new TalkingClock(1000, true);
19         clock.start();
20
21         // keep program running until the user selects "OK"
22         JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Quit program?");
23         System.exit(0);
24     }
25 }
26
27 /**
28  * A clock that prints the time in regular intervals.
29 */
30 class TalkingClock
31 {
32     private int interval;
33     private boolean beep;
34
35     /**
36      * Constructs a talking clock
37      * @param interval the interval between messages (in milliseconds)
38      * @param beep true if the clock should beep
39     */
```

```
40     public TalkingClock(int interval, boolean beep)
41     {
42         this.interval = interval;
43         this.beep = beep;
44     }
45
46     /**
47      * Starts the clock.
48      */
49     public void start()
50     {
51         var listener = new TimePrinter();
52         var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
53         timer.start();
54     }
55
56     public class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
57     {
58         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
59         {
60             System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
61                 + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
62             if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
63         }
64     }
65 }
```

### 6.3.2 Special Syntax Rules for Inner Classes

In the preceding section, we explained the outer class reference of an inner class by calling it *outer*. Actually, the proper syntax for the outer reference is a bit more complex. The expression

*OuterClass.this*

denotes the outer class reference. For example, you can write the `actionPerformed` method of the `TimePrinter` inner class as

```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
{
    .
    .
    if (TalkingClock.this.beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
}
```

Conversely, you can write the inner object constructor more explicitly, using the syntax

*outerObject.new InnerClass(construction parameters)*

For example:

```
ActionListener listener = this.new TimePrinter();
```

Here, the outer class reference of the newly constructed `TimePrinter` object is set to the `this` reference of the method that creates the inner class object. This is the most common case. As always, the `this` qualifier is redundant. However, it is also possible to set the outer class reference to another object by explicitly naming it. For example, since `TimePrinter` is a public inner class, you can construct a `TimePrinter` for any talking clock:

```
var jabberer = new TalkingClock(1000, true);
TalkingClock.TimePrinter listener = jabberer.new TimePrinter();
```

Note that you refer to an inner class as

*OuterClass.InnerClass*

when it occurs outside the scope of the outer class.



**NOTE:** Any static fields declared in an inner class must be final and initialized with a compile-time constant. If the field was not a constant, it might not be unique.

An inner class cannot have static methods. The Java Language Specification gives no reason for this limitation. It would have been possible to allow static methods that only access static fields and methods from the enclosing class. Apparently, the language designers decided that the complexities outweighed the benefits.

---

### 6.3.3 Are Inner Classes Useful? Actually Necessary? Secure?

When inner classes were added to the Java language in Java 1.1, many programmers considered them a major new feature that was out of character with the Java philosophy of being simpler than C++. The inner class syntax is undeniably complex. (It gets more complex as we study anonymous inner classes later in this chapter.) It is not obvious how inner classes interact with other features of the language, such as access control and security.

By adding a feature that was elegant and interesting rather than needed, has Java started down the road to ruin which has afflicted so many other languages?

While we won't try to answer this question completely, it is worth noting that inner classes are a phenomenon of the *compiler*, not the virtual machine. Inner classes are translated into regular class files with \$ (dollar signs) delimiting outer and inner class names, and the virtual machine does not have any special knowledge about them.

For example, the `TimePrinter` class inside the `TalkingClock` class is translated to a class file `TalkingClock$TimePrinter.class`. To see this at work, try the following experiment: run the `ReflectionTest` program of Chapter 5, and give it the class `TalkingClock$TimePrinter` to reflect upon. Alternatively, simply use the `javap` utility:

```
javap -private ClassName
```



**NOTE:** If you use UNIX, remember to escape the \$ character when you supply the class name on the command line. That is, run the `ReflectionTest` or `javap` program as

```
java reflection.ReflectionTest innerClass.TalkingClock$TimePrinter
```

or

```
javap -private innerClass.TalkingClock$TimePrinter
```

You will get the following printout:

```
public class innerClass.TalkingClock$TimePrinter
    implements java.awt.event.ActionListener
{
    final innerClass.TalkingClock this$0;
    public innerClass.TalkingClock$TimePrinter(innerClass.TalkingClock);
    public void actionPerformed(java.awt.event.ActionEvent);
}
```

You can plainly see that the compiler has generated an additional instance field, `this$0`, for the reference to the outer class. (The name `this$0` is synthesized by the compiler—you cannot refer to it in your code.) You can also see the `TalkingClock` parameter for the constructor.

If the compiler can automatically do this transformation, couldn't you simply program the same mechanism by hand? Let's try it. We would make `TimePrinter` a regular class, outside the `TalkingClock` class. When constructing a `TimePrinter` object, we pass it the `this` reference of the object that is creating it.

```
class TalkingClock
{
    ...
    public void start()
    {
        var listener = new TimePrinter(this);
        var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
        timer.start();
    }
}
```

```
class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
{
    private TalkingClock outer;
    .
    .
    public TimePrinter(TalkingClock clock)
    {
        outer = clock;
    }
}
```

Now let us look at the `actionPerformed` method. It needs to access `outer.beep`.

```
if (outer.beep) . . . // ERROR
```

Here we run into a problem. The inner class can access the private data of the outer class, but our external `TimePrinter` class cannot.

Thus, inner classes are genuinely more powerful than regular classes because they have more access privileges.

You may well wonder how inner classes manage to acquire those added access privileges, if they are translated to regular classes with funny names—the virtual machine knows nothing at all about them. To solve this mystery, let's again use the `ReflectionTest` program to spy on the `TalkingClock` class:

```
class TalkingClock
{
    private int interval;
    private boolean beep;

    public TalkingClock(int, boolean);

    static boolean access$0(TalkingClock);
    public void start();
}
```

Notice the static `access$0` method that the compiler added to the outer class. It returns the `beep` field of the object that is passed as a parameter. (The method name might be slightly different, such as `access$000`, depending on your compiler.)

The inner class methods call that method. The statement

```
if (beep)
```

in the `actionPerformed` method of the `TimePrinter` class effectively makes the following call:

```
if (TalkingClock.access$0(outer))
```

Is this a security risk? You bet it is. It is an easy matter for someone else to invoke the `access$0` method to read the private `beep` field. Of course, `access$0` is not a legal name for a Java method. However, hackers who are familiar with the structure of class files can easily produce a class file with virtual machine instructions to call that method, for example, by using a hex editor. Since the secret methods have package access, the attack code would need to be placed inside the same package as the class under attack.

To summarize, if an inner class accesses a private data field, then it is possible to access that data field through other classes added to the package of the outer class, but to do so requires skill and determination. A programmer cannot accidentally obtain access but must intentionally build or modify a class file for that purpose.



**NOTE:** The synthesized constructors and methods can get quite convoluted. (Skip this note if you are squeamish.) Suppose we turn `TimePrinter` into a private inner class. There are no private classes in the virtual machine, so the compiler produces the next best thing, a class with package access and a private constructor:

```
private TalkingClock$TimePrinter(TalkingClock);
```

Of course, nobody can call that constructor, so there is a second constructor with package access:

```
TalkingClock$TimePrinter(TalkingClock, TalkingClock$1);
```

that calls the first one. The `TalkingClock$1` class is synthesized solely to distinguish this constructor from others.

The compiler translates the constructor call in the `start` method of the `TalkingClock` class to

```
new TalkingClock$TimePrinter(this, null)
```

### 6.3.4 Local Inner Classes

If you look carefully at the code of the `TalkingClock` example, you will find that you need the name of the type `TimePrinter` only once: when you create an object of that type in the `start` method.

In a situation like this, you can define the class *locally in a single method*.

```
public void start()
{
```

```
class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
            + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
        if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
    }
}

var listener = new TimePrinter();
var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
timer.start();
}
```

Local classes are never declared with an access specifier (that is, `public` or `private`). Their scope is always restricted to the block in which they are declared.

Local classes have one great advantage: They are completely hidden from the outside world—not even other code in the `TalkingClock` class can access them. No method except `start` has any knowledge of the `TimePrinter` class.

### 6.3.5 Accessing Variables from Outer Methods

Local classes have another advantage over other inner classes. Not only can they access the fields of their outer classes; they can even access local variables! However, those local variables must be *effectively final*. That means, they may never change once they have been assigned.

Here is a typical example. Let's move the `interval` and `beep` parameters from the `TalkingClock` constructor to the `start` method.

```
public void start(int interval, boolean beep)
{
    class TimePrinter implements ActionListener
    {
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
        {
            System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
                + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
            if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
        }
    }

    var listener = new TimePrinter();
    var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
    timer.start();
}
```

Note that the `TalkingClock` class no longer needs to store a `beep` instance field. It simply refers to the `beep` parameter variable of the `start` method.

Maybe this should not be so surprising. The line

```
if (beep) . . .
```

is, after all, ultimately inside the `start` method, so why shouldn't it have access to the value of the `beep` variable?

To see why there is a subtle issue here, let's consider the flow of control more closely.

1. The `start` method is called.
2. The object variable `listener` is initialized by a call to the constructor of the inner class `TimePrinter`.
3. The `listener` reference is passed to the `Timer` constructor, the timer is started, and the `start` method exits. At this point, the `beep` parameter variable of the `start` method no longer exists.
4. A second later, the `actionPerformed` method executes `if (beep) . . .`

For the code in the `actionPerformed` method to work, the `TimePrinter` class must have copied the `beep` field as a local variable of the `start` method, before the `beep` parameter value went away. That is indeed exactly what happens. In our example, the compiler synthesizes the name `TalkingClock$1TimePrinter` for the local inner class. If you use the `ReflectionTest` program again to spy on the `TalkingClock$1TimePrinter` class, you will get the following output:

```
class TalkingClock$1TimePrinter
{
    TalkingClock$1TimePrinter(TalkingClock, boolean);

    public void actionPerformed(java.awt.event.ActionEvent);

    final boolean val$beep;
    final TalkingClock this$0;
}
```

Note the `boolean` parameter to the constructor and the `val$beep` instance variable. When an object is created, the value `beep` is passed into the constructor and stored in the `val$beep` field. The compiler detects access of local variables, makes matching instance fields for each one, and copies the local variables into the constructor so that the instance fields can be initialized.

### 6.3.6 Anonymous Inner Classes

When using local inner classes, you can often go a step further. If you want to make only a single object of this class, you don't even need to give the class a name. Such a class is called an *anonymous inner class*.

```
public void start(int interval, boolean beep)
{
    var listener = new ActionListener()
    {
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
        {
            System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
                + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
            if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
        }
    };
    var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
    timer.start();
}
```

This syntax is very cryptic indeed. What it means is this: Create a new object of a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface, where the required method `actionPerformed` is the one defined inside the braces `{ }`.

In general, the syntax is

```
new SuperType(construction parameters)
{
    inner class methods and data
}
```

Here, `SuperType` can be an interface, such as `ActionListener`; then, the inner class implements that interface. `SuperType` can also be a class; then, the inner class extends that class.

An anonymous inner class cannot have constructors because the name of a constructor must be the same as the name of a class, and the class has no name. Instead, the construction parameters are given to the *superclass* constructor. In particular, whenever an inner class implements an interface, it cannot have any construction parameters. Nevertheless, you must supply a set of parentheses as in

```
new InterfaceType()
{
    methods and data
}
```

You have to look carefully to see the difference between the construction of a new object of a class and the construction of an object of an anonymous inner class extending that class.

```
var queen = new Person("Mary");
// a Person object
var count = new Person("Dracula") { . . . };
// an object of an inner class extending Person
```

If the closing parenthesis of the construction parameter list is followed by an opening brace, then an anonymous inner class is being defined.



**NOTE:** Even though an anonymous class cannot have constructors, you can provide an object initialization block:

```
var count = new Person("Dracula")
{
    { initialization }
    .
};
};
```

Listing 6.8 contains the complete source code for the talking clock program with an anonymous inner class. If you compare this program with Listing 6.7, you will see that in this case, the solution with the anonymous inner class is quite a bit shorter and, hopefully, with some practice, as easy to comprehend.

For many years, Java programmers routinely used anonymous inner classes for event listeners and other callbacks. Nowadays, you are better off using a lambda expression. For example, the start method from the beginning of this section can be written much more concisely with a lambda expression like this:

```
public void start(int interval, boolean beep)
{
    var timer = new Timer(interval, event -> {
        System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
            + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
        if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
    });
    timer.start();
}
```



**NOTE:** The following trick, called *double brace initialization*, takes advantage of the inner class syntax. Suppose you want to construct an array list and pass it to a method:

```
var friends = new ArrayList<String>();
friends.add("Harry");
friends.add("Tony");
invite(friends);
```

If you don't need the array list again, it would be nice to make it anonymous. But then how can you add the elements? Here is how:

```
invite(new ArrayList<String>() {{ add("Harry"); add("Tony"); }});
```

Note the double braces. The outer braces make an anonymous subclass of `ArrayList`. The inner braces are an object initialization block (see Chapter 4).

In practice, this trick is rarely useful. More likely than not, the `invite` method is willing to accept any `List<String>`, and you can simply pass `List.of("Harry", "Tony")`.

---



**CAUTION:** It is often convenient to make an anonymous subclass that is almost, but not quite, like its superclass. But you need to be careful with the `equals` method. In Chapter 5, we recommended that your `equals` methods use a test

```
if (getClass() != other.getClass()) return false;
```

An anonymous subclass will fail this test.

---



**TIP:** When you produce logging or debugging messages, you often want to include the name of the current class, such as

```
System.err.println("Something awful happened in " + getClass());
```

But that fails in a static method. After all, the call to `getClass` calls `this.getClass()`, and a static method has no `this`. Use the following expression instead:

```
new Object(){}.getClass().getEnclosingClass() // gets class of static method
```

Here, `new Object(){} makes an anonymous object of an anonymous subclass of Object, and getEnclosingClass gets its enclosing class—that is, the class containing the static method.`

---

---

#### **Listing 6.8** anonymousInnerClass/AnonymousInnerClassTest.java

---

```
1 package anonymousInnerClass;
2
```

```
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import java.time.*;
6
7 import javax.swing.*;
8
9 /**
10  * This program demonstrates anonymous inner classes.
11  * @version 1.12 2017-12-14
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13  */
14 public class AnonymousInnerClassTest
15 {
16     public static void main(String[] args)
17     {
18         var clock = new TalkingClock();
19         clock.start(1000, true);
20
21         // keep program running until the user selects "OK"
22         JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Quit program?");
23         System.exit(0);
24     }
25 }
26
27 /**
28  * A clock that prints the time in regular intervals.
29  */
30 class TalkingClock
31 {
32     /**
33      * Starts the clock.
34      * @param interval the interval between messages (in milliseconds)
35      * @param beep true if the clock should beep
36      */
37     public void start(int interval, boolean beep)
38     {
39         var listener = new ActionListener()
40         {
41             public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
42             {
43                 System.out.println("At the tone, the time is "
44                     + Instant.ofEpochMilli(event.getWhen()));
45                 if (beep) Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
46             }
47         };
48         var timer = new Timer(interval, listener);
49         timer.start();
50     }
51 }
```

### 6.3.7 Static Inner Classes

Occasionally, you may want to use an inner class simply to hide one class inside another—but you don’t need the inner class to have a reference to the outer class object. You can suppress the generation of that reference by declaring the inner class static.

Here is a typical example of where you would want to do this. Consider the task of computing the minimum and maximum value in an array. Of course, you write one method to compute the minimum and another method to compute the maximum. When you call both methods, the array is traversed twice. It would be more efficient to traverse the array only once, computing both the minimum and the maximum simultaneously.

```
double min = Double.POSITIVE_INFINITY;
double max = Double.NEGATIVE_INFINITY;
for (double v : values)
{
    if (min > v) min = v;
    if (max < v) max = v;
}
```

However, the method must return two numbers. We can achieve that by defining a class `Pair` that holds two values:

```
class Pair
{
    private double first;
    private double second;

    public Pair(double f, double s)
    {
        first = f;
        second = s;
    }
    public double getFirst() { return first; }
    public double getSecond() { return second; }
}
```

The `minmax` method can then return an object of type `Pair`.

```
class ArrayAlg
{
    public static Pair minmax(double[] values)
    {
        . .
        return new Pair(min, max);
    }
}
```

The caller of the method uses the `getFirst` and `getSecond` methods to retrieve the answers:

```
Pair p = ArrayAlg.minmax(d);
System.out.println("min = " + p.getFirst());
System.out.println("max = " + p.getSecond());
```

Of course, the name `Pair` is an exceedingly common name, and in a large project, it is quite possible that some other programmer had the same bright idea—but made a `Pair` class that contains a pair of strings. We can solve this potential name clash by making `Pair` a public inner class inside `ArrayAlg`. Then the class will be known to the public as `ArrayAlg.Pair`:

```
ArrayAlg.Pair p = ArrayAlg.minmax(d);
```

However, unlike the inner classes that we used in previous examples, we do not want to have a reference to any other object inside a `Pair` object. That reference can be suppressed by declaring the inner class `static`:

```
class ArrayAlg
{
    public static class Pair
    {
        . .
    }
    . .
}
```

Of course, only inner classes can be declared `static`. A static inner class is exactly like any other inner class, except that an object of a static inner class does not have a reference to the outer class object that generated it. In our example, we must use a static inner class because the inner class object is constructed inside a static method:

```
public static Pair minmax(double[] d)
{
    . .
    return new Pair(min, max);
}
```

Had the `Pair` class not been declared as `static`, the compiler would have complained that there was no implicit object of type `ArrayAlg` available to initialize the inner class object.



**NOTE:** Use a static inner class whenever the inner class does not need to access an outer class object. Some programmers use the term *nested class* to describe static inner classes.



**NOTE:** Unlike regular inner classes, static inner classes can have static fields and methods.

---



**NOTE:** Inner classes that are declared inside an interface are automatically static and public.

---

Listing 6.9 contains the complete source code of the `ArrayAlg` class and the nested `Pair` class.

---

**Listing 6.9** staticInnerClass/StaticInnerClassTest.java

---

```
1 package staticInnerClass;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the use of static inner classes.
5  * @version 1.02 2015-05-12
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class StaticInnerClassTest
9 {
10    public static void main(String[] args)
11    {
12        var values = new double[20];
13        for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
14            values[i] = 100 * Math.random();
15        ArrayAlg.Pair p = ArrayAlg.minmax(values);
16        System.out.println("min = " + p.getFirst());
17        System.out.println("max = " + p.getSecond());
18    }
19 }
20
21 class ArrayAlg
22 {
23     /**
24      * A pair of floating-point numbers
25      */
26     public static class Pair
27     {
28         private double first;
29         private double second;
30
31         /**
32          * Constructs a pair from two floating-point numbers
33         */
```

```
33     * @param f the first number
34     * @param s the second number
35     */
36    public Pair(double f, double s)
37    {
38        first = f;
39        second = s;
40    }
41
42    /**
43     * Returns the first number of the pair
44     * @return the first number
45     */
46    public double getFirst()
47    {
48        return first;
49    }
50
51    /**
52     * Returns the second number of the pair
53     * @return the second number
54     */
55    public double getSecond()
56    {
57        return second;
58    }
59 }
60
61 /**
62 * Computes both the minimum and the maximum of an array
63 * @param values an array of floating-point numbers
64 * @return a pair whose first element is the minimum and whose second element
65 * is the maximum
66 */
67 public static Pair minmax(double[] values)
68 {
69     double min = Double.POSITIVE_INFINITY;
70     double max = Double.NEGATIVE_INFINITY;
71     for (double v : values)
72     {
73         if (min > v) min = v;
74         if (max < v) max = v;
75     }
76     return new Pair(min, max);
77 }
78 }
```

## 6.4 Service Loaders

Sometimes, you develop an application with a service architecture. There are platforms that encourage this approach, such as OSGi (<http://osgi.org>), which are used in development environments, application servers, and other complex applications. Such platforms go well beyond the scope of this book, but the JDK also offers a simple mechanism for loading services, which we describe here. This mechanism is well supported by the Java Platform Module System—see Chapter 9 of Volume II.

Often, when providing a service, a program wants to give the service designer some freedom of how to implement the service's features. It can also be desirable to have multiple implementations to choose from. The `ServiceLoader` class makes it easy to load services that conform to a common interface.

Define an interface (or, if you prefer, a superclass) with the methods that each instance of the service should provide. For example, suppose your service provides encryption.

```
package serviceLoader;

public interface Cipher
{
    byte[] encrypt(byte[] source, byte[] key);
    byte[] decrypt(byte[] source, byte[] key);
    int strength();
}
```

The service provider supplies one or more classes that implement this service, for example

```
package serviceLoader.impl;

public class CaesarCipher implements Cipher
{
    public byte[] encrypt(byte[] source, byte[] key)
    {
        var result = new byte[source.length];
        for (int i = 0; i < source.length; i++)
            result[i] = (byte)(source[i] + key[0]);
        return result;
    }

    public byte[] decrypt(byte[] source, byte[] key)
    {
        return encrypt(source, new byte[] { (byte) -key[0] });
    }
}
```

```
    public int strength() { return 1; }
}
```

The implementing classes can be in any package, not necessarily the same package as the service interface. Each of them must have a no-argument constructor.

Now add the names of the classes to a UTF-8 encoded text file in a file in the META-INF/services directory whose name matches the fully qualified interface name. In our example, the file META-INF/services/serviceLoader.Cipher would contain the line

```
serviceLoader.impl.CaesarCipher
```

In this example, we provide a single implementing class. You could also provide multiple classes and later pick among them.

With this preparation done, the program initializes a service loader as follows:

```
public static ServiceLoader<Cipher> cipherLoader = ServiceLoader.load(Cipher.class);
```

This should be done just once in the program.

The iterator method of the service loader returns an iterator through all provided implementations of the service. (See Chapter 9 for more information about iterators.) It is easiest to use an enhanced for loop to traverse them. In the loop, pick an appropriate object to carry out the service.

```
public static Cipher getCipher(int minStrength)
{
    for (Cipher cipher : cipherLoader) // implicitly calls cipherLoader.iterator()
    {
        if (cipher.strength() >= minStrength) return cipher;
    }
    return null;
}
```

Alternatively, you can use streams (see Chapter 1 of Volume II) to locate the desired service. The stream method yields a stream of ServiceLoader.Provider instances. That interface has methods type and get for getting the provider class and the provider instance. If you select a provider by type, then you just call type and no service instances are unnecessarily instantiated.

```
public static Optional<Cipher> getCipher2(int minStrength)
{
    return cipherLoader.stream()
        .filter(descr -> descr.type() == serviceLoader.impl.CaesarCipher.class)
        .findFirst()
        .map(ServiceLoader.Provider::get);
}
```

Finally, if you are willing to take any service instance, simply call `findFirst`:

```
Optional<Cipher> cipher = cipherLoader.findFirst();
```

The `Optional` class is explained in Chapter 1 of Volume II.

#### `java.util.ServiceLoader<S>` 1.6

- `static <S> ServiceLoader<S> load(Class<S> service)`  
creates a service loader for loading the classes that implement the given service interface.
- `Iterator<S> iterator()`  
yields an iterator that lazily loads the service classes. That is, a class is loaded whenever the iterator advances.
- `Stream<ServiceLoader.Provider<S>> stream()` 9  
returns a stream of provider descriptors, so that a provider of a desired class can be loaded lazily.
- `Optional<S> findFirst()` 9  
finds the first available service provider, if any.

#### `java.util.ServiceLoader.Provider<S>` 9

- `Class<? extends S> type()`  
gets the type of this provider.
- `S get()`  
gets an instance of this provider.

## 6.5 Proxies

In the final section of this chapter, we discuss *proxies*. You can use a proxy to create, at runtime, new classes that implement a given set of interfaces. Proxies are only necessary when you don't yet know at compile time which interfaces you need to implement. This is not a common situation for application programmers, so feel free to skip this section if you are not interested in advanced wizardry. However, for certain systems programming applications, the flexibility that proxies offer can be very important.

### 6.5.1 When to Use Proxies

Suppose you want to construct an object of a class that implements one or more interfaces whose exact nature you may not know at compile time. This is a difficult problem. To construct an actual class, you can simply use the `newInstance` method or use reflection to find a constructor. But you can't instantiate an interface. You need to define a new class in a running program.

To overcome this problem, some programs generate code, place it into a file, invoke the compiler, and then load the resulting class file. Naturally, this is slow, and it also requires deployment of the compiler together with the program. The *proxy* mechanism is a better solution. The proxy class can create brand-new classes at runtime. Such a proxy class implements the interfaces that you specify. In particular, the proxy class has the following methods:

- All methods required by the specified interfaces; and
- All methods defined in the `Object` class (`toString`, `equals`, and so on).

However, you cannot define new code for these methods at runtime. Instead, you must supply an *invocation handler*. An invocation handler is an object of any class that implements the `InvocationHandler` interface. That interface has a single method:

```
Object invoke(Object proxy, Method method, Object[] args)
```

Whenever a method is called on the proxy object, the `invoke` method of the invocation handler gets called, with the `Method` object and parameters of the original call. The invocation handler must then figure out how to handle the call.

### 6.5.2 Creating Proxy Objects

To create a proxy object, use the `newProxyInstance` method of the `Proxy` class. The method has three parameters:

- A *class loader*. As part of the Java security model, different class loaders can be used for platform and application classes, classes that are downloaded from the Internet, and so on. We will discuss class loaders in Chapter 9 of Volume II. In this example, we specify the “system class loader” that loads platform and application classes.
- An array of `Class` objects, one for each interface to be implemented.
- An invocation handler.

There are two remaining questions. How do we define the handler? And what can we do with the resulting proxy object? The answers depend, of course,

on the problem that we want to solve with the proxy mechanism. Proxies can be used for many purposes, such as

- Routing method calls to remote servers
- Associating user interface events with actions in a running program
- Tracing method calls for debugging purposes

In our example program, we use proxies and invocation handlers to trace method calls. We define a `TraceHandler` wrapper class that stores a wrapped object. Its `invoke` method simply prints the name and parameters of the method to be called and then calls the method with the wrapped object as the implicit parameter.

```
class TraceHandler implements InvocationHandler
{
    private Object target;

    public TraceHandler(Object t)
    {
        target = t;
    }

    public Object invoke(Object proxy, Method m, Object[] args)
        throws Throwable
    {
        // print method name and parameters
        . .
        // invoke actual method
        return m.invoke(target, args);
    }
}
```

Here is how you construct a proxy object that causes the tracing behavior whenever one of its methods is called:

```
Object value = . . .;
// construct wrapper
var handler = new TraceHandler(value);
// construct proxy for one or more interfaces
var interfaces = new Class[] { Comparable.class};
Object proxy = Proxy.newProxyInstance(
    ClassLoader.getSystemClassLoader(),
    new Class[] { Comparable.class } , handler);
```

Now, whenever a method from one of the interfaces is called on `proxy`, the method name and parameters are printed out and the method is then invoked on `value`.

In the program shown in Listing 6.10, we use proxy objects to trace a binary search. We fill an array with proxies to the integers 1 . . . 1000. Then we invoke the `binarySearch` method of the `Arrays` class to search for a random integer in the array. Finally, we print the matching element.

```
var elements = new Object[1000];
// fill elements with proxies for the integers 1 . . . 1000
for (int i = 0; i < elements.length; i++)
{
    Integer value = i + 1;
    elements[i] = Proxy.newProxyInstance(. . .); // proxy for value;
}

// construct a random integer
Integer key = new Random().nextInt(elements.length) + 1;

// search for the key
int result = Arrays.binarySearch(elements, key);

// print match if found
if (result >= 0) System.out.println(elements[result]);
```

The `Integer` class implements the `Comparable` interface. The proxy objects belong to a class that is defined at runtime. (It has a name such as `$Proxy0`.) That class also implements the `Comparable` interface. However, its `compareTo` method calls the `invoke` method of the proxy object's handler.



**NOTE:** As you saw earlier in this chapter, the `Integer` class actually implements `Comparable<Integer>`. However, at runtime, all generic types are erased and the proxy is constructed with the class object for the raw `Comparable` class.

The `binarySearch` method makes calls like this:

```
if (elements[i].compareTo(key) < 0) . . .
```

Since we filled the array with proxy objects, the `compareTo` calls the `invoke` method of the `TraceHandler` class. That method prints the method name and parameters and then invokes `compareTo` on the wrapped `Integer` object.

Finally, at the end of the sample program, we call

```
System.out.println(elements[result]);
```

The `println` method calls `toString` on the proxy object, and that call is also redirected to the invocation handler.

Here is the complete trace of a program run:

```
500.compareTo(288)
250.compareTo(288)
375.compareTo(288)
312.compareTo(288)
281.compareTo(288)
296.compareTo(288)
288.compareTo(288)
288.toString()
```

You can see how the binary search algorithm homes in on the key by cutting the search interval in half in every step. Note that the `toString` method is proxied even though it does not belong to the `Comparable` interface—as you will see in the next section, certain `Object` methods are always proxied.

---

**Listing 6.10** proxy/ProxyTest.java

---

```
1 package proxy;
2
3 import java.lang.reflect.*;
4 import java.util.*;
5
6 /**
7  * This program demonstrates the use of proxies.
8  * @version 1.01 2018-04-10
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class ProxyTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         var elements = new Object[1000];
16
17         // fill elements with proxies for the integers 1 . . . 1000
18         for (int i = 0; i < elements.length; i++)
19         {
20             Integer value = i + 1;
21             var handler = new TraceHandler(value);
22             Object proxy = Proxy.newProxyInstance(
23                 ClassLoader.getSystemClassLoader(),
24                 new Class[] { Comparable.class } , handler);
25             elements[i] = proxy;
26         }
27
28         // construct a random integer
29         Integer key = new Random().nextInt(elements.length) + 1;
```

```
31     // search for the key
32     int result = Arrays.binarySearch(elements, key);
33
34     // print match if found
35     if (result >= 0) System.out.println(elements[result]);
36   }
37 }
38
39 /**
40 * An invocation handler that prints out the method name and parameters, then
41 * invokes the original method
42 */
43 class TraceHandler implements InvocationHandler
44 {
45     private Object target;
46
47     /**
48      * Constructs a TraceHandler
49      * @param t the implicit parameter of the method call
50      */
51     public TraceHandler(Object t)
52     {
53         target = t;
54     }
55
56     public Object invoke(Object proxy, Method m, Object[] args) throws Throwable
57     {
58         // print implicit argument
59         System.out.print(target);
60         // print method name
61         System.out.print("." + m.getName() + "(");
62         // print explicit arguments
63         if (args != null)
64         {
65             for (int i = 0; i < args.length; i++)
66             {
67                 System.out.print(args[i]);
68                 if (i < args.length - 1) System.out.print(", ");
69             }
70         }
71         System.out.println(")");
72
73         // invoke actual method
74         return m.invoke(target, args);
75     }
76 }
```

### 6.5.3 Properties of Proxy Classes

Now that you have seen proxy classes in action, let's go over some of their properties. Remember that proxy classes are created on the fly in a running program. However, once they are created, they are regular classes, just like any other classes in the virtual machine.

All proxy classes extend the class `Proxy`. A proxy class has only one instance field—the invocation handler, which is defined in the `Proxy` superclass. Any additional data required to carry out the proxy objects' tasks must be stored in the invocation handler. For example, when we proxied `Comparable` objects in the program shown in Listing 6.10, the `TraceHandler` wrapped the actual objects.

All proxy classes override the `toString`, `equals`, and `hashCode` methods of the `Object` class. Like all proxy methods, these methods simply call `invoke` on the invocation handler. The other methods of the `Object` class (such as `clone` and `getClass`) are not redefined.

The names of proxy classes are not defined. The `Proxy` class in Oracle's virtual machine generates class names that begin with the string `$Proxy`.

There is only one proxy class for a particular class loader and ordered set of interfaces. That is, if you call the `newProxyInstance` method twice with the same class loader and interface array, you get two objects of the same class. You can also obtain that class with the `getProxyClass` method:

```
Class proxyClass = Proxy.getProxyClass(null, interfaces);
```

A proxy class is always `public` and `final`. If all interfaces that the proxy class implements are `public`, the proxy class does not belong to any particular package. Otherwise, all non-public interfaces must belong to the same package, and the proxy class will also belong to that package.

You can test whether a particular `Class` object represents a proxy class by calling the `isProxyClass` method of the `Proxy` class.

<b><i>java.lang.reflect.InvocationHandler 1.3</i></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>Object invoke(Object proxy, Method method, Object[] args)</code></li></ul> <p>define this method to contain the action that you want carried out whenever a method was invoked on the proxy object.</p>

**java.lang.reflect.Proxy 1.3**

- static Class<?> getProxyClass(ClassLoader loader, Class<?>... interfaces)  
returns the proxy class that implements the given interfaces.
- static Object newProxyInstance(ClassLoader loader, Class<?>[] interfaces, InvocationHandler handler)  
constructs a new instance of the proxy class that implements the given interfaces.  
All methods call the invoke method of the given handler object.
- static boolean isProxyClass(Class<?> cl)  
returns true if cl is a proxy class.

This ends our final chapter on the object-oriented features of the Java programming language. Interfaces, lambda expressions, and inner classes are concepts that you will encounter frequently, whereas cloning, service loaders, and proxies are advanced techniques that are of interest mainly to library designers and tool builders, not application programmers. You are now ready to learn how to deal with exceptional situations in your programs in Chapter 7.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Exceptions, Assertions, and Logging

## In this chapter

- 7.1 Dealing with Errors, page 372
- 7.2 Catching Exceptions, page 381
- 7.3 Tips for Using Exceptions, page 396
- 7.4 Using Assertions, page 399
- 7.5 Logging, page 403
- 7.6 Debugging Tips, page 425

In a perfect world, users would never enter data in the wrong form, files they choose to open would always exist, and code would never have bugs. So far, we have mostly presented code as if we lived in this kind of perfect world. It is now time to turn to the mechanisms the Java programming language has for dealing with the real world of bad data and buggy code.

Encountering errors is unpleasant. If a user loses all the work he or she did during a program session because of a programming mistake or some external circumstance, that user may forever turn away from your program. At the very least, you must:

- Notify the user of an error;

- Save all work; and
- Allow users to gracefully exit the program.

For exceptional situations, such as bad input data with the potential to bomb the program, Java uses a form of error trapping called, naturally enough, *exception handling*. Exception handling in Java is similar to that in C++ or Delphi. The first part of this chapter covers Java's exceptions.

During testing, you need to run lots of checks to make sure your program does the right thing. But those checks can be time-consuming and unnecessary after testing has completed. You could just remove the checks and stick them back in when additional testing is required—but that is tedious. The second part of this chapter shows you how to use the assertion facility for selectively activating checks.

When your program does the wrong thing, you can't always communicate with the user or terminate. Instead, you may want to record the problem for later analysis. The third part of this chapter discusses the standard Java logging framework.

## 7.1 Dealing with Errors

Suppose an error occurs while a Java program is running. The error might be caused by a file containing wrong information, a flaky network connection, or (we hate to mention it) use of an invalid array index or an object reference that hasn't yet been assigned to an object. Users expect that programs will act sensibly when errors happen. If an operation cannot be completed because of an error, the program ought to either

- Return to a safe state and enable the user to execute other commands; or
- Allow the user to save all work and terminate the program gracefully.

This may not be easy to do, because the code that detects (or even causes) the error condition is usually far removed from the code that can roll back the data to a safe state or save the user's work and exit cheerfully. The mission of exception handling is to transfer control from where the error occurred to an error handler that can deal with the situation. To handle exceptional situations in your program, you must take into account the errors and problems that may occur. What sorts of problems do you need to consider?

- *User input errors.* In addition to the inevitable typos, some users like to blaze their own trail instead of following directions. Suppose, for example, that a user asks to connect to a URL that is syntactically wrong. Your code

should check the syntax, but suppose it does not. Then the network layer will complain.

- *Device errors.* Hardware does not always do what you want it to. The printer may be turned off. A web page may be temporarily unavailable. Devices will often fail in the middle of a task. For example, a printer may run out of paper during printing.
- *Physical limitations.* Disks can fill up; you can run out of available memory.
- *Code errors.* A method may not perform correctly. For example, it could deliver wrong answers or use other methods incorrectly. Computing an invalid array index, trying to find a nonexistent entry in a hash table, or trying to pop an empty stack are all examples of a code error.

The traditional reaction to an error in a method is to return a special error code that the calling method analyzes. For example, methods that read information back from files often return a `-1` end-of-file value marker rather than a standard character. This can be an efficient method for dealing with many exceptional conditions. Another common return value to denote an error condition is the `null` reference.

Unfortunately, it is not always possible to return an error code. There may be no obvious way of distinguishing valid and invalid data. A method returning an integer cannot simply return `-1` to denote the error; the value `-1` might be a perfectly valid result.

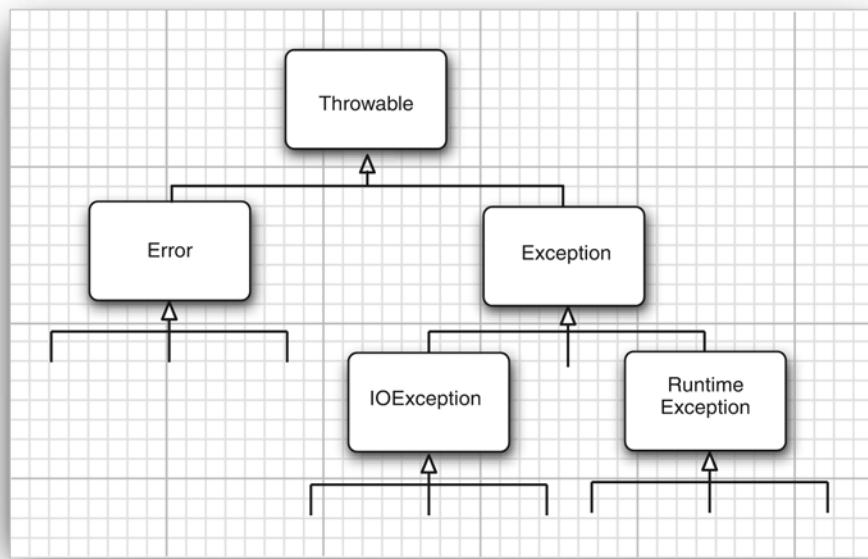
Instead, as we mentioned back in Chapter 5, Java allows every method an alternative exit path if it is unable to complete its task in the normal way. In this situation, the method does not return a value. Instead, it *throws* an object that encapsulates the error information. Note that the method exits immediately; it does not return its normal (or any) value. Moreover, execution does not resume at the code that called the method; instead, the exception-handling mechanism begins its search for an *exception handler* that can deal with this particular error condition.

Exceptions have their own syntax and are part of a special inheritance hierarchy. We'll take up the syntax first and then give a few hints on how to use this language feature effectively.

### 7.1.1 The Classification of Exceptions

In the Java programming language, an exception object is always an instance of a class derived from `Throwable`. As you will soon see, you can create your own exception classes if those built into Java do not suit your needs.

Figure 7.1 is a simplified diagram of the exception hierarchy in Java.



**Figure 7.1** Exception hierarchy in Java

Notice that all exceptions descend from `Throwable`, but the hierarchy immediately splits into two branches: `Error` and `Exception`.

The `Error` hierarchy describes internal errors and resource exhaustion situations inside the Java runtime system. You should not throw an object of this type. There is little you can do if such an internal error occurs, beyond notifying the user and trying to terminate the program gracefully. These situations are quite rare.

When doing Java programming, focus on the `Exception` hierarchy. The `Exception` hierarchy also splits into two branches: exceptions that derive from `RuntimeException` and those that do not. The general rule is this: A `RuntimeException` happens because you made a programming error. Any other exception occurs because a bad thing, such as an I/O error, happened to your otherwise good program.

Exceptions that inherit from `RuntimeException` include such problems as

- A bad cast
- An out-of-bounds array access
- A null pointer access

Exceptions that do not inherit from `RuntimeException` include

- Trying to read past the end of a file
- Trying to open a file that doesn't exist
- Trying to find a `Class` object for a string that does not denote an existing class

The rule "If it is a `RuntimeException`, it was your fault" works pretty well. You could have avoided that `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` by testing the array index against the array bounds. The `NullPointerException` would not have happened had you checked whether the variable was `null` before using it.

How about a file that doesn't exist? Can't you first check whether the file exists, and then open it? Well, the file might be deleted right after you checked for its existence. Thus, the notion of "existence" depends on the environment, not just on your code.

The Java Language Specification calls any exception that derives from the class `Error` or the class `RuntimeException` an *unchecked* exception. All other exceptions are called *checked* exceptions. This is useful terminology that we also adopt. The compiler checks that you provide exception handlers for all checked exceptions.



**NOTE:** The name `RuntimeException` is somewhat confusing. Of course, all of the errors we are discussing occur at runtime.



**C++ NOTE:** If you are familiar with the (much more limited) exception hierarchy of the standard C++ library, you may be really confused at this point. C++ has two fundamental exception classes, `runtime_error` and `logic_error`. The `logic_error` class is the equivalent of Java's `RuntimeException` and also denotes logical errors in the program. The `runtime_error` class is the base class for exceptions caused by unpredictable problems. It is equivalent to those exceptions in Java that are *not* of type `RuntimeException`.

### 7.1.2 Declaring Checked Exceptions

A Java method can throw an exception if it encounters a situation it cannot handle. The idea is simple: A method will not only tell the Java compiler what values it can return, *it is also going to tell the compiler what can go wrong*. For example, code that attempts to read from a file knows that the file might not exist or that it might be empty. The code that tries to process the

information in a file therefore will need to notify the compiler that it can throw some sort of `IOException`.

The place in which you advertise that your method can throw an exception is the header of the method; the header changes to reflect the checked exceptions the method can throw. For example, here is the declaration of one of the constructors of the `FileInputStream` class from the standard library. (See Chapter 1 of Volume II for more on input and output.)

```
public FileInputStream(String name) throws FileNotFoundException
```

The declaration says that this constructor produces a `FileInputStream` object from a `String` parameter but that it *also* can go wrong in a special way—by throwing a `FileNotFoundException`. If this sad state should come to pass, the constructor call will not initialize a new `FileInputStream` object but instead will throw an object of the `FileNotFoundException` class. If it does, the runtime system will begin to search for an exception handler that knows how to deal with `FileNotFoundException` objects.

When you write your own methods, you don't have to advertise every possible throwable object that your method might actually throw. To understand when (and what) you have to advertise in the `throws` clause of the methods you write, keep in mind that an exception is thrown in any of the following four situations:

- You call a method that throws a checked exception—for example, the `FileInputStream` constructor.
- You detect an error and throw a checked exception with the `throw` statement (we cover the `throw` statement in the next section).
- You make a programming error, such as `a[-1] = 0` that gives rise to an unchecked exception (in this case, an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`).
- An internal error occurs in the virtual machine or runtime library.

If either of the first two scenarios occurs, you must tell the programmers who will use your method about the possibility of an exception. Why? Any method that throws an exception is a potential death trap. If no handler catches the exception, the current thread of execution terminates.

As with Java methods that are part of the supplied classes, you declare that your method may throw an exception with an *exception specification* in the method header.

```
class MyAnimation
{
    . . .
```

```
public Image loadImage(String s) throws IOException
{
    ...
}
```

If a method might throw more than one checked exception type, you must list all exception classes in the header. Separate them by commas, as in the following example:

```
class MyAnimation
{
    ...
    public Image loadImage(String s) throws FileNotFoundException, EOFException
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

However, you do not need to advertise internal Java errors—that is, exceptions inheriting from `Error`. Any code could potentially throw those exceptions, and they are entirely beyond your control.

Similarly, you should not advertise unchecked exceptions inheriting from `RuntimeException`.

```
class MyAnimation
{
    ...
    void drawImage(int i) throws ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException // bad style
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

These runtime errors are completely under your control. If you are so concerned about array index errors, you should spend your time fixing them instead of advertising the possibility that they can happen.

In summary, a method must declare all the *checked* exceptions that it might throw. Unchecked exceptions are either beyond your control (`Error`) or result from conditions that you should not have allowed in the first place (`RuntimeException`). If your method fails to faithfully declare all checked exceptions, the compiler will issue an error message.

Of course, as you have already seen in quite a few examples, instead of declaring the exception, you can also catch it. Then the exception won't be thrown out of the method, and no `throws` specification is necessary. You will

see later in this chapter how to decide whether to catch an exception or to enable someone else to catch it.



**CAUTION:** If you override a method from a superclass, the checked exceptions that the subclass method declares cannot be more general than those of the superclass method. (It is OK to throw more specific exceptions, or not to throw any exceptions in the subclass method.) In particular, if the superclass method throws no checked exception at all, neither can the subclass. For example, if you override `JComponent.paintComponent`, your `paintComponent` method must not throw any checked exceptions, because the superclass method doesn't throw any.

---

When a method in a class declares that it throws an exception that is an instance of a particular class, it may throw an exception of that class or of any of its subclasses. For example, the `FileInputStream` constructor could have declared that it throws an `IOException`. In that case, you would not have known what kind of `IOException` it is; it could be a plain `IOException` or an object of one of the various subclasses, such as `FileNotFoundException`.



**C++ NOTE:** The `throws` specifier is the same as the `throw` specifier in C++, with one important difference. In C++, `throw` specifiers are enforced at runtime, not at compile time. That is, the C++ compiler pays no attention to exception specifications. But if an exception is thrown in a function that is not part of the `throw` list, the unexpected function is called, and, by default, the program terminates.

Also, in C++, a function may throw any exception if no `throw` specification is given. In Java, a method without a `throws` specifier may not throw any checked exceptions at all.

---

### 7.1.3 How to Throw an Exception

Now, suppose something terrible has happened in your code. You have a method, `readData`, that is reading in a file whose header promised

`Content-length: 1024`

but you got an end of file after 733 characters. You may decide this situation is so abnormal that you want to throw an exception.

You need to decide what exception type to throw. Some kind of `IOException` would be a good choice. Perusing the Java API documentation, you find an `EOFException` with the description "Signals that an EOF has been reached unexpectedly during input." Perfect. Here is how you throw it:

```
throw new EOFException();
```

or, if you prefer,

```
var e = new EOFException();
throw e;
```

Here is how it all fits together:

```
String readData(Scanner in) throws EOFException
{
    ...
    while (...)
    {
        if (!in.hasNext()) // EOF encountered
        {
            if (n < len)
                throw new EOFException();
        }
        ...
    }
    return s;
}
```

The `EOFException` has a second constructor that takes a string argument. You can put this to good use by describing the exceptional condition more carefully.

```
String gripe = "Content-length: " + len + ", Received: " + n;
throw new EOFException(gripe);
```

As you can see, throwing an exception is easy if one of the existing exception classes works for you. In this case:

1. Find an appropriate exception class.
2. Make an object of that class.
3. Throw it.

Once a method throws an exception, it does not return to its caller. This means you do not have to worry about cooking up a default return value or an error code.



**C++ NOTE:** Throwing an exception is the same in C++ and in Java, with one small difference. In Java, you can throw only objects of subclasses of `Throwable`. In C++, you can throw values of any type.

### 7.1.4 Creating Exception Classes

Your code may run into a problem which is not adequately described by any of the standard exception classes. In this case, it is easy enough to create your own exception class. Just derive it from `Exception`, or from a child class of `Exception` such as `IOException`. It is customary to give both a default constructor and a constructor that contains a detailed message. (The `toString` method of the `Throwable` superclass returns a string containing that detailed message, which is handy for debugging.)

```
class FileFormatException extends IOException
{
    public FileFormatException() {}
    public FileFormatException(String gripe)
    {
        super(gripe);
    }
}
```

Now you are ready to throw your very own exception type.

```
String readData(Scanner in) throws FileFormatException
{
    . .
    while (. . .)
    {
        if (ch == -1) // EOF encountered
        {
            if (n < len)
                throw new FileFormatException();
        }
        .
    }
    return s;
}
```

#### java.lang.Throwable 1.0

- `Throwable()`  
constructs a new `Throwable` object with no detailed message.
- `Throwable(String message)`  
constructs a new `Throwable` object with the specified detailed message. By convention, all derived exception classes support both a default constructor and a constructor with a detailed message.
- `String getMessage()`  
gets the detailed message of the `Throwable` object.

## 7.2 Catching Exceptions

You now know how to throw an exception. It is pretty easy: You throw it and you forget it. Of course, some code has to catch the exception. Catching exceptions requires more planning. That's what the next sections will cover.

### 7.2.1 Catching an Exception

If an exception occurs that is not caught anywhere, the program will terminate and print a message to the console, giving the type of the exception and a stack trace. GUI programs (both applets and applications) catch exceptions, print stack trace messages, and then go back to the user interface processing loop. (When you are debugging a GUI program, it is a good idea to keep the console on the screen and not minimized.)

To catch an exception, set up a try/catch block. The simplest form of the try block is as follows:

```
try
{
    code
    more code
    more code
}
catch (ExceptionType e)
{
    handler for this type
}
```

If any code inside the try block throws an exception of the class specified in the catch clause, then

1. The program skips the remainder of the code in the try block.
2. The program executes the handler code inside the catch clause.

If none of the code inside the try block throws an exception, then the program skips the catch clause.

If any of the code in a method throws an exception of a type other than the one named in the catch clause, this method exits immediately. (Hopefully, one of its callers has already provided a catch clause for that type.)

To show this at work, here's some fairly typical code for reading in data:

```
public void read(String filename)
{
    try
    {
```

```
var in = new FileInputStream(filename);
int b;
while ((b = in.read()) != -1)
{
    process input
}
catch (IOException exception)
{
    exception.printStackTrace();
}
```

Notice that most of the code in the try clause is straightforward: It reads and processes bytes until we encounter the end of the file. As you can see by looking at the Java API, there is the possibility that the `read` method will throw an `IOException`. In that case, we skip out of the entire while loop, enter the catch clause, and generate a stack trace. For a toy program, that seems like a reasonable way to deal with this exception. What other choice do you have?

Often, the best choice is to do nothing at all and simply pass the exception on to the caller. If an error occurs in the `read` method, let the caller of the `read` method worry about it! If we take that approach, then we have to advertise the fact that the method may throw an `IOException`.

```
public void read(String filename) throws IOException
{
    var in = new FileInputStream(filename);
    int b;
    while ((b = in.read()) != -1)
    {
        process input
    }
}
```

Remember, the compiler strictly enforces the `throws` specifiers. If you call a method that throws a checked exception, you must either handle it or pass it on.

Which of the two is better? As a general rule, you should catch those exceptions that you know how to handle and propagate those that you do not know how to handle.

When you propagate an exception, you must add a `throws` specifier to alert the caller that an exception may be thrown.

Look at the Java API documentation to see what methods throw which exceptions. Then decide whether you should handle them or add them to the `throws`

list. There is nothing embarrassing about the latter choice. It is better to direct an exception to a competent handler than to squelch it.

Please keep in mind that there is, as we mentioned earlier, one exception to this rule. If you are writing a method that overrides a superclass method which throws no exceptions (such as `paintComponent` in `JComponent`), then you *must* catch each checked exception in your method's code. You are not allowed to add more `throws` specifiers to a subclass method than are present in the superclass method.



**C++ NOTE:** Catching exceptions is almost the same in Java and in C++.

Strictly speaking, the analog of

```
catch (Exception e) // Java
```

is

```
catch (Exception& e) // C++
```

There is no analog to the C++ `catch (...)`. This is not needed in Java because all exceptions derive from a common superclass.

## 7.2.2 Catching Multiple Exceptions

You can catch multiple exception types in a `try` block and handle each type differently. Use a separate `catch` clause for each type, as in the following example:

```
try
{
    code that might throw exceptions
}
catch (FileNotFoundException e)
{
    emergency action for missing files
}
catch (UnknownHostException e)
{
    emergency action for unknown hosts
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    emergency action for all other I/O problems
}
```

The exception object may contain information about the nature of the exception. To find out more about the object, try

```
e.getMessage()
```

to get the detailed error message (if there is one), or

```
e.getClass().getName()
```

to get the actual type of the exception object.

As of Java 7, you can catch multiple exception types in the same catch clause. For example, suppose that the action for missing files and unknown hosts is the same. Then you can combine the catch clauses:

```
try
{
    code that might throw exceptions
}
catch (FileNotFoundException | UnknownHostException e)
{
    emergency action for missing files and unknown hosts
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    emergency action for all other I/O problems
}
```

This feature is only needed when catching exception types that are not subclasses of one another.



**NOTE:** When you catch multiple exceptions, the exception variable is implicitly final. For example, you cannot assign a different value to e in the body of the clause

```
catch (FileNotFoundException | UnknownHostException e) { . . . }
```



**NOTE:** Catching multiple exceptions doesn't just make your code look simpler but also more efficient. The generated bytecodes contain a single block for the shared catch clause.

### 7.2.3 Rethrowing and Chaining Exceptions

You can throw an exception in a catch clause. Typically, you do this when you want to change the exception type. If you build a subsystem that other programmers use, it makes a lot of sense to use an exception type that indicates a failure of the subsystem. An example of such an exception type is the `ServletException`. The code that executes a servlet may not want to know in

minute detail what went wrong, but it definitely wants to know that the servlet was at fault.

Here is how you can catch an exception and rethrow it:

```
try
{
    access the database
}
catch (SQLException e)
{
    throw new ServletException("database error: " + e.getMessage());
}
```

Here, the `ServletException` is constructed with the message text of the exception.

However, it is a better idea to set the original exception as the “cause” of the new exception:

```
try
{
    access the database
}
catch (SQLException original)
{
    var e = new ServletException("database error");
    e.initCause(original);
    throw e;
}
```

When the exception is caught, the original exception can be retrieved:

```
Throwable original = caughtException.getCause();
```

This wrapping technique is highly recommended. It allows you to throw high-level exceptions in subsystems without losing the details of the original failure.



**TIP:** The wrapping technique is also useful if a checked exception occurs in a method that is not allowed to throw a checked exception. You can catch the checked exception and wrap it into a runtime exception.

Sometimes, you just want to log an exception and rethrow it without any change:

```
try
{
    access the database
}
```

```
    catch (Exception e)
    {
        logger.log(level, message, e);
        throw e;
    }
```

Before Java 7, there was a problem with this approach. Suppose the code is inside a method

```
public void updateRecord() throws SQLException
```

The Java compiler looked at the throw statement inside the catch block, then at the type of e, and complained that this method might throw any Exception, not just a SQLException. This has now been improved. The compiler now tracks the fact that e originates from the try block. Provided that the only checked exceptions in that block are SQLException instances, and provided that e is not changed in the catch block, it is valid to declare the enclosing method as throws SQLException.

#### 7.2.4 The finally Clause

When your code throws an exception, it stops processing the remaining code in your method and exits the method. This is a problem if the method has acquired some local resource, which only this method knows about, and that resource must be cleaned up. One solution is to catch all exceptions, carry out the cleanup, and rethrow the exceptions. But this solution is tedious because you need to clean up the resource allocation in two places—in the normal code and in the exception code. The finally clause can solve this problem.



**NOTE:** Since Java 7, there is a more elegant solution, the try-with-resources statement that you will see in the following section. We discuss the finally mechanism in detail because it is the conceptual foundation. But in practice, you will probably use try-with-resources statements more often than finally clauses.

---

The code in the finally clause executes whether or not an exception was caught. In the following example, the program will close the input stream *under all circumstances*:

```
var in = new FileInputStream(. . .);
try
{
    // 1
    code that might throw exceptions
```

```
// 2
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    // 3
    show error message
    // 4
}
finally
{
    // 5
    in.close();
}
// 6
```

Let us look at the three possible situations in which the program will execute the `finally` clause.

1. The code throws no exceptions. In this case, the program first executes all the code in the `try` block. Then, it executes the code in the `finally` clause. Afterwards, execution continues with the first statement after the `finally` clause. In other words, execution passes through points 1, 2, 5, and 6.
2. The code throws an exception that is caught in a `catch` clause—in our case, an `IOException`. For this, the program executes all code in the `try` block, up to the point at which the exception was thrown. The remaining code in the `try` block is skipped. The program then executes the code in the matching `catch` clause, and then the code in the `finally` clause.

If the `catch` clause does not throw an exception, the program executes the first line after the `finally` clause. In this scenario, execution passes through points 1, 3, 4, 5, and 6.

If the `catch` clause throws an exception, then the exception is thrown back to the caller of this method, and execution passes through points 1, 3, and 5 only.

3. The code throws an exception that is not caught in any `catch` clause. Here, the program executes all code in the `try` block until the exception is thrown. The remaining code in the `try` block is skipped. Then, the code in the `finally` clause is executed, and the exception is thrown back to the caller of this method. Execution passes through points 1 and 5 only.

You can use the `finally` clause without a `catch` clause. For example, consider the following `try` statement:

```
InputStream in = . . .;
try
{
    code that might throw exceptions
}
finally
{
    in.close();
}
```

The `in.close()` statement in the `finally` clause is executed whether or not an exception is encountered in the `try` block. Of course, if an exception is encountered, it is rethrown and must be caught in another catch clause.

```
InputStream in = . . .;
try
{
    try
    {
        code that might throw exceptions
    }
    finally
    {
        in.close();
    }
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    show error message
}
```

The inner `try` block has a single responsibility: to make sure that the input stream is closed. The outer `try` block has a single responsibility: to ensure that errors are reported. Not only is this solution clearer, it is also more functional: Errors in the `finally` clause are reported.



**CAUTION:** A `finally` clause can yield unexpected results when it contains `return` statements. Suppose you exit the middle of a `try` block with a `return` statement. Before the method returns, the `finally` block is executed. If the `finally` block also contains a `return` statement, then it masks the original return value. Consider this example:

```
public static int parseInt(String s)
{
    try
    {
        return Integer.parseInt(s);
    }
```

```
    finally
    {
        return 0; // ERROR
    }
}
```

It looks as if in the call `parseInt("42")`, the body of the try block returns the integer 42. However, the finally clause is executed before the method actually returns and causes the method to return 0, ignoring the original return value.

And it gets worse. Consider the call `parseInt("zero")`. The `Integer.parseInt` method throws a `NumberFormatException`. Then the finally clause is executed, and the return statement swallows the exception!

The body of the finally clause is intended for cleaning up resources. Don't put statements that change the control flow (return, throw, break, continue) inside a finally clause.

### 7.2.5 The try-with-Resources Statement

As of Java 7, there is a useful shortcut to the code pattern

```
open a resource
try
{
    work with the resource
}
finally
{
    close the resource
}
```

provided the resource belongs to a class that implements the `AutoCloseable` interface. That interface has a single method

```
void close() throws Exception
```



**NOTE:** There is also a `Closeable` interface. It is a subinterface of `AutoCloseable`, also with a single `close` method. However, that method is declared to throw an `IOException`.

In its simplest variant, the try-with-resources statement has the form

```
try (Resource res = . . .)
{
    work with res
}
```

When the try block exits, then `res.close()` is called automatically. Here is a typical example—reading all words of a file:

```
try (var in = new Scanner(
      new FileInputStream("/usr/share/dict/words"), StandardCharsets.UTF_8))
{
    while (in.hasNext())
        System.out.println(in.next());
}
```

When the block exits normally, or when there was an exception, the `in.close()` method is called, exactly as if you had used a `finally` block.

You can specify multiple resources. For example,

```
try (var in = new Scanner(
      new FileInputStream("/usr/share/dict/words"), StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
     var out = new PrintWriter("out.txt", StandardCharsets.UTF_8))
{
    while (in.hasNext())
        out.println(in.next().toUpperCase());
}
```

No matter how the block exits, both `in` and `out` are closed. If you programmed this by hand, you would have needed two nested try/finally statements.

As of Java 9, you can provide previously declared effectively final variables in the try header:

```
public static void printAll(String[] lines, PrintWriter out)
{
    try (out) { // effectively final variable
        for (String line : lines)
            out.println(line);
    } // out.close() called here
}
```

A difficulty arises when the try block throws an exception and the close method also throws an exception. The try-with-resources statement handles this situation quite elegantly. The original exception is rethrown, and any exceptions thrown by close methods are considered “suppressed.” They are automatically caught and added to the original exception with the `addSuppressed` method. If you are interested in them, call the `getSuppressed` method which yields an array of the suppressed expressions from close methods.

You don’t want to program this by hand. Use the try-with-resources statement whenever you need to close a resource.



**NOTE:** A try-with-resources statement can itself have catch clauses and even a finally clause. These are executed after closing the resources.

### 7.2.6 Analyzing Stack Trace Elements

A *stack trace* is a listing of all pending method calls at a particular point in the execution of a program. You have almost certainly seen stack trace listings—they are displayed whenever a Java program terminates with an uncaught exception.

You can access the text description of a stack trace by calling the `printStackTrace` method of the `Throwable` class.

```
var t = new Throwable();
var out = new StringWriter();
t.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(out));
String description = out.toString();
```

A more flexible approach is the `StackWalker` class that yields a stream of `StackWalker.StackFrame` instances, each describing one stack frame. You can iterate over the stack frames with this call:

```
StackWalker walker = StackWalker.getInstance();
walker.forEach(frame -> analyze frame)
```

If you want to process the `Stream<StackWalker.StackFrame>` lazily, call

```
walker.walk(stream -> process stream)
```

Stream processing is described in detail in Chapter 1 of Volume II.

The `StackWalker.StackFrame` class has methods to obtain the file name and line number, as well as the class object and method name, of the executing line of code. The `toString` method yields a formatted string containing all of this information.



**NOTE:** Prior to Java 9, the `Throwable.getStackTrace` method yielded a `StackTraceElement[]` array with similar information as the stream of `StackWalker.StackFrame` instances. However, that call is less efficient since it captures the entire stack even though the caller may only need a few frames, and it only provides access to the class names, but not the class objects, of the pending methods.

Listing 7.1 prints the stack trace of a recursive factorial function. For example, if you compute `factorial(3)`, the printout is

```
factorial(3):
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:20)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.main(StackTraceTest.java:36)
factorial(2):
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:20)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:26)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.main(StackTraceTest.java:36)
factorial(1):
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:20)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:26)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.factorial(StackTraceTest.java:26)
StackTrace.StackTraceTest.main(StackTraceTest.java:36)
return 1
return 2
return 6
```

---

**Listing 7.1** `StackTrace/StackTraceTest.java`

---

```
1 package stackTrace;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * A program that displays a trace feature of a recursive method call.
7  * @version 1.10 2017-12-14
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class StackTraceTest
11 {
12     /**
13      * Computes the factorial of a number
14      * @param n a non-negative integer
15      * @return n! = 1 * 2 * . . . * n
16      */
17     public static int factorial(int n)
18     {
19         System.out.println("factorial(" + n + ")");
20         var walker = StackWalker.getInstance();
21         walker.forEach(System.out::println);
22         int r;
23         if (n <= 1) r = 1;
24         else r = n * factorial(n - 1);
25         System.out.println("return " + r);
26         return r;
27     }
}
```

```
28 public static void main(String[] args)
29 {
30     try (var in = new Scanner(System.in))
31     {
32         System.out.print("Enter n: ");
33         int n = in.nextInt();
34         factorial(n);
35     }
36 }
37 }
38 }
```

#### java.lang.Throwable 1.0

- Throwable(Throwable cause) **1.4**
- Throwable(String message, Throwable cause) **1.4**  
constructs a Throwable with a given cause.
- Throwable initCause(Throwable cause) **1.4**  
sets the cause for this object or throws an exception if this object already has a cause. Returns this.
- Throwable getcause() **1.4**  
gets the exception object that was set as the cause for this object, or null if no cause was set.
- StackTraceElement[] getStackTrace() **1.4**  
gets the trace of the call stack at the time this object was constructed.
- void addSuppressed(Throwable t) **7**  
adds a “suppressed” exception to this exception. This happens in a try-with-resources statement where t is an exception thrown by a close method.
- Throwable[] getSuppressed() **7**  
gets all “suppressed” exceptions of this exception. Typically, these are exceptions thrown by a close method in a try-with-resources statement.

#### java.lang.Exception 1.0

- Exception(Throwable cause) **1.4**
- Exception(String message, Throwable cause)  
constructs an Exception with a given cause.

**java.lang.RuntimeException 1.0**

- RuntimeException(Throwable cause) 1.4
  - RuntimeException(String message, Throwable cause) 1.4
- constructs a RuntimeException with a given cause.

**java.lang.StackWalker 9**

- static StackWalker getInstance()
- static StackWalker getInstance(StackWalker.Option option)
- static StackWalker getInstance(Set<StackWalker.Option> options)

Gets a StackWalker instance. The options include RETAIN\_CLASS\_REFERENCE, SHOW\_HIDDEN\_FRAMES, and SHOW\_REFLECT\_FRAMES from the StackWalker.Option enumeration.
- forEach(Consumer<? super StackWalker.StackFrame> action)

carries out the given action on each stack frame, starting with the most recently called method.
- walk(Function<? super Stream<StackWalker.StackFrame>, ? extends T> function)

applies the given function to the stream of stack frames and returns the result of the function.

**java.lang.StackWalker.StackFrame 9**

- String getFileName()

gets the name of the source file containing the execution point of this element, or null if the information is not available.
- int getLineNumber()

gets the line number of the source file containing the execution point of this element, or -1 if the information is not available.
- String getClassName()

gets the fully qualified name of the class whose method contains the execution point of this element.
- String getDeclaringClass()

gets the Class object of the method containing the execution point of this element. An exception is thrown if the stack walker was not constructed with the RETAIN\_CLASS\_REFERENCE option.

(Continues)

**java.lang.StackWalker.StackFrame 9 (Continued)**

- **String getMethodName()**  
gets the name of the method containing the execution point of this element. The name of a constructor is <init>. The name of a static initializer is <clinit>. You can't distinguish between overloaded methods with the same name.
- **boolean isNativeMethod()**  
returns true if the execution point of this element is inside a native method.
- **String toString()**  
returns a formatted string containing the class and method name and the file name and line number, if available.

**java.lang.StackTraceElement 1.4**

- **String getFileName()**  
gets the name of the source file containing the execution point of this element, or null if the information is not available.
- **int getLineNumber()**  
gets the line number of the source file containing the execution point of this element, or -1 if the information is not available.
- **String getClassName()**  
gets the fully qualified name of the class containing the execution point of this element.
- **String getMethodName()**  
gets the name of the method containing the execution point of this element. The name of a constructor is <init>. The name of a static initializer is <clinit>. You can't distinguish between overloaded methods with the same name.
- **boolean isNativeMethod()**  
returns true if the execution point of this element is inside a native method.
- **String toString()**  
returns a formatted string containing the class and method name and the file name and line number, if available.

## 7.3 Tips for Using Exceptions

There is a certain amount of controversy about the proper use of exceptions. Some programmers believe that all checked exceptions are a nuisance, others can't seem to throw enough of them. We think that exceptions (even checked exceptions) have their place, and offer you these tips for their proper use.

1. *Exception handling is not supposed to replace a simple test.*

As an example of this, we wrote some code that tries 10,000,000 times to pop an empty stack. It first does this by finding out whether the stack is empty.

```
if (!s.isEmpty()) s.pop();
```

Next, we force it to pop the stack no matter what and then catch the `EmptyStackException` that tells us we should not have done that.

```
try
{
    s.pop();
}
catch (EmptyStackException e)
{
}
```

On our test machine, the version that calls `isEmpty` ran in 646 milliseconds. The version that catches the `EmptyStackException` ran in 21,739 milliseconds.

As you can see, it took far longer to catch an exception than to perform a simple test. The moral is: Use exceptions for exceptional circumstances only.

2. *Do not micromanage exceptions.*

Many programmers wrap every statement in a separate try block.

```
PrintStream out;
Stack s;

for (i = 0; i < 100; i++)
{
    try
    {
        n = s.pop();
    }
    catch (EmptyStackException e)
    {
        // stack was empty
    }
}
```

```
try
{
    out.writeInt(n);
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    // problem writing to file
}
```

This approach blows up your code dramatically. Think about the task that you want the code to accomplish. Here, we want to pop 100 numbers off a stack and save them to a file. (Never mind why—it is just a toy example.) There is nothing we can do if a problem rears its ugly head. If the stack is empty, it will not become occupied. If the file contains an error, the error will not magically go away. It therefore makes sense to wrap the *entire task* in a try block. If any one operation fails, you can then abandon the task.

```
try
{
    for (i = 0; i < 100; i++)
    {
        n = s.pop();
        out.writeInt(n);
    }
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    // problem writing to file
}
catch (EmptyStackException e)
{
    // stack was empty
}
```

This code looks much cleaner. It fulfills one of the promises of exception handling: to *separate* normal processing from error handling.

### 3. Make good use of the exception hierarchy.

Don't just throw a `RuntimeException`. Find an appropriate subclass or create your own.

Don't just catch `Throwable`. It makes your code hard to read and maintain.

Respect the difference between checked and unchecked exceptions. Checked exceptions are inherently burdensome—don't throw them for logic errors. (For example, the reflection library gets this wrong. Callers often need to catch exceptions that they know can never happen.)

Do not hesitate to turn an exception into another exception that is more appropriate. For example, when you parse an integer in a file, catch the `NumberFormatException` and turn it into a subclass of `IOException` or `MySubsystemException`.

4. *Do not squelch exceptions.*

In Java, there is a tremendous temptation to shut up exceptions. If you're writing a method that calls a method that might throw an exception once a century, the compiler whines because you have not declared the exception in the throws list of your method. You do not want to put it in the throws list because then the compiler will whine about all the methods that call your method. So you just shut it up:

```
public Image loadImage(String s)
{
    try
    {
        code that threatens to throw checked exceptions
    }
    catch (Exception e)
    {} // so there
}
```

Now your code will compile without a hitch. It will run fine, except when an exception occurs. Then, the exception will be silently ignored. If you believe that exceptions are at all important, you should make some effort to handle them right.

5. *When you detect an error, "tough love" works better than indulgence.*

Some programmers worry about throwing exceptions when they detect errors. Maybe it would be better to return a dummy value rather than throw an exception when a method is called with invalid parameters? For example, should `Stack.pop` return `null`, or throw an exception when a stack is empty? We think it is better to throw a `EmptyStackException` at the point of failure than to have a `NullPointerException` occur at later time.

6. *Propagating exceptions is not a sign of shame.*

Many programmers feel compelled to catch all exceptions that are thrown. If they call a method that throws an exception, such as the `FileInputStream` constructor or the `readLine` method, they instinctively catch the exception that may be generated. Often, it is actually better to *propagate* the exception instead of catching it:

```
public void readStuff(String filename) throws IOException // not a sign of shame!
{
    var in = new FileInputStream(filename, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
```

```
    . . .  
}
```

Higher-level methods are often better equipped to inform the user of errors or to abandon unsuccessful commands.



**NOTE:** Rules 5 and 6 can be summarized as “throw early, catch late.”

---

## 7.4 Using Assertions

Assertions are a commonly used idiom of defensive programming. In the following sections, you will learn how to use them effectively.

### 7.4.1 The Assertion Concept

Suppose you are convinced that a particular property is fulfilled, and you rely on that property in your code. For example, you may be computing

```
double y = Math.sqrt(x);
```

You are certain that `x` is not negative. Perhaps it is the result of another computation that can't have a negative result, or it is a parameter of a method that requires its callers to supply only positive inputs. Still, you want to double-check rather than allow confusing “not a number” floating-point values creep into your computation. You could, of course, throw an exception:

```
if (x < 0) throw new IllegalArgumentException("x < 0");
```

But this code stays in the program, even after testing is complete. If you have lots of checks of this kind, the program may run quite a bit slower than it should.

The assertion mechanism allows you to put in checks during testing and to have them automatically removed in the production code.

The Java language has a keyword `assert`. There are two forms:

```
assert condition;
```

and

```
assert condition : expression;
```

Both statements evaluate the condition and throw an `AssertionError` if it is false. In the second statement, the expression is passed to the constructor of the `AssertionError` object and turned into a message string.



**NOTE:** The sole purpose of the *expression* part is to produce a message string. The `AssertionError` object does not store the actual expression value, so you can't query it later. As the JDK documentation states, doing so "would encourage programmers to attempt to recover from assertion failure, which defeats the purpose of the facility."

---

To assert that *x* is non-negative, you can simply use the statement

```
assert x >= 0;
```

Or you can pass the actual value of *x* into the `AssertionError` object, so that it gets displayed later.

```
assert x >= 0 : x;
```



**C++ NOTE:** The `assert` macro of the C language turns the assertion condition into a string that is printed if the assertion fails. For example, if `assert(x >= 0)` fails, it prints that "*x* >= 0" is the failing condition. In Java, the condition is not automatically part of the error report. If you want to see it, you have to pass it as a string into the `AssertionError` object: `assert x >= 0 : "x >= 0".`

---

### 7.4.2 Assertion Enabling and Disabling

By default, assertions are disabled. Enable them by running the program with the `-enableassertions` or `-ea` option:

```
java -enableassertions MyApp
```

Note that you do not have to recompile your program to enable or disable assertions. Enabling or disabling assertions is a function of the *class loader*. When assertions are disabled, the class loader strips out the assertion code so that it won't slow execution.

You can even turn on assertions in specific classes or in entire packages. For example:

```
java -ea:MyClass -ea:com.mycompany.mylib MyApp
```

This command turns on assertions for the class `MyClass` and all classes in the `com.mycompany.mylib` package *and its subpackages*. The option `-ea...` turns on assertions in all classes of the unnamed package.

You can also disable assertions in certain classes and packages with the `-disableassertions` or `-da` option:

```
java -ea:... -da:MyClass MyApp
```

Some classes are not loaded by a class loader but directly by the virtual machine. You can use these switches to selectively enable or disable assertions in those classes.

However, the `-ea` and `-da` switches that enable or disable all assertions do not apply to the “system classes” without class loaders. Use the `-enablesystemassertions/-esa` switch to enable assertions in system classes.

It is also possible to programmatically control the assertion status of class loaders. See the API notes at the end of this section.

### 7.4.3 Using Assertions for Parameter Checking

The Java language gives you three mechanisms to deal with system failures:

- Throwing an exception
- Logging
- Using assertions

When should you choose assertions? Keep these points in mind:

- Assertion failures are intended to be fatal, unrecoverable errors.
- Assertion checks are turned on only during development and testing. (This is sometimes jokingly described as “wearing a life jacket when you are close to shore, and throwing it overboard once you are in the middle of the ocean.”)

Therefore, you would not use assertions for signaling recoverable conditions to another part of the program or for communicating problems to the program user. Assertions should only be used to locate internal program errors during testing.

Let’s look at a common scenario—the checking of method parameters. Should you use assertions to check for illegal index values or `null` references? To answer that question, you have to look at the documentation of the method. Suppose you implement a sorting method.

```
/*
 * Sorts the specified range of the specified array in ascending numerical order.
 * The range to be sorted extends from fromIndex, inclusive, to toIndex, exclusive.
 * @param a the array to be sorted.
 * @param fromIndex the index of the first element (inclusive) to be sorted.
 * @param toIndex the index of the last element (exclusive) to be sorted.
 * @throws IllegalArgumentException if fromIndex > toIndex
 * @throws ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException if fromIndex < 0 or toIndex > a.length
 */
static void sort(int[] a, int fromIndex, int toIndex)
```

The documentation states that the method throws an exception if the index values are incorrect. That behavior is part of the contract that the method makes with its callers. If you implement the method, you have to respect that contract and throw the indicated exceptions. It would not be appropriate to use assertions instead.

Should you assert that `a` is not `null`? That is not appropriate either. The method documentation is silent on the behavior of the method when `a` is `null`. The callers have the right to assume that the method will return successfully in that case and not throw an assertion error.

However, suppose the method contract had been slightly different:

```
@param a the array to be sorted (must not be null).
```

Now the callers of the method have been put on notice that it is illegal to call the method with a `null` array. Then the method may start with the assertion

```
assert a != null;
```

Computer scientists call this kind of contract a *precondition*. The original method had no preconditions on its parameters—it promised a well-defined behavior in all cases. The revised method has a single precondition: that `a` is not `null`. If the caller fails to fulfill the precondition, then all bets are off and the method can do anything it wants. In fact, with the assertion in place, the method has a rather unpredictable behavior when it is called illegally. It sometimes throws an assertion error, and sometimes a null pointer exception, depending on how its class loader is configured.

#### 7.4.4 Using Assertions for Documenting Assumptions

Many programmers use comments to document their underlying assumptions. Consider this example from <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/language/assert.html>:

```
if (i % 3 == 0)
    .
    .
else if (i % 3 == 1)
    .
    .
else // (i % 3 == 2)
    .
    .
```

In this case, it makes a lot of sense to use an assertion instead.

```
if (i % 3 == 0)
    .
    .
else if (i % 3 == 1)
    .
    .
else
```

```
{  
    assert i % 3 == 2;  
    ...  
}
```

Of course, it would make even more sense to think through the issue thoroughly. What are the possible values of  $i \% 3$ ? If  $i$  is positive, the remainders must be 0, 1, or 2. If  $i$  is negative, then the remainders can be -1 or -2. Thus, the real assumption is that  $i$  is not negative. A better assertion would be

```
assert i >= 0;
```

before the if statement.

At any rate, this example shows a good use of assertions as a self-check for the programmer. As you can see, assertions are a tactical tool for testing and debugging. In contrast, logging is a strategic tool for the entire lifecycle of a program. We will examine logging in the next section.

#### java.lang.ClassLoader 1.0

- void setDefaultAssertionStatus(boolean b) 1.4  
enables or disables assertions for all classes loaded by this class loader that don't have an explicit class or package assertion status.
- void setClassAssertionStatus(String className, boolean b) 1.4  
enables or disables assertions for the given class and its inner classes.
- void setPackageAssertionStatus(String packageName, boolean b) 1.4  
enables or disables assertions for all classes in the given package and its subpackages.
- void clearAssertionStatus() 1.4  
removes all explicit class and package assertion status settings and disables assertions for all classes loaded by this class loader.

## 7.5 Logging

Every Java programmer is familiar with the process of inserting calls to `System.out.println` into troublesome code to gain insight into program behavior. Of course, once you have figured out the cause of trouble, you remove the print statements, only to put them back in when the next problem surfaces. The logging API is designed to overcome this problem. Here are the principal advantages of the API:

- It is easy to suppress all log records or just those below a certain level, and just as easy to turn them back on.
- Suppressed logs are very cheap, so there is only a minimal penalty for leaving the logging code in your application.
- Log records can be directed to different handlers—for displaying in the console, writing to a file, and so on.
- Both loggers and handlers can filter records. Filters can discard boring log entries, using any criteria supplied by the filter implementor.
- Log records can be formatted in different ways—for example, in plain text or XML.
- Applications can use multiple loggers, with hierarchical names such as `com.mycompany.myapp`, similar to package names.
- The logging configuration is controlled by a configuration file.



**NOTE:** Many applications use other logging frameworks, such as Log4J 2 (<https://logging.apache.org/log4j/2.x>) and Logback (<https://logback.qos.ch>), that offer higher performance than the standard Java logging framework. These frameworks have slightly different APIs. Logging façades such as SLF4J (<https://www.slf4j.org>) and Commons Logging (<https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-logging>) provide a unified API so that you can replace the logging framework without rewriting your application. To make matters more confusing, Log4J 2 can also be a façade to components that use SLF4J. In this book, we cover the standard Java logging framework. It is good enough for many purposes, and learning its API will prepare you for understanding the alternatives.

---



**NOTE:** As of Java 9, the Java platform has a separate lightweight logging system that does not depend on the `java.logging` module (which contains the standard Java logging framework). This system is intended only for use in the Java API. If the `java.logging` module is present, log messages are automatically forwarded to it. Third-party log frameworks can provide adapters to receive platform logging messages. We do not cover platform logging since it is not meant to be used by application programmers.

---

### 7.5.1 Basic Logging

For simple logging, use the global logger and call its `info` method:

```
Logger.getGlobal().info("File->Open menu item selected");
```

By default, the record is printed like this:

```
May 10, 2013 10:12:15 PM LoggingImageViewer fileOpen
INFO: File->Open menu item selected
```

But if you call

```
Logger.getGlobal().setLevel(Level.OFF);
```

at an appropriate place (such as the beginning of `main`), all logging is suppressed.

### 7.5.2 Advanced Logging

Now that you have seen “logging for dummies,” let’s go on to industrial-strength logging. In a professional application, you wouldn’t want to log all records to a single global logger. Instead, you can define your own loggers.

Call the `getLogger` method to create or retrieve a logger:

```
private static final Logger myLogger = Logger.getLogger("com.mycompany.myapp");
```



**TIP:** A logger that is not referenced by any variable can be garbage-collected.

To prevent this, save a reference to the logger with a static variable, as in the example above.

Similar to package names, logger names are hierarchical. In fact, they are *more* hierarchical than packages. There is no semantic relationship between a package and its parent, but logger parents and children share certain properties. For example, if you set the log level on the logger `"com.mycompany"`, then the child loggers inherit that level.

There are seven logging levels:

- SEVERE
- WARNING
- INFO
- CONFIG
- FINE
- FINER
- FINEST

By default, the top three levels are actually logged. You can set a different level—for example,

```
logger.setLevel(Level.FINE);
```

Now FINE and all levels above it are logged.

You can also use Level.ALL to turn on logging for all levels or Level.OFF to turn all logging off.

There are logging methods for all levels, such as

```
logger.warning(message);
logger.fine(message);
```

and so on. Alternatively, you can use the log method and supply the level, such as

```
logger.log(Level.FINE, message);
```



**TIP:** The default logging configuration logs all records with the level of INFO or higher. Therefore, you should use the levels CONFIG, FINE, FINER, and FINEST for debugging messages that are useful for diagnostics but meaningless to the user.

---



**CAUTION:** If you set the logging level to a value finer than INFO, you also need to change the log handler configuration. The default log handler suppresses messages below INFO. See the next section for details.

---

The default log record shows the name of the class and method that contain the logging call, as inferred from the call stack. However, if the virtual machine optimizes execution, accurate call information may not be available. You can use the logp method to give the precise location of the calling class and method. The method signature is

```
void logp(Level l, String className, String methodName, String message)
```

There are convenience methods for tracing execution flow:

```
void entering(String className, String methodName)
void entering(String className, String methodName, Object param)
void entering(String className, String methodName, Object[] params)
void exiting(String className, String methodName)
void exiting(String className, String methodName, Object result)
```

For example:

```
int read(String file, String pattern)
{
    logger.entering("com.mycompany.mylib.Reader", "read",
        new Object[] { file, pattern });

    ...
    logger.exiting("com.mycompany.mylib.Reader", "read", count);
```

```
    return count;
}
```

These calls generate log records of level `FINE` that start with the strings `ENTRY` and `RETURN`.



**NOTE:** At some point in the future, the logging methods with an `Object[]` parameter will be rewritten to support variable parameter lists (“varargs”). Then, you will be able to make calls such as `logger.entering("com.mycompany.mylib.Reader", "read", file, pattern)`.

A common use for logging is to log unexpected exceptions. Two convenience methods include a description of the exception in the log record.

```
void throwing(String className, String methodName, Throwable t)
void log(Level l, String message, Throwable t)
```

Typical uses are

```
if (. . .)
{
    var e = new IOException(". . .");
    logger.throwing("com.mycompany.mylib.Reader", "read", e);
    throw e;
}
```

and

```
try
{
    . . .
}
catch (IOException e)
{
    Logger.getLogger("com.mycompany.myapp").log(Level.WARNING, "Reading image", e);
}
```

The `throwing` call logs a record with level `FINE` and a message that starts with `THROW`.

### 7.5.3 Changing the Log Manager Configuration

You can change various properties of the logging system by editing a configuration file. The default configuration file is located at `jdk/conf/logging.properties` (or at `jre/lib/logging.properties` prior to Java 9).

To use another file, set the `java.util.logging.config.file` property to the file location by starting your application with

```
java -Djava.util.logging.config.file=configFile MainClass
```

To change the default logging level, edit the configuration file and modify the line

```
.level=INFO
```

You can specify the logging levels for your own loggers by adding lines such as

```
com.mycompany.myapp.level=FINE
```

That is, append the `.level` suffix to the logger name.

As you will see later in this section, the loggers don't actually send the messages to the console—that is the job of the handlers. Handlers also have levels. To see `FINE` messages on the console, you also need to set

```
java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler.level=FINE
```



**CAUTION:** The settings in the log manager configuration are *not* system properties. Starting a program with `-Dcom.mycompany.myapp.level=FINE` does not have any effect on the logger.

---

The log manager is initialized during VM startup, before `main` executes. If you want to customize the logging properties but didn't start your application with the `-Djava.util.logging.config.file` command-line option, call `System.setProperty("java.util.logging.config.file", file)` in your program. But then you must also call `LogManager.getLogManager().readConfiguration()` to reinitialize the log manager.

As of Java 9, you can instead update the logging configuration by calling

```
LogManager.getLogManager().updateConfiguration(mapper);
```

A new configuration is read from the location specified by the `java.util.logging.config.file` system property. Then the mapper is applied to resolve the values for all keys in the old or new configuration. The mapper is a `Function<String,BiFunction<String,String,String>>`. It maps keys in the existing configuration to replacement functions. Each replacement function receives the old and new values associated with the key (or `null` if there is no associated value), and produces a replacement, or `null` if the key should be dropped in the update.

That sounds rather complex, so let's walk through a couple of examples. A useful mapping scheme would be to merge the old and new configurations,

preferring the new value when a key is present in both the old and new configurations. Then the mapper is

```
key -> ((oldValue, newValue) -> newValue == null ? oldValue : newValue)
```

Or perhaps you want to only update the keys that start with `com.mycompany` and leave the others unchanged:

```
key -> key.startsWith("com.mycompany")
    ? ((oldValue, newValue) -> newValue)
    : ((oldValue, newValue) -> oldValue)
```

It is also possible to change logging levels in a running program by using the `jconsole` program. See [#LoggingControl](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/articles/java/jconsole-1564139.html) for information.



**NOTE:** The logging properties file is processed by the `java.util.logging.LogManager` class. It is possible to specify a different log manager by setting the `java.util.logging.manager` system property to the name of a subclass. Alternatively, you can keep the standard log manager and still bypass the initialization from the logging properties file. Set the `java.util.logging.config.class` system property to the name of a class that sets log manager properties in some other way. See the API documentation for the `LogManager` class for more information.

#### 7.5.4 Localization

You may want to localize logging messages so that they are readable for international users. Internationalization of applications is the topic of Chapter 7 of Volume II. Briefly, here are the points to keep in mind when localizing logging messages.

Localized applications contain locale-specific information in *resource bundles*. A resource bundle consists of a set of mappings for various locales (such as United States or Germany). For example, a resource bundle may map the string "readingFile" into strings "Reading file" in English or "Achtung! Datei wird eingelesen" in German.

A program may contain multiple resource bundles—for example, one for menus and another for log messages. Each resource bundle has a name (such as "`com.mycompany.logmessages`"). To add mappings to a resource bundle, supply a file for each locale. English message mappings are in a file `com/mycompany/logmessages_en.properties`, and German message mappings are in a file `com/mycompany/logmessages_de.properties`. (The `en` and `de` are the language codes.) You place the files together with the class files of your application, so that the

ResourceBundle class will automatically locate them. These files are plain text files, consisting of entries such as

```
readingFile=Achtung! Datei wird eingelesen  
renamingFile=Datei wird umbenannt  
...
```

When requesting a logger, you can specify a resource bundle:

```
Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(loggerName, "com.mycompany.logmessages");
```

Then specify the resource bundle key, not the actual message string, for the log message:

```
logger.info("readingFile");
```

You often need to include arguments into localized messages. A message may contain placeholders: {0}, {1}, and so on. For example, to include the file name with a log message, use the placeholder like this:

```
Reading file {0}.  
Achtung! Datei {0} wird eingelesen.
```

Then, to pass values into the placeholders, call one of the following methods:

```
logger.log(Level.INFO, "readingFile", fileName);  
logger.log(Level.INFO, "renamingFile", new Object[] { oldName, newName });
```

Alternatively, as of Java 9, you can specify the resource bundle object (and not the name) in the logrb method:

```
logger.logrb(Level.INFO, bundle, "renamingFile", oldName, newName);
```



**NOTE:** This is the only logging method that uses variable arguments for the message parameters.

---

## 7.5.5 Handlers

By default, loggers send records to a ConsoleHandler that prints them to the System.err stream. Specifically, the logger sends the record to the parent handler, and the ultimate ancestor (with name "") has a ConsoleHandler.

Like loggers, handlers have a logging level. For a record to be logged, its logging level must be above the threshold of *both* the logger and the handler. The log manager configuration file sets the logging level of the default console handler as

```
java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler.level=INFO
```

To log records with level `FINE`, change both the default logger level and the handler level in the configuration. Alternatively, you can bypass the configuration file altogether and install your own handler.

```
Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("com.mycompany.myapp");
logger.setLevel(Level.FINE);
logger.setUseParentHandlers(false);
var handler = new ConsoleHandler();
handler.setLevel(Level.FINE);
logger.addHandler(handler);
```

By default, a logger sends records both to its own handlers and to the handlers of the parent. Our logger is a child of the primordial logger (with name "") that sends all records with level `INFO` and above to the console. We don't want to see those records twice, however, so we set the `useParentHandlers` property to `false`.

To send log records elsewhere, add another handler. The logging API provides two useful handlers for this purpose: a `FileHandler` and a `SocketHandler`. The `SocketHandler` sends records to a specified host and port. Of greater interest is the `FileHandler` that collects records in a file.

You can simply send records to a default file handler, like this:

```
var handler = new FileHandler();
logger.addHandler(handler);
```

The records are sent to a file `java{n}.log` in the user's home directory, where `n` is a number to make the file unique. If a system has no concept of the user's home directory (for example, in Windows 95/98/ME), then the file is stored in a default location such as `C:\Windows`. By default, the records are formatted in XML. A typical log record has the form

```
<record>
<date>2002-02-04T07:45:15</date>
<millis>1012837515710</millis>
<sequence>1</sequence>
<logger>com.mycompany.myapp</logger>
<level>INFO</level>
<class>com.mycompany.mylib.Reader</class>
<method>read</method>
<thread>10</thread>
<message>Reading file corejava.gif</message>
</record>
```

You can modify the default behavior of the file handler by setting various parameters in the log manager configuration (see Table 7.1) or by using another constructor (see the API notes at the end of this section).

**Table 7.1** File Handler Configuration Parameters

Configuration Property	Description	Default
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.level</code>	The handler level	<code>Level.ALL</code>
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.append</code>	Controls whether the handler should append to an existing file, or open a new file for each program run	<code>false</code>
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.limit</code>	The approximate maximum number of bytes to write to a file before opening another ( <code>0</code> = no limit)	<code>0</code> (no limit) in the <code>FileHandler</code> class, <code>50000</code> in the default log manager configuration
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.pattern</code>	The pattern for the log file name. See Table 7.2 for pattern variables.	<code>%h/java%u.log</code>
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.count</code>	The number of logs in a rotation sequence	<code>1</code> (no rotation)
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.filter</code>	The filter class to use	No filtering
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.encoding</code>	The character encoding to use	The platform encoding
<code>java.util.logging.FileHandler.formatter</code>	The record formatter	<code>java.util.logging.XMLFormatter</code>

You probably don't want to use the default log file name. Therefore, you should use another pattern, such as `%h/myapp.log`. (See Table 7.2 for an explanation of the pattern variables.)

If multiple applications (or multiple copies of the same application) use the same log file, you should turn the append flag on. Alternatively, use `%u` in the file name pattern so that each application creates a unique copy of the log.

**Table 7.2** Log File Pattern Variables

Variable	Description
%h	The value of the user.home system property
%t	The system temporary directory
%u	A unique number to resolve conflicts
%g	The generation number for rotated logs (a .%g suffix is used if rotation is specified and the pattern doesn't contain %g)
%%	The % character

It is also a good idea to turn file rotation on. Log files are kept in a rotation sequence, such as myapp.log.0, myapp.log.1, myapp.log.2, and so on. Whenever a file exceeds the size limit, the oldest log is deleted, the other files are renamed, and a new file with generation number 0 is created.



**TIP:** Many programmers use logging as an aid for the technical support staff. If a program misbehaves in the field, the user can send back the log files for inspection. In that case, you should turn the append flag on, use rotating logs, or both.

You can also define your own handlers by extending the Handler or the StreamHandler class. We define such a handler in the example program at the end of this section. That handler displays the records in a window (see Figure 7.2).

**Figure 7.2** A log handler that displays records in a window

The handler extends the `StreamHandler` class and installs a stream whose write methods display the stream output in a text area.

```
class WindowHandler extends StreamHandler
{
    public WindowHandler()
    {
        . .
        var output = new JTextArea();

        setOutputStream(new
            OutputStream()
        {
            public void write(int b) {} // not called
            public void write(byte[] b, int off, int len)
            {
                output.append(new String(b, off, len));
            }
        });
    }
    . .
}
```

There is just one problem with this approach—the handler buffers the records and only writes them to the stream when the buffer is full. Therefore, we override the `publish` method to flush the buffer after each record:

```
class WindowHandler extends StreamHandler
{
    .
    .
    public void publish(LogRecord record)
    {
        super.publish(record);
        flush();
    }
}
```

If you want to write more exotic stream handlers, extend the `Handler` class and define the `publish`, `flush`, and `close` methods.

### 7.5.6 Filters

By default, records are filtered according to their logging levels. Each logger and handler can have an optional filter to perform additional filtering. To define a filter, implement the `Filter` interface and define the method

```
boolean isLoggable(LogRecord record)
```

Analyze the log record, using any criteria that you desire, and return true for those records that should be included in the log. For example, a particular filter may only be interested in the messages generated by the entering and exiting methods. The filter should then call `record.getMessage()` and check whether it starts with `ENTRY` or `RETURN`.

To install a filter into a logger or handler, simply call the `setFilter` method. Note that you can have at most one filter at a time.

### 7.5.7 Formatters

The `ConsoleHandler` and `FileHandler` classes emit the log records in text and XML formats. However, you can define your own formats as well. You need to extend the `Formatter` class and override the method

```
String format(LogRecord record)
```

Format the information in the record in any way you like and return the resulting string. In your `format` method, you may want to call the method

```
String formatMessage(LogRecord record)
```

That method formats the message part of the record, substituting parameters and applying localization.

Many file formats (such as XML) require a head and tail parts that surround the formatted records. To achieve this, override the methods

```
String getHead(Handler h)
String getTail(Handler h)
```

Finally, call the `setFormatter` method to install the formatter into the handler.

### 7.5.8 A Logging Recipe

With so many options for logging, it is easy to lose track of the fundamentals. The following recipe summarizes the most common operations.

1. For a simple application, choose a single logger. It is a good idea to give the logger the same name as your main application package, such as `com.mycompany.myprog`. You can always get the logger by calling

```
Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("com.mycompany.myprog");
```

For convenience, you may want to add static fields

```
private static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("com.mycompany.myprog");
```

to classes with a lot of logging activity.

2. The default logging configuration logs all messages of level `INFO` or higher to the console. Users can override the default configuration, but as you have seen, the process is a bit involved. Therefore, it is a good idea to install a more reasonable default in your application.

The following code ensures that all messages are logged to an application-specific file. Place the code into the `main` method of your application.

```
if (System.getProperty("java.util.logging.config.class") == null  
    && System.getProperty("java.util.logging.config.file") == null)  
{  
    try  
    {  
        Logger.getLogger("").setLevel(Level.ALL);  
        final int LOG_ROTATION_COUNT = 10;  
        var handler = new FileHandler("%h/myapp.log", 0, LOG_ROTATION_COUNT);  
        Logger.getLogger("").addHandler(handler);  
    }  
    catch (IOException e)  
    {  
        logger.log(Level.SEVERE, "Can't create log file handler", e);  
    }  
}
```

3. Now you are ready to log to your heart's content. Keep in mind that all messages with level `INFO`, `WARNING`, and `SEVERE` show up on the console. Therefore, reserve these levels for messages that are meaningful to the users of your program. The level `FINE` is a good choice for logging messages that are intended for programmers.

Whenever you are tempted to call `System.out.println`, emit a log message instead:

```
logger.fine("File open dialog canceled");
```

It is also a good idea to log unexpected exceptions. For example:

```
try  
{  
    . . .  
}  
catch (SomeException e)  
{  
    logger.log(Level.FINE, "explanation", e);  
}
```

Listing 7.2 puts this recipe to use with an added twist: Logging messages are also displayed in a log window.

**Listing 7.2** logging/LoggingImageViewer.java

```
1 package logging;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import java.io.*;
6 import java.util.logging.*;
7 import javax.swing.*;
8
9 /**
10  * A modification of the image viewer program that logs various events.
11  * @version 1.03 2015-08-20
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13  */
14 public class LoggingImageViewer
15 {
16     public static void main(String[] args)
17     {
18         if (System.getProperty("java.util.logging.config.class") == null
19             && System.getProperty("java.util.logging.config.file") == null)
20         {
21             try
22             {
23                 Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava").setLevel(Level.ALL);
24                 final int LOG_ROTATION_COUNT = 10;
25                 var handler = new FileHandler("%h/LoggingImageViewer.log", 0, LOG_ROTATION_COUNT);
26                 Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava").addHandler(handler);
27             }
28             catch (IOException e)
29             {
30                 Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava").log(Level.SEVERE,
31                     "Can't create log file handler", e);
32             }
33         }
34
35         EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
36         {
37             var windowHandler = new WindowHandler();
38             windowHandler.setLevel(Level.ALL);
39             Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava").addHandler(windowHandler);
40
41             var frame = new ImageViewerFrame();
42             frame.setTitle("LoggingImageViewer");
43             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
44         });
45     }
46 }
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 7.2 (Continued)**

```
45         Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava").fine("Showing frame");
46         frame.setVisible(true);
47     });
48 }
49 }
50 /**
51 * The frame that shows the image.
52 */
53 class ImageViewerFrame extends JFrame
54 {
55     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
56     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 400;
57
58     private JLabel label;
59     private static Logger logger = Logger.getLogger("com.horstmann.corejava");
60
61     public ImageViewerFrame()
62     {
63         logger.entering("ImageViewerFrame", "<init>");
64         setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
65
66         // set up menu bar
67         var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
68         setJMenuBar(menuBar);
69
70         var menu = new JMenu("File");
71         menuBar.add(menu);
72
73         var openItem = new JMenuItem("Open");
74         menu.add(openItem);
75         openItem.addActionListener(new FileOpenListener());
76
77         var exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
78         menu.add(exitItem);
79         exitItem.addActionListener(new ActionListener()
80         {
81             public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
82             {
83                 logger.fine("Exiting.");
84                 System.exit(0);
85             }
86         });
87
88         // use a label to display the images
89         label = new JLabel();
```

```
91     add(label);
92     logger.exiting("ImageViewerFrame", "<init>");
93 }
94
95 private class FileOpenListener implements ActionListener
96 {
97     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
98     {
99         logger.entering("ImageViewerFrame.FileOpenListener", "actionPerformed", event);
100
101        // set up file chooser
102        var chooser = new JFileChooser();
103        chooser.setCurrentDirectory(new File("."));
104
105        // accept all files ending with .gif
106        chooser.setFileFilter(new javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter()
107        {
108            public boolean accept(File f)
109            {
110                return f.getName().toLowerCase().endsWith(".gif") || f.isDirectory();
111            }
112
113            public String getDescription()
114            {
115                return "GIF Images";
116            }
117        });
118
119        // show file chooser dialog
120        int r = chooser.showOpenDialog(ImageViewerFrame.this);
121
122        // if image file accepted, set it as icon of the label
123        if (r == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
124        {
125            String name = chooser.getSelectedFile().getPath();
126            logger.log(Level.FINE, "Reading file {0}", name);
127            label.setIcon(new ImageIcon(name));
128        }
129        else logger.fine("File open dialog canceled.");
130        logger.exiting("ImageViewerFrame.FileOpenListener", "actionPerformed");
131    }
132 }
133 }
134
135 /**
136 * A handler for displaying log records in a window.
137 */
```

(Continues)

**Listing 7.2 (Continued)**

```
138 class WindowHandler extends StreamHandler
139 {
140     private JFrame frame;
141
142     public WindowHandler()
143     {
144         frame = new JFrame();
145         var output = new JTextArea();
146         output.setEditable(false);
147         frame.setSize(200, 200);
148         frame.add(new JScrollPane(output));
149         frame.setFocusableWindowState(false);
150         frame.setVisible(true);
151         setOutputStream(new OutputStream()
152         {
153             public void write(int b)
154             {
155                 } // not called
156
157             public void write(byte[] b, int off, int len)
158             {
159                 output.append(new String(b, off, len));
160             }
161         });
162     }
163
164     public void publish(LogRecord record)
165     {
166         if (!frame.isVisible()) return;
167         super.publish(record);
168         flush();
169     }
170 }
```

---

**java.util.logging.Logger 1.4**

- `Logger getLogger(String loggerName)`
- `Logger getLogger(String loggerName, String bundleName)`

gets the logger with the given name. If the logger doesn't exist, it is created. Localized messages are located in the resource bundle whose name is `bundleName`.

(Continues)

**java.util.logging.Logger 1.4 (Continued)**

- void severe(String message)
- void warning(String message)
- void info(String message)
- void config(String message)
- void fine(String message)
- void finer(String message)
- void finest(String message)

logs a record with the level indicated by the method name and the given message.

- void entering(String className, String methodName)
- void entering(String className, String methodName, Object param)
- void entering(String className, String methodName, Object[] param)
- void exiting(String className, String methodName)
- void exiting(String className, String methodName, Object result)

logs a record that describes entering or exiting a method with the given parameter(s) or return value.

- void throwing(String className, String methodName, Throwable t)

logs a record that describes throwing of the given exception object.

- void log(Level level, String message)
- void log(Level level, String message, Object obj)
- void log(Level level, String message, Object[] objs)
- void log(Level level, String message, Throwable t)

logs a record with the given level and message, optionally including objects or a throwable. To include objects, the message must contain formatting placeholders ({0}, {1}, and so on).

- void logp(Level level, String className, String methodName, String message)
- void logp(Level level, String className, String methodName, String message, Object obj)
- void logp(Level level, String className, String methodName, String message, Object[] objs)
- void logp(Level level, String className, String methodName, String message, Throwable t)

logs a record with the given level, precise caller information, and message, optionally including objects or a throwable.

(Continues)

**java.util.logging.Logger 1.4 (Continued)**

- void logrb(Level level, String className, String methodName, ResourceBundle bundle, String message, Object... params) 9
  - logs a record with the given level, precise caller information, resource bundle, and message, followed by objects or a throwable.
- Level getLevel()
- void setLevel(Level l)
  - gets and sets the level of this logger.
- Logger getParent()
- void setParent(Logger l)
  - gets and sets the parent logger of this logger.
- Handler[] getHandlers()
  - gets all handlers of this logger.
- void addHandler(Handler h)
- void removeHandler(Handler h)
  - adds or removes a handler for this logger.
- boolean getUseParentHandlers()
- void setUseParentHandlers(boolean b)
  - gets and sets the “use parent handler” property. If this property is true, the logger forwards all logged records to the handlers of its parent.
- Filter getFilter()
- void setFilter(Filter f)
  - gets and sets the filter of this logger.

**java.util.logging.Handler 1.4**

- abstract void publish(LogRecord record)
  - sends the record to the intended destination.
- abstract void flush()
  - flushes any buffered data.
- abstract void close()
  - flushes any buffered data and releases all associated resources.

*(Continues)*

**java.util.logging.Handler 1.4 (Continued)**

- `Filter getFilter()`
- `void setFilter(Filter f)`  
gets and sets the filter of this handler.
- `Formatter getFormatter()`
- `void setFormatter(Formatter f)`  
gets and sets the formatter of this handler.
- `Level getLevel()`
- `void setLevel(Level l)`  
gets and sets the level of this handler.

**java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler 1.4**

- `ConsoleHandler()`  
constructs a new console handler.

**java.util.logging.FileHandler 1.4**

- `FileHandler(String pattern)`
- `FileHandler(String pattern, boolean append)`
- `FileHandler(String pattern, int limit, int count)`
- `FileHandler(String pattern, int limit, int count, boolean append)`
- `FileHandler(String pattern, long limit, int count, boolean append) 9`

constructs a file handler. See Table 7.2 for the pattern format. `limit` is the approximate maximum number of bytes before a new log file is opened. `count` is the number of files in a rotation sequence. If `append` is true, records should be appended to an existing log file.

**java.util.logging.LogRecord 1.4**

- `Level getLevel()`  
gets the logging level of this record.
- `String getLoggerName()`  
gets the name of the logger that is logging this record.

(Continues)

**java.util.logging.LogRecord 1.4 (Continued)**

- `ResourceBundle getResourceBundle()`  
gets the resource bundle, or its name, to be used for localizing the message, or `null` if none is provided.
- `String getMessage()`  
gets the “raw” message before localization or formatting.
- `Object[] getParameters()`  
gets the parameter objects, or `null` if none is provided.
- `Throwable getThrown()`  
gets the thrown object, or `null` if none is provided.
- `String getSourceClassName()`  
•  `String getSourceMethodName()`  
gets the location of the code that logged this record. This information may be supplied by the logging code or automatically inferred from the runtime stack. It might be inaccurate if the logging code supplied the wrong value or if the running code was optimized so that the exact location cannot be inferred.
- `long getMillis()`  
gets the creation time, in milliseconds since 1970.
- `Instant getInstant() 9`  
gets the creation time as a `java.time.Instant` (see Chapter 6 of Volume II).
- `long getSequenceNumber()`  
gets the unique sequence number of this record.
- `int getThreadID()`  
gets the unique ID for the thread in which this record was created. These IDs are assigned by the `LogRecord` class and have no relationship to other thread IDs.

**java.util.logging.LogManager 1.4**

- `static LogManager getLogManager()`  
gets the global `LogManager` instance.

*(Continues)*

**java.util.logging.LogManager 1.4 (Continued)**

- `void readConfiguration()`
- `void readConfiguration(InputStream in)`

reads the logging configuration from the file specified by the system property `java.util.logging.config.file`, or the given input stream.
- `void updateConfiguration(InputStream in, Function<String,BiFunction<String,String>> mapper) 9`
- `void updateConfiguration(Function<String,BiFunction<String,String>> mapper) 9`

merges the logging configuration with the file specified by the system property `java.util.logging.config.file` or the given input stream. See Section 7.5.3, “Changing the Log Manager Configuration,” on p. 407 for a description of the `mapper` parameter.

**java.util.logging.Filter 1.4**

- `boolean isLoggable(LogRecord record)`

returns true if the given log record should be logged.

**java.util.logging.Formatter 1.4**

- `abstract String format(LogRecord record)`

returns the string that results from formatting the given log record.
- `String getHead(Handler h)`
- `String getTail(Handler h)`

returns the strings that should appear at the head and tail of the document containing the log records. The `Formatter` superclass defines these methods to return the empty string; override them if necessary.
- `String formatMessage(LogRecord record)`

returns the localized and formatted message part of the log record.

## 7.6 Debugging Tips

Suppose you wrote your program and made it bulletproof by catching and properly handling all exceptions. Then you run it, and it does not work right. Now what? (If you never have this problem, you can skip the remainder of this chapter.)

Of course, it is best if you have a convenient and powerful debugger. Debuggers are available as a part of professional development environments such as Eclipse, IntelliJ, and NetBeans. In this section, we offer you a number of tips that may be worth trying before you launch the debugger.

1. You can print or log the value of any variable with code like this:

```
System.out.println("x=" + x);
```

or

```
Logger.getGlobal().info("x=" + x);
```

If `x` is a number, it is converted to its string equivalent. If `x` is an object, Java calls its `toString` method. To get the state of the implicit parameter object, print the state of the `this` object.

```
Logger.getGlobal().info("this=" + this);
```

Most of the classes in the Java library are very conscientious about overriding the `toString` method to give you useful information about the class. This is a real boon for debugging. You should make the same effort in your classes.

2. One seemingly little-known but very useful trick is putting a separate `main` method in each class. Inside it, you can put a unit test stub that lets you test the class in isolation.

```
public class MyClass
{
    methods and fields
    .
    .
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        test code
    }
}
```

Make a few objects, call all methods, and check that each of them does the right thing. You can leave all these `main` methods in place and launch the Java virtual machine separately on each of the files to run the tests. When you run an applet, none of these `main` methods are ever called. When you run an application, the Java virtual machine calls only the `main` method of the startup class.

3. If you liked the preceding tip, you should check out JUnit from <http://junit.org>. JUnit is a very popular unit testing framework that makes it easy to organize suites of test cases. Run the tests whenever you make changes to a class, and add another test case whenever you find a bug.

4. A *logging proxy* is an object of a subclass that intercepts method calls, logs them, and then calls the superclass. For example, if you have trouble with the `nextDouble` method of the `Random` class, you can create a proxy object as an instance of an anonymous subclass:

```
var generator = new Random()
{
    public double nextDouble()
    {
        double result = super.nextDouble();
        Logger.getGlobal().info("nextDouble: " + result);
        return result;
    }
};
```

Whenever the `nextDouble` method is called, a log message is generated.

To find out who called the method, generate a stack trace.

5. You can get a stack trace from any exception object with the `printStackTrace` method in the `Throwable` class. The following code catches any exception, prints the exception object and the stack trace, and rethrows the exception so it can find its intended handler.

```
try
{
    . .
}
catch (Throwable t)
{
    t.printStackTrace();
    throw t;
}
```

You don't even need to catch an exception to generate a stack trace. Simply insert the statement

```
Thread.dumpStack();
```

anywhere into your code to get a stack trace.

6. Normally, the stack trace is displayed on `System.err`. If you want to log or display the stack trace, here is how you can capture it into a string:

```
var out = new StringWriter();
new Throwable().printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(out));
String description = out.toString();
```

7. It is often handy to trap program errors in a file. However, errors are sent to `System.err`, not `System.out`. Therefore, you cannot simply trap them by running

```
java MyProgram > errors.txt
```

Instead, capture the error stream as

```
java MyProgram 2> errors.txt
```

To capture both System.err and System.out in the same file, use

```
java MyProgram 1> errors.txt 2>&1
```

This works in bash and the Windows shell.

8. Having the stack traces of uncaught exceptions show up in System.err is not ideal. These messages are confusing to end users if they happen to see them, and they are not available for diagnostic purposes when you need them. A better approach is to log them to a file. You can change the handler for uncaught exceptions with the static Thread.setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler method:

```
Thread.setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler(  
    new Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler()  
    {  
        public void uncaughtException(Thread t, Throwable e)  
        {  
            save information in log file  
        };  
   });
```

9. To watch class loading, launch the Java virtual machine with the -verbose flag. You will get a printout such as the following:

```
[0.012s][info][class,load] opened: /opt/jdk-11.0.1/lib/modules  
[0.034s][info][class,load] java.lang.Object source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.035s][info][class,load] java.io.Serializable source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.035s][info][class,load] java.lang.Comparable source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.035s][info][class,load] java.lang.CharSequence source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.035s][info][class,load] java.lang.String source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.036s][info][class,load] java.lang.reflect.AnnotatedElement source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.036s][info][class,load] java.lang.reflect.GenericDeclaration source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.036s][info][class,load] java.lang.reflect.Type source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.036s][info][class,load] java.lang.Class source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.036s][info][class,load] java.lang.Cloneable source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.ClassLoader source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.System source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.Throwable source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.Error source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.ThreadDeath source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.Exception source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.037s][info][class,load] java.lang.RuntimeException source: jrt:/java.base  
[0.038s][info][class,load] java.lang.SecurityManager source: jrt:/java.base  
. . .
```

This can occasionally be helpful to diagnose class path problems.

10. The `-Xlint` option tells the compiler to spot common code problems. For example, if you compile with the command

```
javac -Xlint sourceFiles
```

the compiler will report missing break statements in switch statements. (The term “lint” originally described a tool for locating potential problems in C programs, but is now generically applied to any tools that flag constructs that are questionable but not illegal.)

You will get messages such as

```
warning: [fallthrough] possible fall-through into case
```

The string in square brackets identifies the warning category. You can enable and disable each category. Since most of them are quite useful, it seems best to leave them all in place and disable only those that you don’t care about, like this:

```
javac -Xlint:all,-fallthrough,-serial sourceFiles
```

You get a list of all warnings from the command

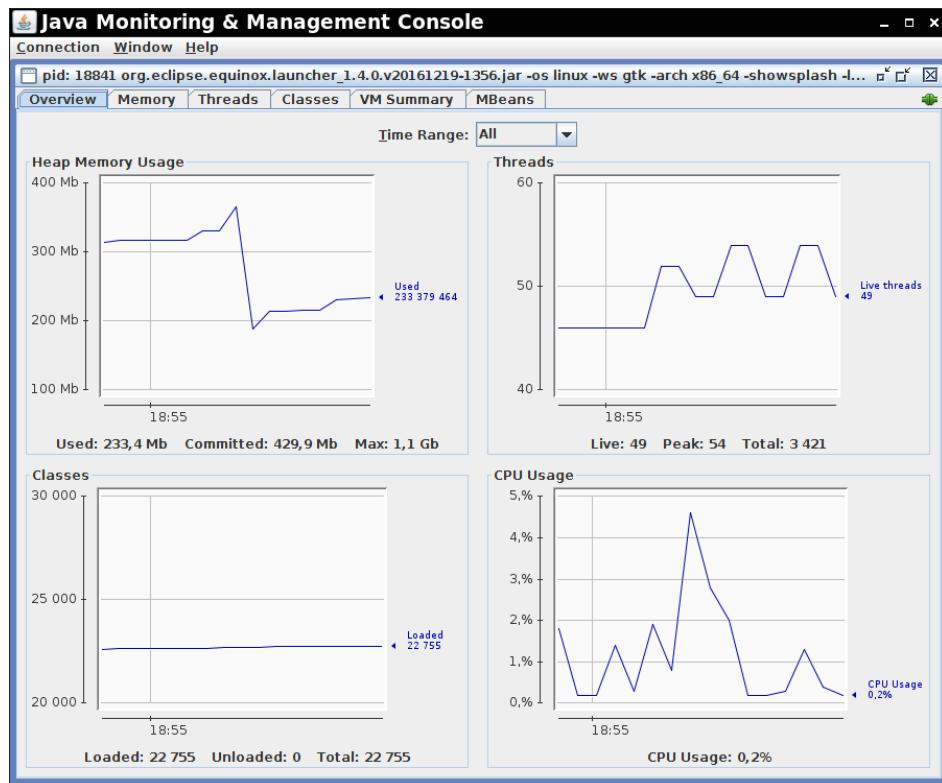
```
javac --help -X
```

11. The Java VM has support for *monitoring and management* of Java applications, allowing the installation of agents in the virtual machine that track memory consumption, thread usage, class loading, and so on. This feature is particularly important for large and long-running Java programs, such as application servers. As a demonstration of these capabilities, the JDK ships with a graphical tool called `jconsole` that displays statistics about the performance of a virtual machine (see Figure 7.3). Start your program, then start `jconsole` and pick your program from the list of running Java programs.

The console gives you a wealth of information about your running program. See [www.oracle.com/technetwork/articles/java/jconsole-1564139.html](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/articles/java/jconsole-1564139.html) for more information.

12. Java Mission Control is a professional-level profiling and diagnostics tool that is included with the Oracle JDK and is free to use for development purposes. A commercial license is required for use in production. An open source version will be a part of the OpenJDK at some point. Like `jconsole`, Java Mission Control can attach to a running virtual machine. It can also analyze the output from Java Flight Recorder, a tool that collects diagnostic and profiling data from a running Java application.

See <https://docs.oracle.com/javacomponents/index.html> for more information about these tools.



**Figure 7.3** The jconsole program

This chapter introduced you to exception handling and logging. You also saw useful hints for testing and debugging. The next two chapters cover generic programming and its most important application: the Java collections framework.

# Generic Programming

## In this chapter

- 8.1 Why Generic Programming?, page 432
- 8.2 Defining a Simple Generic Class, page 434
- 8.3 Generic Methods, page 437
- 8.4 Bounds for Type Variables, page 438
- 8.5 Generic Code and the Virtual Machine, page 441
- 8.6 Restrictions and Limitations, page 447
- 8.7 Inheritance Rules for Generic Types, page 457
- 8.8 Wildcard Types, page 459
- 8.9 Reflection and Generics, page 467

Generic classes and methods have type parameters. This allows them to describe precisely what should happen when they are instantiated with specific types. Prior to generic classes, programmers had to use the `Object` for writing code that works with multiple types. This was both cumbersome and unsafe.

With the introduction of generics, Java has an expressive type system that allows designers to describe in detail how types of variables and methods should vary. In straightforward situations, you will find it simple to implement generic code. In more advanced cases, it can get quite complex—for implementors. The goal is to provide classes and methods that other programmers can use without surprises.

The introduction of generics in Java 5 constitutes the most significant change in the Java programming language since its initial release. A major design goal was to be backwards compatible with earlier releases. As a result, Java generics have some uncomfortable limitations. You will learn about the benefits and challenges of generic programming in this chapter.

## 8.1 Why Generic Programming?

*Generic programming* means writing code that can be reused for objects of many different types. For example, you don't want to program separate classes to collect `String` and `File` objects. And you don't have to—the single class `ArrayList` collects objects of any class. This is one example of generic programming.

Actually, Java had an `ArrayList` class before it had generic classes. Let us investigate how the mechanism for generic programming has evolved, and what that means for users and implementors.

### 8.1.1 The Advantage of Type Parameters

Before generic classes were added to Java, generic programming was achieved with *inheritance*. The `ArrayList` class simply maintained an array of `Object` references:

```
public class ArrayList // before generic classes
{
    private Object[] elementData;
    ...
    public Object get(int i) { . . . }
    public void add(Object o) { . . . }
}
```

This approach has two problems. A cast is necessary whenever you retrieve a value:

```
ArrayList files = new ArrayList();
...
String filename = (String) files.get(0);
```

Moreover, there is no error checking. You can add values of any class:

```
files.add(new File("..."));
```

This call compiles and runs without error. Elsewhere, casting the result of `get` to a `String` will cause an error.

Generics offer a better solution: *type parameters*. The `ArrayList` class now has a type parameter that indicates the element type:

```
var files = new ArrayList<String>();
```

This makes your code easier to read. You can tell right away that this particular array list contains `String` objects.



**NOTE:** If you declare a variable with an explicit type instead of `var`, you can omit the type parameter in the constructor by using the “diamond” syntax:

```
ArrayList<String> files = new ArrayList<>();
```

The omitted type is inferred from the type of the variable.

Java 9 expands the use of the diamond syntax to situations where it was previously not accepted. For example, you can now use diamonds with anonymous subclasses:

```
ArrayList<String> passwords = new ArrayList<>() // diamond OK in Java 9
{
    public String get(int n) { return super.get(n).replaceAll(".", "*"); }
};
```

---

The compiler can make good use of the type information too. No cast is required for calling `get`. The compiler knows that the return type is `String`, not `Object`:

```
String filename = files.get(0);
```

The compiler also knows that the `add` method of an `ArrayList<String>` has a parameter of type `String`. That is a lot safer than having an `Object` parameter. Now the compiler can check that you don't insert objects of the wrong type. For example, the statement

```
files.add(new File("...")); // can only add String objects to an ArrayList<String>
```

will not compile. A compiler error is much better than a class cast exception at runtime.

This is the appeal of type parameters: They make your programs easier to read and safer.

### 8.1.2 Who Wants to Be a Generic Programmer?

It is easy to use a generic class such as `ArrayList`. Most Java programmers will simply use types such as `ArrayList<String>` as if they had been built into the

language, just like `String[]` arrays. (Of course, array lists are better than arrays because they can expand automatically.)

However, it is not so easy to implement a generic class. The programmers who use your code will want to plug in all sorts of classes for your type parameters. They will expect everything to work without onerous restrictions and confusing error messages. Your job as a generic programmer, therefore, is to anticipate all the potential future uses of your class.

How hard can this get? Here is a typical issue that the designers of the standard class library had to grapple with. The `ArrayList` class has a method `addAll` to add all elements of another collection. A programmer may want to add all elements from an `ArrayList<Manager>` to an `ArrayList<Employee>`. But, of course, doing it the other way round should not be legal. How do you allow one call and disallow the other? The Java language designers invented an ingenious new concept, the *wildcard type*, to solve this problem. Wildcard types are rather abstract, but they allow a library builder to make methods as flexible as possible.

Generic programming falls into three skill levels. At a basic level, you just use generic classes—typically, collections such as `ArrayList`—without thinking how and why they work. Most application programmers will want to stay at that level until something goes wrong. You may, however, encounter a confusing error message when mixing different generic classes, or when interfacing with legacy code that knows nothing about type parameters; at that point, you'll need to learn enough about Java generics to solve problems systematically rather than through random tinkering. Finally, of course, you may want to implement your own generic classes and methods.

Application programmers probably won't write lots of generic code. The JDK developers have already done the heavy lifting and supplied type parameters for all the collection classes. As a rule of thumb, only code that traditionally involved lots of casts from very general types (such as `Object` or the `Comparable` interface) will benefit from using type parameters.

In this chapter, we will show you everything you need to know to implement your own generic code. However, we expect that most readers will use this knowledge primarily for help with troubleshooting and to satisfy their curiosity about the inner workings of the parameterized collection classes.

## 8.2 Defining a Simple Generic Class

A *generic class* is a class with one or more type variables. In this chapter, we will use a simple `Pair` class as an example. This class allows us to focus on

generics without being distracted by data storage details. Here is the code for the generic `Pair` class:

```
public class Pair<T>
{
    private T first;
    private T second;

    public Pair() { first = null; second = null; }
    public Pair(T first, T second) { this.first = first; this.second = second; }

    public T getFirst() { return first; }
    public T getSecond() { return second; }

    public void setFirst(T newValue) { first = newValue; }
    public void setSecond(T newValue) { second = newValue; }
}
```

The `Pair` class introduces a type variable `T`, enclosed in angle brackets `< >`, after the class name. A generic class can have more than one type variable. For example, we could have defined the `Pair` class with separate types for the first and second field:

```
public class Pair<T, U> { . . . }
```

The type variables are used throughout the class definition to specify method return types and the types of fields and local variables. For example:

```
private T first; // uses the type variable
```



**NOTE:** It is common practice to use uppercase letters for type variables, and to keep them short. The Java library uses the variable `E` for the element type of a collection, `K` and `V` for key and value types of a table, and `T` (and the neighboring letters `U` and `S`, if necessary) for “any type at all.”

You *instantiate* the generic type by substituting types for the type variables, such as

```
Pair<String>
```

You can think of the result as an ordinary class with constructors

```
Pair<String>()
Pair<String>(String, String)
```

and methods

```
String getFirst()
String getSecond()
```

```
void setFirst(String)
void setSecond(String)
```

In other words, the generic class acts as a factory for ordinary classes.

The program in Listing 8.1 puts the `Pair` class to work. The static `minmax` method traverses an array and simultaneously computes the minimum and maximum values. It uses a `Pair` object to return both results. Recall that the `compareTo` method compares two strings, returning 0 if the strings are identical, a negative integer if the first string comes before the second in dictionary order, and a positive integer otherwise.



**C++ NOTE:** Superficially, generic classes in Java are similar to template classes in C++. The only obvious difference is that Java has no special template keyword. However, as you will see throughout this chapter, there are substantial differences between these two mechanisms.

---

### **Listing 8.1** pair1/PairTest1.java

```
1 package pair1;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.01 2012-01-26
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6  */
7 public class PairTest1
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11         String[] words = { "Mary", "had", "a", "little", "lamb" };
12         Pair<String> mm = ArrayAlg.minmax(words);
13         System.out.println("min = " + mm.getFirst());
14         System.out.println("max = " + mm.getSecond());
15     }
16 }
17
18 class ArrayAlg
19 {
20     /**
21      * Gets the minimum and maximum of an array of strings.
22      * @param a an array of strings
23      * @return a pair with the min and max values, or null if a is null or empty
24      */
25     public static Pair<String> minmax(String[] a)
26     {
27         if (a == null || a.length == 0) return null;
28         String min = a[0];
```

```
29     String max = a[0];
30     for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
31     {
32         if (min.compareTo(a[i]) > 0) min = a[i];
33         if (max.compareTo(a[i]) < 0) max = a[i];
34     }
35     return new Pair<>(min, max);
36 }
37 }
```

---

## 8.3 Generic Methods

In the preceding section, you have seen how to define a generic class. You can also define a single method with type parameters.

```
class ArrayAlg
{
    public static <T> T getMiddle(T... a)
    {
        return a[a.length / 2];
    }
}
```

This method is defined inside an ordinary class, not inside a generic class. However, it is a generic method, as you can see from the angle brackets and the type variable. Note that the type variables are inserted after the modifiers (public static, in our case) and before the return type.

You can define generic methods both inside ordinary classes and inside generic classes.

When you call a generic method, you can place the actual types, enclosed in angle brackets, before the method name:

```
String middle = ArrayAlg.<String>getMiddle("John", "Q.", "Public");
```

In this case (and indeed in most cases), you can omit the `<String>` type parameter from the method call. The compiler has enough information to infer the method that you want. It matches the type of the arguments against the generic type `T...` and deduces that `T` must be `String`. That is, you can simply call

```
String middle = ArrayAlg.getMiddle("John", "Q.", "Public");
```

In almost all cases, type inference for generic methods works smoothly. Occasionally, the compiler gets it wrong, and you'll need to decipher an error report. Consider this example:

```
double middle = ArrayAlg.getMiddle(3.14, 1729, 0);
```

The error message complains, in cryptic terms that vary from one compiler version to another, that there are two ways of interpreting this code, both equally valid. In a nutshell, the compiler autoboxed the parameters into a Double and two Integer objects, and then it tried to find a common supertype of these classes. It actually found two: Number and the Comparable interface, which is itself a generic type. In this case, the remedy is to write all parameters as double values.



**TIP:** Peter von der Ahé recommends this trick if you want to see which type the compiler infers for a generic method call: Purposefully introduce an error and study the resulting error message. For example, consider the call `ArrayAlg.getMiddle("Hello", 0, null)`. Assign the result to a JButton, which can't possibly be right. You will get an error report:

```
found:  
java.lang.Object&java.io.Serializable&java.lang.Comparable<? extends  
java.lang.Object&java.io.Serializable&java.lang.Comparable<?>>
```

In plain English, you can assign the result to Object, Serializable, or Comparable.

---



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, you place the type parameters after the method name. That can lead to nasty parsing ambiguities. For example, `g(f<a,b>(c))` can mean “call g with the result of `f<a,b>(c)`”, or “call g with the two boolean values `f<a` and `b>(c)`”.

---

## 8.4 Bounds for Type Variables

Sometimes, a class or a method needs to place restrictions on type variables. Here is a typical example. We want to compute the smallest element of an array:

```
class ArrayAlg  
{  
    public static <T> T min(T[] a) // almost correct  
    {  
        if (a == null || a.length == 0) return null;  
        T smallest = a[0];  
        for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)  
            if (smallest.compareTo(a[i]) > 0) smallest = a[i];  
        return smallest;  
    }  
}
```

But there is a problem. Look inside the code of the `min` method. The variable `smallest` has type `T`, which means it could be an object of an arbitrary class. How do we know that the class to which `T` belongs has a `compareTo` method?

The solution is to restrict `T` to a class that implements the `Comparable` interface—a standard interface with a single method, `compareTo`. You can achieve this by giving a *bound* for the type variable `T`:

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T min(T[] a) . . .
```

Actually, the `Comparable` interface is itself a generic type. For now, we will ignore that complexity and the warnings that the compiler generates. Section 8.8, “Wildcard Types,” on p. 459 discusses how to properly use type parameters with the `Comparable` interface.

Now, the generic `min` method can only be called with arrays of classes that implement the `Comparable` interface, such as `String`, `LocalDate`, and so on. Calling `min` with a `Rectangle` array is a compile-time error because the `Rectangle` class does not implement `Comparable`.



**C++ NOTE:** In C++, you cannot restrict the types of template parameters. If a programmer instantiates a template with an inappropriate type, an (often obscure) error message is reported inside the template code.

---

You may wonder why we use the `extends` keyword rather than the `implements` keyword in this situation—after all, `Comparable` is an interface. The notation

```
<T extends BoundingType>
```

expresses that `T` should be a *subtype* of the bounding type. Both `T` and the bounding type can be either a class or an interface. The `extends` keyword was chosen because it is a reasonable approximation of the subtype concept, and the Java designers did not want to add a new keyword (such as `sub`) to the language.

A type variable or wildcard can have multiple bounds. For example:

```
T extends Comparable & Serializable
```

The bounding types are separated by ampersands (`&`) because commas are used to separate type variables.

As with Java inheritance, you can have as many interface supertypes as you like, but at most one of the bounds can be a class. If you have a class as a bound, it must be the first one in the bounds list.

In the next sample program (Listing 8.2), we rewrite the `minmax` method to be generic. The method computes the minimum and maximum of a generic array, returning a `Pair<T>`.

**Listing 8.2** pair2/PairTest2.java

```
1 package pair2;
2
3 import java.time.*;
4
5 /**
6  * @version 1.02 2015-06-21
7  * @author Cay Horstmann
8  */
9 public class PairTest2
10 {
11     public static void main(String[] args)
12     {
13         LocalDate[] birthdays =
14             {
15                 LocalDate.of(1906, 12, 9), // G. Hopper
16                 LocalDate.of(1815, 12, 10), // A. Lovelace
17                 LocalDate.of(1903, 12, 3), // J. von Neumann
18                 LocalDate.of(1910, 6, 22), // K. Zuse
19             };
20         Pair<LocalDate> mm = ArrayAlg.minmax(birthdays);
21         System.out.println("min = " + mm.getFirst());
22         System.out.println("max = " + mm.getSecond());
23     }
24 }
25
26 class ArrayAlg
27 {
28     /**
29      Gets the minimum and maximum of an array of objects of type T.
30      @param a an array of objects of type T
31      @return a pair with the min and max values, or null if a is null or empty
32     */
33     public static <T extends Comparable> Pair<T> minmax(T[] a)
34     {
35         if (a == null || a.length == 0) return null;
36         T min = a[0];
37         T max = a[0];
38         for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
39         {
40             if (min.compareTo(a[i]) > 0) min = a[i];
41             if (max.compareTo(a[i]) < 0) max = a[i];
42         }
43     }
44 }
```

```
43     return new Pair<>(min, max);
44 }
45 }
```

## 8.5 Generic Code and the Virtual Machine

The virtual machine does not have objects of generic types—all objects belong to ordinary classes. An earlier version of the generics implementation was even able to compile a program that used generics into class files that executed on 1.0 virtual machines! In the following sections, you will see how the compiler “erases” type parameters, and what implication that process has for Java programmers.

### 8.5.1 Type Erasure

Whenever you define a generic type, a corresponding *raw* type is automatically provided. The name of the raw type is simply the name of the generic type, with the type parameters removed. The type variables are *erased* and replaced by their bounding types (or `Object` for variables without bounds).

For example, the raw type for `Pair<T>` looks like this:

```
public class Pair
{
    private Object first;
    private Object second;

    public Pair(Object first, Object second)
    {
        this.first = first;
        this.second = second;
    }

    public Object getFirst() { return first; }
    public Object getSecond() { return second; }

    public void setFirst(Object newValue) { first = newValue; }
    public void setSecond(Object newValue) { second = newValue; }
}
```

Since `T` is an unbounded type variable, it is simply replaced by `Object`.

The result is an ordinary class, just as you might have implemented it before generics were added to Java.

Your programs may contain different kinds of `Pair`, such as `Pair<String>` or `Pair<LocalDate>`, but erasure turns them all into raw `Pair` types.



**C++ NOTE:** In this regard, Java generics are very different from C++ templates. C++ produces different types for each template instantiation—a phenomenon called “template code bloat.” Java does not suffer from this problem.

---

The raw type replaces type variables with the first bound, or `Object` if no bounds are given. For example, the type variable in the class `Pair<T>` has no explicit bounds, hence the raw type replaces `T` with `Object`. Suppose we declare a slightly different type:

```
public class Interval<T extends Comparable & Serializable> implements Serializable
{
    private T lower;
    private T upper;
    .
    .
    public Interval(T first, T second)
    {
        if (first.compareTo(second) <= 0) { lower = first; upper = second; }
        else { lower = second; upper = first; }
    }
}
```

The raw type `Interval` looks like this:

```
public class Interval implements Serializable
{
    private Comparable lower;
    private Comparable upper;
    .
    .
    public Interval(Comparable first, Comparable second) { . . . }
}
```



**NOTE:** You may wonder what happens if you switch the bounds: `class Interval<T extends Serializable & Comparable>`. In that case, the raw type replaces `T` with `Serializable`, and the compiler inserts casts to `Comparable` when necessary. For efficiency, you should therefore put tagging interfaces (that is, interfaces without methods) at the end of the bounds list.

---

### 8.5.2 Translating Generic Expressions

When you program a call to a generic method, the compiler inserts casts when the return type has been erased. For example, consider the sequence of statements

```
Pair<Employee> buddies = . . .;
Employee buddy = buddies.getFirst();
```

The erasure of `getFirst` has return type `Object`. The compiler automatically inserts the cast to `Employee`. That is, the compiler translates the method call into two virtual machine instructions:

- A call to the raw method `Pair.getFirst`
- A cast of the returned `Object` to the type `Employee`

Casts are also inserted when you access a generic field. Suppose the `first` and `second` fields of the `Pair` class were public. (Not a good programming style, perhaps, but it is legal Java.) Then the expression

```
Employee buddy = buddies.first;
```

also has a cast inserted in the resulting bytecodes.

### 8.5.3 Translating Generic Methods

Type erasure also happens for generic methods. Programmers usually think of a generic method such as

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T min(T[] a)
```

as a whole family of methods, but after erasure, only a single method is left:

```
public static Comparable min(Comparable[] a)
```

Note that the type parameter `T` has been erased, leaving only its bounding type `Comparable`.

Erasure of methods brings up a couple of complexities. Consider this example:

```
class DateInterval extends Pair<LocalDate>
{
    public void setSecond(LocalDate second)
    {
        if (second.compareTo(getFirst()) >= 0)
            super.setSecond(second);
    }
    ...
}
```

A date interval is a pair of `LocalDate` objects, and we'll want to override the methods to ensure that the second value is never smaller than the first. This class is erased to

```
class DateInterval extends Pair // after erasure
{
    public void setSecond(LocalDate second) { . . . }
    ...
}
```

Perhaps surprisingly, there is another `setSecond` method, inherited from `Pair`, namely

```
public void setSecond(Object second)
```

This is clearly a different method because it has a parameter of a different type—`Object` instead of `LocalDate`. But it *shouldn't* be different. Consider this sequence of statements:

```
var interval = new DateInterval(...);
Pair<LocalDate> pair = interval; // OK--assignment to superclass
pair.setSecond(aDate);
```

Our expectation is that the call to `setSecond` is polymorphic and that the appropriate method is called. Since `pair` refers to a `DateInterval` object, that should be `DateInterval.setSecond`. The problem is that the type erasure interferes with polymorphism. To fix this problem, the compiler generates a *bridge method* in the `DateInterval` class:

```
public void setSecond(Object second) { setSecond((LocalDate) second); }
```

To see why this works, let us carefully follow the execution of the statement

```
pair.setSecond(aDate)
```

The variable `pair` has declared type `Pair<LocalDate>`, and that type only has a single method called `setSecond`, namely `setSecond(Object)`. The virtual machine calls that method on the object to which `pair` refers. That object is of type `DateInterval`. Therefore, the method `DateInterval.setSecond(Object)` is called. That method is the synthesized bridge method. It calls `DateInterval.setSecond(LocalDate)`, which is what we want.

Bridge methods can get even stranger. Suppose the `DateInterval` class also overrides the `getSecond` method:

```
class DateInterval extends Pair<LocalDate>
{
    public LocalDate getSecond() { return (LocalDate) super.getSecond(); }
    ...
}
```

In the `DateInterval` class, there are two `getSecond` methods:

```
LocalDate getSecond() // defined in DateInterval
Object getSecond() // overrides the method defined in Pair to call the first method
```

You could not write Java code like that; it would be illegal to have two methods with the same parameter types—here, with no parameters. However, in the virtual machine, the parameter types *and the return type* specify a method. Therefore, the compiler can produce bytecodes for two methods that differ

only in their return type, and the virtual machine will handle this situation correctly.



**NOTE:** Bridge methods are not limited to generic types. We already noted in Chapter 5 that it is legal for a method to specify a more restrictive return type when overriding another method. For example:

```
public class Employee implements Cloneable
{
    public Employee clone() throws CloneNotSupportedException { . . . }
```

The `Object.clone` and `Employee.clone` methods are said to have *covariant return types*.

Actually, the `Employee` class has *two* `clone` methods:

```
Employee clone() // defined above
Object clone() // synthesized bridge method, overrides Object.clone
```

The synthesized bridge method calls the newly defined method.

---

In summary, you need to remember these facts about translation of Java generics:

- There are no generics in the virtual machine, only ordinary classes and methods.
- All type parameters are replaced by their bounds.
- Bridge methods are synthesized to preserve polymorphism.
- Casts are inserted as necessary to preserve type safety.

#### 8.5.4 Calling Legacy Code

When Java generics were designed, a major goal was to allow interoperability between generics and legacy code. Let us look at a concrete example of such legacy. The Swing user interface toolkit provides a `JSlider` class whose “ticks” can be customized with labels that contain text or images. The labels are set with the call

```
void setLabelTable(Dictionary table)
```

The `Dictionary` class maps integers to labels. Before Java 5, that class was implemented as a map of `Object` instances. Java 5 made `Dictionary` into a generic class, but `JSlider` was never updated. At this point, `Dictionary` without type parameters is a raw type. This is where compatibility comes in.

When you populate the dictionary, you can use the generic type.

```
Dictionary<Integer, Component> labelTable = new Hashtable<>();  
labelTable.put(0, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("nine.gif")));  
labelTable.put(20, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("ten.gif")));  
...
```

When you pass the `Dictionary<Integer, Component>` object to `setLabelTable`, the compiler issues a warning.

```
slider.setLabelTable(labelTable); // warning
```

After all, the compiler has no assurance about what the `setLabelTable` might do to the `Dictionary` object. That method might replace all the keys with strings. That breaks the guarantee that the keys have type `Integer`, and future operations may cause bad cast exceptions.

You should ponder it and ask what the `JSlider` is actually going to do with this `Dictionary` object. In our case, it is pretty clear that the `JSlider` only reads the information, so we can ignore the warning.

Now consider the opposite case, in which you get an object of a raw type from a legacy class. You can assign it to a variable whose type uses generics, but of course you will get a warning. For example:

```
Dictionary<Integer, Components> labelTable = slider.getLabelTable(); // warning
```

That's OK—review the warning and make sure that the label table really contains `Integer` and `Component` objects. Of course, there never is an absolute guarantee. A malicious coder might have installed a different `Dictionary` in the slider. But again, the situation is no worse than it was before generics. In the worst case, your program will throw an exception.

After you are done pondering the warning, you can use an *annotation* to make it disappear. You can annotate a local variable:

```
@SuppressWarnings("unchecked")  
Dictionary<Integer, Components> labelTable = slider.getLabelTable(); // no warning
```

Or you can annotate an entire method, like this:

```
@SuppressWarnings("unchecked")  
public void configureSlider() { . . . }
```

This annotation turns off checking for all code inside the method.

## 8.6 Restrictions and Limitations

In the following sections, we discuss a number of restrictions that you need to consider when working with Java generics. Most of these restrictions are a consequence of type erasure.

### 8.6.1 Type Parameters Cannot Be Instantiated with Primitive Types

You cannot substitute a primitive type for a type parameter. Thus, there is no `Pair<double>`, only `Pair<Double>`. The reason is, of course, type erasure. After erasure, the `Pair` class has fields of type `Object`, and you can't use them to store `double` values.

This is an annoyance, to be sure, but it is consistent with the separate status of primitive types in the Java language. It is not a fatal flaw—there are only eight primitive types, and you can always handle them with separate classes and methods when wrapper types are not an acceptable substitute.

### 8.6.2 Runtime Type Inquiry Only Works with Raw Types

Objects in the virtual machine always have a specific nongeneric type. Therefore, all type inquiries yield only the raw type. For example,

```
if (a instanceof Pair<String>) // ERROR
```

could only test whether `a` is a `Pair` of any type. The same is true for the test

```
if (a instanceof Pair<T>) // ERROR
```

or the cast

```
Pair<String> p = (Pair<String>) a; // warning--can only test that a is a Pair
```

To remind you of the risk, you will get a compiler error (with `instanceof`) or warning (with casts) when you try to inquire whether an object belongs to a generic type.

In the same spirit, the `getClass` method always returns the raw type. For example:

```
Pair<String> stringPair = . . .;
Pair<Employee> employeePair = . . .;
if (stringPair.getClass() == employeePair.getClass()) // they are equal
```

The comparison yields `true` because both calls to `getClass` return `Pair.class`.

### 8.6.3 You Cannot Create Arrays of Parameterized Types

You cannot instantiate arrays of parameterized types, such as

```
var table = new Pair<String>[10]; // ERROR
```

What's wrong with that? After erasure, the type of `table` is `Pair[]`. You can convert it to `Object[]`:

```
Object[] objarray = table;
```

An array remembers its component type and throws an `ArrayStoreException` if you try to store an element of the wrong type:

```
objarray[0] = "Hello"; // ERROR--component type is Pair
```

But erasure renders this mechanism ineffective for generic types. The assignment

```
objarray[0] = new Pair<Employee>();
```

would pass the array store check but still result in a type error. For this reason, arrays of parameterized types are outlawed.

Note that only the creation of these arrays is outlawed. You can declare a variable of type `Pair<String>[]`. But you can't initialize it with a `new Pair<String>[10]`.



**NOTE:** You can declare arrays of wildcard types and then cast them:

```
var table = (Pair<String>[]) new Pair<?>[10];
```

The result is not safe. If you store a `Pair<Employee>` in `table[0]` and then call a `String` method on `table[0].getFirst()`, you get a `ClassCastException`.

---



**TIP:** If you need to collect parameterized type objects, simply use an `ArrayList`:  
`ArrayList<Pair<String>>` is safe and effective.

---

### 8.6.4 Varargs Warnings

In the preceding section, you saw that Java doesn't support arrays of generic types. In this section, we discuss a related issue: passing instances of a generic type to a method with a variable number of arguments.

Consider this simple method with variable arguments:

```
public static <T> void addAll(Collection<T> coll, T... ts)
{
    for (T t : ts) coll.add(t);
}
```

Recall that the parameter `ts` is actually an array that holds all supplied arguments.

Now consider this call:

```
Collection<Pair<String>> table = . . .;
Pair<String> pair1 = . . .;
Pair<String> pair2 = . . .;
addAll(table, pair1, pair2);
```

In order to call this method, the Java virtual machine must make an array of `Pair<String>`, which is against the rules. However, the rules have been relaxed for this situation, and you only get a warning, not an error.

You can suppress the warning in one of two ways. You can add the annotation `@SuppressWarnings("unchecked")` to the method containing the call to `addAll`. Or, as of Java 7, you can annotate the `addAll` method itself with `@SafeVarargs`:

```
@SafeVarargs
public static <T> void addAll(Collection<T> coll, T... ts)
```

This method can now be called with generic types. You can use this annotation for any methods that merely read the elements of the parameter array, which is bound to be the most common use case.

The `@SafeVarargs` can only be used with constructors and methods that are `static`, `final`, or (as of Java 9) `private`. Any other method could be overridden, making the annotation meaningless.



**NOTE:** You can use the `@SafeVarargs` annotation to defeat the restriction against generic array creation, using this method:

```
@SafeVarargs static <E> E[] array(E... array) { return array; }
```

Now you can call

```
Pair<String>[] table = array(pair1, pair2);
```

This seems convenient, but there is a hidden danger. The code

```
Object[] objarray = table;
objarray[0] = new Pair<Employee>();
```

will run without an `ArrayStoreException` (because the array store only checks the erased type), and you'll get an exception elsewhere when you work with `table[0]`.

### 8.6.5 You Cannot Instantiate Type Variables

You cannot use type variables in an expression such as `new T(. . .)`. For example, the following `Pair<T>` constructor is illegal:

```
public Pair() { first = new T(); second = new T(); } // ERROR
```

Type erasure would change `T` to `Object`, and surely you don't want to call `new Object()`.

The best workaround, available since Java 8, is to make the caller provide a constructor expression. For example:

```
Pair<String> p = Pair.makePair(String::new);
```

The `makePair` method receives a `Supplier<T>`, the functional interface for a function with no arguments and a result of type `T`:

```
public static <T> Pair<T> makePair(Supplier<T> constr)
{
    return new Pair<T>(constr.get(), constr.get());
}
```

A more traditional workaround is to construct generic objects through reflection, by calling the `Constructor.newInstance` method.

Unfortunately, the details are a bit complex. You cannot call

```
first = T.class.getConstructor().newInstance(); // ERROR
```

The expression `T.class` is not legal because it would erase to `Object.class`. Instead, you must design the API so that you are handed a `Class` object, like this:

```
public static <T> Pair<T> makePair(Class<T> cl)
{
    try {
        return new Pair<T>(cl.getConstructor().newInstance(),
                           cl.getConstructor().newInstance());
    }
    catch (Exception e) { return null; }
}
```

This method could be called as follows:

```
Pair<String> p = Pair.makePair(String.class);
```

Note that the `Class` class is itself generic. For example, `String.class` is an instance (indeed, the sole instance) of `Class<String>`. Therefore, the `makePair` method can infer the type of the pair that it is making.

### 8.6.6 You Cannot Construct a Generic Array

Just as you cannot instantiate a single generic instance, you cannot instantiate an array. The reasons are different—an array is, after all, filled with `null` values, which would seem safe to construct. But an array also carries a type, which is used to monitor array stores in the virtual machine. That type is erased. For example, consider

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T[] minmax(T... a)
{
    T[] mm = new T[2]; // ERROR
    ...
}
```

Type erasure would cause this method to always construct an array `Comparable[2]`.

If the array is only used as a private instance field of a class, you can declare the element type of the array to be the erased type and use casts. For example, the `ArrayList` class could be implemented as follows:

```
public class ArrayList<E>
{
    private Object[] elements;
    ...
    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked") public E get(int n) { return (E) elements[n]; }
    public void set(int n, E e) { elements[n] = e; } // no cast needed
}
```

The actual implementation is not quite as clean:

```
public class ArrayList<E>
{
    private E[] elements;
    ...
    public ArrayList() { elements = (E[]) new Object[10]; }
}
```

Here, the cast `E[]` is an outright lie, but type erasure makes it undetectable.

This technique does not work for our `minmax` method since we are returning a `T[]` array, and a runtime error results if we lie about its type. Suppose we implement

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T[] minmax(T... a)
{
    var result = new Comparable[2]; // array of erased type
    ...
    return (T[]) result; // compiles with warning
}
```

The call

```
String[] names = ArrayAlg.minmax("Tom", "Dick", "Harry");
```

compiles without any warning. A `ClassCastException` occurs when the `Comparable[]` reference is cast to `String[]` after the method returns.

In this situation, it is best to ask the user to provide an array constructor expression:

```
String[] names = ArrayAlg.minmax(String[]::new, "Tom", "Dick", "Harry");
```

The constructor expression `String[]::new` denotes a function that, given the desired length, constructs a `String` array of that length.

The method uses that parameter to produce an array of the correct type:

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T[] minmax(IntFunction<T[]> constr, T... a)
{
    T[] result = constr.apply(2);
    ...
}
```

A more old-fashioned approach is to use reflection and call `Array.newInstance`:

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T[] minmax(T... a)
{
    var result = (T[]) Array.newInstance(a.getClass().getComponentType(), 2);
    ...
}
```

The `toArray` method of the `ArrayList` class is not so lucky. It needs to produce a `T[]` array, but it doesn't have the component type. Therefore, there are two variants:

```
Object[] toArray()
T[] toArray(T[] result)
```

The second method receives an array parameter. If the array is large enough, it is used. Otherwise, a new array of sufficient size is created, using the component type of `result`.

### 8.6.7 Type Variables Are Not Valid in Static Contexts of Generic Classes

You cannot reference type variables in static fields or methods. For example, the following clever idea won't work:

```
public class Singleton<T>
{
    private static T singleInstance; // ERROR

    public static T getSingleInstance() // ERROR
    {
```

```
    if (singleInstance == null) construct new instance of T
    return singleInstance;
}
}
```

If this could be done, then a program could declare a `Singleton<Random>` to share a random number generator and a `Singleton<JFileChooser>` to share a file chooser dialog. But it can't work. After type erasure there is only one `Singleton` class, and only one `singleInstance` field. For that reason, static fields and methods with type variables are simply outlawed.

### 8.6.8 You Cannot Throw or Catch Instances of a Generic Class

You can neither throw nor catch objects of a generic class. In fact, it is not even legal for a generic class to extend `Throwable`. For example, the following definition will not compile:

```
public class Problem<T> extends Exception { /* . . . */ }
// ERROR--can't extend Throwable
```

You cannot use a type variable in a catch clause. For example, the following method will not compile:

```
public static <T extends Throwable> void doWork(Class<T> t)
{
    try
    {
        do work
    }
    catch (T e) // ERROR--can't catch type variable
    {
        Logger.getGlobal().info(. . .);
    }
}
```

However, it is OK to use type variables in exception specifications. The following method is legal:

```
public static <T extends Throwable> void doWork(T t) throws T // OK
{
    try
    {
        do work
    }
    catch (Throwable realCause)
    {
        t.initCause(realCause);
        throw t;
    }
}
```

### 8.6.9 You Can Defeat Checked Exception Checking

A bedrock principle of Java exception handling is that you must provide a handler for all checked exceptions. You can use generics to defeat this scheme. The key ingredient is this method:

```
@SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
static <T extends Throwable> void throwAs(Throwable t) throws T
{
    throw (T) t;
}
```

Suppose this method is contained in an interface Task. When you have a checked exception e and call

```
Task.<RuntimeException>throwAs(e);
```

then the compiler will believe that e becomes an unchecked exception. The following turns all exceptions into those that the compiler believes to be unchecked:

```
try
{
    do work
}
catch (Throwable t)
{
    Task.<RuntimeException>throwAs(t);
}
```

Let's use this to solve a vexing problem. To run code in a thread, you have to place it into the run method of a class that implements the Runnable interface. But that method is not allowed to throw checked exceptions. We will provide an adaptor from a Task, whose run method is allowed to throw arbitrary exceptions, to a Runnable:

```
interface Task
{
    void run() throws Exception;

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    static <T extends Throwable> void throwAs(Throwable t) throws T
    {
        throw (T) t;
    }

    static Runnable asRunnable(Task task)
    {
        return () ->
        {
```

```
try
{
    task.run();
}
catch (Exception e)
{
    Task.<RuntimeException>throwAs(e);
}
};

}

}
```

For example, this program runs a thread that will throw a checked exception:

```
public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        var thread = new Thread(Task.asRunnable(() ->
        {
            Thread.sleep(1000);
            System.out.println("Hello, World!");
            throw new Exception("Check this out!");
        }));
        thread.start();
    }
}
```

The `Thread.sleep` method is declared to throw an `InterruptedException`, and we no longer have to catch it. Since we don't interrupt the thread, that exception won't be thrown. However, the program throws a checked exception. When you run the program, you will get a stack trace.

What's so remarkable about that? Normally, you have to catch all checked exceptions inside the `run` method of a `Runnable` and *wrap them* into unchecked exceptions—the `run` method is declared to throw no checked exceptions.

But here, we don't wrap. We simply throw the exception, tricking the compiler into believing that it is not a checked exception.

Using generic classes, erasure, and the `@SuppressWarnings` annotation, we were able to defeat an essential part of the Java type system.

### 8.6.10 Beware of Clashes after Erasure

It is illegal to create conditions that cause clashes when generic types are erased. Here is an example. Suppose we add an `equals` method to the `Pair` class, like this:

```
public class Pair<T>
{
    public boolean equals(T value) { return first.equals(value) && second.equals(value); }
    ...
}
```

Consider a `Pair<String>`. Conceptually, it has two `equals` methods:

```
boolean equals(String) // defined in Pair<T>
boolean equals(Object) // inherited from Object
```

But the intuition leads us astray. The erasure of the method

```
boolean equals(T)
```

is

```
boolean equals(Object)
```

which clashes with the `Object.equals` method.

The remedy is, of course, to rename the offending method.

The generics specification cites another rule: “To support translation by erasure, we impose the restriction that a class or type variable may not at the same time be a subtype of two interface types which are different parameterizations of the same interface.” For example, the following is illegal:

```
class Employee implements Comparable<Employee> { . . . }
class Manager extends Employee implements Comparable<Manager> { . . . } // ERROR
```

`Manager` would then implement both `Comparable<Employee>` and `Comparable<Manager>`, which are different parameterizations of the same interface.

It is not obvious what this restriction has to do with type erasure. After all, the nongeneric version

```
class Employee implements Comparable { . . . }
class Manager extends Employee implements Comparable { . . . }
```

is legal. The reason is far more subtle. There would be a conflict with the synthesized bridge methods. A class that implements `Comparable<X>` gets a bridge method

```
public int compareTo(Object other) { return compareTo((X) other); }
```

You cannot have two such methods for different types `X`.

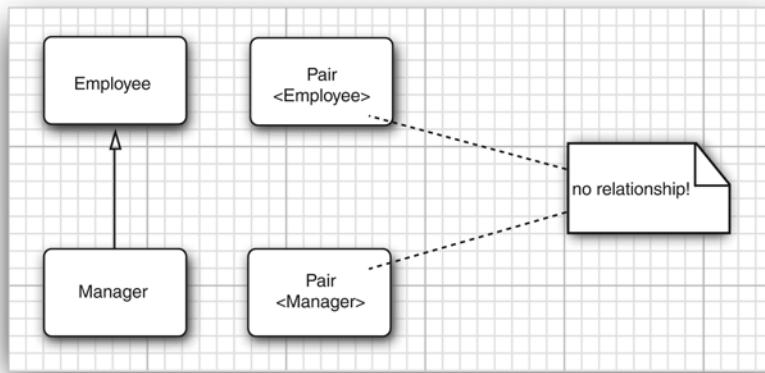
## 8.7 Inheritance Rules for Generic Types

When you work with generic classes, you need to learn a few rules about inheritance and subtypes. Let's start with a situation which many programmers find unintuitive. Consider a class and a subclass, such as `Employee` and `Manager`. Is `Pair<Manager>` a subclass of `Pair<Employee>`? Perhaps surprisingly, the answer is "no." For example, the following code will not compile:

```
Manager[] topHonchos = . . .;
Pair<Employee> result = ArrayAlg.minmax(topHonchos); // ERROR
```

The `minmax` method returns a `Pair<Manager>`, not a `Pair<Employee>`, and it is illegal to assign one to the other.

In general, there is *no* relationship between `Pair<S>` and `Pair<T>`, no matter how `S` and `T` are related (see Figure 8.1).



**Figure 8.1** No inheritance relationship between pair classes

This seems like a cruel restriction, but it is necessary for type safety. Suppose we were allowed to convert a `Pair<Manager>` to a `Pair<Employee>`. Consider this code:

```
var managerBuddies = new Pair<Manager>(ceo, cfo);
Pair<Employee> employeeBuddies = managerBuddies; // illegal, but suppose it wasn't
employeeBuddies.setFirst(lowlyEmployee);
```

Clearly, the last statement is legal. But `employeeBuddies` and `managerBuddies` refer to the *same object*. We now managed to pair up the CFO with a lowly employee, which should not be possible for a `Pair<Manager>`.



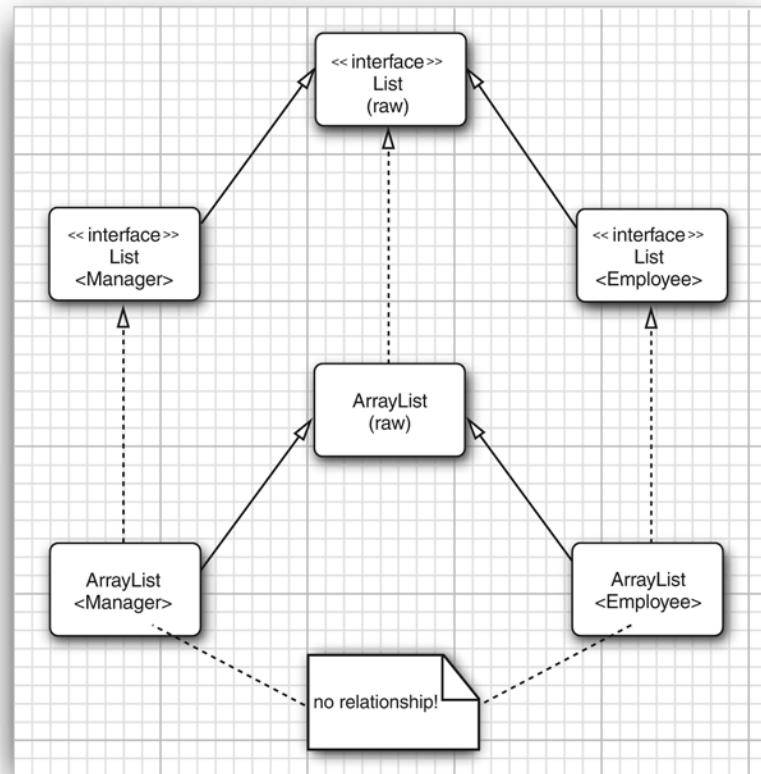
**NOTE:** You just saw an important difference between generic types and Java arrays. You can assign a `Manager[]` array to a variable of type `Employee[]`:

```
Manager[] managerBuddies = { ceo, cfo };
Employee[] employeeBuddies = managerBuddies; // OK
```

However, arrays come with special protection. If you try to store a lowly employee into `employeeBuddies[0]`, the virtual machine throws an `ArrayStoreException`.

---

You can always convert a parameterized type to a raw type. For example, `Pair<Employee>` is a subtype of the raw type `Pair`. This conversion is necessary for interfacing with legacy code.



**Figure 8.2** Subtype relationships among generic list types

Can you convert to the raw type and then cause a type error? Unfortunately, you can. Consider this example:

```
var managerBuddies = new Pair<Manager>(ceo, cfo);
Pair rawBuddies = managerBuddies; // OK
rawBuddies.setFirst(new File("...")); // only a compile-time warning
```

This sounds scary. However, keep in mind that you are no worse off than you were with older versions of Java. The security of the virtual machine is not at stake. When the foreign object is retrieved with `getFirst` and assigned to a `Manager` variable, a `ClassCastException` is thrown, just as in the good old days. You merely lose the added safety that generic programming normally provides.

Finally, generic classes can extend or implement other generic classes. In this regard, they are no different from ordinary classes. For example, the class `ArrayList<T>` implements the interface `List<T>`. That means an `ArrayList<Manager>` can be converted to a `List<Manager>`. However, as you just saw, an `ArrayList<Manager>` is *not* an `ArrayList<Employee>` or `List<Employee>`. Figure 8.2 shows these relationships.

## 8.8 Wildcard Types

It was known for some time among researchers of type systems that a rigid system of generic types is quite unpleasant to use. The Java designers invented an ingenious (but nevertheless safe) “escape hatch”: the *wildcard type*. The following sections show you how to work with wildcards.

### 8.8.1 The Wildcard Concept

In a wildcard type, a type parameter is allowed to vary. For example, the wildcard type

```
Pair<? extends Employee>
```

denotes any generic `Pair` type whose type parameter is a subclass of `Employee`, such as `Pair<Manager>`, but not `Pair<String>`.

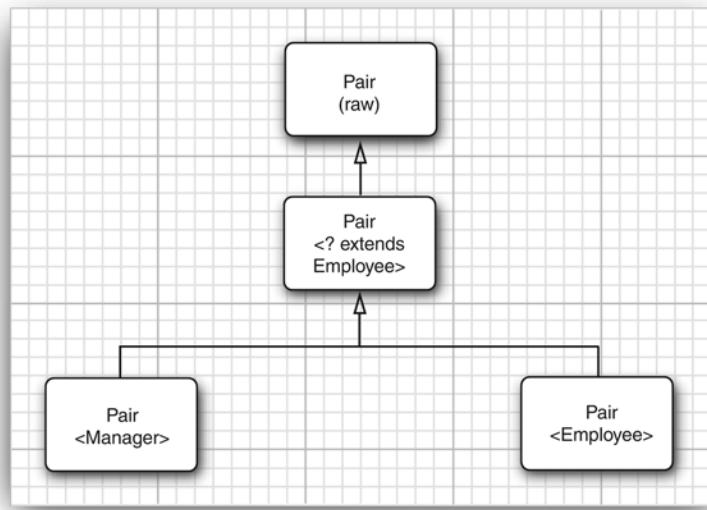
Let’s say you want to write a method that prints out pairs of employees, like this:

```
public static void printBuddies(Pair<Employee> p)
{
    Employee first = p.getFirst();
    Employee second = p.getSecond();
    System.out.println(first.getName() + " and " + second.getName() + " are buddies.");
}
```

As you saw in the preceding section, you cannot pass a `Pair<Manager>` to that method, which is rather limiting. But the solution is simple—use a wildcard type:

```
public static void printBuddies(Pair<? extends Employee> p)
```

The type `Pair<Manager>` is a subtype of `Pair<? extends Employee>` (see Figure 8.3).



**Figure 8.3** Subtype relationships with wildcards

Can we use wildcards to corrupt a `Pair<Manager>` through a `Pair<? extends Employee>` reference?

```
var managerBuddies = new Pair<Manager>(ceo, cfo);
Pair<? extends Employee> wildcardBuddies = managerBuddies; // OK
wildcardBuddies.setFirst(lowlyEmployee); // compile-time error
```

No corruption is possible. The call to `setFirst` is a type error. To see why, let us have a closer look at the type `Pair<? extends Employee>`. Its methods look like this:

```
? extends Employee getFirst()
void setFirst(? extends Employee)
```

This makes it impossible to call the `setFirst` method. The compiler only knows that it needs some subtype of `Employee`, but it doesn't know which type. It refuses to pass any specific type—after all, `?` might not match it.

We don't have this problem with `getFirst`: It is perfectly legal to assign the return value of `getFirst` to an `Employee` reference.

This is the key idea behind bounded wildcards. We now have a way of distinguishing between the safe accessor methods and the unsafe mutator methods.

### 8.8.2 Supertype Bounds for Wildcards

Wildcard bounds are similar to type variable bounds, but they have an added capability—you can specify a *supertype bound*, like this:

```
? super Manager
```

This wildcard is restricted to all supertypes of `Manager`. (It was a stroke of good luck that the existing `super` keyword describes the relationship so accurately.)

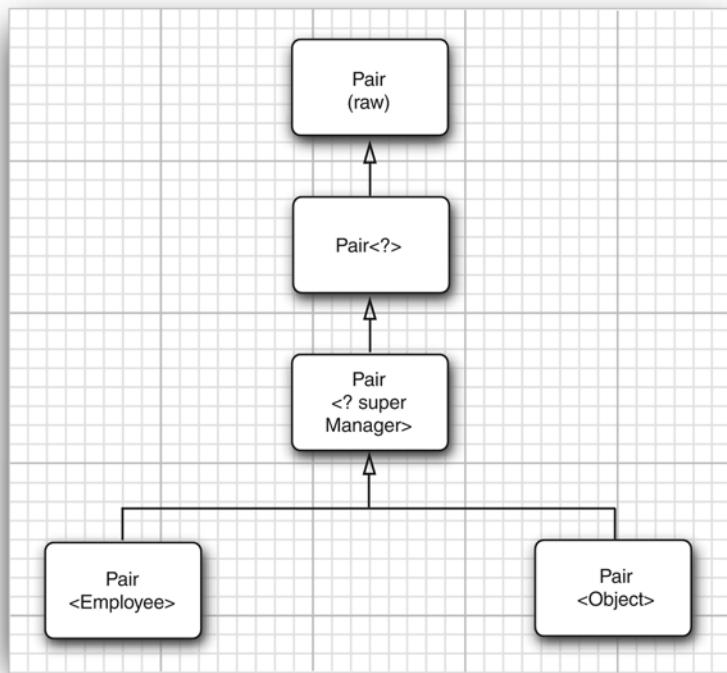
Why would you want to do this? A wildcard with a supertype bound gives you a behavior that is opposite to that of the wildcards described in Section 8.8, “Wildcard Types,” on p. 459. You can supply parameters to methods, but you can't use the return values. For example, `Pair<? super Manager>` has methods that can be described as follows:

```
void setFirst(? super Manager)
? super Manager getFirst()
```

This is not actual Java syntax, but it shows what the compiler knows. The compiler cannot know the exact type of the `setFirst` method and therefore cannot accept a call with an argument of type `Employee` or `Object`. It is only possible to pass an object of type `Manager` or a subtype such as `Executive`. Moreover, if you call `getFirst`, there is no guarantee about the type of the returned object. You can only assign it to an `Object`.

Here is a typical example. We have an array of managers and want to put the manager with the lowest and highest bonus into a `Pair` object. What kind of `Pair`? A `Pair<Employee>` should be fair game or, for that matter, a `Pair<Object>` (see Figure 8.4). The following method will accept any appropriate `Pair`:

```
public static void minmaxBonus(Manager[] a, Pair<? super Manager> result)
{
    if (a.length == 0) return;
    Manager min = a[0];
    Manager max = a[0];
    for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        if (min.getBonus() > a[i].getBonus()) min = a[i];
        if (max.getBonus() < a[i].getBonus()) max = a[i];
    }
}
```



**Figure 8.4** A wildcard with a supertype bound

```
        result.setFirst(min);
        result.setSecond(max);
    }
```

Intuitively speaking, wildcards with supertype bounds let you write to a generic object, while wildcards with subtype bounds let you read from a generic object.

Here is another use for supertype bounds. The `Comparable` interface is itself a generic type. It is declared as follows:

```
public interface Comparable<T>
{
    public int compareTo(T other);
}
```

Here, the type variable indicates the type of the other parameter. For example, the `String` class implements `Comparable<String>`, and its `compareTo` method is declared as

```
public int compareTo(String other)
```

This is nice—the explicit parameter has the correct type. Before the interface was generic, `other` was an `Object`, and a cast was necessary in the implementation of the method.

Now that `Comparable` is a generic type, perhaps we should have done a better job with the `minmax` method of the `ArrayAlg` class? We could have declared it as

```
public static <T extends Comparable<T>> Pair<T> minmax(T[] a)
```

This looks more thorough than just using `T extends Comparable`, and it would work fine for many classes. For example, if you compute the minimum of a `String` array, then `T` is the type `String`, and `String` is a subtype of `Comparable<String>`. But we run into a problem when processing an array of `LocalDate` objects. As it happens, `LocalDate` implements `ChronoLocalDate`, and `ChronoLocalDate` extends `Comparable<ChronoLocalDate>`. Thus, `LocalDate` implements `Comparable<ChronoLocalDate>` but *not* `Comparable<LocalDate>`.

In a situation such as this one, supertypes come to the rescue:

```
public static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> Pair<T> minmax(T[] a)
```

Now the `compareTo` method has the form

```
int compareTo(? super T)
```

Maybe it is declared to take an object of type `T`, or—for example, when `T` is `LocalDate`—a supertype of `T`. At any rate, it is safe to pass an object of type `T` to the `compareTo` method.

To the uninitiated, a declaration such as `<T extends Comparable<? super T>>` is bound to look intimidating. This is unfortunate, because the intent of this declaration is to help application programmers by removing unnecessary restrictions on the call parameters. Application programmers with no interest in generics will probably learn quickly to gloss over these declarations and just take for granted that library programmers will do the right thing. If you are a library programmer, you'll need to get used to wildcards, or your users will curse you and throw random casts at their code until it compiles.



**NOTE:** Another common use for supertype bounds is an argument type of a functional interface. For example, the `Collection` interface has a method

```
default boolean removeIf(Predicate<? super E> filter)
```

The method removes all elements that fulfill the given predicate. For example, if you hate employees with odd hash codes, you can remove them like this:

```
ArrayList<Employee> staff = . . .;
Predicate<Object> oddHashCode = obj -> obj.hashCode() % 2 != 0;
staff.removeIf(oddHashCode);
```

You want to be able to pass a `Predicate<Object>`, not just a `Predicate<Employee>`. The `super` wildcard makes that possible.

---

### 8.8.3 Unbounded Wildcards

You can even use wildcards with no bounds at all—for example, `Pair<?>`. At first glance, this looks identical to the raw `Pair` type. Actually, the types are very different. The type `Pair<?>` has methods such as

```
? getFirst()
void setFirst(?)
```

The return value of `getFirst` can only be assigned to an `Object`. The `setFirst` method can never be called, *not even with an Object*. That's the essential difference between `Pair<?>` and `Pair`: you can call the `setFirst` method of the raw `Pair` class with *any* `Object`.

---



**NOTE:** You can call `setFirst(null)`.

---

Why would you ever want such a wimpy type? It is useful for very simple operations. For example, the following method tests whether a pair contains a `null` reference. It never needs the actual type.

```
public static boolean hasNulls(Pair<?> p)
{
    return p.getFirst() == null || p.getSecond() == null;
}
```

You could have avoided the wildcard type by turning `hasNulls` into a generic method:

```
public static <T> boolean hasNulls(Pair<T> p)
```

However, the version with the wildcard type seems easier to read.

### 8.8.4 Wildcard Capture

Let us write a method that swaps the elements of a pair:

```
public static void swap(Pair<?> p)
```

A wildcard is not a type variable, so we can't write code that uses ? as a type. In other words, the following would be illegal:

```
? t = p.getFirst(); // ERROR
p.setFirst(p.getSecond());
p.setSecond(t);
```

That's a problem because we need to temporarily hold the first element when we do the swapping. Fortunately, there is an interesting solution to this problem. We can write a helper method, `swapHelper`, like this:

```
public static <T> void swapHelper(Pair<T> p)
{
    T t = p.getFirst();
    p.setFirst(p.getSecond());
    p.setSecond(t);
}
```

Note that `swapHelper` is a generic method, whereas `swap` is not—it has a fixed parameter of type `Pair<?>`.

Now we can call `swapHelper` from `swap`:

```
public static void swap(Pair<?> p) { swapHelper(p); }
```

In this case, the parameter `T` of the `swapHelper` method *captures the wildcard*. It isn't known what type the wildcard denotes, but it is a definite type, and the definition of `<T>swapHelper` makes perfect sense when `T` denotes that type.

Of course, in this case, we were not compelled to use a wildcard. We could have directly implemented `<T> void swap(Pair<T> p)` as a generic method without wildcards. However, consider this example in which a wildcard type occurs naturally in the middle of a computation:

```
public static void maxminBonus(Manager[] a, Pair<? super Manager> result)
{
    minmaxBonus(a, result);
    PairAlg.swapHelper(result); // OK--swapHelper captures wildcard type
}
```

Here, the wildcard capture mechanism cannot be avoided.

Wildcard capture is only legal in very limited circumstances. The compiler must be able to guarantee that the wildcard represents a single, definite type. For example, the `T` in `ArrayList<Pair<T>>` can never capture the wildcard in

`ArrayList<Pair<?>>`. The array list might hold two `Pair<?>`, each of which has a different type for `?`.

The test program in Listing 8.3 gathers up the various methods that we discussed in the preceding sections so you can see them in context.

---

**Listing 8.3** pair3/PairTest3.java

---

```
1 package pair3;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.01 2012-01-26
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6 */
7 public class PairTest3
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        var ceo = new Manager("Gus Greedy", 800000, 2003, 12, 15);
12        var cfo = new Manager("Sid Sneaky", 600000, 2003, 12, 15);
13        var buddies = new Pair<Manager>(ceo, cfo);
14        printBuddies(buddies);
15
16        ceo.setBonus(1000000);
17        cfo.setBonus(500000);
18        Manager[] managers = { ceo, cfo };
19
20        var result = new Pair<Employee>();
21        minmaxBonus(managers, result);
22        System.out.println("first: " + result.getFirst().getName()
23                           + ", second: " + result.getSecond().getName());
24        maxminBonus(managers, result);
25        System.out.println("first: " + result.getFirst().getName()
26                           + ", second: " + result.getSecond().getName());
27    }
28
29    public static void printBuddies(Pair<? extends Employee> p)
30    {
31        Employee first = p.getFirst();
32        Employee second = p.getSecond();
33        System.out.println(first.getName() + " and " + second.getName() + " are buddies.");
34    }
35
36    public static void minmaxBonus(Manager[] a, Pair<? super Manager> result)
37    {
38        if (a.length == 0) return;
39        Manager min = a[0];
40        Manager max = a[0];
```

```
41     for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
42     {
43         if (min.getBonus() > a[i].getBonus()) min = a[i];
44         if (max.getBonus() < a[i].getBonus()) max = a[i];
45     }
46     result.setFirst(min);
47     result.setSecond(max);
48 }
49
50 public static void maxminBonus(Manager[] a, Pair<? super Manager> result)
51 {
52     minmaxBonus(a, result);
53     PairAlg.swapHelper(result); // OK--swapHelper captures wildcard type
54 }
55 // can't write public static <T super manager> . . .
56 }
57
58 class PairAlg
59 {
60     public static boolean hasNulls(Pair<?> p)
61     {
62         return p.getFirst() == null || p.getSecond() == null;
63     }
64
65     public static void swap(Pair<?> p) { swapHelper(p); }
66
67     public static <T> void swapHelper(Pair<T> p)
68     {
69         T t = p.getFirst();
70         p.setFirst(p.getSecond());
71         p.setSecond(t);
72     }
73 }
```

## 8.9 Reflection and Generics

Reflection lets you analyze arbitrary objects at runtime. If the objects are instances of generic classes, you don't get much information about the generic type parameters because they have been erased. In the following sections, you will learn what you can nevertheless find out about generic classes with reflection.

### 8.9.1 The Generic Class Class

The `Class` class is now generic. For example, `String.class` is actually an object (in fact, the sole object) of the class `Class<String>`.

The type parameter is useful because it allows the methods of `Class<T>` to be more specific about their return types. The following methods of `Class<T>` take advantage of the type parameter:

```
T newInstance()
T cast(Object obj)
T[] getEnumConstants()
Class<? super T> getSuperclass()
Constructor<T> getConstructor(Class... parameterTypes)
Constructor<T> getDeclaredConstructor(Class... parameterTypes)
```

The `newInstance` method returns an instance of the class, obtained from the no-argument constructor. Its return type can now be declared to be `T`, the same type as the class that is being described by `Class<T>`. That saves a cast.

The `cast` method returns the given object, now declared as type `T` if its type is indeed a subtype of `T`. Otherwise, it throws a `BadCastException`.

The `getEnumConstants` method returns `null` if this class is not an `enum` class or an array of the enumeration values which are known to be of type `T`.

Finally, the `getConstructor` and `getDeclaredConstructor` methods return a `Constructor<T>` object. The `Constructor` class has also been made generic so that its `newInstance` method has the correct return type.

#### java.lang.Class<T> 1.0

- `T newInstance()`  
returns a new instance constructed with the no-argument constructor.
- `T cast(Object obj)`  
returns `obj` if it is `null` or can be converted to the type `T`, or throws a `BadCastException` otherwise.
- `T[] getEnumConstants() 5`  
returns an array of all values if `T` is an enumerated type, `null` otherwise.
- `Class<? super T> getSuperclass()`  
returns the superclass of this class, or `null` if `T` is not a class or the class `Object`.
- `Constructor<T> getConstructor(Class... parameterTypes) 1.1`
- `Constructor<T> getDeclaredConstructor(Class... parameterTypes) 1.1`  
gets the public constructor, or the constructor with the given parameter types.

**java.lang.reflect.Constructor<T> 1.1**

- `T newInstance(Object... parameters)`  
returns a new instance constructed with the given parameters.

### 8.9.2 Using Class<T> Parameters for Type Matching

It is sometimes useful to match the type variable of a `Class<T>` parameter in a generic method. Here is the canonical example:

```
public static <T> Pair<T> makePair(Class<T> c) throws InstantiationException,  
    IllegalAccessException  
{  
    return new Pair<T>(c.newInstance(), c.newInstance());  
}
```

If you call

```
makePair(Employee.class)
```

then `Employee.class` is an object of type `Class<Employee>`. The type parameter `T` of the `makePair` method matches `Employee`, and the compiler can infer that the method returns a `Pair<Employee>`.

### 8.9.3 Generic Type Information in the Virtual Machine

One of the notable features of Java generics is the erasure of generic types in the virtual machine. Perhaps surprisingly, the erased classes still retain some faint memory of their generic origin. For example, the raw `Pair` class knows that it originated from the generic class `Pair<T>`, even though an object of type `Pair` can't tell whether it was constructed as a `Pair<String>` or `Pair<Employee>`.

Similarly, consider a method

```
public static Comparable min(Comparable[] a)
```

that is the erasure of a generic method

```
public static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> T min(T[] a)
```

You can use the reflection API to determine that

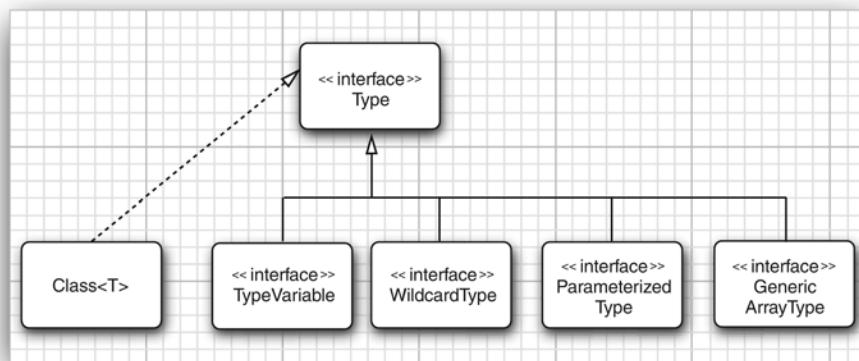
- The generic method has a type parameter called `T`;
- The type parameter has a subtype bound that is itself a generic type;
- The bounding type has a wildcard parameter;
- The wildcard parameter has a supertype bound; and
- The generic method has a generic array parameter.

In other words, you can reconstruct everything about generic classes and methods that their implementors declared. However, you won't know how the type parameters were resolved for specific objects or method calls.

In order to express generic type declarations, use the interface `Type` in the `java.lang.reflect` package. The interface has the following subtypes:

- The `Class` class, describing concrete types
- The `TypeVariable` interface, describing type variables (such as `T extends Comparable<? super T>`)
- The `WildcardType` interface, describing wildcards (such as `? super T`)
- The `ParameterizedType` interface, describing generic class or interface types (such as `Comparable<? super T>`)
- The `GenericArrayType` interface, describing generic arrays (such as `T[]`)

Figure 8.5 shows the inheritance hierarchy. Note that the last four subtypes are interfaces—the virtual machine instantiates suitable classes that implement these interfaces.



**Figure 8.5** The `Type` interface and its descendants

Listing 8.4 uses the generic reflection API to print out what it discovers about a given class. If you run it with the `Pair` class, you get this report:

```
class Pair<T> extends java.lang.Object
public T getFirst()
public T getSecond()
public void setFirst(T)
public void setSecond(T)
```

If you run it with `ArrayAlg` in the `PairTest2` directory, the report displays the following method:

```
public static <T extends java.lang.Comparable> Pair<T> minmax(T[])
```

**Listing 8.4** genericReflection/GenericReflectionTest.java

```
1 package genericReflection;
2
3 import java.lang.reflect.*;
4 import java.util.*;
5
6 /**
7  * @version 1.11 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9  */
10 public class GenericReflectionTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         // read class name from command line args or user input
15         String name;
16         if (args.length > 0) name = args[0];
17         else
18         {
19             try (var in = new Scanner(System.in))
20             {
21                 System.out.println("Enter class name (e.g., java.util.Collections): ");
22                 name = in.next();
23             }
24         }
25
26         try
27         {
28             // print generic info for class and public methods
29             Class<?> cl = Class.forName(name);
30             printClass(cl);
31             for (Method m : cl.getDeclaredMethods())
32                 printMethod(m);
33         }
34         catch (ClassNotFoundException e)
35         {
36             e.printStackTrace();
37         }
38     }
39
40     public static void printClass(Class<?> cl)
41     {
```

(Continues)

**Listing 8.4 (Continued)**

```
42     System.out.print(cl);
43     printTypes(cl.getTypeParameters(), "<", " ", " ", ">", true);
44     Type sc = cl.getGenericSuperclass();
45     if (sc != null)
46     {
47         System.out.print(" extends ");
48         printType(sc, false);
49     }
50     printTypes(cl.getGenericInterfaces(), " implements ", " ", "", false);
51     System.out.println();
52 }
53
54 public static void printMethod(Method m)
55 {
56     String name = m.getName();
57     System.out.print(Modifier.toString(m.getModifiers()));
58     System.out.print(" ");
59     printTypes(m.getTypeParameters(), "<", " ", " ", "> ", true);
60
61     printType(m.getGenericReturnType(), false);
62     System.out.print(" ");
63     System.out.print(name);
64     System.out.print("(");
65     printTypes(m.getGenericParameterTypes(), "", " ", " ", "", false);
66     System.out.println(")");
67 }
68
69 public static void printTypes(Type[] types, String pre, String sep, String suf,
70                             boolean isDefinition)
71 {
72     if (pre.equals(" extends ") && Arrays.equals(types, new Type[] { Object.class }))
73         return;
74     if (types.length > 0) System.out.print(pre);
75     for (int i = 0; i < types.length; i++)
76     {
77         if (i > 0) System.out.print(sep);
78         printType(types[i], isDefinition);
79     }
80     if (types.length > 0) System.out.print(suf);
81 }
82
83 public static void printType(Type type, boolean isDefinition)
84 {
85     if (type instanceof Class)
86     {
```

```
87         var t = (Class<?>) type;
88         System.out.print(t.getName());
89     }
90     else if (type instanceof TypeVariable)
91     {
92         var t = (TypeVariable<?>) type;
93         System.out.print(t.getName());
94         if (isDefinition)
95             printTypes(t.getBounds(), " extends ", " & ", "", false);
96     }
97     else if (type instanceof WildcardType)
98     {
99         var t = (WildcardType) type;
100        System.out.print("?");
101        printTypes(t.getUpperBounds(), " extends ", " & ", "", false);
102        printTypes(t.getLowerBounds(), " super ", " & ", "", false);
103    }
104    else if (type instanceof ParameterizedType)
105    {
106        var t = (ParameterizedType) type;
107        Type owner = t.getOwnerType();
108        if (owner != null)
109        {
110            printType(owner, false);
111            System.out.print(".");
112        }
113        printType(t.getRawType(), false);
114        printTypes(t.getActualTypeArguments(), "<", ", ", ">", false);
115    }
116    else if (type instanceof GenericArrayType)
117    {
118        var t = (GenericArrayType) type;
119        System.out.print("");
120        printType(t.getGenericComponentType(), isDefinition);
121        System.out.print("[]");
122    }
123 }
124 }
```

## 8.9.4 Type Literals

Sometimes, you want to drive program behavior by the type of a value. For example, in a persistence mechanism, you may want the user to specify a way of saving an object of a particular class. This is typically implemented by associating the `Class` object with an action.

However, with generic classes, erasure poses a problem. How can you have different actions for, say, `ArrayList<Integer>` and `ArrayList<String>` when both erase to the same raw `ArrayList` type?

There is a trick that can offer relief in some situations. You can capture an instance of the Type interface that you encountered in the preceding section. Construct an anonymous subclass like this:

```
var type = new TypeLiteral<ArrayList<Integer>>(){} // note the {}
```

The TypeLiteral constructor captures the generic supertype:

```
class TypeLiteral
{
    public TypeLiteral()
    {
        Type parentType = getClass().getGenericSuperclass();
        if (parentType instanceof ParameterizedType)
        {
            type = ((ParameterizedType) parentType).getActualTypeArguments()[0];
        }
        else
            throw new UnsupportedOperationException(
                "Construct as new TypeLiteral<. .>(){}");
    }
    ...
}
```

If we have a generic type available at runtime, we can match it against the TypeLiteral. We can't get a generic type from an object—it is erased. But, as you have seen in the preceding section, generic types of fields and method parameters survive in the virtual machine.

Injection frameworks such as CDI and Guice use type literals to control injection of generic types. The example program in the book's companion code shows a simpler example. Given an object, we enumerate its fields, whose generic types are available, and look up associated formatting actions.

We format an ArrayList<Integer> by separating the values with spaces, an ArrayList<Character> by joining the characters to a string. Any other array lists are formatted by ArrayList.toString.

---

**Listing 8.5** genericReflection/TypeLiterals.java

---

```
1 package genericReflection;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.01 2018-04-10
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6 */
7
8 import java.lang.reflect.*;
9 import java.util.*;
```

```
10 import java.util.function.*;
11
12 /**
13  * A type literal describes a type that can be generic, such as ArrayList<String>.
14 */
15 class TypeLiteral<T>
16 {
17     private Type type;
18
19     /**
20      * This constructor must be invoked from an anonymous subclass
21      * as new TypeLiteral<. .>(){}
22     */
23     public TypeLiteral()
24     {
25         Type parentType = getClass().getGenericSuperclass();
26         if (parentType instanceof ParameterizedType)
27         {
28             type = ((ParameterizedType) parentType).getActualTypeArguments()[0];
29         }
30         else
31             throw new UnsupportedOperationException(
32                 "Construct as new TypeLiteral<. .>()");
33     }
34
35     private TypeLiteral(Type type)
36     {
37         this.type = type;
38     }
39
40     /**
41      * Yields a type literal that describes the given type.
42     */
43     public static TypeLiteral<?> of(Type type)
44     {
45         return new TypeLiteral<Object>(type);
46     }
47
48     public String toString()
49     {
50         if (type instanceof Class) return ((Class<?>) type).getName();
51         else return type.toString();
52     }
53
54     public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
55     {
56         return otherObject instanceof TypeLiteral
57             && type.equals(((TypeLiteral<?>) otherObject).type);
58     }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 8.5 (Continued)**

```
59
60     public int hashCode()
61     {
62         return type.hashCode();
63     }
64 }
65
66 /**
67 * Formats objects, using rules that associate types with formatting functions.
68 */
69 class Formatter
70 {
71     private Map<TypeLiteral<?>, Function<?, String>> rules = new HashMap<>();
72
73     /**
74      * Add a formatting rule to this formatter.
75      * @param type the type to which this rule applies
76      * @param formatterForType the function that formats objects of this type
77      */
78     public <T> void forType(TypeLiteral<T> type, Function<T, String> formatterForType)
79     {
80         rules.put(type, formatterForType);
81     }
82
83     /**
84      * Formats all fields of an object using the rules of this formatter.
85      * @param obj an object
86      * @return a string with all field names and formatted values
87      */
88     public String formatFields(Object obj)
89             throws IllegalArgumentException, IllegalAccessException
90     {
91         var result = new StringBuilder();
92         for (Field f : obj.getClass().getDeclaredFields())
93         {
94             result.append(f.getName());
95             result.append("=");
96             f.setAccessible(true);
97             Function<?, String> formatterForType = rules.get(TypeLiteral.of(f.getGenericType()));
98             if (formatterForType != null)
99             {
100                 // formatterForType has parameter type ?. Nothing can be passed to its apply
101                 // method. Cast makes the parameter type to Object so we can invoke it.
102                 @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
103                 Function<Object, String> objectFormatter
104                 = (Function<Object, String>) formatterForType;
```

```
105         result.append(objectFormatter.apply(f.get(obj)));
106     }
107     else
108         result.append(f.get(obj).toString());
109     result.append("\n");
110 }
111 return result.toString();
112 }
113 }
114
115 public class TypeLiterals
116 {
117     public static class Sample
118     {
119         ArrayList<Integer> nums;
120         ArrayList<Character> chars;
121         ArrayList<String> strings;
122         public Sample()
123         {
124             nums = new ArrayList<>();
125             nums.add(42); nums.add(1729);
126             chars = new ArrayList<>();
127             chars.add('H'); chars.add('i');
128             strings = new ArrayList<>();
129             strings.add("Hello"); strings.add("World");
130         }
131     }
132
133     private static <T> String join(String separator, ArrayList<T> elements)
134     {
135         var result = new StringBuilder();
136         for (T e : elements)
137         {
138             if (result.length() > 0) result.append(separator);
139             result.append(e.toString());
140         }
141         return result.toString();
142     }
143
144     public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
145     {
146         var formatter = new Formatter();
147         formatter.forType(new TypeLiteral<ArrayList<Integer>>(){},
148             lst -> join(" ", lst));
149         formatter.forType(new TypeLiteral<ArrayList<Character>>(){},
150             lst -> "\"" + join("", lst) + "\"");
151         System.out.println(formatter.formatFields(new Sample()));
152     }
153 }
```

**`java.lang.Class<T>` 1.0**

- `TypeVariable[] getTypeParameters()` 5  
gets the generic type variables if this type was declared as a generic type, or an array of length 0 otherwise.
- `Type getGenericSuperclass()` 5  
gets the generic type of the superclass that was declared for this type, or `null` if this type is `Object` or not a class type.
- `Type[] getGenericInterfaces()` 5  
gets the generic types of the interfaces that were declared for this type, in declaration order, or an array of length 0 if this type doesn't implement interfaces.

**`java.lang.reflect.Method` 1.1**

- `TypeVariable[] getTypeParameters()` 5  
gets the generic type variables if this method was declared as a generic method, or an array of length 0 otherwise.
- `Type getGenericReturnType()` 5  
gets the generic return type with which this method was declared.
- `Type[] getGenericParameterTypes()` 5  
gets the generic parameter types with which this method was declared. If the method has no parameters, an array of length 0 is returned.

**`java.lang.reflect.TypeVariable` 5**

- `String getName()`  
gets the name of this type variable.
- `Type[] getBounds()`  
gets the subclass bounds of this type variable, or an array of length 0 if the variable is unbounded.

***java.lang.reflect.WildcardType*** 5

- Type[] getUpperBounds()

gets the subclass (extends) bounds of this type variable, or an array of length 0 if the variable has no subclass bounds.

- Type[] getLowerBounds()

gets the superclass (super) bounds of this type variable, or an array of length 0 if the variable has no superclass bounds.

***java.lang.reflect.ParameterizedType*** 5

- Type getRawType()

gets the raw type of this parameterized type.

- Type[] getActualTypeArguments()

gets the type parameters with which this parameterized type was declared.

- Type getOwnerType()

gets the outer class type if this is an inner type, or `null` if this is a top-level type.

***java.lang.reflect.GenericArrayType*** 5

- Type getGenericComponentType()

gets the generic component type with which this array type was declared.

You now know how to use generic classes and how to program your own generic classes and methods if the need arises. Just as importantly, you know how to decipher the generic type declarations that you may encounter in the API documentation and in error messages. For an exhaustive discussion of everything there is to know about Java generics, turn to Angelika Langer's excellent list of frequently (and not so frequently) asked questions at <http://angelikalanger.com/GenericsFAQ/JavaGenericsFAQ.html>.

In the next chapter, you will see how the Java collections framework puts generics to work.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Collections

## In this chapter

- 9.1 The Java Collections Framework, page 482
- 9.2 Interfaces in the Collections Framework, page 492
- 9.3 Concrete Collections, page 494
- 9.4 Maps, page 519
- 9.5 Views and Wrappers, page 532
- 9.6 Algorithms, page 541
- 9.7 Legacy Collections, page 552

The data structures that you choose can make a big difference when you try to implement methods in a natural style or are concerned with performance. Do you need to search quickly through thousands (or even millions) of sorted items? Do you need to rapidly insert and remove elements in the middle of an ordered sequence? Do you need to establish associations between keys and values?

This chapter shows how the Java library can help you accomplish the traditional data structuring needed for serious programming. In college computer science programs, a course called *Data Structures* usually takes a semester to complete, and there are many, many books devoted to this important topic. Our coverage differs from that of a college course; we will skip the theory and just show you how to use the collection classes in the standard library.

## 9.1 The Java Collections Framework

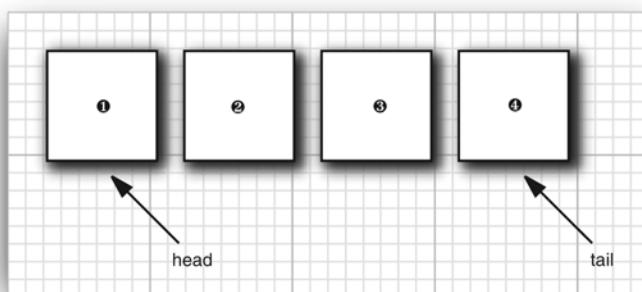
The initial release of Java supplied only a small set of classes for the most useful data structures: `Vector`, `Stack`, `Hashtable`, `BitSet`, and the `Enumeration` interface that provides an abstract mechanism for visiting elements in an arbitrary container. That was certainly a wise choice—it takes time and skill to come up with a comprehensive collection class library.

With the advent of Java 1.2, the designers felt that the time had come to roll out a full-fledged set of data structures. They faced a number of conflicting design challenges. They wanted the library to be small and easy to learn. They did not want the complexity of the Standard Template Library (or STL) of C++, but they wanted the benefit of “generic algorithms” that STL pioneered. They wanted the legacy classes to fit into the new framework. As all designers of collections libraries do, they had to make some hard choices, and they came up with a number of idiosyncratic design decisions along the way. In this section, we will explore the basic design of the Java collections framework, show you how to put it to work, and explain the reasoning behind some of the more controversial features.

### 9.1.1 Separating Collection Interfaces and Implementation

As is common with modern data structure libraries, the Java collection library separates *interfaces* and *implementations*. Let us look at that separation with a familiar data structure, the *queue*.

A *queue interface* specifies that you can add elements at the tail end of the queue, remove them at the head, and find out how many elements are in the queue. You use a queue when you need to collect objects and retrieve them in a “first in, first out” fashion (see Figure 9.1).

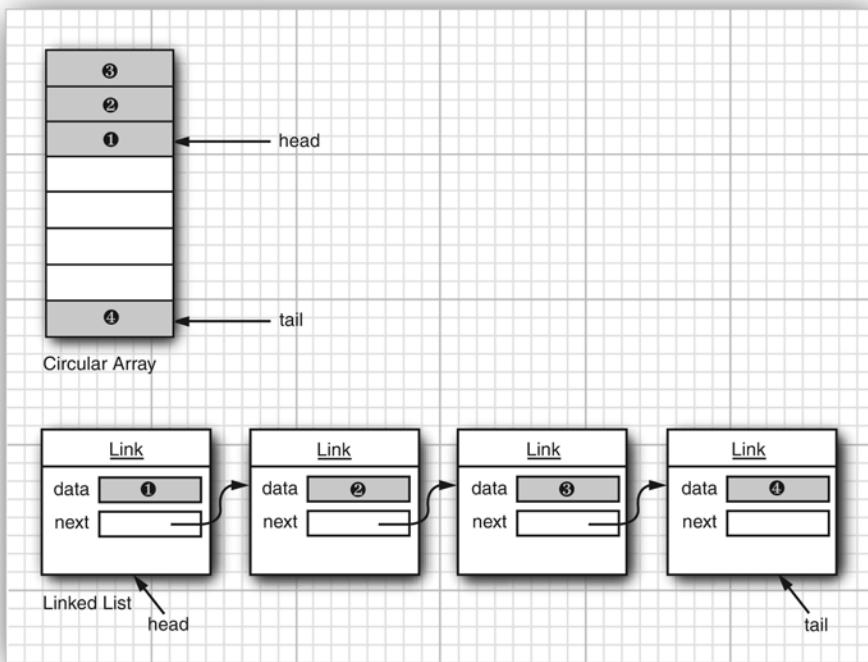


**Figure 9.1** A queue

A minimal form of a queue interface might look like this:

```
public interface Queue<E> // a simplified form of the interface in the standard library
{
    void add(E element);
    E remove();
    int size();
}
```

The interface tells you nothing about how the queue is implemented. Of the two common implementations of a queue, one uses a “circular array” and one uses a linked list (see Figure 9.2).



**Figure 9.2** Queue implementations

Each implementation can be expressed by a class that implements the `Queue` interface.

```
public class CircularArrayList<E> implements Queue<E> // not an actual library class
{
    private int head;
    private int tail;
```

```
CircularArrayQueue(int capacity) { . . . }
public void add(E element) { . . . }
public E remove() { . . . }
public int size() { . . . }
private E[] elements;
}

public class LinkedListQueue<E> implements Queue<E> // not an actual library class
{
    private Link head;
    private Link tail;

    LinkedListQueue() { . . . }
    public void add(E element) { . . . }
    public E remove() { . . . }
    public int size() { . . . }
}
```



**NOTE:** The Java library doesn't actually have classes named `CircularArrayQueue` and `LinkedListQueue`. We use these classes as examples to explain the conceptual distinction between collection interfaces and implementations. If you need a circular array queue, use the `ArrayDeque` class. For a linked list queue, simply use the `LinkedList` class—it implements the `Queue` interface.

---

When you use a queue in your program, you don't need to know which implementation is actually used once the collection has been constructed. Therefore, it makes sense to use the concrete class *only* when you construct the collection object. Use the *interface type* to hold the collection reference.

```
Queue<Customer> expressLane = new CircularArrayQueue<>(100);
expressLane.add(new Customer("Harry"));
```

With this approach, if you change your mind, you can easily use a different implementation. You only need to change your program in one place—in the constructor call. If you decide that a `LinkedListQueue` is a better choice after all, your code becomes

```
Queue<Customer> expressLane = new LinkedListQueue<>();
expressLane.add(new Customer("Harry"));
```

Why would you choose one implementation over another? The interface says nothing about the efficiency of an implementation. A circular array is somewhat more efficient than a linked list, so it is generally preferable. However, as usual, there is a price to pay.

The circular array is a *bounded* collection—it has a finite capacity. If you don't have an upper limit on the number of objects that your program will collect, you may be better off with a linked list implementation after all.

When you study the API documentation, you will find another set of classes whose name begins with `Abstract`, such as `AbstractQueue`. These classes are intended for library implementors. In the (perhaps unlikely) event that you want to implement your own queue class, you will find it easier to extend `AbstractQueue` than to implement all the methods of the `Queue` interface.

### 9.1.2 The Collection Interface

The fundamental interface for collection classes in the Java library is the `Collection` interface. The interface has two fundamental methods:

```
public interface Collection<E>
{
    boolean add(E element);
    Iterator<E> iterator();
    ...
}
```

There are several methods in addition to these two; we will discuss them later.

The `add` method adds an element to the collection. The `add` method returns `true` if adding the element actually changes the collection, and `false` if the collection is unchanged. For example, if you try to add an object to a set and the object is already present, the `add` request has no effect because sets reject duplicates.

The `iterator` method returns an object that implements the `Iterator` interface. You can use the `iterator` object to visit the elements in the collection one by one. We discuss iterators in the next section.

### 9.1.3 Iterators

The `Iterator` interface has four methods:

```
public interface Iterator<E>
{
    E next();
    boolean hasNext();
    void remove();
    default void forEachRemaining(Consumer<? super E> action);
}
```

By repeatedly calling the `next` method, you can visit the elements from the collection one by one. However, if you reach the end of the collection, the `next` method throws a `NoSuchElementException`. Therefore, you need to call the `hasNext` method before calling `next`. That method returns true if the iterator object still has more elements to visit. If you want to inspect all elements in a collection, request an iterator and then keep calling the `next` method while `hasNext` returns true. For example:

```
Collection<String> c = . . .;
Iterator<String> iter = c.iterator();
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    String element = iter.next();
    do something with element
}
```

You can write such a loop more concisely as the “for each” loop:

```
for (String element : c)
{
    do something with element
}
```

The compiler simply translates the “for each” loop into a loop with an iterator.

The “for each” loop works with any object that implements the `Iterable` interface, an interface with a single abstract method:

```
public interface Iterable<E>
{
    Iterator<E> iterator();
    . . .
}
```

The `Collection` interface extends the `Iterable` interface. Therefore, you can use the “for each” loop with any collection in the standard library.

Instead of writing a loop, you can call the `forEachRemaining` method with a lambda expression that consumes an element. The lambda expression is invoked with each element of the iterator, until there are none left.

```
iterator.forEachRemaining(element -> do something with element);
```

The order in which the elements are visited depends on the collection type. If you iterate over an `ArrayList`, the iterator starts at index 0 and increments the index in each step. However, if you visit the elements in a `HashSet`, you will get them in an essentially random order. You can be assured that you will encounter all elements of the collection during the course of the iteration,

but you cannot make any assumptions about their ordering. This is usually not a problem because the ordering does not matter for computations such as computing totals or counting matches.



**NOTE:** Old-timers will notice that the `next` and `hasNext` methods of the `Iterator` interface serve the same purpose as the `nextElement` and `hasMoreElements` methods of an `Enumeration`. The designers of the Java collections library could have chosen to make use of the `Enumeration` interface. But they disliked the cumbersome method names and instead introduced a new interface with shorter method names.

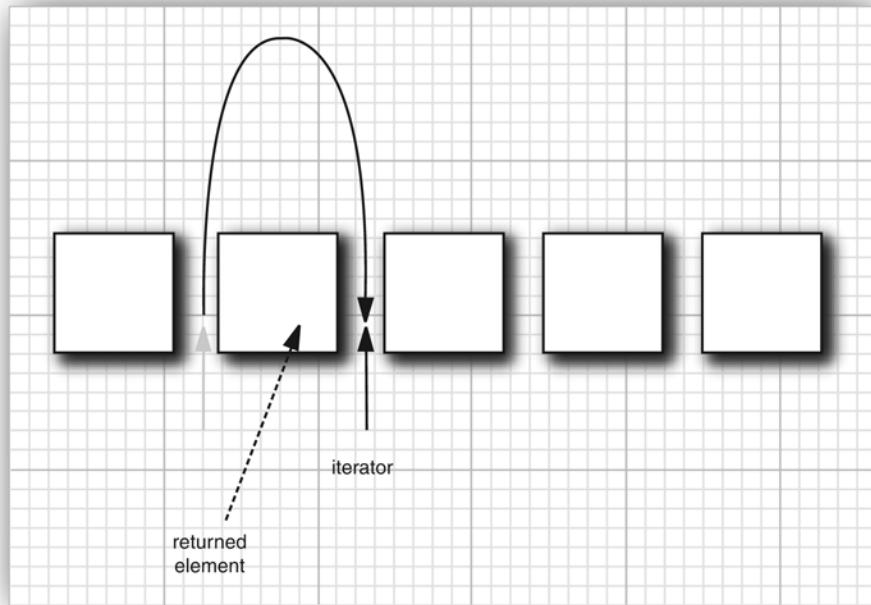
There is an important conceptual difference between iterators in the Java collections library and iterators in other libraries. In traditional collections libraries, such as the Standard Template Library of C++, iterators are modeled after array indexes. Given such an iterator, you can look up the element that is stored at that position, much like you can look up an array element `a[i]` if you have an array index `i`. Independently of the lookup, you can advance the iterator to the next position. This is the same operation as advancing an array index by calling `i++`, without performing a lookup. However, the Java iterators do not work like that. The lookup and position change are tightly coupled. The only way to look up an element is to call `next`, and that lookup advances the position.

Instead, think of Java iterators as being *between elements*. When you call `next`, the iterator *jumps over* the next element, and it returns a reference to the element that it just passed (see Figure 9.3).



**NOTE:** Here is another useful analogy. You can think of `Iterator.next` as the equivalent of `InputStream.read`. Reading a byte from a stream automatically “consumes” the byte. The `next` call to `read` consumes and returns the next byte from the input. Similarly, repeated calls to `next` let you read all elements in a collection.

The `remove` method of the `Iterator` interface removes the element that was returned by the last call to `next`. In many situations, that makes sense—you need to see the element before you can decide that it is the one that should be removed. But if you want to remove an element in a particular position, you still need to skip past the element. For example, here is how you remove the first element in a collection of strings:



**Figure 9.3** Advancing an iterator

```
Iterator<String> it = c.iterator();
it.next(); // skip over the first element
it.remove(); // now remove it
```

More importantly, there is a dependency between the calls to the `next` and `remove` methods. It is illegal to call `remove` if it wasn't preceded by a call to `next`. If you try, an `IllegalStateException` is thrown.

If you want to remove two adjacent elements, you cannot simply call

```
it.remove();
it.remove(); // ERROR
```

Instead, you must first call `next` to jump over the element to be removed.

```
it.remove();
it.next();
it.remove(); // OK
```

### 9.1.4 Generic Utility Methods

The `Collection` and `Iterator` interfaces are generic, which means you can write utility methods that operate on any kind of collection. For example, here is a generic method that tests whether an arbitrary collection contains a given element:

```
public static <E> boolean contains(Collection<E> c, Object obj)
{
    for (E element : c)
        if (element.equals(obj))
            return true;
    return false;
}
```

The designers of the Java library decided that some of these utility methods are so useful that the library should make them available. That way, library users don't have to keep reinventing the wheel. The `contains` method is one such method.

In fact, the `Collection` interface declares quite a few useful methods that all implementing classes must supply. Among them are

```
int size()
boolean isEmpty()
boolean contains(Object obj)
boolean containsAll(Collection<?> c)
boolean equals(Object other)
boolean addAll(Collection<? extends E> from)
boolean remove(Object obj)
boolean removeAll(Collection<?> c)
void clear()
boolean retainAll(Collection<?> c)
Object[] toArray()
<T> T[] toArray(T[] arrayToFill)
```

Many of these methods are self-explanatory; you will find full documentation in the API notes at the end of this section.

Of course, it is a bother if every class that implements the `Collection` interface has to supply so many routine methods. To make life easier for implementors, the library supplies a class `AbstractCollection` that leaves the fundamental methods `size` and `iterator` abstract but implements the routine methods in terms of them. For example:

```
public abstract class AbstractCollection<E>
    implements Collection<E>
{
    ...
    public abstract Iterator<E> iterator();

    public boolean contains(Object obj)
    {
        for (E element : this) // calls iterator()
            if (element.equals(obj))
                return true;
        return false;
    }
    ...
}
```

A concrete collection class can now extend the `AbstractCollection` class. It is up to the concrete collection class to supply an `iterator` method, but the `contains` method has been taken care of by the `AbstractCollection` superclass. However, if the subclass has a more efficient way of implementing `contains`, it is free to do so.

This approach is a bit outdated. It would be nicer if the methods were default methods of the `Collection` interface. This has not happened. However, several default methods have been added. Most of them deal with streams (which we will discuss in Volume II). In addition, there is a useful method

```
default boolean removeIf(Predicate<? super E> filter)
```

for removing elements that fulfill a condition.

#### `java.util.Collection<E>` 1.2

- `Iterator<E> iterator()`  
returns an iterator that can be used to visit the elements in the collection.
- `int size()`  
returns the number of elements currently stored in the collection.
- `boolean isEmpty()`  
returns true if this collection contains no elements.
- `boolean contains(Object obj)`  
returns true if this collection contains an object equal to `obj`.

(Continues)

***java.util.Collection<E> 1.2 (Continued)***

- `boolean containsAll(Collection<?> other)`  
returns true if this collection contains all elements in the other collection.
- `boolean add(E element)`  
adds an element to the collection. Returns true if the collection changed as a result of this call.
- `boolean addAll(Collection<? extends E> other)`  
adds all elements from the other collection to this collection. Returns true if the collection changed as a result of this call.
- `boolean remove(Object obj)`  
removes an object equal to `obj` from this collection. Returns true if a matching object was removed.
- `boolean removeAll(Collection<?> other)`  
removes from this collection all elements from the other collection. Returns true if the collection changed as a result of this call.
- `default boolean removeIf(Predicate<? super E> filter) 8`  
removes all elements for which `filter` returns true. Returns true if the collection changed as a result of this call.
- `void clear()`  
removes all elements from this collection.
- `boolean retainAll(Collection<?> other)`  
removes all elements from this collection that do not equal one of the elements in the other collection. Returns true if the collection changed as a result of this call.
- `Object[] toArray()`  
returns an array of the objects in the collection.
- `<T> T[] toArray(T[] arrayToFill)`  
returns an array of the objects in the collection. If `arrayToFill` has sufficient length, it is filled with the elements of this collection. If there is space, a null element is appended. Otherwise, a new array with the same component type as `arrayToFill` and the same length as the size of this collection is allocated and filled.

***java.util.Iterator<E>*** 1.2

- `boolean hasNext()`  
returns true if there is another element to visit.
- `E next()`  
returns the next object to visit. Throws a `NoSuchElementException` if the end of the collection has been reached.
- `void remove()`  
removes the last visited object. This method must immediately follow an element visit. If the collection has been modified since the last element visit, this method throws an `IllegalStateException`.
- `default void forEachRemaining(Consumer<? super E> action)` 8  
visits elements and passes them to the given action until no elements remain or the action throws an exception.

## 9.2 Interfaces in the Collections Framework

The Java collections framework defines a number of interfaces for different types of collections, shown in Figure 9.4.

There are two fundamental interfaces for collections: `Collection` and `Map`. As you already saw, you insert elements into a collection with a method

```
boolean add(E element)
```

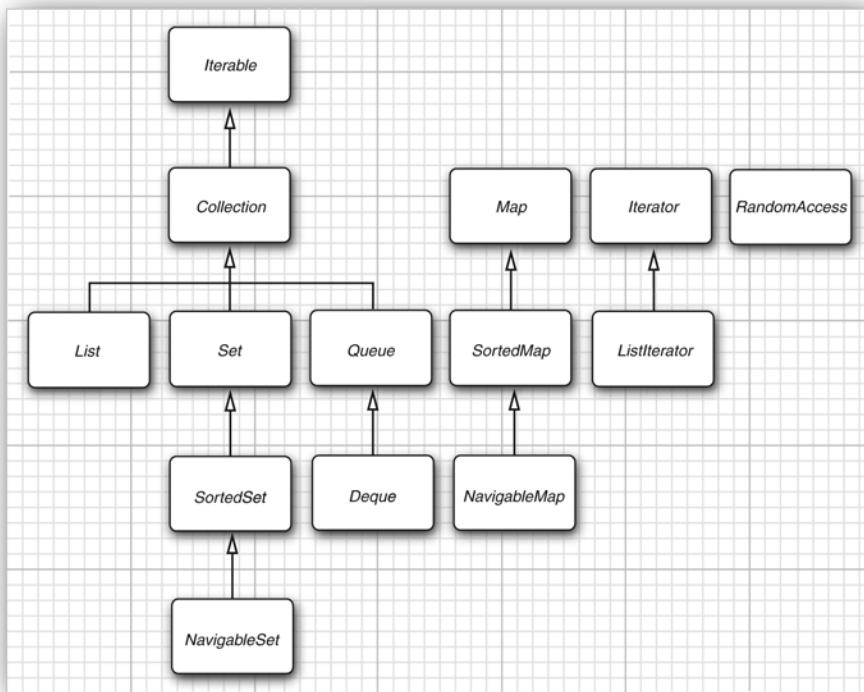
However, maps hold key/value pairs, and you use the `put` method to insert them:

```
V put(K key, V value)
```

To read elements from a collection, visit them with an iterator. However, you can read values from a map with the `get` method:

```
V get(K key)
```

A `List` is an *ordered collection*. Elements are added into a particular position in the container. An element can be accessed in two ways: by an iterator or by an integer index. The latter is called *random access* because elements can be visited in any order. In contrast, when using an iterator, one must visit them sequentially.



**Figure 9.4** The interfaces of the collections framework

The List interface defines several methods for random access:

```
void add(int index, E element)
void remove(int index)
E get(int index)
E set(int index, E element)
```

The ListIterator interface is a subinterface of Iterator. It defines a method for adding an element before the iterator position:

```
void add(E element)
```

Frankly, this aspect of the collections framework is poorly designed. In practice, there are two kinds of ordered collections, with very different performance tradeoffs. An ordered collection that is backed by an array has fast random access, and it makes sense to use the List methods with an integer index. In

contrast, a linked list, while also ordered, has slow random access, and it is best traversed with an iterator. It would have been an easy matter to provide two interfaces.



**NOTE:** To avoid carrying out random access operations for linked lists, Java 1.4 introduced a tagging interface, `RandomAccess`. That interface has no methods, but you can use it to test whether a particular collection supports efficient random access:

```
if (c instanceof RandomAccess)
{
    use random access algorithm
}
else
{
    use sequential access algorithm
}
```

---

The `Set` interface is identical to the `Collection` interface, but the behavior of the methods is more tightly defined. The `add` method of a set should reject duplicates. The `equals` method of a set should be defined so that two sets are identical if they have the same elements, but not necessarily in the same order. The `hashCode` method should be defined so that two sets with the same elements yield the same hash code.

Why make a separate interface if the method signatures are the same? Conceptually, not all collections are sets. Making a `Set` interface enables programmers to write methods that accept only sets.

The `SortedSet` and `SortedMap` interfaces expose the `comparator` object used for sorting, and they define methods to obtain views of subsets of the collections. We discuss these in Section 9.5, “Views and Wrappers,” on p. 532.

Finally, Java 6 introduced interfaces `NavigableSet` and `NavigableMap` that contain additional methods for searching and traversal in sorted sets and maps. (Ideally, these methods should have simply been included in the `SortedSet` and `SortedMap` interface.) The `TreeSet` and `TreeMap` classes implement these interfaces.

## 9.3 Concrete Collections

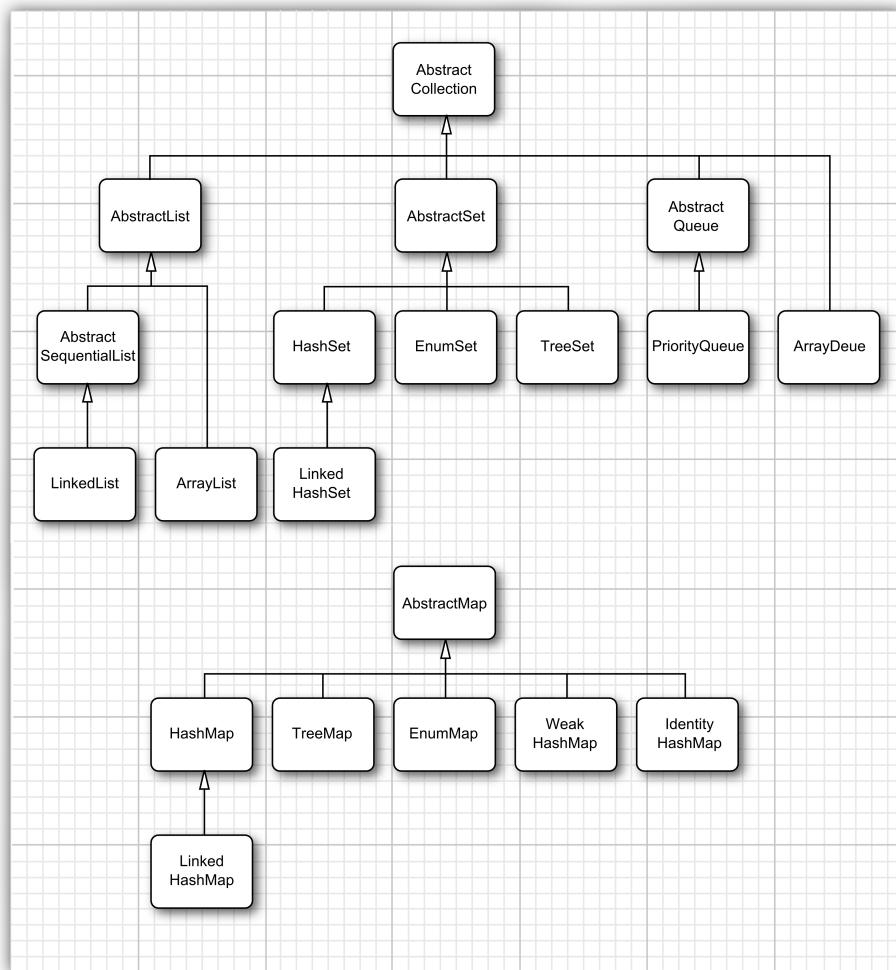
Table 9.1 shows the collections in the Java library and briefly describes the purpose of each collection class. (For simplicity, we omit the thread-safe

collections that will be discussed in Chapter 12.) All classes in Table 9.1 implement the `Collection` interface, with the exception of the classes with names ending in `Map`. Those classes implement the `Map` interface instead. We will discuss maps in Section 9.4, “Maps,” on p. 519.

Figure 9.5 shows the relationships between these classes.

**Table 9.1** Concrete Collections in the Java Library

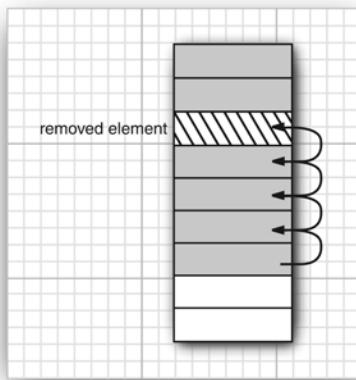
Collection Type	Description	See Page
<code>ArrayList</code>	An indexed sequence that grows and shrinks dynamically	507
<code>LinkedList</code>	An ordered sequence that allows efficient insertion and removal at any location	496
<code>ArrayDeque</code>	A double-ended queue that is implemented as a circular array	516
<code>HashSet</code>	An unordered collection that rejects duplicates	507
<code>TreeSet</code>	A sorted set	511
<code>EnumSet</code>	A set of enumerated type values	529
<code>LinkedHashSet</code>	A set that remembers the order in which elements were inserted	527
<code>PriorityQueue</code>	A collection that allows efficient removal of the smallest element	518
<code>HashMap</code>	A data structure that stores key/value associations	526
<code>TreeMap</code>	A map in which the keys are sorted	519
<code>EnumMap</code>	A map in which the keys belong to an enumerated type	529
<code>LinkedHashMap</code>	A map that remembers the order in which entries were added	527
<code>WeakHashMap</code>	A map with values that can be reclaimed by the garbage collector if they are not used elsewhere	526
<code>IdentityHashMap</code>	A map with keys that are compared by <code>==</code> , not <code>equals</code>	530



**Figure 9.5** Classes in the collections framework

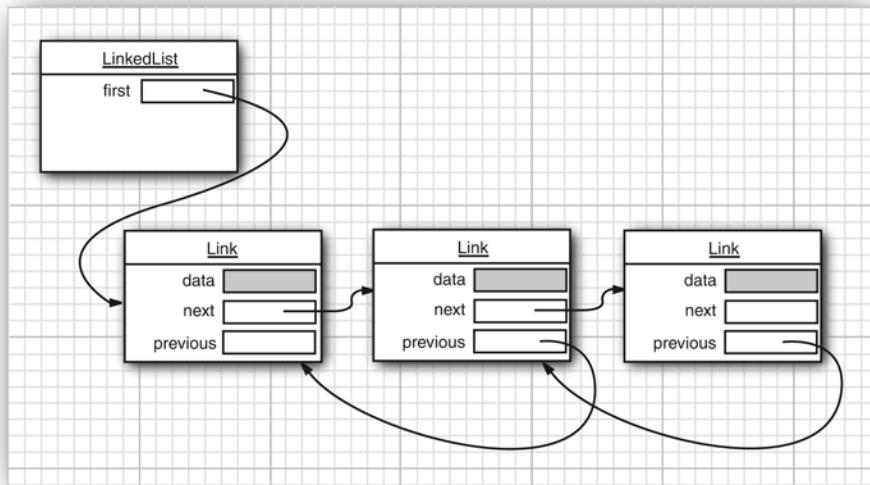
### 9.3.1 Linked Lists

We already used arrays and their dynamic cousin, the `ArrayList` class, for many examples in this book. However, arrays and array lists suffer from a major drawback. Removing an element from the middle of an array is expensive since all array elements beyond the removed one must be moved toward the beginning of the array (see Figure 9.6). The same is true for inserting elements in the middle.



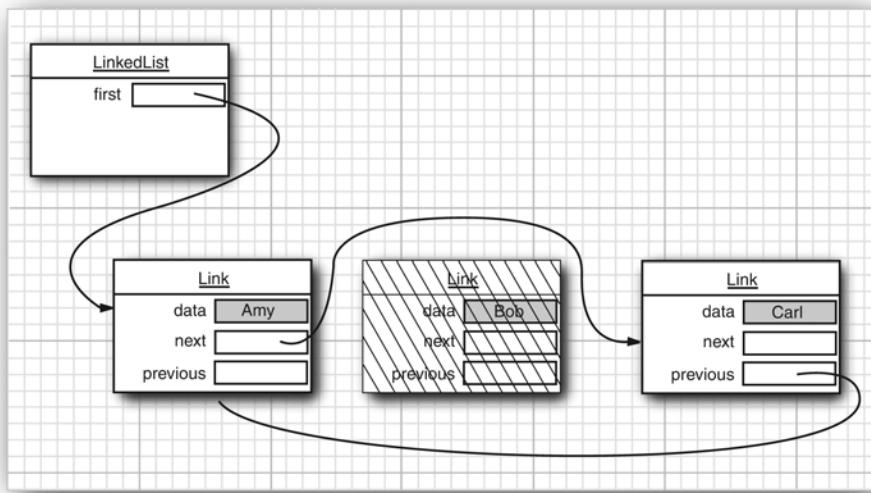
**Figure 9.6** Removing an element from an array

Another well-known data structure, the *linked list*, solves this problem. Where an array stores object references in consecutive memory locations, a linked list stores each object in a separate *link*. Each link also stores a reference to the next link in the sequence. In the Java programming language, all linked lists are actually *doubly linked*; that is, each link also stores a reference to its predecessor (see Figure 9.7).



**Figure 9.7** A doubly linked list

Removing an element from the middle of a linked list is an inexpensive operation—only the links around the element to be removed need to be updated (see Figure 9.8).



**Figure 9.8** Removing an element from a linked list

Perhaps you once took a data structures course in which you learned how to implement linked lists. You may have bad memories of tangling up the links when removing or adding elements in the linked list. If so, you will be pleased to learn that the Java collections library supplies a class `LinkedList` ready for you to use.

The following code example adds three elements and then removes the second one:

```
var staff = new LinkedList<String>();
staff.add("Amy");
staff.add("Bob");
staff.add("Carl");
Iterator<String> iter = staff.iterator();
String first = iter.next(); // visit first element
String second = iter.next(); // visit second element
iter.remove(); // remove last visited element
```

There is, however, an important difference between linked lists and generic collections. A linked list is an *ordered collection* in which the position of the objects matters. The `LinkedList.add` method adds the object to the end of the list.

But you will often want to add objects somewhere in the middle of a list. This position-dependent `add` method is the responsibility of an iterator, since iterators describe positions in collections. Using iterators to add elements makes sense only for collections that have a natural ordering. For example, the `set` data type that we discuss in the next section does not impose any ordering on its elements. Therefore, there is no `add` method in the `Iterator` interface. Instead, the collections library supplies a subinterface `ListIterator` that contains an `add` method:

```
interface ListIterator<E> extends Iterator<E>
{
    void add(E element);
    ...
}
```

Unlike `Collection.add`, this method does not return a `boolean`—it is assumed that the `add` operation always modifies the list.

In addition, the `ListIterator` interface has two methods that you can use for traversing a list backwards.

```
E previous()
boolean hasPrevious()
```

Like the `next` method, the `previous` method returns the object that it skipped over.

The `listIterator` method of the `LinkedList` class returns an iterator object that implements the `ListIterator` interface.

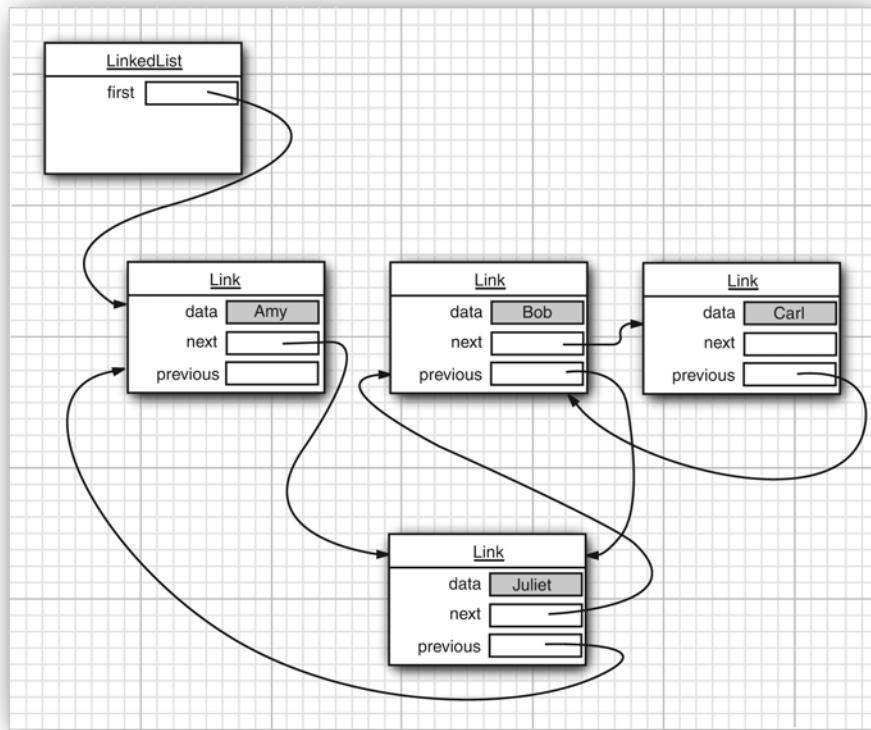
```
ListIterator<String> iter = staff.listIterator();
```

The `add` method adds the new element *before* the iterator position. For example, the following code skips past the first element in the linked list and adds "Juliet" before the second element (see Figure 9.9):

```
var staff = new LinkedList<String>();
staff.add("Amy");
staff.add("Bob");
staff.add("Carl");
ListIterator<String> iter = staff.listIterator();
iter.next(); // skip past first element
iter.add("Juliet");
```

If you call the `add` method multiple times, the elements are simply added in the order in which you supplied them. They are all added in turn before the current iterator position.

When you use the `add` operation with an iterator that was freshly returned from the `listIterator` method and that points to the beginning of the linked list, the newly added element becomes the new head of the list. When the



**Figure 9.9** Adding an element to a linked list

iterator has passed the last element of the list (that is, when `hasNext` returns `false`), the added element becomes the new tail of the list. If the linked list has  $n$  elements, there are  $n + 1$  spots for adding a new element. These spots correspond to the  $n + 1$  possible positions of the iterator. For example, if a linked list contains three elements, A, B, and C, there are four possible positions (marked as |) for inserting a new element:

```
|ABC  
A|BC  
AB|C  
ABC|
```



**NOTE:** Be careful with the “cursor” analogy. The `remove` operation does not work exactly like the Backspace key. Immediately after a call to `next`, the `remove` method indeed removes the element to the left of the iterator, just like the Backspace key would. However, if you have just called `previous`, the element to the right will be removed. And you can’t call `remove` twice in a row.

Unlike the `add` method, which depends only on the iterator position, the `remove` method depends on the iterator state.

---

Finally, a `set` method replaces the last element, returned by a call to `next` or `previous`, with a new element. For example, the following code replaces the first element of a list with a new value:

```
ListIterator<String> iter = list.listIterator();
String oldValue = iter.next(); // returns first element
iter.set(newValue); // sets first element to newValue
```

As you might imagine, if an iterator traverses a collection while another iterator is modifying it, confusing situations can occur. For example, suppose an iterator points before an element that another iterator has just removed. The iterator is now invalid and should no longer be used. The linked list iterators have been designed to detect such modifications. If an iterator finds that its collection has been modified by another iterator or by a method of the collection itself, it throws a `ConcurrentModificationException`. For example, consider the following code:

```
List<String> list = . . .;
ListIterator<String> iter1 = list.listIterator();
ListIterator<String> iter2 = list.listIterator();
iter1.next();
iter1.remove();
iter2.next(); // throws ConcurrentModificationException
```

The call to `iter2.next` throws a `ConcurrentModificationException` since `iter2` detects that the list was modified externally.

To avoid concurrent modification exceptions, follow this simple rule: You can attach as many iterators to a collection as you like, provided that all of them are only readers. Alternatively, you can attach a single iterator that can both read and write.

Concurrent modification detection is done in a simple way. The collection keeps track of the number of mutating operations (such as adding and removing elements). Each iterator keeps a separate count of the number of mutating operations that *it* was responsible for. At the beginning of each iterator

method, the iterator simply checks whether its own mutation count equals that of the collection. If not, it throws a `ConcurrentModificationException`.



**NOTE:** There is, however, a curious exception to the detection of concurrent modifications. The linked list only keeps track of *structural* modifications to the list, such as adding and removing links. The `set` method does *not* count as a structural modification. You can attach multiple iterators to a linked list, all of which call `set` to change the contents of existing links. This capability is required for a number of algorithms in the `Collections` class that we discuss later in this chapter.

---

Now you have seen the fundamental methods of the `LinkedList` class. Use a `ListIterator` to traverse the elements of the linked list in either direction and to add and remove elements.

As you saw in Section 9.2, “Interfaces in the Collections Framework,” on p. 492, many other useful methods for operating on linked lists are declared in the `Collection` interface. These are, for the most part, implemented in the `AbstractCollection` superclass of the `LinkedList` class. For example, the `toString` method invokes `toString` on all elements and produces one long string of the format `[A, B, C]`. This is handy for debugging. Use the `contains` method to check whether an element is present in a linked list. For example, the call `staff.contains("Harry")` returns true if the linked list already contains a string equal to the string "Harry".

The library also supplies a number of methods that are, from a theoretical perspective, somewhat dubious. Linked lists do not support fast random access. If you want to see the *n*th element of a linked list, you have to start at the beginning and skip past the first  $n - 1$  elements. There is no shortcut. For that reason, programmers don't usually use linked lists in situations where elements need to be accessed by an integer index.

Nevertheless, the `LinkedList` class supplies a `get` method that lets you access a particular element:

```
LinkedList<String> list = . . .;
String obj = list.get(n);
```

Of course, this method is not very efficient. If you find yourself using it, you are probably using a wrong data structure for your problem.

You should *never* use this illusory random access method to step through a linked list. The code

```
for (int i = 0; i < list.size(); i++)
    do something with list.get(i);
```

is staggeringly inefficient. Each time you look up another element, the search starts again from the beginning of the list. The `LinkedList` object makes no effort to cache the position information.



**NOTE:** The `get` method has one slight optimization: If the index is at least `size() / 2`, the search for the element starts at the end of the list.

The list iterator interface also has a method to tell you the index of the current position. In fact, since Java iterators conceptually point between elements, it has two of them: The `nextIndex` method returns the integer index of the element that would be returned by the next call to `next`; the `previousIndex` method returns the index of the element that would be returned by the next call to `previous`. Of course, that is simply one less than `nextIndex`. These methods are efficient—an iterator keeps a count of its current position. Finally, if you have an integer index `n`, then `list.listIterator(n)` returns an iterator that points just before the element with index `n`. That is, calling `next` yields the same element as `list.get(n)`; obtaining that iterator is inefficient.

If you have a linked list with only a handful of elements, you don't have to be overly paranoid about the cost of the `get` and `set` methods. But then, why use a linked list in the first place? The only reason to use a linked list is to minimize the cost of insertion and removal in the middle of the list. If you have only a few elements, you can just use an `ArrayList`.

We recommend that you simply stay away from all methods that use an integer index to denote a position in a linked list. If you want random access into a collection, use an array or `ArrayList`, not a linked list.

The program in Listing 9.1 puts linked lists to work. It simply creates two lists, merges them, then removes every second element from the second list, and finally tests the `removeAll` method. We recommend that you trace the program flow and pay special attention to the iterators. You may find it helpful to draw diagrams of the iterator positions, like this:

```
|ACE |BDFG  
A|CE |BDFG  
AB|CE B|DFG  
...
```

Note that the call

```
System.out.println(a);
```

prints all elements in the linked list `a` by invoking the `toString` method in `AbstractCollection`.

**Listing 9.1** linkedList/LinkedListTest.java

```
1 package linkedList;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates operations on linked lists.
7  * @version 1.12 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class LinkedListTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var a = new LinkedList<String>();
15         a.add("Amy");
16         a.add("Carl");
17         a.add("Erica");
18
19         var b = new LinkedList<String>();
20         b.add("Bob");
21         b.add("Doug");
22         b.add("Frances");
23         b.add("Gloria");
24
25         // merge the words from b into a
26
27         ListIterator<String> aIter = a.listIterator();
28         Iterator<String> bIter = b.iterator();
29
30         while (bIter.hasNext())
31         {
32             if (aIter.hasNext()) aIter.next();
33             aIter.add(bIter.next());
34         }
35
36         System.out.println(a);
37
38         // remove every second word from b
39
40         bIter = b.iterator();
41         while (bIter.hasNext())
42         {
43             bIter.next(); // skip one element
44             if (bIter.hasNext())
45             {
```

```
46         bIter.next(); // skip next element
47         bIter.remove(); // remove that element
48     }
49 }
50 System.out.println(b);
51
52 // bulk operation: remove all words in b from a
53
54 a.removeAll(b);
55
56 System.out.println(a);
57 }
58 }
59 }
```

***java.util.List<E> 1.2***

- `ListIterator<E> listIterator()`  
returns a list iterator for visiting the elements of the list.
- `ListIterator<E> listIterator(int index)`  
returns a list iterator for visiting the elements of the list whose first call to `next` will return the element with the given index.
- `void add(int i, E element)`  
adds an element at the specified position.
- `void addAll(int i, Collection<? extends E> elements)`  
adds all elements from a collection to the specified position.
- `E remove(int i)`  
removes and returns the element at the specified position.
- `E get(int i)`  
gets the element at the specified position.
- `E set(int i, E element)`  
replaces the element at the specified position with a new element and returns the old element.
- `int indexOf(Object element)`  
returns the position of the first occurrence of an element equal to the specified element, or `-1` if no matching element is found.
- `int lastIndexOf(Object element)`  
returns the position of the last occurrence of an element equal to the specified element, or `-1` if no matching element is found.

***java.util.ListIterator<E>* 1.2**

- **void add(E newElement)**  
adds an element before the current position.
- **void set(E newElement)**  
replaces the last element visited by `next` or `previous` with a new element. Throws an `IllegalStateException` if the list structure was modified since the last call to `next` or `previous`.
- **boolean hasPrevious()**  
returns true if there is another element to visit when iterating backwards through the list.
- **E previous()**  
returns the previous object. Throws a `NoSuchElementException` if the beginning of the list has been reached.
- **int nextIndex()**  
returns the index of the element that would be returned by the next call to `next`.
- **int previousIndex()**  
returns the index of the element that would be returned by the next call to `previous`.

***java.util.LinkedList<E>* 1.2**

- **LinkedList()**  
constructs an empty linked list.
- **LinkedList(Collection<? extends E> elements)**  
constructs a linked list and adds all elements from a collection.
- **void addFirst(E element)**
- **void addLast(E element)**  
adds an element to the beginning or the end of the list.
- **E getFirst()**
- **E getLast()**  
returns the element at the beginning or the end of the list.
- **E removeFirst()**
- **E removeLast()**  
removes and returns the element at the beginning or the end of the list.

### 9.3.2 Array Lists

In the preceding section, you saw the `List` interface and the `LinkedList` class that implements it. The `List` interface describes an ordered collection in which the position of elements matters. There are two protocols for visiting the elements: through an iterator and by random access with methods `get` and `set`. The latter is not appropriate for linked lists, but of course `get` and `set` make a lot of sense for arrays. The collections library supplies the familiar `ArrayList` class that also implements the `List` interface. An `ArrayList` encapsulates a dynamically reallocated array of objects.



**NOTE:** If you are a veteran Java programmer, you may have used the `Vector` class whenever you need a dynamic array. Why use an `ArrayList` instead of a `Vector`? For one simple reason: All methods of the `Vector` class are *synchronized*. It is safe to access a `Vector` object from two threads. But if you access a vector from only a single thread—by far the more common case—your code wastes quite a bit of time with synchronization. In contrast, the `ArrayList` methods are not synchronized. We recommend that you use an `ArrayList` instead of a `Vector` whenever you don't need synchronization.

### 9.3.3 Hash Sets

Linked lists and arrays let you specify the order in which you want to arrange the elements. However, if you are looking for a particular element and don't remember its position, you need to visit all elements until you find a match. That can be time consuming if the collection contains many elements. If you don't care about the ordering of the elements, there are data structures that let you find elements much faster. The drawback is that those data structures give you no control over the order in which the elements appear. These data structures organize the elements in an order that is convenient for their own purposes.

A well-known data structure for finding objects quickly is the *hash table*. A hash table computes an integer, called the *hash code*, for each object. A hash code is somehow derived from the instance fields of an object, preferably in such a way that objects with different data yield different codes. Table 9.2 lists a few examples of hash codes that result from the `hashCode` method of the `String` class.

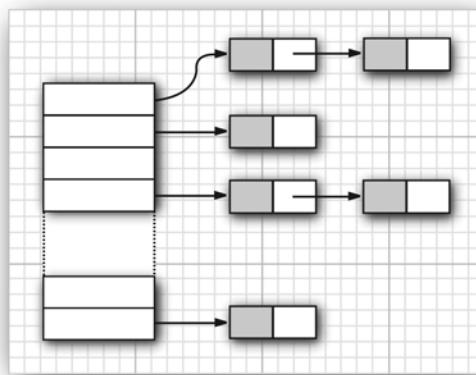
If you define your own classes, you are responsible for implementing your own `hashCode` method—see Chapter 5 for more information. Your implementation needs to be compatible with the `equals` method: If `a.equals(b)`, then `a` and `b` must have the same hash code.

**Table 9.2** Hash Codes Resulting from the hashCode Method

String	Hash Code
"Lee"	76268
"lee"	107020
"eel"	100300

What's important for now is that hash codes can be computed quickly and that the computation depends only on the state of the object that needs to be hashed, not on the other objects in the hash table.

In Java, hash tables are implemented as arrays of linked lists. Each list is called a *bucket* (see Figure 9.10). To find the place of an object in the table, compute its hash code and reduce it modulo the total number of buckets. The resulting number is the index of the bucket that holds the element. For example, if an object has hash code 76268 and there are 128 buckets, then the object is placed in bucket 108 (because the remainder  $76268 \% 128$  is 108). Perhaps you are lucky and there is no other element in that bucket. Then, you simply insert the element into that bucket. Of course, sometimes you will hit a bucket that is already filled. This is called a *hash collision*. Then, compare the new object with all objects in that bucket to see if it is already present. If the hash codes are reasonably randomly distributed and the number of buckets is large enough, only a few comparisons should be necessary.

**Figure 9.10** A hash table



**NOTE:** As of Java 8, the buckets change from linked lists into balanced binary trees when they get full. This improves performance if a hash function was poorly chosen and yields many collisions, or if malicious code tries to flood a hash table with many values that have identical hash codes.

If you want more control over the performance of the hash table, you can specify the initial bucket count. The bucket count gives the number of buckets used to collect objects with identical hash values. If too many elements are inserted into a hash table, the number of collisions increases and retrieval performance suffers.

If you know how many elements, approximately, will eventually be in the table, you can set the bucket count. Typically, you should set it to somewhere between 75% and 150% of the expected element count. Some researchers believe that it is a good idea to make the bucket count a prime number to prevent a clustering of keys. The evidence for this isn't conclusive, however. The standard library uses bucket counts that are powers of 2, with a default of 16. (Any value you supply for the table size is automatically rounded to the next power of 2.)

Of course, you do not always know how many elements you need to store, or your initial guess may be too low. If the hash table gets too full, it needs to be *rehashed*. To rehash the table, a table with more buckets is created, all elements are inserted into the new table, and the original table is discarded. The *load factor* determines when a hash table is rehashed. For example, if the load factor is 0.75 (which is the default) and the table is more than 75% full, it is automatically rehashed with twice as many buckets. For most applications, it is reasonable to leave the load factor at 0.75.

Hash tables can be used to implement several important data structures. The simplest among them is the *set* type. A set is a collection of elements without duplicates. The `add` method of a set first tries to find the object to be added, and adds it only if it is not yet present.

The Java collections library supplies a `HashSet` class that implements a set based on a hash table. You add elements with the `add` method. The `contains` method is redefined to make a fast lookup to see if an element is already present in the set. It checks only the elements in one bucket and not all elements in the collection.

The hash set iterator visits all buckets in turn. Since hashing scatters the elements around in the table, they are visited in a seemingly random order. You would only use a `HashSet` if you don't care about the ordering of the elements in the collection.

The sample program at the end of this section (Listing 9.2) reads words from `System.in`, adds them to a set, and finally prints out the first twenty words in the set. For example, you can feed the program the text from *Alice in Wonderland* (which you can obtain from [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)) by launching it from a command shell as

```
java SetTest < alice30.txt
```

The program reads all words from the input and adds them to the hash set. It then iterates through the unique words in the set and finally prints out a count. (*Alice in Wonderland* has 5,909 unique words, including the copyright notice at the beginning.) The words appear in random order.



**CAUTION:** Be careful when you mutate set elements. If the hash code of an element were to change, the element would no longer be in the correct position in the data structure.

---

### Listing 9.2 `set/SetTest.java`

```
1 package set;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program uses a set to print all unique words in System.in.
7  * @version 1.12 2015-06-21
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class SetTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var words = new HashSet<String>();
15         long totalTime = 0;
16
17         try (var in = new Scanner(System.in))
18         {
19             while (in.hasNext())
20             {
21                 String word = in.next();
22                 long callTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
23                 words.add(word);
24                 callTime = System.currentTimeMillis() - callTime;
25                 totalTime += callTime;
26             }
27         }
28     }
```

```
29     Iterator<String> iter = words.iterator();
30     for (int i = 1; i <= 20 && iter.hasNext(); i++)
31         System.out.println(iter.next());
32     System.out.println("... ");
33     System.out.println(words.size() + " distinct words. " + totalTime + " milliseconds.");
34 }
35 }
```

**java.util.HashSet<E> 1.2**

- `HashSet()`  
constructs an empty hash set.
- `HashSet(Collection<? extends E> elements)`  
constructs a hash set and adds all elements from a collection.
- `HashSet(int initialCapacity)`  
constructs an empty hash set with the specified capacity (number of buckets).
- `HashSet(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor)`  
constructs an empty hash set with the specified capacity and load factor. If the ratio size/capacity exceeds the load factor, the hash table will be rehashed into a larger one.

**java.lang.Object 1.0**

- `int hashCode()`  
returns a hash code for this object. A hash code can be any integer, positive or negative. The definitions of `equals` and `hashCode` must be compatible: If `x.equals(y)` is true, then `x.hashCode()` must be the same value as `y.hashCode()`.

### 9.3.4 Tree Sets

The `TreeSet` class is similar to the hash set, with one added improvement. A tree set is a *sorted collection*. You insert elements into the collection in any order. When you iterate through the collection, the values are automatically presented in sorted order. For example, suppose you insert three strings and then visit all elements that you added.

```
var sorter = new TreeSet<String>();
sorter.add("Bob");
sorter.add("Amy");
sorter.add("Carl");
for (String s : sorter) System.out.println(s);
```

Then, the values are printed in sorted order: Amy Bob Carl. As the name of the class suggests, the sorting is accomplished by a tree data structure. (The current implementation uses a *red-black tree*. For a detailed description of red-black trees see, for example, *Introduction to Algorithms* by Thomas Cormen, Charles Leiserson, Ronald Rivest, and Clifford Stein, The MIT Press, 2009.) Every time an element is added to a tree, it is placed into its proper sorting position. Therefore, the iterator always visits the elements in sorted order.

Adding an element to a tree is slower than adding it to a hash table—see Table 9.3 for a comparison. But it is still much faster than checking for duplicates in an array or linked list. If the tree contains  $n$  elements, then an average of  $\log_2 n$  comparisons are required to find the correct position for the new element. For example, if the tree already contains 1,000 elements, adding a new element requires about 10 comparisons.



**NOTE:** In order to use a tree set, you must be able to compare the elements. The elements must implement the Comparable interface, or you must supply a Comparator when constructing the set. (The Comparable and Comparator interfaces were introduced in Chapter 6.)

---

**Table 9.3** Adding Elements into Hash and Tree Sets

Document	Total Number of Words	Number of Distinct Words	HashSet	TreeSet
<i>Alice in Wonderland</i>	28195	5909	5 sec	7 sec
<i>The Count of Monte Cristo</i>	466300	37545	75 sec	98 sec

If you look back at Table 9.3, you may well wonder if you should always use a tree set instead of a hash set. After all, adding elements does not seem to take much longer, and the elements are automatically sorted. The answer depends on the data that you are collecting. If you don't need the data sorted, there is no reason to pay for the sorting overhead. More important, with some data it is much more difficult to come up with a sort order than a hash function. A hash function only needs to do a reasonably good job of scrambling the objects, whereas a comparison function must tell objects apart with complete precision.

To make this distinction more concrete, consider the task of collecting a set of rectangles. If you use a TreeSet, you need to supply a Comparator<Rectangle>. How do you compare two rectangles? By area? That doesn't work. You can have

two different rectangles with different coordinates but the same area. The sort order for a tree must be a *total ordering*. Any two elements must be comparable, and the comparison can only be zero if the elements are equal. There is such a sort order for rectangles (the lexicographic ordering on its coordinates), but it is unnatural and cumbersome to compute. In contrast, a hash function is already defined for the Rectangle class. It simply hashes the coordinates.



**NOTE:** As of Java 6, the TreeSet class implements the NavigableSet interface. That interface adds several convenient methods for locating elements and for backward traversal. See the API notes for details.

The program in Listing 9.3 builds two tree sets of Item objects. The first one is sorted by part number, the default sort order of Item objects. The second set is sorted by description, using a custom comparator.

### Listing 9.3 treeSet/TreeSetTest.java

```
1 package treeSet;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program sorts a set of Item objects by comparing their descriptions.
7  * @version 1.13 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class TreeSetTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var parts = new TreeSet<Item>();
15         parts.add(new Item("Toaster", 1234));
16         parts.add(new Item("Widget", 4562));
17         parts.add(new Item("Modem", 9912));
18         System.out.println(parts);
19
20         var sortByDescription = new TreeSet<Item>(Comparator.comparing(Item::getDescription));
21
22         sortByDescription.addAll(parts);
23         System.out.println(sortByDescription);
24     }
25 }
```

**Listing 9.4** treeSet/Item.java

```
1 package treeSet;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * An item with a description and a part number.
7  */
8 public class Item implements Comparable<Item>
9 {
10     private String description;
11     private int partNumber;
12
13     /**
14      * Constructs an item.
15      * @param aDescription the item's description
16      * @param aPartNumber the item's part number
17      */
18     public Item(String aDescription, int aPartNumber)
19     {
20         description = aDescription;
21         partNumber = aPartNumber;
22     }
23
24     /**
25      * Gets the description of this item.
26      * @return the description
27      */
28     public String getDescription()
29     {
30         return description;
31     }
32
33     public String toString()
34     {
35         return "[description=" + description + ", partNumber=" + partNumber + "]";
36     }
37
38     public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
39     {
40         if (this == otherObject) return true;
41         if (otherObject == null) return false;
```

```
42     if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass()) return false;
43     var other = (Item) otherObject;
44     return Objects.equals(description, other.description) && partNumber == other.partNumber;
45   }
46
47   public int hashCode()
48   {
49     return Objects.hash(description, partNumber);
50   }
51
52   public int compareTo(Item other)
53   {
54     int diff = Integer.compare(partNumber, other.partNumber);
55     return diff != 0 ? diff : description.compareTo(other.description);
56   }
57 }
```

**java.util.TreeSet<E> 1.2**

- `TreeSet()`
- `TreeSet(Comparator<? super E> comparator)`  
constructs an empty tree set.
- `TreeSet(Collection<? extends E> elements)`
- `TreeSet(SortedSet<E> s)`  
constructs a tree set and adds all elements from a collection or sorted set (in the latter case, using the same ordering).

**java.util.SortedSet<E> 1.2**

- `Comparator<? super E> comparator()`  
returns the comparator used for sorting the elements, or `null` if the elements are compared with the `compareTo` method of the `Comparable` interface.
- `E first()`
- `E last()`  
returns the smallest or largest element in the sorted set.

***java.util.NavigableSet<E>*** 6

- E higher(E value)
- E lower(E value)

returns the least element  $>$  value or the largest element  $<$  value, or null if there is no such element.

- E ceiling(E value)
- E floor(E value)

returns the least element  $\geq$  value or the largest element  $\leq$  value, or null if there is no such element.

- E pollFirst()
- E pollLast()

removes and returns the smallest or largest element in this set, or null if the set is empty.

- Iterator<E> descendingIterator()

returns an iterator that traverses this set in descending direction.

### 9.3.5 Queues and Deques

As we already discussed, a queue lets you efficiently add elements at the tail and remove elements from the head. A double-ended queue, or *deque*, lets you efficiently add or remove elements at the head and tail. Adding elements in the middle is not supported. Java 6 introduced a *Deque* interface. It is implemented by the *ArrayDeque* and *LinkedList* classes, both of which provide deques whose size grows as needed. In Chapter 12, you will see bounded queues and deques.

***java.util.Queue<E>*** 5

- boolean add(E element)
- boolean offer(E element)

adds the given element to the tail of this queue and returns true, provided the queue is not full. If the queue is full, the first method throws an *IllegalStateException*, whereas the second method returns false.

(Continues)

***java.util.Queue<E> 5 (Continued)***

- E remove()
- E poll()

removes and returns the element at the head of this queue, provided the queue is not empty. If the queue is empty, the first method throws a NoSuchElementException, whereas the second method returns null.

- E element()
- E peek()

returns the element at the head of this queue without removing it, provided the queue is not empty. If the queue is empty, the first method throws a NoSuchElementException, whereas the second method returns null.

***java.util.Deque<E> 6***

- void addFirst(E element)
- void addLast(E element)
- boolean offerFirst(E element)
- boolean offerLast(E element)

adds the given element to the head or tail of this deque. If the deque is full, the first two methods throw an IllegalStateException, whereas the last two methods return false.

- E removeFirst()
- E removeLast()
- E pollFirst()
- E pollLast()

removes and returns the element at the head of this deque, provided the deque is not empty. If the deque is empty, the first two methods throw a NoSuchElementException, whereas the last two methods return null.

- E getFirst()
- E getLast()
- E peekFirst()
- E peekLast()

returns the element at the head of this deque without removing it, provided the deque is not empty. If the deque is empty, the first two methods throw a NoSuchElementException, whereas the last two methods return null.

**java.util.ArrayDeque<E> 6**

- `ArrayDeque()`
- `ArrayDeque(int initialCapacity)`

constructs an unbounded deque with an initial capacity of 16 or the given initial capacity.

### 9.3.6 Priority Queues

A priority queue retrieves elements in sorted order after they were inserted in arbitrary order. That is, whenever you call the `remove` method, you get the smallest element currently in the priority queue. However, the priority queue does not sort all its elements. If you iterate over the elements, they are not necessarily sorted. The priority queue makes use of an elegant and efficient data structure called a *heap*. A heap is a self-organizing binary tree in which the `add` and `remove` operations cause the smallest element to gravitate to the root, without wasting time on sorting all elements.

Just like a `TreeSet`, a priority queue can either hold elements of a class that implements the `Comparable` interface or a `Comparator` object you supply in the constructor.

A typical use for a priority queue is job scheduling. Each job has a priority. Jobs are added in random order. Whenever a new job can be started, the highest priority job is removed from the queue. (Since it is traditional for priority 1 to be the “highest” priority, the `remove` operation yields the minimum element.)

Listing 9.5 shows a priority queue in action. Unlike iteration in a `TreeSet`, the iteration here does not visit the elements in sorted order. However, removal always yields the smallest remaining element.

---

**Listing 9.5** priorityQueue/PriorityQueueTest.java

---

```
1 package priorityQueue;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4 import java.time.*;
5
6 /**
7  * This program demonstrates the use of a priority queue.
8  * @version 1.02 2015-06-20
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
```

```
11 public class PriorityQueueTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         var pq = new PriorityQueue<LocalDate>();
16         pq.add(LocalDate.of(1906, 12, 9)); // G. Hopper
17         pq.add(LocalDate.of(1815, 12, 10)); // A. Lovelace
18         pq.add(LocalDate.of(1903, 12, 3)); // J. von Neumann
19         pq.add(LocalDate.of(1910, 6, 22)); // K. Zuse
20
21         System.out.println("Iterating over elements . . .");
22         for (LocalDate date : pq)
23             System.out.println(date);
24         System.out.println("Removing elements . . .");
25         while (!pq.isEmpty())
26             System.out.println(pq.remove());
27     }
28 }
```

#### java.util.PriorityQueue 5

- `PriorityQueue()`
- `PriorityQueue(int initialCapacity)`  
constructs a priority queue for storing Comparable objects.
- `PriorityQueue(int initialCapacity, Comparator<? super E> c)`  
constructs a priority queue and uses the specified comparator for sorting its elements.

## 9.4 Maps

A set is a collection that lets you quickly find an existing element. However, to look up an element, you need to have an exact copy of the element to find. That isn't a very common lookup—usually, you have some key information, and you want to look up the associated element. The *map* data structure serves that purpose. A map stores key/value pairs. You can find a value if you provide the key. For example, you may store a table of employee records, where the keys are the employee IDs and the values are `Employee` objects. In the following sections, you will learn how to work with maps.

### 9.4.1 Basic Map Operations

The Java library supplies two general-purpose implementations for maps: `HashMap` and `TreeMap`. Both classes implement the `Map` interface.

A hash map hashes the keys, and a tree map uses an ordering on the keys to organize them in a search tree. The hash or comparison function is applied *only to the keys*. The values associated with the keys are not hashed or compared.

Should you choose a hash map or a tree map? As with sets, hashing is usually a bit faster, and it is the preferred choice if you don't need to visit the keys in sorted order.

Here is how you set up a hash map for storing employees:

```
var staff = new HashMap<String, Employee>(); // HashMap implements Map
var harry = new Employee("Harry Hacker");
staff.put("987-98-9996", harry);
. . .
```

Whenever you add an object to a map, you must supply a key as well. In our case, the key is a string, and the corresponding value is an `Employee` object.

To retrieve an object, you must use (and, therefore, remember) the key.

```
var id = "987-98-9996";
Employee e = staff.get(id); // gets harry
```

If no information is stored in the map with the particular key specified, `get` returns `null`.

The `null` return value can be inconvenient. Sometimes, you have a good default that can be used for keys that are not present in the map. Then use the `getOrDefault` method.

```
Map<String, Integer> scores = . . .;
int score = scores.getOrDefault(id, 0); // gets 0 if the id is not present
```

Keys must be unique. You cannot store two values with the same key. If you call the `put` method twice with the same key, the second value replaces the first one. In fact, `put` returns the previous value associated with its key parameter.

The `remove` method removes an element with a given key from the map. The `size` method returns the number of entries in the map.

The easiest way of iterating over the keys and values of a map is the `forEach` method. Provide a lambda expression that receives a key and a value. That expression is invoked for each map entry in turn.

```
scores.forEach((k, v) ->
    System.out.println("key=" + k + ", value=" + v));
```

Listing 9.6 illustrates a map at work. We first add key/value pairs to a map. Then, we remove one key from the map, which removes its associated value as well. Next, we change the value that is associated with a key and call the get method to look up a value. Finally, we iterate through the entry set.

**Listing 9.6** map/MapTest.java

```
1 package map;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates the use of a map with key type String and value type Employee.
7  * @version 1.12 2015-06-21
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class MapTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var staff = new HashMap<String, Employee>();
15         staff.put("144-25-5464", new Employee("Amy Lee"));
16         staff.put("567-24-2546", new Employee("Harry Hacker"));
17         staff.put("157-62-7935", new Employee("Gary Cooper"));
18         staff.put("456-62-5527", new Employee("Francesca Cruz"));
19
20         // print all entries
21
22         System.out.println(staff);
23
24         // remove an entry
25
26         staff.remove("567-24-2546");
27
28         // replace an entry
29
30         staff.put("456-62-5527", new Employee("Francesca Miller"));
31
32         // look up a value
33
34         System.out.println(staff.get("157-62-7935"));
35
36         // iterate through all entries
37 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 9.6 (Continued)**

```
38     staff.forEach((k, v) ->
39         System.out.println("key=" + k + ", value=" + v));
40     }
41 }
```

---

***java.util.Map<K, V> 1.2***

- **V get(Object key)**  
gets the value associated with the key; returns the object associated with the key, or null if the key is not found in the map. Implementing classes may forbid null keys.
- **default V getOrDefault(Object key, V defaultValue)**  
gets the value associated with the key; returns the object associated with the key, or defaultValue if the key is not found in the map.
- **V put(K key, V value)**  
puts the association of a key and a value into the map. If the key is already present, the new object replaces the old one previously associated with the key. This method returns the old value of the key, or null if the key was not previously present. Implementing classes may forbid null keys or values.
- **void putAll(Map<? extends K, ? extends V> entries)**  
adds all entries from the specified map to this map.
- **boolean containsKey(Object key)**  
returns true if the key is present in the map.
- **boolean containsValue(Object value)**  
returns true if the value is present in the map.
- **default void forEach(BiConsumer<? super K,? super V> action) 8**  
applies the action to all key/value pairs of this map.

***java.util.HashMap<K, V> 1.2***

- **HashMap()**
- **HashMap(int initialCapacity)**
- **HashMap(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor)**

constructs an empty hash map with the specified capacity and load factor (a number between 0.0 and 1.0 that determines at what percentage of fullness the hash table will be rehashed into a larger one). The default load factor is 0.75.

**java.util.TreeMap<K,V> 1.2**

- `TreeMap()`  
constructs an empty tree map for keys that implement the Comparable interface.
- `TreeMap(Comparator<? super K> c)`  
constructs a tree map and uses the specified comparator for sorting its keys.
- `TreeMap(Map<? extends K, ? extends V> entries)`  
constructs a tree map and adds all entries from a map.
- `TreeMap(SortedMap<? extends K, ? extends V> entries)`  
constructs a tree map, adds all entries from a sorted map, and uses the same element comparator as the given sorted map.

**java.util.SortedMap<K, V> 1.2**

- `Comparator<? super K> comparator()`  
returns the comparator used for sorting the keys, or null if the keys are compared with the compareTo method of the Comparable interface.
- `K firstKey()`
- `K lastKey()`  
returns the smallest or largest key in the map.

### 9.4.2 Updating Map Entries

A tricky part of dealing with maps is updating an entry. Normally, you get the old value associated with a key, update it, and put back the updated value. But you have to worry about the special case of the first occurrence of a key. Consider using a map for counting how often a word occurs in a file. When we see a word, we'd like to increment a counter like this:

```
counts.put(word, counts.get(word) + 1);
```

That works, except in the case when word is encountered for the first time. Then get returns null, and a NullPointerException occurs.

A simple remedy is to use the `getOrDefault` method:

```
counts.put(word, counts.getOrDefault(word, 0) + 1);
```

Another approach is to first call the `putIfAbsent` method. It only puts a value if the key was previously absent (or mapped to null).

```
counts.putIfAbsent(word, 0);
counts.put(word, counts.get(word) + 1); // now we know that get will succeed
```

But you can do better than that. The `merge` method simplifies this common operation. The call

```
counts.merge(word, 1, Integer::sum);
```

associates `word` with 1 if the key wasn't previously present, and otherwise combines the previous value and 1, using the `Integer::sum` function.

The API notes describe other methods for updating map entries that are less commonly used.

#### `java.util.Map<K, V>` 1.2

- `default V merge(K key, V value, BiFunction<? super V, ? super V, ? extends V> remappingFunction)` 8

If key is associated with a non-null value v, applies the function to v and value and either associates key with the result or, if the result is null, removes the key. Otherwise, associates key with value. Returns `get(key)`.

- `default V compute(K key, BiFunction<? super K, ? super V, ? extends V> remappingFunction)` 8

Applies the function to key and `get(key)`. Either associates key with the result or, if the result is null, removes the key. Returns `get(key)`.

- `default V computeIfPresent(K key, BiFunction<? super K, ? super V, ? extends V> remappingFunction)` 8

If key is associated with a non-null value v, applies the function to key and v and either associates key with the result or, if the result is null, removes the key. Returns `get(key)`.

- `default V computeIfAbsent(K key, Function<? super K, ? extends V> mappingFunction)` 8

Applies the function to key unless key is associated with a non-null value. Either associates key with the result or, if the result is null, removes the key. Returns `get(key)`.

- `default void replaceAll(BiFunction<? super K, ? super V, ? extends V> function)` 8

Calls the function on all entries. Associates keys with non-null results and removes keys with null results.

- `default V putIfAbsent(K key, V value)` 8

If key is absent or associated with null, associates it with value and returns null. Otherwise returns the associated value.

### 9.4.3 Map Views

The collections framework does not consider a map itself as a collection. (Other frameworks for data structures consider a map as a collection of key/value pairs, or as a collection of values indexed by the keys.) However, you can obtain *views* of the map—objects that implement the `Collection` interface or one of its subinterfaces.

There are three views: the set of keys, the collection of values (which is not a set), and the set of key/value pairs. The keys and key/value pairs form a set because there can be only one copy of a key in a map. The methods

```
Set<K> keySet()
Collection<V> values()
Set<Map.Entry<K, V>> entrySet()
```

return these three views. (The elements of the entry set are objects of a class implementing the `Map.Entry` interface.)

Note that the `keySet` is *not* a `HashSet` or `TreeSet`, but an object of some other class that implements the `Set` interface. The `Set` interface extends the `Collection` interface. Therefore, you can use a `keySet` as you would use any collection.

For example, you can enumerate all keys of a map:

```
Set<String> keys = map.keySet();
for (String key : keys)
{
    do something with key
}
```

If you want to look at both keys and values, you can avoid value lookups by enumerating the *entries*. Use the following code skeleton:

```
for (Map.Entry<String, Employee> entry : staff.entrySet())
{
    String k = entry.getKey();
    Employee v = entry.getValue();
    do something with k, v
}
```



**TIP:** You can avoid the cumbersome `Map.Entry` by using a `var` declaration.

```
for (var entry : map.entrySet())
{
    do something with entry.getKey(), entry.getValue()
}
```

Or simply use the `forEach` method:

```
map.forEach((k, v) -> {
    do something with k, v
});
```

---

If you invoke the `remove` method of the iterator on the key set view, you actually remove the key *and its associated value* from the map. However, you cannot *add* an element to the key set view. It makes no sense to add a key without also adding a value. If you try to invoke the `add` method, it throws an `UnsupportedOperationException`. The entry set view has the same restriction, even though it would make conceptual sense to add a new key/value pair.

**`java.util.Map<K, V>` 1.2**

- `Set<Map.Entry<K, V>> entrySet()`

returns a set view of `Map.Entry` objects, the key/value pairs in the map. You can remove elements from this set and they are removed from the map, but you cannot add any elements.

- `Set<K> keySet()`

returns a set view of all keys in the map. You can remove elements from this set and the keys and associated values are removed from the map, but you cannot add any elements.

- `Collection<V> values()`

returns a collection view of all values in the map. You can remove elements from this set and the removed value and its key are removed from the map, but you cannot add any elements.

**`java.util.Map.Entry<K, V>` 1.2**

- `K getKey()`
- `V getValue()`

returns the key or value of this entry.

- `V setValue(V newValue)`

changes the value *in the associated map* to the new value and returns the old value.

#### 9.4.4 Weak Hash Maps

The collection class library has several map classes for specialized needs that we briefly discuss in this and the following sections.

The `WeakHashMap` class was designed to solve an interesting problem. What happens with a value whose key is no longer used anywhere in your program? Suppose the last reference to a key has gone away. Then, there is no longer any way to refer to the value object. But, as no part of the program has the key any more, the key/value pair cannot be removed from the map. Why can't the garbage collector remove it? Isn't it the job of the garbage collector to remove unused objects?

Unfortunately, it isn't quite so simple. The garbage collector traces *live* objects. As long as the map object is live, *all* buckets in it are live and won't be reclaimed. Thus, your program should take care to remove unused values from long-lived maps. Or, you can use a `WeakHashMap` instead. This data structure cooperates with the garbage collector to remove key/value pairs when the only reference to the key is the one from the hash table entry.

Here are the inner workings of this mechanism. The `WeakHashMap` uses *weak references* to hold keys. A `WeakReference` object holds a reference to another object—in our case, a hash table key. Objects of this type are treated in a special way by the garbage collector. Normally, if the garbage collector finds that a particular object has no references to it, it simply reclaims the object. However, if the object is reachable *only* by a `WeakReference`, the garbage collector still reclaims the object, but places the weak reference that led to it into a queue. The operations of the `WeakHashMap` periodically check that queue for newly arrived weak references. The arrival of a weak reference in the queue signifies that the key was no longer used by anyone and has been collected. The `WeakHashMap` then removes the associated entry.

#### 9.4.5 Linked Hash Sets and Maps

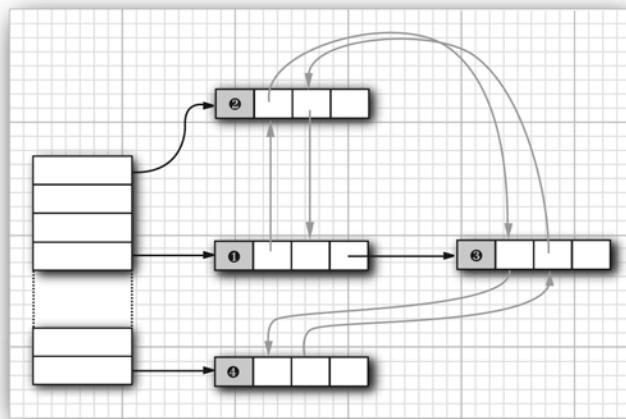
The `LinkedHashSet` and `LinkedHashMap` classes remember in which order you inserted items. That way, you can avoid the seemingly random order of items in a hash table. As entries are inserted into the table, they are joined in a doubly linked list (see Figure 9.11).

For example, consider the following map insertions from Listing 9.6:

```
var staff = new LinkedHashMap<String, Employee>();
staff.put("144-25-5464", new Employee("Amy Lee"));
staff.put("567-24-2546", new Employee("Harry Hacker"));
staff.put("157-62-7935", new Employee("Gary Cooper"));
staff.put("456-62-5527", new Employee("Francesca Cruz"));
```

Then, `staff.keySet().iterator()` enumerates the keys in this order:

```
144-25-5464
567-24-2546
```



**Figure 9.11** A linked hash table

157-62-7935  
456-62-5527

and `staff.values().iterator()` enumerates the values in this order:

Amy Lee  
Harry Hacker  
Gary Cooper  
Francesca Cruz

A linked hash map can alternatively use *access order*, not insertion order, to iterate through the map entries. Every time you call `get` or `put`, the affected entry is removed from its current position and placed at the *end* of the linked list of entries. (Only the position in the linked list of entries is affected, not the hash table bucket. An entry always stays in the bucket that corresponds to the hash code of the key.) To construct such a hash map, call

```
LinkedHashMap<K, V>(initialCapacity, loadFactor, true)
```

Access order is useful for implementing a “least recently used” discipline for a cache. For example, you may want to keep frequently accessed entries in memory and read less frequently accessed objects from a database. When you don’t find an entry in the table, and the table is already pretty full, you can get an iterator into the table and remove the first few elements that it enumerates. Those entries were the least recently used ones.

You can even automate that process. Form a subclass of `LinkedHashMap` and override the method

```
protected boolean removeEldestEntry(Map.Entry<K, V> eldest)
```

Adding a new entry then causes the eldest entry to be removed whenever your method returns true. For example, the following cache is kept at a size of at most 100 elements:

```
var cache = new LinkedHashMap<K, V>(128, 0.75F, true)
{
    protected boolean removeEldestEntry(Map.Entry<K, V> eldest)
    {
        return size() > 100;
    }
};
```

Alternatively, you can consider the eldest entry to decide whether to remove it. For example, you may want to check a time stamp stored with the entry.

#### 9.4.6 Enumeration Sets and Maps

The `EnumSet` is an efficient set implementation with elements that belong to an enumerated type. Since an enumerated type has a finite number of instances, the `EnumSet` is internally implemented simply as a sequence of bits. A bit is turned on if the corresponding value is present in the set.

The `EnumSet` class has no public constructors. Use a static factory method to construct the set:

```
enum Weekday { MONDAY, TUESDAY, WEDNESDAY, THURSDAY, FRIDAY, SATURDAY, SUNDAY };
EnumSet<Weekday> always = EnumSet.allOf(Weekday.class);
EnumSet<Weekday> never = EnumSet.noneOf(Weekday.class);
EnumSet<Weekday> workday = EnumSet.range(Weekday.MONDAY, Weekday.FRIDAY);
EnumSet<Weekday> mwf = EnumSet.of(Weekday.MONDAY, Weekday.WEDNESDAY, Weekday.FRIDAY);
```

You can use the usual methods of the `Set` interface to modify an `EnumSet`.

An `EnumMap` is a map with keys that belong to an enumerated type. It is simply and efficiently implemented as an array of values. You need to specify the key type in the constructor:

```
var personInCharge = new EnumMap<Weekday, Employee>(Weekday.class);
```



**NOTE:** In the API documentation for `EnumSet`, you will see odd-looking type parameters of the form `E extends Enum<E>`. This simply means “`E` is an enumerated type.” All enumerated types extend the generic `Enum` class. For example, `Weekday` extends `Enum<Weekday>`.

### 9.4.7 Identity Hash Maps

The `IdentityHashMap` has a quite specialized purpose. Here, the hash values for the keys should not be computed by the `hashCode` method but by the `System.identityHashCode` method. That's the method that `Object.hashCode` uses to compute a hash code from the object's memory address. Also, for comparison of objects, the `IdentityHashMap` uses `==`, not `equals`.

In other words, different key objects are considered distinct even if they have equal contents. This class is useful for implementing object traversal algorithms, such as object serialization, in which you want to keep track of which objects have already been traversed.

#### `java.util.WeakHashMap<K, V>` 1.2

- `WeakHashMap()`
- `WeakHashMap(int initialCapacity)`
- `WeakHashMap(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor)`

constructs an empty hash map with the specified capacity and load factor.

#### `java.util.LinkedHashSet<E>` 1.4

- `LinkedHashSet()`
- `LinkedHashSet(int initialCapacity)`
- `LinkedHashSet(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor)`

constructs an empty linked hash set with the specified capacity and load factor.

#### `java.util.LinkedHashMap<K, V>` 1.4

- `LinkedHashMap()`
- `LinkedHashMap(int initialCapacity)`
- `LinkedHashMap(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor)`
- `LinkedHashMap(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor, boolean accessOrder)`

constructs an empty linked hash map with the specified capacity, load factor, and ordering. The `accessOrder` parameter is `true` for access order, `false` for insertion order.

(Continues)

**java.util.LinkedHashMap<K, V> 1.4 (Continued)**

- `protected boolean removeEldestEntry(Map.Entry<K, V> eldest)`

should be overridden to return true if you want the eldest entry to be removed. The `eldest` parameter is the entry whose removal is being contemplated. This method is called after an entry has been added to the map. The default implementation returns false—old elements are not removed by default. However, you can redefine this method to selectively return true—for example, if the eldest entry fits a certain condition or if the map exceeds a certain size.

**java.util.EnumSet<E extends Enum<E>> 5**

- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> allOf(Class<E> enumType)`  
returns a mutable set that contains all values of the given enumerated type.
- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> noneOf(Class<E> enumType)`  
returns a mutable set that is initially empty.
- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> range(E from, E to)`  
returns a mutable set that contains all values between `from` and `to` (inclusive).
- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> of(E e)`  
...
- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> of(E e1, E e2, E e3, E e4, E e5)`
- `static <E extends Enum<E>> EnumSet<E> of(E first, E... rest)`  
returns a mutable set containing the given elements which must not be null.

**java.util.EnumMap<K extends Enum<K>, V> 5**

- `EnumMap(Class<K> keyType)`  
constructs an empty mutable map whose keys have the given type.

**java.util.IdentityHashMap<K, V> 1.4**

- `IdentityHashMap()`
- `IdentityHashMap(int expectedMaxSize)`

constructs an empty identity hash map whose capacity is the smallest power of 2 exceeding  $1.5 \times \text{expectedMaxSize}$ . (The default for `expectedMaxSize` is 21.)

**java.lang.System 1.0**

- static int identityHashCode(Object obj) 1.1

returns the same hash code (derived from the object's memory address) that `Object.hashCode` computes, even if the class to which `obj` belongs has redefined the `hashCode` method.

## 9.5 Views and Wrappers

If you look at Figures 9.4 and 9.5, you might think it is overkill to have lots of interfaces and abstract classes to implement a modest number of concrete collection classes. However, these figures don't tell the whole story. By using *views*, you can obtain other objects that implement the `Collection` or `Map` interfaces. You saw one example of this with the `keySet` method of the `Map` classes. At first glance, it appears as if the method creates a new set, fills it with all the keys of the map, and returns it. However, that is not the case. Instead, the `keySet` method returns an object of a class that implements the `Set` interface and whose methods manipulate the original map. Such a collection is called a *view*.

The technique of views has a number of useful applications in the collections framework. We will discuss these applications in the following sections.

### 9.5.1 Small Collections

Java 9 introduces static methods yielding a set or list with given elements, and a map with given key/value pairs.

For example,

```
List<String> names = List.of("Peter", "Paul", "Mary");
Set<Integer> numbers = Set.of(2, 3, 5);
```

yield a list and a set with three elements. For a map, you specify the keys and values, like this:

```
Map<String, Integer> scores = Map.of("Peter", 2, "Paul", 3, "Mary", 5);
```

The elements, keys, or values may not be `null`.

The `List` and `Set` interfaces have eleven `of` methods with zero to ten arguments, and an `of` method with a variable number of arguments. The specializations are provided for efficiency.

For the Map interface, it is not possible to provide a version with variable arguments since the argument types alternate between the key and value types. There is a static method `ofEntries` that accepts an arbitrary number of `Map.Entry<K, V>` objects, which you can create with the static `entry` method. For example,

```
import static java.util.Map.*;  
.  
.  
.  
Map<String, Integer> scores = ofEntries(  
    entry("Peter", 2),  
    entry("Paul", 3),  
    entry("Mary", 5));
```

The `of` and `ofEntries` methods produce objects of classes that have an instance variable for each element, or that are backed by an array.

These collection objects are *unmodifiable*. Any attempt to change their contents results in an `UnsupportedOperationException`.

If you want a mutable collection, you can pass the unmodifiable collection to the constructor:

```
var names = new ArrayList<>(List.of("Peter", "Paul", "Mary"));
```

The method call

```
Collections.nCopies(n, anObject)
```

returns an immutable object that implements the List interface and gives the illusion of having `n` elements, each of which appears as `anObject`.

For example, the following call creates a List containing 100 strings, all set to "DEFAULT":

```
List<String> settings = Collections.nCopies(100, "DEFAULT");
```

There is very little storage cost—the object is stored only once.



**NOTE:** The `of` methods were introduced in Java 9. Previously, there was a static `Arrays.asList` method that returns a list that is mutable but not resizable. That is, you can call `set` but not `add` or `remove` on the list. There are also legacy methods `Collections.emptySet` and `Collections.singleton`.



**NOTE:** The `Collections` class contains a number of utility methods with parameters or return values that are collections. Do not confuse it with the `Collection` interface.



**TIP:** Java doesn't have a `Pair` class, and some programmers use a `Map.Entry` as a poor man's pair. Before Java 9, this was painful—you had to construct a new `AbstractMap.SimpleImmutableEntry<T>(first, second)`. Nowadays, you can call `Map.entry(first, second)`.

---

### 9.5.2 Subranges

You can form subrange views for a number of collections. For example, suppose you have a list `staff` and want to extract elements 10 to 19. Use the `subList` method to obtain a view into the subrange of the list:

```
List<Employee> group2 = staff.subList(10, 20);
```

The first index is inclusive, the second exclusive—just like the parameters for the `substring` operation of the `String` class.

You can apply any operations to the subrange, and they automatically reflect the entire list. For example, you can erase the entire subrange:

```
group2.clear(); // staff reduction
```

The elements get automatically cleared from the `staff` list, and `group2` becomes empty.

For sorted sets and maps, you use the sort order, not the element position, to form subranges. The `SortedSet` interface declares three methods:

```
SortedSet<E> subSet(E from, E to)
SortedSet<E> headSet(E to)
SortedSet<E> tailSet(E from)
```

These return the subsets of all elements that are larger than or equal to `from` and strictly smaller than `to`. For sorted maps, the similar methods

```
SortedMap<K, V> subMap(K from, K to)
SortedMap<K, V> headMap(K to)
SortedMap<K, V> tailMap(K from)
```

return views into the maps consisting of all entries in which the *keys* fall into the specified ranges.

The `NavigableSet` interface introduced in Java 6 gives more control over these subrange operations. You can specify whether the bounds are included:

```
NavigableSet<E> subSet(E from, boolean fromInclusive, E to, boolean toInclusive)
NavigableSet<E> headSet(E to, boolean toInclusive)
NavigableSet<E> tailSet(E from, boolean fromInclusive)
```

### 9.5.3 Unmodifiable Views

The `Collections` class has methods that produce *unmodifiable views* of collections. These views add a runtime check to an existing collection. If an attempt to modify the collection is detected, an exception is thrown and the collection remains untouched.

You obtain unmodifiable views by eight methods:

```
Collections.unmodifiableCollection  
Collections.unmodifiableList  
Collections.unmodifiableSet  
Collections.unmodifiableSortedSet  
Collections.unmodifiableNavigableSet  
Collections.unmodifiableMap  
Collections.unmodifiableSortedMap  
Collections.unmodifiableNavigableMap
```

Each method is defined to work on an interface. For example, `Collections.unmodifiableList` works with an `ArrayList`, a `LinkedList`, or any other class that implements the `List` interface.

For example, suppose you want to let some part of your code look at, but not touch, the contents of a collection. Here is what you could do:

```
var staff = new LinkedList<String>();  
.  
.  
lookAt(Collections.unmodifiableList(staff));
```

The `Collections.unmodifiableList` method returns an object of a class implementing the `List` interface. Its accessor methods retrieve values from the `staff` collection. Of course, the `lookAt` method can call all methods of the `List` interface, not just the accessors. But all mutator methods (such as `add`) have been redefined to throw an `UnsupportedOperationException` instead of forwarding the call to the underlying collection.

The unmodifiable view does not make the collection itself immutable. You can still modify the collection through its original reference (`staff`, in our case). And you can still call mutator methods on the elements of the collection.

The views wrap the *interface* and not the actual collection object, so you only have access to those methods that are defined in the interface. For example, the `LinkedList` class has convenience methods, `addFirst` and `addLast`, that are not part of the `List` interface. These methods are not accessible through the unmodifiable view.



**CAUTION:** The `unmodifiableCollection` method (as well as the `synchronizedCollection` and `checkedCollection` methods discussed later in this section) returns a collection whose `equals` method does *not* invoke the `equals` method of the underlying collection. Instead, it inherits the `equals` method of the `Object` class, which just tests whether the objects are identical. If you turn a set or list into just a collection, you can no longer test for equal contents. The view acts in this way because equality testing is not well defined at this level of the hierarchy. The views treat the `hashCode` method in the same way.

However, the `unmodifiableSet` and `unmodifiableList` methods use the `equals` and `hashCode` methods of the underlying collections.

---

#### 9.5.4 Synchronized Views

If you access a collection from multiple threads, you need to ensure that the collection is not accidentally damaged. For example, it would be disastrous if one thread tried to add to a hash table while another thread was rehashing the elements.

Instead of implementing thread-safe collection classes, the library designers used the view mechanism to make regular collections thread safe. For example, the static `synchronizedMap` method in the `Collections` class can turn any map into a Map with synchronized access methods:

```
var map = Collections.synchronizedMap(new HashMap<String, Employee>());
```

You can now access the `map` object from multiple threads. The methods such as `get` and `put` are synchronized—each method call must be finished completely before another thread can call another method. We discuss the issue of synchronized access to data structures in greater detail in Chapter 12.

#### 9.5.5 Checked Views

Checked views are intended as debugging support for a problem that can occur with generic types. As explained in Chapter 8, it is actually possible to smuggle elements of the wrong type into a generic collection. For example:

```
var strings = new ArrayList<String>();
ArrayList rawList = strings; // warning only, not an error,
                           // for compatibility with legacy code
rawList.add(new Date()); // now strings contains a Date object!
```

The erroneous `add` command is not detected at runtime. Instead, a class cast exception will happen later when another part of the code calls `get` and casts the result to a `String`.

A checked view can detect this problem. Define a safe list as follows:

```
List<String> safeStrings = Collections.checkedList(strings, String.class);
```

The view's `add` method checks that the inserted object belongs to the given class and immediately throws a `ClassCastException` if it does not. The advantage is that the error is reported at the correct location:

```
ArrayList rawList = safeStrings;
rawList.add(new Date()); // checked list throws a ClassCastException
```



**CAUTION:** The checked views are limited by the runtime checks that the virtual machine can carry out. For example, if you have an `ArrayList<Pair<String>>`, you cannot protect it from inserting a `Pair<Date>` since the virtual machine has a single “raw” `Pair` class.

### 9.5.6 A Note on Optional Operations

A view usually has some restriction—it may be read-only, it may not be able to change the size, or it may support removal but not insertion (as is the case for the key view of a map). A restricted view throws an `UnsupportedOperationException` if you attempt an inappropriate operation.

In the API documentation for the collection and iterator interfaces, many methods are described as “optional operations.” This seems to be in conflict with the notion of an interface. After all, isn’t the purpose of an interface to lay out the methods that a class *must* implement? Indeed, this arrangement is unsatisfactory from a theoretical perspective. A better solution might have been to design separate interfaces for read-only views and views that can’t change the size of a collection. However, that would have tripled the number of interfaces, which the designers of the library found unacceptable.

Should you extend the technique of “optional” methods to your own designs? We think not. Even though collections are used frequently, the coding style for implementing them is not typical for other problem domains. The designers of a collection class library have to resolve a particularly brutal set of conflicting requirements. Users want the library to be easy to learn, convenient to use, completely generic, idiot-proof, and at the same time as efficient as hand-coded algorithms. It is plainly impossible to achieve all these goals simultaneously, or even to come close. But in your own programming problems, you will rarely encounter such an extreme set of constraints. You should be able to find solutions that do not rely on the extreme measure of “optional” interface operations.

**java.util.List 1.2**

- static <E> List<E> of() 9
- static <E> List<E> of(E e1) 9
  - ...
- static <E> List<E> of(E e1, E e2, E e3, E e4, E e5, E e6, E e7, E e8, E e9, E e10) 9
- static <E> List<E> of(E... elements) 9

yields an immutable list of the given elements, which must not be null.

**java.util.Set 1.2**

- static <E> Set<E> of() 9
- static <E> Set<E> of(E e1) 9
  - ...
- static <E> Set<E> of(E e1, E e2, E e3, E e4, E e5, E e6, E e7, E e8, E e9, E e10) 9
- static <E> Set<E> of(E... elements) 9

yields an immutable set of the given elements, which must not be null.

**java.util.Map 1.2**

- static <K, V> Map<K, V> of() 9
  - static <K, V> Map<K, V> of(K k1, V v1) 9
    - ...
  - static <K,V> Map<K,V> of(K k1, V v1, K k2, V v2, K k3, V v3, K k4, V v4, K k5, V v5, K k6, V v6, K k7, V v7, K k8, V v8, K k9, V v9, K k10, V v10) 9
    - ...
- yields an immutable map of the given keys and values, which must not be null.
- static <K,V> Map.Entry<K,V> entry(K k, V v) 9
    - ...
- yields an immutable map entry of the given key and value, which must not be null.
- static <K,V> Map<K,V> ofEntries(Map.Entry<? extends K,? extends V>... entries) 9
    - ...
- yields an immutable map of the given entries.

**java.util.Collections 1.2**

- static <E> Collection unmodifiableCollection(Collection<E> c)
  - static <E> List unmodifiableList(List<E> c)
  - static <E> Set unmodifiableSet(Set<E> c)
  - static <E> SortedSet unmodifiableSortedSet(SortedSet<E> c)
  - static <E> SortedSet unmodifiableNavigableSet(NavigableSet<E> c) 8
  - static <K, V> Map unmodifiableMap(Map<K, V> c)
  - static <K, V> SortedMap unmodifiableSortedMap(SortedMap<K, V> c)
  - static <K, V> SortedMap unmodifiableNavigableMap(NavigableMap<K, V> c) 8
- constructs a view of the collection; the view's mutator methods throw an `UnsupportedOperationException`.
- static <E> Collection<E> synchronizedCollection(Collection<E> c)
  - static <E> List synchronizedList(List<E> c)
  - static <E> Set synchronizedSet(Set<E> c)
  - static <E> SortedSet synchronizedSortedSet(SortedSet<E> c)
  - static <E> NavigableSet synchronizedNavigableSet(NavigableSet<E> c) 8
  - static <K, V> Map<K, V> synchronizedMap(Map<K, V> c)
  - static <K, V> SortedMap<K, V> synchronizedSortedMap(SortedMap<K, V> c)
  - static <K, V> NavigableMap<K, V> synchronizedNavigableMap(NavigableMap<K, V> c) 8
- constructs a view of the collection; the view's methods are synchronized.
- static <E> Collection checkedCollection(Collection<E> c, Class<E> elementType)
  - static <E> List checkedList(List<E> c, Class<E> elementType)
  - static <E> Set checkedSet(Set<E> c, Class<E> elementType)
  - static <E> SortedSet checkedSortedSet(SortedSet<E> c, Class<E> elementType)
  - static <E> NavigableSet checkedNavigableSet(NavigableSet<E> c, Class<E> elementType) 8
  - static <K, V> Map checkedMap(Map<K, V> c, Class<K> keyType, Class<V> valueType)
  - static <K, V> SortedMap checkedSortedMap(SortedMap<K, V> c, Class<K> keyType, Class<V> valueType)
  - static <K, V> NavigableMap checkedNavigableMap(NavigableMap<K, V> c, Class<K> keyType, Class<V> valueType) 8
  - static <E> Queue<E> checkedQueue(Queue<E> queue, Class<E> elementType) 8
- constructs a view of the collection; the view's methods throw a `ClassCastException` if an element of the wrong type is inserted.
- static <E> List<E> nCopies(int n, E value)
- yields an unmodifiable list with n identical values.

(Continues)

***java.util.Collections 1.2 (Continued)***

- static <E> List<E> singletonList(E value)
  - static <E> Set<E> singleton(E value)
  - static <K, V> Map<K, V> singletonMap(K key, V value)

yields a singleton list, set, or map. As of Java 9, use one of the of methods instead.
  - static <E> List<E> emptyList()
  - static <T> Set<T> emptySet()
  - static <E> SortedSet<E> emptySortedSet()
  - static NavigableSet<E> emptyNavigableSet()
  - static <K,V> Map<K,V> emptyMap()
  - static <K,V> SortedMap<K,V> emptySortedMap()
  - static <K,V> NavigableMap<K,V> emptyNavigableMap()
  - static <T> Enumeration<T> emptyEnumeration()
  - static <T> Iterator<T> emptyIterator()
  - static <T> ListIterator<T> emptyListIterator()
- yields an empty collection, map, or iterator.

***java.util.Arrays 1.2***

- static <E> List<E> asList(E... array)

returns a list view of the elements in an array that is modifiable but not resizable.

***java.util.List<E> 1.2***

- List<E> subList(int firstIncluded, int firstExcluded)

returns a list view of the elements within a range of positions.

***java.util.SortedSet<E> 1.2***

- SortedSet<E> subSet(E firstIncluded, E firstExcluded)
  - SortedSet<E> headSet(E firstExcluded)
  - SortedSet<E> tailSet(E firstIncluded)
- returns a view of the elements within a range.

**java.util.NavigableSet<E> 6**

- NavigableSet<E> subSet(E from, boolean fromIncluded, E to, boolean toIncluded)
- NavigableSet<E> headSet(E to, boolean toIncluded)
- NavigableSet<E> tailSet(E from, boolean fromIncluded)

returns a view of the elements within a range. The boolean flags determine whether the bounds are included in the view.

**java.util.SortedMap<K, V> 1.2**

- SortedMap<K, V> subMap(K firstIncluded, K firstExcluded)
- SortedMap<K, V> headMap(K firstExcluded)
- SortedMap<K, V> tailMap(K firstIncluded)

returns a map view of the entries whose keys are within a range.

**java.util.NavigableMap<K, V> 6**

- NavigableMap<K, V> subMap(K from, boolean fromIncluded, K to, boolean toIncluded)
- NavigableMap<K, V> headMap(K from, boolean fromIncluded)
- NavigableMap<K, V> tailMap(K to, boolean toIncluded)

returns a map view of the entries whose keys are within a range. The boolean flags determine whether the bounds are included in the view.

## 9.6 Algorithms

In addition to implementing collection classes, the Java collections framework also provides a number of useful algorithms. In the following sections, you will see how to use these algorithms and how to write your own algorithms that work well with the collections framework.

### 9.6.1 Why Generic Algorithms?

Generic collection interfaces have a great advantage—you only need to implement your algorithms once. For example, consider a simple algorithm to compute the maximum element in a collection. Traditionally, programmers would implement such an algorithm as a loop. Here is how you can find the largest element of an array.

```
if (a.length == 0) throw new NoSuchElementException();
T largest = a[0];
```

```
for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
    if (largest.compareTo(a[i]) < 0)
        largest = a[i];
```

Of course, to find the maximum of an array list, you would write the code slightly differently.

```
if (v.size() == 0) throw new NoSuchElementException();
T largest = v.get(0);
for (int i = 1; i < v.size(); i++)
    if (largest.compareTo(v.get(i)) < 0)
        largest = v.get(i);
```

What about a linked list? You don't have efficient random access in a linked list, but you can use an iterator.

```
if (l.isEmpty()) throw new NoSuchElementException();
Iterator<T> iter = l.iterator();
T largest = iter.next();
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    T next = iter.next();
    if (largest.compareTo(next) < 0)
        largest = next;
}
```

These loops are tedious to write, and just a bit error-prone. Is there an off-by-one error? Do the loops work correctly for empty containers? For containers with only one element? You don't want to test and debug this code every time, but you also don't want to implement a whole slew of methods, such as these:

```
static <T extends Comparable> T max(T[] a)
static <T extends Comparable> T max(ArrayList<T> v)
static <T extends Comparable> T max(LinkedList<T> l)
```

That's where the collection interfaces come in. Think of the *minimal* collection interface that you need to efficiently carry out the algorithm. Random access with get and set comes higher in the food chain than simple iteration. As you have seen in the computation of the maximum element in a linked list, random access is not required for this task. Computing the maximum can be done simply by iterating through the elements. Therefore, you can implement the max method to take *any* object that implements the Collection interface.

```
public static <T extends Comparable> T max(Collection<T> c)
{
    if (c.isEmpty()) throw new NoSuchElementException();
    Iterator<T> iter = c.iterator();
    T largest = iter.next();
```

```
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    T next = iter.next();
    if (largest.compareTo(next) < 0)
        largest = next;
}
return largest;
}
```

Now you can compute the maximum of a linked list, an array list, or an array, with a single method.

That's a powerful concept. In fact, the standard C++ library has dozens of useful algorithms, each operating on a generic collection. The Java library is not quite so rich, but it does contain the basics: sorting, binary search, and some utility algorithms.

## 9.6.2 Sorting and Shuffling

Computer old-timers will sometimes reminisce about how they had to use punched cards and to actually program, by hand, algorithms for sorting. Nowadays, of course, sorting algorithms are part of the standard library for most programming languages, and the Java programming language is no exception.

The `sort` method in the `Collections` class sorts a collection that implements the `List` interface.

```
var staff = new LinkedList<String>();
fill collection
Collections.sort(staff);
```

This method assumes that the list elements implement the `Comparable` interface. If you want to sort the list in some other way, you can use the `sort` method of the `List` interface and pass a `Comparator` object. Here is how you can sort a list of employees by salary:

```
staff.sort(Comparator.comparingDouble(Employee::getSalary));
```

If you want to sort a list in *descending* order, use the static convenience method `Comparator.reverseOrder()`. It returns a comparator that returns `b.compareTo(a)`. For example,

```
staff.sort(Comparator.reverseOrder())
```

sorts the elements in the list `staff` in reverse order, according to the ordering given by the `compareTo` method of the element type. Similarly,

```
staff.sort(Comparator.comparingDouble(Employee::getSalary).reversed())
```

sorts by descending salary.

You may wonder how the `sort` method sorts a list. Typically, when you look at a sorting algorithm in a book on algorithms, it is presented for arrays and uses random element access. However, random access in a linked list is inefficient. You can actually sort linked lists efficiently by using a form of merge sort. However, the implementation in the Java programming language does not do that. It simply dumps all elements into an array, sorts the array, and then copies the sorted sequence back into the list.

The sort algorithm used in the collections library is a bit slower than Quick-Sort, the traditional choice for a general-purpose sorting algorithm. However, it has one major advantage: It is *stable*, that is, it doesn't switch equal elements. Why do you care about the order of equal elements? Here is a common scenario. Suppose you have an employee list that you already sorted by name. Now you sort by salary. What happens to employees with equal salary? With a stable sort, the ordering by name is preserved. In other words, the outcome is a list that is sorted first by salary, then by name.

Collections need not implement all of their “optional” methods, so all methods that receive collection parameters must describe when it is safe to pass a collection to an algorithm. For example, you clearly cannot pass an `unmodifiableList` list to the `sort` algorithm. What kind of list *can* you pass? According to the documentation, the list must be modifiable but need not be resizable.

The terms are defined as follows:

- A list is *modifiable* if it supports the `set` method.
- A list is *resizable* if it supports the `add` and `remove` operations.

The `Collections` class has an algorithm `shuffle` that does the opposite of sorting—it randomly permutes the order of the elements in a list. For example:

```
ArrayList<Card> cards = . . .;
Collections.shuffle(cards);
```

If you supply a list that does not implement the `RandomAccess` interface, the `shuffle` method copies the elements into an array, shuffles the array, and copies the shuffled elements back into the list.

The program in Listing 9.7 fills an array list with 49 `Integer` objects containing the numbers 1 through 49. It then randomly shuffles the list and selects the first six values from the shuffled list. Finally, it sorts the selected values and prints them.

**Listing 9.7** shuffle/ShuffleTest.java

```
1 package shuffle;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates the random shuffle and sort algorithms.
7  * @version 1.12 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class ShuffleTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         var numbers = new ArrayList<Integer>();
15         for (int i = 1; i <= 49; i++)
16             numbers.add(i);
17         Collections.shuffle(numbers);
18         List<Integer> winningCombination = numbers.subList(0, 6);
19         Collections.sort(winningCombination);
20         System.out.println(winningCombination);
21     }
22 }
```

**java.util.Collections 1.2**

- static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> void sort(List<T> elements)  
sorts the elements in the list, using a stable sort algorithm. The algorithm is guaranteed to run in  $O(n \log n)$  time, where  $n$  is the length of the list.
- static void shuffle(List<?> elements)
- static void shuffle(List<?> elements, Random r)  
randomly shuffles the elements in the list. This algorithm runs in  $O(n \cdot a(n))$  time, where  $n$  is the length of the list and  $a(n)$  is the average time to access an element.

**java.util.List<E> 1.2**

- default void sort(Comparator<? super T> comparator) 8  
Sorts this list, using the given comparator.

***java.util.Comparator<T>*** 1.2

- static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> Comparator<T> reverseOrder() 8  
Yields a comparator that reverses the ordering provided by the Comparable interface.
- default Comparator<T> reversed() 8  
Yields a comparator that reverses the ordering provided by this comparator.

### 9.6.3 Binary Search

To find an object in an array, you normally visit all elements until you find a match. However, if the array is sorted, you can look at the middle element and check whether it is larger than the element that you are trying to find. If so, keep looking in the first half of the array; otherwise, look in the second half. That cuts the problem in half, and you keep going in the same way. For example, if the array has 1024 elements, you will locate the match (or confirm that there is none) after 10 steps, whereas a linear search would have taken you an average of 512 steps if the element is present, and 1024 steps to confirm that it is not.

The `binarySearch` of the `Collections` class implements this algorithm. Note that the collection must already be sorted, or the algorithm will return the wrong answer. To find an element, supply the collection (which must implement the `List` interface—more on that in the note below) and the element to be located. If the collection is not sorted by the `compareTo` element of the `Comparable` interface, supply a comparator object as well.

```
i = Collections.binarySearch(c, element);
i = Collections.binarySearch(c, element, comparator);
```

A non-negative return value from the `binarySearch` method denotes the index of the matching object. That is, `c.get(i)` is equal to `element` under the comparison order. If the value is negative, then there is no matching element. However, you can use the return value to compute the location where you *should* insert `element` into the collection to keep it sorted. The insertion location is

```
insertionPoint = -i - 1;
```

It isn't simply `-i` because then the value of `0` would be ambiguous. In other words, the operation

```
if (i < 0)
    c.add(-i - 1, element);
```

adds the element in the correct place.

To be worthwhile, binary search requires random access. If you have to iterate one by one through half of a linked list to find the middle element, you have lost all advantage of the binary search. Therefore, the `binarySearch` algorithm reverts to a linear search if you give it a linked list.

#### java.util.Collections 1.2

- static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> int `binarySearch(List<T> elements, T key)`
- static <T> int `binarySearch(List<T> elements, T key, Comparator<? super T> c)`

searches for a key in a sorted list, using a binary search if the element type implements the `RandomAccess` interface, and a linear search in all other cases. The methods are guaranteed to run in  $O(a(n) \log n)$  time, where  $n$  is the length of the list and  $a(n)$  is the average time to access an element. The methods return either the index of the key in the list, or a negative value  $i$  if the key is not present in the list. In that case, the key should be inserted at index  $-i - 1$  for the list to stay sorted.

### 9.6.4 Simple Algorithms

The `Collections` class contains several simple but useful algorithms. Among them is the example from the beginning of this section—finding the maximum value of a collection. Others include copying elements from one list to another, filling a container with a constant value, and reversing a list.

Why supply such simple algorithms in the standard library? Surely most programmers could easily implement them with simple loops. We like the algorithms because they make life easier for the programmer *reading* the code. When you read a loop that was implemented by someone else, you have to decipher the original programmer's intentions. For example, look at this loop:

```
for (int i = 0; i < words.size(); i++)  
    if (words.get(i).equals("C++")) words.set(i, "Java");
```

Now compare the loop with the call

```
Collections.replaceAll(words, "C++", "Java");
```

When you see the method call, you know right away what the code does.

The API notes at the end of this section describe the simple algorithms in the `Collections` class.

The default methods `Collection.removeIf` and `List.replaceAll` that are just a bit more complex. You provide a lambda expression to test or transform elements. For

example, here we remove all short words and change the remaining ones to lowercase:

```
words.removeIf(w -> w.length() <= 3);
words.replaceAll(String::toLowerCase);
```

#### java.util.Collections 1.2

- static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> T min(Collection<T> elements)
- static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> T max(Collection<T> elements)
- static <T> min(Collection<T> elements, Comparator<? super T> c)
- static <T> max(Collection<T> elements, Comparator<? super T> c)

returns the smallest or largest element in the collection. (The parameter bounds are simplified for clarity.)

- static <T> void copy(List<? super T> to, List<T> from)

copies all elements from a source list to the same positions in the target list. The target list must be at least as long as the source list.

- static <T> void fill(List<? super T> l, T value)

sets all positions of a list to the same value.

- static <T> boolean addAll(Collection<? super T> c, T... values) 5

adds all values to the given collection and returns true if the collection changed as a result.

- static <T> boolean replaceAll(List<T> l, T oldValue, T newValue) 1.4

replaces all elements equal to oldValue with newValue.

- static int indexOfSubList(List<?> l, List<?> s) 1.4

- static int lastIndexOfSubList(List<?> l, List<?> s) 1.4

returns the index of the first or last sublist of l equaling s, or -1 if no sublist of l equals s. For example, if l is [s, t, a, r] and s is [t, a, r], then both methods return the index 1.

- static void swap(List<?> l, int i, int j) 1.4

swaps the elements at the given offsets.

- static void reverse(List<?> l)

reverses the order of the elements in a list. For example, reversing the list [t, a, r] yields the list [r, a, t]. This method runs in O( $n$ ) time, where  $n$  is the length of the list.

(Continues)

**java.util.Collections 1.2 (Continued)**

- static void rotate(List<?> l, int d) **1.4**  
rotates the elements in the list, moving the entry with index i to position  $(i + d) \% l.size()$ . For example, rotating the list [t, a, r] by 2 yields the list [a, r, t]. This method runs in  $O(n)$  time, where  $n$  is the length of the list.
- static int frequency(Collection<?> c, Object o) **5**  
returns the count of elements in c that equal the object o.
- boolean disjoint(Collection<?> c1, Collection<?> c2) **5**  
returns true if the collections have no elements in common.

**java.util.Collection<T> 1.2**

- default boolean removeIf(Predicate<? super E> filter) **8**  
removes all matching elements.

**java.util.List<E> 1.2**

- default void replaceAll(UnaryOperator<E> op) **8**  
applies the operation to all elements of this list.

### 9.6.5 Bulk Operations

There are several operations that copy or remove elements “in bulk.” The call

```
coll1.removeAll(coll2);
```

removes all elements from coll1 that are present in coll2. Conversely,

```
coll1.retainAll(coll2);
```

removes all elements from coll1 that are *not* present in coll2. Here is a typical application.

Suppose you want to find the *intersection* of two sets—the elements that two sets have in common. First, make a new set to hold the result.

```
var result = new HashSet<String>(firstSet);
```

Here, we use the fact that every collection has a constructor whose parameter is another collection that holds the initialization values.

Now, use the `retainAll` method:

```
result.retainAll(secondSet);
```

It retains all elements that occur in both sets. You have formed the intersection without programming a loop.

You can carry this idea further and apply a bulk operation to a *view*. For example, suppose you have a map that maps employee IDs to employee objects and you have a set of the IDs of all employees that are to be terminated.

```
Map<String, Employee> staffMap = . . .;
Set<String> terminatedIDs = . . .;
```

Simply form the key set and remove all IDs of terminated employees.

```
staffMap.keySet().removeAll(terminatedIDs);
```

Since the key set is a view into the map, the keys and associated employee names are automatically removed from the map.

By using a subrange view, you can restrict bulk operations to sublists and subsets. For example, suppose you want to add the first ten elements of a list to another container. Form a sublist to pick out the first ten:

```
relocated.addAll(staff.subList(0, 10));
```

The subrange can also be a target of a mutating operation.

```
staff.subList(0, 10).clear();
```

### 9.6.6 Converting between Collections and Arrays

Large portions of the Java platform API were designed before the collections framework was created. As a result, you will occasionally need to translate between traditional arrays and the more modern collections.

If you have an array that you need to turn into a collection, the `List.of` wrapper serves this purpose. For example:

```
String[] values = . . .;
var staff = new HashSet<>(List.of(values));
```

Obtaining an array from a collection is a bit trickier. Of course, you can use the `toArray` method:

```
Object[] values = staff.toArray();
```

But the result is an array of *objects*. Even if you know that your collection contained objects of a specific type, you cannot use a cast:

```
String[] values = (String[]) staff.toArray(); // ERROR
```

The array returned by the `toArray` method was created as an `Object[]` array, and you cannot change its type. Instead, use a variant of the `toArray` method and give it an array of length 0 of the type that you'd like. The returned array is then created *as the same array type*:

```
String[] values = staff.toArray(new String[0]);
```

If you like, you can construct the array to have the correct size:

```
staff.toArray(new String[staff.size()]);
```

In this case, no new array is created.



**NOTE:** You may wonder why you can't simply pass a class object (such as `String.class`) to the `toArray` method. However, this method does "double duty"—both to fill an existing array (provided it is long enough) and to create a new array.

### 9.6.7 Writing Your Own Algorithms

If you write your own algorithm (or, in fact, any method that has a collection as a parameter), you should work with *interfaces*, not concrete implementations, whenever possible. For example, suppose you want to process items. Of course, you can implement a method like this:

```
public void processItems(ArrayList<Item> items)
{
    for (Item item : items)
        do something with item
}
```

However, you now constrained the caller of your method—the caller must supply the items in an `ArrayList`. If the items happen to be in another collection, they first need to be repackaged. It is much better to accept a more general collection.

You should ask yourself this: What is the most general collection interface that can do the job? Do you care about the order? Then you should accept a `List`. But if the order doesn't matter, you can accept collections of any kind:

```
public void processItems(Collection<Item> items)
{
    for (Item item : items)
        do something with item
}
```

Now, anyone can call this method with an `ArrayList` or a `LinkedList`, or even with an array wrapped with the `List.of` wrapper.



**TIP:** In this case, you can do even better by accepting an `Iterable<Item>`. The `Iterable` interface has a single abstract method `iterator` which the enhanced `for` loop uses behind the scenes. The `Collection` interface extends `Iterable`.

---

Conversely, if your method returns multiple elements, you don't want to constrain yourself against future improvements. For example, consider

```
public ArrayList<Item> lookupItems(. . .)
{
    var result = new ArrayList<Item>();
    . .
    return result;
}
```

This method promises to return an `ArrayList`, even though the caller almost certainly doesn't care what kind of lists it is. If instead you return a `List`, you can at any time add a branch that returns an empty or singleton list by calling `List.of`.



**NOTE:** If it is such a good idea to use collection interfaces as parameter and return type, why doesn't the Java library follow this rule consistently? For example, the `JComboBox` class has two constructors:

```
JComboBox(Object[] items)
JComboBox(Vector<?> items)
```

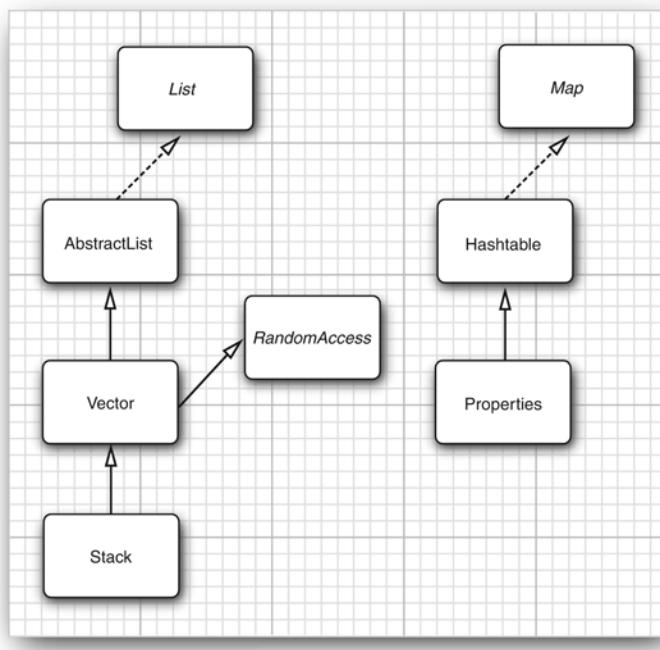
The reason is simply timing. The Swing library was created before the collections library.

---

## 9.7 Legacy Collections

A number of “legacy” container classes have been present since the first release of Java, before there was a collections framework.

They have been integrated into the collections framework—see Figure 9.12. We briefly introduce them in the following sections.



**Figure 9.12** Legacy classes in the collections framework

### 9.7.1 The **Hashtable** Class

The classic **Hashtable** class serves the same purpose as the **HashMap** class and has essentially the same interface. Just like methods of the **Vector** class, the **Hashtable** methods are synchronized. If you do not require compatibility with legacy code, you should use a **HashMap** instead. If you need concurrent access, use a **ConcurrentHashMap**—see Chapter 12.

### 9.7.2 Enumerations

The legacy collections use the **Enumeration** interface for traversing sequences of elements. The **Enumeration** interface has two methods, **hasMoreElements** and **nextElement**. These are entirely analogous to the **hasNext** and **next** methods of the **Iterator** interface.

If you find this interface with legacy classes, you can use `Collections.list` to collect the elements in an `ArrayList`. For example, the `LogManager` class is only willing to reveal logger names as an `Enumeration`. Here is how you can get them all:

```
ArrayList<String> loggerNames = Collections.list(LogManager.getLoggerNames());
```

Alternatively, as of Java 9, you can turn an enumeration into an iterator:

```
LogManager.getLoggerNames().asIterator().forEachRemaining(n -> { . . . });
```

You will occasionally encounter a legacy method that expects an enumeration parameter. The static method `Collections.enumeration` yields an enumeration object that enumerates the elements in the collection. For example:

```
List<InputStream> streams = . . .;
var in = new SequenceInputStream(Collections.enumeration(streams));
// the SequenceInputStream constructor expects an enumeration
```



**NOTE:** In C++, it is quite common to use iterators as parameters. Fortunately, on the Java platform, very few programmers use this idiom. It is much smarter to pass around the collection than to pass an iterator. The collection object is more useful. The recipients can always obtain the iterator from the collection when they need to do so, plus they have all the collection methods at their disposal. However, you will find enumerations in some legacy code because they were the only available mechanism for generic collections until the collections framework appeared in Java 1.2.

---

#### `java.util.Enumeration<E>` 1.0

- `boolean hasMoreElements()`  
returns true if there are more elements yet to be inspected.
- `E nextElement()`  
returns the next element to be inspected. Do not call this method if `hasMoreElements()` returned false.
- `default Iterator<E> asIterator()` 9  
yields an iterator that iterates over the enumerated elements.

**java.util.Collections 1.2**

- static <T> Enumeration<T> enumeration(Collection<T> c)  
returns an enumeration that enumerates the elements of c.
- public static <T> ArrayList<T> list(Enumeration<T> e)  
returns an array list containing the elements enumerated by e.

### 9.7.3 Property Maps

A *property map* is a map structure of a special type. It has three particular characteristics:

- The keys and values are strings.
- The map can easily be saved to a file and loaded from a file.
- There is a secondary table for default values.

The Java platform class that implements a property map is called `Properties`. Property maps are useful in specifying configuration options for programs. For example:

```
var settings = new Properties();
settings.setProperty("width", "600.0");
settings.setProperty("filename", "/home/cay/books/cj11/code/v1ch11/raven.html");
```

Use the `store` method to save map list of properties to a file. Here, we just save the property map in the file `program.properties`. The second argument is a comment that is included in the file.

```
var out = new FileOutputStream("program.properties");
settings.store(out, "Program Properties");
```

The sample set gives the following output:

```
#Program Properties
#Sun Dec 31 12:54:19 PST 2017
top=227.0
left=1286.0
width=423.0
height=547.0
filename=/home/cay/books/cj11/code/v1ch11/raven.html
```

To load the properties from a file, use

```
var in = new FileInputStream("program.properties");
settings.load(in);
```

The `System.getProperties` method yields a `Properties` object to describe system information. For example, the home directory has the key "user.home". You can read it with the `getProperties` method that yields the key as a string:

```
String userDir = System.getProperty("user.home");
```



**CAUTION:** For historical reasons, the `Properties` class implements `Map<Object, Object>`. Therefore, you can use the `get` and `put` methods of the `Map` interface. But the `get` method returns the type `Object`, and the `put` method allows you to insert any object. It is best to stick with the `getProperty` and `setProperty` methods that work with strings, not objects.

---

To get the Java version of the virtual machine, look up the "java.version" property. You get a string such as "11.0.1" (or "1.8.0" for Java 8.)



**TIP:** As you can see, the version numbering changed in Java 9. This seemingly small change broke a good number of tools that had relied on the old format. If you parse the version string, be sure to read JEP 322 at <http://openjdk.java.net/jeps/322> to see how version strings will be formatted in the future—or at least, until the numbering scheme changes again.

---

The `Properties` class has two mechanisms for providing defaults. First, whenever you look up the value of a string, you can specify a default that should be used automatically when the key is not present.

```
String filename = settings.getProperty("filename", "");
```

If there is a "filename" property in the property map, `filename` is set to that string. Otherwise, `filename` is set to the empty string.

If you find it too tedious to specify the default in every call to `getProperty`, you can pack all the defaults into a secondary property map and supply that map in the constructor of your primary property map.

```
var defaultSettings = new Properties();
defaultSettings.setProperty("width", "600");
defaultSettings.setProperty("height", "400");
defaultSettings.setProperty("filename", "");
...
var settings = new Properties(defaultSettings);
```

Yes, you can even specify defaults to defaults if you give another property map parameter to the `defaultSettings` constructor, but it is not something one would normally do.

The companion code has a sample program that shows how you can use properties for storing and loading program state. The program uses the ImageViewer program from Chapter 2 and remembers the frame position, size, and last loaded file. Run the program, load a file, and move and resize the window. Then close the program and reopen it to see that it remembers your file and your favorite window placement. You can also manually edit the file `.corejava/ImageViewer.properties` in your home directory.



**NOTE:** Prior to Java 9, properties files used the 7-bit ASCII encoding. Nowadays, they use UTF-8.

Properties are simple tables without a hierarchical structure. It is common to introduce a fake hierarchy with key names such as `window.main.color`, `window.main.title`, and so on. But the `Properties` class has no methods that help organize such a hierarchy. If you store complex configuration information, you should use the `Preferences` class instead—see Chapter 10.

#### `java.util.Properties` 1.0

- `Properties()`  
creates an empty property map.
- `Properties(Properties defaults)`  
creates an empty property map with a set of defaults.
- `String getProperty(String key)`  
gets a property. Returns the string associated with the key, or the string associated with the key in the default table if it wasn't present in the table, or `null` if the key wasn't present in the default table either.
- `String getProperty(String key, String defaultValue)`  
gets a property with a default value if the key is not found. Returns the string associated with the key, or the default string if it wasn't present in the table.
- `ObjectsetProperty(String key, String value)`  
sets a property. Returns the previously set value of the given key.
- `void load(InputStream in) throws IOException`  
loads a property map from an input stream.
- `void store(OutputStream out, String header) 1.2`  
saves a property map to an output stream. The header in the first line of the stored file.

**java.lang.System 1.0**

- `Properties getProperties()`

retrieves all system properties. The application must have permission to retrieve all properties, or a security exception is thrown.

- `String getProperty(String key)`

retrieves the system property with the given key name. The application must have permission to retrieve the property, or a security exception is thrown. The following properties can always be retrieved:

```
java.version  
java.vendor  
java.vendor.url  
java.home  
java.class.path  
java.library.path  
java.class.version  
os.name  
os.version  
os.arch  
file.separator  
path.separator  
line.separator  
java.io.tmpdir  
user.name  
user.home  
user.dir  
java.compiler  
java.specification.version  
java.specification.vendor  
java.specification.name  
java.vm.specification.version  
java.vm.specification.vendor  
java.vm.specification.name  
java.vm.version  
java.vm.vendor  
java.vm.name
```

#### 9.7.4 Stacks

Since version 1.0, the standard library had a `Stack` class with the familiar `push` and `pop` methods. However, the `Stack` class extends the `Vector` class, which is not satisfactory from a theoretical perspective—you can apply such un-stack-like operations as `insert` and `remove` to insert and remove values anywhere, not just at the top of the stack.

**java.util.Stack<E>** 1.0

- E push(E item)  
pushes item onto the stack and returns item.
- E pop()  
pops and returns the top item of the stack. Don't call this method if the stack is empty.
- E peek()  
returns the top of the stack without popping it. Don't call this method if the stack is empty.

### 9.7.5 Bit Sets

The Java platform's `BitSet` class stores a sequence of bits. (It is not a *set* in the mathematical sense—bit *vector* or bit *array* would have been more appropriate terms.) Use a bit set if you need to store a sequence of bits (for example, flags) efficiently. A bit set packs the bits into bytes, so it is far more efficient to use a bit set than an `ArrayList` of `Boolean` objects.

The `BitSet` class gives you a convenient interface for reading, setting, and resetting individual bits. Using this interface avoids the masking and other bit-fiddling operations that are necessary if you store bits in `int` or `long` variables.

For example, for a `BitSet` named `bucketOfBits`,

```
bucketOfBits.get(i)
```

returns `true` if the `i`th bit is on, and `false` otherwise. Similarly,

```
bucketOfBits.set(i)
```

turns the `i`th bit on. Finally,

```
bucketOfBits.clear(i)
```

turns the `i`th bit off.



**C++ NOTE:** The C++ `bitset` template has the same functionality as the Java platform `BitSet`.

**java.util.BitSet 1.0**

- `BitSet(int initialCapacity)`  
constructs a bit set.
- `int length()`  
returns the “logical length” of the bit set: 1 plus the index of the highest set bit.
- `boolean get(int bit)`  
gets a bit.
- `void set(int bit)`  
sets a bit.
- `void clear(int bit)`  
clears a bit.
- `void and(BitSet set)`  
logically ANDs this bit set with another.
- `void or(BitSet set)`  
logically ORs this bit set with another.
- `void xor(BitSet set)`  
logically XORs this bit set with another.
- `void andNot(BitSet set)`  
clears all bits in this bit set that are set in the other bit set.

As an example of using bit sets, we want to show you an implementation of the “sieve of Eratosthenes” algorithm for finding prime numbers. (A prime number is a number like 2, 3, or 5 that is divisible only by itself and 1, and the sieve of Eratosthenes was one of the first methods discovered to enumerate these fundamental building blocks.) This isn’t a terribly good algorithm for finding the primes, but for some reason it has become a popular benchmark for compiler performance. (It isn’t a good benchmark either, because it mainly tests bit operations.)

Oh well, we bow to tradition and present an implementation. This program counts all prime numbers between 2 and 2,000,000. (There are 148,933 primes in this interval, so you probably don’t want to print them all out.)

Without going into too many details of this program, the idea is to march through a bit set with 2 million bits. First, we turn on all the bits. After that, we turn off the bits that are multiples of numbers known to be prime. The positions of the bits that remain after this process are themselves prime

numbers. Listing 9.8 lists this program in the Java programming language, and Listing 9.9 is the C++ code.



**NOTE:** Even though the sieve isn't a good benchmark, we couldn't resist timing the two implementations of the algorithm. Here are the timing results with a i7-8550U processor and 16 GB of RAM, running Ubuntu 17.10:

- C++ (g++ 7.2.0): 173 milliseconds
- Java (Java 11.0.1): 41 milliseconds

We have run this test for ten editions of *Core Java*, and in the last six editions, Java easily beat C++. In all fairness, if one cranks up the optimization level in the C++ compiler, it beats Java with a time of 34 milliseconds. Java could only match that if the program ran long enough to trigger the Hotspot just-in-time compiler.

---

#### Listing 9.8 sieve/Sieve.java

---

```
1 package sieve;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This program runs the Sieve of Erathostenes benchmark. It computes all primes
7  * up to 2,000,000.
8  * @version 1.21 2004-08-03
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class Sieve
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] s)
14     {
15         int n = 2000000;
16         long start = System.currentTimeMillis();
17         var bitSet = new BitSet(n + 1);
18         int count = 0;
19         int i;
20         for (i = 2; i <= n; i++)
21             bitSet.set(i);
22         i = 2;
23         while (i * i <= n)
24         {
25             if (bitSet.get(i))
26             {
```

(Continues)

**Listing 9.8** (*Continued*)

---

```
27         count++;
28         int k = 2 * i;
29         while (k <= n)
30         {
31             bitSet.clear(k);
32             k += i;
33         }
34     }
35     i++;
36 }
37 while (i <= n)
38 {
39     if (bitSet.get(i)) count++;
40     i++;
41 }
42 long end = System.currentTimeMillis();
43 System.out.println(count + " primes");
44 System.out.println((end - start) + " milliseconds");
45 }
46 }
```

---

**Listing 9.9** sieve/sieve.cpp

---

```
1 /**
2  * @version 1.21 2004-08-03
3  * @author Cay Horstmann
4 */
5
6 #include <bitset>
7 #include <iostream>
8 #include <ctime>
9
10 using namespace std;
11
12 int main()
13 {
14     const int N = 2000000;
15     clock_t cstart = clock();
16
17     bitset<N + 1> b;
18     int count = 0;
19     int i;
20     for (i = 2; i <= N; i++)
21         b.set(i);
22     i = 2;
```

```
23     while (i * i <= N)
24     {
25         if (b.test(i))
26         {
27             count++;
28             int k = 2 * i;
29             while (k <= N)
30             {
31                 b.reset(k);
32                 k += i;
33             }
34         }
35         i++;
36     }
37     while (i <= N)
38     {
39         if (b.test(i))
40             count++;
41         i++;
42     }
43
44     clock_t cend = clock();
45     double millis = 1000.0 * (cend - cstart) / CLOCKS_PER_SEC;
46
47     cout << count << " primes\n" << millis << " milliseconds\n";
48
49     return 0;
50 }
```

This completes our tour through the Java collections framework. As you have seen, the Java library offers a wide variety of collection classes for your programming needs. In the next chapter, you will learn how to write graphical user interfaces.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Graphical User Interface Programming

## In this chapter

- 10.1 A History of Java User Interface Toolkits, page 565
- 10.2 Displaying Frames, page 567
- 10.3 Displaying Information in a Component, page 574
- 10.4 Event Handling, page 598
- 10.5 The Preferences API, page 624

Java was born at a time when most computer users interacted with graphical desktop applications. Nowadays, browser-based and mobile applications are far more common, but there are still times when it is useful to provide a desktop application. In this and the following chapter, we discuss the basics of user interface programming with the Swing toolkit. If, on the other hand, you intend to use Java for server-side programming only and are not interested in writing GUI programs, you can safely skip these two chapters.

## 10.1 A History of Java User Interface Toolkits

When Java 1.0 was introduced, it contained a class library, called the Abstract Window Toolkit (AWT), for basic GUI programming. The basic AWT library

deals with user interface elements by delegating their creation and behavior to the native GUI toolkit on each target platform (Windows, Linux, Macintosh, and so on). For example, if you used the original AWT to put a text box on a Java window, an underlying “peer” text box actually handled the text input. The resulting program could then, in theory, run on any of these platforms, with the “look-and-feel” of the target platform.

The peer-based approach worked well for simple applications, but it soon became apparent that it was fiendishly difficult to write a high-quality portable graphics library depending on native user interface elements. User interface elements such as menus, scrollbars, and text fields can have subtle differences in behavior on different platforms. It was hard, therefore, to give users a consistent and predictable experience with this approach. Moreover, some graphical environments (such as X11/Motif) do not have as rich a collection of user interface components as does Windows or the Macintosh. This further limits a portable library based on a “lowest common denominator” approach. As a result, GUI applications built with the AWT simply did not look as nice as native Windows or Macintosh applications, nor did they have the kind of functionality that users of those platforms had come to expect. More depressingly, there were *different* bugs in the AWT user interface library on the different platforms. Developers complained that they had to test their applications on each platform—a practice derisively called “write once, debug everywhere.”

In 1996, Netscape created a GUI library they called the IFC (Internet Foundation Classes) that used an entirely different approach. User interface elements, such as buttons, menus, and so on, were *painted* onto blank windows. The only functionality required from the underlying windowing system was a way to put up a window and to paint on it. Thus, Netscape’s IFC widgets looked and behaved the same no matter which platform the program ran on. Sun Microsystems worked with Netscape to perfect this approach, creating a user interface library with the code name “Swing.” Swing was available as an extension to Java 1.1 and became a part of the standard library in Java 1.2.

Swing is now the official name for the non-peer-based GUI toolkit.



**NOTE:** Swing is not a complete replacement for the AWT—it is built on top of the AWT architecture. Swing simply gives you more capable user interface components. Whenever you write a Swing program, you use the foundations of the AWT—in particular, event handling. From now on, we say “Swing” when we mean the “painted” user interface classes, and we say “AWT” when we mean the underlying mechanisms of the windowing toolkit, such as event handling.

---

Swing has to work hard painting every pixel of the user interface. When Swing was first released, users complained that it was slow. (You can still get a feel for the problem if you run Swing applications on hardware such as a Raspberry Pi.) After a while, desktop computers got faster, and users complained that Swing was ugly—indeed, it had fallen behind the native widgets that had been spruced up with animations and fancy effects. More ominously, Adobe Flash was increasingly used to create user interfaces with even flashier effects that didn't use the native controls at all.

In 2007, Sun Microsystems introduced an entirely different user interface toolkit, called JavaFX, as a competitor to Flash. It ran on the Java VM but had its own programming language, called JavaFX Script. The language was optimized for programming animations and fancy effects. Programmers complained about the need to learn a new language, and they stayed away in droves. In 2011, Oracle released a new version, JavaFX 2.0, that had a Java API and no longer needed a separate programming language. Starting with Java 7 update 6, JavaFX has been bundled with the JDK and JRE. However, as this book is being written, Oracle has declared that JavaFX will no longer be bundled with Java, starting with version 11.

Since this is a book about the core Java language and APIs, we will focus on Swing for user interface programming.



**TIP:** We provide you with a bonus chapter that introduces JavaFX. If you have a printed copy of this book, download a free PDF from <http://horstmann.com/corejava>. The ebook has the chapter at the end.

## 10.2 Displaying Frames

A top-level window (that is, a window that is not contained inside another window) is called a *frame* in Java. The AWT library has a class, called `Frame`, for this top level. The Swing version of this class is called `JFrame` and extends the `Frame` class. The `JFrame` is one of the few Swing components that is not painted on a canvas. Thus, the decorations (buttons, title bar, icons, and so on) are drawn by the user's windowing system, not by Swing.



**CAUTION:** Most Swing component classes start with a “J”: `JButton`, `JFrame`, and so on. There are classes such as `Button` and `Frame`, but they are AWT components. If you accidentally omit a “J”, your program may still compile and run, but the mixture of Swing and AWT components can lead to visual and behavioral inconsistencies.

### 10.2.1 Creating a Frame

In this section, we will go over the most common methods for working with a Swing `JFrame`. Listing 10.1 lists a simple program that displays an empty frame on the screen, as illustrated in Figure 10.1.



**Figure 10.1** The simplest visible frame

---

#### Listing 10.1 simpleframe/SimpleFrameTest.java

---

```
1 package simpleFrame;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import javax.swing.*;
5
6 /**
7  * @version 1.34 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9  */
10 public class SimpleFrameTest
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
15         {
16             var frame = new SimpleFrame();
17             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
18             frame.setVisible(true);
19         });
20     }
21 }
22 }
```

```
23 class SimpleFrame extends JFrame
24 {
25     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
26     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
27
28     public SimpleFrame()
29     {
30         setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
31     }
32 }
```

Let's work through this program, line by line.

The Swing classes are placed in the `javax.swing` package. The package name `javax` indicates a Java extension package, not a core package. For historical reasons, Swing is considered an extension. However, it is present in every Java implementation since version 1.2.

By default, a frame has a rather useless size of  $0 \times 0$  pixels. We define a subclass `SimpleFrame` whose constructor sets the size to  $300 \times 200$  pixels. This is the only difference between a `SimpleFrame` and a `JFrame`.

In the `main` method of the `SimpleFrameTest` class, we construct a `SimpleFrame` object and make it visible.

There are two technical issues that we need to address in every Swing program.

First, all Swing components must be configured from the *event dispatch thread*, the thread of control that passes events such as mouse clicks and keystrokes to the user interface components. The following code fragment is used to execute statements in the event dispatch thread:

```
EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
{
    statements
});
```



**NOTE:** You will see many Swing programs that do not initialize the user interface in the event dispatch thread. It used to be perfectly acceptable to carry out the initialization in the main thread. Sadly, as Swing components got more complex, the developers of the JDK were no longer able to guarantee the safety of that approach. The probability of an error is extremely low, but you would not want to be one of the unlucky few who encounter an intermittent problem. It is better to do the right thing, even if the code looks rather mysterious.

Next, we define what should happen when the user closes the application's frame. For this particular program, we want the program to exit. To select this behavior, we use the statement

```
frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
```

In other programs with multiple frames, you would not want the program to exit just because the user closed one of the frames. By default, a frame is hidden when the user closes it, but the program does not terminate. (It might have been nice if the program terminated once the *last* frame becomes invisible, but that is not how Swing works.)

Simply constructing a frame does not automatically display it. Frames start their life invisible. That gives the programmer the chance to add components into the frame before showing it for the first time. To show the frame, the `main` method calls the `setVisible` method of the frame.

After scheduling the initialization statements, the `main` method exits. Note that exiting `main` does not terminate the program—just the main thread. The event dispatch thread keeps the program alive until it is terminated, either by closing the frame or by calling the `System.exit` method.

The running program is shown in Figure 10.1—it is a truly boring top-level window. As you can see in the figure, the title bar and the surrounding decorations, such as resize corners, are drawn by the operating system and not the Swing library. The Swing library draws everything inside the frame. In this program, it just fills the frame with a default background color.

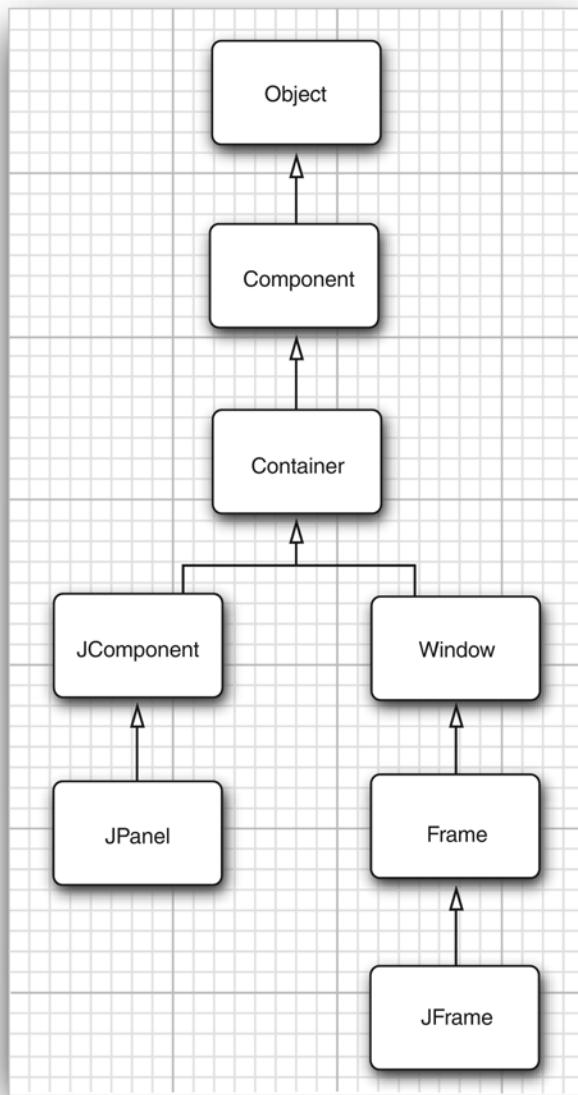
### 10.2.2 Frame Properties

The `JFrame` class itself has only a few methods for changing how frames look. Of course, through the magic of inheritance, most of the methods for working with the size and position of a frame come from the various superclasses of `JFrame`. Here are some of the most important methods:

- The `setLocation` and `setBounds` methods for setting the position of the frame
- The `setIconImage` method, which tells the windowing system which icon to display in the title bar, task switcher window, and so on
- The `setTitle` method for changing the text in the title bar
- The `setResizable` method, which takes a `boolean` to determine if a frame will be resizable by the user

Figure 10.2 illustrates the inheritance hierarchy for the `JFrame` class.

As the API notes indicate, the `Component` class (which is the ancestor of all GUI objects) and the `Window` class (which is the superclass of the `Frame` class) are



**Figure 10.2** Inheritance hierarchy for the frame and component classes in AWT and Swing

where you need to look for the methods to resize and reshape frames. For example, the `setLocation` method in the `Component` class is one way to reposition a component. If you make the call

```
setLocation(x, y)
```

the top left corner is located *x* pixels across and *y* pixels down, where (0, 0) is the top left corner of the screen. Similarly, the `setBounds` method in `Component` lets you resize and relocate a component (in particular, a `JFrame`) in one step, as

```
setBounds(x, y, width, height)
```

Many methods of component classes come in getter/setter pairs, such as the following methods of the `Frame` class:

```
public String getTitle()  
public void setTitle(String title)
```

Such a getter/setter pair is called a *property*. A property has a name and a type. The name is obtained by changing the first letter after the get or set to lowercase. For example, the `Frame` class has a property with name `title` and type `String`.

Conceptually, `title` is a property of the frame. When we set the property, we expect the title to change on the user's screen. When we get the property, we expect to get back the value that we have set.

There is one exception to the get/set convention: For properties of type `boolean`, the getter starts with `is`. For example, the following two methods define the `resizable` property:

```
public boolean isResizable()  
public void setResizable(boolean resizable)
```

To determine an appropriate size for a frame, first find out the screen size. Call the static `getDefaultsToolkit` method of the `Toolkit` class to get the `Toolkit` object. (The `Toolkit` class is a dumping ground for a variety of methods interfacing with the native windowing system.) Then call the `getScreenSize` method, which returns the screen size as a `Dimension` object. A `Dimension` object simultaneously stores a width and a height, in public (!) instance variables `width` and `height`. Then you can use a suitable percentage of the screen size to size the frame. Here is the code:

```
Toolkit kit = Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit();  
Dimension screenSize = kit.getScreenSize();  
int screenWidth = screenSize.width;  
int screenHeight = screenSize.height;  
setSize(screenWidth / 2, screenHeight / 2);
```

You can also supply frame icon:

```
Image img = new ImageIcon("icon.gif").getImage();  
setIconImage(img);
```

**java.awt.Component 1.0**

- `boolean isVisible()`
- `void setVisible(boolean b)`

gets or sets the `visible` property. Components are initially visible, with the exception of top-level components such as `JFrame`.

- `void setSize(int width, int height) 1.1`  
resizes the component to the specified width and height.
- `void setLocation(int x, int y) 1.1`  
moves the component to a new location. The `x` and `y` coordinates use the coordinates of the container if the component is not a top-level component, or the coordinates of the screen if the component is top level (for example, a `JFrame`).
- `void setBounds(int x, int y, int width, int height) 1.1`  
moves and resizes this component.
- `Dimension getSize() 1.1`
- `void setSize(Dimension d) 1.1`  
gets or sets the `size` property of this component.

**java.awt.Window 1.0**

- `void setLocationByPlatform(boolean b) 5`

gets or sets the `locationByPlatform` property. When the property is set before this window is displayed, the platform picks a suitable location.

**java.awt.Frame 1.0**

- `boolean isResizable()`
- `void setResizable(boolean b)`

gets or sets the `resizable` property. When the property is set, the user can resize the frame.

- `String getTitle()`
- `void setTitle(String s)`

gets or sets the `title` property that determines the text in the title bar for the frame.

(Continues)

**java.awt.Frame 1.0 (Continued)**

- `Image getIconImage()`
- `void setIconImage(Image image)`

gets or sets the `iconImage` property that determines the icon for the frame. The windowing system may display the icon as part of the frame decoration or in other locations.

**java.awt.Toolkit 1.0**

- `static Toolkit getDefaultToolkit()`  
returns the default toolkit.
- `Dimension getScreenSize()`  
gets the size of the user's screen.

**javax.swing.ImageIcon 1.2**

- `ImageIcon(String filename)`  
constructs an icon whose image is stored in a file.
- `Image getImage()`  
gets the image of this icon.

## 10.3 Displaying Information in a Component

In this section, we will show you how to display information inside a frame (Figure 10.3).

You could draw the message string directly onto a frame, but that is not considered good programming practice. In Java, frames are really designed to be containers for components, such as a menu bar and other user interface elements. You normally draw on another component which you add to the frame.

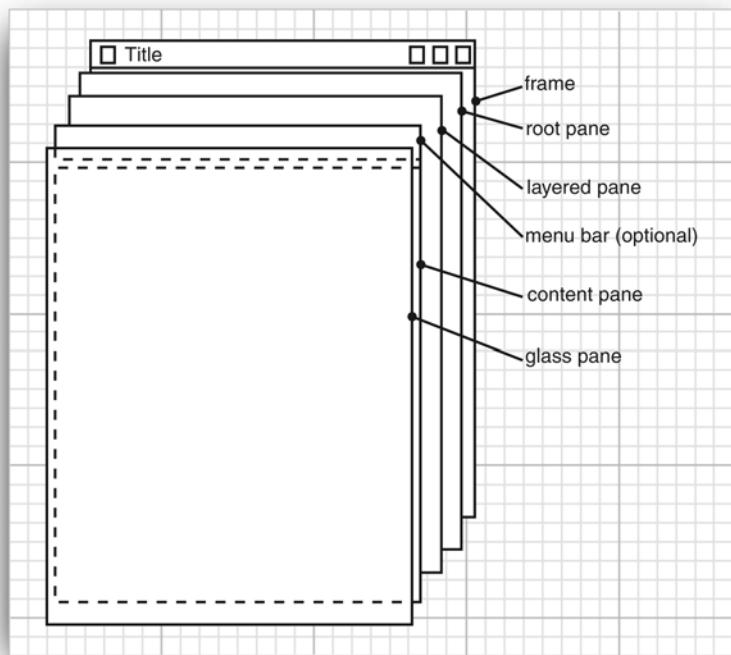
The structure of a `JFrame` is surprisingly complex. Look at Figure 10.4 which shows the makeup of a `JFrame`. As you can see, four panes are layered in a `JFrame`. The root pane, layered pane, and glass pane are of no interest to us; they are required to organize the menu bar and content pane and to implement the look-and-feel. The part that most concerns Swing programmers is



**Figure 10.3** A frame that displays information

the *content pane*. Any components that you add to a frame are automatically placed into the content pane:

```
Component c = . . .;
frame.add(c); // added to the content pane
```



**Figure 10.4** Internal structure of a JFrame

In our case, we want to add a single component to the frame onto which we will draw our message. To draw on a component, you define a class that extends `JComponent` and override the `paintComponent` method in that class.

The `paintComponent` method takes one parameter of type `Graphics`. A `Graphics` object remembers a collection of settings for drawing images and text, such as the font you set or the current color. All drawing in Java must go through a `Graphics` object. It has methods that draw patterns, images, and text.

Here's how to make a component onto which you can draw:

```
class MyComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        code for drawing
    }
}
```

Each time a window needs to be redrawn, no matter what the reason, the event handler notifies the component. This causes the `paintComponent` methods of all components to be executed.

Never call the `paintComponent` method yourself. It is called automatically whenever a part of your application needs to be redrawn, and you should not interfere with this automatic process.

What sorts of actions trigger this automatic response? For example, painting occurs when the user increases the size of the window, or minimizes and then restores the window. If the user popped up another window that covered an existing window and then made the overlaid window disappear, the window that was covered is now corrupted and will need to be repainted. (The graphics system does not save the pixels underneath.) And, of course, when the window is displayed for the first time, it needs to process the code that specifies how and where it should draw the initial elements.



---

**TIP:** If you need to force repainting of the screen, call the `repaint` method instead of `paintComponent`. The `repaint` method will cause `paintComponent` to be called for all components, with a properly configured `Graphics` object.

---

As you saw in the code fragment above, the `paintComponent` method takes a single parameter of type `Graphics`. Measurement on a `Graphics` object for screen

display is done in pixels. The (0, 0) coordinate denotes the top left corner of the component on whose surface you are drawing.

The `Graphics` class has various drawing methods, and displaying text is considered a special kind of drawing. Our `paintComponent` method looks like this:

```
public class NotHelloWorldComponent extends JComponent
{
    public static final int MESSAGE_X = 75;
    public static final int MESSAGE_Y = 100;

    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        g.drawString("Not a Hello, World program", MESSAGE_X, MESSAGE_Y);
    }
    ...
}
```

Finally, a component should tell its users how big it would like to be. Override the `getPreferredSize` method and return an object of the `Dimension` class with the preferred width and height:

```
public class NotHelloWorldComponent extends JComponent
{
    private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
    private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;

    ...
    public Dimension getPreferredSize()
    {
        return new Dimension(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
    }
}
```

When you fill a frame with one or more components, and you simply want to use their preferred size, call the `pack` method instead of the `setSize` method:

```
class NotHelloWorldFrame extends JFrame
{
    public NotHelloWorldFrame()
    {
        add(new NotHelloWorldComponent());
        pack();
    }
}
```

Listing 10.2 shows the complete code.

**Listing 10.2** notHelloWorld/NotHelloWorld.java

```
1 package notHelloWorld;
2
3 import javax.swing.*;
4 import java.awt.*;
5
6 /**
7  * @version 1.34 2018-04-10
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9 */
10 public class NotHelloWorld
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
15         {
16             var frame = new NotHelloWorldFrame();
17             frame.setTitle("NotHelloWorld");
18             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
19             frame.setVisible(true);
20         });
21     }
22 }
23
24 /**
25  * A frame that contains a message panel.
26 */
27 class NotHelloWorldFrame extends JFrame
28 {
29     public NotHelloWorldFrame()
30     {
31         add(new NotHelloWorldComponent());
32         pack();
33     }
34 }
35
36 /**
37  * A component that displays a message.
38 */
39 class NotHelloWorldComponent extends JComponent
40 {
41     public static final int MESSAGE_X = 75;
42     public static final int MESSAGE_Y = 100;
43
44     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
45     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
46 }
```

```
47     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
48     {
49         g.drawString("Not a Hello, World program", MESSAGE_X, MESSAGE_Y);
50     }
51
52     public Dimension getPreferredSize()
53     {
54         return new Dimension(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
55     }
56 }
```

**javax.swing.JFrame 1.2**

- `Component add(Component c)`  
adds and returns the given component to the content pane of this frame.

**java.awt.Component 1.0**

- `void repaint()`  
causes a repaint of the component “as soon as possible.”
- `Dimension getPreferredSize()`  
is the method to override to return the preferred size of this component.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `void paintComponent(Graphics g)`  
is the method to override to describe how your component needs to be painted.

**java.awt.Window 1.0**

- `void pack()`  
resizes this window, taking into account the preferred sizes of its components.

### 10.3.1 Working with 2D Shapes

Starting with Java 1.0, the `Graphics` class has methods to draw lines, rectangles, ellipses, and so on. But those drawing operations are very limited. We will instead use the shape classes from the *Java 2D* library.

To use this library, you need to obtain an object of the `Graphics2D` class. This class is a subclass of the `Graphics` class. Ever since Java 1.2, methods such as

`paintComponent` automatically receive an object of the `Graphics2D` class. Simply use a cast, as follows:

```
public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
{
    Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
    ...
}
```

The Java 2D library organizes geometric shapes in an object-oriented fashion. In particular, there are classes to represent lines, rectangles, and ellipses:

```
Line2D
Rectangle2D
Ellipse2D
```

These classes all implement the `Shape` interface. The Java 2D library supports more complex shapes—arcs, quadratic and cubic curves, and general paths—that we do not discuss in this chapter.

To draw a shape, you first create an object of a class that implements the `Shape` interface and then call the `draw` method of the `Graphics2D` class. For example:

```
Rectangle2D rect = . . . ;
g2.draw(rect);
```

The Java 2D library uses floating-point coordinates, not integers, for pixels. Internal calculations are carried out with single-precision `float` quantities. Single precision is sufficient—after all, the ultimate purpose of the geometric computations is to set pixels on the screen or printer. As long as any roundoff errors stay within one pixel, the visual outcome is not affected.

However, manipulating `float` values is sometimes inconvenient for the programmer because Java is adamant about requiring casts when converting `double` values into `float` values. For example, consider the following statement:

```
float f = 1.2; // ERROR--possible loss of precision
```

This statement does not compile because the constant 1.2 has type `double`, and the compiler is nervous about loss of precision. The remedy is to add an `F` suffix to the floating-point constant:

```
float f = 1.2F; // OK
```

Now consider this statement:

```
float f = r.getWidth(); // ERROR
```

This statement does not compile either, for the same reason. The `getWidth` method returns a `double`. This time, the remedy is to provide a cast:

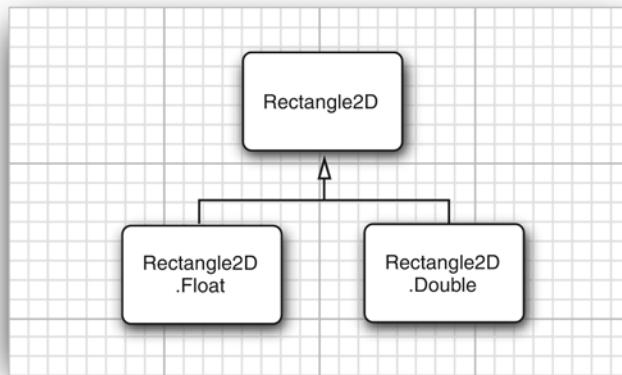
```
float f = (float) r.getWidth(); // OK
```

These suffixes and casts are a bit of a pain, so the designers of the 2D library decided to supply *two versions* of each shape class: one with `float` coordinates for frugal programmers, and one with `double` coordinates for the lazy ones. (In this book, we fall into the second camp and use `double` coordinates whenever we can.)

The library designers chose a curious mechanism for packaging these choices. Consider the `Rectangle2D` class. This is an abstract class with two concrete subclasses, which are also static inner classes:

```
Rectangle2D.Float  
Rectangle2D.Double
```

Figure 10.5 shows the inheritance diagram.



**Figure 10.5** 2D rectangle classes

It is best to ignore the fact that the two concrete classes are static inner classes—that is just a gimmick to avoid names such as `FloatRectangle2D` and `DoubleRectangle2D`.

When you construct a `Rectangle2D.Float` object, you supply the coordinates as `float` numbers. For a `Rectangle2D.Double` object, you supply them as `double` numbers.

```
var floatRect = new Rectangle2D.Float(10.0F, 25.0F, 22.5F, 20.0F);  
var doubleRect = new Rectangle2D.Double(10.0, 25.0, 22.5, 20.0);
```

The construction parameters denote the top left corner, width, and height of the rectangle.

The `Rectangle2D` methods use `double` parameters and return values. For example, the `getWidth` method returns a `double` value, even if the width is stored as a `float` in a `Rectangle2D.Float` object.



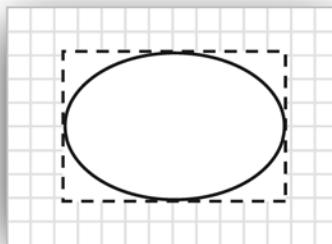
**TIP:** Simply use the `Double` shape classes to avoid dealing with `float` values altogether. However, if you are constructing thousands of shape objects, consider using the `Float` classes to conserve memory.

---

What we just discussed for the `Rectangle2D` classes holds for the other shape classes as well. Furthermore, there is a `Point2D` class with subclasses `Point2D.Float` and `Point2D.Double`. Here is how to make a point object:

```
var p = new Point2D.Double(10, 20);
```

The classes `Rectangle2D` and `Ellipse2D` both inherit from the common superclass `RectangularShape`. Admittedly, ellipses are not rectangular, but they have a *bounding rectangle* (see Figure 10.6).

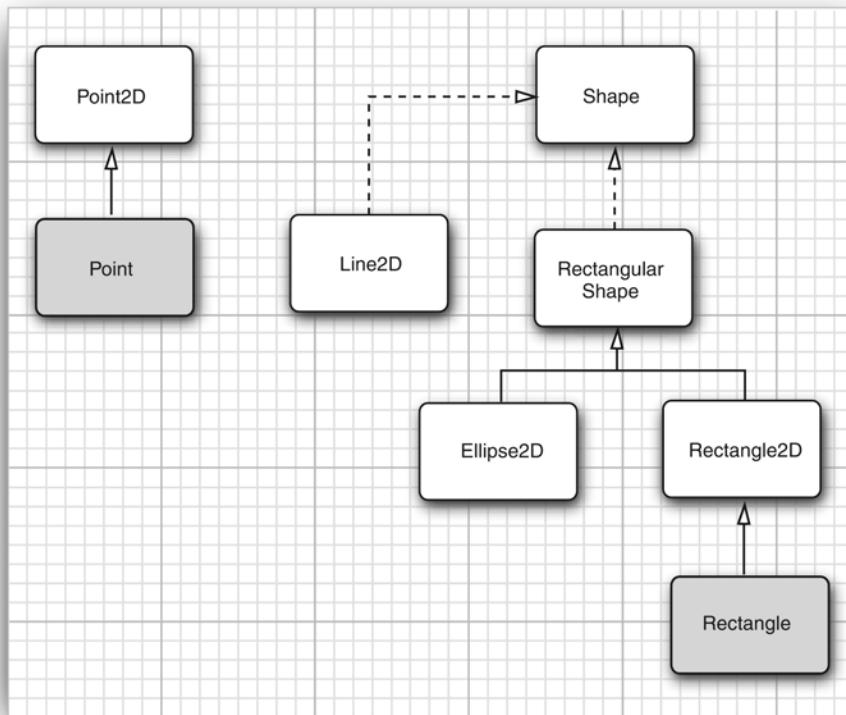


**Figure 10.6** The bounding rectangle of an ellipse

The `RectangularShape` class defines over 20 methods that are common to these shapes, among them such useful methods as `getWidth`, `getHeight`, `getCenterX`, and `getCenterY` (but, sadly, at the time of this writing, not a `getCenter` method that would return the center as a `Point2D` object).

Finally, a couple of legacy classes from Java 1.0 have been fitted into the shape class hierarchy. The `Rectangle` and `Point` classes, which store a rectangle and a point with integer coordinates, extend the `Rectangle2D` and `Point2D` classes.

Figure 10.7 shows the relationships between the shape classes. However, the `Double` and `Float` subclasses are omitted. Legacy classes are marked with a gray fill.



**Figure 10.7** Relationships between the shape classes

`Rectangle2D` and `Ellipse2D` objects are simple to construct. You need to specify

- The *x* and *y* coordinates of the top left corner; and
- The width and height.

For ellipses, these refer to the bounding rectangle. For example,

```
var e = new Ellipse2D.Double(150, 200, 100, 50);
```

constructs an ellipse that is bounded by a rectangle with the top left corner at (150, 200), width of 100, and height of 50.

When constructing an ellipse, you usually know the center, width, and height, but not the corner points of the bounding rectangle (which don't even lie on the ellipse). The `setFrameFromCenter` method uses the center point, but it still requires one of the four corner points. Thus, you will usually end up constructing an ellipse as follows:

```
var ellipse  
    = new Ellipse2D.Double(centerX - width / 2, centerY - height / 2, width, height);
```

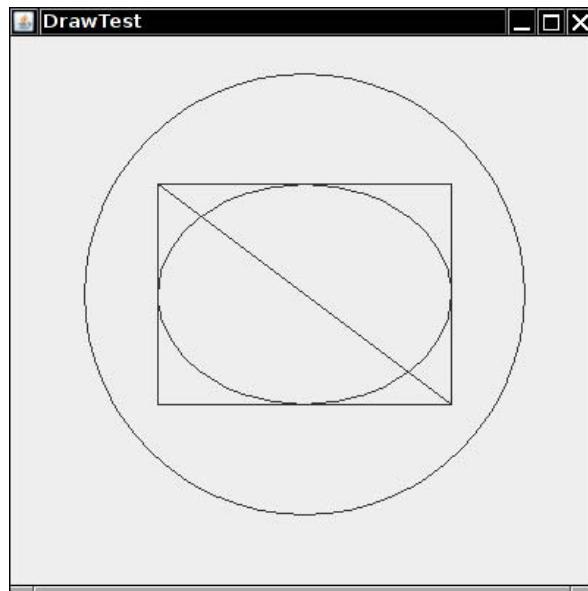
To construct a line, you supply the start and end points, either as `Point2D` objects or as pairs of numbers:

```
var line = new Line2D.Double(start, end);
```

or

```
var line = new Line2D.Double(startX, startY, endX, endY);
```

The program in Listing 10.3 draws a rectangle, the ellipse that is enclosed in the rectangle, a diagonal of the rectangle, and a circle that has the same center as the rectangle. Figure 10.8 shows the result.



**Figure 10.8** Drawing geometric shapes

---

### Listing 10.3 draw/DrawTest.java

---

```
1 package draw;  
2  
3 import java.awt.*;  
4 import java.awt.geom.*;  
5 import javax.swing.*;  
6
```

```
7 /**
8  * @version 1.34 2018-04-10
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class DrawTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
16         {
17             var frame = new DrawFrame();
18             frame.setTitle("DrawTest");
19             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
20             frame.setVisible(true);
21         });
22     }
23 }
24
25 /**
26  * A frame that contains a panel with drawings.
27 */
28 class DrawFrame extends JFrame
29 {
30     public DrawFrame()
31     {
32         add(new DrawComponent());
33         pack();
34     }
35 }
36
37 /**
38  * A component that displays rectangles and ellipses.
39 */
40 class DrawComponent extends JComponent
41 {
42     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 400;
43     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 400;
44
45     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
46     {
47         var g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
48
49         // draw a rectangle
50
51         double leftX = 100;
52         double topY = 100;
53         double width = 200;
54         double height = 150;
55 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 10.3 (Continued)**

```
56     var rect = new Rectangle2D.Double(leftX, topY, width, height);
57     g2.draw(rect);
58
59     // draw the enclosed ellipse
60
61     var ellipse = new Ellipse2D.Double();
62     ellipse.setFrame(rect);
63     g2.draw(ellipse);
64
65     // draw a diagonal line
66
67     g2.draw(new Line2D.Double(leftX, topY, leftX + width, topY + height));
68
69     // draw a circle with the same center
70
71     double centerX = rect.getCenterX();
72     double centerY = rect.getCenterY();
73     double radius = 150;
74
75     var circle = new Ellipse2D.Double();
76     circle setFrameFromCenter(centerX, centerY, centerX + radius, centerY + radius);
77     g2.draw(circle);
78 }
79
80 public Dimension getPreferredSize()
81 {
82     return new Dimension(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
83 }
84 }
```

---

**java.awt.geom.RectangularShape 1.2**

- `double getCenterX()`
- `double getCenterY()`
- `double getMinX()`
- `double getMinY()`
- `double getMaxX()`
- `double getMaxY()`

returns the center, minimum, or maximum *x* or *y* value of the enclosing rectangle.

(Continues)

**java.awt.geom.RectangularShape 1.2 (Continued)**

- `double getWidth()`
- `double getHeight()`  
returns the width or height of the enclosing rectangle.
- `double getX()`
- `double getY()`  
returns the *x* or *y* coordinate of the top left corner of the enclosing rectangle.

**java.awt.geom.Rectangle2D.Double 1.2**

- `Rectangle2D.Double(double x, double y, double w, double h)`  
constructs a rectangle with the given top left corner, width, and height.

**java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D.Double 1.2**

- `Ellipse2D.Double(double x, double y, double w, double h)`  
constructs an ellipse whose bounding rectangle has the given top left corner, width, and height.

**java.awt.geom.Point2D.Double 1.2**

- `Point2D.Double(double x, double y)`  
constructs a point with the given coordinates.

**java.awt.geom.Line2D.Double 1.2**

- `Line2D.Double(Point2D start, Point2D end)`
- `Line2D.Double(double startX, double startY, double endX, double endY)`  
constructs a line with the given start and end points.

### 10.3.2 Using Color

The `setPaint` method of the `Graphics2D` class lets you select a color that is used for all subsequent drawing operations on the graphics context. For example:

```
g2.setPaint(Color.RED);
g2.drawString("Warning!", 100, 100);
```

You can fill the interiors of closed shapes (such as rectangles or ellipses) with a color. Simply call `fill` instead of `draw`:

```
Rectangle2D rect = . . .;
g2.setPaint(Color.RED);
g2.fill(rect); // fills rect with red
```

To draw in multiple colors, select a color, draw or fill, then select another color, and draw or fill again.



**NOTE:** The `fill` method paints one fewer pixel to the right and the bottom. For example, if you draw a new `Rectangle2D.Double(0, 0, 10, 20)`, then the drawing includes the pixels with  $x = 10$  and  $y = 20$ . If you fill the same rectangle, those pixels are not painted.

---

Define colors with the `Color` class. The `java.awt.Color` class offers predefined constants for the following 13 standard colors:

```
BLACK, BLUE, CYAN, DARK_GRAY, GRAY, GREEN, LIGHT_GRAY,
MAGENTA, ORANGE, PINK, RED, WHITE, YELLOW
```

You can specify a custom color by creating a `Color` object by its red, green, and blue components, each a value between 0 and 255:

```
g2.setPaint(new Color(0, 128, 128)); // a dull blue-green
g2.drawString("Welcome!", 75, 125);
```



**NOTE:** In addition to solid colors, you can call `setPaint` with instances of classes that implement the `Paint` interface. This enables drawing with gradients and textures.

---

To set the *background color*, use the `setBackground` method of the `Component` class, an ancestor of `JComponent`.

```
var component = new MyComponent();
component.setBackground(Color.PINK);
```

There is also a `setForeground` method. It specifies the default color that is used for drawing on the component.

**java.awt.Color 1.0**

- `Color(int r, int g, int b)`

creates a color object with the given red, green, and blue components between 0 and 255.

**java.awt.Graphics2D 1.2**

- `Paint getPaint()`
- `void setPaint(Paint p)`

gets or sets the paint property of this graphics context. The `Color` class implements the `Paint` interface. Therefore, you can use this method to set the paint attribute to a solid color.

- `void fill(Shape s)`  
fills the shape with the current paint.

**java.awt.Component 1.0**

- `Color getForeground()`
- `Color getBackground()`
- `void setForeground(Color c)`
- `void setBackground(Color c)`

gets or sets the foreground or background color.

### 10.3.3 Using Fonts

The “Not a Hello World” program at the beginning of this chapter displayed a string in the default font. Sometimes, you will want to show your text in a different font. You can specify a font by its *font face name*. A font face name is composed of a *font family name*, such as “Helvetica”, and an optional suffix such as “Bold”. For example, the font faces “Helvetica” and “Helvetica Bold” are both considered to be part of the family named “Helvetica.”

To find out which fonts are available on a particular computer, call the `getAvailableFontFamilyNames` method of the `GraphicsEnvironment` class. The method returns an array of strings containing the names of all available fonts. To obtain an instance of the `GraphicsEnvironment` class that describes the graphics environment of the user’s system, use the static `getLocalGraphicsEnvironment` method. The following program prints the names of all fonts on your system:

```
import java.awt.*;  
  
public class ListFonts  
{  
    public static void main(String[] args)  
    {  
        String[] fontNames = GraphicsEnvironment  
            .getLocalGraphicsEnvironment()  
            .getAvailableFontFamilyNames();  
        for (String fontName : fontNames)  
            System.out.println(fontName);  
    }  
}
```

The AWT defines five *logical* font names:

```
SansSerif  
Serif  
Monospaced  
Dialog  
DialogInput
```

These names are always mapped to some fonts that actually exist on the client machine. For example, on a Windows system, `SansSerif` is mapped to Arial.

In addition, the Oracle JDK always includes three font families named “Lucida Sans,” “Lucida Bright,” and “Lucida Sans Typewriter.”

To draw characters in a font, you must first create an object of the class `Font`. Specify the font face name, the font style, and the point size. Here is an example of how you construct a `Font` object:

```
var sansbold14 = new Font("SansSerif", Font.BOLD, 14);
```

The third argument is the point size. Points are commonly used in typography to indicate the size of a font. There are 72 points per inch.

You can use a logical font name in place of the font face name in the `Font` constructor. Specify the style (plain, **bold**, *italic*, or **bold italic**) by setting the second `Font` constructor argument to one of the following values:

```
Font.PLAIN  
Font.BOLD  
Font.ITALIC  
Font.BOLD + Font.ITALIC
```

The font is plain with a font size of 1 point. Use the `deriveFont` method to get a font of the desired size:

```
Font f = f1.deriveFont(14.0F);
```



**CAUTION:** There are two overloaded versions of the `deriveFont` method. One of them (with a `float` parameter) sets the font size, the other (with an `int` parameter) sets the font style. Thus, `f1.deriveFont(14)` sets the style and not the size! (The result is an italic font because it happens that the binary representation of 14 has the `ITALIC` bit but not the `BOLD` bit set.)

Here's the code that displays the string "Hello, World!" in the standard sans serif font on your system, using 14-point bold type:

```
var sansbold14 = new Font("SansSerif", Font.BOLD, 14);
g2.setFont(sansbold14);
var message = "Hello, World!";
g2.drawString(message, 75, 100);
```

Next, let's *center* the string in its component instead of drawing it at an arbitrary position. We need to know the width and height of the string in pixels. These dimensions depend on three factors:

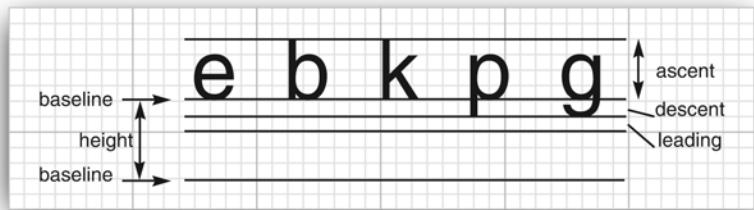
- The font used (in our case, sans serif, bold, 14 point);
- The string (in our case, "Hello, World!"); and
- The device on which the font is drawn (in our case, the user's screen).

To obtain an object that represents the font characteristics of the screen device, call the `getFontRenderContext` method of the `Graphics2D` class. It returns an object of the `FontRenderContext` class. Simply pass that object to the `getStringBounds` method of the `Font` class:

```
FontRenderContext context = g2.getFontRenderContext();
Rectangle2D bounds = sansbold14.getStringBounds(message, context);
```

The `getStringBounds` method returns a rectangle that encloses the string.

To interpret the dimensions of that rectangle, you should know some basic typesetting terms (see Figure 10.9). The *baseline* is the imaginary line where, for example, the bottom of a character like 'e' rests. The *ascent* is the distance from the baseline to the top of an *ascender*, which is the upper part of a letter like 'b' or 'k', or an uppercase character. The *descent* is the distance from the baseline to a *descender*, which is the lower portion of a letter like 'p' or 'g'.



**Figure 10.9** Typesetting terms illustrated

*Leading* is the space between the descent of one line and the ascent of the next line. (The term has its origin from the strips of lead that typesetters used to separate lines.) The *height* of a font is the distance between successive baselines, which is the same as descent + leading + ascent.

The width of the rectangle that the `getStringBounds` method returns is the horizontal extent of the string. The height of the rectangle is the sum of ascent, descent, and leading. The rectangle has its origin at the baseline of the string. The top *y* coordinate of the rectangle is negative. Thus, you can obtain string width, height, and ascent as follows:

```
double stringWidth = bounds.getWidth();
double stringHeight = bounds.getHeight();
double ascent = -bounds.getY();
```

If you need to know the descent or leading, use the `getLineMetrics` method of the `Font` class. That method returns an object of the `LineMetrics` class, which has methods to obtain the descent and leading:

```
LineMetrics metrics = f.getLineMetrics(message, context);
float descent = metrics.getDescent();
float leading = metrics.getLeading();
```



**NOTE:** When you need to compute layout dimensions outside the `paintComponent` method, you can't obtain the font render context from the `Graphics2D` object. Instead, call the `getFontMetrics` method of the `JComponent` class and then call `getFontRenderContext`.

```
FontRenderContext context = getFontMetrics(f).getFontRenderContext();
```

---

To show that the positioning is accurate, the sample program in Listing 10.4 centers the string in the frame and draws the baseline and the bounding rectangle. Figure 10.10 shows the screen display.



**Figure 10.10** Drawing the baseline and string bounds

**Listing 10.4** font/FontTest.java

```
1 package font;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.font.*;
5 import java.awt.geom.*;
6 import javax.swing.*;
7
8 /**
9  * @version 1.35 2018-04-10
10 * @author Cay Horstmann
11 */
12 public class FontTest
13 {
14     public static void main(String[] args)
15     {
16         EventQueue.invokeLater(() ->
17             {
18                 var frame = new FontFrame();
19                 frame.setTitle("FontTest");
20                 frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
21                 frame.setVisible(true);
22             });
23     }
24 }
25
26 /**
27 * A frame with a text message component.
28 */
29 class FontFrame extends JFrame
30 {
31     public FontFrame()
32     {
```

(Continues)

**Listing 10.4 (Continued)**

```
33     add(new FontComponent());
34     pack();
35 }
36 }
37
38 /**
39 * A component that shows a centered message in a box.
40 */
41 class FontComponent extends JComponent
42 {
43     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
44     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
45
46     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
47     {
48         var g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
49
50         var message = "Hello, World!";
51
52         var f = new Font("Serif", Font.BOLD, 36);
53         g2.setFont(f);
54
55         // measure the size of the message
56
57         FontRenderContext context = g2.getFontRenderContext();
58         Rectangle2D bounds = f.getStringBounds(message, context);
59
60         // set (x,y) = top left corner of text
61
62         double x = (getWidth() - bounds.getWidth()) / 2;
63         double y = (getHeight() - bounds.getHeight()) / 2;
64
65         // add ascent to y to reach the baseline
66
67         double ascent = -bounds.getY();
68         double baseY = y + ascent;
69
70         // draw the message
71
72         g2.drawString(message, (int) x, (int) baseY);
73
74         g2.setPaint(Color.LIGHT_GRAY);
75
76         // draw the baseline
77
78         g2.draw(new Line2D.Double(x, baseY, x + bounds.getWidth(), baseY));
```

```
79     // draw the enclosing rectangle
80
81     var rect = new Rectangle2D.Double(x, y, bounds.getWidth(), bounds.getHeight());
82     g2.draw(rect);
83 }
84
85
86 public Dimension getPreferredSize()
87 {
88     return new Dimension(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
89 }
90 }
```

**java.awt.Font 1.0**

- `Font(String name, int style, int size)`

creates a new font object. The font name is either a font face name (such as "Helvetica Bold") or a logical font name (such as "Serif", "SansSerif"). The style is one of `Font.PLAIN`, `Font.BOLD`, `Font.ITALIC`, or `Font.BOLD + Font.ITALIC`.

- `String getFontName()`

gets the font face name (such as "Helvetica Bold").

- `String getFamily()`

gets the font family name (such as "Helvetica").

- `String getName()`

gets the logical name (such as "SansSerif") if the font was created with a logical font name; otherwise, gets the font face name.

- `Rectangle2D getStringBounds(String s, FontRenderContext context) 1.2`

returns a rectangle that encloses the string. The origin of the rectangle falls on the baseline. The top *y* coordinate of the rectangle equals the negative of the ascent. The height of the rectangle equals the sum of ascent, descent, and leading. The width equals the string width.

- `LineMetrics getLineMetrics(String s, FontRenderContext context) 1.2`

returns a line metrics object to determine the extent of the string.

- `Font deriveFont(int style) 1.2`

- `Font deriveFont(float size) 1.2`

- `Font deriveFont(int style, float size) 1.2`

returns a new font that is equal to this font, except that it has the given size and style.

**java.awt.font.LineMetrics 1.2**

- `float getAscent()`  
gets the font ascent—the distance from the baseline to the tops of uppercase characters.
- `float getDescent()`  
gets the font descent—the distance from the baseline to the bottoms of descenders.
- `float getLeading()`  
gets the font leading—the space between the bottom of one line of text and the top of the next line.
- `float getHeight()`  
gets the total height of the font—the distance between the two baselines of text (descent + leading + ascent).

**java.awt.Graphics2D 1.2**

- `FontRenderContext getFontRenderContext()`  
gets a font render context that specifies font characteristics in this graphics context.
- `void drawString(String str, float x, float y)`  
draws a string in the current font and color.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `FontMetrics getFontMetrics(Font f) 5`  
gets the font metrics for the given font. The `FontMetrics` class is a precursor to the `LineMetrics` class.

**java.awt.FontMetrics 1.0**

- `FontRenderContext getFontRenderContext() 1.2`  
gets a font render context for the font.

### 10.3.4 Displaying Images

You can use the `ImageIcon` class to read an image from a file:

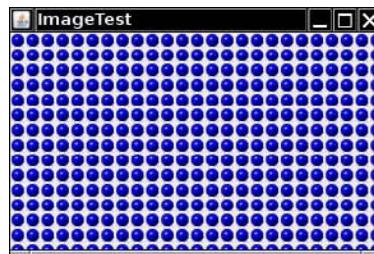
```
Image image = new ImageIcon(filename).getImage();
```

Now the variable `image` contains a reference to an object that encapsulates the image data. Display the image with the `drawImage` method of the `Graphics` class.

```
public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
{
    ...
    g.drawImage(image, x, y, null);
}
```

We can take this a little bit further and tile the window with the graphics image. The result looks like the screen shown in Figure 10.11. We do the tiling in the `paintComponent` method. We first draw one copy of the image in the top left corner and then use the `copyArea` call to copy it into the entire window:

```
for (int i = 0; i * imageWidth <= getWidth(); i++)
    for (int j = 0; j * imageHeight <= getHeight(); j++)
        if (i + j > 0)
            g.copyArea(0, 0, imageWidth, imageHeight, i * imageWidth, j * imageHeight);
```



**Figure 10.11** Window with tiled graphics image

#### java.awt.Graphics 1.0

- `boolean drawImage(Image img, int x, int y, ImageObserver observer)`
- `boolean drawImage(Image img, int x, int y, int width, int height, ImageObserver observer)`  
draws an unscaled or scaled image. Note: This call may return before the image is drawn. The `imageObserver` object is notified of the rendering progress. This was a useful feature in the distant past. Nowadays, just pass a `null` observer.
- `void copyArea(int x, int y, int width, int height, int dx, int dy)`  
copies an area of the screen. The `dx` and `dy` parameters are the distance from the source area to the target area.

## 10.4 Event Handling

Any operating environment that supports GUIs constantly monitors events such as keystrokes or mouse clicks. These events are then reported to the programs that are running. Each program then decides what, if anything, to do in response to these events.

### 10.4.1 Basic Event Handling Concepts

In the Java AWT, *event sources* (such as buttons or scrollbars) have methods that allow you to register *event listeners*—objects that carry out the desired response to the event.

When an event listener is notified about an event, information about the event is encapsulated in an *event object*. In Java, all event objects ultimately derive from the class `java.util.EventObject`. Of course, there are subclasses for each event type, such as `ActionEvent` and `WindowEvent`.

Different event sources can produce different kinds of events. For example, a button can send `ActionEvent` objects, whereas a window can send `WindowEvent` objects.

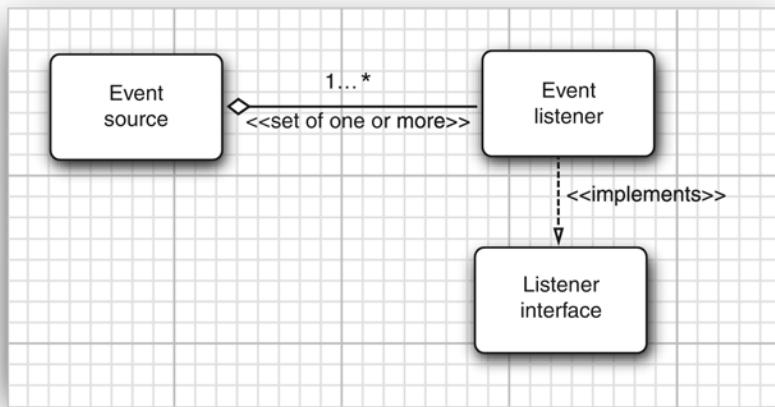
To sum up, here's an overview of how event handling in the AWT works:

- An event listener is an instance of a class that implements a *listener interface*.
- An event source is an object that can register listener objects and send them event objects.
- The event source sends out event objects to all registered listeners when that event occurs.
- The listener objects then uses the information in the event object to determine their reaction to the event.

Figure 10.12 shows the relationship between the event handling classes and interfaces.

Here is an example for specifying a listener:

```
ActionListener listener = . . .;  
var button = new JButton("OK");  
button.addActionListener(listener);
```



**Figure 10.12** Relationship between event sources and listeners

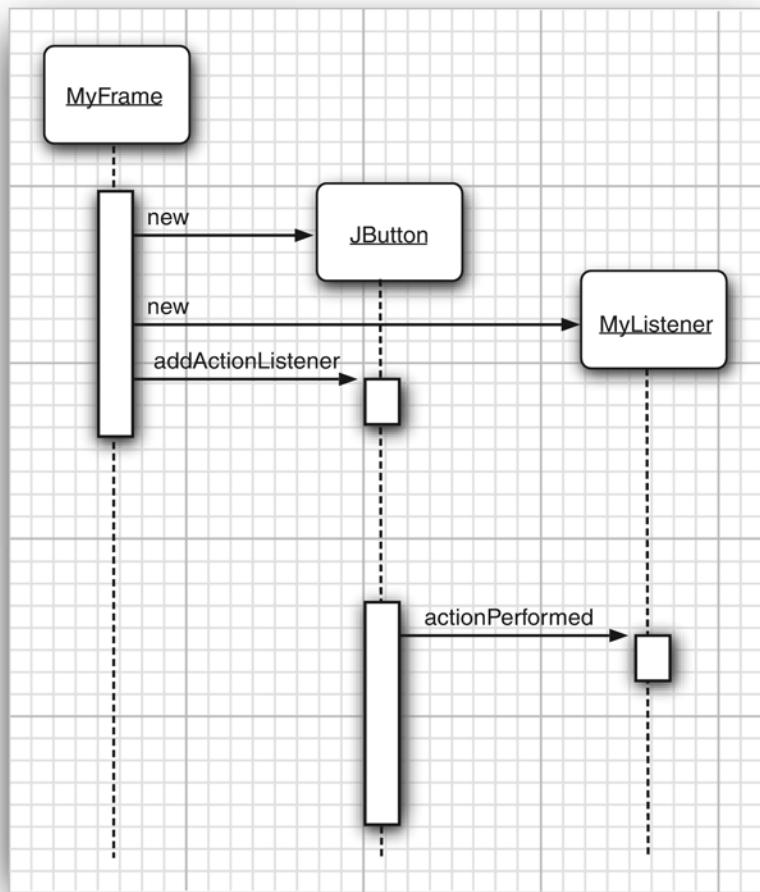
Now the listener object is notified whenever an “action event” occurs in the button. For buttons, as you might expect, an action event is a button click.

To implement the `ActionListener` interface, the listener class must have a method called `actionPerformed` that receives an `ActionEvent` object as a parameter.

```
class MyListener implements ActionListener
{
    ...
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        // reaction to button click goes here
        ...
    }
}
```

Whenever the user clicks the button, the `JButton` object creates an `ActionEvent` object and calls `listener.actionPerformed(event)`, passing that event object. An event source such as a button can have multiple listeners. In that case, the button calls the `actionPerformed` methods of all listeners whenever the user clicks the button.

Figure 10.13 shows the interaction between the event source, event listener, and event object.



**Figure 10.13** Event notification

#### 10.4.2 Example: Handling a Button Click

As a way of getting comfortable with the event delegation model, let's work through all the details needed for the simple example of responding to a button click. For this example, we will show a panel populated with three buttons. Three listener objects are added as action listeners to the buttons.

With this scenario, each time a user clicks on any of the buttons on the panel, the associated listener object receives an `ActionEvent` that indicates a button click. In our sample program, the listener object will then change the background color of the panel.

Before we can show you the program that listens to button clicks, we first need to explain how to create buttons and how to add them to a panel.

To create a button, specify a label string, an icon, or both in the button constructor. Here are two examples:

```
var yellowButton = new JButton("Yellow");
var blueButton = new JButton(new ImageIcon("blue-ball.gif"));
```

Call the `add` method to add the buttons to a panel:

```
var yellowButton = new JButton("Yellow");
var blueButton = new JButton("Blue");
var redButton = new JButton("Red");

buttonPanel.add(yellowButton);
buttonPanel.add(blueButton);
buttonPanel.add(redButton);
```

Figure 10.14 shows the result.



**Figure 10.14** A panel filled with buttons

Next, we need to add code that listens to these buttons. This requires classes that implement the `ActionListener` interface, which, as we just mentioned, has one method: `actionPerformed`, whose signature looks like this:

```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
```

The way to use the `ActionListener` interface is the same in all situations: The `actionPerformed` method (which is the only method in `ActionListener`) takes an object of type `ActionEvent` as a parameter. This event object gives you information about the event that happened.

When a button is clicked, we want the background color of the panel to change to a particular color. We store the desired color in our listener class.

```
class ColorAction implements ActionListener
{
    private Color backgroundColor;

    public ColorAction(Color c)
    {
        backgroundColor = c;
    }

    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        // set panel background color
        . .
    }
}
```

We then construct one object for each color and set the objects as the button listeners.

```
var yellowAction = new ColorAction(Color.YELLOW);
var blueAction = new ColorAction(Color.BLUE);
var redAction = new ColorAction(Color.RED);

yellowButton.addActionListener(yellowAction);
blueButton.addActionListener(blueAction);
redButton.addActionListener(redAction);
```

For example, if a user clicks on the button marked “Yellow”, the `actionPerformed` method of the `yellowAction` object is called. Its `backgroundColor` instance field is set to `Color.YELLOW`, and it can now proceed to set the panel’s background color.

Just one issue remains. The `ColorAction` object doesn’t have access to the `buttonPanel` variable. You can solve this problem in two ways. You can store the panel in the `ColorAction` object and set it in the `ColorAction` constructor. Or, more conveniently, you can make `ColorAction` into an inner class of the `ButtonFrame` class. Its methods can then access the outer panel automatically.

Listing 10.5 contains the complete frame class. Whenever you click one of the buttons, the appropriate action listener changes the background color of the panel.

**Listing 10.5** button/ButtonFrame.java

```
1 package button;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import javax.swing.*;
6
7 /**
8  * A frame with a button panel.
9 */
10 public class ButtonFrame extends JFrame
11 {
12     private JPanel buttonPanel;
13     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
14     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
15
16     public ButtonFrame()
17     {
18         setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
19
20         // create buttons
21         var yellowButton = new JButton("Yellow");
22         var blueButton = new JButton("Blue");
23         var redButton = new JButton("Red");
24
25         buttonPanel = new JPanel();
26
27         // add buttons to panel
28         buttonPanel.add(yellowButton);
29         buttonPanel.add(blueButton);
30         buttonPanel.add(redButton);
31
32         // add panel to frame
33         add(buttonPanel);
34
35         // create button actions
36         var yellowAction = new ColorAction(Color.YELLOW);
37         var blueAction = new ColorAction(Color.BLUE);
38         var redAction = new ColorAction(Color.RED);
39
40         // associate actions with buttons
41         yellowButton.addActionListener(yellowAction);
42         blueButton.addActionListener(blueAction);
43         redButton.addActionListener(redAction);
44     }
45 }
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 10.5 (Continued)**

```
46  /**
47  * An action listener that sets the panel's background color.
48  */
49  private class ColorAction implements ActionListener
50  {
51      private Color backgroundColor;
52
53      public ColorAction(Color c)
54      {
55          backgroundColor = c;
56      }
57
58      public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
59      {
60          buttonPanel.setBackground(backgroundColor);
61      }
62  }
63 }
```

---

**javax.swing.JButton 1.2**

- JButton(String label)
- JButton(Icon icon)
- JButton(String label, Icon icon)

constructs a button. The label string can be plain text or HTML; for example, "<html><b>Ok</b></html>".

**java.awt.Container 1.0**

- Component add(Component c)  
adds the component c to this container.

### 10.4.3 Specifying Listeners Concisely

In the preceding section, we defined a class for the event listener and constructed three objects of that class. It is not all that common to have multiple instances of a listener class. Most commonly, each listener carries out a separate action. In that case, there is no need to make a separate class. Simply use a lambda expression:

```
exitButton.addActionListener(event -> System.exit(0));
```

Now consider the case in which we have multiple related actions, such as the color buttons of the preceding section. In such a case, implement a helper method:

```
public void makeButton(String name, Color backgroundColor)
{
    var button = new JButton(name);
    buttonPanel.add(button);
    button.addActionListener(event ->
        buttonPanel.setBackground(backgroundColor));
}
```

Note that the lambda expression refers to the parameter variable `backgroundColor`.

Then we simply call

```
makeButton("yellow", Color.YELLOW);
makeButton("blue", Color.BLUE);
makeButton("red", Color.RED);
```

Here, we construct three listener objects, one for each color, without explicitly defining a class. Each time the helper method is called, it makes an instance of a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface. Its `actionPerformed` action references the `backGroundColor` value that is, in fact, stored with the listener object. However, all this happens without you having to explicitly define listener classes, instance variables, or constructors that set them.



**NOTE:** In older code, you will often see the use of anonymous classes:

```
exitButton.addActionListener(new ActionListener()
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent)
    {
        System.exit(0);
    }
});
```

Of course, this rather verbose code is no longer necessary. Using a lambda expression is simpler and clearer.

#### 10.4.4 Adapter Classes

Not all events are as simple to handle as button clicks. Suppose you want to monitor when the user tries to close the main frame in order to put up a dialog and exit the program only when the user agrees.

When the user tries to close a window, the `JFrame` object is the source of a `WindowEvent`. If you want to catch that event, you must have an appropriate listener object and add it to the frame's list of window listeners.

```
WindowListener listener = . . .;
frame.addWindowListener(listener);
```

The window listener must be an object of a class that implements the `WindowListener` interface. There are actually seven methods in the `WindowListener` interface. The frame calls them as the responses to seven distinct events that could happen to a window. The names are self-explanatory, except that "iconified" is usually called "minimized" under Windows. Here is the complete `WindowListener` interface:

```
public interface WindowListener
{
    void windowOpened(WindowEvent e);
    void windowClosing(WindowEvent e);
    void windowClosed(WindowEvent e);
    void windowIconified(WindowEvent e);
    void windowDeiconified(WindowEvent e);
    void windowActivated(WindowEvent e);
    void windowDeactivated(WindowEvent e);
}
```

Of course, we can define a class that implements the interface, add a call to `System.exit(0)` in the `windowClosing` method, and write do-nothing functions for the other six methods. However, typing code for six methods that don't do anything is the kind of tedious busywork that nobody likes. To simplify this task, each of the AWT listener interfaces that have more than one method comes with a companion *adapter* class that implements all the methods in the interface but does nothing with them. For example, the `WindowAdapter` class has seven do-nothing methods. You extend the adapter class to specify the desired reactions to some, but not all, of the event types in the interface. (An interface such as `ActionListener` that has only a single method does not need an adapter class.)

Here is how we can define a window listener that overrides the `windowClosing` method:

```
class Terminator extends WindowAdapter
{
    public void windowClosing(WindowEvent e)
    {
        if (user agrees)
            System.exit(0);
    }
}
```

Now you can register an object of type `Terminator` as the event listener:

```
var listener = new Terminator();
frame.addWindowListener(listener);
```



**NOTE:** Nowadays, one would implement do-nothing methods of the `WindowListener` interface as default methods. However, Swing was invented many years before there were default methods.

#### `java.awt.event.WindowListener 1.1`

- `void windowOpened(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has been opened.
- `void windowClosing(WindowEvent e)`  
is called when the user has issued a window manager command to close the window. Note that the window will close only if its `hide` or `dispose` method is called.
- `void windowClosed(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has closed.
- `void windowIconified(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has been iconified.
- `void windowDeiconified(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has been deiconified.
- `void windowActivated(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has become active. Only a frame or dialog can be active. Typically, the window manager decorates the active window—for example, by highlighting the title bar.
- `void windowDeactivated(WindowEvent e)`  
is called after the window has become deactivated.

#### `java.awt.event.WindowStateListener 1.4`

- `void windowStateChanged(WindowEvent event)`  
is called after the window has been maximized, iconified, or restored to normal size.

### 10.4.5 Actions

It is common to have multiple ways to activate the same command. The user can choose a certain function through a menu, a keystroke, or a button on a toolbar. This is easy to achieve in the AWT event model: link all events to the same listener. For example, suppose `blueAction` is an action listener whose `actionPerformed` method changes the background color to blue. You can attach the same object as a listener to several event sources:

- A toolbar button labeled “Blue”
- A menu item labeled “Blue”
- A keystroke Ctrl+B

The color change command will now be handled in a uniform way, no matter whether it was caused by a button click, a menu selection, or a key press.

The Swing package provides a very useful mechanism to encapsulate commands and to attach them to multiple event sources: the `Action` interface. An *action* is an object that encapsulates

- A description of the command (as a text string and an optional icon); and
- Parameters that are necessary to carry out the command (such as the requested color in our example).

The `Action` interface has the following methods:

```
void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
void setEnabled(boolean b)
boolean isEnabled()
void putValue(String key, Object value)
Object getValue(String key)
void addPropertyChangeListener(PropertyChangeListener listener)
void removePropertyChangeListener(PropertyChangeListener listener)
```

The first method is the familiar method in the `ActionListener` interface; in fact, the `Action` interface extends the `ActionListener` interface. Therefore, you can use an `Action` object whenever an `ActionListener` object is expected.

The next two methods let you enable or disable the action and check whether the action is currently enabled. When an action is attached to a menu or toolbar and the action is disabled, the option is grayed out.

The `putValue` and `getValue` methods let you store and retrieve arbitrary name/value pairs in the action object. A couple of important predefined strings, namely `Action.NAME` and `Action.SMALL_ICON`, store action names and icons into an action object:

```
action.putValue(Action.NAME, "Blue");
action.putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, new ImageIcon("blue-ball.gif"));
```

Table 10.1 shows all predefined action table names.

**Table 10.1** Predefined Action Table Names

Name	Value
NAME	The name of the action, displayed on buttons and menu items.
SMALL_ICON	A place to store a small icon for display in a button, menu item, or toolbar.
SHORT_DESCRIPTION	A short description of the icon for display in a tooltip.
LONG_DESCRIPTION	A long description of the icon for potential use in online help. No Swing component uses this value.
MNEMONIC_KEY	A mnemonic abbreviation for display in menu items.
ACCELERATOR_KEY	A place to store an accelerator keystroke. No Swing component uses this value.
ACTION_COMMAND_KEY	Historically, used in the now-obsolete registerKeyboardAction method.
DEFAULT	Potentially useful catch-all property. No Swing component uses this value.

If the action object is added to a menu or toolbar, the name and icon are automatically retrieved and displayed in the menu item or toolbar button. The SHORT\_DESCRIPTION value turns into a tooltip.

The final two methods of the Action interface allow other objects, in particular menus or toolbars that trigger the action, to be notified when the properties of the action object change. For example, if a menu is added as a property change listener of an action object and the action object is subsequently disabled, the menu is called and can gray out the action name.

Note that Action is an *interface*, not a class. Any class implementing this interface must implement the seven methods we just discussed. Fortunately, a friendly soul has provided a class AbstractAction that implements all methods except for actionPerformed. That class takes care of storing all name/value pairs and managing the property change listeners. You simply extend AbstractAction and supply an actionPerformed method.

Let's build an action object that can execute color change commands. We store the name of the command, an icon, and the desired color. We store the

color in the table of name/value pairs that the `AbstractAction` class provides. Here is the code for the `ColorAction` class. The constructor sets the name/value pairs, and the `actionPerformed` method carries out the color change action.

```
public class ColorAction extends AbstractAction
{
    public ColorAction(String name, Icon icon, Color c)
    {
        putValue(Action.NAME, name);
        putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, icon);
        putValue("color", c);
        putValue(Action.SHORT_DESCRIPTION, "Set panel color to " + name.toLowerCase());
    }

    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        Color c = (Color) getValue("color");
        buttonPanel.setBackground(c);
    }
}
```

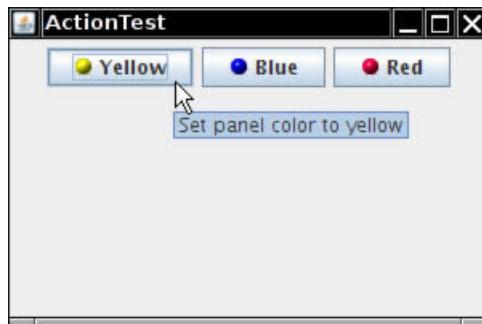
Our test program creates three objects of this class, such as

```
var blueAction = new ColorAction("Blue", new ImageIcon("blue-ball.gif"), Color.BLUE);
```

Next, let's associate this action with a button. That is easy because we can use a `JButton` constructor that takes an `Action` object.

```
var blueButton = new JButton(blueAction);
```

That constructor reads the name and icon from the action, sets the short description as the tooltip, and sets the action as the listener. You can see the icons and a tooltip in Figure 10.15.



**Figure 10.15** Buttons display the icons from the action objects.

As we demonstrate in the next chapter, it is just as easy to add the same action to a menu.

Finally, we want to add the action objects to keystrokes so that an action is carried out when the user types a keyboard command. To associate actions with keystrokes, you first need to generate objects of the `KeyStroke` class. This convenience class encapsulates the description of a key. To generate a `KeyStroke` object, don't call a constructor but instead use the static `getKeyStroke` method of the `KeyStroke` class.

```
KeyStroke ctrlBKey = KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl B");
```

To understand the next step, you need to understand the concept of *keyboard focus*. A user interface can have many buttons, menus, scrollbars, and other components. When you hit a key, it is sent to the component that has focus. That component is usually (but not always) visually distinguished. For example, in the Java look-and-feel, a button with focus has a thin rectangular border around the button text. You can use the Tab key to move the focus between components. When you press the space bar, the button with focus is clicked. Other keys carry out different actions; for example, the arrow keys can move a scrollbar.

However, in our case, we do not want to send the keystroke to the component that has focus. Otherwise, each of the buttons would need to know how to handle the Ctrl+Y, Ctrl+B, and Ctrl+R keys.

This is a common problem, and the Swing designers came up with a convenient solution. Every `JComponent` has three *input maps*, each mapping `KeyStroke` objects to associated actions. The three input maps correspond to three different conditions (see Table 10.2).

**Table 10.2** Input Map Conditions

Flag	Invoke Action
<code>WHEN_FOCUSED</code>	When this component has keyboard focus
<code>WHEN_ANCESTOR_OF_FOCUSED_COMPONENT</code>	When this component contains the component that has keyboard focus
<code>WHEN_IN_FOCUSED_WINDOW</code>	When this component is contained in the same window as the component that has keyboard focus

Keystroke processing checks these maps in the following order:

1. Check the `WHEN_FOCUSED` map of the component with input focus. If the keystroke exists and its corresponding action is enabled, execute the action and stop processing.
2. Starting from the component with input focus, check the `WHEN_ANCESTOR_OF_FOCUSED_COMPONENT` maps of its parent components. As soon as a map with the keystroke and a corresponding enabled action is found, execute the action and stop processing.
3. Look at all *visible* and *enabled* components, in the window with input focus, that have this keystroke registered in a `WHEN_IN_FOCUSED_WINDOW` map. Give these components (in the order of their keystroke registration) a chance to execute the corresponding action. As soon as the first enabled action is executed, stop processing.

To obtain an input map from the component, use the `getInputMap` method. Here is an example:

```
InputMap imap = panel.getInputMap(JComponent.WHEN_FOCUSED);
```

The `WHEN_FOCUSED` condition means that this map is consulted when the current component has the keyboard focus. In our situation, that isn't the map we want. One of the buttons, not the panel, has the input focus. Either of the other two map choices works fine for inserting the color change keystrokes. We use `WHEN_ANCESTOR_OF_FOCUSED_COMPONENT` in our example program.

The `InputMap` doesn't directly map `KeyStroke` objects to `Action` objects. Instead, it maps to arbitrary objects, and a second map, implemented by the `ActionMap` class, maps objects to actions. That makes it easier to share the same actions among keystrokes that come from different input maps.

Thus, each component has three input maps and one action map. To tie them together, you need to come up with names for the actions. Here is how you can tie a key to an action:

```
imap.put(KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl Y"), "panel.yellow");
ActionMap amap = panel.getActionMap();
amap.put("panel.yellow", yellowAction);
```

It is customary to use the string "none" for a do-nothing action. That makes it easy to deactivate a key:

```
imap.put(KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl C"), "none");
```



**CAUTION:** The JDK documentation suggests using the action name as the action's key. We don't think that is a good idea. The action name is displayed on buttons and menu items; thus, it can change at the whim of the UI designer and may be translated into multiple languages. Such unstable strings are poor choices for lookup keys, so we recommend that you come up with action names that are independent of the displayed names.

To summarize, here is what you do to carry out the same action in response to a button, a menu item, or a keystroke:

1. Implement a class that extends the `AbstractAction` class. You may be able to use the same class for multiple related actions.
2. Construct an object of the action class.
3. Construct a button or menu item from the action object. The constructor will read the label text and icon from the action object.
4. For actions that can be triggered by keystrokes, you have to carry out additional steps. First, locate the top-level component of the window, such as a panel that contains all other components.
5. Then, get the `WHEN_ANCESTOR_OF_FOCUSED_COMPONENT` input map of the top-level component. Make a `KeyStroke` object for the desired keystroke. Make an action key object, such as a string that describes your action. Add the pair (keystroke, action key) into the input map.
6. Finally, get the action map of the top-level component. Add the pair (action key, action object) into the map.

#### `javax.swing.Action` 1.2

- `boolean isEnabled()`
- `void setEnabled(boolean b)`  
gets or sets the `enabled` property of this action.
- `void putValue(String key, Object value)`  
places a key/value pair inside the action object. The key can be any string, but several names have predefined meanings—see Table 10.1.
- `Object getValue(String key)`  
returns the value of a stored name/value pair.

**javax.swing.KeyStroke 1.2**

- static KeyStroke getKeyStroke(String description)

constructs a keystroke from a human-readable description (a sequence of whitespace-delimited strings). The description starts with zero or more modifiers (shift, control, ctrl, meta, alt, altGraph) and ends with either the string typed, followed by a one-character string (for example, "typed a"), or an optional event specifier (pressed or released, with pressed being the default), followed by a key code. The key code, when prefixed with VK\_, should correspond to a KeyEvent constant; for example, "INSERT" corresponds to KeyEvent.VK\_INSERT.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- ActionMap getActionMap() 1.3

returns the map that associates action map keys (which can be arbitrary objects) with Action objects.

- InputMap getInputMap(int flag) 1.3

gets the input map that maps key strokes to action map keys. The flag is one of the values in Table 10.2.

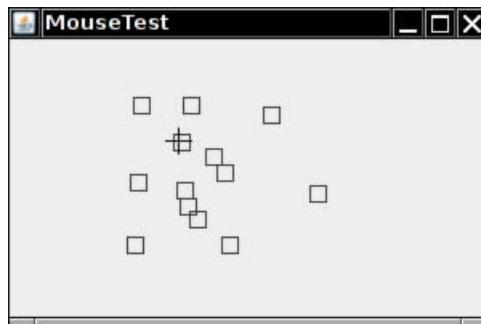
### 10.4.6 Mouse Events

You do not need to handle mouse events explicitly if you just want the user to be able to click on a button or menu. These mouse operations are handled internally by the various components in the user interface. However, if you want to enable the user to draw with the mouse, you will need to trap the mouse move, click, and drag events.

In this section, we will show you a simple graphics editor application that allows the user to place, move, and erase squares on a canvas (see Figure 10.16).

When the user clicks a mouse button, three listener methods are called: `mousePressed` when the mouse is first pressed, `mouseReleased` when the mouse is released, and, finally, `mouseClicked`. If you are only interested in complete clicks, you can ignore the first two methods. By using the `getX` and `getY` methods on the `MouseEvent` argument, you can obtain the *x* and *y* coordinates of the mouse pointer when the mouse was clicked. To distinguish between single, double, and triple (!) clicks, use the `getClickCount` method.

In our sample program, we supply both a `mousePressed` and a `mouseClicked` methods. When you click on a pixel that is not inside any of the squares that have



**Figure 10.16** A mouse test program

been drawn, a new square is added. We implemented this in the `mousePressed` method so that the user receives immediate feedback and does not have to wait until the mouse button is released. When a user double-clicks inside an existing square, it is erased. We implemented this in the `mouseClicked` method because we need the click count.

```
public void mousePressed(MouseEvent event)
{
    current = find(event.getPoint());
    if (current == null) // not inside a square
        add(event.getPoint());
}

public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event)
{
    current = find(event.getPoint());
    if (current != null && event.getClickCount() >= 2)
        remove(current);
}
```

As the mouse moves over a window, the window receives a steady stream of mouse movement events. Note that there are separate `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` interfaces. This is done for efficiency—there are a lot of mouse events as the user moves the mouse around, and a listener that just cares about mouse *clicks* will not be bothered with unwanted mouse *moves*.

Our test application traps mouse motion events to change the cursor to a different shape (a cross hair) when it is over a square. This is done with the `getPredefinedCursor` method of the `Cursor` class. Table 10.3 lists the constants to use with this method along with what the cursors look like under Windows.

Here is the `mouseMoved` method of the `MouseMotionListener` in our example program:

**Table 10.3** Sample Cursor Shapes

Icon	Constant	Icon	Constant
	DEFAULT_CURSOR		NE_RESIZE_CURSOR
	CROSSHAIR_CURSOR		E_RESIZE_CURSOR
	HAND_CURSOR		SE_RESIZE_CURSOR
	MOVE_CURSOR		S_RESIZE_CURSOR
	TEXT_CURSOR		SW_RESIZE_CURSOR
	WAIT_CURSOR		W_RESIZE_CURSOR
	N_RESIZE_CURSOR		NW_RESIZE_CURSOR

```
public void mouseMoved(MouseEvent event)
{
    if (find(event.getPoint()) == null)
        setCursor(Cursor.getDefaultCursor());
    else
        setCursor(Cursor.getPredefinedCursor(Cursor.CROSSHAIR_CURSOR));
}
```

If the user presses a mouse button while the mouse is in motion, `mouseDragged` calls are generated instead of `mouseMoved` calls. Our test application lets a user drag the square under the cursor. We simply update the currently dragged rectangle to be centered under the mouse position. Then, we repaint the canvas to show the new mouse position.

```
public void mouseDragged(MouseEvent event)
{
    if (current != null)
    {
        int x = event.getX();
        int y = event.getY();

        current setFrame(x - SIDELENGTH / 2, y - SIDELENGTH / 2, SIDELENGTH, SIDELENGTH);
        repaint();
    }
}
```



**NOTE:** The `mouseMoved` method is only called as long as the mouse stays inside the component. However, the `mouseDragged` method keeps getting called even when the mouse is being dragged outside the component.

There are two other mouse event methods: `mouseEntered` and `mouseExited`. These methods are called when the mouse enters or exits a component.

Finally, we explain how to listen to mouse events. Mouse clicks are reported through the `mouseClicked` method, which is part of the `MouseListener` interface. Many applications are only interested in mouse clicks and not in mouse moves; with the mouse move events occurring so frequently, the mouse move and drag events are defined in a separate interface called `MouseMotionListener`.

In our program we are interested in both types of mouse events. We define two inner classes: `MouseHandler` and `MouseMotionHandler`. The `MouseHandler` class extends the `MouseAdapter` class because it defines only two of the five `MouseListener` methods. The `MouseMotionHandler` implements the `MouseMotionListener` and defines both methods of that interface. Listing 10.6 is the program listing.

#### **Listing 10.6** mouse/MouseComponent.java

```
1 package mouse;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import java.awt.geom.*;
6 import java.util.*;
7 import javax.swing.*;
8
9 /**
10  * A component with mouse operations for adding and removing squares.
11 */
12 public class MouseComponent extends JComponent
13 {
14     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
15     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
16
17     private static final int SIDELENGTH = 10;
18     private ArrayList<Rectangle2D> squares;
19     private Rectangle2D current; // the square containing the mouse cursor
20
21     public MouseComponent()
22     {
23         squares = new ArrayList<>();
24         current = null;
```

(Continues)

**Listing 10.6 (Continued)**

```
25
26     addMouseListener(new MouseHandler());
27     addMouseMotionListener(new MouseMotionHandler());
28 }
29
30 public Dimension getPreferredSize()
31 {
32     return new Dimension(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
33 }
34
35 public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
36 {
37     var g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
38
39     // draw all squares
40     for (Rectangle2D r : squares)
41         g2.draw(r);
42 }
43
44 /**
45 * Finds the first square containing a point.
46 * @param p a point
47 * @return the first square that contains p
48 */
49 public Rectangle2D find(Point2D p)
50 {
51     for (Rectangle2D r : squares)
52     {
53         if (r.contains(p)) return r;
54     }
55     return null;
56 }
57
58 /**
59 * Adds a square to the collection.
60 * @param p the center of the square
61 */
62 public void add(Point2D p)
63 {
64     double x = p.getX();
65     double y = p.getY();
66
67     current = new Rectangle2D.Double(x - SIDELENGTH / 2, y - SIDELENGTH / 2,
68                                     SIDELENGTH, SIDELENGTH);
69     squares.add(current);
70     repaint();
71 }
```

```
72
73     /**
74      * Removes a square from the collection.
75      * @param s the square to remove
76      */
77     public void remove(Rectangle2D s)
78     {
79         if (s == null) return;
80         if (s == current) current = null;
81         squares.remove(s);
82         repaint();
83     }
84
85     private class MouseHandler extends MouseAdapter
86     {
87         public void mousePressed(MouseEvent event)
88         {
89             // add a new square if the cursor isn't inside a square
90             current = find(event.getPoint());
91             if (current == null) add(event.getPoint());
92         }
93
94         public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event)
95         {
96             // remove the current square if double clicked
97             current = find(event.getPoint());
98             if (current != null && event.getClickCount() >= 2) remove(current);
99         }
100    }
101
102    private class MouseMotionHandler implements MouseMotionListener
103    {
104        public void mouseMoved(MouseEvent event)
105        {
106            // set the mouse cursor to cross hairs if it is inside a rectangle
107
108            if (find(event.getPoint()) == null) setCursor(Cursor.getDefaultCursor());
109            else setCursor(Cursor.getPredefinedCursor(Cursor.CROSSHAIR_CURSOR));
110        }
111
112        public void mouseDragged(MouseEvent event)
113        {
114            if (current != null)
115            {
116                int x = event.getX();
117                int y = event.getY();
118
119                // drag the current rectangle to center it at (x, y)
```

(Continues)

**Listing 10.6 (Continued)**

```
120         current.setFrame(x - SIDELENGTH / 2, y - SIDELENGTH / 2, SIDELENGTH, SIDELENGTH);
121         repaint();
122     }
123 }
124 }
125 }
```

---

**java.awt.event.MouseEvent 1.1**

- int getX()
- int getY()
- Point getPoint()

returns the *x* (horizontal) and *y* (vertical) coordinates of the point where the event happened, measured from the top left corner of the component that is the event source.

- int getClickCount()

returns the number of consecutive mouse clicks associated with this event. (The time interval for what constitutes “consecutive” is system-dependent.)

**java.awt.Component 1.0**

- public void setCursor(Cursor cursor) 1.1

sets the cursor image to the specified cursor.

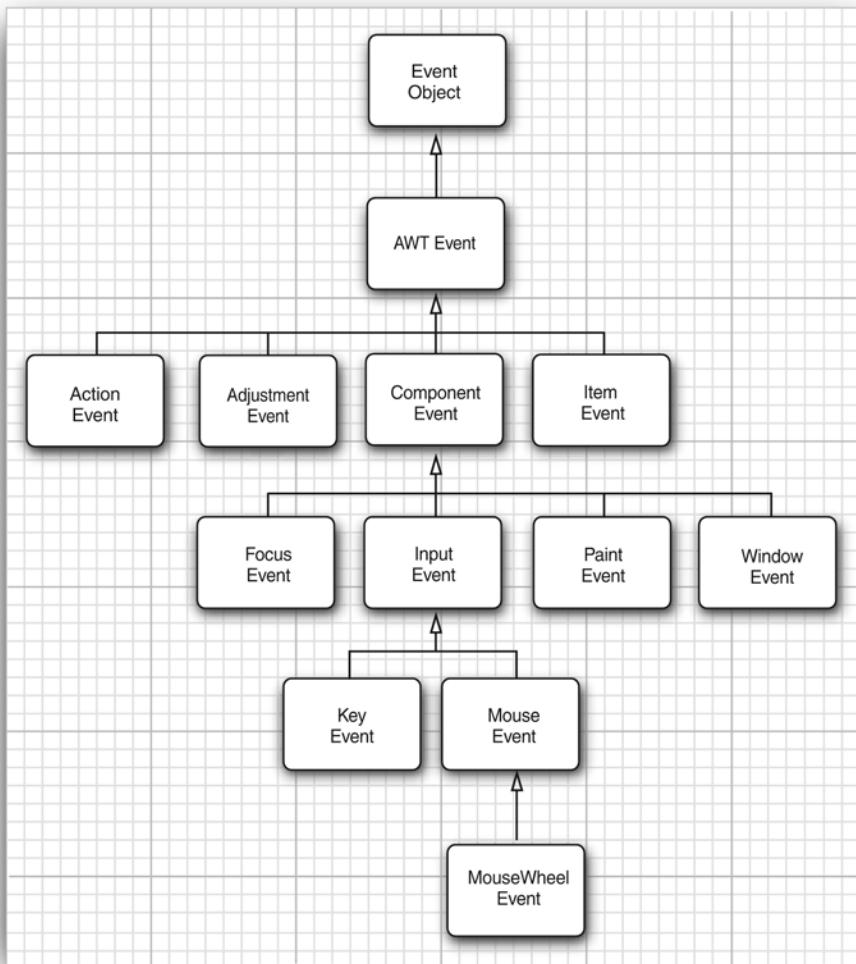
### 10.4.7 The AWT Event Hierarchy

The `EventObject` class has a subclass `AWTEvent`, which is the parent of all AWT event classes. Figure 10.17 shows the inheritance diagram of the AWT events.

Some of the Swing components generate event objects of yet more event types; these directly extend `EventObject`, not `AWTEvent`.

The event objects encapsulate information about the event that the event source communicates to its listeners. When necessary, you can then analyze the event objects that were passed to the listener object, as we did in the button example with the `getSource` and `getActionCommand` methods.

Some of the AWT event classes are of no practical use for the Java programmer. For example, the AWT inserts `PaintEvent` objects into the event queue, but these objects are not delivered to listeners. Java programmers don’t listen



**Figure 10.17** Inheritance diagram of AWT event classes

to paint events; instead, they override the `paintComponent` method to control repainting. The AWT also generates a number of events that are needed only by systems programmers, to provide input systems for ideographic languages, automated testing robots, and so on.

The AWT makes a useful distinction between *low-level* and *semantic* events. A semantic event is one that expresses what the user is doing, such as

"clicking that button"; an `ActionEvent` is a semantic event. Low-level events are those events that make this possible. In the case of a button click, this is a mouse down, a series of mouse moves, and a mouse up (but only if the mouse up is inside the button area). Or it might be a keystroke, which happens if the user selects the button with the Tab key and then activates it with the space bar. Similarly, adjusting a scrollbar is a semantic event, but dragging the mouse is a low-level event.

Here are the most commonly used semantic event classes in the `java.awt.event` package:

- `ActionEvent` (for a button click, a menu selection, selecting a list item, or Enter typed in a text field)
- `AdjustmentEvent` (the user adjusted a scrollbar)
- `ItemEvent` (the user made a selection from a set of checkbox or list items)

Five low-level event classes are commonly used:

- `KeyEvent` (a key was pressed or released)
- `MouseEvent` (the mouse button was pressed, released, moved, or dragged)
- `MouseWheelEvent` (the mouse wheel was rotated)
- `FocusEvent` (a component got focus or lost focus)
- `WindowEvent` (the window state changed)

Table 10.4 shows the most important AWT listener interfaces, events, and event sources.

**Table 10.4** Event Handling Summary

Interface	Methods	Parameter/Accessors	Events Generated By
<code>ActionListener</code>	<code>actionPerformed</code>	<code>ActionEvent</code> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>getActionCommand</code></li> <li>• <code>getModifiers</code></li> </ul>	<code>AbstractButton</code> <code>JComboBox</code> <code>JTextField</code> <code>Timer</code>
<code>AdjustmentListener</code>	<code>adjustmentValueChanged</code>	<code>AdjustmentEvent</code> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>getAdjustable</code></li> <li>• <code>getAdjustmentType</code></li> <li>• <code>getValue</code></li> </ul>	<code>JScrollbar</code>

(Continues)

**Table 10.4** (Continued)

Interface	Methods	Parameter/Accessors	Events Generated By
ItemListener	itemStateChanged	ItemEvent • getItem • getItemSelectable • getStateChange	AbstractButton JComboBox
FocusListener	focusGained focusLost	FocusEvent • isTemporary	Component
KeyListener	keyPressed keyReleased keyTyped	KeyEvent • getKeyChar • getKeyCode • getKeyModifiersText • getKeyText • isActionKey	Component
MouseListener	mousePressed mouseReleased mouseEntered mouseExited mouseClicked	MouseEvent • getClickCount • getX • getY • getPoint • translatePoint	Component
MouseMotionListener	mouseDragged mouseMoved	MouseEvent	Component
MouseWheelListener	mouseWheelMoved	MouseWheelEvent • getWheelRotation • getScrollAmount	Component
WindowListener	windowClosing windowOpened windowIconified windowDeiconified windowClosed windowActivated windowDeactivated	WindowEvent • getWindow	Window

(Continues)

**Table 10.4** (Continued)

Interface	Methods	Parameter/Accessors	Events Generated By
WindowFocusListener	windowGainedFocus windowLostFocus	WindowEvent • getOppositeWindow	Window
WindowStateListener	windowStateChanged	WindowEvent • getState • getOldState • getNewState	Window

## 10.5 The Preferences API

We end this chapter with a discussion of the `java.util.prefs` API. In a desktop program, you will often want to store user preferences, such as the last file that the user worked on, the last window location, and so on.

As you have seen in Chapter 9, the `Properties` class makes it simple to load and save configuration information of a program. However, using property files has these disadvantages:

- Some operating systems have no concept of a home directory, making it difficult to find a uniform location for configuration files.
- There is no standard convention for naming configuration files, increasing the likelihood of name clashes as users install multiple Java applications.

Some operating systems have a central repository for configuration information. The best-known example is the registry in Microsoft Windows. The `Preferences` class provides such a central repository in a platform-independent manner. In Windows, the `Preferences` class uses the registry for storage; on Linux, the information is stored in the local file system instead. Of course, the repository implementation is transparent to the programmer using the `Preferences` class.

The `Preferences` repository has a tree structure, with node path names such as `/com/mycompany/myapp`. As with package names, name clashes are avoided as long as programmers start the paths with reversed domain names. In fact, the designers of the API suggest that the configuration node paths match the package names in your program.

Each node in the repository has a separate table of key/value pairs that you can use to store numbers, strings, or byte arrays. No provision is made for storing serializable objects. The API designers felt that the serialization format

is too fragile for long-term storage. Of course, if you disagree, you can save serialized objects in byte arrays.

For additional flexibility, there are multiple parallel trees. Each program user has one tree; an additional tree, called the system tree, is available for settings that are common to all users. The Preferences class uses the operating system's notion of the "current user" for accessing the appropriate user tree.

To access a node in the tree, start with the user or system root:

```
Preferences root = Preferences.userRoot();
```

or

```
Preferences root = Preferences.systemRoot();
```

Then access the node. You can simply provide a node path name:

```
Preferences node = root.node("/com/mycompany/myapp");
```

A convenient shortcut gets a node whose path name equals the package name of a class. Simply take an object of that class and call

```
Preferences node = Preferences.userNodeForPackage(obj.getClass());
```

or

```
Preferences node = Preferences.systemNodeForPackage(obj.getClass());
```

Typically, obj will be the this reference.

Once you have a node, you can access the key/value table with methods

```
String get(String key, String defval)
int getInt(String key, int defval)
long getLong(String key, long defval)
float getFloat(String key, float defval)
double getDouble(String key, double defval)
boolean getBoolean(String key, boolean defval)
byte[] getByteArray(String key, byte[] defval)
```

Note that you must specify a default value when reading the information, in case the repository data is not available. Defaults are required for several reasons. The data might be missing because the user never specified a preference. Certain resource-constrained platforms might not have a repository, and mobile devices might be temporarily disconnected from the repository.

Conversely, you can write data to the repository with put methods such as

```
put(String key, String value)
putInt(String key, int value)
```

and so on.

You can enumerate all keys stored in a node with the method

```
String[] keys()
```

There is currently no way to find out the type of the value of a particular key.



**NOTE:** Node names and keys are limited to 80 characters, and string values to 8192 characters.

---

Central repositories such as the Windows registry traditionally suffer from two problems:

- They turn into a “dumping ground” filled with obsolete information.
- Configuration data gets entangled into the repository, making it difficult to move preferences to a new platform.

The Preferences class has a solution for the second problem. You can export the preferences of a subtree (or, less commonly, a single node) by calling the methods

```
void exportSubtree(OutputStream out)  
void exportNode(OutputStream out)
```

The data are saved in XML format. You can import them into another repository by calling

```
void importPreferences(InputStream in)
```

Here is a sample file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>  
<!DOCTYPE preferences SYSTEM "http://java.sun.com/dtd/preferences.dtd">  
<preferences EXTERNAL_XML_VERSION="1.0">  
    <root type="user">  
        <map/>  
        <node name="com">  
            <map/>  
            <node name="horstmann">  
                <map/>  
                <node name="corejava">  
                    <map>  
                        <entry key="height" value="200.0"/>  
                        <entry key="left" value="1027.0"/>  
                        <entry key="filename" value="/home/cay/books/cj11/code/vlch11/raven.html"/>  
                        <entry key="top" value="380.0"/>  
                        <entry key="width" value="300.0"/>  
                    </map>  
                </node>  
            </node>  
        </map>  
    </root>  
</preferences>
```

```
</node>
</node>
</root>
</preferences>
```

If your program uses preferences, you should give your users the opportunity of exporting and importing them, so they can easily migrate their settings from one computer to another. The program in Listing 10.7 demonstrates this technique. The program simply saves the window location and the last loaded filename. Try resizing the window, then export your preferences, move the window, exit, and restart the application. The window will be just like you left it when you exited. Import your preferences, and the window reverts to its prior location.

---

**Listing 10.7** preferences/ImageViewer.java

---

```
1 package preferences;
2
3 import java.awt.EventQueue;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import java.io.*;
6 import java.util.prefs.*;
7 import javax.swing.*;
8
9 /**
10  * A program to test preference settings. The program remembers the
11  * frame position, size, and last selected file.
12  * @version 1.10 2018-04-10
13  * @author Cay Horstmann
14  */
15 public class ImageViewer
16 {
17     public static void main(String[] args)
18     {
19         EventQueue.invokeLater(() -> {
20             var frame = new ImageViewerFrame();
21             frame.setTitle("ImageViewer");
22             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
23             frame.setVisible(true);
24         });
25     }
26 }
27
28 /**
29  * An image viewer that restores position, size, and image from user
30  * preferences and updates the preferences upon exit.
31  */
```

(Continues)

**Listing 10.7 (Continued)**

```
32 class ImageViewerFrame extends JFrame
33 {
34     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
35     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
36     private String image;
37
38     public ImageViewerFrame()
39     {
40         Preferences root = Preferences.userRoot();
41         Preferences node = root.node("/com/horstmann/corejava/ImageViewer");
42         // get position, size, title from properties
43         int left = node.getInt("left", 0);
44         int top = node.getInt("top", 0);
45         int width = node.getInt("width", DEFAULT_WIDTH);
46         int height = node.getInt("height", DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
47         setBounds(left, top, width, height);
48         image = node.get("image", null);
49         var label = new JLabel();
50         if (image != null) label.setIcon(new ImageIcon(image));
51
52         addWindowListener(new WindowAdapter()
53         {
54             public void windowClosing(WindowEvent event)
55             {
56                 node.putInt("left", getX());
57                 node.putInt("top", getY());
58                 node.putInt("width", getWidth());
59                 node.putInt("height", getHeight());
60                 if (image != null) node.put("image", image);
61             }
62         });
63
64         // use a label to display the images
65         add(label);
66
67         // set up the file chooser
68         var chooser = new JFileChooser();
69         chooser.setCurrentDirectory(new File("."));
70
71         // set up the menu bar
72         var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
73         setJMenuBar(menuBar);
74
75         var menu = new JMenu("File");
76         menuBar.add(menu);
```

```
77     var openItem = new JMenuItem("Open");
78     menu.add(openItem);
79     openItem.addActionListener(event -> {
80
81         // show file chooser dialog
82         int result = chooser.showOpenDialog(null);
83
84
85         // if file selected, set it as icon of the label
86         if (result == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
87         {
88             image = chooser.getSelectedFile().getPath();
89             label.setIcon(new ImageIcon(image));
90         }
91     });
92
93     var exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
94     menu.add(exitItem);
95     exitItem.addActionListener(event -> System.exit(0));
96 }
97 }
```

#### java.util.prefs.Preferences 1.4

- Preferences userRoot()  
returns the root preferences node of the user of the calling program.
- Preferences systemRoot()  
returns the systemwide root preferences node.
- Preferences node(String path)  
returns a node that can be reached from the current node by the given path.  
If path is absolute (that is, starts with a /), then the node is located starting  
from the root of the tree containing this preference node. If there isn't a node  
with the given path, it is created.
- Preferences userNodeForPackage(Class cl)
- Preferences systemNodeForPackage(Class cl)  
returns a node in the current user's tree or the system tree whose absolute  
node path corresponds to the package name of the class cl.
- String[] keys()  
returns all keys belonging to this node.

(Continues)

**java.util.prefs.Preferences 1.4 (Continued)**

- `String get(String key, String defval)`
- `int getInt(String key, int defval)`
- `long getLong(String key, long defval)`
- `float getFloat(String key, float defval)`
- `double getDouble(String key, double defval)`
- `boolean getBoolean(String key, boolean defval)`
- `byte[] getByteArray(String key, byte[] defval)`

returns the value associated with the given key or the supplied default value if no value is associated with the key, the associated value is not of the correct type, or the preferences store is unavailable.

- `void put(String key, String value)`
- `void.putInt(String key, int value)`
- `void.putLong(String key, long value)`
- `void.putFloat(String key, float value)`
- `void.putDouble(String key, double value)`
- `void.putBoolean(String key, boolean value)`
- `void.putByteArray(String key, byte[] value)`

stores a key/value pair with this node.

- `void exportSubtree(OutputStream out)`  
writes the preferences of this node and its children to the specified stream.
- `void.exportNode(OutputStream out)`  
writes the preferences of this node (but not its children) to the specified stream.
- `void.importPreferences(InputStream in)`  
imports the preferences contained in the specified stream.

This concludes our introduction into graphical user interface programming. The next chapter shows you how to work with the most common Swing components.

# User Interface Components with Swing

## In this chapter

- 11.1 Swing and the Model-View-Controller Design Pattern, page 632
- 11.2 Introduction to Layout Management, page 636
- 11.3 Text Input, page 643
- 11.4 Choice Components, page 651
- 11.5 Menus, page 671
- 11.6 Sophisticated Layout Management, page 690
- 11.7 Dialog Boxes, page 706

The previous chapter was written primarily to show you how to use the event model in Java. In the process, you took the first steps toward learning how to build a graphical user interface. This chapter shows you the most important tools you'll need to build more full-featured GUIs.

We start out with a tour of the architectural underpinnings of Swing. Knowing what goes on “under the hood” is important in understanding how to use some of the more advanced components effectively. We then show you the most common user interface components in Swing, such as text fields, radio buttons, and menus. Next, you will learn how to use layout managers to

arrange these components. Finally, you'll see how to implement dialog boxes in Swing.

This chapter covers the basic Swing components such as text components, buttons, and sliders. These are the essential user interface components that you will need most frequently. We will cover advanced Swing components in Volume II.

## 11.1 Swing and the Model–View–Controller Design Pattern

Let's step back for a minute and think about the pieces that make up a user interface component such as a button, a checkbox, a text field, or a sophisticated tree control. Every component has three characteristics:

- Its *content*, such as the state of a button (pushed in or not), or the text in a text field
- Its *visual appearance* (color, size, and so on)
- Its *behavior* (reaction to events)

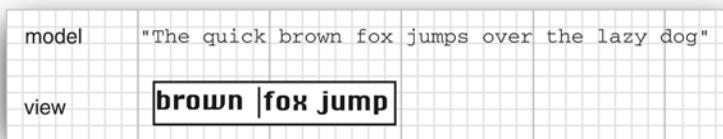
Even a seemingly simple component such as a button exhibits some moderately complex interaction among these characteristics. Obviously, the visual appearance of a button depends on the look-and-feel. A Metal button looks different from a Windows button or a Motif button. In addition, the appearance depends on the button state; when a button is pushed in, it needs to be redrawn to look different. The state depends on the events that the button receives. When the user depresses the mouse inside the button, the button is pushed in.

Of course, when you use a button in your programs, you simply consider it as a *button*; you don't think too much about the inner workings and characteristics. That, after all, is the job of the programmer who implemented the button. However, programmers who implement buttons and all other user interface components are motivated to think a little harder about them, so that they work well no matter what look-and-feel is in effect.

To do this, the Swing designers turned to a well-known design pattern: the *model-view-controller* (MVC) pattern. This design pattern tells us to provide three separate objects:

- The *model*, which stores the content
- The *view*, which displays the content
- The *controller*, which handles user input

The pattern specifies precisely how these three objects interact. The model stores the content and has *no user interface*. For a button, the content is pretty trivial—just a small set of flags that tells whether the button is currently pushed in or out, whether it is active or inactive, and so on. For a text field, the content is a bit more interesting. It is a string object that holds the current text. This is *not the same* as the view of the content—if the content is larger than the text field, the user sees only a portion of the text displayed (see Figure 11.1).



**Figure 11.1** Model and view of a text field

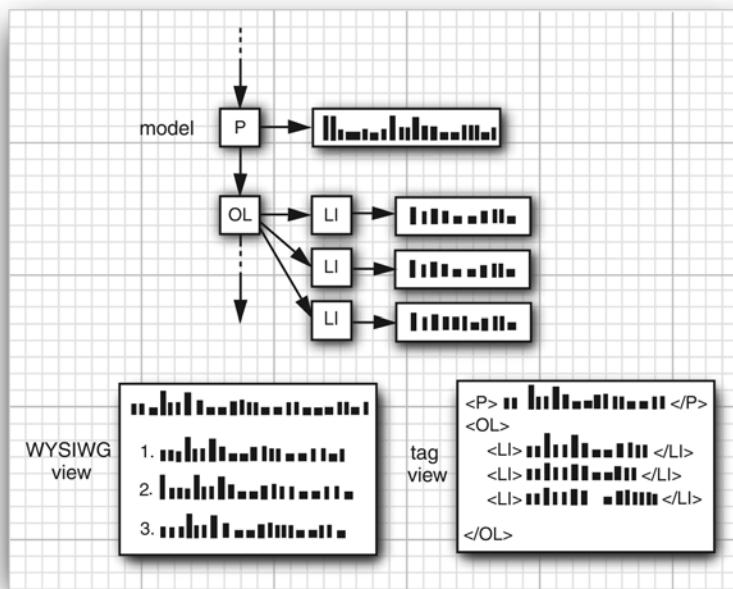
The model must implement methods to change the content and to discover what the content is. For example, a text model has methods to add or remove characters in the current text and to return the current text as a string. Again, keep in mind that the model is completely nonvisual. It is the job of a view to draw the data stored in the model.



**NOTE:** The term “model” is perhaps unfortunate because we often think of a model as a representation of an abstract concept. Car and airplane designers build models to simulate real cars and planes. But that analogy really leads you astray when thinking about the model-view-controller pattern. In this design pattern, the model stores the complete content, and the view gives a (complete or incomplete) visual representation of the content. A better analogy might be the model who poses for an artist. It is up to the artist to look at the model and create a view. Depending on the artist, that view might be a formal portrait, an impressionist painting, or a cubist drawing with strangely contorted limbs.

One of the advantages of the model-view-controller pattern is that a model can have multiple views, each showing a different part or aspect of the full content. For example, an HTML editor can offer two *simultaneous* views of the same content: a WYSIWYG view and a “raw tag” view (see Figure 11.2). When the model is updated through the controller of one of the views, it tells both attached views about the change. When the views are notified, they

refresh themselves automatically. Of course, for a simple user interface component such as a button, you won't have multiple views of the same model.

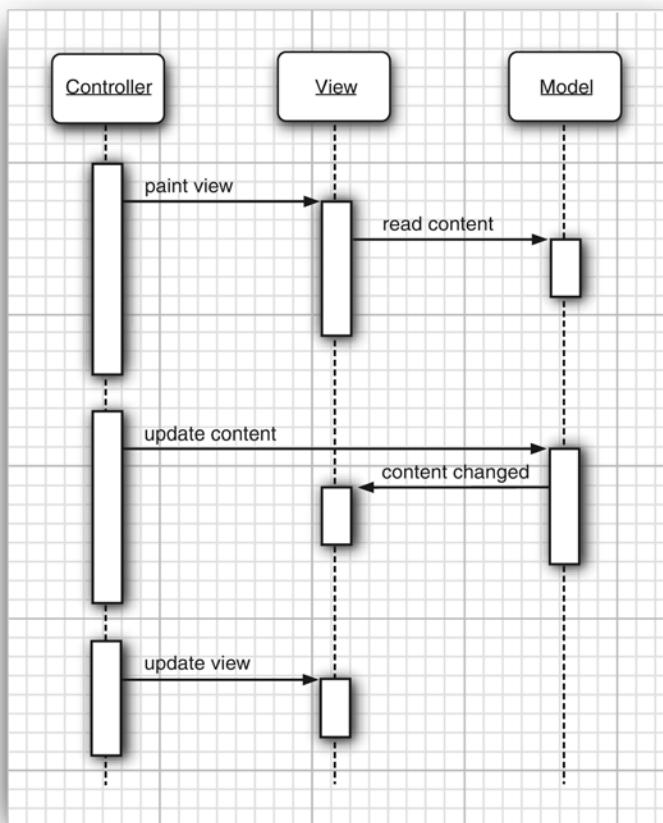


**Figure 11.2** Two separate views of the same model

The controller handles the user-input events, such as mouse clicks and keystrokes. It then decides whether to translate these events into changes in the model or the view. For example, if the user presses a character key in a text box, the controller calls the “insert character” command of the model. The model then tells the view to update itself. The view never knows why the text changed. But if the user presses a cursor key, the controller may tell the view to scroll. Scrolling the view has no effect on the underlying text, so the model never knows that this event happened.

Figure 11.3 shows the interactions among model, view, and controller objects.

For most Swing components, the model class implements an interface whose name ends in `Model`; in this case, the interface is called `ButtonModel`. Classes implementing that interface can define the state of the various kinds of buttons. Actually, buttons aren't all that complicated, and the Swing library contains a single class, called `DefaultButtonModel`, that implements this interface.



**Figure 11.3** Interactions among model, view, and controller objects

You can get a sense of the sort of data maintained by a button model by looking at the properties of the `ButtonModel` interface—see Table 11.1.

Each `JButton` object stores a button model object which you can retrieve.

```
var button = new JButton("Blue");
ButtonModel model = button.getModel();
```

In practice, you won't care—the minutiae of the button state are only of interest to the view that draws it. All the important information—such as whether a button is enabled—is available from the `JButton` class. (Of course, the `JButton` then asks its model to retrieve that information.)

**Table 11.1** Properties of the `ButtonModel` Interface

Property Name	Value
<code>actionCommand</code>	The action command string associated with this button
<code>mnemonic</code>	The keyboard mnemonic for this button
<code>armed</code>	true if the button was pressed and the mouse is still over the button
<code>enabled</code>	true if the button is selectable
<code>pressed</code>	true if the button was pressed but the mouse button hasn't yet been released
<code>rollover</code>	true if the mouse is over the button
<code>selected</code>	true if the button has been toggled on (used for checkboxes and radio buttons)

Have another look at the `ButtonModel` interface to see what *isn't* there. The model does *not* store the button label or icon. There is no way to find out what's on the face of a button just by looking at its model. (Actually, as you will see in Section 11.4.2, "Radio Buttons," on p. 654, this purity of design is the source of some grief for the programmer.)

It is also worth noting that the *same* model (namely, `DefaultButtonModel`) is used for push buttons, radio buttons, checkboxes, and even menu items. Of course, each of these button types has different views and controllers. When using the Metal look-and-feel, the `JButton` uses a class called `BasicButtonUI` for the view and a class called `ButtonUIListener` as controller. In general, each Swing component has an associated view object that ends in `UI`. But not all Swing components have dedicated controller objects.

So, having read this short introduction to what is going on under the hood in a `JButton`, you may be wondering: Just what is a `JButton` really? It is simply a wrapper class inheriting from `JComponent` that holds the `DefaultButtonModel` object, some view data (such as the button label and icons), and a `BasicButtonUI` object that is responsible for the button view.

## 11.2 Introduction to Layout Management

Before we go on to discussing individual Swing components, such as text fields and radio buttons, we briefly cover how to arrange these components inside a frame.

Of course, Java development environments have drag-and-drop GUI builders. Nevertheless, it is important to know exactly what goes on “under the hood” because even the best of these tools will usually require hand-tweaking.

### 11.2.1 Layout Managers

Let’s start by reviewing the program from Listing 10.4 that used buttons to change the background color of a frame.

The buttons are contained in a JPanel object and are managed by the *flow layout manager*, the default layout manager for a panel. Figure 11.4 shows what happens when you add more buttons to the panel. As you can see, a new row is started when there is no more room.



**Figure 11.4** A panel with six buttons managed by a flow layout

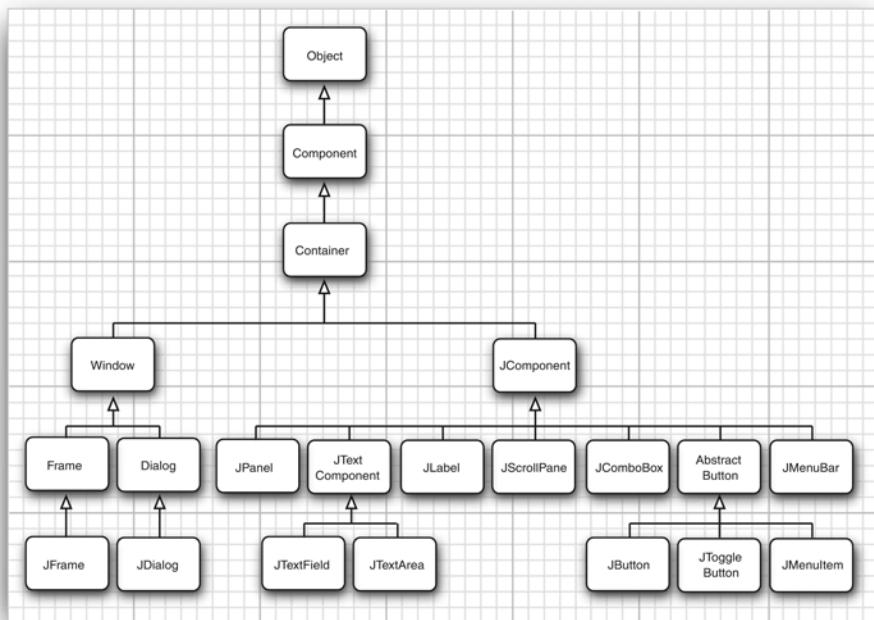
Moreover, the buttons stay centered in the panel, even when the user resizes the frame (see Figure 11.5).



**Figure 11.5** Changing the panel size rearranges the buttons automatically.

In general, *components* are placed inside *containers*, and a *layout manager* determines the positions and sizes of components in a container.

Buttons, text fields, and other user interface elements extend the class Component. Components can be placed inside containers, such as panels. Containers can themselves be put inside other containers, so the class Container extends Component. Figure 11.6 shows the inheritance hierarchy for Component.



**Figure 11.6** Inheritance hierarchy for the Component class



**NOTE:** Unfortunately, the inheritance hierarchy is somewhat unclean in two respects. First, top-level windows, such as JFrame, are subclasses of Container and hence Component, but they cannot be placed inside other containers. Moreover, JComponent is a subclass of Container, not Component. Therefore one can add other components into a JButton. (However, those components would not be displayed.)

Each container has a default layout manager, but you can always set your own. For example, the statement

```
panel.setLayout(new GridLayout(4, 4));
```

uses the `GridLayout` class to lay out the components in four rows and four columns. When you add components to the container, the `add` method of the container passes the component and any placement directions to the layout manager.

**java.awt.Container 1.0**

- `void setLayout(LayoutManager m)`  
sets the layout manager for this container.
- `Component add(Component c)`
- `Component add(Component c, Object constraints) 1.1`  
adds a component to this container and returns the component reference.

**java.awt.FlowLayout 1.0**

- `FlowLayout()`
- `FlowLayout(int align)`
- `FlowLayout(int align, int hgap, int vgap)`  
constructs a new `FlowLayout`. The `align` parameter is one of `LEFT`, `CENTER`, or `RIGHT`.

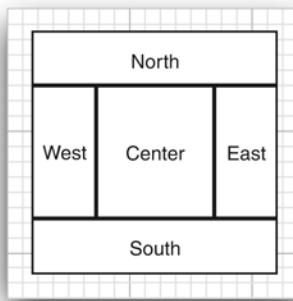
## 11.2.2 Border Layout

The *border layout manager* is the default layout manager of the content pane of every `JFrame`. Unlike the flow layout manager, which completely controls the position of each component, the border layout manager lets you choose where you want to place each component. You can choose to place the component in the center, north, south, east, or west of the content pane (see Figure 11.7).

For example:

```
frame.add(component, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
```

The edge components are laid out first, and the remaining available space is occupied by the center. When the container is resized, the dimensions of the edge components are unchanged, but the center component changes its size. Add components by specifying a constant `CENTER`, `NORTH`, `SOUTH`, `EAST`, or `WEST` of the `BorderLayout` class. Not all of the positions need to be occupied. If you don't supply any value, `CENTER` is assumed.



**Figure 11.7** Border layout



**NOTE:** The `BorderLayout` constants are defined as strings. For example, `BorderLayout.SOUTH` is defined as the string "South". This is safer than using strings. If you accidentally misspell a string, for example, `frame.add(component, "south")`, the compiler won't catch that error.

---

Unlike the flow layout, the border layout grows all components to fill the available space. (The flow layout leaves each component at its preferred size.) This is a problem when you add a button:

```
frame.add(yellowButton, BorderLayout.SOUTH); // don't
```

Figure 11.8 shows what happens when you use the preceding code fragment. The button has grown to fill the entire southern region of the frame. And, if you were to add another button to the southern region, it would just displace the first button.



**Figure 11.8** A single button managed by a border layout

To solve this problem, use additional panels. For example, look at Figure 11.9. The three buttons at the bottom of the screen are all contained in a panel. The panel is put into the southern region of the content pane.



**Figure 11.9** Panel placed at the southern region of the frame

To achieve this configuration, first create a new JPanel object, then add the individual buttons to the panel. The default layout manager for a panel is a FlowLayout, which is a good choice for this situation. Add the individual buttons to the panel, using the add method you have seen before. The position and size of the buttons is under the control of the FlowLayout manager. This means the buttons stay centered within the panel and do not expand to fill the entire panel area. Finally, add the panel to the content pane of the frame.

```
var panel = new JPanel();
panel.add(yellowButton);
panel.add(blueButton);
panel.add(redButton);
frame.add(panel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
```

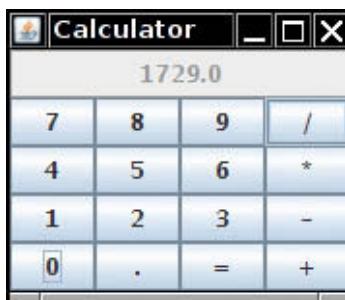
The border layout expands the size of the panel to fill the entire southern region.

#### java.awt.BorderLayout 1.0

- BorderLayout()
  - BorderLayout(int hgap, int vgap)
- constructs a new BorderLayout.

### 11.2.3 Grid Layout

The grid layout arranges all components in rows and columns like a spreadsheet. All components are given the same size. The calculator program in Figure 11.10 uses a grid layout to arrange the calculator buttons. When you resize the window, the buttons grow and shrink, but all buttons have identical sizes.



**Figure 11.10** A calculator

In the constructor of the grid layout object, you specify how many rows and columns you need.

```
panel.setLayout(new GridLayout(4, 4));
```

Add the components, starting with the first entry in the first row, then the second entry in the first row, and so on.

```
panel.add(new JButton("1"));
panel.add(new JButton("2"));
```

Of course, few applications have as rigid a layout as the face of a calculator. In practice, small grids (usually with just one row or one column) can be useful to organize partial areas of a window. For example, if you want to have a row of buttons of identical sizes, you can put the buttons inside a panel that is governed by a grid layout with a single row.

#### java.awt.GridLayout 1.0

- `GridLayout(int rows, int columns)`
- `GridLayout(int rows, int columns, int hgap, int vgap)`

constructs a new `GridLayout`. One of `rows` and `columns` (but not both) may be zero, denoting an arbitrary number of components per row or column.

## 11.3 Text Input

We are finally ready to start introducing the Swing user interface components. We begin with the components that let a user input and edit text. You can use the `JTextField` and `JTextArea` components for text input. A text field can accept only one line of text; a text area can accept multiple lines of text. A `JPasswordField` accepts one line of text without showing the contents.

All three of these classes inherit from a class called `JTextComponent`. You will not be able to construct a `JTextComponent` yourself because it is an abstract class. On the other hand, as is so often the case in Java, when you go searching through the API documentation, you may find that the methods you are looking for are actually in the parent class `JTextComponent` rather than the derived class. For example, the methods that get or set the text in a text field or text area are actually in `JTextComponent`.

### `javax.swing.text.JTextComponent` 1.2

- `String getText()`
- `void setText(String text)`  
gets or sets the text of this text component.
- `boolean isEditable()`
- `void setEditable(boolean b)`  
gets or sets the editable property that determines whether the user can edit the content of this text component.

### 11.3.1 Text Fields

The usual way to add a text field to a window is to add it to a panel or other container—just as you would add a button:

```
var panel = new JPanel();
var textField = new JTextField("Default input", 20);
panel.add(textField);
```

This code adds a text field and initializes it by placing the string "Default input" inside it. The second parameter of this constructor sets the width. In this case, the width is 20 "columns." Unfortunately, a column is a rather imprecise measurement. One column is the expected width of one character in the font you are using for the text. The idea is that if you expect the inputs to be  $n$  characters or less, you are supposed to specify  $n$  as the column width. In practice, this measurement doesn't work out too well, and you should add 1 or 2 to the maximum input length to be on the safe side. Also, keep in mind

that the number of columns is only a hint to the AWT that gives the *preferred* size. If the layout manager needs to grow or shrink the text field, it can adjust its size. The column width that you set in the `JTextField` constructor is not an upper limit on the number of characters the user can enter. The user can still type in longer strings, but the input scrolls when the text exceeds the length of the field. Users tend to find scrolling text fields irritating, so you should size the fields generously. If you need to reset the number of columns at runtime, you can do that with the `setColumns` method.



**TIP:** After changing the size of a text box with the `setColumns` method, call the `revalidate` method of the surrounding container.

```
textField.setColumns(10);
panel.revalidate();
```

The `revalidate` method recomputes the size and layout of all components in a container. After you use the `revalidate` method, the layout manager resizes the container, and the changed size of the text field will be visible.

The `revalidate` method belongs to the `JComponent` class. It doesn't immediately resize the component but merely marks it for resizing. This approach avoids repetitive calculations if multiple components request to be resized. However, if you want to recompute all components inside a `JFrame`, you have to call the `validate` method—`JFrame` doesn't extend `JComponent`.

---

In general, users add text (or edit an existing text) in a text field. Quite often these text fields start out blank. To make a blank text field, just leave out the string as a parameter for the `JTextField` constructor:

```
var textField = new JTextField();
```

You can change the content of the text field at any time by using the `setText` method from the `JTextComponent` parent class mentioned in the previous section. For example:

```
textField.setText("Hello!");
```

And, as was mentioned in the previous section, you can find out what the user typed by calling the `getText` method. This method returns the exact text that the user has typed. To trim any extraneous leading and trailing spaces from the data in a text field, apply the `trim` method to the return value of `getText`:

```
String text = textField.getText().trim();
```

To change the font in which the user text appears, use the `setFont` method.

**javax.swing.JTextField 1.2**

- `JTextField(int cols)`  
constructs an empty JTextField with the specified number of columns.
- `JTextField(String text, int cols)`  
constructs a new JTextField with an initial string and the specified number of columns.
- `int getColumns()`
- `void setColumns(int cols)`  
gets or sets the number of columns that this text field should use.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `void revalidate()`  
causes the position and size of a component to be recomputed.
- `voidsetFont(Font f)`  
sets the font of this component.

**java.awt.Component 1.0**

- `void validate()`  
recomputes the position and size of a component. If the component is a container, the positions and sizes of its components are recomputed.
- `Font getFont()`  
gets the font of this component.

### 11.3.2 Labels and Labeling Components

Labels are components that hold text. They have no decorations (for example, no boundaries). They also do not react to user input. You can use a label to identify components. For example, unlike buttons, text fields have no label to identify them. To label a component that does not itself come with an identifier:

1. Construct a JLabel component with the correct text.
2. Place it close enough to the component you want to identify so that the user can see that the label identifies the correct component.

The constructor for a `JLabel` lets you specify the initial text or icon and, optionally, the alignment of the content. Use constants from the `SwingConstants` interface to specify alignment. That interface defines a number of useful constants such as `LEFT`, `RIGHT`, `CENTER`, `NORTH`, `EAST`, and so on. The `JLabel` class is one of several Swing classes that implement this interface. Therefore, you can specify a right-aligned label either as

```
var label = new JLabel("User name: ", SwingConstants.RIGHT);
```

or

```
var label = new JLabel("User name: ", JLabel.RIGHT);
```

The `setText` and `setIcon` methods let you set the text and icon of the label at runtime.



**TIP:** You can use both plain and HTML text in buttons, labels, and menu items.

We don't recommend HTML in buttons—it interferes with the look-and-feel.

But HTML in labels can be very effective. Simply surround the label string with `<html>...</html>`, like this:

```
label = new JLabel("<html><b>Required</b> entry:</html>");
```

Note that the first component with an HTML label may take some time to be displayed because the rather complex HTML rendering code must be loaded.

---

Labels can be positioned inside a container like any other component. This means you can use the techniques you have seen before to place your labels where you need them.

#### javax.swing.JLabel 1.2

- `JLabel(String text)`
- `JLabel(Icon icon)`
- `JLabel(String text, int align)`
- `JLabel(String text, Icon icon, int align)`

constructs a label. The `align` parameter is one of the `SwingConstants` constants `LEFT` (default), `CENTER`, or `RIGHT`.

- `String getText()`
- `void setText(String text)`

gets or sets the text of this label.

- `Icon getIcon()`
- `void setIcon(Icon icon)`

gets or sets the icon of this label.

### 11.3.3 Password Fields

Password fields are a special kind of text fields. To prevent nosy bystanders from seeing your password, the characters that the user enters are not actually displayed. Instead, each typed character is represented by an *echo character*, such as a bullet (•). Swing supplies a `JPasswordField` class that implements such a text field.

The password field is another example of the power of the model-view-controller architecture pattern. The password field uses the same model to store the data as a regular text field, but its view has been changed to display all characters as echo characters.

#### `javax.swing.JPasswordField` 1.2

- `JPasswordField(String text, int columns)`  
constructs a new password field.
- `void setEchoChar(char echo)`  
sets the echo character for this password field. This is advisory; a particular look-and-feel may insist on its own choice of echo character. A value of 0 resets the echo character to the default.
- `char[] getPassword()`  
returns the text contained in this password field. For stronger security, you should overwrite the content of the returned array after use. (The password is not returned as a `String` because a string would stay in the virtual machine until it is garbage-collected.)

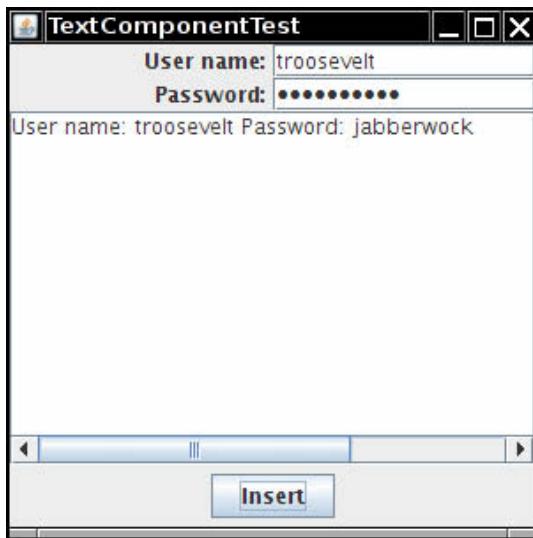
### 11.3.4 Text Areas

Sometimes, you need to collect user input that is more than one line long. As mentioned earlier, you can use the `JTextArea` component for this. When you place a text area component in your program, a user can enter any number of lines of text, using the Enter key to separate them. Each line ends with a '`\n`'. Figure 11.11 shows a text area at work.

In the constructor for the `JTextArea` component, specify the number of rows and columns for the text area. For example,

```
textArea = new JTextArea(8, 40); // 8 lines of 40 columns each
```

where the `columns` parameter works as before—and you still need to add a few more columns for safety's sake. Also, as before, the user is not restricted to the number of rows and columns; the text simply scrolls when the user inputs



**Figure 11.11** Text components

too much. You can also use the `setColumns` method to change the number of columns and the `setRows` method to change the number of rows. These numbers only indicate the preferred size—the layout manager can still grow or shrink the text area.

If there is more text than the text area can display, the remaining text is simply clipped. You can avoid clipping long lines by turning on line wrapping:

```
textArea.setLineWrap(true); // long lines are wrapped
```

This wrapping is a visual effect only; the text in the document is not changed—no automatic '\n' characters are inserted into the text.

### 11.3.5 Scroll Panes

In Swing, a text area does not have scrollbars. If you want scrollbars, you have to place the text area inside a *scroll pane*.

```
textArea = new JTextArea(8, 40);
var scrollPane = new JScrollPane(textArea);
```

The scroll pane now manages the view of the text area. Scrollbars automatically appear if there is more text than the text area can display, and they vanish again if text is deleted and the remaining text fits inside the area. The scrolling is handled internally by the scroll pane—your program does not need to process scroll events.

This is a general mechanism that works for any component, not just text areas. To add scrollbars to a component, put them inside a scrollpane.

Listing 11.1 demonstrates the various text components. This program shows a text field, a password field, and a text area with scrollbars. The text field and password field are labeled. Click on “Insert” to insert the field contents into the text area.



**NOTE:** The JTextArea component displays plain text only, without special fonts or formatting. To display formatted text (such as HTML), you can use the JEditorPane class that is discussed in Volume II.

#### **Listing 11.1** text/TextComponentFrame.java

```
1 package text;
2
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4 import java.awt.GridLayout;
5
6 import javax.swing.JButton;
7 import javax.swing.JFrame;
8 import javax.swing.JLabel;
9 import javax.swing.JPanel;
10 import javax.swing.JPasswordField;
11 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
12 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
13 import javax.swing.JTextField;
14 import javax.swing.SwingConstants;
15
16 /**
17  * A frame with sample text components.
18 */
19 public class TextComponentFrame extends JFrame
20 {
21     public static final int TEXTAREA_ROWS = 8;
22     public static final int TEXTAREA_COLUMNS = 20;
23
24     public TextComponentFrame()
25     {
26         var textField = new JTextField();
27         var passwordField = new JPasswordField();
28
29         var northPanel = new JPanel();
30         northPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(2, 2));
31         northPanel.add(new JLabel("User name: ", SwingConstants.RIGHT));
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.1 (Continued)**

```
32     northPanel.add(textField);
33     northPanel.add(new JLabel("Password: ", SwingConstants.RIGHT));
34     northPanel.add(passwordField);
35
36     add(northPanel, BorderLayout.NORTH);
37
38     var textArea = new JTextArea(TEXTAREA_ROWS, TEXTAREA_COLUMNS);
39     var scrollPane = new JScrollPane(textArea);
40
41     add(scrollPane, BorderLayout.CENTER);
42
43     // add button to append text into the text area
44
45     var southPanel = new JPanel();
46
47     var insertButton = new JButton("Insert");
48     southPanel.add(insertButton);
49     insertButton.addActionListener(event ->
50         textArea.append("User name: " + textField.getText() + " Password: "
51             + new String(passwordField.getPassword()) + "\n"));
52
53     add(southPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
54     pack();
55 }
56 }
```

---

**javax.swing.JTextArea 1.2**

- `JTextArea()`
- `JTextArea(int rows, int cols)`
- `JTextArea(String text, int rows, int cols)`  
constructs a new text area.
- `void setColumns(int cols)`  
tells the text area the preferred number of columns it should use.
- `void setRows(int rows)`  
tells the text area the preferred number of rows it should use.
- `void append(String newText)`  
appends the given text to the end of the text already in the text area.
- `void setLineWrap(boolean wrap)`  
turns line wrapping on or off.

(Continues)

**javax.swing.JTextArea 1.2 (Continued)**

- `void setWrapStyleWord(boolean word)`

If `word` is `true`, long lines are wrapped at word boundaries. If it is `false`, long lines are broken without taking word boundaries into account.

- `void setTabSize(int c)`

sets tab stops every `c` columns. Note that the tabs aren't converted to spaces but cause alignment with the next tab stop.

**javax.swing.JScrollPane 1.2**

- `JScrollPane(Component c)`

creates a scroll pane that displays the content of the specified component. Scrollbars are supplied when the component is larger than the view.

## 11.4 Choice Components

You now know how to collect text input from users, but there are many occasions where you would rather give users a finite set of choices than have them enter the data in a text component. Using a set of buttons or a list of items tells your users what choices they have. (It also saves you the trouble of error checking.) In this section, you will learn how to program checkboxes, radio buttons, lists of choices, and sliders.

### 11.4.1 Checkboxes

If you want to collect just a “yes” or “no” input, use a checkbox component. Checkboxes automatically come with labels that identify them. The user can check the box by clicking inside it and turn off the checkmark by clicking inside the box again. Pressing the space bar when the focus is in the checkbox also toggles the checkmark.

Figure 11.12 shows a simple program with two checkboxes, one for turning the italic attribute of a font on or off, and the other for boldface. Note that the second checkbox has focus, as indicated by the rectangle around the label. Each time the user clicks one of the checkboxes, the screen is refreshed, using the new font attributes.



**Figure 11.12** Checkboxes

Checkboxes need a label next to them to identify their purpose. Give the label text in the constructor:

```
bold = new JCheckBox("Bold");
```

Use the `setSelected` method to turn a checkbox on or off. For example:

```
bold.setSelected(true);
```

The `isSelected` method then retrieves the current state of each checkbox. It is `false` if unchecked, `true` if checked.

When the user clicks on a checkbox, this triggers an action event. As always, you attach an action listener to the checkbox. In our program, the two checkboxes share the same action listener.

```
ActionListener listener = . . .;  
bold.addActionListener(listener);  
italic.addActionListener(listener);
```

The listener queries the state of the `bold` and `italic` checkboxes and sets the font of the panel to plain, bold, italic, or both bold and italic.

```
ActionListener listener = event -> {  
    int mode = 0;  
    if (bold.isSelected()) mode += Font.BOLD;  
    if (italic.isSelected()) mode += Font.ITALIC;  
    label.setFont(new Font(Font.FONTSIZE, mode, FONTSIZE));  
};
```

Listing 11.2 is the program listing for the checkbox example.

**Listing 11.2** checkBox/CheckBoxFrame.java

```
1 package checkBox;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import javax.swing.*;
6
7 /**
8  * A frame with a sample text label and check boxes for selecting font
9  * attributes.
10 */
11 public class CheckBoxFrame extends JFrame
12 {
13     private JLabel label;
14     private JCheckBox bold;
15     private JCheckBox italic;
16     private static final int FONTSIZE = 24;
17
18     public CheckBoxFrame()
19     {
20         // add the sample text label
21
22         label = new JLabel("The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.");
23         label.setFont(new Font("Serif", Font.BOLD, FONTSIZE));
24         add(label, BorderLayout.CENTER);
25
26         // this listener sets the font attribute of
27         // the label to the check box state
28
29         ActionListener listener = event -> {
30             int mode = 0;
31             if (bold.isSelected()) mode += Font.BOLD;
32             if (italic.isSelected()) mode += Font.ITALIC;
33             label.setFont(new Font("Serif", mode, FONTSIZE));
34         };
35
36         // add the check boxes
37
38         var buttonPanel = new JPanel();
39
40         bold = new JCheckBox("Bold");
41         bold.addActionListener(listener);
42         bold.setSelected(true);
43         buttonPanel.add(bold);
44
45         italic = new JCheckBox("Italic");
46         italic.addActionListener(listener);
47         buttonPanel.add(italic);
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 11.2 (Continued)**

```
48
49     add(buttonPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
50     pack();
51 }
52 }
```

**javax.swing.JCheckBox 1.2**

- `JCheckBox(String label)`
- `JCheckBox(String label, Icon icon)`  
constructs a checkbox that is initially unselected.
- `JCheckBox(String label, boolean state)`  
constructs a checkbox with the given label and initial state.
- `boolean isSelected()`
- `void setSelected(boolean state)`  
gets or sets the selection state of the checkbox.

### 11.4.2 Radio Buttons

In the previous example, the user could check either, both, or neither of the two checkboxes. In many cases, we want the user to check only one of several boxes. When another box is checked, the previous box is automatically unchecked. Such a group of boxes is often called a *radio button group* because the buttons work like the station selector buttons on a radio. When you push in one button, the previously depressed button pops out. Figure 11.13 shows a typical example. We allow the user to select a font size from among the choices—Small, Medium, Large, or Extra large—but, of course, we will allow selecting only one size at a time.

Implementing radio button groups is easy in Swing. You construct one object of type `ButtonGroup` for every group of buttons. Then, you add objects of type `JRadioButton` to the button group. The button group object is responsible for turning off the previously set button when a new button is clicked.

```
var group = new ButtonGroup();

var smallButton = new JRadioButton("Small", false);
group.add(smallButton);

var mediumButton = new JRadioButton("Medium", true);
group.add(mediumButton);
. . .
```



**Figure 11.13** A radio button group

The second argument of the constructor is true for the button that should be checked initially and false for all others. Note that the button group controls only the *behavior* of the buttons; if you want to group the buttons for layout purposes, you also need to add them to a container such as a JPanel.

If you look again at Figures 11.12 and 11.13, you will note that the appearance of the radio buttons is different from that of checkboxes. Checkboxes are square and contain a checkmark when selected. Radio buttons are round and contain a dot when selected.

The event notification mechanism for radio buttons is the same as for any other buttons. When the user checks a radio button, the button generates an action event. In our example program, we define an action listener that sets the font size to a particular value:

```
ActionListener listener = event ->
    label.setFont(new Font("Serif", Font.PLAIN, size));
```

Compare this listener setup to that of the checkbox example. Each radio button gets a different listener object. Each listener object knows exactly what it needs to do—set the font size to a particular value. With checkboxes, we used a different approach: Both checkboxes have the same action listener that calls a method looking at the current state of both checkboxes.

Could we follow the same approach here? We could have a single listener that computes the size as follows:

```
if (smallButton.isSelected()) size = 8;
else if (mediumButton.isSelected()) size = 12;
...
```

However, we prefer to use separate action listener objects because they tie the size values more closely to the buttons.



**NOTE:** If you have a group of radio buttons, you know that only one of them is selected. It would be nice to be able to quickly find out which, without having to query all the buttons in the group. The `ButtonGroup` object controls all buttons, so it would be convenient if this object could give us a reference to the selected button. Indeed, the `ButtonGroup` class has a `getSelection` method, but that method doesn't return the radio button that is selected. Instead, it returns a `ButtonModel` reference to the model attached to the button. Unfortunately, none of the `ButtonModel` methods are very helpful. The `ButtonModel` interface inherits a method `getSelectedObjects` from the `ItemSelectable` interface that, rather uselessly, returns null. The `getActionCommand` method looks promising because the "action command" of a radio button is its text label. But the action command of its model is null. Only if you explicitly set the action commands of all radio buttons with the `setActionCommand` method do the action command values of the models also get set. Then you can retrieve the action command of the currently selected button with `buttonGroup.getSelection().getActionCommand()`.

Listing 11.3 is the complete program for font size selection that puts a set of radio buttons to work.

---

**Listing 11.3** radioButton/RadioButtonFrame.java

---

```
1 package radioButton;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import javax.swing.*;
6
7 /**
8 * A frame with a sample text label and radio buttons for selecting font sizes.
9 */
10 public class RadioButtonFrame extends JFrame
11 {
12     private JPanel buttonPanel;
13     private ButtonGroup group;
14     private JLabel label;
15     private static final int DEFAULT_SIZE = 36;
16
17     public RadioButtonFrame()
18     {
19         // add the sample text label
20
21         label = new JLabel("The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.");
22         label.setFont(new Font("Serif", Font.PLAIN, DEFAULT_SIZE));
```

```
23     add(label, BorderLayout.CENTER);
24
25     // add the radio buttons
26
27     buttonPanel = new JPanel();
28     group = new ButtonGroup();
29
30     addRadioButton("Small", 8);
31     addRadioButton("Medium", 12);
32     addRadioButton("Large", 18);
33     addRadioButton("Extra large", 36);
34
35     add(buttonPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
36     pack();
37 }
38
39 /**
40 * Adds a radio button that sets the font size of the sample text.
41 * @param name the string to appear on the button
42 * @param size the font size that this button sets
43 */
44 public void addRadioButton(String name, int size)
45 {
46     boolean selected = size == DEFAULT_SIZE;
47     var button = new JRadioButton(name, selected);
48     group.add(button);
49     buttonPanel.add(button);
50
51     // this listener sets the label font size
52
53     ActionListener listener = event -> label.setFont(new Font("Serif", Font.PLAIN, size));
54
55     button.addActionListener(listener);
56 }
57 }
```

**javax.swing.JRadioButton 1.2**

- `JRadioButton(String label, Icon icon)`  
constructs a radio button that is initially unselected.
- `JRadioButton(String label, boolean state)`  
constructs a radio button with the given label and initial state.

**javax.swing.ButtonGroup 1.2**

- void add(AbstractButton b)  
adds the button to the group.
- ButtonModel getSelection()  
returns the button model of the selected button.

**javax.swing.ButtonModel 1.2**

- String getActionCommand()  
returns the action command for this button model.

**javax.swing.AbstractButton 1.2**

- void setActionCommand(String s)  
sets the action command for this button and its model.

### 11.4.3 Borders

If you have multiple groups of radio buttons in a window, you will want to visually indicate which buttons are grouped. Swing provides a set of useful *borders* for this purpose. You can apply a border to any component that extends `JComponent`. The most common usage is to place a border around a panel and fill that panel with other user interface elements, such as radio buttons.

You can choose from quite a few borders, but you need to follow the same steps for all of them.

1. Call a static method of the `BorderFactory` to create a border. You can choose among the following styles (see Figure 11.14):
  - Lowered bevel
  - Raised bevel
  - Etched
  - Line
  - Matte
  - Empty (just to create some blank space around the component)

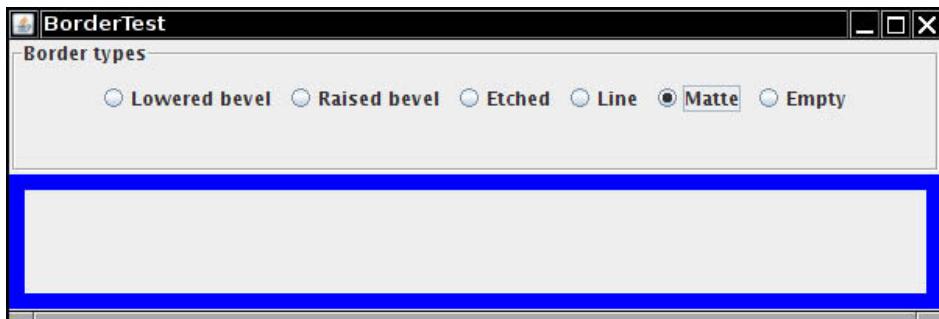


Figure 11.14 Testing border types

2. If you like, add a title to your border by passing your border to `BorderFactory.createTitledBorder`.
3. If you really want to go all out, combine several borders with a call to `BorderFactory.createCompoundBorder`.
4. Add the resulting border to your component by calling the `setBorder` method of the `JComponent` class.

For example, here is how you add an etched border with a title to a panel:

```
Border etched = BorderFactory.createEtchedBorder();
Border titled = BorderFactory.createTitledBorder(etched, "A Title");
panel.setBorder(titled);
```

Different borders have different options for setting border widths and colors; see the API notes for details. True border enthusiasts will appreciate that there is also a `SoftBevelBorder` class for beveled borders with softened corners and that a `LineBorder` can have rounded corners as well. You can construct these borders only by using one of the class constructors—there is no `BorderFactory` method for them.

#### javax.swing.BorderFactory 1.2

- `static Border createLineBorder(Color color)`
- `static Border createLineBorder(Color color, int thickness)`  
creates a simple line border.
- `static MatteBorder createMatteBorder(int top, int left, int bottom, int right, Color color)`
- `static MatteBorder createMatteBorder(int top, int left, int bottom, int right, Icon tileIcon)`  
creates a thick border that is filled with a color or a repeating icon.

(Continues)

**javax.swing.BorderFactory 1.2 (Continued)**

- static Border createEmptyBorder()
- static Border createEmptyBorder(int top, int left, int bottom, int right)  
creates an empty border.
- static Border createEtchedBorder()
- static Border createEtchedBorder(Color highlight, Color shadow)
- static Border createEtchedBorder(int type)
- static Border createEtchedBorder(int type, Color highlight, Color shadow)  
creates a line border with a 3D effect. The type parameter is one of EtchedBorder.RAISED, EtchedBorder.LOWERED.
- static Border createBevelBorder(int type)
- static Border createBevelBorder(int type, Color highlight, Color shadow)
- static Border createLoweredBevelBorder()
- static Border createRaisedBevelBorder()  
creates a border that gives the effect of a lowered or raised surface. The type parameter is one of BevelBorder.RAISED, BevelBorder.LOWERED.
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(String title)
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(Border border)
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(Border border, String title)
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(Border border, String title, int justification, int position)
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(Border border, String title, int justification, int position, Font font)
- static TitledBorder createTitledBorder(Border border, String title, int justification, int position, Font font, Color color)  
creates a titled border with the specified properties. The justification parameter is one of the TitledBorder constants LEFT, CENTER, RIGHT, LEADING, TRAILING, or DEFAULT\_JUSTIFICATION (left), and position is one of ABOVE\_TOP, TOP, BELOW\_TOP, ABOVE\_BOTTOM, BOTTOM, BELOW\_BOTTOM, or DEFAULT\_POSITION (top).
- static CompoundBorder createCompoundBorder(Border outsideBorder, Border insideBorder)  
combines two borders to a new border.

**javax.swing.border.SoftBevelBorder 1.2**

- SoftBevelBorder(int type)
- SoftBevelBorder(int type, Color highlight, Color shadow)  
creates a bevel border with softened corners. The type parameter is one of SoftBevelBorder.RAISED, SoftBevelBorder.LOWERED.

**javax.swing.border.LineBorder 1.2**

- public LineBorder(Color color, int thickness, boolean roundedCorners)

creates a line border with the given color and thickness. If `roundedCorners` is true, the border has rounded corners.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- void setBorder(Border border)

sets the border of this component.

#### 11.4.4 Combo Boxes

If you have more than a handful of alternatives, radio buttons are not a good choice because they take up too much screen space. Instead, you can use a combo box. When the user clicks on this component, a list of choices drops down, and the user can then select one of them (see Figure 11.15).



**Figure 11.15** A combo box

If the drop-down list box is set to be *editable*, you can edit the current selection as if it were a text field. For that reason, this component is called a *combo box*—it combines the flexibility of a text field with a set of predefined choices. The `JComboBox` class provides a combo box component.

As of Java 7, the `JComboBox` class is a generic class. For example, a `JComboBox<String>` holds objects of type `String`, and a `JComboBox<Integer>` holds integers.

Call the `setEditable` method to make the combo box editable. Note that editing affects only the selected item. It does not change the list of choices in any way.

You can obtain the current selection, which may have been edited if the combo box is editable, by calling the `getSelectedItem` method. However, for an editable combo box, that item may have any type, depending on the editor that takes the user edits and turns the result into an object. (See Volume II, Chapter 6 for a discussion of editors.) If your combo box isn't editable, you are better off calling

```
combo.getItemAt(combo.getSelectedIndex())
```

which gives you the selected item with the correct type.

In the example program, the user can choose a font style from a list of styles (Serif, SansSerif, Monospaced, etc.). The user can also type in another font.

Add the choice items with the `addItem` method. In our program, `addItem` is called only in the constructor, but you can call it any time.

```
var faceCombo = new JComboBox<String>();
faceCombo.addItem("Serif");
faceCombo.addItem("SansSerif");
. . .
```

This method adds the string to the end of the list. You can add new items anywhere in the list with the `insertItemAt` method:

```
faceCombo.insertItemAt("Monospaced", 0); // add at the beginning
```

You can add items of any type—the combo box invokes each item's `toString` method to display it.

If you need to remove items at runtime, use the `removeItem` or `removeItemAt` method, depending on whether you supply the item to be removed or its position.

```
faceCombo.removeItem("Monospaced");
faceCombo.removeItemAt(0); // remove first item
```

The `removeAllItems` method removes all items at once.



**TIP:** If you need to add a large number of items to a combo box, the `addItem` method will perform poorly. Instead, construct a `DefaultComboBoxModel`, populate it by calling `addElement`, and then call the `setModel` method of the `JComboBox` class.

---

When the user selects an item from a combo box, the combo box generates an action event. To find out which item was selected, call `getSource` on the event parameter to get a reference to the combo box that sent the event.

Then call the `getSelectedItem` method to retrieve the currently selected item. You will need to cast the returned value to the appropriate type, usually `String`.

```
ActionListener listener = event ->
    label.setFont(new Font(
        faceCombo.getSelectedItem(faceCombo.getSelectedIndex()),
        Font.PLAIN,
        DEFAULT_SIZE));
```

Listing 11.4 shows the complete program.

---

**Listing 11.4** comboBox/ComboBoxFrame.java

---

```
1 package comboBox;
2
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4 import java.awt.Font;
5
6 import javax.swing.JComboBox;
7 import javax.swing.JFrame;
8 import javax.swing.JLabel;
9 import javax.swing.JPanel;
10
11 /**
12  * A frame with a sample text label and a combo box for selecting font faces.
13  */
14 public class ComboBoxFrame extends JFrame
15 {
16     private JComboBox<String> faceCombo;
17     private JLabel label;
18     private static final int DEFAULT_SIZE = 24;
19
20     public ComboBoxFrame()
21     {
22         // add the sample text label
23
24         label = new JLabel("The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.");
25         label.setFont(new Font("Serif", Font.PLAIN, DEFAULT_SIZE));
26         add(label, BorderLayout.CENTER);
27
28         // make a combo box and add face names
29
30         faceCombo = new JComboBox<>();
31         faceCombo.addItem("Serif");
32         faceCombo.addItem("SansSerif");
33         faceCombo.addItem("Monospaced");
34         faceCombo.addItem("Dialog");
35         faceCombo.addItem("DialogInput");
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.4 (Continued)**

```
36      // the combo box listener changes the label font to the selected face name
37
38      faceCombo.addActionListener(event ->
39          label.setFont(
40              new Font(faceCombo.getItemAt(faceCombo.getSelectedIndex()),
41                  Font.PLAIN, DEFAULT_SIZE)));
42
43
44      // add combo box to a panel at the frame's southern border
45
46      var comboPanel = new JPanel();
47      comboPanel.add(faceCombo);
48      add(comboPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
49      pack();
50  }
51 }
```

---

**javax.swing.JComboBox 1.2**

- `boolean isEditable()`
- `void setEditable(boolean b)`  
gets or sets the `editable` property of this combo box.
- `void addItem(Object item)`  
adds an item to the item list.
- `void insertItemAt(Object item, int index)`  
inserts an item into the item list at a given index.
- `void removeItem(Object item)`  
removes an item from the item list.
- `void removeItemAt(int index)`  
removes the item at an index.
- `void removeAllItems()`  
removes all items from the item list.
- `Object getSelectedItem()`  
returns the currently selected item.

### 11.4.5 Sliders

Combo boxes let users choose from a discrete set of values. Sliders offer a choice from a continuum of values—for example, any number between 1 and 100.

The most common way of constructing a slider is as follows:

```
var slider = new JSlider(min, max, initialValue);
```

If you omit the minimum, maximum, and initial values, they are initialized with 0, 100, and 50, respectively.

Or if you want the slider to be vertical, use the following constructor call:

```
var slider = new JSlider(SwingConstants.VERTICAL, min, max, initialValue);
```

These constructors create a plain slider, such as the top slider in Figure 11.16. You will see presently how to add decorations to a slider.

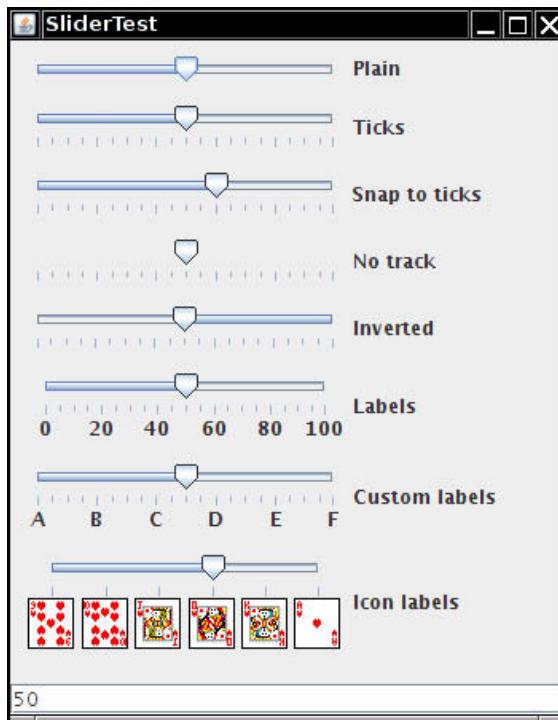


Figure 11.16 Sliders

As the user slides the slider bar, the *value* of the slider moves between the minimum and the maximum values. When the value changes, a `ChangeEvent` is sent to all change listeners. To be notified of the change, call the `addChangeListener` method and install an object that implements the functional `ChangeListener` interface. In the callback, retrieve the slider value:

```
ChangeListener listener = event -> {
    JSlider slider = (JSlider) event.getSource();
    int value = slider.getValue();
    . .
};
```

You can embellish the slider by showing *ticks*. For example, in the sample program, the second slider uses the following settings:

```
slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
```

The slider is decorated with large tick marks every 20 units and small tick marks every 5 units. The units refer to slider values, not pixels.

These instructions only set the units for the tick marks. To actually have the tick marks appear, call

```
slider.setPaintTicks(true);
```

The major and minor tick marks are independent. For example, you can set major tick marks every 20 units and minor tick marks every 7 units, but that will give you a very messy scale.

You can force the slider to *snap to ticks*. Whenever the user has finished dragging a slider in snap mode, it is immediately moved to the closest tick. You activate this mode with the call

```
slider.setSnapToTicks(true);
```



**CAUTION:** The “snap to ticks” behavior doesn’t work as well as you might imagine. Until the slider has actually snapped, the change listener still reports slider values that don’t correspond to ticks. And if you click next to the slider—an action that normally advances the slider a bit in the direction of the click—a slider with “snap to ticks” does not move to the next tick.

---

You can display *tick mark labels* for the major tick marks by calling

```
slider.setPaintLabels(true);
```

For example, with a slider ranging from 0 to 100 and major tick spacing of 20, the ticks are labeled 0, 20, 40, 60, 80, and 100.

You can also supply other tick mark labels, such as strings or icons (see Figure 11.16). The process is a bit convoluted. You need to fill a hash table with keys of type `Integer` and values of type `Component`. You then call the `setLabelTable` method. The components are placed under the tick marks. Usually, `JLabel` objects are used. Here is how you can label ticks as A, B, C, D, E, and F:

```
var labelTable = new Hashtable<Integer, Component>();
labelTable.put(0, new JLabel("A"));
labelTable.put(20, new JLabel("B"));
...
labelTable.put(100, new JLabel("F"));
slider.setLabelTable(labelTable);
```

Listing 11.5 also shows a slider with icons as tick labels.



**TIP:** If your tick marks or labels don't show, double-check that you called `setPaintTicks(true)` and `setPaintLabels(true)`.

The fourth slider in Figure 11.16 has no track. To suppress the “track” in which the slider moves, call

```
slider.setPaintTrack(false);
```

The fifth slider has its direction reversed by a call to

```
slider.setInverted(true);
```

The example program in Listing 11.5 shows all these visual effects with a collection of sliders. Each slider has a change event listener installed that places the current slider value into the text field at the bottom of the frame.

---

**Listing 11.5** slider/SliderFrame.java

---

```
1 package slider;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.util.*;
5 import javax.swing.*;
6 import javax.swing.event.*;
7
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.5 (Continued)**

```
8  /**
9   * A frame with many sliders and a text field to show slider values.
10  */
11 public class SliderFrame extends JFrame
12 {
13     private JPanel sliderPanel;
14     private JTextField textField;
15     private ChangeListener listener;
16
17     public SliderFrame()
18     {
19         sliderPanel = new JPanel();
20         sliderPanel.setLayout(new GridBagLayout());
21
22         // common listener for all sliders
23         listener = event -> {
24             // update text field when the slider value changes
25             JSeparator source = (JSeparator) event.getSource();
26             textField.setText("" + source.getValue());
27         };
28
29         // add a plain slider
30
31         var slider = new JSeparator();
32         addSlider(slider, "Plain");
33
34         // add a slider with major and minor ticks
35
36         slider = new JSeparator();
37         slider.setPaintTicks(true);
38         slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
39         slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
40         addSlider(slider, "Ticks");
41
42         // add a slider that snaps to ticks
43
44         slider = new JSeparator();
45         slider.setPaintTicks(true);
46         slider.setSnapToTicks(true);
47         slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
48         slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
49         addSlider(slider, "Snap to ticks");
50
51         // add a slider with no track
52 }
```

```
53     slider = new JSlider();
54     slider.setPaintTicks(true);
55     slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
56     slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
57     slider.setPaintTrack(false);
58     addSlider(slider, "No track");
59
60 // add an inverted slider
61
62     slider = new JSlider();
63     slider.setPaintTicks(true);
64     slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
65     slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
66     slider.setInverted(true);
67     addSlider(slider, "Inverted");
68
69 // add a slider with numeric labels
70
71     slider = new JSlider();
72     slider.setPaintTicks(true);
73     slider.setPaintLabels(true);
74     slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
75     slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
76     addSlider(slider, "Labels");
77
78 // add a slider with alphabetic labels
79
80     slider = new JSlider();
81     slider.setPaintLabels(true);
82     slider.setPaintTicks(true);
83     slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
84     slider.setMinorTickSpacing(5);
85
86     var labelTable = new Hashtable<Integer, Component>();
87     labelTable.put(0, new JLabel("A"));
88     labelTable.put(20, new JLabel("B"));
89     labelTable.put(40, new JLabel("C"));
90     labelTable.put(60, new JLabel("D"));
91     labelTable.put(80, new JLabel("E"));
92     labelTable.put(100, new JLabel("F"));
93
94     slider.setLabelTable(labelTable);
95     addSlider(slider, "Custom labels");
96
97 // add a slider with icon labels
98
99     slider = new JSlider();
100    slider.setPaintTicks(true);
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.5 (Continued)**

```
101    slider.setPaintLabels(true);
102    slider.setSnapToTicks(true);
103    slider.setMajorTickSpacing(20);
104    slider.setMinorTickSpacing(20);
105
106    labelTable = new Hashtable<Integer, Component>();
107
108    // add card images
109
110    labelTable.put(0, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("nine.gif")));
111    labelTable.put(20, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("ten.gif")));
112    labelTable.put(40, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("jack.gif")));
113    labelTable.put(60, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("queen.gif")));
114    labelTable.put(80, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("king.gif")));
115    labelTable.put(100, new JLabel(new ImageIcon("ace.gif")));
116
117    slider.setLabelTable(labelTable);
118    addSlider(slider, "Icon labels");
119
120    // add the text field that displays the slider value
121
122    textField = new JTextField();
123    add(sliderPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER);
124    add(textField, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
125    pack();
126 }
127
128 /**
129 * Adds a slider to the slider panel and hooks up the listener
130 * @param slider the slider
131 * @param description the slider description
132 */
133 public void addSlider(JSlider slider, String description)
134 {
135    slider.addChangeListener(listener);
136    var panel = new JPanel();
137    panel.add(slider);
138    panel.add(new JLabel(description));
139    panel.setAlignmentX(Component.LEFT_ALIGNMENT);
140    var gbc = new GridBagConstraints();
141    gbc.gridx = sliderPanel.getComponentCount();
142    gbc.anchor = GridBagConstraints.WEST;
143    sliderPanel.add(panel, gbc);
144 }
145 }
```

---

**javax.swing.JSlider 1.2**

- `JSlider()`
- `JSlider(int direction)`
- `JSlider(int min, int max)`
- `JSlider(int min, int max, int initialValue)`
- `JSlider(int direction, int min, int max, int initialValue)`

constructs a horizontal slider with the given direction and minimum, maximum, and initial values. The `direction` parameter is one of `SwingConstants.HORIZONTAL` or `SwingConstants.VERTICAL`. The default is horizontal. Defaults for the minimum, initial, and maximum are 0, 50, and 100.

- `void setPaintTicks(boolean b)`

displays ticks if `b` is true.

- `void setMajorTickSpacing(int units)`

- `void setMinorTickSpacing(int units)`

sets major or minor ticks at multiples of the given slider units.

- `void setPaintLabels(boolean b)`

displays tick labels if `b` is true.

- `void setLabelTable(Dictionary table)`

sets the components to use for the tick labels. Each key/value pair in the table has the form `new Integer(value)/component`.

- `void setSnapToTicks(boolean b)`

if `b` is true, then the slider snaps to the closest tick after each adjustment.

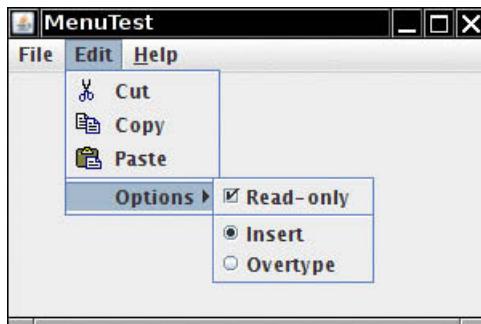
- `void setPaintTrack(boolean b)`

if `b` is true, a track is displayed in which the slider runs.

## 11.5 Menus

We started this chapter by introducing the most common components that you might want to place into a window, such as various kinds of buttons, text fields, and combo boxes. Swing also supports another type of user interface element—pull-down menus that are familiar from GUI applications.

A *menu bar* at the top of a window contains the names of the pull-down menus. Clicking on a name opens the menu containing *menu items* and *submenus*. When the user clicks on a menu item, all menus are closed and a message is sent to the program. Figure 11.17 shows a typical menu with a submenu.



**Figure 11.17** A menu with a submenu

### 11.5.1 Menu Building

Building menus is straightforward. First, create a menu bar:

```
var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
```

A menu bar is just a component that you can add anywhere you like. Normally, you want it to appear at the top of a frame. You can add it there with the `setJMenuBar` method:

```
frame.setJMenuBar(menuBar);
```

For each menu, you create a menu object:

```
var editMenu = new JMenu("Edit");
```

Add the top-level menus to the menu bar:

```
menuBar.add(editMenu);
```

Add menu items, separators, and submenus to the menu object:

```
var pasteItem = new JMenuItem("Paste");
editMenu.add(pasteItem);
editMenu.addSeparator();
JMenu optionsMenu = . . .; // a submenu
editMenu.add(optionsMenu);
```

You can see separators in Figure 11.17 below the Paste and Read-only menu items.

When the user selects a menu item, an action event is triggered. You need to install an action listener for each menu item:

```
ActionListener listener = . . .;
pasteItem.addActionListener(listener);
```

The method `JMenu.add(String s)` conveniently adds a menu item to the end of a menu. For example:

```
editMenu.add("Paste");
```

The `add` method returns the created menu item, so you can capture it and add the listener, as follows:

```
JMenuItem pasteItem = editMenu.add("Paste");
pasteItem.addActionListener(listener);
```

It often happens that menu items trigger commands that can also be activated through other user interface elements such as toolbar buttons. In Section 10.4.5, “Actions,” on p. 608, you saw how to specify commands through `Action` objects. You define a class that implements the `Action` interface, usually by extending the `AbstractAction` convenience class, specify the menu item label in the constructor of the `AbstractAction` object, and override the `actionPerformed` method to hold the menu action handler. For example:

```
var exitAction = new AbstractAction("Exit") // menu item text goes here
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        // action code goes here
        System.exit(0);
    }
};
```

You can then add the action to the menu:

```
JMenuItem exitItem = fileMenu.add(exitAction);
```

This command adds a menu item to the menu, using the action name. The action object becomes its listener. This is just a convenient shortcut for

```
var exitItem = new JMenuItem(exitAction);
fileMenu.add(exitItem);
```

#### javax.swing.JMenu 1.2

- `JMenu(String label)`  
constructs a menu with the given label.
- `JMenuItem add(JMenuItem item)`  
adds a menu item (or a menu).

(Continues)

**javax.swing.JMenu 1.2 (Continued)**

- **JMenuItem add(String label)**  
adds a menu item with the given label to this menu and returns the item.
- **JMenuItem add(Action a)**  
adds a menu item with the given action to this menu and returns the item.
- **void addSeparator()**  
adds a separator line to the menu.
- **JMenuItem insert(JMenuItem menu, int index)**  
adds a new menu item (or submenu) to the menu at a specific index.
- **JMenuItem insert(Action a, int index)**  
adds a new menu item with the given action at a specific index.
- **void insertSeparator(int index)**  
adds a separator to the menu.
- **void remove(int index)**
- **void remove(JMenuItem item)**  
removes a specific item from the menu.

**javax.swing.JMenuItem 1.2**

- **JMenuItem(String label)**  
constructs a menu item with a given label.
- **JMenuItem(Action a) 1.3**  
constructs a menu item for the given action.

**javax.swing.AbstractButton 1.2**

- **void setAction(Action a) 1.3**  
sets the action for this button or menu item.

**javax.swing.JFrame 1.2**

- **void setJMenuBar(JMenuBar menubar)**  
sets the menu bar for this frame.

## 11.5.2 Icons in Menu Items

Menu items are very similar to buttons. In fact, the `JMenuItem` class extends the `AbstractButton` class. Just like buttons, menus can have just a text label, just an icon, or both. You can specify the icon with the `JMenuItem(String, Icon)` or `JMenuItem(Icon)` constructor, or you can set it with the `setIcon` method that the `JMenuItem` class inherits from the `AbstractButton` class. Here is an example:

```
var cutItem = new JMenuItem("Cut", new ImageIcon("cut.gif"));
```

In Figure 11.17, you can see icons next to several menu items. By default, the menu item text is placed to the right of the icon. If you prefer the text to be placed on the left, call the `setHorizontalTextPosition` method that the `JMenuItem` class inherits from the `AbstractButton` class. For example, the call

```
cutItem.setHorizontalTextPosition(SwingConstants.LEFT);
```

moves the menu item text to the left of the icon.

You can also add an icon to an action:

```
cutAction.putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, new ImageIcon("cut.gif"));
```

Whenever you construct a menu item out of an action, the `Action.NAME` value becomes the text of the menu item and the `Action.SMALL_ICON` value becomes the icon.

Alternatively, you can set the icon in the `AbstractAction` constructor:

```
cutAction = new
    AbstractAction("Cut", new ImageIcon("cut.gif"))
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        ...
    }
};
```

### javax.swing.JMenuItem 1.2

- `JMenuItem(String label, Icon icon)`  
constructs a menu item with the given label and icon.

### javax.swing.AbstractButton 1.2

- `void setHorizontalTextPosition(int pos)`  
sets the horizontal position of the text relative to the icon. The `pos` parameter is `SwingConstants.RIGHT` (text is to the right of icon) or `SwingConstants.LEFT`.

**javax.swing.AbstractAction 1.2**

- `AbstractAction(String name, Icon smallIcon)`

constructs an abstract action with the given name and icon.

### 11.5.3 Checkbox and Radio Button Menu Items

*Checkbox* and *radio button* menu items display a checkbox or radio button next to the name (see Figure 11.17). When the user selects the menu item, the item automatically toggles between checked and unchecked.

Apart from the button decoration, treat these menu items just as you would any others. For example, here is how you create a checkbox menu item:

```
var readonlyItem = new JCheckBoxMenuItem("Read-only");
optionsMenu.add(readonlyItem);
```

The radio button menu items work just like regular radio buttons. You must add them to a button group. When one of the buttons in a group is selected, all others are automatically deselected.

```
var group = new ButtonGroup();
var insertItem = new JRadioButtonMenuItem("Insert");
insertItem.setSelected(true);
var overtypeItem = new JRadioButtonMenuItem("Overtype");
group.add(insertItem);
group.add(overtypeItem);
optionsMenu.add(insertItem);
optionsMenu.add(overtypeItem);
```

With these menu items, you don't necessarily want to be notified when the user selects the item. Instead, you can simply use the `isSelected` method to test the current state of the menu item. (Of course, that means you should keep a reference to the menu item stored in an instance field.) Use the `setSelected` method to set the state.

**javax.swing.JCheckBoxMenuItem 1.2**

- `JCheckBoxMenuItem(String label)`

constructs the checkbox menu item with the given label.

- `JCheckBoxMenuItem(String label, boolean state)`

constructs the checkbox menu item with the given label and the given initial state (true is checked).

**javax.swing.JRadioButtonMenuItem 1.2**

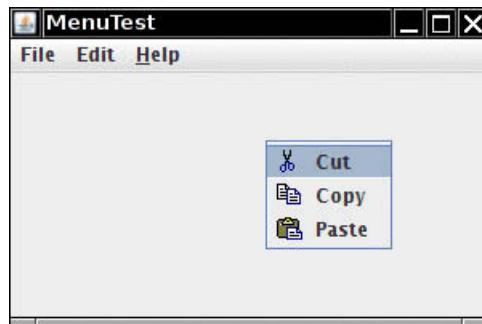
- `JRadioButtonMenuItem(String label)`  
constructs the radio button menu item with the given label.
- `JRadioButtonMenuItem(String label, boolean state)`  
constructs the radio button menu item with the given label and the given initial state (true is checked).

**javax.swing.AbstractButton 1.2**

- `boolean isSelected()`
- `void setSelected(boolean state)`  
gets or sets the selection state of this item (true is checked).

#### 11.5.4 Pop-Up Menus

A *pop-up menu* is a menu that is not attached to a menu bar but floats somewhere (see Figure 11.18).



**Figure 11.18** A pop-up menu

Create a pop-up menu just as you create a regular menu, except that a pop-up menu has no title.

```
var popup = new JPopupMenu();
```

Then, add your menu items as usual:

```
var item = new JMenuItem("Cut");
item.addActionListener(listener);
popup.add(item);
```

Unlike the regular menu bar that is always shown at the top of the frame, you must explicitly display a pop-up menu by using the `show` method. Specify the parent component and the location of the pop-up, using the coordinate system of the parent. For example:

```
popup.show(panel, x, y);
```

Usually, you want to pop up a menu when the user clicks a particular mouse button—the so-called *pop-up trigger*. In Windows and Linux, the pop-up trigger is the nonprimary (usually, the right) mouse button. To pop up a menu when the user clicks on a component, using the pop-up trigger, simply call the method

```
component.setComponentPopupMenu(popup);
```

Very occasionally, you may place a component inside another component that has a pop-up menu. The child component can inherit the parent component's pop-up menu by calling

```
child.setInheritsPopupMenu(true);
```

#### **javax.swing.JPopupMenu 1.2**

- `void show(Component c, int x, int y)`  
shows the pop-up menu over the component `c` with the top left corner at `(x, y)` (in the coordinate space of `c`).
- `boolean isPopupTrigger(MouseEvent event) 1.3`  
returns true if the mouse event is the pop-up menu trigger.

#### **java.awt.event.MouseEvent 1.1**

- `boolean isPopupTrigger()`  
returns true if this mouse event is the pop-up menu trigger.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `JPopupMenu getComponentPopupMenu() 5`
  - `void setComponentPopupMenu(JPopupMenu popup) 5`
- gets or sets the pop-up menu for this component.
- `boolean getInheritsPopupMenu() 5`
  - `void setInheritsPopupMenu(boolean b) 5`

gets or sets the `inheritsPopupMenu` property. If the property is set and this component's pop-up menu is null, it uses its parent's pop-up menu.

### 11.5.5 Keyboard Mnemonics and Accelerators

It is a real convenience for the experienced user to select menu items by *keyboard mnemonics*. You can create a keyboard mnemonic for a menu item by specifying a mnemonic letter in the menu item constructor:

```
var aboutItem = new JMenuItem("About", 'A');
```

The keyboard mnemonic is displayed automatically in the menu, with the mnemonic letter underlined (see Figure 11.19). For example, in the item defined in the last example, the label will be displayed as “About” with an underlined letter ‘A’. When the menu is displayed, the user just needs to press the A key, and the menu item is selected. (If the mnemonic letter is not part of the menu string, then typing it still selects the item, but the mnemonic is not displayed in the menu. Naturally, such invisible mnemonics are of dubious utility.)



**Figure 11.19** Keyboard mnemonics

Sometimes, you don't want to underline the first letter of the menu item that matches the mnemonic. For example, if you have a mnemonic 'A' for the menu item "Save As," then it makes more sense to underline the second 'A' (Save As). You can specify which character you want to have underlined by calling the `setDisplayedMnemonicIndex` method.

If you have an `Action` object, you can add the mnemonic as the value of the `Action.MNEMONIC_KEY` key, as follows:

```
aboutAction.putValue(Action.MNEMONIC_KEY, new Integer('A'));
```

You can supply a mnemonic letter only in the constructor of a menu item, not in the constructor for a menu. To attach a mnemonic to a menu, call the `setMnemonic` method:

```
var helpMenu = new JMenu("Help");
helpMenu.setMnemonic('H');
```

To select a top-level menu from the menu bar, press the Alt key together with the mnemonic letter. For example, press Alt+H to select the Help menu from the menu bar.

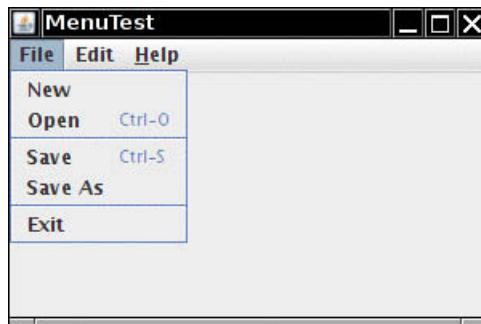
Keyboard mnemonics let you select a submenu or menu item from the currently open menu. In contrast, *accelerators* are keyboard shortcuts that let you select menu items without ever opening a menu. For example, many programs attach the accelerators Ctrl+O and Ctrl+S to the Open and Save items in the File menu. Use the `setAccelerator` method to attach an accelerator key to a menu item. The `setAccelerator` method takes an object of type `Keystroke`. For example, the following call attaches the accelerator Ctrl+O to the `openItem` menu item:

```
openItem.setAccelerator(KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl 0"));
```

Typing the accelerator key combination automatically selects the menu option and fires an action event, as if the user had selected the menu option manually.

You can attach accelerators only to menu items, not to menus. Accelerator keys don't actually open the menu. Instead, they directly fire the action event associated with a menu.

Conceptually, adding an accelerator to a menu item is similar to the technique of adding an accelerator to a Swing component. However, when the accelerator is added to a menu item, the key combination is automatically displayed in the menu (see Figure 11.20).



**Figure 11.20** Accelerators



**NOTE:** Under Windows, Alt+F4 closes a window. But this is not an accelerator to be programmed in Java. It is a shortcut defined by the operating system. This key combination will always trigger the `WindowClosing` event for the active window regardless of whether there is a Close item on the menu.

#### `javax.swing.JMenuItem 1.2`

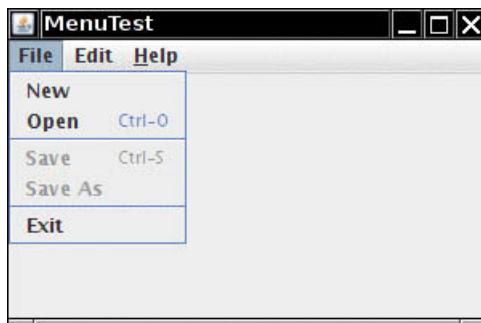
- `JMenuItem(String label, int mnemonic)`  
constructs a menu item with a given label and mnemonic.
- `void setAccelerator(KeyboardStroke k)`  
sets the keystroke k as accelerator for this menu item. The accelerator key is displayed next to the label.

#### `javax.swing.AbstractButton 1.2`

- `void setMnemonic(int mnemonic)`  
sets the mnemonic character for the button. This character will be underlined in the label.
- `void setDisplayedMnemonicIndex(int index) 1.4`  
sets the index of the character to be underlined in the button text. Use this method if you don't want the first occurrence of the mnemonic character to be underlined.

### 11.5.6 Enabling and Disabling Menu Items

Occasionally, a particular menu item should be selected only in certain contexts. For example, when a document is opened in read-only mode, the Save menu item is not meaningful. Of course, we could remove the item from the menu with the `JMenu.remove` method, but users would react with some surprise to menus whose content keeps changing. Instead, it is better to deactivate the menu items that lead to temporarily inappropriate commands. A deactivated menu item is shown in gray and cannot be selected (see Figure 11.21).



**Figure 11.21** Disabled menu items

To enable or disable a menu item, use the `setEnabled` method:

```
saveItem.setEnabled(false);
```

There are two strategies for enabling and disabling menu items. Each time circumstances change, you can call `setEnabled` on the relevant menu items or actions. For example, as soon as a document has been set to read-only mode, you can locate the Save and Save As menu items and disable them. Alternatively, you can disable items just before displaying the menu. To do this, you must register a listener for the "menu selected" event. The `javax.swing.event` package defines a `MenuListener` interface with three methods:

```
void menuSelected(MenuEvent event)
void menuDeselected(MenuEvent event)
void menuCanceled(MenuEvent event)
```

The `menuSelected` method is called *before* the menu is displayed. It can therefore be used to disable or enable menu items. The following code shows how to disable the Save and Save As actions whenever the Read Only checkbox menu item is selected:

```
public void menuSelected(MenuEvent event)
{
    saveAction.setEnabled(!readonlyItem.isSelected());
    saveAsAction.setEnabled(!readonlyItem.isSelected());
}
```



**CAUTION:** Disabling menu items just before displaying the menu is a clever idea, but it does not work for menu items that also have accelerator keys. Since the menu is never opened when the accelerator key is pressed, the action is never disabled, and is still triggered by the accelerator key.

#### `javax.swing.JMenuItem 1.2`

- `void setEnabled(boolean b)`  
enables or disables the menu item.

#### `javax.swing.event.MenuListener 1.2`

- `void menuSelected(MenuEvent e)`  
is called when the menu has been selected, before it is opened.
- `void menuDeselected(MenuEvent e)`  
is called when the menu has been deselected, after it has been closed.
- `void menuCanceled(MenuEvent e)`  
is called when the menu has been canceled, for example, by a user clicking outside the menu.

Listing 11.6 is a sample program that generates a set of menus. It shows all the features that you saw in this section: nested menus, disabled menu items, checkbox and radio button menu items, a pop-up menu, and keyboard mnemonics and accelerators.

#### **Listing 11.6** `menu/MenuFrame.java`

```
1 package menu;
2
3 import java.awt.event.*;
4 import javax.swing.*;
5
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 11.6 (Continued)**

```
6  /**
7   * A frame with a sample menu bar.
8  */
9 public class MenuFrame extends JFrame
10 {
11     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
12     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
13     private Action saveAction;
14     private Action saveAsAction;
15     private JCheckBoxMenuItem readonlyItem;
16     private JPopupMenu popup;
17
18 /**
19  * A sample action that prints the action name to System.out.
20 */
21 class TestAction extends AbstractAction
22 {
23     public TestAction(String name)
24     {
25         super(name);
26     }
27
28     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
29     {
30         System.out.println(getValue(Action.NAME) + " selected.");
31     }
32 }
33
34 public MenuFrame()
35 {
36     setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
37
38     var fileMenu = new JMenu("File");
39     fileMenu.add(new TestAction("New"));
40
41     // demonstrate accelerators
42
43     var openItem = fileMenu.add(new TestAction("Open"));
44     openItem.setAccelerator(KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl O"));
45
46     fileMenu.addSeparator();
47
48     saveAction = new TestAction("Save");
49     JMenuItem saveItem = fileMenu.add(saveAction);
50     saveItem.setAccelerator(KeyStroke.getKeyStroke("ctrl S"));
51
52     saveAsAction = new TestAction("Save As");
```

```
53     fileMenu.add(saveAsAction);
54     fileMenu.addSeparator();
55
56     fileMenu.add(new AbstractAction("Exit")
57     {
58         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
59         {
60             System.exit(0);
61         }
62     });
63
64 // demonstrate checkbox and radio button menus
65
66 readonlyItem = new JCheckBoxMenuItem("Read-only");
67 readonlyItem.addActionListener(new ActionListener()
68 {
69     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
70     {
71         boolean saveOk = !readonlyItem.isSelected();
72         saveAction.setEnabled(saveOk);
73         saveAsAction.setEnabled(saveOk);
74     }
75 });
76
77 var group = new ButtonGroup();
78
79 var insertItem = new JRadioButtonMenuItem("Insert");
80 insertItem.setSelected(true);
81 var overtypeItem = new JRadioButtonMenuItem("Overtype");
82
83 group.add(insertItem);
84 group.add(overtypeItem);
85
86 // demonstrate icons
87
88 var cutAction = new TestAction("Cut");
89 cutAction.putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, new ImageIcon("cut.gif"));
90 var copyAction = new TestAction("Copy");
91 copyAction.putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, new ImageIcon("copy.gif"));
92 var pasteAction = new TestAction("Paste");
93 pasteAction.putValue(Action.SMALL_ICON, new ImageIcon("paste.gif"));
94
95 var editMenu = new JMenu("Edit");
96 editMenu.add(cutAction);
97 editMenu.add(copyAction);
98 editMenu.add(pasteAction);
99
100 // demonstrate nested menus
```

(Continues)

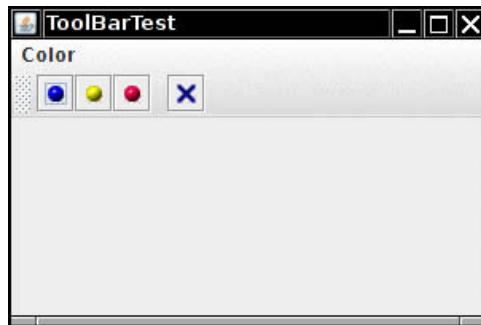
**Listing 11.6 (Continued)**

```
102     var optionMenu = new JMenu("Options");
103
104     optionMenu.add(readonlyItem);
105     optionMenu.addSeparator();
106     optionMenu.add(insertItem);
107     optionMenu.add(overtypeItem);
108
109     editMenu.addSeparator();
110     editMenu.add(optionMenu);
111
112     // demonstrate mnemonics
113
114     var helpMenu = new JMenu("Help");
115     helpMenu.setMnemonic('H');
116
117     var indexItem = new JMenuItem("Index");
118     indexItem.setMnemonic('I');
119     helpMenu.add(indexItem);
120
121     // you can also add the mnemonic key to an action
122     var aboutAction = new TestAction("About");
123     aboutAction.putValue(Action.MNEMONIC_KEY, new Integer('A'));
124     helpMenu.add(aboutAction);
125
126     // add all top-level menus to menu bar
127
128     var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
129     setJMenuBar(menuBar);
130
131     menuBar.add(fileMenu);
132     menuBar.add(editMenu);
133     menuBar.add(helpMenu);
134
135     // demonstrate pop-ups
136
137     popup = new JPopupMenu();
138     popup.add(cutAction);
139     popup.add(copyAction);
140     popup.add(pasteAction);
141
142     var panel = new JPanel();
143     panel.setComponentPopupMenu(popup);
144     add(panel);
145 }
146 }
```

---

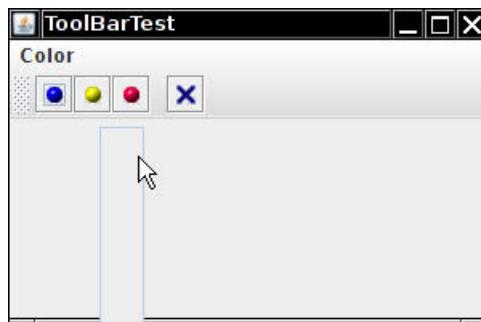
### 11.5.7 Toolbars

A toolbar is a button bar that gives quick access to the most commonly used commands in a program (see Figure 11.22).



**Figure 11.22** A toolbar

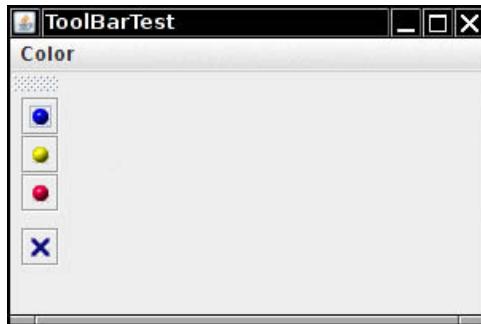
What makes toolbars special is that you can move them elsewhere. You can drag the toolbar to one of the four borders of the frame (see Figure 11.23). When you release the mouse button, the toolbar is dropped into the new location (see Figure 11.24).



**Figure 11.23** Dragging the toolbar

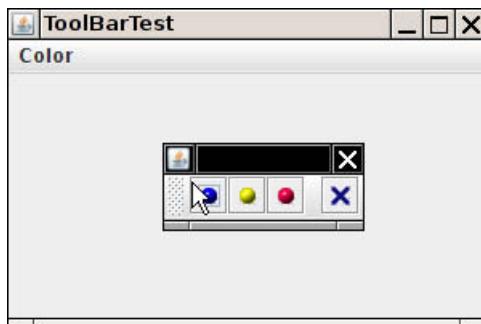


**NOTE:** Toolbar dragging works if the toolbar is inside a container with a border layout, or any other layout manager that supports the North, East, South, and West constraints.



**Figure 11.24** The toolbar has been dragged to another border

The toolbar can even be completely detached from the frame. A detached toolbar is contained in its own frame (see Figure 11.25). When you close the frame containing a detached toolbar, the toolbar jumps back into the original frame.



**Figure 11.25** Detaching the toolbar

Toolbars are straightforward to program. Add components into the toolbar:

```
var toolbar = new JToolBar();
toolbar.add(blueButton);
```

The `JToolBar` class also has a method to add an `Action` object. Simply populate the toolbar with `Action` objects, like this:

```
toolbar.add(blueAction);
```

The small icon of the action is displayed in the toolbar.

You can separate groups of buttons with a separator:

```
toolbar.addSeparator();
```

For example, the toolbar in Figure 11.22 has a separator between the third and fourth button.

Then, add the toolbar to the frame:

```
add(toolbar, BorderLayout.NORTH);
```

You can also specify a title for the toolbar that appears when the toolbar is undocked:

```
toolbar = new JToolBar(titleString);
```

By default, toolbars are initially horizontal. To have a toolbar start out vertical, use

```
toolbar = new JToolBar(SwingConstants.VERTICAL)
```

or

```
toolbar = new JToolBar(titleString, SwingConstants.VERTICAL)
```

Buttons are the most common components inside toolbars. But there is no restriction on the components that you can add to a toolbar. For example, you can add a combo box to a toolbar.

### 11.5.8 Tooltips

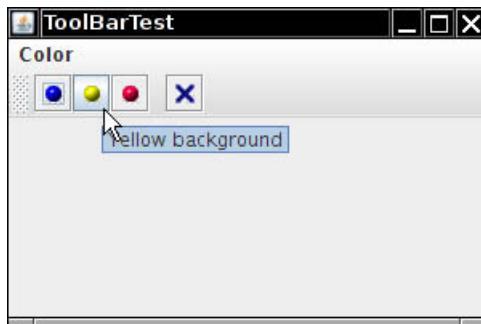
A disadvantage of toolbars is that users are often mystified by the meanings of the tiny icons in toolbars. To solve this problem, user interface designers invented *tooltips*. A tooltip is activated when the cursor rests for a moment over a button. The tooltip text is displayed inside a colored rectangle. When the user moves the mouse away, the tooltip disappears. (See Figure 11.26.)

In Swing, you can add tooltips to any `JComponent` simply by calling the `setToolTipText` method:

```
exitButton.setToolTipText("Exit");
```

Alternatively, if you use `Action` objects, you associate the tooltip with the `SHORT_DESCRIPTION` key:

```
exitAction.putValue(Action.SHORT_DESCRIPTION, "Exit");
```



**Figure 11.26** A tooltip

#### **javax.swing.JToolBar 1.2**

- `JToolBar()`
- `JToolBar(String titleString)`
- `JToolBar(int orientation)`
- `JToolBar(String titleString, int orientation)`

constructs a toolbar with the given title string and orientation. `orientation` is one of `SwingConstants.HORIZONTAL` (the default) or `SwingConstants.VERTICAL`.

- `JButton add(Action a)`  
constructs a new button inside the toolbar with name, icon, short description, and action callback from the given action, and adds the button to the end of the toolbar.
- `void addSeparator()`  
adds a separator to the end of the toolbar.

#### **javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `void setToolTipText(String text)`  
sets the text that should be displayed as a tooltip when the mouse hovers over the component.

## **11.6 Sophisticated Layout Management**

So far we've been using only the border layout, flow layout, and grid layout for the user interface of our sample applications. For more complex tasks, this is not going to be enough.

Since Java 1.0, the AWT includes the *grid bag layout* that lays out components in rows and columns. The row and column sizes are flexible, and components can span multiple rows and columns. This layout manager is very flexible, but also very complex. The mere mention of the words “grid bag layout” has been known to strike fear in the hearts of Java programmers.

In an unsuccessful attempt to design a layout manager that would free programmers from the tyranny of the grid bag layout, the Swing designers came up with the *box layout*. According to the JDK documentation of the `BoxLayout` class: “Nesting multiple panels with different combinations of horizontal and vertical [sic] gives an effect similar to `GridBagLayout`, without the complexity.” However, as each box is laid out independently, you cannot use box layouts to arrange neighboring components both horizontally and vertically.

Java 1.4 saw yet another attempt to design a replacement for the grid bag layout—the *spring layout* where you use imaginary springs to connect the components in a container. As the container is resized, the springs stretch or shrink, thereby adjusting the positions of the components. This sounds tedious and confusing, and it is. The spring layout quickly sank into obscurity.

The NetBeans IDE combines a layout tool (called “Matisse”) and a layout manager. A user interface designer uses the tool to drop components into a container and to indicate which components should line up. The tool translates the designer’s intentions into instructions for the *group layout manager*. This is much more convenient than writing the layout management code by hand.

In the coming sections, we will cover the grid bag layout because it is commonly used and is still the easiest mechanism for programmatically producing layout code. We will show you a strategy that makes grid bag layouts relatively painless in common situations.

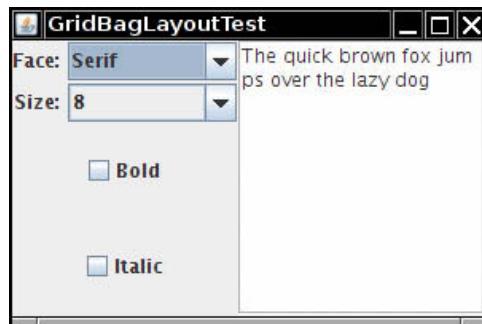
Finally, you will see how to write your own layout manager.

### 11.6.1 The Grid Bag Layout

The grid bag layout is the mother of all layout managers. You can think of a grid bag layout as a grid layout without the limitations. In a grid bag layout, the rows and columns can have variable sizes. You can join adjacent cells to make room for larger components. (Many word processors, as well as HTML, provide similar capabilities for tables: You can start out with a grid and then merge adjacent cells as necessary.) The components need not fill the entire cell area, and you can specify their alignment within cells.

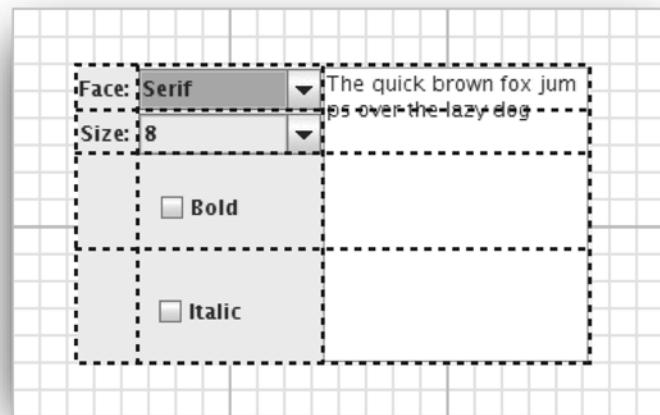
Consider the font selector of Figure 11.27. It consists of the following components:

- Two combo boxes to specify the font face and size
- Labels for these two combo boxes
- Two checkboxes to select bold and italic
- A text area for the sample string



**Figure 11.27** A font selector

Now, chop up the container into a grid of cells, as shown in Figure 11.28. (The rows and columns need not have equal size.) Each checkbox spans two columns, and the text area spans four rows.



**Figure 11.28** Dialog box grid used in design

To describe the layout to the grid bag manager, use the following procedure:

1. Create an object of type `GridBagLayout`. You don't need to tell it how many rows and columns the underlying grid has. Instead, the layout manager will try to guess it from the information you give it later.
2. Set this `GridBagLayout` object to be the layout manager for the component.
3. For each component, create an object of type `GridBagConstraints`. Set field values of the `GridBagConstraints` object to specify how the components are laid out within the grid bag.
4. Finally, add each component with its constraints by using the call  
`add(component, constraints);`

Here's an example of the code needed. (We'll go over the various constraints in more detail in the sections that follow—so don't worry if you don't know what some of the constraints do.)

```
var layout = new GridBagLayout();
panel.setLayout(layout);
var constraints = new GridBagConstraints();
constraints.weightx = 100;
constraints.weighty = 100;
constraints.gridx = 0;
constraints.gridy = 2;
constraints.gridwidth = 2;
constraints.gridheight = 1;
panel.add(component, constraints);
```

The trick is knowing how to set the state of the `GridBagConstraints` object. We'll discuss this object in the sections that follow.

### 11.6.1.1 The `gridx`, `gridy`, `gridwidth`, and `gridheight` Parameters

The `gridx`, `gridy`, `gridwidth`, and `gridheight` constraints define where the component is located in the grid. The `gridx` and `gridy` values specify the column and row positions of the upper left corner of the component to be added. The `gridwidth` and `gridheight` values determine how many columns and rows the component occupies.

The grid coordinates start with 0. In particular, `gridx = 0` and `gridy = 0` denotes the top left corner. The text area in our example has `gridx = 2`, `gridy = 0` because it starts in column 2 (that is, the third column) of row 0. It has `gridwidth = 1` and `gridheight = 4` because it spans one column and four rows.

### 11.6.1.2 Weight Fields

You always need to set the *weight* fields (*weightx* and *weighty*) for each area in a grid bag layout. If you set the weight to 0, the area never grows or shrinks beyond its initial size in that direction. In the grid bag layout for Figure 11.27, we set the *weightx* field of the labels to be 0. This allows the labels to keep constant width when you resize the window. On the other hand, if you set the weights for all areas to 0, the container will huddle in the center of its allotted area instead of stretching to fill it.

Conceptually, the problem with the weight parameters is that weights are properties of rows and columns, not individual cells. But you need to specify them for cells because the grid bag layout does not expose the rows and columns. The row and column weights are computed as the maxima of the cell weights in each row or column. Thus, if you want a row or column to stay at a fixed size, you need to set the weights of all components in it to zero.

Note that the weights don't actually give the relative sizes of the columns. They tell what proportion of the "slack" space should be allocated to each area if the container exceeds its preferred size. This isn't particularly intuitive. We recommend that you set all weights at 100. Then, run the program and see how the layout looks. Resize the dialog to see how the rows and columns adjust. If you find that a particular row or column should not grow, set the weights of all components in it to zero. You can tinker with other weight values, but it is usually not worth the effort.

### 11.6.1.3 The fill and anchor Parameters

If you don't want a component to stretch out and fill the entire area, set the *fill* constraint. You have four possibilities for this parameter: the valid values are `GridBagConstraints.NONE`, `GridBagConstraints.HORIZONTAL`, `GridBagConstraints.VERTICAL`, and `GridBagConstraints.BOTH`.

If the component does not fill the entire area, you can specify where in the area you want it by setting the *anchor* field. The valid values are `GridBagConstraints.CENTER` (the default), `GridBagConstraints.NORTH`, `GridBagConstraints.NORTHEAST`, `GridBagConstraints.EAST`, and so on.

### 11.6.1.4 Padding

You can surround a component with additional blank space by setting the *insets* field of `GridBagConstraints`. Set the *left*, *top*, *right*, and *bottom* values of the `Insets` object to the amount of space that you want to have around the component. This is called the *external padding*.

The `ipadx` and `ipady` values set the *internal padding*. These values are added to the minimum width and height of the component. This ensures that the component does not shrink down to its minimum size.

#### 11.6.1.5 Alternative Method to Specify the `gridx`, `gridy`, `gridwidth`, and `gridheight` Parameters

The AWT documentation recommends that instead of setting the `gridx` and `gridy` values to absolute positions, you set them to the constant `GridBagConstraints.RELATIVE`. Then, add the components to the grid bag layout in a standardized order, going from left to right in the first row, then moving along the next row, and so on.

You would still specify the number of rows and columns spanned, by giving the appropriate `gridheight` and `gridwidth` fields. However, if the component extends to the *last* row or column, you don't need to specify the actual number, but the constant `GridBagConstraints.REMAINDER`. This tells the layout manager that the component is the last one in its row.

This scheme does seem to work. But it sounds really goofy to hide the actual placement information from the layout manager and hope that it will rediscover it.

#### 11.6.1.6 A Grid Bag Layout Recipe

In practice, the following recipe makes grid bag layouts relatively trouble-free:

1. Sketch out the component layout on a piece of paper.
2. Find a grid such that the small components are each contained in a cell and the larger components span multiple cells.
3. Label the rows and columns of your grid with 0, 1, 2, 3, . . . You can now read off the `gridx`, `gridy`, `gridwidth`, and `gridheight` values.
4. For each component, ask yourself whether it needs to fill its cell horizontally or vertically. If not, how do you want it aligned? This tells you the `fill` and `anchor` parameters.
5. Set all weights to 100. However, if you want a particular row or column to always stay at its default size, set the `weightx` or `weighty` to 0 in all components that belong to that row or column.
6. Write the code. Carefully double-check your settings for the `GridBagConstraints`. One wrong constraint can ruin your whole layout.
7. Compile, run, and enjoy.

### 11.6.1.7 A Helper Class to Tame the Grid Bag Constraints

The most tedious aspect of the grid bag layout is writing the code that sets the constraints. Most programmers write helper functions or a small helper class for this purpose. We present such a class after the complete code for the font dialog example. This class has the following features:

- Its name is short: GBC instead of GridBagConstraints.
- It extends GridBagConstraints, so you can use shorter names such as GBC.EAST for the constants.
- Use a GBC object when adding a component, such as

```
add(component, new GBC(1, 2));
```

- There are two constructors to set the most common parameters: gridx and gridy, or gridx, gridy, gridwidth, and gridheight.

```
add(component, new GBC(1, 2, 1, 4));
```

- There are convenient setters for the fields that come in x/y pairs:

```
add(component, new GBC(1, 2).setWeight(100, 100));
```

- The setter methods return this, so you can chain them:

```
add(component, new GBC(1, 2).setAnchor(GBC.EAST).setWeight(100, 100));
```

- The setInsets methods construct the Insets object for you. To get one-pixel insets, simply call

```
add(component, new GBC(1, 2).setAnchor(GBC.EAST).setInsets(1));
```

Listing 11.7 shows the frame class for the font dialog example. The GBC helper class is in Listing 11.8. Here is the code that adds the components to the grid bag:

```
add(faceLabel, new GBC(0, 0).setAnchor(GBC.EAST));
add(face, new GBC(1, 0).setFill(GBC.HORIZONTAL).setWeight(100, 0).setInsets(1));
add(sizeLabel, new GBC(0, 1).setAnchor(GBC.EAST));
add(size, new GBC(1, 1).setFill(GBC.HORIZONTAL).setWeight(100, 0).setInsets(1));
add(bold, new GBC(0, 2, 2, 1).setAnchor(GBC.CENTER).setWeight(100, 100));
add(italic, new GBC(0, 3, 2, 1).setAnchor(GBC.CENTER).setWeight(100, 100));
add(sample, new GBC(2, 0, 1, 4).setFill(GBC.BOTH).setWeight(100, 100));
```

Once you understand the grid bag constraints, this kind of code is fairly easy to read and debug.

**Listing 11.7** gridbag/FontFrame.java

```
1 package gridbag;
2
3 import java.awt.Font;
4 import java.awt.GridBagLayout;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
6
7 import javax.swing.BorderFactory;
8 import javax.swing.JCheckBox;
9 import javax.swing.JComboBox;
10 import javax.swing.JFrame;
11 import javax.swing.JLabel;
12 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
13
14 /**
15  * A frame that uses a grid bag layout to arrange font selection components.
16  */
17 public class FontFrame extends JFrame
18 {
19     public static final int TEXT_ROWS = 10;
20     public static final int TEXT_COLUMNS = 20;
21
22     private JComboBox<String> face;
23     private JComboBox<Integer> size;
24     private JCheckBox bold;
25     private JCheckBox italic;
26     private JTextArea sample;
27
28     public FontFrame()
29     {
30         var layout = new GridBagLayout();
31         setLayout(layout);
32
33         ActionListener listener = event -> updateSample();
34
35         // construct components
36
37         var faceLabel = new JLabel("Face: ");
38
39         face = new JComboBox<>(new String[] { "Serif", "SansSerif", "Monospaced",
40             "Dialog", "DialogInput" });
41
42         face.addActionListener(listener);
43
44         var sizeLabel = new JLabel("Size: ");
45
46         size = new JComboBox<>(new Integer[] { 8, 10, 12, 15, 18, 24, 36, 48 });
47 }
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 11.7 (Continued)**

```
48     size.addActionListener(listener);
49
50     bold = new JCheckBox("Bold");
51     bold.addActionListener(listener);
52
53     italic = new JCheckBox("Italic");
54     italic.addActionListener(listener);
55
56     sample = new JTextArea(TEXT_ROWS, TEXT_COLUMNS);
57     sample.setText("The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog");
58     sample.setEditable(false);
59     sample.setLineWrap(true);
60     sample.setBorder(BorderFactory.createEtchedBorder());
61
62     // add components to grid, using GBC convenience class
63
64     add(faceLabel, new GBC(0, 0).setAnchor(GBC.EAST));
65     add(face, new GBC(1, 0).setFill(GBC.HORIZONTAL).setWeight(100, 0).setInsets(1));
66     add(sizeLabel, new GBC(0, 1).setAnchor(GBC.EAST));
67     add(size, new GBC(1, 1).setFill(GBC.HORIZONTAL).setWeight(100, 0).setInsets(1));
68     add(bold, new GBC(0, 2, 2, 1).setAnchor(GBC.CENTER).setWeight(100, 100));
69     add(italic, new GBC(0, 3, 2, 1).setAnchor(GBC.CENTER).setWeight(100, 100));
70     add(sample, new GBC(2, 0, 1, 4).setFill(GBC.BOTH).setWeight(100, 100));
71     pack();
72     updateSample();
73 }
74
75 public void updateSample()
76 {
77     var fontFace = (String) face.getSelectedItem();
78     int fontStyle = (bold.isSelected() ? Font.BOLD : 0)
79         + (italic.isSelected() ? Font.ITALIC : 0);
80     int fontSize = size.getItemAt(size.getSelectedIndex());
81     var font = new Font(fontFace, fontStyle, fontSize);
82     sample.setFont(font);
83     sample.repaint();
84 }
85 }
```

---

**Listing 11.8 gridbag/GBC.java**

```
1 package gridbag;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4
5 /**
6  * This class simplifies the use of the GridBagConstraints class.
```

```
7  * @version 1.01 2004-05-06
8  * @author Cay Horstmann
9  */
10 public class GBC extends GridBagConstraints
11 {
12     /**
13      * Constructs a GBC with a given gridx and gridy position and all other grid
14      * bag constraint values set to the default.
15      * @param gridx the gridx position
16      * @param gridy the gridy position
17      */
18     public GBC(int gridx, int gridy)
19     {
20         this.gridx = gridx;
21         this.gridy = gridy;
22     }
23
24     /**
25      * Constructs a GBC with given gridx, gridy, gridwidth, gridheight and all
26      * other grid bag constraint values set to the default.
27      * @param gridx the gridx position
28      * @param gridy the gridy position
29      * @param gridwidth the cell span in x-direction
30      * @param gridheight the cell span in y-direction
31      */
32     public GBC(int gridx, int gridy, int gridwidth, int gridheight)
33     {
34         this.gridx = gridx;
35         this.gridy = gridy;
36         this.gridwidth = gridwidth;
37         this.gridheight = gridheight;
38     }
39
40     /**
41      * Sets the anchor.
42      * @param anchor the anchor value
43      * @return this object for further modification
44      */
45     public GBC setAnchor(int anchor)
46     {
47         this.anchor = anchor;
48         return this;
49     }
50
51     /**
52      * Sets the fill direction.
53      * @param fill the fill direction
54      * @return this object for further modification
55      */
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.8 (Continued)**

```
56     public GBC setFill(int fill)
57     {
58         this.fill = fill;
59         return this;
60     }
61
62     /**
63      * Sets the cell weights.
64      * @param weightx the cell weight in x-direction
65      * @param weighty the cell weight in y-direction
66      * @return this object for further modification
67      */
68     public GBC setWeight(double weightx, double weighty)
69     {
70         this.weightx = weightx;
71         this.weighty = weighty;
72         return this;
73     }
74
75     /**
76      * Sets the insets of this cell.
77      * @param distance the spacing to use in all directions
78      * @return this object for further modification
79      */
80     public GBC setInsets(int distance)
81     {
82         this.insets = new Insets(distance, distance, distance, distance);
83         return this;
84     }
85
86     /**
87      * Sets the insets of this cell.
88      * @param top the spacing to use on top
89      * @param left the spacing to use to the left
90      * @param bottom the spacing to use on the bottom
91      * @param right the spacing to use to the right
92      * @return this object for further modification
93      */
94     public GBC setInsets(int top, int left, int bottom, int right)
95     {
96         this.insets = new Insets(top, left, bottom, right);
97         return this;
98     }
99 }
```

```
100  /**
101   * Sets the internal padding
102   * @param ipadx the internal padding in x-direction
103   * @param ipady the internal padding in y-direction
104   * @return this object for further modification
105   */
106  public GBC setIpadx(int ipadx, int ipady)
107  {
108      this.ipadx = ipadx;
109      this.ipady = ipady;
110      return this;
111  }
112 }
```

#### java.awt.GridBagConstraints 1.0

- int gridx, gridy  
specifies the starting column and row of the cell. The default is 0.
- int gridwidth, gridheight  
specifies the column and row extent of the cell. The default is 1.
- double weightx, weighty  
specifies the capacity of the cell to grow. The default is 0.
- int anchor  
indicates the alignment of the component inside the cell. You can choose between absolute positions:

NORTHWEST	NORTH	NORTHEAST
WEST	CENTER	EAST
SOUTHWEST	SOUTH	SOUTHEAST

or their orientation-independent counterparts:

FIRST_LINE_START	LINE_START	FIRST_LINE_END
PAGE_START	CENTER	PAGE_END
LAST_LINE_START	LINE_END	LAST_LINE_END

Use the latter if your application may be localized for right-to-left or top-to-bottom text. The default is CENTER.

- int fill  
specifies the fill behavior of the component inside the cell: one of NONE, BOTH, HORIZONTAL, or VERTICAL. The default is NONE.

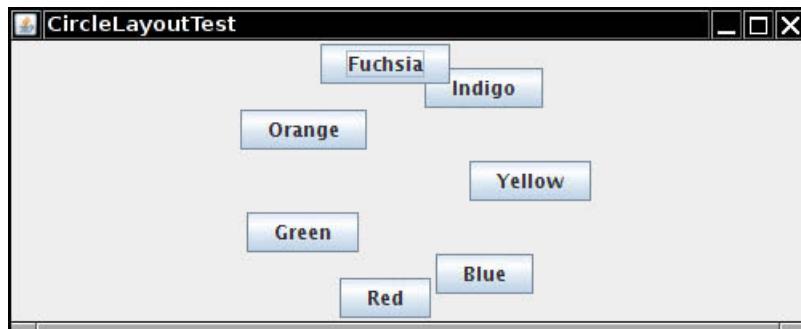
(Continues)

**java.awt.GridBagConstraints 1.0 (Continued)**

- int `ipadx`, `ipady`  
specifies the “internal” padding around the component. The default is 0.
- Insets `insets`  
specifies the “external” padding along the cell boundaries. The default is no padding.
- `GridBagConstraints(int gridx, int gridy, int gridwidth, int gridheight, double weightx, double weighty, int anchor, int fill, Insets insets, int ipadx, int ipady)` [1.2](#)  
constructs a `GridBagConstraints` with all its fields specified in the arguments. This constructor should only be used by automatic code generators because it makes your source code very hard to read.

### 11.6.2 Custom Layout Managers

You can design your own `LayoutManager` class that manages components in a special way. As a fun example, let’s arrange all components in a container to form a circle (see Figure 11.29).



**Figure 11.29** Circle layout

Your own layout manager must implement the `LayoutManager` interface. You need to override the following five methods:

```
void addLayoutComponent(String s, Component c)
void removeLayoutComponent(Component c)
Dimension preferredLayoutSize(Container parent)
Dimension minimumLayoutSize(Container parent)
void layoutContainer(Container parent)
```

The first two methods are called when a component is added or removed. If you don't keep any additional information about the components, you can make them do nothing. The next two methods compute the space required for the minimum and the preferred layout of the components. These are usually the same quantity. The fifth method does the actual work and invokes `setBounds` on all components.



**NOTE:** The AWT has a second interface, called `LayoutManager2`, with ten methods to implement rather than five. The main point of the `LayoutManager2` interface is to allow you to use the `add` method with constraints. For example, the `BorderLayout` and `GridBagLayout` implement the `LayoutManager2` interface.

Listing 11.9 shows the code for the `CircleLayout` manager which, uselessly enough, lays out the components along a circle inside the parent. The frame class of the sample program is in Listing 11.10.

#### Listing 11.9 `circleLayout/CircleLayout.java`

```
1 package circleLayout;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4
5 /**
6  * A layout manager that lays out components along a circle.
7  */
8 public class CircleLayout implements LayoutManager
9 {
10     private int minWidth = 0;
11     private int minHeight = 0;
12     private int preferredWidth = 0;
13     private int preferredHeight = 0;
14     private boolean sizesSet = false;
15     private int maxComponentWidth = 0;
16     private int maxComponentHeight = 0;
17
18     public void addLayoutComponent(String name, Component comp)
19     {
20     }
21
22     public void removeLayoutComponent(Component comp)
23     {
24     }
25 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.9 (Continued)**

```
26  public void setSizes(Container parent)
27  {
28      if (sizesSet) return;
29      int n = parent.getComponentCount();
30
31      preferredWidth = 0;
32      preferredHeight = 0;
33      minWidth = 0;
34      minHeight = 0;
35      maxComponentWidth = 0;
36      maxComponentHeight = 0;
37
38      // compute the maximum component widths and heights
39      // and set the preferred size to the sum of the component sizes
40      for (int i = 0; i < n; i++)
41      {
42          Component c = parent.getComponent(i);
43          if (c.isVisible())
44          {
45              Dimension d = c.getPreferredSize();
46              maxComponentWidth = Math.max(maxComponentWidth, d.width);
47              maxComponentHeight = Math.max(maxComponentHeight, d.height);
48              preferredWidth += d.width;
49              preferredHeight += d.height;
50          }
51      }
52      minWidth = preferredWidth / 2;
53      minHeight = preferredHeight / 2;
54      sizesSet = true;
55  }
56
57  public Dimension preferredLayoutSize(Container parent)
58  {
59      setSizes(parent);
60      Insets insets = parent.getInsets();
61      int width = preferredWidth + insets.left + insets.right;
62      int height = preferredHeight + insets.top + insets.bottom;
63      return new Dimension(width, height);
64  }
65
66  public Dimension minimumLayoutSize(Container parent)
67  {
68      setSizes(parent);
69      Insets insets = parent.getInsets();
```

```
70     int width = minWidth + insets.left + insets.right;
71     int height = minHeight + insets.top + insets.bottom;
72     return new Dimension(width, height);
73 }
74
75 public void layoutContainer(Container parent)
76 {
77     setSizes(parent);
78
79     // compute center of the circle
80
81     Insets insets = parent.getInsets();
82     int containerWidth = parent.getSize().width - insets.left - insets.right;
83     int containerHeight = parent.getSize().height - insets.top - insets.bottom;
84
85     int xcenter = insets.left + containerWidth / 2;
86     int ycenter = insets.top + containerHeight / 2;
87
88     // compute radius of the circle
89
90     int xradius = (containerWidth - maxComponentWidth) / 2;
91     int yradius = (containerHeight - maxComponentHeight) / 2;
92     int radius = Math.min(xradius, yradius);
93
94     // lay out components along the circle
95
96     int n = parent.getComponentCount();
97     for (int i = 0; i < n; i++)
98     {
99         Component c = parent.getComponent(i);
100        if (c.isVisible())
101        {
102            double angle = 2 * Math.PI * i / n;
103
104            // center point of component
105            int x = xcenter + (int) (Math.cos(angle) * radius);
106            int y = ycenter + (int) (Math.sin(angle) * radius);
107
108            // move component so that its center is (x, y)
109            // and its size is its preferred size
110            Dimension d = c.getPreferredSize();
111            c.setBounds(x - d.width / 2, y - d.height / 2, d.width, d.height);
112        }
113    }
114 }
115 }
```

**Listing 11.10** circleLayout/CircleLayoutFrame.java

```
1 package circleLayout;
2
3 import javax.swing.*;
4
5 /**
6  * A frame that shows buttons arranged along a circle.
7  */
8 public class CircleLayoutFrame extends JFrame
9 {
10    public CircleLayoutFrame()
11    {
12        setLayout(new CircleLayout());
13        add(new JButton("Yellow"));
14        add(new JButton("Blue"));
15        add(new JButton("Red"));
16        add(new JButton("Green"));
17        add(new JButton("Orange"));
18        add(new JButton("Fuchsia"));
19        add(new JButton("Indigo"));
20        pack();
21    }
22}
```

***java.awt.LayoutManager 1.0***

- `void addLayoutComponent(String name, Component comp)`  
adds a component to the layout.
- `void removeLayoutComponent(Component comp)`  
removes a component from the layout.
- `Dimension preferredLayoutSize(Container cont)`  
returns the preferred size dimensions for the container under this layout.
- `Dimension minimumLayoutSize(Container cont)`  
returns the minimum size dimensions for the container under this layout.
- `void layoutContainer(Container cont)`  
lays out the components in a container.

## 11.7 Dialog Boxes

So far, all our user interface components have appeared inside a frame window that was created in the application. This is the most common situation if you

write *applets* that run inside a web browser. But if you write applications, you usually want separate dialog boxes to pop up to give information to, or get information from, the user.

Just as with most windowing systems, AWT distinguishes between *modal* and *modeless* dialog boxes. A modal dialog box won't let users interact with the remaining windows of the application until he or she deals with it. Use a modal dialog box when you need information from the user before you can proceed with execution. For example, when the user wants to read a file, a modal file dialog box is the one to pop up. The user must specify a file name before the program can begin the read operation. Only when the user closes the modal dialog box can the application proceed.

A modeless dialog box lets the user enter information in both the dialog box and the remainder of the application. One example of a modeless dialog is a toolbar. The toolbar can stay in place as long as needed, and the user can interact with both the application window and the toolbar as needed.

We will start this section with the simplest dialogs—modal dialogs with just a single message. Swing has a convenient `JOptionPane` class that lets you put up a simple dialog without writing any special dialog box code. Next, you will see how to write more complex dialogs by implementing your own dialog windows. Finally, you will see how to transfer data from your application into a dialog and back.

We'll conclude the discussion of dialog boxes by looking at the Swing `JFileChooser`.

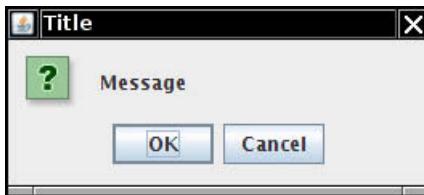
### 11.7.1 Option Dialogs

Swing has a set of ready-made simple dialogs that suffice to ask the user for a single piece of information. The `JOptionPane` has four static methods to show these simple dialogs:

<code>showMessageDialog</code>	Show a message and wait for the user to click OK
<code>showConfirmDialog</code>	Show a message and get a confirmation (like OK/Cancel)
<code>showOptionDialog</code>	Show a message and get a user option from a set of options
<code>showInputDialog</code>	Show a message and get one line of user input

Figure 11.30 shows a typical dialog. As you can see, the dialog has the following components:

- An icon
- A message
- One or more option buttons



**Figure 11.30** An option dialog

The input dialog has an additional component for user input. This can be a text field into which the user can type an arbitrary string, or a combo box from which the user can select one item.

The exact layout of these dialogs and the choice of icons for standard message types depend on the pluggable look-and-feel.

The icon on the left side depends on one of five *message types*:

ERROR\_MESSAGE  
INFORMATION\_MESSAGE  
WARNING\_MESSAGE  
QUESTION\_MESSAGE  
PLAIN\_MESSAGE

The PLAIN\_MESSAGE type has no icon. Each dialog type also has a method that lets you supply your own icon instead.

For each dialog type, you can specify a message. This message can be a string, an icon, a user interface component, or any other object. Here is how the message object is displayed:

String	Draw the string
Icon	Show the icon
Component	Show the component
Object[]	Show all objects in the array, stacked on top of each other
Any other object	Apply <code>toString</code> and show the resulting string

Of course, supplying a message string is by far the most common case. Supplying a Component gives you ultimate flexibility because you can make the `paintComponent` method draw anything you want.

The buttons at the bottom depend on the dialog type and the *option type*. When calling `showMessageDialog` and `showInputDialog`, you get only a standard set of buttons (OK and OK/Cancel, respectively). When calling `showConfirmDialog`, you can choose among four option types:

```
DEFAULT_OPTION  
YES_NO_OPTION  
YES_NO_CANCEL_OPTION  
OK_CANCEL_OPTION
```

With the `showOptionDialog` you can specify an arbitrary set of options. You supply an array of objects for the options. Each array element is rendered as follows:

<code>String</code>	Make a button with the string as label
<code>Icon</code>	Make a button with the icon as label
<code>Component</code>	Show the component
Any other object	Apply <code>toString</code> and make a button with the resulting string as label

The return values of these functions are as follows:

<code>showMessageDialog</code>	None
<code>showConfirmDialog</code>	An integer representing the chosen option
<code>showOptionDialog</code>	An integer representing the chosen option
<code>showInputDialog</code>	The string that the user supplied or selected

The `showConfirmDialog` and `showOptionDialog` return integers to indicate which button the user chose. For the option dialog, this is simply the index of the chosen option or the value `CLOSED_OPTION` if the user closed the dialog instead of choosing an option. For the confirmation dialog, the return value can be one of the following:

```
OK_OPTION  
CANCEL_OPTION  
YES_OPTION  
NO_OPTION  
CLOSED_OPTION
```

This all sounds like a bewildering set of choices, but in practice it is simple. Follow these steps:

1. Choose the dialog type (message, confirmation, option, or input).
2. Choose the icon (error, information, warning, question, none, or custom).
3. Choose the message (string, icon, custom component, or a stack of them).
4. For a confirmation dialog, choose the option type (default, Yes/No, Yes/No/Cancel, or OK/Cancel).

5. For an option dialog, choose the options (strings, icons, or custom components) and the default option.
6. For an input dialog, choose between a text field and a combo box.
7. Locate the appropriate method to call in the JOptionPane API.

For example, suppose you want to show the dialog in Figure 11.30. The dialog shows a message and asks the user to confirm or cancel. Thus, it is a confirmation dialog. The icon is a question icon. The message is a string. The option type is OK\_CANCEL\_OPTION. Here is the call you would make:

```
int selection = JOptionPane.showConfirmDialog(parent,  
    "Message", "Title",  
    JOptionPane.OK_CANCEL_OPTION,  
    JOptionPane.QUESTION_MESSAGE);  
if (selection == JOptionPane.OK_OPTION) . . .
```



**TIP:** The message string can contain newline ('\n') characters. Such a string is displayed in multiple lines.

---

#### javax.swing.JOptionPane 1.2

- static void showMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType, Icon icon)
- static void showMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType)
- static void showMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message)
- static void showInternalMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType, Icon icon)
- static void showInternalMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType)
- static void showInternalMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message)

shows a message dialog or an internal message dialog. (An internal dialog is rendered entirely within its owner's frame.) The parent component can be null. The message to show on the dialog can be a string, icon, component, or an array of them. The messageType parameter is one of ERROR\_MESSAGE, INFORMATION\_MESSAGE, WARNING\_MESSAGE, QUESTION\_MESSAGE, PLAIN\_MESSAGE.

(Continues)

**javax.swing.JOptionPane 1.2 (Continued)**

- static int showConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType, Icon icon)
- static int showConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType)
- static int showConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType)
- static int showConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message)
- static int showInternalConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType, Icon icon)
- static int showInternalConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType)
- static int showInternalConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType)
- static int showInternalConfirmDialog(Component parent, Object message)

shows a confirmation dialog or an internal confirmation dialog. (An internal dialog is rendered entirely within its owner's frame.) Returns the option selected by the user (one of OK\_OPTION, CANCEL\_OPTION, YES\_OPTION, NO\_OPTION), or CLOSED\_OPTION if the user closed the dialog. The parent component can be null. The message to show on the dialog can be a string, icon, component, or an array of them. The messageType parameter is one of ERROR\_MESSAGE, INFORMATION\_MESSAGE, WARNING\_MESSAGE, QUESTION\_MESSAGE, PLAIN\_MESSAGE, and optionType is one of DEFAULT\_OPTION, YES\_NO\_OPTION, YES\_NO\_CANCEL\_OPTION, OK\_CANCEL\_OPTION.

- static int showOptionDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType, Icon icon, Object[] options, Object default)
- static int showInternalOptionDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int optionType, int messageType, Icon icon, Object[] options, Object default)

shows an option dialog or an internal option dialog. (An internal dialog is rendered entirely within its owner's frame.) Returns the index of the option selected by the user, or CLOSED\_OPTION if the user canceled the dialog. The parent component can be null. The message to show on the dialog can be a string, icon, component, or an array of them. The messageType parameter is one of ERROR\_MESSAGE, INFORMATION\_MESSAGE, WARNING\_MESSAGE, QUESTION\_MESSAGE, PLAIN\_MESSAGE, and optionType is one of DEFAULT\_OPTION, YES\_NO\_OPTION, YES\_NO\_CANCEL\_OPTION, OK\_CANCEL\_OPTION. The options parameter is an array of strings, icons, or components.

(Continues)

**javax.swing.JOptionPane 1.2 (Continued)**

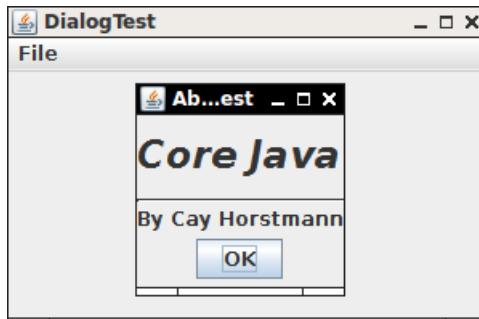
- static Object showInputDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType, Icon icon, Object[] values, Object default)
- static String showInputDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType)
- static String showInputDialog(Component parent, Object message)
- static String showInputDialog(Object message)
- static String showInputDialog(Component parent, Object message, Object default) 1.4
- static String showInputDialog(Object message, Object default) 1.4
- static Object showInternalInputDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType, Icon icon, Object[] values, Object default)
- static String showInternalInputDialog(Component parent, Object message, String title, int messageType)
- static String showInternalInputDialog(Component parent, Object message)

shows an input dialog or an internal input dialog. (An internal dialog is rendered entirely within its owner's frame.) Returns the input string typed by the user, or null if the user canceled the dialog. The parent component can be null. The message to show on the dialog can be a string, icon, component, or an array of them. The messageType parameter is one of ERROR\_MESSAGE, INFORMATION\_MESSAGE, WARNING\_MESSAGE, QUESTION\_MESSAGE, PLAIN\_MESSAGE.

### 11.7.2 Creating Dialogs

In the last section, you saw how to use the JOptionPane class to show a simple dialog. In this section, you will see how to create such a dialog by hand.

Figure 11.31 shows a typical modal dialog box—a program information box that is displayed when the user clicks the About button.



**Figure 11.31** An About dialog box

To implement a dialog box, you extend the `JDialog` class. This is essentially the same process as extending `JFrame` for the main window for an application. More precisely:

1. In the constructor of your dialog box, call the constructor of the superclass `JDialog`.
2. Add the user interface components of the dialog box.
3. Add the event handlers.
4. Set the size for the dialog box.

When you call the superclass constructor, you will need to supply the *owner frame*, the title of the dialog, and the *modality*.

The owner frame controls where the dialog is displayed. You can supply `null` as the owner; then, the dialog is owned by a hidden frame.

The modality specifies which other windows of your application are blocked while the dialog is displayed. A modeless dialog does not block other windows. A modal dialog blocks all other windows of the application (except for the children of the dialog). You would use a modeless dialog for a toolbox that the user can always access. On the other hand, you would use a modal dialog if you want to force the user to supply required information before continuing.

Here's the code for a dialog box:

```
public AboutDialog extends JDialog
{
    public AboutDialog(JFrame owner)
    {
        super(owner, "About DialogTest", true);
        add(new JLabel(
            "<html><h1><i>Core Java</i></h1><hr>By Cay Horstmann</html>"),
            BorderLayout.CENTER);

        var panel = new JPanel();
        var ok = new JButton("OK");

        ok.addActionListener(event -> setVisible(false));
        panel.add(ok);
        add(panel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
        setSize(250, 150);
    }
}
```

As you can see, the constructor adds user interface elements—in this case, labels and a button. It adds a handler to the button and sets the size of the dialog.

To display the dialog box, create a new dialog object and make it visible:

```
var dialog = new AboutDialog(this);
dialog.setVisible(true);
```

Actually, in the sample code below, we create the dialog box only once, and we can reuse it whenever the user clicks the About button.

```
if (dialog == null) // first time
    dialog = new AboutDialog(this);
dialog.setVisible(true);
```

When the user clicks the OK button, the dialog box should close. This is handled in the event handler of the OK button:

```
ok.addActionListener(event -> setVisible(false));
```

When the user closes the dialog by clicking the Close button, the dialog is also hidden. Just as with a JFrame, you can override this behavior with the setDefaultCloseOperation method.

Listing 11.11 is the code for the frame class of the test program. Listing 11.12 shows the dialog class.

---

#### Listing 11.11 dialog/DialogFrame.java

---

```
1 package dialog;
2
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4 import javax.swing.JMenu;
5 import javax.swing.JMenuBar;
6 import javax.swing.JMenuItem;
7
8 /**
9  * A frame with a menu whose File->About action shows a dialog.
10 */
11 public class DialogFrame extends JFrame
12 {
13     private static final int DEFAULT_WIDTH = 300;
14     private static final int DEFAULT_HEIGHT = 200;
15     private AboutDialog dialog;
16
17     public DialogFrame()
18     {
19         setSize(DEFAULT_WIDTH, DEFAULT_HEIGHT);
20
21         // construct a File menu
22
23         var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
```

```
24     setJMenuBar(menuBar);
25     var fileMenu = new JMenu("File");
26     menuBar.add(fileMenu);
27
28     // add About and Exit menu items
29
30     // the About item shows the About dialog
31
32     var aboutItem = new JMenuItem("About");
33     aboutItem.addActionListener(event -> {
34         if (dialog == null) // first time
35             dialog = new AboutDialog(DialogFrame.this);
36         dialog.setVisible(true); // pop up dialog
37     });
38     fileMenu.add(aboutItem);
39
40     // the Exit item exits the program
41
42     var exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
43     exitItem.addActionListener(event -> System.exit(0));
44     fileMenu.add(exitItem);
45 }
46 }
```

---

**Listing 11.12** dialog/AboutDialog.java

---

```
1 package dialog;
2
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4
5 import javax.swing.JButton;
6 import javax.swing.JDialog;
7 import javax.swing.JFrame;
8 import javax.swing.JLabel;
9 import javax.swing.JPanel;
10
11 /**
12  * A sample modal dialog that displays a message and waits for the user to click
13  * the OK button.
14 */
15 public class AboutDialog extends JDialog
16 {
17     public AboutDialog(JFrame owner)
18     {
19         super(owner, "About DialogTest", true);
20
21         // add HTML label to center
22     }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.12 (Continued)**

```
23     add(            
24         new JLabel(        
25             "<html><h1><i>Core Java</i></h1><hr>By Cay Horstmann</html>"),  
26             BorderLayout.CENTER);  
27  
28     // OK button closes the dialog  
29  
30     var ok = new JButton("OK");  
31     ok.addActionListener(event -> setVisible(false));  
32  
33     // add OK button to southern border  
34  
35     var panel = new JPanel();  
36     panel.add(ok);  
37     add(panel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);  
38  
39     pack();  
40 }  
41 }
```

---

**javax.swing.JDialog 1.2**

- `public JDialog(Frame parent, String title, boolean modal)`  
constructs a dialog. The dialog is not visible until it is explicitly shown.

### 11.7.3 Data Exchange

The most common reason to put up a dialog box is to get information from the user. You have already seen how easy it is to make a dialog box object: Give it initial data and call `setVisible(true)` to display the dialog box on the screen. Now let's see how to transfer data in and out of a dialog box.

Consider the dialog box in Figure 11.32 that could be used to obtain a user name and a password to connect to some online service.

Your dialog box should provide methods to set default data. For example, the `PasswordChooser` class of the example program has a method, `setUser`, to place default values into the next fields:

```
public void setUser(User u)  
{  
    username.setText(u.getName());  
}
```



**Figure 11.32** Password dialog box

Once you set the defaults (if desired), show the dialog by calling `setVisible(true)`. The dialog is now displayed.

The user then fills in the information and clicks the OK or Cancel button. The event handlers for both buttons call `setVisible(false)`, which terminates the call to `setVisible(true)`. Alternatively, the user may close the dialog. If you did not install a window listener for the dialog, the default window closing operation applies: The dialog becomes invisible, which also terminates the call to `setVisible(true)`.

The important issue is that the call to `setVisible(true)` blocks until the user has dismissed the dialog. This makes it easy to implement modal dialogs.

You want to know whether the user has accepted or canceled the dialog. Our sample code sets the `ok` flag to `false` before showing the dialog. Only the event handler for the OK button sets the `ok` flag to `true`; that's how you retrieve the user input from the dialog.



**NOTE:** Transferring data out of a modeless dialog is not as simple. When a modeless dialog is displayed, the call to `setVisible(true)` does not block and the program continues running while the dialog is displayed. If the user selects items on a modeless dialog and then clicks OK, the dialog needs to send an event to some listener in the program.

The example program contains another useful improvement. When you construct a `JDialog` object, you need to specify the owner frame. However, quite often you want to show the same dialog with different owner frames. It is better to pick the owner frame *when you are ready to show the dialog*, not when you construct the `PasswordChooser` object.

The trick is to have the PasswordChooser extend JPanel instead of JDialog. Build a JDialog object on the fly in the showDialog method:

```
public boolean showDialog(Frame owner, String title)
{
    ok = false;

    if (dialog == null || dialog.getOwner() != owner)
    {
        dialog = new JDialog(owner, true);
        dialog.add(this);
        dialog.pack();
    }

    dialog.setTitle(title);
    dialog.setVisible(true);
    return ok;
}
```

Note that it is safe to have owner equal to null.

You can do even better. Sometimes, the owner frame isn't readily available. It is easy enough to compute it from any parent component, like this:

```
Frame owner;
if (parent instanceof Frame)
    owner = (Frame) parent;
else
    owner = (Frame) SwingUtilities.getAncestorOfClass(Frame.class, parent);
```

We use this enhancement in our sample program. The JOptionPane class also uses this mechanism.

Many dialogs have a *default button*, which is automatically selected if the user presses a trigger key (Enter in most look-and-feel implementations). The default button is specially marked, often with a thick outline.

Set the default button in the *root pane* of the dialog:

```
dialog.getRootPane().setDefaultButton(okButton);
```

If you follow our suggestion of laying out the dialog in a panel, then you must be careful to set the default button only after you wrapped the panel into a dialog. The panel dialog itself has no root pane.

Listing 11.13 is for the frame class of the program that illustrates the data flow into and out of a dialog box. Listing 11.14 shows the dialog class.

**Listing 11.13** dataExchange/DataExchangeFrame.java

```
1 package dataExchange;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.awt.event.*;
5 import javax.swing.*;
6
7 /**
8  * A frame with a menu whose File->Connect action shows a password dialog.
9 */
10 public class DataExchangeFrame extends JFrame
11 {
12     public static final int TEXT_ROWS = 20;
13     public static final int TEXT_COLUMNS = 40;
14     private PasswordChooser dialog = null;
15     private JTextArea textArea;
16
17     public DataExchangeFrame()
18     {
19         // construct a File menu
20
21         var mbar = new JMenuBar();
22         setJMenuBar(mbar);
23         var fileMenu = new JMenu("File");
24         mbar.add(fileMenu);
25
26         // add Connect and Exit menu items
27
28         var connectItem = new JMenuItem("Connect");
29         connectItem.addActionListener(new ConnectAction());
30         fileMenu.add(connectItem);
31
32         // the Exit item exits the program
33
34         var exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
35         exitItem.addActionListener(event -> System.exit(0));
36         fileMenu.add(exitItem);
37
38         textArea = new JTextArea(TEXT_ROWS, TEXT_COLUMNS);
39         add(new JScrollPane(textArea), BorderLayout.CENTER);
40         pack();
41     }
42
43 /**
44  * The Connect action pops up the password dialog.
45 */
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 11.13 (Continued)**

```
46     private class ConnectAction implements ActionListener
47     {
48         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
49         {
50             // if first time, construct dialog
51
52             if (dialog == null) dialog = new PasswordChooser();
53
54             // set default values
55             dialog.setUser(new User("yourname", null));
56
57             // pop up dialog
58             if (dialog.showDialog(DataExchangeFrame.this, "Connect"))
59             {
60                 // if accepted, retrieve user input
61                 User u = dialog.getUser();
62                 textArea.append("user name = " + u.getName() + ", password = "
63                             + (new String(u.getPassword())) + "\n");
64             }
65         }
66     }
67 }
```

---

**Listing 11.14** `dataExchange/PasswordChooser.java`

```
1 package dataExchange;
2
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4 import java.awt.Component;
5 import java.awt.Frame;
6 import java.awt.GridLayout;
7
8 import javax.swing.JButton;
9 import javax.swing.JDialog;
10 import javax.swing.JLabel;
11 import javax.swing.JPanel;
12 import javax.swing.JPasswordField;
13 import javax.swing.JTextField;
14 import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;
15
16 /**
17  * A password chooser that is shown inside a dialog.
18  */
19 public class PasswordChooser extends JPanel
20 {
```

```
21  private JTextField username;
22  private JPasswordField password;
23  private JButton okButton;
24  private boolean ok;
25  private JDialog dialog;
26
27  public PasswordChooser()
28  {
29      setLayout(new BorderLayout());
30
31      // construct a panel with user name and password fields
32
33      var panel = new JPanel();
34      panel.setLayout(new GridLayout(2, 2));
35      panel.add(new JLabel("User name:"));
36      panel.add(username = new JTextField(""));
37      panel.add(new JLabel("Password:"));
38      panel.add(password = new JPasswordField(""));
39      add(panel, BorderLayout.CENTER);
40
41      // create Ok and Cancel buttons that terminate the dialog
42
43      okButton = new JButton("Ok");
44      okButton.addActionListener(event -> {
45          ok = true;
46          dialog.setVisible(false);
47      });
48
49      var cancelButton = new JButton("Cancel");
50      cancelButton.addActionListener(event -> dialog.setVisible(false));
51
52      // add buttons to southern border
53
54      var buttonPanel = new JPanel();
55      buttonPanel.add(okButton);
56      buttonPanel.add(cancelButton);
57      add(buttonPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
58  }
59
60 /**
61 * Sets the dialog defaults.
62 * @param u the default user information
63 */
64 public void setUser(User u)
65 {
66     username.setText(u.getName());
67 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 11.14 (Continued)**

```
69  /**
70  * Gets the dialog entries.
71  * @return a User object whose state represents the dialog entries
72  */
73  public User getUser()
74  {
75      return new User(username.getText(), password.getPassword());
76  }
77
78 /**
79 * Show the chooser panel in a dialog.
80 * @param parent a component in the owner frame or null
81 * @param title the dialog window title
82 */
83  public boolean showDialog(Component parent, String title)
84  {
85      ok = false;
86
87      // locate the owner frame
88
89      Frame owner = null;
90      if (parent instanceof Frame)
91          owner = (Frame) parent;
92      else
93          owner = (Frame) SwingUtilities.getAncestorOfClass(Frame.class, parent);
94
95      // if first time, or if owner has changed, make new dialog
96
97      if (dialog == null || dialog.getOwner() != owner)
98      {
99          dialog = new JDialog(owner, true);
100         dialog.add(this);
101         dialog.getRootPane().setDefaultButton(okButton);
102         dialog.pack();
103     }
104
105     // set title and show dialog
106
107     dialog.setTitle(title);
108     dialog.setVisible(true);
109     return ok;
110 }
111 }
```

---

**javax.swing.SwingUtilities 1.2**

- `Container getAncestorOfClass(Class c, Component comp)`

returns the innermost parent container of the given component that belongs to the given class or one of its subclasses.

**javax.swing.JComponent 1.2**

- `JRootPane getRootPane()`

gets the root pane enclosing this component, or `null` if this component does not have an ancestor with a root pane.

**javax.swing.JRootPane 1.2**

- `void setDefaultButton(JButton button)`

sets the default button for this root pane. To deactivate the default button, call this method with a `null` parameter.

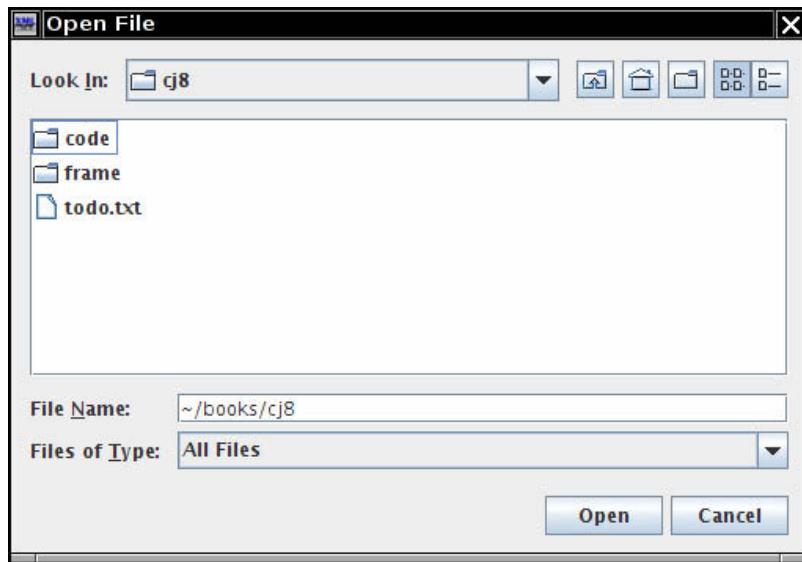
**javax.swing.JButton 1.2**

- `boolean isDefaultButton()`

returns true if this button is the default button of its root pane.

### 11.7.4 File Dialogs

In an application, you often want to be able to open and save files. A good file dialog box that shows files and directories and lets the user navigate the file system is hard to write, and you definitely don't want to reinvent that wheel. Fortunately, Swing provides a `JFileChooser` class that allows you to display a file dialog box similar to the one that most native applications use. `JFileChooser` dialogs are always modal. Note that the `JFileChooser` class is not a subclass of `JDialog`. Instead of calling `setVisible(true)`, call `showOpenDialog` to display a dialog for opening a file, or call `showSaveDialog` to display a dialog for saving a file. The button for accepting a file is then automatically labeled Open or Save. You can also supply your own button label with the `showDialog` method. Figure 11.33 shows an example of the file chooser dialog box.



**Figure 11.33** A file chooser dialog box

Here are the steps to put up a file dialog box and recover what the user chooses from the box:

1. Make a `JFileChooser` object. Unlike the constructor for the `JDialog` class, you do not supply the parent component. This allows you to reuse a file chooser dialog with multiple frames.

For example:

```
var chooser = new JFileChooser();
```



**TIP:** Reusing a file chooser object is a good idea because the `JFileChooser` constructor can be quite slow, especially on Windows when the user has many mapped network drives.

- 
2. Set the directory by calling the `setCurrentDirectory` method.

For example, to use the current working directory

```
chooser.setCurrentDirectory(new File("."));
```

you need to supply a `File` object. `File` objects are explained in detail in Chapter 2 of Volume II. All you need to know for now is that the constructor `File(String filename)` turns a file or directory name into a `File` object.

3. If you have a default file name that you expect the user to choose, supply it with the `setSelectedFile` method:

```
chooser.setSelectedFile(new File(filename));
```

4. To enable the user to select multiple files in the dialog, call the `setMultiSelectionEnabled` method. This is, of course, entirely optional and not all that common.

```
chooser.setMultiSelectionEnabled(true);
```

5. If you want to restrict the display of files in the dialog to those of a particular type (for example, all files with extension `.gif`), you need to set a *file filter*. We discuss file filters later in this section.

6. By default, a user can select only files with a file chooser. If you want the user to select directories, use the `setFileSelectionMode` method. Call it with `JFileChooser.FILES_ONLY` (the default), `JFileChooser.DIRECTORIES_ONLY`, or `JFileChooser.FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES`.

7. Show the dialog box by calling the `showOpenDialog` or `showSaveDialog` method. You must supply the parent component in these calls:

```
int result = chooser.showOpenDialog(parent);
```

or

```
int result = chooser.showSaveDialog(parent);
```

The only difference between these calls is the label of the “approve button”—the button that the user clicks to finish the file selection. You can also call the `showDialog` method and pass an explicit text for the approve button:

```
int result = chooser.showDialog(parent, "Select");
```

These calls return only when the user has approved, canceled, or dismissed the file dialog. The return value is `JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION`, `JFileChooser.CANCEL_OPTION`, or `JFileChooser.ERROR_OPTION`.

8. Get the selected file or files with the `getSelectedFile()` or `getSelectedFiles()` method. These methods return either a single `File` object or an array of `File` objects. If you just need the name of the file object, call its `getPath` method. For example:

```
String filename = chooser.getSelectedFile().getPath();
```

For the most part, these steps are simple. The major difficulty with using a file dialog is to specify a subset of files from which the user should choose. For example, suppose the user should choose a GIF image file. Then, the file chooser should only display files with the extension `.gif`. It should also give

the user some kind of feedback that the displayed files are of a particular category, such as “GIF Images.” But the situation can be more complex. If the user should choose a JPEG image file, the extension can be either .jpg or .jpeg. Instead of a way to codify these complexities, the designers of the file chooser provided a more elegant mechanism: to restrict the displayed files, supply an object that extends the abstract class `javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter`. The file chooser passes each file to the file filter and displays only those files that the filter accepts.

At the time of this writing, two such subclasses are supplied: the default filter that accepts all files, and a filter that accepts all files with a given extension. However, it is easy to write ad-hoc file filters. Simply implement the two abstract methods of the `FileFilter` superclass:

```
public boolean accept(File f);
public String getDescription();
```

The first method tests whether a file should be accepted. The second method returns a description of the file type that can be displayed in the file chooser dialog.



**NOTE:** An unrelated `FileFilter` interface in the `java.io` package has a single method, `boolean accept(File f)`. It is used in the `listFiles` method of the `File` class to list files in a directory. We do not know why the designers of Swing didn't extend this interface—perhaps the Java class library has now become so complex that even the programmers at Sun were no longer aware of all the standard classes and interfaces.

You will need to resolve the name conflict between these two identically named types if you import both the `java.io` and the `javax.swing.filechooser` packages. The simplest remedy is to import `javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter`, not `javax.swing.filechooser.*`.

---

Once you have a file filter object, use the `setFileFilter` method of the `JFileChooser` class to install it into the file chooser object:

```
chooser.setFileFilter(new FileNameExtensionFilter("Image files", "gif", "jpg"));
```

You can install multiple filters to the file chooser by calling

```
chooser.addChoosableFileFilter(filter1);
chooser.addChoosableFileFilter(filter2);
. . .
```

The user selects a filter from the combo box at the bottom of the file dialog. By default, the “All files” filter is always present in the combo box. This is

a good idea—just in case a user of your program needs to select a file with a nonstandard extension. However, if you want to suppress the “All files” filter, call

```
chooser.setAcceptAllFileFilterUsed(false)
```



**CAUTION:** If you reuse a single file chooser for loading and saving different file types, call

```
chooser.resetChoosableFilters()
```

to clear any old file filters before adding new ones.

Finally, you can customize the file chooser by providing special icons and file descriptions for each file that the file chooser displays. Do this by supplying an object of a class extending the `FileView` class in the `javax.swing.filechooser` package. This is definitely an advanced technique. Normally, you don’t need to supply a file view—the pluggable look-and-feel supplies one for you. But if you want to show different icons for special file types, you can install your own file view. You need to extend the `FileView` class and implement five methods:

```
Icon getIcon(File f)
String getName(File f)
String getDescription(File f)
String getTypeDescription(File f)
Boolean isTraversable(File f)
```

Then, use the `setFileView` method to install your file view into the file chooser.

The file chooser calls your methods for each file or directory that it wants to display. If your method returns `null` for the icon, name, or description, the file chooser then consults the default file view of the look-and-feel. That is good, because it means you need to deal only with the file types for which you want to do something different.

The file chooser calls the `isTraversable` method to decide whether to open a directory when a user clicks on it. Note that this method returns a `Boolean` object, not a `boolean` value! This seems weird, but it is actually convenient—if you aren’t interested in deviating from the default file view, just return `null`. The file chooser will then consult the default file view. In other words, the method returns a `Boolean` to let you choose among three options: `true` (`Boolean.TRUE`), `false` (`Boolean.FALSE`), or `don’t care` (`null`).

The example program contains a simple file view class. That class shows a particular icon whenever a file matches a file filter. We use it to display a palette icon for all image files.

```
class FileIconView extends FileView
{
    private FileFilter filter;
    private Icon icon;

    public FileIconView(FileFilter aFilter, Icon anIcon)
    {
        filter = aFilter;
        icon = anIcon;
    }

    public Icon getIcon(File f)
    {
        if (!f.isDirectory() && filter.accept(f))
            return icon;
        else return null;
    }
}
```

Install this file view into your file chooser with the `setFileView` method:

```
chooser.setFileView(new FileIconView(filter,
    new ImageIcon("palette.gif")));
```

The file chooser will then show the palette icon next to all files that pass the filter and use the default file view to show all other files. Naturally, we use the same filter that we set in the file chooser.

Finally, you can customize a file dialog by adding an *accessory* component. For example, Figure 11.34 shows a preview accessory next to the file list. This accessory displays a thumbnail view of the currently selected file.

An accessory can be any Swing component. In our case, we extend the `JLabel` class and set its icon to a scaled copy of the graphics image:

```
class ImagePreviewer extends JLabel
{
    public ImagePreviewer(JFileChooser chooser)
    {
        setPreferredSize(new Dimension(100, 100));
        setBorder(BorderFactory.createEtchedBorder());
    }

    public void loadImage(File f)
    {
```

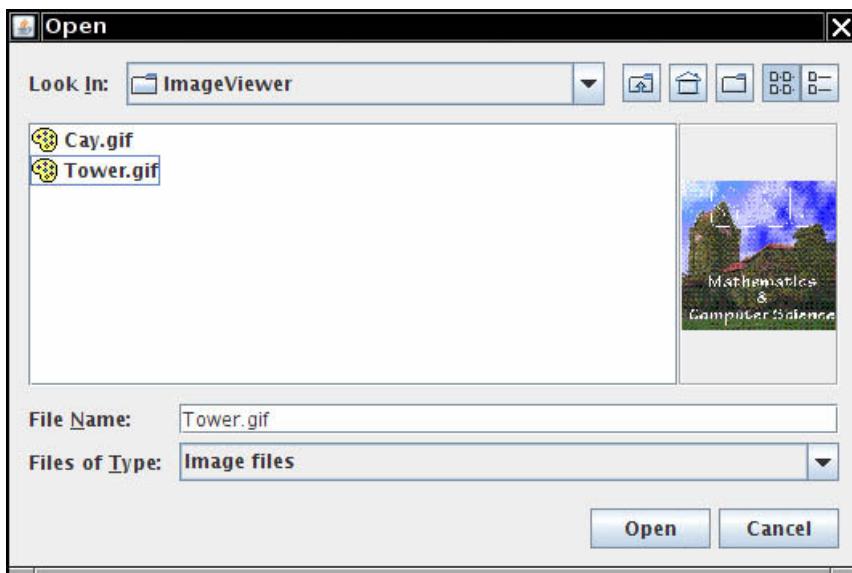


Figure 11.34 A file dialog with a preview accessory

```
var icon = new ImageIcon(f.getPath());
if(icon.getIconWidth() > getWidth())
    icon = new ImageIcon(icon.getImage().getScaledInstance(
        getWidth(), -1, Image.SCALE_DEFAULT));
setIcon(icon);
repaint();
}
}
```

There is just one challenge. We want to update the preview image whenever the user selects a different file. The file chooser uses the “JavaBeans” mechanism of notifying interested listeners whenever one of its properties changes. The selected file is a property that you can monitor by installing a `PropertyChangeListener`. Here is the code that you need to trap the notifications:

```
chooser.addPropertyChangeListener(event -> {
    if (event.getPropertyName() == JFileChooser.SELECTED_FILE_CHANGED_PROPERTY)
    {
        var newFile = (File) event.getNewValue();
        // update the accessory
        ...
    });
});
```

**javax.swing.JFileChooser 1.2**

- `JFileChooser()`  
creates a file chooser dialog box that can be used for multiple frames.
- `void setCurrentDirectory(File dir)`  
sets the initial directory for the file dialog box.
- `void setSelectedFile(File file)`
- `void setSelectedFiles(File[] file)`  
sets the default file choice for the file dialog box.
- `void setMultiSelectionEnabled(boolean b)`  
sets or clears the multiple selection mode.
- `void setFileSelectionMode(int mode)`  
lets the user select files only (the default), directories only, or both files and directories. The `mode` parameter is one of `JFileChooser.FILES_ONLY`, `JFileChooser.DIRECTORIES_ONLY`, and `JFileChooser.FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES`.
- `int showOpenDialog(Component parent)`
- `int showSaveDialog(Component parent)`
- `int showDialog(Component parent, String approveButtonText)`  
shows a dialog in which the approve button is labeled “Open,” “Save,” or with the `approveButtonText` string. Returns `APPROVE_OPTION`, `CANCEL_OPTION` (if the user selected the cancel button or dismissed the dialog), or `ERROR_OPTION` (if an error occurred).
- `File getSelectedFile()`
- `File[] getSelectedFiles()`  
gets the file or files that the user selected (or returns `null` if the user didn’t select any file).
- `void setFileFilter(FileFilter filter)`  
sets the file mask for the file dialog box. All files for which `filter.accept` returns true will be displayed. Also, adds the filter to the list of choosable filters.
- `void addChoosableFileFilter(FileFilter filter)`  
adds a file filter to the list of choosable filters.
- `void setAcceptAllFileFilterUsed(boolean b)`  
includes or suppresses an “All files” filter in the filter combo box.

*(Continues)*

**javax.swing.JFileChooser 1.2 (Continued)**

- `void resetChoosableFileFilters()`  
clears the list of choosable filters. Only the “All files” filter remains unless it is explicitly suppressed.
- `void setFileView(FileView view)`  
sets a file view to provide information about the files that the file chooser displays.
- `void setAccessory(JComponent component)`  
sets an accessory component.

**javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter 1.2**

- `boolean accept(File f)`  
returns true if the file chooser should display this file.
- `String getDescription()`  
returns a description of this file filter—for example, “Image files (\*.gif, \*.jpeg)”.

**javax.swing.filechooser.FileNameExtensionFilter 6**

- `FileNameExtensionFilter(String description, String... extensions)`  
constructs a file filter with the given description that accepts all directories and all files whose names end in a period followed by one of the given extension strings.

**javax.swing.filechooser.FileView 1.2**

- `String getName(File f)`  
returns the name of the file `f`, or `null`. Normally, this method simply returns `f.getName()`.
- `String getDescription(File f)`  
returns a human-readable description of the file `f`, or `null`. For example, if `f` is an HTML document, this method might return its title.

*(Continues)*

***javax.swing.filechooser.FileView 1.2 (Continued)***

- `String getTypeDescription(File f)`  
returns a human-readable description of the type of the file `f`, or `null`. For example, if `f` is an HTML document, this method might return a string "Hypertext document".
- `Icon getIcon(File f)`  
returns an icon for the file `f`, or `null`. For example, if `f` is a JPEG file, this method might return a thumbnail icon.
- `Boolean isTraversable(File f)`  
returns `Boolean.TRUE` if `f` is a directory that the user can open. This method might return `Boolean.FALSE` if a directory is conceptually a compound document. Like all `FileView` methods, this method can return `null` to signify that the file chooser should consult the default view instead.

This ends our discussion of Swing programming. Turn to Volume II for more advanced Swing components and sophisticated graphics techniques.

## CHAPTER

# 12

# Concurrency

### In this chapter

- 12.1 What Are Threads?, page 734
- 12.2 Thread States, page 739
- 12.3 Thread Properties, page 743
- 12.4 Synchronization, page 750
- 12.5 Thread-Safe Collections, page 781
- 12.6 Tasks and Thread Pools, page 800
- 12.7 Asynchronous Computations, page 814
- 12.8 Processes, page 831

You are probably familiar with *multitasking*—your operating system’s ability to have more than one program working at what seems like the same time. For example, you can print while editing or downloading your email. Nowadays, you are likely to have a computer with more than one CPU, but the number of concurrently executing processes is not limited by the number of CPUs. The operating system assigns CPU time slices to each process, giving the impression of parallel activity.

Multithreaded programs extend the idea of multitasking by taking it one level lower: Individual programs will appear to do multiple tasks at the same time. Each task is executed in a *thread*, which is short for thread of control. Programs that can run more than one thread at once are said to be *multithreaded*.

So, what is the difference between multiple *processes* and multiple *threads*? The essential difference is that while each process has a complete set of its own variables, threads share the same data. This sounds somewhat risky, and indeed it can be, as you will see later in this chapter. However, shared variables make communication between threads more efficient and easier to program than interprocess communication. Moreover, on some operating systems, threads are more “lightweight” than processes—it takes less overhead to create and destroy individual threads than it does to launch new processes.

Multithreading is extremely useful in practice. For example, a browser should be able to simultaneously download multiple images. A web server needs to be able to serve concurrent requests. Graphical user interface (GUI) programs have a separate thread for gathering user interface events from the host operating environment. This chapter shows you how to add multithreading capability to your Java applications.

Fair warning: Concurrent programming can get very complex. In this chapter, we cover all the tools that an application programmer is likely to need. However, for more intricate system-level programming, we suggest that you turn to a more advanced reference, such as *Java Concurrency in Practice* by Brian Goetz et al. (Addison-Wesley Professional, 2006).

## 12.1 What Are Threads?

Let us start by looking at a simple program that uses two threads. This program moves money between bank accounts. We make use of a `Bank` class that stores the balances of a given number of accounts. The `transfer` method transfers an amount from one account to another. See Listing 12.2 for the implementation.

In the first thread, we will move money from account 0 to account 1. The second thread moves money from account 2 to account 3.

Here is a simple procedure for running a task in a separate thread:

1. Place the code for the task into the `run` method of a class that implements the `Runnable` interface. That interface is very simple, with a single method:

```
public interface Runnable
{
    void run();
}
```

Since `Runnable` is a functional interface, you can make an instance with a lambda expression:

```
Runnable r = () -> { task code };
```

2. Construct a `Thread` object from the `Runnable`:

```
var t = new Thread(r);
```

3. Start the thread:

```
t.start();
```

To make a separate thread for transferring money, we only need to place the code for the transfer inside the `run` method of a `Runnable`, and then start a thread:

```
Runnable r = () -> {
    try
    {
        for (int i = 0; i < STEPS; i++)
        {
            double amount = MAX_AMOUNT * Math.random();
            bank.transfer(0, 1, amount);
            Thread.sleep((int) (DELAY * Math.random()));
        }
    }
    catch (InterruptedException e)
    {
    }
};

var t = new Thread(r);
t.start();
```

For a given number of steps, this thread transfers a random amount, and then sleeps for a random delay.

We need to catch an `InterruptedException` that the `sleep` method threatens to throw. We will discuss this exception in Section 12.3.1, “Interrupting Threads,” on p. 743. Typically, interruption is used to request that a thread terminates. Accordingly, our `run` method exits when an `InterruptedException` occurs.

Our program starts a second thread as well that moves money from account 2 to account 3. When you run this program, you get a printout like this:

```
Thread[Thread-1,5,main] 606.77 from 2 to 3 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-0,5,main] 98.99 from 0 to 1 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-1,5,main] 476.78 from 2 to 3 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-0,5,main] 653.64 from 0 to 1 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-1,5,main] 807.14 from 2 to 3 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-0,5,main] 481.49 from 0 to 1 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-0,5,main] 203.73 from 0 to 1 Total Balance: 400000.00
```

```
Thread[Thread-1,5,main]    111.76 from 2 to 3 Total Balance: 400000.00
Thread[Thread-1,5,main]    794.88 from 2 to 3 Total Balance: 400000.00
. . .
```

As you can see, the output of the two threads is interleaved, showing that they run concurrently. In fact, sometimes the output is a little messier when two output lines are interleaved.

That's all there is to it! You now know how to run tasks concurrently. The remainder of this chapter tells you how to control the interaction between threads.

The complete code is shown in Listing 12.1.



**NOTE:** You can also define a thread by forming a subclass of the `Thread` class, like this:

```
class MyThread extends Thread
{
    public void run()
    {
        task code
    }
}
```

Then you construct an object of the subclass and call its `start` method. However, this approach is no longer recommended. You should decouple the *task* that is to be run in parallel from the *mechanism* of running it. If you have many tasks, it is too expensive to create a separate thread for each of them. Instead, you can use a thread pool—see Section 12.6.2, “Executors,” on p. 802.



**CAUTION:** Do not call the `run` method of the `Thread` class or the `Runnable` object. Calling the `run` method directly merely executes the task in the *same* thread—no new thread is started. Instead, call the `Thread.start` method. It creates a new thread that executes the `run` method.

---

### Listing 12.1 threads/ThreadTest.java

---

```
1 package threads;
2
3 /**
4  * @version 1.30 2004-08-01
5  * @author Cay Horstmann
6 */
```

```
7 public class ThreadTest
8 {
9     public static final int DELAY = 10;
10    public static final int STEPS = 100;
11    public static final double MAX_AMOUNT = 1000;
12
13    public static void main(String[] args)
14    {
15        var bank = new Bank(4, 100000);
16        Runnable task1 = () ->
17        {
18            try
19            {
20                for (int i = 0; i < STEPS; i++)
21                {
22                    double amount = MAX_AMOUNT * Math.random();
23                    bank.transfer(0, 1, amount);
24                    Thread.sleep((int) (DELAY * Math.random()));
25                }
26            }
27            catch (InterruptedException e)
28            {
29            }
30        };
31
32        Runnable task2 = () ->
33        {
34            try
35            {
36                for (int i = 0; i < STEPS; i++)
37                {
38                    double amount = MAX_AMOUNT * Math.random();
39                    bank.transfer(2, 3, amount);
40                    Thread.sleep((int) (DELAY * Math.random()));
41                }
42            }
43            catch (InterruptedException e)
44            {
45            }
46        };
47
48        new Thread(task1).start();
49        new Thread(task2).start();
50    }
51 }
```

**Listing 12.2** threads/Bank.java

```
1 package threads;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * A bank with a number of bank accounts.
7  */
8 public class Bank
9 {
10     private final double[] accounts;
11
12     /**
13      * Constructs the bank.
14      * @param n the number of accounts
15      * @param initialBalance the initial balance for each account
16      */
17     public Bank(int n, double initialBalance)
18     {
19         accounts = new double[n];
20         Arrays.fill(accounts, initialBalance);
21     }
22
23     /**
24      * Transfers money from one account to another.
25      * @param from the account to transfer from
26      * @param to the account to transfer to
27      * @param amount the amount to transfer
28      */
29     public void transfer(int from, int to, double amount)
30     {
31         if (accounts[from] < amount) return;
32         System.out.print(Thread.currentThread());
33         accounts[from] -= amount;
34         System.out.printf(" %10.2f from %d to %d", amount, from, to);
35         accounts[to] += amount;
36         System.out.printf(" Total Balance: %10.2f\n", getTotalBalance());
37     }
38
39     /**
40      * Gets the sum of all account balances.
41      * @return the total balance
42      */
43     public double getTotalBalance()
44     {
45         double sum = 0;
46
47         for (double a : accounts)
48             sum += a;
```

```
49         return sum;
50     }
51 }
52 /**
53 * Gets the number of accounts in the bank.
54 * @return the number of accounts
55 */
56 public int size()
57 {
58     return accounts.length;
59 }
60 }
61 }
```

**java.lang.Thread 1.0**

- **Thread(Runnable target)**  
constructs a new thread that calls the `run()` method of the specified target.
- **void start()**  
starts this thread, causing the `run()` method to be called. This method will return immediately. The new thread runs concurrently.
- **void run()**  
calls the `run` method of the associated `Runnable`.
- **static void sleep(long millis)**  
sleeps for the given number of milliseconds.

**java.lang.Runnable 1.0**

- **void run()**  
must be overridden and supplied with instructions for the task that you want to have executed.

## 12.2 Thread States

Threads can be in one of six states:

- New
- Runnable
- Blocked
- Waiting

- Timed waiting
- Terminated

Each of these states is explained in the sections that follow.

To determine the current state of a thread, simply call the `getState` method.

### 12.2.1 New Threads

When you create a thread with the `new` operator—for example, `new Thread(r)`—the thread is not yet running. This means that it is in the *new* state. When a thread is in the new state, the program has not started executing code inside of it. A certain amount of bookkeeping needs to be done before a thread can run.

### 12.2.2 Runnable Threads

Once you invoke the `start` method, the thread is in the *runnable* state. A runnable thread may or may not actually be running. It is up to the operating system to give the thread time to run. (The Java specification does not call this a separate state, though. A running thread is still in the runnable state.)

Once a thread is running, it doesn't necessarily keep running. In fact, it is desirable that running threads occasionally pause so that other threads have a chance to run. The details of thread scheduling depend on the services that the operating system provides. Preemptive scheduling systems give each runnable thread a slice of time to perform its task. When that slice of time is exhausted, the operating system *preempts* the thread and gives another thread an opportunity to work (see Figure 12.2). When selecting the next thread, the operating system takes into account the thread *priorities*—see Section 12.3.5, “Thread Priorities,” on p. 749 for more information.

All modern desktop and server operating systems use preemptive scheduling. However, small devices such as cell phones may use cooperative scheduling. In such a device, a thread loses control only when it calls the `yield` method, or when it is blocked or waiting.

On a machine with multiple processors, each processor can run a thread, and you can have multiple threads run in parallel. Of course, if there are more threads than processors, the scheduler still has to do time slicing.

Always keep in mind that a runnable thread may or may not be running at any given time. (This is why the state is called “runnable” and not “running.”)

**java.lang.Thread 1.0**

- static void yield()

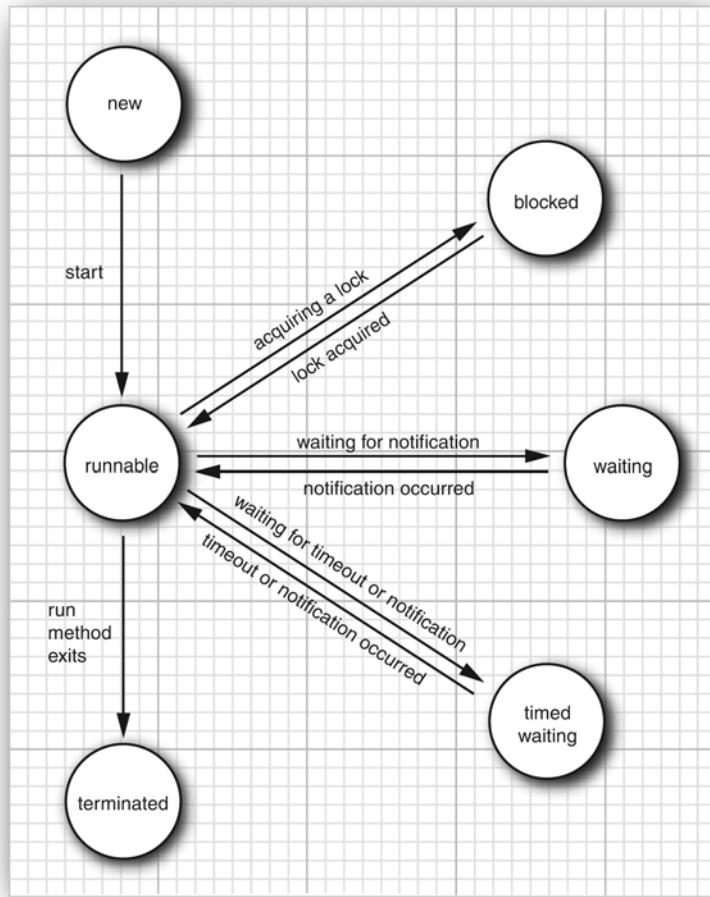
causes the currently executing thread to yield to another thread. Note that this is a static method.

### 12.2.3 Blocked and Waiting Threads

When a thread is blocked or waiting, it is temporarily inactive. It doesn't execute any code and consumes minimal resources. It is up to the thread scheduler to reactivate it. The details depend on how the inactive state was reached.

- When the thread tries to acquire an intrinsic object lock (but not a Lock in the `java.util.concurrent` library) that is currently held by another thread, it becomes *blocked*. (We discuss `java.util.concurrent` locks in Section 12.4.3, "Lock Objects," on p. 755 and intrinsic object locks in Section 12.4.5, "The synchronized Keyword," on p. 764.) The thread becomes unblocked when all other threads have relinquished the lock and the thread scheduler has allowed this thread to hold it.
- When the thread waits for another thread to notify the scheduler of a condition, it enters the *waiting* state. We discuss conditions in Section 12.4.4, "Condition Objects," on p. 758. This happens by calling the `Object.wait` or `Thread.join` method, or by waiting for a `Lock` or `Condition` in the `java.util.concurrent` library. In practice, the difference between the blocked and waiting state is not significant.
- Several methods have a timeout parameter. Calling them causes the thread to enter the *timed waiting* state. This state persists either until the timeout expires or the appropriate notification has been received. Methods with timeout include `Thread.sleep` and the timed versions of `Object.wait`, `Thread.join`, `Lock.tryLock`, and `Condition.await`.

Figure 12.1 shows the states that a thread can have and the possible transitions from one state to another. When a thread is blocked or waiting (or, of course, when it terminates), another thread will be scheduled to run. When a thread is reactivated (for example, because its timeout has expired or it has succeeded in acquiring a lock), the scheduler checks to see if it has a higher priority than the currently running threads. If so, it preempts one of the current threads and picks a new thread to run.



**Figure 12.1** Thread states

#### 12.2.4 Terminated Threads

A thread is terminated for one of two reasons:

- It dies a natural death because the `run` method exits normally.
- It dies abruptly because an uncaught exception terminates the `run` method.

In particular, you can kill a thread by invoking its `stop` method. That method throws a `ThreadDeath` error object that kills the thread. However, the `stop` method is deprecated, and you should never call it in your own code.

**java.lang.Thread 1.0**

- **void join()**  
waits for the specified thread to terminate.
- **void join(long millis)**  
waits for the specified thread to die or for the specified number of milliseconds to pass.
- **Thread.State getState() 5**  
gets the state of this thread: one of NEW, RUNNABLE, BLOCKED, WAITING, TIMED\_WAITING, or TERMINATED.
- **void stop()**  
stops the thread. This method is deprecated.
- **void suspend()**  
suspends this thread's execution. This method is deprecated.
- **void resume()**  
resumes this thread. This method is only valid after suspend() has been invoked.  
This method is deprecated.

## 12.3 Thread Properties

In the following sections, we discuss miscellaneous properties of threads: the interrupted status, daemon threads, handlers for uncaught exceptions, as well as some legacy features that you should not use.

### 12.3.1 Interrupting Threads

A thread terminates when its `run` method returns—by executing a `return` statement, after executing the last statement in the method body, or if an exception occurs that is not caught in the method. In the initial release of Java, there also was a `stop` method that another thread could call to terminate a thread. However, that method is now deprecated. We discuss the reason in Section 12.4.13, “Why the `stop` and `suspend` Methods Are Deprecated,” on p. 779.

Other than with the deprecated `stop` method, there is no way to *force* a thread to terminate. However, the `interrupt` method can be used to *request* termination of a thread.

When the `interrupt` method is called on a thread, the *interrupted status* of the thread is set. This is a boolean flag that is present in every thread. Each thread should occasionally check whether it has been interrupted.

To find out whether the interrupted status was set, first call the static `Thread.currentThread` method to get the current thread, and then call the `isInterrupted` method:

```
while (!Thread.currentThread().isInterrupted() && more work to do)
{
    do more work
}
```

However, if a thread is blocked, it cannot check the interrupted status. This is where the `InterruptedException` comes in. When the `interrupt` method is called on a thread that blocks on a call such as `sleep` or `wait`, the blocking call is terminated by an `InterruptedException`. (There are blocking I/O calls that cannot be interrupted; you should consider interruptible alternatives. See Chapters 2 and 4 of Volume II for details.)

There is no language requirement that a thread which is interrupted should terminate. Interrupting a thread simply grabs its attention. The interrupted thread can decide how to react to the interruption. Some threads are so important that they should handle the exception and continue. But quite commonly, a thread will simply want to interpret an interruption as a request for termination. The `run` method of such a thread has the following form:

```
Runnable r = () -> {
    try
    {
        .
        .
        while (!Thread.currentThread().isInterrupted() && more work to do)
        {
            do more work
        }
    }
    catch(InterruptedException e)
    {
        // thread was interrupted during sleep or wait
    }
    finally
    {
        cleanup, if required
    }
    // exiting the run method terminates the thread
};
```

The `isInterrupted` check is neither necessary nor useful if you call the `sleep` method (or another interruptible method) after every work iteration. If you call the `sleep` method when the interrupted status is set, it doesn't sleep. Instead, it clears the status (`!`) and throws an `InterruptedException`. Therefore, if

your loop calls `sleep`, don't check the interrupted status. Instead, catch the `InterruptedException`, like this:

```
Runnable r = () -> {
    try
    {
        . . .
        while (more work to do)
        {
            do more work
            Thread.sleep(delay);
        }
    }
    catch(InterruptedException e)
    {
        // thread was interrupted during sleep
    }
    finally
    {
        cleanup, if required
    }
    // exiting the run method terminates the thread
};
```



**NOTE:** There are two very similar methods, `interrupted` and `isInterrupted`. The `interrupted` method is a static method that checks whether the *current* thread has been interrupted. Furthermore, calling the `interrupted` method *clears* the interrupted status of the thread. On the other hand, the `isInterrupted` method is an instance method that you can use to check whether any thread has been interrupted. Calling it does not change the interrupted status.

You'll find lots of published code in which the `InterruptedException` is squelched at a low level, like this:

```
void mySubTask()
{
    . . .
    try { sleep(delay); }
    catch (InterruptedException e) {} // don't ignore!
    . . .
}
```

Don't do that! If you can't think of anything good to do in the `catch` clause, you still have two reasonable choices:

- In the `catch` clause, call `Thread.currentThread().interrupt()` to set the interrupted status. Then the caller can test it.

```
void mySubTask()
{
    ...
    try { sleep(delay); }
    catch (InterruptedException e) { Thread.currentThread().interrupt(); }
    ...
}
```

- Or, even better, tag your method with `throws InterruptedException` and drop the try block. Then the caller (or, ultimately, the `run` method) can catch it.

```
void mySubTask() throws InterruptedException
{
    ...
    sleep(delay);
    ...
}
```

#### java.lang.Thread 1.0

- `void interrupt()`  
sends an interrupt request to a thread. The interrupted status of the thread is set to true. If the thread is currently blocked by a call to `sleep`, then an `InterruptedException` is thrown.
- `static boolean interrupted()`  
tests whether the *current* thread (that is, the thread that is executing this instruction) has been interrupted. Note that this is a static method. The call has a side effect—it resets the interrupted status of the current thread to false.
- `boolean isInterrupted()`  
tests whether a thread has been interrupted. Unlike the static `interrupted` method, this call does not change the interrupted status of the thread.
- `static Thread currentThread()`  
returns the `Thread` object representing the currently executing thread.

### 12.3.2 Daemon Threads

You can turn a thread into a *daemon thread* by calling

```
t.setDaemon(true);
```

There is nothing demonic about such a thread. A daemon is simply a thread that has no other role in life than to serve others. Examples are timer threads that send regular “timer ticks” to other threads or threads that clean

up stale cache entries. When only daemon threads remain, the virtual machine exits. There is no point in keeping the program running if all remaining threads are daemons.

#### java.lang.Thread 1.0

- void setDaemon(boolean isDaemon)

marks this thread as a daemon thread or a user thread. This method must be called before the thread is started.

### 12.3.3 Thread Names

By default, threads have catchy names such as `Thread-2`. You can set any name with the `setName` method:

```
var t = new Thread(runnable);
t.setName("Web crawler");
```

That can be useful in thread dumps.

### 12.3.4 Handlers for Uncaught Exceptions

The `run` method of a thread cannot throw any checked exceptions, but it can be terminated by an unchecked exception. In that case, the thread dies.

However, there is no `catch` clause to which the exception can be propagated. Instead, just before the thread dies, the exception is passed to a handler for uncaught exceptions.

The handler must belong to a class that implements the `Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler` interface. That interface has a single method,

```
void uncaughtException(Thread t, Throwable e)
```

You can install a handler into any thread with the `setUncaughtExceptionHandler` method. You can also install a default handler for all threads with the static method `setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler` of the `Thread` class. A replacement handler might use the logging API to send reports of uncaught exceptions into a log file.

If you don't install a default handler, the default handler is `null`. However, if you don't install a handler for an individual thread, the handler is the thread's `ThreadGroup` object.

**NOTE:** A thread group is a collection of threads that can be managed together.

By default, all threads that you create belong to the same thread group, but it is possible to establish other groupings. Since there are now better features for operating on collections of threads, we recommend that you do not use thread groups in your programs.

---

The `ThreadGroup` class implements the `Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler` interface. Its `uncaughtException` method takes the following action:

1. If the thread group has a parent, then the `uncaughtException` method of the parent group is called.
2. Otherwise, if the `Thread.getDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler` method returns a non-null handler, it is called.
3. Otherwise, if the `Throwable` is an instance of `ThreadDeath`, nothing happens.
4. Otherwise, the name of the thread and the stack trace of the `Throwable` are printed on `System.err`.

That is the stack trace that you have undoubtedly seen many times in your programs.

**`java.lang.Thread` 1.0**

- `static void setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler(Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler handler)` 5
- `static Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler getDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler()` 5  
sets or gets the default handler for uncaught exceptions.
- `void setUncaughtExceptionHandler(Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler handler)` 5
- `Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler getUncaughtExceptionHandler()` 5  
sets or gets the handler for uncaught exceptions. If no handler is installed, the thread group object is the handler.

**`java.lang.Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler` 5**

- `void uncaughtException(Thread t, Throwable e)`  
defined to log a custom report when a thread is terminated with an uncaught exception.

**java.lang.ThreadGroup 1.0**

- void uncaughtException(Thread t, Throwable e)

calls this method of the parent thread group if there is a parent, or calls the default handler of the Thread class if there is a default handler, or otherwise prints a stack trace to the standard error stream. (However, if e is a ThreadDeath object, the stack trace is suppressed. ThreadDeath objects are generated by the deprecated stop method.)

### 12.3.5 Thread Priorities

In the Java programming language, every thread has a *priority*. By default, a thread inherits the priority of the thread that constructed it. You can increase or decrease the priority of any thread with the setPriority method. You can set the priority to any value between MIN\_PRIORITY (defined as 1 in the Thread class) and MAX\_PRIORITY (defined as 10). NORM\_PRIORITY is defined as 5.

Whenever the thread scheduler has a chance to pick a new thread, it prefers threads with higher priority. However, thread priorities are *highly system-dependent*. When the virtual machine relies on the thread implementation of the host platform, the Java thread priorities are mapped to the priority levels of the host platform, which may have more or fewer thread priority levels.

For example, Windows has seven priority levels. Some of the Java priorities will map to the same operating system level. In the Oracle JVM for Linux, thread priorities are ignored altogether—all threads have the same priority.

Thread priorities may have been useful in early versions of Java that didn't use operating systems threads. You should not use them nowadays.

**java.lang.Thread 1.0**

- void setPriority(int newPriority)

sets the priority of this thread. The priority must be between Thread.MIN\_PRIORITY and Thread.MAX\_PRIORITY. Use Thread.NORM\_PRIORITY for normal priority.

- static int MIN\_PRIORITY

is the minimum priority that a Thread can have. The minimum priority value is 1.

- static int NORM\_PRIORITY

is the default priority of a Thread. The default priority is 5.

- static int MAX\_PRIORITY

is the maximum priority that a Thread can have. The maximum priority value is 10.

## 12.4 Synchronization

In most practical multithreaded applications, two or more threads need to share access to the same data. What happens if two threads have access to the same object and each calls a method that modifies the state of the object? As you might imagine, the threads can step on each other's toes. Depending on the order in which the data were accessed, corrupted objects can result. Such a situation is often called a *race condition*.

### 12.4.1 An Example of a Race Condition

To avoid corruption of shared data by multiple threads, you must learn how to *synchronize the access*. In this section, you'll see what happens if you do not use synchronization. In the next section, you'll see how to synchronize data access.

In the next test program, we continue working with our simulated bank. Unlike the example in Section 12.1, "What Are Threads?," on p. 734, we randomly select the source and destination of the transfer. Since this will cause problems, let us look more carefully at the code for the transfer method of the Bank class.

```
public void transfer(int from, int to, double amount)
    // CAUTION: unsafe when called from multiple threads
{
    System.out.print(Thread.currentThread());
    accounts[from] -= amount;
    System.out.printf(" %10.2f from %d to %d",
        amount, from, to);
    accounts[to] += amount;
    System.out.printf(" Total Balance: %10.2f\n",
        getTotalBalance());
}
```

Here is the code for the Runnable instances. The run method keeps moving money out of a given bank account. In each iteration, the run method picks a random target account and a random amount, calls transfer on the bank object, and then sleeps.

```
Runnable r = () -> {
    try
    {
        while (true)
        {
            int toAccount = (int) (bank.size() * Math.random());
            double amount = MAX_AMOUNT * Math.random();
            bank.transfer(fromAccount, toAccount, amount);
            Thread.sleep((int) (DELAY * Math.random()));
        }
    }
```

```
        catch (InterruptedException e)
        {
        }
};
```

When this simulation runs, we do not know how much money is in any one bank account at any time. But we do know that the total amount of money in all the accounts should remain unchanged because all we do is move money from one account to another.

At the end of each transaction, the transfer method recomputes the total and prints it.

This program never finishes. Just press Ctrl+C to kill the program.

Here is a typical printout:

```
...
Thread[Thread-11,5,main]    588.48 from 11 to 44 Total Balance: 100000.00
Thread[Thread-12,5,main]    976.11 from 12 to 22 Total Balance: 100000.00
Thread[Thread-14,5,main]    521.51 from 14 to 22 Total Balance: 100000.00
Thread[Thread-13,5,main]    359.89 from 13 to 81 Total Balance: 100000.00
...
Thread[Thread-36,5,main]    401.71 from 36 to 73 Total Balance: 99291.06
Thread[Thread-35,5,main]    691.46 from 35 to 77 Total Balance: 99291.06
Thread[Thread-37,5,main]    78.64 from 37 to 3 Total Balance: 99291.06
Thread[Thread-34,5,main]    197.11 from 34 to 69 Total Balance: 99291.06
Thread[Thread-36,5,main]    85.96 from 36 to 4 Total Balance: 99291.06
...
Thread[Thread-4,5,main]Thread[Thread-33,5,main]      7.31 from 31 to 32 Total Balance:
99979.24
       627.50 from 4 to 5 Total Balance: 99979.24
...
```

As you can see, something is very wrong. For a few transactions, the bank balance remains at \$100,000, which is the correct total for 100 accounts of \$1,000 each. But after some time, the balance changes slightly. When you run this program, errors may happen quickly, or it may take a very long time for the balance to become corrupted. This situation does not inspire confidence, and you would probably not want to deposit your hard-earned money in such a bank.

See if you can spot the problems with the code in Listing 12.3 and the Bank class in Listing 12.2. We will unravel the mystery in the next section.

**Listing 12.3** unsynch/UnsynchBankTest.java

```
1 package unsynch;
2
3 /**
4  * This program shows data corruption when multiple threads access a data structure.
5  * @version 1.32 2018-04-10
6  * @author Cay Horstmann
7 */
8 public class UnsynchBankTest
9 {
10    public static final int NACCOUNTS = 100;
11    public static final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 1000;
12    public static final double MAX_AMOUNT = 1000;
13    public static final int DELAY = 10;
14
15    public static void main(String[] args)
16    {
17        var bank = new Bank(NACCOUNTS, INITIAL_BALANCE);
18        for (int i = 0; i < NACCOUNTS; i++)
19        {
20            int fromAccount = i;
21            Runnable r = () -> {
22                try
23                {
24                    while (true)
25                    {
26                        int toAccount = (int) (bank.size() * Math.random());
27                        double amount = MAX_AMOUNT * Math.random();
28                        bank.transfer(fromAccount, toAccount, amount);
29                        Thread.sleep((int) (DELAY * Math.random()));
30                    }
31                }
32                catch (InterruptedException e)
33                {
34                }
35            };
36            var t = new Thread(r);
37            t.start();
38        }
39    }
40 }
```

### 12.4.2 The Race Condition Explained

In the previous section, we ran a program in which several threads updated bank account balances. After a while, errors crept in and some amount of money was either lost or spontaneously created. This problem occurs when

two threads are simultaneously trying to update an account. Suppose two threads simultaneously carry out the instruction

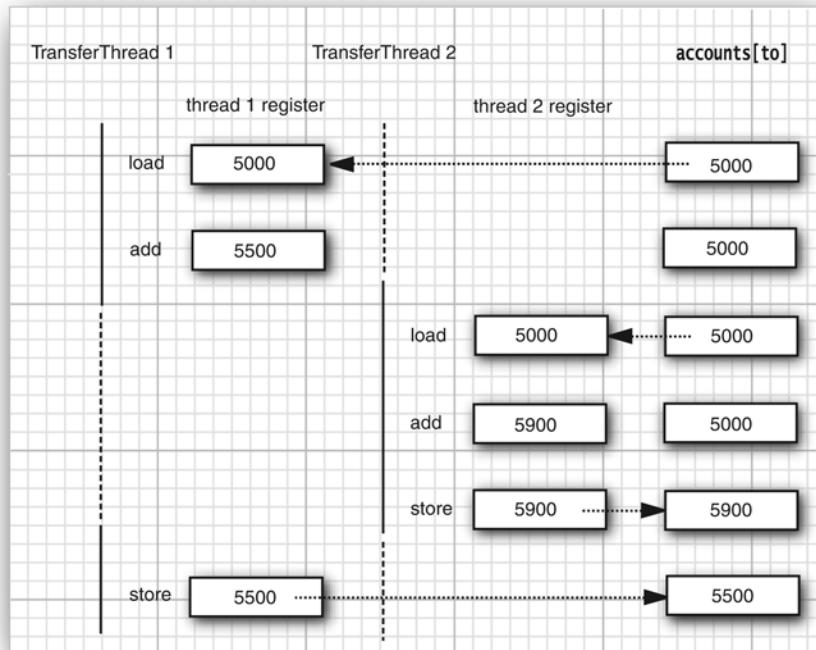
```
accounts[to] += amount;
```

The problem is that these are not *atomic* operations. The instruction might be processed as follows:

1. Load accounts[to] into a register.
2. Add amount.
3. Move the result back to accounts[to].

Now, suppose the first thread executes Steps 1 and 2, and then it is preempted. Suppose the second thread awakens and updates the same entry in the account array. Then, the first thread awakens and completes its Step 3.

That action wipes out the modification of the other thread. As a result, the total is no longer correct (see Figure 12.2).



**Figure 12.2** Simultaneous access by two threads

Our test program detects this corruption. (Of course, there is a slight chance of false alarms if the thread is interrupted as it is performing the tests!)



**NOTE:** You can actually peek at the virtual machine bytecodes that execute each statement in our class. Run the command

```
javap -c -v Bank
```

to decompile the `Bank.class` file. For example, the line

```
accounts[to] += amount;
```

is translated into the following bytecodes:

```
aload_0
getfield      #2; //Field accounts:[D
iload_2
dup2
daload
dload_3
dadd
dastore
```

What these codes mean does not matter. The point is that the increment command is made up of several instructions, and the thread executing them can be interrupted at any instruction.

---

What is the chance of this corruption occurring? On a modern processor with multiple cores, the risk of corruption is quite high. We boosted the chance of observing the problem on a single-core processor by interleaving the print statements with the statements that update the balance.

If you omit the print statements, the risk of corruption is lower because each thread does so little work before going to sleep again, and it is unlikely that the scheduler will preempt it in the middle of the computation. However, the risk of corruption does not go away completely. If you run lots of threads on a heavily loaded machine, the program will still fail even after you have eliminated the print statements. The failure may take a few minutes or hours or days to occur. Frankly, there are few things worse in the life of a programmer than an error that only manifests itself irregularly.

The real problem is that the work of the transfer method can be interrupted in the middle. If we could ensure that the method runs to completion before the thread loses control, the state of the bank account object would never be corrupted.

### 12.4.3 Lock Objects

There are two mechanisms for protecting a code block from concurrent access. The Java language provides a `synchronized` keyword for this purpose, and Java 5 introduced the `ReentrantLock` class. The `synchronized` keyword automatically provides a lock as well as an associated “condition,” which makes it powerful and convenient for most cases that require explicit locking. However, we believe that it is easier to understand the `synchronized` keyword after you have seen locks and conditions in isolation. The `java.util.concurrent` framework provides separate classes for these fundamental mechanisms, which we explain here and in Section 12.4.4, “Condition Objects,” on p. 758. Once you have understood these building blocks, we present the `synchronized` keyword in Section 12.4.5, “The `synchronized` Keyword,” on p. 764.

The basic outline for protecting a code block with a `ReentrantLock` is:

```
myLock.lock(); // a ReentrantLock object
try
{
    critical section
}
finally
{
    myLock.unlock(); // make sure the lock is unlocked even if an exception is thrown
}
```

This construct guarantees that only one thread at a time can enter the critical section. As soon as one thread locks the lock object, no other thread can get past the `lock` statement. When other threads call `lock`, they are deactivated until the first thread unlocks the lock object.



**CAUTION:** It is critically important that the `unlock` operation is enclosed in a `finally` clause. If the code in the critical section throws an exception, the lock must be unlocked. Otherwise, the other threads will be blocked forever.



**NOTE:** When you use locks, you cannot use the `try-with-resources` statement. First off, the `unlock` method isn’t called `close`. But even if it was renamed, the `try-with-resources` statement wouldn’t work. Its header expects the declaration of a new variable. But when you use a lock, you want to keep using the same variable that is shared among threads.

Let us use a lock to protect the transfer method of the Bank class.

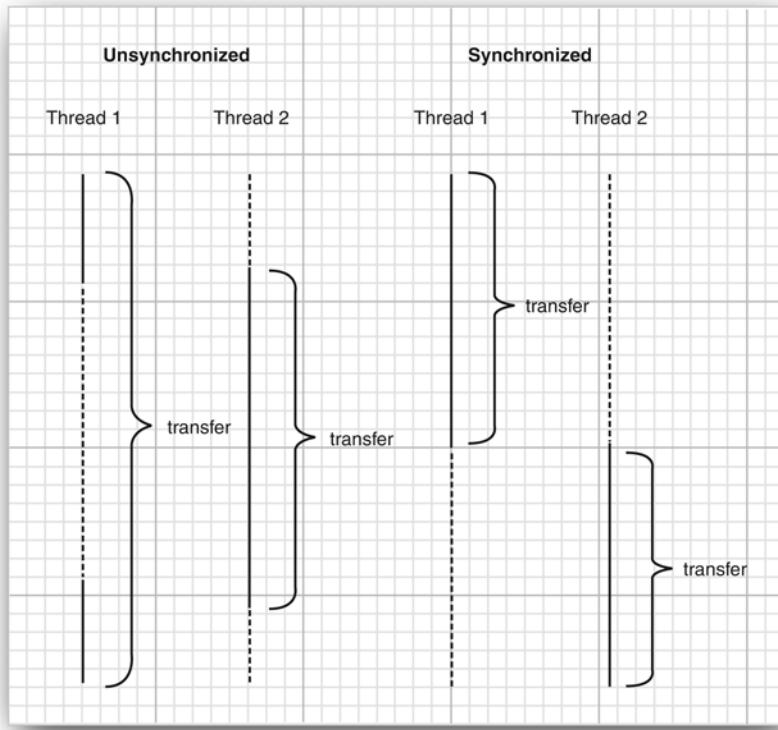
```
public class Bank
{
    private Lock bankLock = new ReentrantLock();
    ...
    public void transfer(int from, int to, int amount)
    {
        bankLock.lock();
        try
        {
            System.out.print(Thread.currentThread());
            accounts[from] -= amount;
            System.out.printf(" %10.2f from %d to %d", amount, from, to);
            accounts[to] += amount;
            System.out.printf(" Total Balance: %10.2f%n", getTotalBalance());
        }
        finally
        {
            bankLock.unlock();
        }
    }
}
```

Suppose one thread calls transfer and gets preempted before it is done. Suppose a second thread also calls transfer. The second thread cannot acquire the lock and is blocked in the call to the lock method. It is deactivated and must wait for the first thread to finish executing the transfer method. When the first thread unlocks the lock, then the second thread can proceed (see Figure 12.3).

Try it out. Add the locking code to the transfer method and run the program again. You can run it forever, and the bank balance will not become corrupted.

Note that each Bank object has its own ReentrantLock object. If two threads try to access the same Bank object, then the lock serves to serialize the access. However, if two threads access different Bank objects, each thread acquires a different lock and neither thread is blocked. This is as it should be, because the threads cannot interfere with one another when they manipulate different Bank instances.

The lock is called *reentrant* because a thread can repeatedly acquire a lock that it already owns. The lock has a *hold count* that keeps track of the nested calls to the lock method. The thread has to call unlock for every call to lock in order to relinquish the lock. Because of this feature, code protected by a lock can call another method that uses the same locks.



**Figure 12.3** Comparison of unsynchronized and synchronized threads

For example, the transfer method calls the getTotalBalance method, which also locks the bankLock object, which now has a hold count of 2. When the getTotalBalance method exits, the hold count is back to 1. When the transfer method exits, the hold count is 0, and the thread relinquishes the lock.

In general, you will want to protect blocks of code that update or inspect a shared object, so you can be assured that these operations run to completion before another thread can use the same object.



**CAUTION:** Be careful to ensure that the code in a critical section is not bypassed by throwing an exception. If an exception is thrown before the end of the section, the finally clause will relinquish the lock, but the object may be in a damaged state.

**java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock 5**

- `void lock()`  
acquires this lock; blocks if the lock is currently owned by another thread.
- `void unlock()`  
releases this lock.

**java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock 5**

- `ReentrantLock()`  
constructs a reentrant lock that can be used to protect a critical section.
- `ReentrantLock(boolean fair)`  
constructs a lock with the given fairness policy. A fair lock favors the thread that has been waiting for the longest time. However, this fairness guarantee can be a significant drag on performance. Therefore, by default, locks are not required to be fair.



**CAUTION:** It sounds nice to be fair, but fair locks are *a lot slower* than regular locks. You should only enable fair locking if you truly know what you are doing and have a specific reason to consider fairness essential for your program. Even if you use a fair lock, you have no guarantee that the thread scheduler is fair. If the thread scheduler chooses to neglect a thread that has been waiting a long time for the lock, it doesn't get the chance to be treated fairly by the lock.

#### 12.4.4 Condition Objects

Often, a thread enters a critical section only to discover that it can't proceed until a condition is fulfilled. Use a *condition object* to manage threads that have acquired a lock but cannot do useful work. In this section, we introduce the implementation of condition objects in the Java library. (For historical reasons, condition objects are often called *condition variables*.)

Let us refine our simulation of the bank. We do not want to transfer money out of an account that does not have the funds to cover the transfer. Note that we cannot use code like

```
if (bank.getBalance(from) >= amount)
    bank.transfer(from, to, amount);
```

It is entirely possible that the current thread will be deactivated between the successful outcome of the test and the call to `transfer`.

```
if (bank.getBalance(from) >= amount)
    // thread might be deactivated at this point
    bank.transfer(from, to, amount);
```

By the time the thread is running again, the account balance may have fallen below the withdrawal amount. You must make sure that no other thread can modify the balance between the test and the transfer action. You do so by protecting both the test and the transfer action with a lock:

```
public void transfer(int from, int to, int amount)
{
    bankLock.lock();
    try
    {
        while (accounts[from] < amount)
        {
            // wait
            ...
        }
        // transfer funds
        ...
    }
    finally
    {
        bankLock.unlock();
    }
}
```

Now, what do we do when there is not enough money in the account? We wait until some other thread has added funds. But this thread has just gained exclusive access to the `bankLock`, so no other thread has a chance to make a deposit. This is where condition objects come in.

A lock object can have one or more associated condition objects. You obtain a condition object with the `newCondition` method. It is customary to give each condition object a name that evokes the condition that it represents. For example, here we set up a condition object to represent the “sufficient funds” condition.

```
class Bank
{
    private Condition sufficientFunds;
    ...
    public Bank()
    {
        ...
        sufficientFunds = bankLock.newCondition();
    }
}
```

If the transfer method finds that sufficient funds are not available, it calls

```
sufficientFunds.await();
```

The current thread is now deactivated and gives up the lock. This lets in another thread that can, we hope, increase the account balance.

There is an essential difference between a thread that is waiting to acquire a lock and a thread that has called `await`. Once a thread calls the `await` method, it enters a *wait set* for that condition. The thread is *not* made runnable when the lock is available. Instead, it stays deactivated until another thread has called the `signalAll` method on the same condition.

When another thread has transferred money, it should call

```
sufficientFunds.signalAll();
```

This call reactivates all threads waiting for the condition. When the threads are removed from the wait set, they are again runnable and the scheduler will eventually activate them again. At that time, they will attempt to reenter the object. As soon as the lock is available, one of them will acquire the lock and continue where it left off, returning from the call to `await`.

At this time, the thread should test the condition again. There is no guarantee that the condition is now fulfilled—the `signalAll` method merely signals to the waiting threads that it *may be* fulfilled at this time and that it is worth checking for the condition again.



**NOTE:** In general, a call to `await` should be inside a loop of the form

```
while (!(OK to proceed))
    condition.await();
```

---

It is crucially important that *some* other thread calls the `signalAll` method eventually. When a thread calls `await`, it has no way of reactivating itself. It puts its faith in the other threads. If none of them bother to reactivate the waiting thread, it will never run again. This can lead to unpleasant *deadlock* situations. If all other threads are blocked and the last active thread calls `await` without unblocking one of the others, it also blocks. No thread is left to unblock the others, and the program hangs.

When should you call `signalAll`? The rule of thumb is to call `signalAll` whenever the state of an object changes in a way that might be advantageous to waiting

threads. For example, whenever an account balance changes, the waiting threads should be given another chance to inspect the balance. In our example, we call `signalAll` when we have finished the funds transfer.

```
public void transfer(int from, int to, int amount)
{
    bankLock.lock();
    try
    {
        while (accounts[from] < amount)
            sufficientFunds.await();
        // transfer funds
        ...
        sufficientFunds.signalAll();
    }
    finally
    {
        bankLock.unlock();
    }
}
```

Note that the call to `signalAll` does not immediately activate a waiting thread. It only unblocks the waiting threads so that they can compete for entry into the object after the current thread has relinquished the lock.

Another method, `signal`, unblocks only a single thread from the wait set, chosen at random. That is more efficient than unblocking all threads, but there is a danger. If the randomly chosen thread finds that it still cannot proceed, it becomes blocked again. If no other thread calls `signal` again, the system deadlocks.



**CAUTION:** A thread can only call `await`, `signalAll`, or `signal` on a condition if it owns the lock of the condition.

If you run the sample program in Listing 12.4, you will notice that nothing ever goes wrong. The total balance stays at \$100,000 forever. No account ever has a negative balance. (Again, press `Ctrl+C` to terminate the program.) You may also notice that the program runs a bit slower—that is the price you pay for the added bookkeeping involved in the synchronization mechanism.

In practice, using conditions correctly can be quite challenging. Before you start implementing your own condition objects, you should consider using one of the constructs described in Section 12.5, “Thread-Safe Collections,” on p. 781.

**Listing 12.4** synch/Bank.java

```
1 package synch;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4 import java.util.concurrent.locks.*;
5
6 /**
7  * A bank with a number of bank accounts that uses locks for serializing access.
8 */
9 public class Bank
10 {
11     private final double[] accounts;
12     private Lock bankLock;
13     private Condition sufficientFunds;
14
15     /**
16      * Constructs the bank.
17      * @param n the number of accounts
18      * @param initialBalance the initial balance for each account
19      */
20     public Bank(int n, double initialBalance)
21     {
22         accounts = new double[n];
23         Arrays.fill(accounts, initialBalance);
24         bankLock = new ReentrantLock();
25         sufficientFunds = bankLock.newCondition();
26     }
27
28     /**
29      * Transfers money from one account to another.
30      * @param from the account to transfer from
31      * @param to the account to transfer to
32      * @param amount the amount to transfer
33      */
34     public void transfer(int from, int to, double amount) throws InterruptedException
35     {
36         bankLock.lock();
37         try
38         {
39             while (accounts[from] < amount)
40                 sufficientFunds.await();
41             System.out.print(Thread.currentThread());
42             accounts[from] -= amount;
43             System.out.printf(" %10.2f from %d to %d", amount, from, to);
44             accounts[to] += amount;
45             System.out.printf(" Total Balance: %10.2f", getTotalBalance());
46             sufficientFunds.signalAll();
47         }
48     }
49 }
```

```
48     finally
49     {
50         bankLock.unlock();
51     }
52 }
53
54 /**
55 * Gets the sum of all account balances.
56 * @return the total balance
57 */
58 public double getTotalBalance()
59 {
60     bankLock.lock();
61     try
62     {
63         double sum = 0;
64
65         for (double a : accounts)
66             sum += a;
67
68         return sum;
69     }
70     finally
71     {
72         bankLock.unlock();
73     }
74 }
75
76 /**
77 * Gets the number of accounts in the bank.
78 * @return the number of accounts
79 */
80 public int size()
81 {
82     return accounts.length;
83 }
84 }
```

***java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock 5***

- Condition newCondition()  
returns a condition object associated with this lock.

***java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition*** 5

- `void await()`  
puts this thread on the wait set for this condition.
- `void signalAll()`  
unblocks all threads in the wait set for this condition.
- `void signal()`  
unblocks one randomly selected thread in the wait set for this condition.

### 12.4.5 The `synchronized` Keyword

In the preceding sections, you saw how to use Lock and Condition objects. Before going any further, let us summarize the key points about locks and conditions:

- A lock protects sections of code, allowing only one thread to execute the code at a time.
- A lock manages threads that are trying to enter a protected code segment.
- A lock can have one or more associated condition objects.
- Each condition object manages threads that have entered a protected code section but that cannot proceed.

The Lock and Condition interfaces give programmers a high degree of control over locking. However, in most situations, you don't need that control—you can use a mechanism that is built into the Java language. Ever since version 1.0, *every object* in Java has an intrinsic lock. If a method is declared with the synchronized keyword, the object's lock protects the entire method. That is, to call the method, a thread must acquire the intrinsic object lock.

In other words,

```
public synchronized void method()  
{  
    method body  
}
```

is the equivalent of

```
public void method()  
{  
    this.intrinsicLock.lock();  
    try  
    {  
        method body  
    }  
}
```

```
    finally { this.intrinsicLock.unlock(); }
}
```

For example, instead of using an explicit lock, we can simply declare the transfer method of the Bank class as synchronized.

The intrinsic object lock has a single associated condition. The wait method adds a thread to the wait set, and the notifyAll/notify methods unblock waiting threads. In other words, calling wait or notifyAll is the equivalent of

```
intrinsicCondition.await();
intrinsicCondition.signalAll();
```



**NOTE:** The wait, notifyAll, and notify methods are final methods of the Object class. The Condition methods had to be named await, signalAll, and signal so that they don't conflict with those methods.

For example, you can implement the Bank class in Java like this:

```
class Bank
{
    private double[] accounts;

    public synchronized void transfer(int from, int to, int amount)
        throws InterruptedException
    {
        while (accounts[from] < amount)
            wait(); // wait on intrinsic object lock's single condition
        accounts[from] -= amount;
        accounts[to] += amount;
        notifyAll(); // notify all threads waiting on the condition
    }

    public synchronized double getTotalBalance() { . . . }
}
```

As you can see, using the synchronized keyword yields code that is much more concise. Of course, to understand this code, you have to know that each object has an intrinsic lock, and that the lock has an intrinsic condition. The lock manages the threads that try to enter a synchronized method. The condition manages the threads that have called wait.



**TIP:** Synchronized methods are relatively straightforward. However, beginners often struggle with conditions. Before you use wait/notifyAll, you should consider using one of the constructs described in Section 12.5, “Thread-Safe Collections,” on p. 781.

It is also legal to declare static methods as synchronized. If such a method is called, it acquires the intrinsic lock of the associated class object. For example, if the `Bank` class has a static synchronized method, then the lock of the `Bank.class` object is locked when it is called. As a result, no other thread can call this or any other synchronized static method of the same class.

The intrinsic locks and conditions have some limitations. Among them:

- You cannot interrupt a thread that is trying to acquire a lock.
- You cannot specify a timeout when trying to acquire a lock.
- Having a single condition per lock can be inefficient.

What should you use in your code—`Lock` and `Condition` objects or synchronized methods? Here is our recommendation:

- It is best to use neither `Lock/Condition` nor the `synchronized` keyword. In many situations, you can use one of the mechanisms of the `java.util.concurrent` package that do all the locking for you. For example, in Section 12.5.1, “Blocking Queues,” on p. 781, you will see how to use a blocking queue to synchronize threads that work on a common task. You should also explore parallel streams—see Chapter 1 of Volume II.
- If the `synchronized` keyword works for your situation, by all means, use it. You’ll write less code and have less room for error. Listing 12.5 shows the bank example, implemented with synchronized methods.
- Use `Lock/Condition` if you really need the additional power that these constructs give you.

---

#### **Listing 12.5** `synch2/Bank.java`

---

```
1 package synch2;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 /**
6  * A bank with a number of bank accounts that uses synchronization primitives.
7  */
8 public class Bank
9 {
10     private final double[] accounts;
11
12     /**
13      * Constructs the bank.
14      * @param n the number of accounts
15      * @param initialBalance the initial balance for each account
16      */
17 }
```

```
17  public Bank(int n, double initialBalance)
18  {
19      accounts = new double[n];
20      Arrays.fill(accounts, initialBalance);
21  }
22
23 /**
24 * Transfers money from one account to another.
25 * @param from the account to transfer from
26 * @param to the account to transfer to
27 * @param amount the amount to transfer
28 */
29 public synchronized void transfer(int from, int to, double amount)
30     throws InterruptedException
31 {
32     while (accounts[from] < amount)
33         wait();
34     System.out.print(Thread.currentThread());
35     accounts[from] -= amount;
36     System.out.printf(" %10.2f from %d to %d", amount, from, to);
37     accounts[to] += amount;
38     System.out.printf(" Total Balance: %10.2f\n", getTotalBalance());
39     notifyAll();
40 }
41
42 /**
43 * Gets the sum of all account balances.
44 * @return the total balance
45 */
46 public synchronized double getTotalBalance()
47 {
48     double sum = 0;
49
50     for (double a : accounts)
51         sum += a;
52
53     return sum;
54 }
55
56 /**
57 * Gets the number of accounts in the bank.
58 * @return the number of accounts
59 */
60 public int size()
61 {
62     return accounts.length;
63 }
64 }
```

**java.lang.Object 1.0**

- void `notifyAll()`

unblocks the threads that called `wait` on this object. This method can only be called from within a synchronized method or block. The method throws an `IllegalMonitorStateException` if the current thread is not the owner of the object's lock.

- void `notify()`

unblocks one randomly selected thread among the threads that called `wait` on this object. This method can only be called from within a synchronized method or block. The method throws an `IllegalMonitorStateException` if the current thread is not the owner of the object's lock.

- void `wait()`

causes a thread to wait until it is notified. This method can only be called from within a synchronized method or block. It throws an `IllegalMonitorStateException` if the current thread is not the owner of the object's lock.

- void `wait(long millis)`

- void `wait(long millis, int nanos)`

causes a thread to wait until it is notified or until the specified amount of time has passed. These methods can only be called from within a synchronized method or block. They throw an `IllegalMonitorStateException` if the current thread is not the owner of the object's lock. The number of nanoseconds may not exceed 1,000,000.

### 12.4.6 Synchronized Blocks

As we just discussed, every Java object has a lock. A thread can acquire the lock by calling a synchronized method. There is a second mechanism for acquiring the lock: by entering a *synchronized block*. When a thread enters a block of the form

```
synchronized (obj) // this is the syntax for a synchronized block
{
    critical section
}
```

then it acquires the lock for `obj`.

You will sometimes find "ad hoc" locks, such as

```
public class Bank
{
    private double[] accounts;
    private Lock lock = new Object();
```

```
    . .
public void transfer(int from, int to, int amount)
{
    synchronized (lock) // an ad-hoc lock
    {
        accounts[from] -= amount;
        accounts[to] += amount;
    }
    System.out.println(. . .);
}
}
```

Here, the `lock` object is created only to use the lock that every Java object possesses.

Sometimes, programmers use the lock of an object to implement additional atomic operations—a practice known as *client-side locking*. Consider, for example, the `Vector` class, which is a list whose methods are synchronized. Now suppose we stored our bank balances in a `Vector<Double>`. Here is a naive implementation of a transfer method:

```
public void transfer(Vector<Double> accounts, int from, int to, int amount) // ERROR
{
    accounts.set(from, accounts.get(from) - amount);
    accounts.set(to, accounts.get(to) + amount);
    System.out.println(. . .);
}
```

The `get` and `set` methods of the `Vector` class are synchronized, but that doesn't help us. It is entirely possible for a thread to be preempted in the `transfer` method after the first call to `get` has been completed. Another thread may then store a different value into the same position. However, we can hijack the lock:

```
public void transfer(Vector<Double> accounts, int from, int to, int amount)
{
    synchronized (accounts)
    {
        accounts.set(from, accounts.get(from) - amount);
        accounts.set(to, accounts.get(to) + amount);
    }
    System.out.println(. . .);
}
```

This approach works, but it is entirely dependent on the fact that the `Vector` class uses the intrinsic lock for all of its mutator methods. However, is this really a fact? The documentation of the `Vector` class makes no such promise. You have to carefully study the source code and hope that future versions

do not introduce unsynchronized mutators. As you can see, client-side locking is very fragile and not generally recommended.



**NOTE:** The Java virtual machine has built-in support for synchronized methods. However, synchronized blocks are compiled into a lengthy sequence of bytecodes to manage the intrinsic lock.

---

### 12.4.7 The Monitor Concept

Locks and conditions are powerful tools for thread synchronization, but they are not very object-oriented. For many years, researchers have looked for ways to make multithreading safe without forcing programmers to think about explicit locks. One of the most successful solutions is the *monitor* concept that was pioneered by Per Brinch Hansen and Tony Hoare in the 1970s. In the terminology of Java, a monitor has these properties:

- A monitor is a class with only private fields.
- Each object of that class has an associated lock.
- All methods are locked by that lock. In other words, if a client calls `obj.method()`, then the lock for `obj` is automatically acquired at the beginning of the method call and relinquished when the method returns. Since all fields are private, this arrangement ensures that no thread can access the fields while another thread manipulates them.
- The lock can have any number of associated conditions.

Earlier versions of monitors had a single condition, with a rather elegant syntax. You can simply call `await accounts[from] >= amount` without using an explicit condition variable. However, research showed that indiscriminate retesting of conditions can be inefficient. This problem is solved with explicit condition variables, each managing a separate set of threads.

The Java designers loosely adapted the monitor concept. *Every object* in Java has an intrinsic lock and an intrinsic condition. If a method is declared with the `synchronized` keyword, it acts like a monitor method. The condition variable is accessed by calling `wait/notifyAll/notify`.

However, a Java object differs from a monitor in three important ways, compromising thread safety:

- Fields are not required to be private.
- Methods are not required to be synchronized.
- The intrinsic lock is available to clients.

This disrespect for security enraged Per Brinch Hansen. In a scathing review of the multithreading primitives in Java, he wrote: “It is astounding to me that Java’s insecure parallelism is taken seriously by the programming community, a quarter of a century after the invention of monitors and Concurrent Pascal. It has no merit” [Java’s Insecure Parallelism, *ACM SIGPLAN Notices* 34:38–45, April 1999].

### 12.4.8 Volatile Fields

Sometimes, it seems excessive to pay the cost of synchronization just to read or write an instance field or two. After all, what can go wrong? Unfortunately, with modern processors and compilers, there is plenty of room for error.

- Computers with multiple processors can temporarily hold memory values in registers or local memory caches. As a consequence, threads running in different processors may see different values for the same memory location!
- Compilers can reorder instructions for maximum throughput. Compilers won’t choose an ordering that changes the meaning of the code, but they make the assumption that memory values are only changed when there are explicit instructions in the code. However, a memory value can be changed by another thread!

If you use locks to protect code that can be accessed by multiple threads, you won’t have these problems. Compilers are required to respect locks by flushing local caches as necessary and not inappropriately reordering instructions. The details are explained in the Java Memory Model and Thread Specification developed by JSR 133 (see [www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=133](http://www.jcp.org/en/jsr/detail?id=133)). Much of the specification is highly complex and technical, but the document also contains a number of clearly explained examples. A more accessible overview article by Brian Goetz is available at [www.ibm.com/developerworks/library/j-jtp02244](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/library/j-jtp02244).



**NOTE:** Brian Goetz coined the following “synchronization motto”: “If you write a variable which may next be read by another thread, or you read a variable which may have last been written by another thread, you must use synchronization.”

The `volatile` keyword offers a lock-free mechanism for synchronizing access to an instance field. If you declare a field as `volatile`, then the compiler and the virtual machine take into account that the field may be concurrently updated by another thread.

For example, suppose an object has a boolean flag `done` that is set by one thread and queried by another thread. As we already discussed, you can use a lock:

```
private boolean done;  
public synchronized boolean isDone() { return done; }  
public synchronized void setDone() { done = true; }
```

Perhaps it is not a good idea to use the intrinsic object lock. The `isDone` and `setDone` methods can block if another thread has locked the object. If that is a concern, one can use a separate lock just for this variable. But this is getting to be a lot of trouble.

In this case, it is reasonable to declare the field as `volatile`:

```
private volatile boolean done;  
public boolean isDone() { return done; }  
public void setDone() { done = true; }
```

The compiler will insert the appropriate code to ensure that a change to the `done` variable in one thread is visible from any other thread that reads the variable.



**CAUTION:** Volatile variables do not provide any atomicity. For example, the method

```
public void flipDone() { done = !done; } // not atomic
```

is not guaranteed to flip the value of the field. There is no guarantee that the reading, flipping, and writing is uninterrupted.

---

### 12.4.9 Final Variables

As you saw in the preceding section, you cannot safely read a field from multiple threads unless you use locks or the `volatile` modifier.

There is one other situation in which it is safe to access a shared field—when it is declared `final`. Consider

```
final var accounts = new HashMap<String, Double>();
```

Other threads get to see the `accounts` variable after the constructor has finished.

Without using `final`, there would be no guarantee that other threads would see the updated value of `accounts`—they might all see `null`, not the constructed `HashMap`.

Of course, the operations on the map are not thread-safe. If multiple threads mutate and read the map, you still need synchronization.

### 12.4.10 Atomics

You can declare shared variables as `volatile` provided you perform no operations other than assignment.

There are a number of classes in the `java.util.concurrent.atomic` package that use efficient machine-level instructions to guarantee atomicity of other operations without using locks. For example, the `AtomicInteger` class has methods `incrementAndGet` and `decrementAndGet` that atomically increment or decrement an integer. For example, you can safely generate a sequence of numbers like this:

```
public static AtomicLong nextNumber = new AtomicLong();
// in some thread. . .
long id = nextNumber.incrementAndGet();
```

The `incrementAndGet` method atomically increments the `AtomicLong` and returns the post-increment value. That is, the operations of getting the value, adding 1, setting it, and producing the new value cannot be interrupted. It is guaranteed that the correct value is computed and returned, even if multiple threads access the same instance concurrently.

There are methods for atomically setting, adding, and subtracting values, but if you want to make a more complex update, you have to use the `compareAndSet` method. For example, suppose you want to keep track of the largest value that is observed by different threads. The following won't work:

```
public static AtomicLong largest = new AtomicLong();
// in some thread. . .
largest.set(Math.max(largest.get(), observed)); // ERROR--race condition!
```

This update is not atomic. Instead, provide a lambda expression for updating the variable, and the update is done for you. In our example, we can call

```
largest.updateAndGet(x -> Math.max(x, observed));
```

or

```
largest.accumulateAndGet(observed, Math::max);
```

The `accumulateAndGet` method takes a binary operator that is used to combine the atomic value and the supplied argument.

There are also methods `getAndUpdate` and `getAndAccumulate` that return the old value.



**NOTE:** These methods are also provided for the classes `AtomicInteger`, `AtomicIntegerArray`, `AtomicIntegerFieldUpdater`, `AtomicLongArray`, `AtomicLongFieldUpdater`, `AtomicReference`, `AtomicReferenceArray`, and `AtomicReferenceFieldUpdater`.

When you have a very large number of threads accessing the same atomic values, performance suffers because the optimistic updates require too many retries. The `LongAdder` and `LongAccumulator` classes solve this problem. A `LongAdder` is composed of multiple variables whose collective sum is the current value. Multiple threads can update different summands, and new summands are automatically provided when the number of threads increases. This is efficient in the common situation where the value of the sum is not needed until after all work has been done. The performance improvement can be substantial.

If you anticipate high contention, you should simply use a `LongAdder` instead of an `AtomicLong`. The method names are slightly different. Call `increment` to increment a counter or `add` to add a quantity, and `sum` to retrieve the total.

```
var adder = new LongAdder();
for (...)

    pool.submit(() -> {
        while (...) {
            ...
            if (...) adder.increment();
        }
    });
...
long total = adder.sum();
```



**NOTE:** Of course, the `increment` method does *not* return the old value. Doing that would undo the efficiency gain of splitting the sum into multiple summands.

---

The `LongAccumulator` generalizes this idea to an arbitrary accumulation operation. In the constructor, you provide the operation, as well as its neutral element. To incorporate new values, call `accumulate`. Call `get` to obtain the current value. The following has the same effect as a `LongAdder`:

```
var adder = new LongAccumulator(Long::sum, 0);
// in some thread. . .
adder.accumulate(value);
```

Internally, the accumulator has variables  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$ . Each variable is initialized with the neutral element ( $0$  in our example).

When `accumulate` is called with value  $v$ , then one of them is atomically updated as  $a_i = a_i \text{ op } v$ , where  $\text{op}$  is the accumulation operation written in infix form. In our example, a call to `accumulate` computes  $a_i = a_i + v$  for some  $i$ .

The result of `get` is  $a_1 \text{ op } a_2 \text{ op } \dots \text{ op } a_n$ . In our example, that is the sum of the accumulators,  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n$ .

If you choose a different operation, you can compute maximum or minimum. In general, the operation must be associative and commutative. That means that the final result must be independent of the order in which the intermediate values were combined.

There are also `DoubleAdder` and `DoubleAccumulator` that work in the same way, except with double values.

### 12.4.11 Deadlocks

Locks and conditions cannot solve all problems that might arise in multithreading. Consider the following situation:

1. Account 1: \$200
2. Account 2: \$300
3. Thread 1: Transfer \$300 from Account 1 to Account 2
4. Thread 2: Transfer \$400 from Account 2 to Account 1

As Figure 12.4 indicates, Threads 1 and 2 are clearly blocked. Neither can proceed because the balances in Accounts 1 and 2 are insufficient.

It is possible that all threads get blocked because each is waiting for more money. Such a situation is called a *deadlock*.

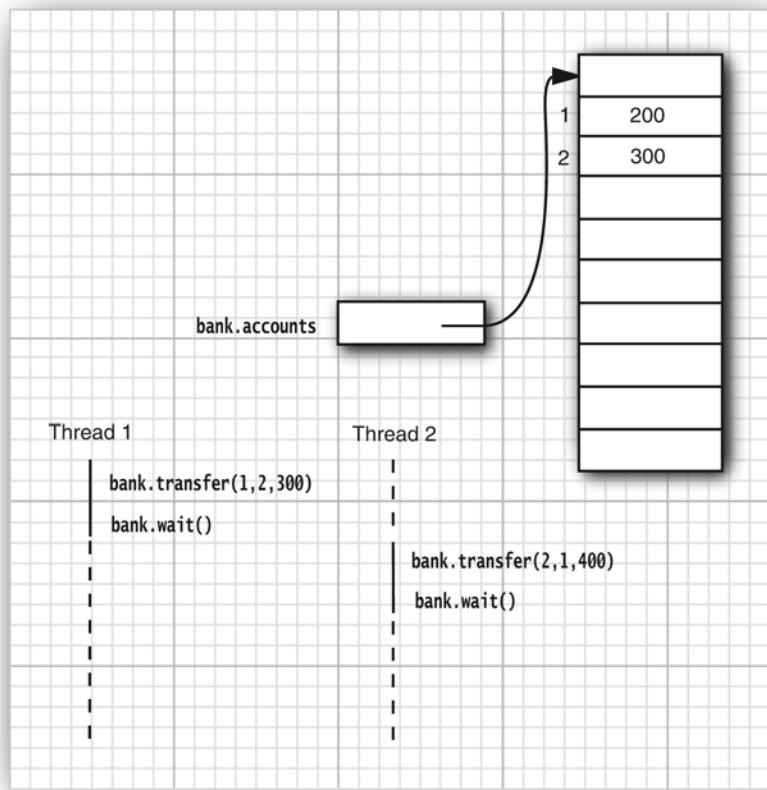
In our program, a deadlock cannot occur for a simple reason. Each transfer amount is for, at most, \$1,000. Since there are 100 accounts and a total of \$100,000 in them, at least one of the accounts must have at least \$1,000 at any time. The thread moving money out of that account can therefore proceed.

But if you change the `run` method of the threads to remove the \$1,000 transaction limit, deadlocks can occur quickly. Try it out. Set `NACCOUNTS` to 10. Construct each transfer runnable with a `max` value of `2 * INITIAL_BALANCE` and run the program. The program will run for a while and then hang.



**TIP:** When the program hangs, press `Ctrl+\`. You will get a thread dump that lists all threads. Each thread has a stack trace, telling you where it is currently blocked. Alternatively, run `jconsole`, as described in Chapter 7, and consult the Threads panel (see Figure 12.5).

Another way to create a deadlock is to make the *i*th thread responsible for putting money into the *i*th account, rather than for taking it out of the *i*th account. In this case, there is a chance that all threads will gang up on one account, each trying to remove more money from it than it contains. Try it out. In the `SynchBankTest` program, turn to the `run` method of the `TransferRunnable`

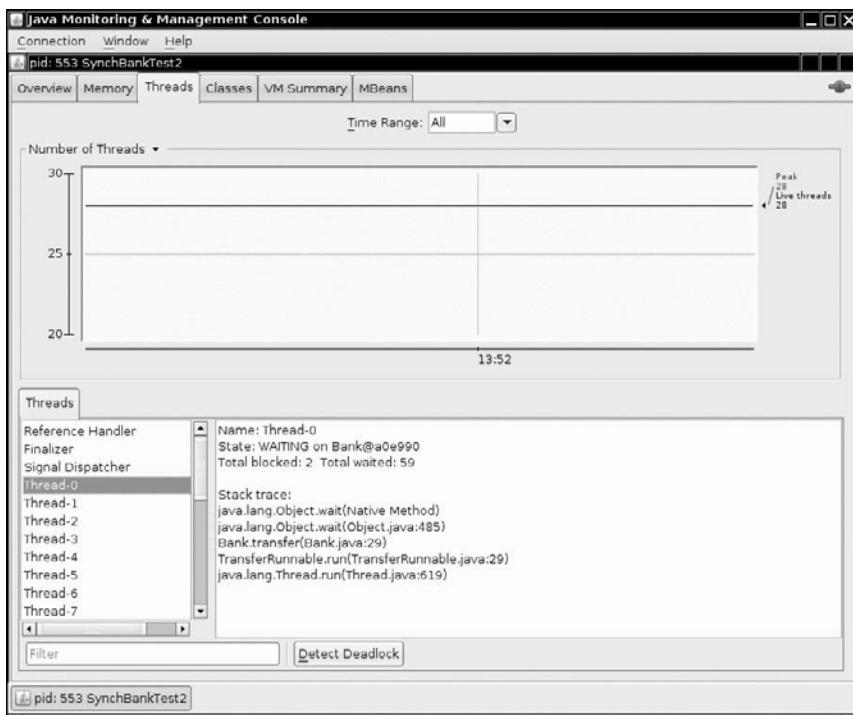


**Figure 12.4** A deadlock situation

class. In the call to `transfer`, flip `fromAccount` and `toAccount`. Run the program and see how it deadlocks almost immediately.

Here is another situation in which a deadlock can occur easily. Change the `signalAll` method to `signal` in the `SynchBankTest` program. You will find that the program eventually hangs. (Again, set `NACCOUNTS` to 10 to observe the effect more quickly.) Unlike `signalAll`, which notifies all threads that are waiting for added funds, the `signal` method unblocks only one thread. If that thread can't proceed, all threads can be blocked. Consider the following sample scenario of a developing deadlock:

1. Account 1: \$1,990
2. All other accounts: \$990 each



**Figure 12.5** The Threads panel in jconsole

3. Thread 1: Transfer \$995 from Account 1 to Account 2
4. All other threads: Transfer \$995 from their account to another account

Clearly, all threads but Thread 1 are blocked, because there isn't enough money in their accounts.

Thread 1 proceeds. Afterward, we have the following situation:

1. Account 1: \$995
2. Account 2: \$1,985
3. All other accounts: \$990 each

Then, Thread 1 calls `signal`. The `signal` method picks a thread at random to unblock. Suppose it picks Thread 3. That thread is awakened, finds that there isn't enough money in its account, and calls `await` again. But Thread 1 is still running. A new random transaction is generated, say,

1. Thread 1: Transfer \$997 from Account 1 to Account 2

Now, Thread 1 also calls `await`, and *all* threads are blocked. The system has deadlocked.

The culprit here is the call to `signal`. It only unblocks one thread, and it may not pick the thread that is essential to make progress. (In our scenario, Thread 2 must proceed to take money out of Account 2.)

Unfortunately, there is nothing in the Java programming language to avoid or break these deadlocks. You must design your program to ensure that a deadlock situation cannot occur.

### 12.4.12 Thread-Local Variables

In the preceding sections, we discussed the risks of sharing variables between threads. Sometimes, you can avoid sharing by giving each thread its own instance, using the `ThreadLocal` helper class. For example, the `SimpleDateFormat` class is not thread-safe. Suppose we have a static variable

```
public static final SimpleDateFormat dateFormat = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd");
```

If two threads execute an operation such as

```
String dateStamp = dateFormat.format(new Date());
```

then the result can be garbage since the internal data structures used by the `dateFormat` can be corrupted by concurrent access. You could use synchronization, which is expensive, or you could construct a local `SimpleDateFormat` object whenever you need it, but that is also wasteful.

To construct one instance per thread, use the following code:

```
public static final ThreadLocal<SimpleDateFormat> dateFormat  
    = ThreadLocal.withInitial(() -> new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd"));
```

To access the actual formatter, call

```
String dateStamp = dateFormat.get().format(new Date());
```

The first time you call `get` in a given thread, the lambda in the constructor is called. From then on, the `get` method returns the instance belonging to the current thread.

A similar problem is the generation of random numbers in multiple threads. The `java.util.Random` class is thread-safe. But it is still inefficient if multiple threads need to wait for a single shared generator.

You could use the `ThreadLocal` helper to give each thread a separate generator, but Java 7 provides a convenience class for you. Simply make a call such as

```
int random = ThreadLocalRandom.current().nextInt(upperBound);
```

The call `ThreadLocalRandom.current()` returns an instance of the `Random` class that is unique to the current thread.

#### `java.lang.ThreadLocal<T>` 1.2

- `T get()`  
gets the current value of this thread. If `get` is called for the first time, the value is obtained by calling `initialize`.
- `void set(T t)`  
sets a new value for this thread.
- `void remove()`  
removes the value for this thread.
- `static <S> ThreadLocal<S> withInitial(Supplier<? extends S> supplier)` 8  
creates a thread local variable whose initial value is produced by invoking the given supplier.

#### `java.util.concurrent.ThreadLocalRandom` 7

- `static ThreadLocalRandom current()`  
returns an instance of the `Random` class that is unique to the current thread.

### 12.4.13 Why the `stop` and `suspend` Methods Are Deprecated

The initial release of Java defined a `stop` method that simply terminates a thread, and a `suspend` method that blocks a thread until another thread calls `resume`. The `stop` and `suspend` methods have something in common: Both attempt to control the behavior of a given thread without the thread's cooperation.

The `stop`, `suspend`, and `resume` methods have been deprecated. The `stop` method is inherently unsafe, and experience has shown that the `suspend` method frequently leads to deadlocks. In this section, you will see why these methods are problematic and what you can do to avoid problems.

Let us turn to the `stop` method first. This method terminates all pending methods, including the `run` method. When a thread is stopped, it immediately gives up the locks on all objects that it has locked. This can leave objects in an inconsistent state. For example, suppose a `TransferRunnable` is stopped in the middle of moving money from one account to another, after the withdrawal and before the deposit. Now the bank object is *damaged*. Since the lock has

been relinquished, the damage is observable from the other threads that have not been stopped.

When a thread wants to stop another thread, it has no way of knowing when the `stop` method is safe and when it leads to damaged objects. Therefore, the method has been deprecated. You should interrupt a thread when you want it to stop. The interrupted thread can then stop when it is safe to do so.



**NOTE:** Some authors claim that the `stop` method has been deprecated because it can cause objects to be permanently locked by a stopped thread. However, that claim is not valid. A stopped thread exits all synchronized methods it has called—technically, by throwing a `ThreadDeath` exception. As a consequence, the thread relinquishes the intrinsic object locks that it holds.

---

Next, let us see what is wrong with the `suspend` method. Unlike `stop`, `suspend` won't damage objects. However, if you suspend a thread that owns a lock, then the lock is unavailable until the thread is resumed. If the thread that calls the `suspend` method tries to acquire the same lock, the program deadlocks: The suspended thread waits to be resumed, and the suspending thread waits for the lock.

This situation occurs frequently in graphical user interfaces. Suppose we have a graphical simulation of our bank. A button labeled `Pause` suspends the transfer threads, and a button labeled `Resume` resumes them.

```
pauseButton.addActionListener(event -> {
    for (int i = 0; i < threads.length; i++)
        threads[i].suspend(); // don't do this
});
resumeButton.addActionListener(event -> {
    for (int i = 0; i < threads.length; i++)
        threads[i].resume();
});
```

Suppose a `paintComponent` method paints a chart of each account, calling a `getBalances` method to get an array of balances.

As you will see in Section 12.7.3, “Long-Running Tasks in User Interface Callbacks,” on p. 823, both the button actions and the repainting occur in the same thread, the *event dispatch thread*. Consider the following scenario:

1. One of the transfer threads acquires the lock of the `bank` object.
2. The user clicks the `Pause` button.
3. All transfer threads are suspended; one of them still holds the lock on the `bank` object.

4. For some reason, the account chart needs to be repainted.
5. The `paintComponent` method calls the `getBalances` method.
6. That method tries to acquire the lock of the `bank` object.

Now the program is frozen.

The event dispatch thread can't proceed because the lock is owned by one of the suspended threads. Thus, the user can't click the Resume button, and the threads won't ever resume.

If you want to safely suspend a thread, introduce a variable `suspendRequested` and test it in a safe place of your `run` method—in a place where your thread doesn't lock objects that other threads need. When your thread finds that the `suspendRequested` variable has been set, it should keep waiting until it becomes available again.

## 12.5 Thread-Safe Collections

If multiple threads concurrently modify a data structure, such as a hash table, it is easy to damage that data structure. (See Chapter 9 for more information on hash tables.) For example, one thread may begin to insert a new element. Suppose it is preempted in the middle of rerouting the links between the hash table's buckets. If another thread starts traversing the same list, it may follow invalid links and create havoc, perhaps throwing exceptions or getting trapped in an infinite loop.

You can protect a shared data structure by supplying a lock, but it is usually easier to choose a thread-safe implementation instead. In the following sections, we discuss the other thread-safe collections that the Java library provides.

### 12.5.1 Blocking Queues

Many threading problems can be formulated elegantly and safely by using one or more queues. Producer threads insert items into the queue, and consumer threads retrieve them. The queue lets you safely hand over data from one thread to another. For example, consider our bank transfer program. Instead of accessing the `bank` object directly, the transfer threads insert transfer instruction objects into a queue. Another thread removes the instructions from the queue and carries out the transfers. Only that thread has access to the internals of the `bank` object. No synchronization is necessary. (Of course, the implementors of the thread-safe queue classes had to worry about locks and conditions, but that was their problem, not yours.)

A *blocking queue* causes a thread to block when you try to add an element when the queue is currently full or to remove an element when the queue is empty. Blocking queues are a useful tool for coordinating the work of multiple threads. Worker threads can periodically deposit intermediate results into a blocking queue. Other worker threads remove the intermediate results and modify them further. The queue automatically balances the workload. If the first set of threads runs slower than the second, the second set blocks while waiting for the results. If the first set of threads runs faster, the queue fills up until the second set catches up. Table 12.1 shows the methods for blocking queues.

The blocking queue methods fall into three categories that differ by the action they perform when the queue is full or empty. If you use the queue as a thread management tool, use the `put` and `take` methods. The `add`, `remove`, and `element` operations throw an exception when you try to add to a full queue or get the head of an empty queue. Of course, in a multithreaded program, the queue might become full or empty at any time, so you will instead want to use the `offer`, `poll`, and `peek` methods. These methods simply return with a failure indicator instead of throwing an exception if they cannot carry out their tasks.



**NOTE:** The `poll` and `peek` methods return `null` to indicate failure. Therefore, it is illegal to insert `null` values into these queues.

---

There are also variants of the `offer` and `poll` methods with a timeout. For example, the call

```
boolean success = q.offer(x, 100, TimeUnit.MILLISECONDS);
```

tries for 100 milliseconds to insert an element to the tail of the queue. If it succeeds, it returns `true`; otherwise, it returns `false` when it times out. Similarly, the call

```
Object head = q.poll(100, TimeUnit.MILLISECONDS);
```

tries for 100 milliseconds to remove the head of the queue. If it succeeds, it returns the head; otherwise, it returns `null` when it times out.

The `put` method blocks if the queue is full, and the `take` method blocks if the queue is empty. These are the equivalents of `offer` and `poll` with no timeout.

The `java.util.concurrent` package supplies several variations of blocking queues. By default, the `LinkedBlockingQueue` has no upper bound on its capacity, but a maximum capacity can be optionally specified. The `LinkedBlockingDeque` is a double-ended version. The `ArrayBlockingQueue` is constructed with a given capacity and

**Table 12.1** Blocking Queue Methods

Method	Normal Action	Action in Special Circumstances
add	Adds an element	Throws an <code>IllegalStateException</code> if the queue is full
element	Returns the head element	Throws a <code>NoSuchElementException</code> if the queue is empty
offer	Adds an element and returns true	Returns false if the queue is full
peek	Returns the head element	Returns <code>null</code> if the queue is empty
poll	Removes and returns the head element	Returns <code>null</code> if the queue is empty
put	Adds an element	Blocks if the queue is full
remove	Removes and returns the head element	Throws a <code>NoSuchElementException</code> if the queue is empty
take	Removes and returns the head element	Blocks if the queue is empty

an optional parameter to require fairness. If fairness is specified, then the longest-waiting threads are given preferential treatment. As always, fairness exacts a significant performance penalty, and you should only use it if your problem specifically requires it.

The `PriorityBlockingQueue` is a priority queue, not a first-in/first-out queue. Elements are removed in order of their priority. The queue has unbounded capacity, but retrieval will block if the queue is empty. (See Chapter 9 for more information on priority queues.)

A `DelayQueue` contains objects that implement the `Delayed` interface:

```
interface Delayed extends Comparable<Delayed>
{
    long getDelay(TimeUnit unit);
}
```

The `getDelay` method returns the remaining delay of the object. A negative value indicates that the delay has elapsed. Elements can only be removed from a `DelayQueue` if their delay has elapsed. You also need to implement the `compareTo` method. The `DelayQueue` uses that method to sort the entries.

Java 7 adds a `TransferQueue` interface that allows a producer thread to wait until a consumer is ready to take on an item. When a producer calls

```
q.transfer(item);
```

the call blocks until another thread removes it. The `LinkedTransferQueue` class implements this interface.

The program in Listing 12.6 shows how to use a blocking queue to control a set of threads. The program searches through all files in a directory and its subdirectories, printing lines that contain a given keyword.

A producer thread enumerates all files in all subdirectories and places them in a blocking queue. This operation is fast, and the queue would quickly fill up with all files in the file system if it was not bounded.

We also start a large number of search threads. Each search thread takes a file from the queue, opens it, prints all lines containing the keyword, and then takes the next file. We use a trick to terminate the application when no further work is required. In order to signal completion, the enumeration thread places a dummy object into the queue. (This is similar to a dummy suitcase with a label “last bag” in a baggage claim belt.) When a search thread takes the dummy, it puts it back and terminates.

Note that no explicit thread synchronization is required. In this application, we use the queue data structure as a synchronization mechanism.

---

**Listing 12.6** `blockingQueue/BlockingQueueTest.java`

---

```
1 package blockingQueue;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4 import java.nio.charset.*;
5 import java.nio.file.*;
6 import java.util.*;
7 import java.util.concurrent.*;
8 import java.util.stream.*;
9
10 /**
11  * @version 1.03 2018-03-17
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13  */
14 public class BlockingQueueTest
15 {
16     private static final int FILE_QUEUE_SIZE = 10;
17     private static final int SEARCH_THREADS = 100;
18     private static final Path DUMMY = Path.of("");
19     private static BlockingQueue<Path> queue = new ArrayBlockingQueue<>(FILE_QUEUE_SIZE);
20
21     public static void main(String[] args)
22     {
```

```
23     try (var in = new Scanner(System.in))
24     {
25         System.out.print("Enter base directory (e.g. /opt/jdk-11-src): ");
26         String directory = in.nextLine();
27         System.out.print("Enter keyword (e.g. volatile): ");
28         String keyword = in.nextLine();
29
30         Runnable enumerator = () -> {
31             try
32             {
33                 enumerate(Path.of(directory));
34                 queue.put(DUMMY);
35             }
36             catch (IOException e)
37             {
38                 e.printStackTrace();
39             }
40             catch (InterruptedException e)
41             {
42             }
43         };
44
45         new Thread(enumerator).start();
46         for (int i = 1; i <= SEARCH_THREADS; i++) {
47             Runnable searcher = () -> {
48                 try
49                 {
50                     var done = false;
51                     while (!done)
52                     {
53                         Path file = queue.take();
54                         if (file == DUMMY)
55                         {
56                             queue.put(file);
57                             done = true;
58                         }
59                         else search(file, keyword);
60                     }
61                 }
62                 catch (IOException e)
63                 {
64                     e.printStackTrace();
65                 }
66                 catch (InterruptedException e)
67                 {
68                 }
69             };
69     };
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.6 (Continued)**

```
70         new Thread(searcher).start();
71     }
72   }
73 }
74 /**
75 * Recursively enumerates all files in a given directory and its subdirectories.
76 * See Chapters 1 and 2 of Volume II for the stream and file operations.
77 * @param directory the directory in which to start
78 */
79 public static void enumerate(Path directory) throws IOException, InterruptedException
80 {
81     try (Stream<Path> children = Files.list(directory))
82     {
83         for (Path child : children.collect(Collectors.toList()))
84         {
85             if (Files.isDirectory(child))
86                 enumerate(child);
87             else
88                 queue.put(child);
89         }
90     }
91 }
92 /**
93 * Searches a file for a given keyword and prints all matching lines.
94 * @param file the file to search
95 * @param keyword the keyword to search for
96 */
97 public static void search(Path file, String keyword) throws IOException
98 {
99     try (var in = new Scanner(file, StandardCharsets.UTF_8))
100    {
101        int lineNumber = 0;
102        while (in.hasNextLine())
103        {
104            lineNumber++;
105            String line = in.nextLine();
106            if (line.contains(keyword))
107                System.out.printf("%s:%d:%s%n", file, lineNumber, line);
108        }
109    }
110 }
111 }
112 }
113 }
```

---

**java.util.concurrent.ArrayBlockingQueue<E>** 5

- `ArrayBlockingQueue(int capacity)`
- `ArrayBlockingQueue(int capacity, boolean fair)`

constructs a blocking queue with the given capacity and fairness settings. The queue is implemented as a circular array.

**java.util.concurrent.LinkedBlockingQueue<E>** 5**java.util.concurrent.LinkedBlockingDeque<E>** 6

- `LinkedBlockingQueue()`
- `LinkedBlockingDeque()`

constructs an unbounded blocking queue or deque, implemented as a linked list.

- `LinkedBlockingQueue(int capacity)`
- `LinkedBlockingDeque(int capacity)`

constructs a bounded blocking queue or deque with the given capacity, implemented as a linked list.

**java.util.concurrent.DelayQueue<E extends Delayed>** 5

- `DelayQueue()`

constructs an unbounded blocking queue of `Delayed` elements. Only elements whose delay has expired can be removed from the queue.

**java.util.concurrent.Delayed** 5

- `long getDelay(TimeUnit unit)`  
gets the delay for this object, measured in the given time unit.

**java.util.concurrent.PriorityBlockingQueue<E>** 5

- `PriorityBlockingQueue()`
- `PriorityBlockingQueue(int initialCapacity)`
- `PriorityBlockingQueue(int initialCapacity, Comparator<? super E> comparator)`

constructs an unbounded blocking priority queue implemented as a heap. The default for the initial capacity is 11. If the comparator is not specified, the elements must implement the `Comparable` interface.

***java.util.concurrent.BlockingQueue<E>*** 5

- `void put(E element)`  
adds the element, blocking if necessary.
- `E take()`  
removes and returns the head element, blocking if necessary.
- `boolean offer(E element, long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
adds the given element and returns true if successful, blocking if necessary until the element has been added or the time has elapsed.
- `E poll(long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
removes and returns the head element, blocking if necessary until an element is available or the time has elapsed. Returns null upon failure.

***java.util.concurrent.BlockingDeque<E>*** 6

- `void putFirst(E element)`
- `void putLast(E element)`  
adds the element, blocking if necessary.
- `E takeFirst()`
- `E takeLast()`  
removes and returns the head or tail element, blocking if necessary.
- `boolean offerFirst(E element, long time, TimeUnit unit)`
- `boolean offerLast(E element, long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
adds the given element and returns true if successful, blocking if necessary until the element has been added or the time has elapsed.
- `E pollFirst(long time, TimeUnit unit)`
- `E pollLast(long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
removes and returns the head or tail element, blocking if necessary until an element is available or the time has elapsed. Returns null upon failure.

***java.util.concurrent.TransferQueue<E>*** 7

- `void transfer(E element)`
- `boolean tryTransfer(E element, long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
transfers a value, or tries transferring it with a given timeout, blocking until another thread has removed the item. The second method returns true if successful.

### 12.5.2 Efficient Maps, Sets, and Queues

The `java.util.concurrent` package supplies efficient implementations for maps, sorted sets, and queues: `ConcurrentHashMap`, `ConcurrentSkipListMap`, `ConcurrentSkipListSet`, and `ConcurrentLinkedQueue`.

These collections use sophisticated algorithms that minimize contention by allowing concurrent access to different parts of the data structure.

Unlike most collections, the `size` method of these classes does not necessarily operate in constant time. Determining the current size of one of these collections usually requires traversal.



**NOTE:** Some applications use humongous concurrent hash maps, so large that the `size` method is insufficient because it returns an `int`. What is one to do with a map that has over two billion entries? The `mappingCount` method returns the size as a `long`.

The collections return *weakly consistent* iterators. That means that the iterators may or may not reflect all modifications that are made after they were constructed, but they will not return a value twice and they will not throw a `ConcurrentModificationException`.



**NOTE:** In contrast, an iterator of a collection in the `java.util` package throws a `ConcurrentModificationException` when the collection has been modified after construction of the iterator.

The concurrent hash map can efficiently support a large number of readers and a bounded number of writers.



**NOTE:** A hash map keeps all entries with the same hash code in the same “bucket.” Some applications use poor hash functions, and as a result all entries end up in a small number of buckets, severely degrading performance. Even generally reasonable hash functions, such as that of the `String` class, can be problematic. For example, an attacker can slow down a program by crafting a large number of strings that hash to the same value. In recent Java versions, the concurrent hash map organizes the buckets as trees, not lists, when the key type implements `Comparable`, guaranteeing  $O(\log n)$  performance.

**java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentLinkedQueue<E> 5**

- `ConcurrentLinkedQueue<E>()`

constructs an unbounded, nonblocking queue that can be safely accessed by multiple threads.

**java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentSkipListSet<E> 6**

- `ConcurrentSkipListSet<E>()`
- `ConcurrentSkipListSet<E>(Comparator<? super E> comp)`

constructs a sorted set that can be safely accessed by multiple threads. The first constructor requires that the elements implement the Comparable interface.

**java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentHashMap<K, V> 5****java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentSkipListMap<K, V> 6**

- `ConcurrentHashMap<K, V>()`
- `ConcurrentHashMap<K, V>(int initialCapacity)`
- `ConcurrentHashMap<K, V>(int initialCapacity, float loadFactor, int concurrencyLevel)`

constructs a hash map that can be safely accessed by multiple threads. The default for the initial capacity is 16. If the average load per bucket exceeds the load factor, the table is resized. The default is 0.75. The concurrency level is the estimated number of concurrent writer threads.

- `ConcurrentSkipListMap<K, V>()`
- `ConcurrentSkipListSet<K, V>(Comparator<? super K> comp)`

constructs a sorted map that can be safely accessed by multiple threads. The first constructor requires that the keys implement the Comparable interface.

### 12.5.3 Atomic Update of Map Entries

The original version of `ConcurrentHashMap` only had a few methods for atomic updates, which made for somewhat awkward programming. Suppose we want to count how often certain features are observed. As a simple example, suppose multiple threads encounter words, and we want to count their frequencies.

Can we use a `ConcurrentHashMap<String, Long>`? Consider the code for incrementing a count. Obviously, the following is not thread-safe:

```
Long oldValue = map.get(word);
Long newValue = oldValue == null ? 1 : oldValue + 1;
map.put(word, newValue); // ERROR--might not replace oldValue
```

Another thread might be updating the exact same count at the same time.



**NOTE:** Some programmers are surprised that a supposedly thread-safe data structure permits operations that are not thread-safe. But there are two entirely different considerations. If multiple threads modify a plain `HashMap`, they can destroy the internal structure (an array of linked lists). Some of the links may go missing, or even go in circles, rendering the data structure unusable. That will never happen with a `ConcurrentHashMap`. In the example above, the code for `get` and `put` will never corrupt the data structure. But, since the sequence of operations is not atomic, the result is not predictable.

In old versions of Java, it was necessary to use the `replace` method, which atomically replaces an old value with a new one, provided that no other thread has come before and replaced the old value with something else. You had to keep doing it until the attempt succeeded:

```
do
{
    oldValue = map.get(word);
    newValue = oldValue == null ? 1 : oldValue + 1;
}
while (!map.replace(word, oldValue, newValue));
```

An alternative was to use a `ConcurrentHashMap<String, AtomicLong>` and the following update code:

```
map.putIfAbsent(word, new AtomicLong());
map.get(word).incrementAndGet();
```

Unfortunately, a new `AtomicLong` is constructed for each increment, whether or not it is needed.

Nowadays, the Java API provides methods that make atomic updates more convenient. The `compute` method is called with a key and a function to compute the new value. That function receives the key and the associated value, or `null` if there is none, and it computes the new value. For example, here is how we can update a map of integer counters:

```
map.compute(word, (k, v) -> v == null ? 1 : v + 1);
```



**NOTE:** You cannot have null values in a ConcurrentHashMap. There are many methods that use a null value as an indication that a given key is not present in the map.

---

There are also variants `computeIfPresent` and `computeIfAbsent` that only compute a new value when there is already an old one, or when there isn't yet one. A map of `LongAdder` counters can be updated with

```
map.computeIfAbsent(word, k -> new LongAdder()).increment();
```

That is almost like the call to `putIfAbsent` that you saw before, but the `LongAdder` constructor is only called when a new counter is actually needed.

You often need to do something special when a key is added for the first time. The `merge` method makes this particularly convenient. It has a parameter for the initial value that is used when the key is not yet present. Otherwise, the function that you supplied is called, combining the existing value and the initial value. (Unlike `compute`, the function does *not* process the key.)

```
map.merge(word, 1L, (existingValue, newValue) -> existingValue + newValue);
```

or simply

```
map.merge(word, 1L, Long::sum);
```

It doesn't get more concise than that.



**NOTE:** If the function that is passed to `compute` or `merge` returns null, the existing entry is removed from the map.

---



**CAUTION:** When you use `compute` or `merge`, keep in mind that the function that you supply should not do a lot of work. While that function runs, some other updates to the map may be blocked. Of course, that function should also not update other parts of the map.

---

The program in Listing 12.7 uses a concurrent hash map to count all words in the Java files of a directory tree.

---

#### Listing 12.7 concurrentHashMap/CHMDemo.java

---

```
1 package concurrentHashMap;
2
3 import java.io.*;
```

```
4 import java.nio.file.*;
5 import java.util.*;
6 import java.util.concurrent.*;
7 import java.util.stream.*;
8
9 /**
10  * This program demonstrates concurrent hash maps.
11  * @version 1.0 2018-01-04
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13  */
14 public class CHMDemo
15 {
16     public static ConcurrentHashMap<String, Long> map = new ConcurrentHashMap<>();
17
18     /**
19      * Adds all words in the given file to the concurrent hash map.
20      * @param file a file
21      */
22     public static void process(Path file)
23     {
24         try (var in = new Scanner(file))
25         {
26             while (in.hasNext())
27             {
28                 String word = in.next();
29                 map.merge(word, 1L, Long::sum);
30             }
31         }
32         catch (IOException e)
33         {
34             e.printStackTrace();
35         }
36     }
37
38     /**
39      * Returns all descendants of a given directory--see Chapters 1 and 2 of Volume II.
40      * @param rootDir the root directory
41      * @return a set of all descendants of the root directory
42      */
43     public static Set<Path> descendants(Path rootDir) throws IOException
44     {
45         try (Stream<Path> entries = Files.walk(rootDir))
46         {
47             return entries.collect(Collectors.toSet());
48         }
49     }
50 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.7 (Continued)**

```
51  public static void main(String[] args)
52      throws InterruptedException, ExecutionException, IOException
53  {
54      int processors = Runtime.getRuntime().availableProcessors();
55      ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(processors);
56      Path pathToRoot = Path.of(".");
57      for (Path p : descendants(pathToRoot))
58      {
59          if (p.getFileName().toString().endsWith(".java"))
60              executor.execute(() -> process(p));
61      }
62      executor.shutdown();
63      executor.awaitTermination(10, TimeUnit.MINUTES);
64      map.forEach((k, v) ->
65      {
66          if (v >= 10)
67              System.out.println(k + " occurs " + v + " times");
68      });
69  }
70 }
```

---

#### 12.5.4 Bulk Operations on Concurrent Hash Maps

The Java API provides bulk operations on concurrent hash maps that can safely execute even while other threads operate on the map. The bulk operations traverse the map and operate on the elements they find as they go along. No effort is made to freeze a snapshot of the map in time. Unless you happen to know that the map is not being modified while a bulk operation runs, you should treat its result as an approximation of the map's state.

There are three kinds of operations:

- `search` applies a function to each key and/or value, until the function yields a non-null result. Then the search terminates and the function's result is returned.
- `reduce` combines all keys and/or values, using a provided accumulation function.
- `forEach` applies a function to all keys and/or values.

Each operation has four versions:

- `operationKeys`: operates on keys.
- `operationValues`: operates on values.

- *operation*: operates on keys and values.
- *operationEntries*: operates on `Map.Entry` objects.

With each of the operations, you need to specify a *parallelism threshold*. If the map contains more elements than the threshold, the bulk operation is parallelized. If you want the bulk operation to run in a single thread, use a threshold of `Long.MAX_VALUE`. If you want the maximum number of threads to be made available for the bulk operation, use a threshold of 1.

Let's look at the search methods first. Here are the versions:

```
U searchKeys(long threshold, BiFunction<? super K, ? extends U> f)
U searchValues(long threshold, BiFunction<? super V, ? extends U> f)
U search(long threshold, BiFunction<? super K, ? super V, ? extends U> f)
U searchEntries(long threshold, BiFunction<Map.Entry<K, V>, ? extends U> f)
```

For example, suppose we want to find the first word that occurs more than 1,000 times. We need to search keys and values:

```
String result = map.search(threshold, (k, v) -> v > 1000 ? k : null);
```

Then `result` is set to the first match, or to `null` if the search function returns `null` for all inputs.

The `forEach` methods have two variants. The first one simply applies a *consumer* function for each map entry, for example

```
map.forEach(threshold,
(k, v) -> System.out.println(k + " -> " + v));
```

The second variant takes an additional *transformer* function, which is applied first, and its result is passed to the consumer:

```
map.forEach(threshold,
(k, v) -> k + " -> " + v, // transformer
System.out::println); // consumer
```

The transformer can be used as a filter. Whenever the transformer returns `null`, the value is silently skipped. For example, here we only print the entries with large values:

```
map.forEach(threshold,
(k, v) -> v > 1000 ? k + " -> " + v : null, // filter and transformer
System.out::println); // the nulls are not passed to the consumer
```

The `reduce` operations combine their inputs with an accumulation function. For example, here is how you can compute the sum of all values:

```
Long sum = map.reduceValues(threshold, Long::sum);
```

As with `forEach`, you can also supply a transformer function. Here we compute the length of the longest key:

```
Integer maxlen = map.reduceKeys(threshold,  
    String::length, // transformer  
    Integer::max); // accumulator
```

The transformer can act as a filter, by returning `null` to exclude unwanted inputs. Here, we count how many entries have value > 1000:

```
Long count = map.reduceValues(threshold,  
    v -> v > 1000 ? 1L : null,  
    Long::sum);
```



**NOTE:** If the map is empty, or all entries have been filtered out, the `reduce` operation returns `null`. If there is only one element, its transformation is returned, and the accumulator is not applied.

---

There are specializations for `int`, `long`, and `double` outputs with suffixes `ToInt`, `ToLong`, and `ToDouble`. You need to transform the input to a primitive value and specify a default value and an accumulator function. The default value is returned when the map is empty.

```
long sum = map.reduceValuesToLong(threshold,  
    Long::longValue, // transformer to primitive type  
    0, // default value for empty map  
    Long::sum); // primitive type accumulator
```



**CAUTION:** These specializations act differently from the object versions where there is only one element to be considered. Instead of returning the transformed element, it is accumulated with the default. Therefore, the default must be the neutral element of the accumulator.

---

### 12.5.5 Concurrent Set Views

Suppose you want a large, thread-safe set instead of a map. There is no `ConcurrentHashSet` class, and you know better than trying to create your own. Of course, you can use a `ConcurrentHashMap` with bogus values, but then you get a map, not a set, and you can't apply operations of the `Set` interface.

The static `newKeySet` method yields a `Set<K>` that is actually a wrapper around a `ConcurrentHashMap<K, Boolean>`. (All map values are `Boolean.TRUE`, but you don't actually care since you just use it as a set.)

```
Set<String> words = ConcurrentHashMap.<String>newKeySet();
```

Of course, if you have an existing map, the `keySet` method yields the set of keys. That set is mutable. If you remove the set's elements, the keys (and their values) are removed from the map. But it doesn't make sense to add elements to the key set, because there would be no corresponding values to add. There is a second `keySet` method to `ConcurrentHashMap`, with a default value, to be used when adding elements to the set:

```
Set<String> words = map.keySet(1L);
words.add("Java");
```

If "Java" wasn't already present in `words`, it now has a value of one.

### 12.5.6 Copy on Write Arrays

The `CopyOnWriteArrayList` and `CopyOnWriteArraySet` are thread-safe collections in which all mutators make a copy of the underlying array. This arrangement is useful if the threads that iterate over the collection greatly outnumber the threads that mutate it. When you construct an iterator, it contains a reference to the current array. If the array is later mutated, the iterator still has the old array, but the collection's array is replaced. As a consequence, the older iterator has a consistent (but potentially outdated) view that it can access without any synchronization expense.

### 12.5.7 Parallel Array Algorithms

The `Arrays` class has a number of parallelized operations. The static `Arrays.parallelSort` method can sort an array of primitive values or objects. For example,

```
var contents = new String(Files.readAllBytes(
    Path.of("alice.txt")), StandardCharsets.UTF_8); // read file into string
String[] words = contents.split("[\\P{L}]+"); // split along nonletters
Arrays.parallelSort(words);
```

When you sort objects, you can supply a `Comparator`.

```
Arrays.parallelSort(words, Comparator.comparing(String::length));
```

With all methods, you can supply the bounds of a range, such as

```
Arrays.parallelSort(words.length / 2, words.length); // sort the upper half
```



**NOTE:** At first glance, it seems a bit odd that these methods have `parallel` in their name, since the user shouldn't care how the sorting happens. However, the API designers wanted to make it clear that the sorting is parallelized. That way, users are on notice to avoid comparators with side effects.

The `parallelSetAll` method fills an array with values that are computed from a function. The function receives the element index and computes the value at that location.

```
Arrays.parallelSetAll(values, i -> i % 10);
// fills values with 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 . . .
```

Clearly, this operation benefits from being parallelized. There are versions for all primitive type arrays and for object arrays.

Finally, there is a `parallelPrefix` method that replaces each array element with the accumulation of the prefix for a given associative operation. Huh? Here is an example. Consider the array `[1, 2, 3, 4, . . .]` and the `x` operation. After executing `Arrays.parallelPrefix(values, (x, y) -> x * y)`, the array contains

```
[1, 1
 × 2, 1
 × 2
 × 3, 1
 × 2
 × 3
 × 4, . . .]
```

Perhaps surprisingly, this computation can be parallelized. First, join neighboring elements, as indicated here:

```
[1, 1
 × 2, 3, 3
 × 4, 5, 5
 × 6, 7, 7
 × 8]
```

The gray values are left alone. Clearly, one can make this computation in parallel in separate regions of the array. In the next step, update the indicated elements by multiplying them with elements that are one or two positions below:

```
[1, 1 × 2
 , 1 × 2 × 3, 1 × 2 × 3 × 4, 5, 5 × 6, 5 × 6 × 7, 5 × 6 × 7 × 8]
```

This, again, can be done in parallel. After  $\log n$  steps, the process is complete. This is a win over the straightforward linear computation if sufficient processors are available. On special-purpose hardware, this algorithm is commonly used, and users of such hardware are quite ingenious in adapting it to a variety of problems.

### 12.5.8 Older Thread-Safe Collections

Ever since the initial release of Java, the `Vector` and `Hashtable` classes provided thread-safe implementations of a dynamic array and a hash table. These classes are now considered obsolete, having been replaced by the `ArrayList` and `HashMap` classes. Those classes are not thread-safe. Instead, a different mechanism is supplied in the collections library. Any collection class can be made thread-safe by means of a *synchronization wrapper*:

```
List<E> synchArrayList = Collections.synchronizedList(new ArrayList<E>());
Map<K, V> synchHashMap = Collections.synchronizedMap(new HashMap<K, V>());
```

The methods of the resulting collections are protected by a lock, providing thread-safe access.

You should make sure that no thread accesses the data structure through the original unsynchronized methods. The easiest way to ensure this is not to save any reference to the original object. Simply construct a collection and immediately pass it to the wrapper, as we did in our examples.

You still need to use “client-side” locking if you want to *iterate* over the collection while another thread has the opportunity to mutate it:

```
synchronized (synchHashMap)
{
    Iterator<K> iter = synchHashMap.keySet().iterator();
    while (iter.hasNext()) . . .;
}
```

You must use the same code if you use a “for each” loop because the loop uses an iterator. Note that the iterator actually fails with a `ConcurrentModificationException` if another thread mutates the collection while the iteration is in progress. The synchronization is still required so that the concurrent modification can be reliably detected.

You are usually better off using the collections defined in the `java.util.concurrent` package instead of the synchronization wrappers. In particular, the `ConcurrentHashMap` has been carefully implemented so that multiple threads can access it without blocking each other, provided they access different buckets. One exception is an array list that is frequently mutated. In that case, a synchronized `ArrayList` can outperform a `CopyOnWriteArrayList`.

**java.util.Collections 1.2**

- static <E> Collection<E> synchronizedCollection(Collection<E> c)
- static <E> List synchronizedList(List<E> c)
- static <E> Set synchronizedSet(Set<E> c)
- static <E> SortedSet synchronizedSortedSet(SortedSet<E> c)
- static <K, V> Map<K, V> synchronizedMap(Map<K, V> c)
- static <K, V> SortedMap<K, V> synchronizedSortedMap(SortedMap<K, V> c)

constructs a view of the collection whose methods are synchronized.

## 12.6 Tasks and Thread Pools

Constructing a new thread is somewhat expensive because it involves interaction with the operating system. If your program creates a large number of short-lived threads, you should not map each task to a separate thread, but use a *thread pool* instead. A thread pool contains a number of threads that are ready to run. You give a `Runnable` to the pool, and one of the threads calls the `run` method. When the `run` method exits, the thread doesn't die but stays around to serve the next request.

In the following sections, you will see the tools that the Java concurrency framework provides for coordinating concurrent tasks.

### 12.6.1 Callables and Futures

A `Runnable` encapsulates a task that runs asynchronously; you can think of it as an asynchronous method with no parameters and no return value. A `Callable` is similar to a `Runnable`, but it returns a value. The `Callable` interface is a parameterized type, with a single method `call`.

```
public interface Callable<V>
{
    V call() throws Exception;
}
```

The type parameter is the type of the returned value. For example, a `Callable<Integer>` represents an asynchronous computation that eventually returns an `Integer` object.

A `Future` holds the *result* of an asynchronous computation. You start a computation, give someone the `Future` object, and forget about it. The owner of the `Future` object can obtain the result when it is ready.

The `Future<V>` interface has the following methods:

```
V get()
V get(long timeout, TimeUnit unit)
void cancel(boolean mayInterrupt)
boolean isCancelled()
boolean isDone()
```

A call to the first `get` method blocks until the computation is finished. The second `get` method also blocks, but it throws a `TimeoutException` if the call timed out before the computation finished. If the thread running the computation is interrupted, both methods throw an `InterruptedException`. If the computation has already finished, `get` returns immediately.

The `isDone` method returns `false` if the computation is still in progress, `true` if it is finished.

You can cancel the computation with the `cancel` method. If the computation has not yet started, it is canceled and will never start. If the computation is currently in progress, it is interrupted if the `mayInterrupt` parameter is `true`.



**CAUTION:** Canceling a task involves two steps. The underlying thread must be located and interrupted. And the task implementation (in the `call` method) must sense the interruption and abandon its work. If a `Future` object does not know on which thread the task is executed, or if the task does not monitor the interrupted status of the thread on which it executes, cancellation will have no effect.

One way to execute a `Callable` is to use a `FutureTask`, which implements both the `Future` and `Runnable` interfaces, so that you can construct a thread for running it:

```
Callable<Integer> task = . . .;
var futureTask = new FutureTask<Integer>(task);
var t = new Thread(futureTask); // it's a Runnable
t.start();
.
.
.
Integer result = futureTask.get(); // it's a Future
```

More commonly, you will pass a `Callable` to an executor. That is the topic of the next section.

<b><i>java.util.concurrent.Callable&lt;V&gt;</i></b> 5
• <code>V call()</code>
runs a task that yields a result.

**java.util.concurrent.Future<V>** 5

- `V get()`
- `V get(long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
gets the result, blocking until it is available or the given time has elapsed. The second method throws a `TimeoutException` if it was unsuccessful.
- `boolean cancel(boolean mayInterrupt)`  
attempts to cancel the execution of this task. If the task has already started and the `mayInterrupt` parameter is true, it is interrupted. Returns true if the cancellation was successful.
- `boolean isCancelled()`  
returns true if the task was canceled before it completed.
- `boolean isDone()`  
returns true if the task completed, through normal completion, cancellation, or an exception.

**java.util.concurrent.FutureTask<V>** 5

- `FutureTask(Callable<V> task)`
- `FutureTask(Runnable task, V result)`  
constructs an object that is both a `Future<V>` and a `Runnable`.

## 12.6.2 Executors

The `Executors` class has a number of static factory methods for constructing thread pools; see Table 12.2 for a summary.

The `newCachedThreadPool` method constructs a thread pool that executes each task immediately, using an existing idle thread when available and creating a new thread otherwise. The `newFixedThreadPool` method constructs a thread pool with a fixed size. If more tasks are submitted than there are idle threads, the unserved tasks are placed on a queue. They are run when other tasks have completed. The `newSingleThreadExecutor` is a degenerate pool of size 1 where a single thread executes the submitted tasks, one after another. These three methods return an object of the `ThreadPoolExecutor` class that implements the `ExecutorService` interface.

Use a cached thread pool when you have threads that are short-lived or spend a lot of time blocking. However, if you have threads that are working hard without blocking, you don't want to run a large number of them together.

**Table 12.2** Executors Factory Methods

Method	Description
<code>newCachedThreadPool</code>	New threads are created as needed; idle threads are kept for 60 seconds.
<code>newFixedThreadPool</code>	The pool contains a fixed set of threads; idle threads are kept indefinitely.
<code>newWorkStealingPool</code>	A pool suitable for “fork-join” tasks (see Section 12.6.4) in which complex tasks are broken up into simpler tasks and idle threads “steal” simpler tasks.
<code>newSingleThreadExecutor</code>	A “pool” with a single thread that executes the submitted tasks sequentially.
<code>newScheduledThreadPool</code>	A fixed-thread pool for scheduled execution.
<code>newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor</code>	A single-thread “pool” for scheduled execution.

For optimum speed, the number of concurrent threads is the number of processor cores. In such a situation, you should use a fixed thread pool that bounds the total number of concurrent threads.

The single-thread executor is useful for performance analysis. If you temporarily replace a cached or fixed thread pool with a single-thread pool, you can measure how much slower your application runs without the benefit of concurrency.



**NOTE:** Java EE provides a `ManagedExecutorService` subclass that is suitable for concurrent tasks in a Java EE environment. Similarly, web frameworks such as Play provide executor services that are intended for tasks within the framework.

You can submit a `Runnable` or `Callable` to an `ExecutorService` with one of the following methods:

```
Future<T> submit(Callable<T> task)
Future<?> submit(Runnable task)
Future<T> submit(Runnable task, T result)
```

The pool will run the submitted task at its earliest convenience. When you call `submit`, you get back a `Future` object that you can use to get the result or cancel the task.

The second `submit` method returns an odd-looking `Future<?>`. You can use such an object to call `isDone`, `cancel`, or `isCancelled`, but the `get` method simply returns `null` upon completion.

The third version of `submit` yields a `Future` whose `get` method returns the given result object upon completion.

When you are done with a thread pool, call `shutdown`. This method initiates the shutdown sequence for the pool. An executor that is shut down accepts no new tasks. When all tasks are finished, the threads in the pool die. Alternatively, you can call `shutdownNow`. The pool then cancels all tasks that have not yet begun.

Here, in summary, is what you do to use a thread pool:

1. Call the static `newCachedThreadPool` or `newFixedThreadPool` method of the `Executors` class.
2. Call `submit` to submit `Callable` or `Runnable` objects.
3. Hang on to the returned `Future` objects so that you can get the results or cancel the tasks.
4. Call `shutdown` when you no longer want to submit any tasks.

The `ScheduledExecutorService` interface has methods for scheduled or repeated execution of tasks. It is a generalization of `java.util.Timer` that allows for thread pooling. The `newScheduledThreadPool` and `newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor` methods of the `Executors` class return objects that implement the `ScheduledExecutorService` interface.

You can schedule a `Runnable` or `Callable` to run once, after an initial delay. You can also schedule a `Runnable` to run periodically. See the API notes for details.

#### `java.util.concurrent.Executors` 5

- `ExecutorService newCachedThreadPool()`  
returns a cached thread pool that creates threads as needed and terminates threads that have been idle for 60 seconds.
- `ExecutorService newFixedThreadPool(int threads)`  
returns a thread pool that uses the given number of threads to execute tasks.
- `ExecutorService newSingleThreadExecutor()`  
returns an executor that executes tasks sequentially in a single thread.

(Continues)

***java.util.concurrent.Executors 5 (Continued)***

- `ScheduledExecutorService newScheduledThreadPool(int threads)`  
returns a thread pool that uses the given number of threads to schedule tasks.
- `ScheduledExecutorService newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor()`  
returns an executor that schedules tasks in a single thread.

***java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService 5***

- `Future<T> submit(Callable<T> task)`
- `Future<T> submit(Runnable task, T result)`
- `Future<?> submit(Runnable task)`  
submits the given task for execution.
- `void shutdown()`  
shuts down the service, completing the already submitted tasks but not accepting new submissions.

***java.util.concurrent.ThreadPoolExecutor 5***

- `int getLargestPoolSize()`  
returns the largest size of the thread pool during the life of this executor.

***java.util.concurrent.ScheduledExecutorService 5***

- `ScheduledFuture<V> schedule(Callable<V> task, long time, TimeUnit unit)`
- `ScheduledFuture<?> schedule(Runnable task, long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
schedules the given task after the given time has elapsed.
- `ScheduledFuture<?> scheduleAtFixedRate(Runnable task, long initialDelay, long period, TimeUnit unit)`  
schedules the given task to run periodically, every period units, after the initial delay has elapsed.
- `ScheduledFuture<?> scheduleWithFixedDelay(Runnable task, long initialDelay, long delay, TimeUnit unit)`  
schedules the given task to run periodically, with delay units between completion of one invocation and the start of the next, after the initial delay has elapsed.

### 12.6.3 Controlling Groups of Tasks

You have seen how to use an executor service as a thread pool to increase the efficiency of task execution. Sometimes, an executor is used for a more tactical reason—simply to control a group of related tasks. For example, you can cancel all tasks in an executor with the `shutdownNow` method.

The `invokeAny` method submits all objects in a collection of `Callable` objects and returns the result of a completed task. You don't know which task that is—presumably, it is the one that finished most quickly. Use this method for a search problem in which you are willing to accept any solution. For example, suppose that you need to factor a large integer—a computation that is required for breaking the RSA cipher. You could submit a number of tasks, each attempting a factorization with numbers in a different range. As soon as one of these tasks has an answer, your computation can stop.

The `invokeAll` method submits all objects in a collection of `Callable` objects, blocks until all of them complete, and returns a list of `Future` objects that represent the solutions to all tasks. You can process the results of the computation, when they are available, like this:

```
List<Callable<T>> tasks = . . .;
List<Future<T>> results = executor.invokeAll(tasks);
for (Future<T> result : results)
    processFurther(result.get());
```

In the `for` loop, the first call `result.get()` blocks until the first result is available. That is not a problem if all tasks finish in about the same time. However, it may be worth obtaining the results in the order in which they are available. This can be arranged with the `ExecutorCompletionService`.

Start with an executor, obtained in the usual way. Then construct an `ExecutorCompletionService`. Submit tasks to the completion service. The service manages a blocking queue of `Future` objects, containing the results of the submitted tasks as they become available. Thus, a more efficient organization for the preceding computation is the following:

```
var service = new ExecutorCompletionService<T>(executor);
for (Callable<T> task : tasks) service.submit(task);
for (int i = 0; i < tasks.size(); i++)
    processFurther(service.take().get());
```

The program in Listing 12.8 shows how to use callables and executors. In the first computation, we count how many files in a directory tree contain a given word. We make a separate task for each file:

```
Set<Path> files = descendants(Path.of(start));
var tasks = new ArrayList<Callable<Long>>();
```

```
for (Path file : files)
{
    Callable<Long> task = () -> occurrences(word, file);
    tasks.add(task);
}
```

Then we pass the tasks to an executor service:

```
ExecutorService executor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();
List<Future<Long>> results = executor.invokeAll(tasks);
```

To get the combined count, we add all results, blocking until they are available:

```
long total = 0;
for (Future<Long> result : results)
    total += result.get();
```

The program also displays the time spent during the search. Unzip the source code for the JDK somewhere and run the search. Then replace the executor service with a single-thread executor and try again to see whether the concurrent computation was faster.

In the second part of the program, we search for the first file that contains the given word. We use invokeAny to parallelize the search. Here, we have to be more careful about formulating the tasks. The invokeAny method terminates as soon as any task *returns*. So we cannot have the search tasks return a boolean to indicate success or failure. We don't want to stop searching when a task failed. Instead, a failing task throws a NoSuchElementException. Also, when one task has succeeded, the others are canceled. Therefore, we monitor the interrupted status. If the underlying thread is interrupted, the search task prints a message before terminating, so that you can see that the cancellation is effective.

```
public static Callable<Path> searchForTask(String word, Path path)
{
    return () -> {
        try (var in = new Scanner(path))
        {
            while (in.hasNext())
            {
                if (in.next().equals(word)) return path;
                if (Thread.currentThread().isInterrupted())
                {
                    System.out.println("Search in " + path + " canceled.");
                    return null;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        throw new NoSuchElementException();
    }
};

}
```

For informational purposes, this program prints out the largest pool size during execution. This information is not available through the `ExecutorService` interface. For that reason, we had to cast the pool object to the `ThreadPoolExecutor` class.



**TIP:** As you read through this program, you can appreciate how useful executor services are. In your own programs, you should use executor services to manage threads instead of launching threads individually.

---

#### **Listing 12.8** executors/ExecutorDemo.java

---

```
1 package executors;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4 import java.nio.file.*;
5 import java.time.*;
6 import java.util.*;
7 import java.util.concurrent.*;
8 import java.util.stream.*;
9
10 /**
11  * This program demonstrates the Callable interface and executors.
12  * @version 1.0 2018-01-04
13  * @author Cay Horstmann
14  */
15 public class ExecutorDemo
16 {
17     /**
18      * Counts occurrences of a given word in a file.
19      * @return the number of times the word occurs in the given word
20      */
21     public static long occurrences(String word, Path path)
22     {
23         try (var in = new Scanner(path))
24         {
25             int count = 0;
26             while (in.hasNext())
27                 if (in.next().equals(word)) count++;
28             return count;
29         }
29 }
```

```
30     catch (IOException ex)
31     {
32         return 0;
33     }
34 }
35
36 /**
37 * Returns all descendants of a given directory--see Chapters 1 and 2 of Volume II.
38 * @param rootDir the root directory
39 * @return a set of all descendants of the root directory
40 */
41 public static Set<Path> descendants(Path rootDir) throws IOException
42 {
43     try (Stream<Path> entries = Files.walk(rootDir))
44     {
45         return entries.filter(Files::isRegularFile)
46             .collect(Collectors.toSet());
47     }
48 }
49
50 /**
51 * Yields a task that searches for a word in a file.
52 * @param word the word to search
53 * @param path the file in which to search
54 * @return the search task that yields the path upon success
55 */
56 public static Callable<Path> searchForTask(String word, Path path)
57 {
58     return () -> {
59         try (var in = new Scanner(path))
60         {
61             while (in.hasNext())
62             {
63                 if (in.next().equals(word)) return path;
64                 if (Thread.currentThread().isInterrupted())
65                 {
66                     System.out.println("Search in " + path + " canceled.");
67                     return null;
68                 }
69             }
70             throw new NoSuchElementException();
71         }
72     };
73 }
74 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.8 (Continued)**

```
75  public static void main(String[] args)
76      throws InterruptedException, ExecutionException, IOException
77  {
78      try (var in = new Scanner(System.in))
79      {
80          System.out.print("Enter base directory (e.g. /opt/jdk-9-src): ");
81          String start = in.nextLine();
82          System.out.print("Enter keyword (e.g. volatile): ");
83          String word = in.nextLine();
84
85          Set<Path> files = descendants(Path.of(start));
86          var tasks = new ArrayList<Callable<Long>>();
87          for (Path file : files)
88          {
89              Callable<Long> task = () -> occurrences(word, file);
90              tasks.add(task);
91          }
92          ExecutorService executor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();
93          // use a single thread executor instead to see if multiple threads
94          // speed up the search
95          // ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
96
97          Instant startTime = Instant.now();
98          List<Future<Long>> results = executor.invokeAll(tasks);
99          long total = 0;
100         for (Future<Long> result : results)
101             total += result.get();
102         Instant endTime = Instant.now();
103         System.out.println("Occurrences of " + word + ": " + total);
104         System.out.println("Time elapsed: "
105             + Duration.between(startTime, endTime).toMillis() + " ms");
106
107         var searchTasks = new ArrayList<Callable<Path>>();
108         for (Path file : files)
109             searchTasks.add(searchForTask(word, file));
110         Path found = executor.invokeAny(searchTasks);
111         System.out.println(word + " occurs in: " + found);
112
113         if (executor instanceof ThreadPoolExecutor) // the single thread executor isn't
114             System.out.println("Largest pool size: "
115                 + ((ThreadPoolExecutor) executor).getLargestPoolSize());
116         executor.shutdown();
117     }
118 }
119 }
```

---

**java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService 5**

- `T invokeAny(Collection<Callable<T>> tasks)`
- `T invokeAny(Collection<Callable<T>> tasks, long timeout, TimeUnit unit)`  
executes the given tasks and returns the result of one of them. The second method throws a `TimeoutException` if a timeout occurs.
- `List<Future<T>> invokeAll(Collection<Callable<T>> tasks)`
- `List<Future<T>> invokeAll(Collection<Callable<T>> tasks, long timeout, TimeUnit unit)`  
executes the given tasks and returns the results of all of them. The second method throws a `TimeoutException` if a timeout occurs.

**java.util.concurrent.ExecutorCompletionService<V> 5**

- `ExecutorCompletionService(Executor e)`  
constructs an executor completion service that collects the results of the given executor.
- `Future<V> submit(Callable<V> task)`
- `Future<V> submit(Runnable task, V result)`  
submits a task to the underlying executor.
- `Future<V> take()`  
removes the next completed result, blocking if no completed results are available.
- `Future<V> poll()`
- `Future<V> poll(long time, TimeUnit unit)`  
removes and returns the next completed result, or returns `null` if no completed results are available. The second method waits for the given time.

## 12.6.4 The Fork-Join Framework

Some applications use a large number of threads that are mostly idle. An example would be a web server that uses one thread per connection. Other applications use one thread per processor core, in order to carry out computationally intensive tasks, such as image or video processing. The fork-join framework, which appeared in Java 7, is designed to support the latter. Suppose you have a processing task that naturally decomposes into subtasks, like this:

```
if (problemSize < threshold)
    solve problem directly
else
{
```

```

break problem into subproblems
recursively solve each subproblem
combine the results
}

```

One example is image processing. To enhance an image, you can transform the top half and the bottom half. If you have enough idle processors, those operations can run in parallel. (You will need to do a bit of extra work along the strip that separates the two halves, but that's a technical detail.)

Here, we discuss a simpler example. Suppose we want to count how many elements of an array fulfill a particular property. We cut the array in half, compute the counts of each half, and add them up.

To put the recursive computation in a form that is usable by the framework, supply a class that extends `RecursiveTask<T>` (if the computation produces a result of type `T`) or `RecursiveAction` (if it doesn't produce a result). Override the `compute` method to generate and invoke subtasks, and to combine their results.

```

class Counter extends RecursiveTask<Integer>
{
    ...
    protected Integer compute()
    {
        if (to - from < THRESHOLD)
        {
            solve problem directly
        }
        else
        {
            int mid = (from + to) / 2;
            var first = new Counter(values, from, mid, filter);
            var second = new Counter(values, mid, to, filter);
            invokeAll(first, second);
            return first.join() + second.join();
        }
    }
}

```

Here, the `invokeAll` method receives a number of tasks and blocks until all of them have completed. The `join` method yields the result. Here, we apply `join` to each subtask and return the sum.




---

**NOTE:** There is also a `get` method for getting the current result, but it is less attractive since it can throw checked exceptions that we are not allowed to throw in the `compute` method.

---

Listing 12.9 shows the complete example.

Behind the scenes, the fork-join framework uses an effective heuristic, called *work stealing*, for balancing the workload among available threads. Each worker thread has a deque (double-ended queue) for tasks. A worker thread pushes subtasks onto the head of its own deque. (Only one thread accesses the head, so no locking is required.) When a worker thread is idle, it “steals” a task from the tail of another deque. Since large subtasks are at the tail, such stealing is rare.



**CAUTION:** Fork-join pools are optimized for nonblocking workloads. If you add many blocking tasks into a fork-join pool, you can starve it. It is possible to overcome this by having tasks implement the `ForkJoinPool.ManagedBlocker` interface, but this is an advanced technique that we won’t discuss.

#### **Listing 12.9** forkJoin/ForkJoinTest.java

```
1 package forkJoin;
2
3 import java.util.concurrent.*;
4 import java.util.function.*;
5
6 /**
7  * This program demonstrates the fork-join framework.
8  * @version 1.01 2015-06-21
9  * @author Cay Horstmann
10 */
11 public class ForkJoinTest
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         final int SIZE = 10000000;
16         var numbers = new double[SIZE];
17         for (int i = 0; i < SIZE; i++) numbers[i] = Math.random();
18         var counter = new Counter(numbers, 0, numbers.length, x -> x > 0.5);
19         var pool = new ForkJoinPool();
20         pool.invoke(counter);
21         System.out.println(counter.join());
22     }
23 }
24
25 class Counter extends RecursiveTask<Integer>
26 {
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.9 (Continued)**

```
27  public static final int THRESHOLD = 1000;
28  private double[] values;
29  private int from;
30  private int to;
31  private DoublePredicate filter;
32
33  public Counter(double[] values, int from, int to, DoublePredicate filter)
34  {
35      this.values = values;
36      this.from = from;
37      this.to = to;
38      this.filter = filter;
39  }
40
41  protected Integer compute()
42  {
43      if (to - from < THRESHOLD)
44      {
45          int count = 0;
46          for (int i = from; i < to; i++)
47          {
48              if (filter.test(values[i])) count++;
49          }
50          return count;
51      }
52      else
53      {
54          int mid = (from + to) / 2;
55          var first = new Counter(values, from, mid, filter);
56          var second = new Counter(values, mid, to, filter);
57          invokeAll(first, second);
58          return first.join() + second.join();
59      }
60  }
61 }
```

---

## 12.7 Asynchronous Computations

So far, our approach to concurrent computation has been to break up a task, and then wait until all pieces have completed. But waiting is not always a good idea. In the following sections, you will see how to implement wait-free, or *asynchronous*, computations.

### 12.7.1 Completable Futures

When you have a Future object, you need to call get to obtain the value, blocking until the value is available. The CompletableFuture class implements the Future interface, and it provides a second mechanism for obtaining the result. You register a *callback* that will be invoked (in some thread) with the result once it is available.

```
CompletableFuture<String> f = . . .;
f.thenAccept(s -> Process the result string s);
```

In this way, you can process the result without blocking once it is available.

There are a few API methods that return CompletableFuture objects. For example, you can fetch a web page asynchronously with the experimental HttpClient class that you will encounter in Chapter 4 of Volume II:

```
HttpClient client = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder(URI.create(urlString)).GET().build();
CompletableFuture<HttpResponse<String>> f = client.sendAsync(
    request, BodyHandler.asString());
```

It is nice if there is a method that produces a ready-made CompletableFuture, but most of the time, you need to make your own. To run a task asynchronously and obtain a CompletableFuture, you don't submit it directly to an executor service. Instead, you call the static method CompletableFuture.supplyAsync. Here is how to read the web page without the benefit of the HttpClient class:

```
public CompletableFuture<String> readPage(URL url)
{
    return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() ->
    {
        try
        {
            return new String(url.openStream().readAllBytes(), "UTF-8");
        }
        catch (IOException e)
        {
            throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
        }
    }, executor);
}
```

If you omit the executor, the task is run on a default executor (namely the executor returned by ForkJoinPool.commonPool()). You usually don't want to do that.



**CAUTION:** Note that the first argument of the `supplyAsync` method is a `Supplier<T>`, not a `Callable<T>`. Both interfaces describe functions with no arguments and a return value of type `T`, but a `Supplier` function cannot throw a checked exception. As you can see from the code above, that was not an inspired choice.

---

A `CompletableFuture` can complete in two ways: either with a result, or with an uncaught exception. In order to handle both cases, use the `whenComplete` method. The supplied function is called with the result (or `null` if none) and the exception (or `null` if none).

```
f.whenComplete((s, t) -> {
    if (t == null) { Process the result s; }
    else { Process the Throwable t; }
});
```

The `CompletableFuture` is called `completable` because you can manually set a completion value. (In other concurrency libraries, such an object is called a *promise*.) Of course, when you create a `CompletableFuture` with `supplyAsync`, the completion value is implicitly set when the task has finished. But setting the result explicitly gives you additional flexibility. For example, two tasks can work simultaneously on computing an answer:

```
var f = new CompletableFuture<Integer>();
executor.execute(() ->
{
    int n = workHard(arg);
    f.complete(n);
});
executor.execute(() ->
{
    int n = workSmart(arg);
    f.complete(n);
});
```

To instead complete a future with an exception, call

```
Throwable t = . . .;
f.completeExceptionally(t);
```



**NOTE:** It is safe to call `complete` or `completeExceptionally` on the same future in multiple threads. If the future is already completed, these calls have no effect.

---

The `isDone` method tells you whether a `Future` object has been completed (normally or with an exception). In the preceding example, the `workHard` and `workSmart`

methods can use that information to stop working when the result has been determined by the other method.



**CAUTION:** Unlike a plain Future, the computation of a CompletableFuture is not interrupted when you invoke its cancel method. Canceling simply sets the Future object to be completed exceptionally, with a CancellationException. In general, this makes sense since a CompletableFuture may not have a single thread that is responsible for its completion. However, this restriction also applies to CompletableFuture instances returned by methods such as supplyAsync, which could in principle be interrupted.

### 12.7.2 Composing Completable Futures

Nonblocking calls are implemented through callbacks. The programmer registers a callback for the action that should occur after a task completes. Of course, if the next action is also asynchronous, the next action after that is in a different callback. Even though the programmer thinks in terms of “first do step 1, then step 2, then step 3,” the program logic can become dispersed in “callback hell.” It gets even worse when one has to add error handling. Suppose step 2 is “the user logs in.” You may need to repeat that step since the user can mistype the credentials. Trying to implement such a control flow in a set of callbacks, or to understand it once it has been implemented, can be quite challenging.

The CompletableFuture class solves this problem by providing a mechanism for *composing* asynchronous tasks into a processing pipeline.

For example, suppose we want to extract all images from a web page. Let’s say we have a method

```
public CompletableFuture<String> readPage(URL url)
```

that yields the text of a web page when it becomes available. If the method

```
public List<URL> getImageURLs(String page)
```

yields the URLs of images in an HTML page, you can schedule it to be called when the page is available:

```
CompletableFuture<String> contents = readPage(url);
CompletableFuture<List<URL>> imageURLs = contents.thenApply(this::getLinks);
```

The thenApply method doesn’t block either. It returns another future. When the first future has completed, its result is fed to the getImageURLs method, and the return value of that method becomes the final result.

With completable futures, you just specify what you want to have done and in which order. It won't all happen right away, of course, but what is important is that all the code is in one place.

Conceptually, `CompletableFuture` is a simple API, but there are many variants of methods for composing completable futures. Let us first look at those that deal with a single future (see Table 12.3). (For each method shown, there are also two `Async` variants that I don't show. One of them uses a shared `ForkJoinPool`, and the other has an `Executor` parameter.) In the table, I use a shorthand notation for the ponderous functional interfaces, writing `T -> U` instead of `Function<? super T, ? extends U>`. These aren't actual Java types, of course.

You have already seen the `thenApply` method. Suppose `f` is a function that receives values of type `T` and returns values of type `U`. The calls

```
CompletableFuture<U> future.thenApply(f);  
CompletableFuture<U> future.thenApplyAsync(f);
```

return a future that applies the function `f` to the result of `future` when it is available. The second call runs `f` in yet another thread.

The `thenCompose` method, instead of taking a function mapping the type `T` to the type `U`, receives a function mapping `T` to `CompletableFuture<U>`. That sounds rather abstract, but it can be quite natural. Consider the action of reading a web page from a given URL. Instead of supplying a method

```
public String blockingReadPage(URL url)
```

it is more elegant to have that method return a future:

```
public CompletableFuture<String> readPage(URL url)
```

Now, suppose we have another method that gets the URL from user input, perhaps from a dialog that won't reveal the answer until the user has clicked the OK button. That, too, is an event in the future:

```
public CompletableFuture<URL> getURLInput(String prompt)
```

Here we have two functions `T -> CompletableFuture<U>` and `U -> CompletableFuture<V>`. Clearly, they compose to a function `T -> CompletableFuture<V>` if the second function is called when the first one has completed. That is exactly what `thenCompose` does.

In the preceding section, you saw the `whenComplete` method for handling exceptions. There is also a `handle` method that requires a function processing the result or exception and computing a new result. In many cases, it is simpler to call the `exceptionally` method instead. That method computes a dummy value when an exception occurs:

```
CompletableFuture<List<URL>> imageURLs = readPage(url)
    .exceptionally(ex -> "<html></html>")
    .thenApply(this::getImageURLs)
```

You can handle a timeout in the same way:

```
CompletableFuture<List<URL>> imageURLs = readPage(url)
    .completeOnTimeout("<html></html>", 30, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
    .thenApply(this::getImageURLs)
```

Alternatively, you can throw an exception on timeout:

```
CompletableFuture<String> = readPage(url).orTimeout(30, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
```

The methods in Table 12.3 with void result are normally used at the end of a processing pipeline.

**Table 12.3** Adding an Action to a `CompletableFuture<T>` Object

Method	Parameter	Description
thenApply	T -> U	Apply a function to the result.
thenAccept	T -> void	Like <code>thenApply</code> , but with void result.
thenCompose	T -> CompletableFuture<U>	Invoke the function on the result and execute the returned future.
handle	(T, Throwable) -> U	Process the result or error and yield a new result.
whenComplete	(T, Throwable) -> void	Like <code>handle</code> , but with void result.
exceptionally	Throwable -> T	Compute a result from the error.
completeOnTimeout	T, long, TimeUnit	Yield the given value as the result in case of timeout.
orTimeout	long, TimeUnit	Yield a <code>TimeoutException</code> in case of timeout.
thenRun	Runnable	Execute the Runnable with void result.

Now let us turn to methods that combine multiple futures (see Table 12.4).

The first three methods run a `CompletableFuture<T>` and a `CompletableFuture<U>` action concurrently and combine the results.

The next three methods run two `CompletableFuture<T>` actions concurrently. As soon as one of them finishes, its result is passed on, and the other result is ignored.

Finally, the static `allOf` and `anyOf` methods take a variable number of `CompletableFuture<Void>` that completes when all of them, or any one of them, completes. The `allOf` method does not yield a result. The `anyOf` method does *not* terminate the remaining tasks.

**Table 12.4** Combining Multiple Composition Objects

Method	Parameters	Description
<code>thenCombine</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;U&gt;, (T, U) -&gt; V</code>	Execute both and combine the results with the given function.
<code>thenAcceptBoth</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;U&gt;, (T, U) -&gt; void</code>	Like <code>thenCombine</code> , but with void result.
<code>runAfterBoth</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;?&gt;, Runnable</code>	Execute the runnable after both complete.
<code>applyToEither</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;T&gt;, T -&gt; V</code>	When a result is available from one or the other, pass it to the given function.
<code>acceptEither</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;T&gt;, T -&gt; void</code>	Like <code>applyToEither</code> , but with void result.
<code>runAfterEither</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;?&gt;, Runnable</code>	Execute the runnable after one or the other completes.
<code>static allOf</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;?&gt;...</code>	Complete with void result after all given futures complete.
<code>static anyOf</code>	<code>CompletableFuture&lt;?&gt;...</code>	Complete after any of the given futures completes, yielding its result.



**NOTE:** Technically speaking, the methods in this section accept parameters of type `CompletionStage`, not `CompletableFuture`. The `CompletionStage` interface describes how to compose asynchronous computations, whereas the `Future` interface focuses on the result of a computation. A `CompletableFuture` is both a `CompletionStage` and a `Future`.

Listing 12.10 shows a complete program that reads a web page, scans it for images, loads the images and saves them locally. Note how all time-consuming methods return a `CompletableFuture`. To kick off the asynchronous computation, we use a little trick. Rather than calling the `readPage` method directly, we make a completed future with the URL argument, and then compose that future with `this::readPage`. That way, the pipeline has a very uniform appearance:

```
CompletableFuture.completedFuture(url)
    .thenComposeAsync(this::readPage, executor)
    .thenApply(this::getImageURLs)
    .thenCompose(this::getImages)
    .thenAccept(this::saveImages);
```

**Listing 12.10** completableFutures/CompletableFutureDemo.java

```
1 package completableFutures;
2
3 import java.awt.image.*;
4 import java.io.*;
5 import java.net.*;
6 import java.nio.charset.*;
7 import java.util.*;
8 import java.util.concurrent.*;
9 import java.util.regex.*;
10
11 import javax.imageio.*;
12
13 public class CompletableFutureDemo
14 {
15     private static final Pattern IMG_PATTERN = Pattern.compile(
16         "<[^\\s*[^>]*[^sS][rR][cC]\\s*[=]\\s*['\"((^'\\\"*)['\\\"][^>]*[>])");
17     private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();
18     private URL urlToProcess;
19
20     public CompletableFuture<String> readPage(URL url)
21     {
22         return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() ->
23             {
24                 try
25                 {
26                     var contents = new String(url.openStream().readAllBytes(),
27                         StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
28                     System.out.println("Read page from " + url);
29                     return contents;
30                 }
31                 catch (IOException e)
32                 {
33                     throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
34                 }
35             }, executor);
36     }
37
38     public List<URL> getImageURLs(String webpage) // not time-consuming
39     {
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.10 (Continued)**

```
40     try
41     {
42         var result = new ArrayList<URL>();
43         Matcher matcher = IMG_PATTERN.matcher(webpage);
44         while (matcher.find())
45         {
46             var url = new URL(urlToProcess, matcher.group(1));
47             result.add(url);
48         }
49         System.out.println("Found URLs: " + result);
50         return result;
51     }
52     catch (IOException e)
53     {
54         throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
55     }
56 }
57
58 public CompletableFuture<List<BufferedImage>> getImages(List<URL> urls)
59 {
60     return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() ->
61     {
62         try
63         {
64             var result = new ArrayList<BufferedImage>();
65             for (URL url : urls)
66             {
67                 result.add(ImageIO.read(url));
68                 System.out.println("Loaded " + url);
69             }
70             return result;
71         }
72         catch (IOException e)
73         {
74             throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
75         }
76     }, executor);
77 }
78
79 public void saveImages(List<BufferedImage> images)
80 {
81     System.out.println("Saving " + images.size() + " images");
82     try
83     {
84         for (int i = 0; i < images.size(); i++)
85         {
```

```
86         String filename = "/tmp/image" + (i + 1) + ".png";
87         ImageIO.write(images.get(i), "PNG", new File(filename));
88     }
89 }
90 catch (IOException e)
91 {
92     throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
93 }
94 executor.shutdown();
95 }
96
97 public void run(URL url)
98     throws IOException, InterruptedException
99 {
100     urlToProcess = url;
101     CompletableFuture.completedFuture(url)
102         .thenComposeAsync(this::readPage, executor)
103         .thenApply(this::getImageURLs)
104         .thenCompose(this::getImages)
105         .thenAccept(this::saveImages);
106
107     /*
108     // or use the experimental HTTP client:
109
110     HttpClient client = HttpClient.newBuilder().executor(executor).build();
111     HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder(urlToProcess.toURI()).GET()
112         .build();
113     client.sendAsync(request, BodyProcessor.asString())
114         .thenApply(HttpResponse::body).thenApply(this::getImageURLs)
115         .thenCompose(this::getImages).thenAccept(this::saveImages);
116     */
117 }
118
119 public static void main(String[] args)
120     throws IOException, InterruptedException
121 {
122     new CompletableFutureDemo().run(new URL("http://horstmann.com/index.html"));
123 }
124 }
```

### 12.7.3 Long-Running Tasks in User Interface Callbacks

One of the reasons to use threads is to make your programs more responsive. This is particularly important in an application with a user interface. When your program needs to do something time-consuming, you cannot do the work in the user-interface thread, or the user interface will be frozen. Instead, fire up another worker thread.

For example, if you want to read a file when the user clicks a button, don't do this:

```
var open = new JButton("Open");
open.addActionListener(event ->
    { // BAD--long-running action is executed on UI thread
        var in = new Scanner(file);
        while (in.hasNextLine())
        {
            String line = in.nextLine();
            ...
        }
    });
});
```

Instead, do the work in a separate thread.

```
open.addActionListener(event ->
    { // GOOD--long-running action in separate thread
        Runnable task = () ->
        {
            var in = new Scanner(file);
            while (in.hasNextLine())
            {
                String line = in.nextLine();
                ...
            }
        };
        executor.execute(task);
    });
});
```

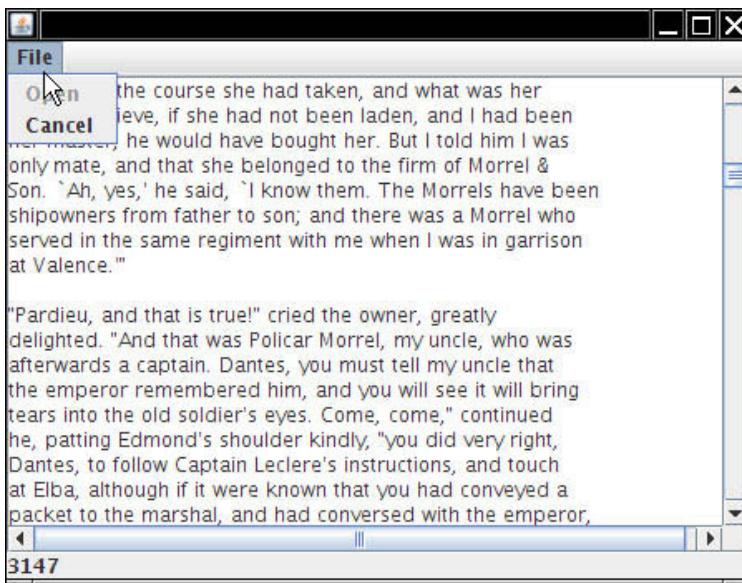
However, you cannot directly update the user interface from the worker thread that executes the long-running task. User interfaces such as Swing, JavaFX, or Android are not thread-safe. You cannot manipulate user interface elements from multiple threads, or they risk becoming corrupted. In fact, JavaFX and Android check for this, and throw an exception if you try to access the user interface from a thread other than the UI thread.

Therefore, you need to schedule any UI updates to happen on the UI thread. Each user interface library provides some mechanism to schedule a `Runnable` for execution on the UI thread. For example, in Swing, you call

```
EventQueue.invokeLater(() -> label.setText(percentage + "% complete"));
```

It is tedious to implement user feedback in a worker thread, so each user interface library provides some kind of helper class for managing the details, such as `SwingWorker` in Swing, `Task` in JavaFX, and `AsyncTask` in Android. You specify actions for the long-running task (which is run on a separate thread), as well as progress updates and the final disposition (which are run on the UI thread).

The program in Listing 12.11 has commands for loading a text file and for canceling the file loading process. You should try the program with a long file, such as the full text of *The Count of Monte Cristo*, supplied in the gutenberg directory of the book's companion code. The file is loaded in a separate thread. While the file is being read, the Open menu item is disabled and the Cancel item is enabled (see Figure 12.6). After each line is read, a line counter in the status bar is updated. After the reading process is complete, the Open menu item is reenabled, the Cancel item is disabled, and the status line text is set to Done.



**Figure 12.6** Loading a file in a separate thread

This example shows the typical UI activities of a background task:

- After each work unit, update the UI to show progress.
- After the work is finished, make a final change to the UI.

The `SwingWorker` class makes it easy to implement such a task. Override the `doInBackground` method to do the time-consuming work and occasionally call `publish` to communicate work progress. This method is executed in a worker thread. The `publish` method causes a `process` method to execute in the event dispatch thread to deal with the progress data. When the work is complete, the `done` method is called in the event dispatch thread so that you can finish updating the UI.

Whenever you want to do some work in the worker thread, construct a new worker. (Each worker object is meant to be used only once.) Then call the execute method. You will typically call execute on the event dispatch thread, but that is not a requirement.

It is assumed that a worker produces a result of some kind; therefore, `SwingWorker<T, V>` implements `Future<T>`. This result can be obtained by the `get` method of the `Future` interface. Since the `get` method blocks until the result is available, you don't want to call it immediately after calling `execute`. It is a good idea to call it only when you know that the work has been completed. Typically, you call `get` from the `done` method. (There is no requirement to call `get`. Sometimes, processing the progress data is all you need.)

Both the intermediate progress data and the final result can have arbitrary types. The `SwingWorker` class has these types as type parameters. A `SwingWorker<T, V>` produces a result of type `T` and progress data of type `V`.

To cancel the work in progress, use the `cancel` method of the `Future` interface. When the work is canceled, the `get` method throws a `CancellationException`.

As already mentioned, the worker thread's call to `publish` will cause calls to process on the event dispatch thread. For efficiency, the results of several calls to `publish` may be batched up in a single call to process. The `process` method receives a `List<V>` containing all intermediate results.

Let us put this mechanism to work for reading in a text file. As it turns out, a `JTextArea` is quite slow. Appending lines from a long text file (such as all lines in *The Count of Monte Cristo*) takes considerable time.

To show the user that progress is being made, we want to display the number of lines read in a status line. Thus, the progress data consist of the current line number and the current line of text. We package these into a trivial inner class:

```
private class ProgressData
{
    public int number;
    public String line;
}
```

The final result is the text that has been read into a `StringBuilder`. Thus, we need a `SwingWorker<StringBuilder, ProgressData>`.

In the `doInBackground` method, we read a file, a line at a time. After each line, we call `publish` to publish the line number and the text of the current line.

```
@Override public StringBuilder doInBackground() throws IOException, InterruptedException
{
    int lineNumber = 0;
```

```
var in = new Scanner(new FileInputStream(file), StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
while (in.hasNextLine())
{
    String line = in.nextLine();
    lineNumber++;
    text.append(line).append("\n");
    var data = new ProgressData();
    data.number = lineNumber;
    data.line = line;
    publish(data);
    Thread.sleep(1); // to test cancellation; no need to do this in your programs
}
return text;
}
```

We also sleep for a millisecond after every line so that you can test cancellation without getting stressed out, but you wouldn't want to slow down your own programs by sleeping. If you comment out this line, *The Count of Monte Cristo* loads quite quickly, with only a few batched user interface updates.

In the process method, we ignore all line numbers but the last one, and we concatenate all lines for a single update of the text area.

```
@Override public void process(List<ProgressData> data)
{
    if (isCancelled()) return;
    var b = new StringBuilder();
    statusLine.setText("" + data.get(data.size() - 1).number);
    for (ProgressData d : data) b.append(d.line).append("\n");
    textArea.append(b.toString());
}
```

In the done method, the text area is updated with the complete text, and the Cancel menu item is disabled.

Note how the worker is started in the event listener for the Open menu item.

This simple technique allows you to execute time-consuming tasks while keeping the user interface responsive.

#### **Listing 12.11** swingWorker/SwingWorkerTest.java

```
1 package swingWorker;
2
3 import java.awt.*;
4 import java.io;
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.11 (Continued)**

```
5 import java.nio.charset.*;
6 import java.util.*;
7 import java.util.List;
8 import java.util.concurrent.*;
9
10 import javax.swing.*;
11 /**
12 * This program demonstrates a worker thread that runs a potentially time-consuming task.
13 * @version 1.12 2018-03-17
14 * @author Cay Horstmann
15 */
16
17 public class SwingWorkerTest
18 {
19     public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
20     {
21         EventQueue.invokeLater(() -> {
22             var frame = new SwingWorkerFrame();
23             frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
24             frame.setVisible(true);
25         });
26     }
27 }
28
29 /**
30 * This frame has a text area to show the contents of a text file, a menu to open a file
31 * and cancel the opening process, and a status line to show the file loading progress.
32 */
33 class SwingWorkerFrame extends JFrame
34 {
35     private JFileChooser chooser;
36     private JTextArea textArea;
37     private JLabel statusLine;
38     private JMenuItem openItem;
39     private JMenuItem cancelItem;
40     private SwingWorker<StringBuilder, ProgressData> textReader;
41     public static final int TEXT_ROWS = 20;
42     public static final int TEXT_COLUMNS = 60;
43
44     public SwingWorkerFrame()
45     {
46         chooser = new JFileChooser();
47         chooser.setCurrentDirectory(new File("."));
48
49         textArea = new JTextArea(TEXT_ROWS, TEXT_COLUMNS);
50         add(new JScrollPane(textArea));
51     }
```

```
52     statusLine = new JLabel(" ");
53     add(statusLine, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
54
55     var menuBar = new JMenuBar();
56     setJMenuBar(menuBar);
57
58     var menu = new JMenu("File");
59     menuBar.add(menu);
60
61     openItem = new JMenuItem("Open");
62     menu.add(openItem);
63     openItem.addActionListener(event -> {
64         // show file chooser dialog
65         int result = chooser.showOpenDialog(null);
66
67         // if file selected, set it as icon of the label
68         if (result == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
69         {
70             textArea.setText("");
71             openItem.setEnabled(false);
72             textReader = new TextReader(chooser.getSelectedFile());
73             textReader.execute();
74             cancelItem.setEnabled(true);
75         }
76     });
77
78     cancelItem = new JMenuItem("Cancel");
79     menu.add(cancelItem);
80     cancelItem.setEnabled(false);
81     cancelItem.addActionListener(event -> textReader.cancel(true));
82     pack();
83 }
84
85 private class ProgressData
86 {
87     public int number;
88     public String line;
89 }
90
91 private class TextReader extends SwingWorker<StringBuilder, ProgressData>
92 {
93     private File file;
94     private StringBuilder text = new StringBuilder();
95
96     public TextReader(File file)
97     {
98         this.file = file;
99     }
100 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 12.11 (Continued)**

```
101     // the following method executes in the worker thread; it doesn't touch Swing components
102
103    public StringBuilder doInBackground() throws IOException, InterruptedException
104    {
105        int lineNumber = 0;
106        try (var in = new Scanner(new FileInputStream(file), StandardCharsets.UTF_8))
107        {
108            while (in.hasNextLine())
109            {
110                String line = in.nextLine();
111                lineNumber++;
112                text.append(line).append("\n");
113                var data = new ProgressData();
114                data.number = lineNumber;
115                data.line = line;
116                publish(data);
117                Thread.sleep(1); // to test cancellation; no need to do this in your programs
118            }
119        }
120        return text;
121    }
122
123    // the following methods execute in the event dispatch thread
124
125    public void process(List<ProgressData> data)
126    {
127        if (isCancelled()) return;
128        var builder = new StringBuilder();
129        statusLine.setText("" + data.size() - 1).number);
130        for (ProgressData d : data) builder.append(d.line).append("\n");
131        textArea.append(builder.toString());
132    }
133
134    public void done()
135    {
136        try
137        {
138            StringBuilder result = get();
139            textArea.setText(result.toString());
140            statusLine.setText("Done");
141        }
142        catch (InterruptedException ex)
143        {
144        }
```

```
145     catch (CancellationException ex)
146     {
147         textArea.setText("");
148         statusLine.setText("Cancelled");
149     }
150     catch (ExecutionException ex)
151     {
152         statusLine.setText("") + ex.getCause());
153     }
154
155     cancelItem.setEnabled(false);
156     openItem.setEnabled(true);
157 }
158 };
159 }
```

#### javax.swing.SwingWorker<T, V> 6

- abstract T doInBackground()

is the method to override to carry out the background task and to return the result of the work.

- void process(List<V> data)

is the method to override to process intermediate progress data in the event dispatch thread.

- void publish(V... data)

forwards intermediate progress data to the event dispatch thread. Call this method from doInBackground.

- void execute()

schedules this worker for execution on a worker thread.

- SwingWorker.StateValue getState()

gets the state of this worker, one of PENDING, STARTED, or DONE.

## 12.8 Processes

Up to now, you have seen how to execute Java code in separate threads within the same program. Sometimes, you need to execute another program. For this, use the ProcessBuilder and Process classes. The Process class executes a command in a separate operating system process and lets you interact with its standard input, output, and error streams. The ProcessBuilder class lets you configure a Process object.



**NOTE:** The `ProcessBuilder` class is a more flexible replacement for the `Runtime.exec` calls.

---

### 12.8.1 Building a Process

Start by specifying the command that you want to execute. You can supply a `List<String>` or simply the strings that make up the command.

```
var builder = new ProcessBuilder("gcc", "myapp.c");
```



**CAUTION:** The first string must be an executable command, not a shell builtin. For example, to run the `dir` command in Windows, you need to build a process with strings `"cmd.exe"`, `"/C"`, and `"dir"`.

---

Each process has a *working directory*, which is used to resolve relative directory names. By default, a process has the same working directory as the virtual machine, which is typically the directory from which you launched the `java` program. You can change it with the `directory` method:

```
builder = builder.directory(path.toFile());
```



**NOTE:** Each of the methods for configuring a `ProcessBuilder` returns itself, so that you can chain commands. Ultimately, you will call

```
Process p = new ProcessBuilder(command).directory(file).start();
```

---

Next, you will want to specify what should happen to the standard input, output, and error streams of the process. By default, each of them is a pipe that you can access with

```
OutputStream processIn = p.getOutputStream();
InputStream processOut = p.getInputStream();
InputStream processErr = p.getErrorStream();
```

Note that the input stream of the process is an output stream in the JVM! You write to that stream, and whatever you write becomes the input of the process. Conversely, you read what the process writes to the output and error streams. For you, they are input streams.

You can specify that the input, output, and error streams of the new process should be the same as the JVM. If the user runs the JVM in a console, any user input is forwarded to the process, and the process output shows up in the console. Call

```
builder.inheritIO()
```

to make this setting for all three streams. If you only want to inherit some of the streams, pass the value

```
ProcessBuilder.Redirect.INHERIT
```

to the `redirectInput`, `redirectOutput`, or `redirectError` methods. For example,

```
builder.redirectOutput(ProcessBuilder.Redirect.INHERIT);
```

You can redirect the process streams to files by supplying `File` objects:

```
builder.redirectInput(inputFile)
    .redirectOutput(outputFile)
    .redirectError(errorFile)
```

The files for output and error are created or truncated when the process starts. To append to existing files, use

```
builder.redirectOutput(ProcessBuilder.Redirect.appendTo(outputFile));
```

It is often useful to merge the output and error streams, so you see the outputs and error messages in the sequence in which the process generates them. Call

```
builder.redirectErrorStream(true)
```

to activate the merging. If you do that, you can no longer call `redirectError` on the `ProcessBuilder` or `getErrorStream` on the `Process`.

You may also want to modify the environment variables of the process. Here, the builder chain syntax breaks down. You need to get the builder's environment (which is initialized by the environment variables of the process running the JVM), then put or remove entries.

```
Map<String, String> env = builder.environment();
env.put("LANG", "fr_FR");
env.remove("JAVA_HOME");
Process p = builder.start();
```

If you want to pipe the output of one process into the input of another (as with the `|` operator in a shell), Java 9 offers a `startPipeline` method. Pass a list of process builders and read the result from the last process. Here is an example, enumerating the unique extensions in a directory tree:

```
List<Process> processes = ProcessBuilder.startPipeline(List.of(
    new ProcessBuilder("find", "/opt/jdk-9"),
    new ProcessBuilder("grep", "-o", "\\.\\.[^.]*$"),
    new ProcessBuilder("sort"),
    new ProcessBuilder("uniq")
));
```

```
Process last = processes.get(processes.size() - 1);
var result = new String(last.getInputStream().readAllBytes());
```

Of course, this particular task would be more efficiently solved by making the directory walk in Java instead of running four processes. Chapter 2 of Volume II will show you how to do that.

### 12.8.2 Running a Process

After you have configured the builder, invoke its start method to start the process. If you configured the input, output, and error streams as pipes, you can now write to the input stream and read the output and error streams. For example,

```
Process process = new ProcessBuilder("/bin/ls", "-l")
    .directory(Path.of("/tmp").toFile())
    .start();
try (var in = new Scanner(process.getInputStream())) {
    while (in.hasNextLine())
        System.out.println(in.nextLine());
}
```



**CAUTION:** There is limited buffer space for the process streams. You should not flood the input, and you should read the output promptly. If there is a lot of input and output, you may need to produce and consume it in separate threads.

---

To wait for the process to finish, call

```
int result = process.waitFor();
```

or, if you don't want to wait indefinitely,

```
long delay = . . .;
if (process.waitFor(delay, TimeUnit.SECONDS)) {
    int result = process.exitValue();
    . . .
} else {
    process.destroyForcibly();
}
```

The first call to `waitFor` returns the exit value of the process (by convention, 0 for success or a nonzero error code). The second call returns true if the process didn't time out. Then you need to retrieve the exit value by calling the `exitValue` method.

Instead of waiting for the process to finish, you can just leave it running and occasionally call `isAlive` to see whether it is still alive. To kill the process,

call `destroy` or `destroyForcibly`. The difference between these calls is platform-dependent. On UNIX, the former terminates the process with `SIGTERM`, the latter with `SIGKILL`. (The `supportsNormalTermination` method returns true if the `destroy` method can terminate the process normally.)

Finally, you can receive an asynchronous notification when the process has completed. The call `process.onExit()` yields a `CompletableFuture<Process>` that you can use to schedule any action.

```
process.onExit().thenAccept(  
    p -> System.out.println("Exit value: " + p.exitValue()));
```

### 12.8.3 Process Handles

To get more information about a process that your program started, or any other process that is currently running on your machine, use the `ProcessHandle` interface. You can obtain a `ProcessHandle` in four ways:

1. Given a `Process` object `p`, `p.toHandle()` yields its `ProcessHandle`.
2. Given a long operating system process ID, `ProcessHandle.of(id)` yields the handle of that process.
3. `ProcessHandle.current()` is the handle of the process that runs this Java virtual machine.
4. `ProcessHandle.allProcesses()` yields a `Stream<ProcessHandle>` of all operating system processes that are visible to the current process.

Given a process handle, you can get its process ID, its parent process, its children, and descendants:

```
long pid = handle.pid();  
Optional<ProcessHandle> parent = handle.parent();  
Stream<ProcessHandle> children = handle.children();  
Stream<ProcessHandle> descendants = handle.descendants();
```



**NOTE:** The `Stream<ProcessHandle>` instances that are returned by the `allProcesses`, `children`, and `descendants` methods are just snapshots in time. Any of the processes in the stream might be terminated by the time you get around to seeing them, and other processes may have started that are not in the stream.

The `info` method yields a `ProcessHandle.Info` object with methods for obtaining information about the process.

```
Optional<String[]> arguments()  
Optional<String> command()  
Optional<String> commandLine()
```

```
Optional<String> startInstant()
Optional<String> totalCpuDuration()
Optional<String> user()
```

All of these methods return `Optional` values since it is possible that a particular operating system may not be able to report the information.

For monitoring or forcing process termination, the `ProcessHandle` interface has the same `isAlive`, `supportsNormalTermination`, `destroy`, `destroyForcibly`, and `onExit` methods as the `Process` class. However, there is no equivalent to the `waitFor` method.

#### java.lang.ProcessBuilder 5

- `ProcessBuilder(String... command)`  
constructs a process builder with the given command and arguments.
- `ProcessBuilder directory(File directory)`  
sets the working directory for the process.
- `ProcessBuilder inheritIO() 9`  
makes the process use the standard input, output, and error of the virtual machine.
- `ProcessBuilder redirectErrorStream(boolean redirectErrorStream)`  
if `redirectErrorStream` is true, the standard error of the process is merged into the standard output.
- `ProcessBuilder redirectInput(File file) 7`  
• `ProcessBuilder redirectOutput(File file) 7`  
• `ProcessBuilder redirectError(File file) 7`  
redirects the standard input, output, or error of the process to the given file.
- `ProcessBuilder redirectInput(ProcessBuilder.Redirect source) 7`
- `ProcessBuilder redirectOutput(ProcessBuilder.Redirect destination) 7`
- `ProcessBuilder redirectError(ProcessBuilder.Redirect destination) 7`  
redirects the standard input, output, or error of the process, where `destination` is one of:
  - `Redirect.PIPE`—the default behavior, access via the `Process` object
  - `Redirect.INHERIT`—the stream from the virtual machine
  - `Redirect.DISCARD`
  - `Redirect.from(file)`
  - `Redirect.to(file)`
  - `Redirect.appendTo(file)`

(Continues)

**java.lang.ProcessBuilder 5 (Continued)**

- `Map<String, String> environment()`  
yields a mutable map for setting environment variables for the process.
- `Process start()`  
starts the process and yields its Process object.
- `static List<Process> startPipeline(List<ProcessBuilder> builders) 9`  
starts a pipeline of processes, connecting the standard output of each process to the standard input of the next one.

**java.lang.Process 1.0**

- `abstract OutputStream getOutputStream()`  
gets a stream for writing to the input stream of the process.
- `abstract InputStream getInputStream()`
- `abstract InputStream getErrorStream()`  
gets an input stream for reading the output or error stream of the process.
- `abstract int waitFor()`  
waits for the process to finish and yields the exit value.
- `boolean waitFor(long timeout, TimeUnit unit) 8`  
waits for the process to finish, but no longer than the given timeout. Returns true if the process exited.
- `abstract int exitValue()`  
returns the exit value of the process. By convention, a non-zero exit value indicates an error.
- `boolean isAlive() 8`  
checks whether this process is still alive.
- `abstract void destroy()`
- `Process destroyForcibly() 8`  
terminates this process, either normally or forcefully.
- `boolean supportsNormalTermination() 9`  
checks whether this process can be terminated normally or must be destroyed forcefully.
- `ProcessHandle toHandle() 9`  
yields the ProcessHandle describing this process.

*(Continues)*

***java.lang.Process 1.0 (Continued)***

- `CompletableFuture<Process> onExit() 9`  
yields a `CompletableFuture` that is executed when this process exits.

***java.lang.ProcessHandle 9***

- `static Optional<ProcessHandle> of(long pid)`
- `static Stream<ProcessHandle> allProcesses()`
- `static ProcessHandle current()`  
yields the process handle(s) of the process with the given PID, of all processes, or the process of the virtual machine.
- `Stream<ProcessHandle> children()`
- `Stream<ProcessHandle> descendants()`  
yields the process handles of the children or descendants of this process.
- `long pid()`  
yields the PID of this process.
- `ProcessHandle.Info info()`  
yields detail information about this process.

***java.lang.ProcessHandle.Info 9***

- `Optional<String[]> arguments()`
- `Optional<String> command()`
- `Optional<String> commandLine()`
- `Optional<Instant> startInstant()`
- `Optional<Instant> totalCpuDuration()`
- `Optional<String> user()`  
yield the given detail information if available.

You have now reached the end of Volume I of *Core Java*. This volume covered the fundamentals of the Java programming language and the parts of the standard library that you need for most programming projects. We hope that you enjoyed your tour through the Java fundamentals and that you found useful information along the way. For advanced topics, such as the Java platform module system, networking, advanced user interface and graphics programming, security, and internationalization, please turn to Volume II.

# A

# Appendix

---

This appendix lists all keywords of the Java language. Some keywords are “restricted.” They have a special meaning only in certain circumstances (for example, in module declarations). Elsewhere, they can be identifiers.

**Table A.1** Java Keywords

Keyword	Meaning	See Chapter
abstract	An abstract class or method	5
assert	Used to locate internal program error	7
boolean	The Boolean type	3
break	Breaks out of a switch or loop	3
byte	The 8-bit integer type	3
case	A case of a switch	3
catch	The clause of a try block catching an exception	7
char	The Unicode character type	3
class	Defines a class type	4
const	Not used	
continue	Continues at the end of a loop	3
default	The default clause of a switch, or a default method in an interface	3, 6

(Continues)

**Table A.1** *(Continued)*

Keyword	Meaning	See Chapter
do	The top of a do/while loop	3
double	The double-precision floating-number type	3
else	The else clause of an if statement	3
enum	An enumerated type	3
exports	Exports a package of a module (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
extends	Defines the parent class of a class, or an upper bound of a wildcard	4
final	A constant, or a class or method that cannot be overridden	5
finally	The part of a try block that is always executed	7
float	The single-precision floating-point type	3
for	A loop type	3
goto	Not used	
if	A conditional statement	3
implements	Defines the interface(s) that a class implements	6
import	Imports a package	4
instanceof	Tests if an object is an instance of a class	5
int	The 32-bit integer type	3
interface	An abstract type with methods that a class can implement	6
long	The 64-bit long integer type	3
native	A method implemented by the host system	12 (Vol. II)
new	Allocates a new object or array	3
null	A null reference (note that null is technically a literal, not a keyword)	3
module	Declares a module (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
open	Modifies a module declaration (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)

(Continues)

**Table A.1** (Continued)

Keyword	Meaning	See Chapter
opens	Opens a package of a module (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
package	A package of classes	4
private	A feature that is accessible only by methods of this class	4
protected	A feature that is accessible only by methods of this class, its children, and other classes in the same package	5
provides	Indicates that a module uses a service (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
public	A feature that is accessible by methods of all classes	4
return	Returns from a method	3
short	The 16-bit integer type	3
static	A feature that is unique to a class or interface, not to instances of a class	3, 6
strictfp	Use strict rules for floating-point computations	2
super	The superclass object or constructor, or a lower bound in a wildcard	5
switch	A selection statement	3
synchronized	A method or code block that is atomic to a thread	12
this	The implicit argument of a method, or a constructor of this class	4
throw	Throws an exception	7
to	A part of an exports or opens declaration (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
throws	The exceptions that a method can throw	7
transient	Marks data that should not be persistent	2 (Vol. II)
transitive	Modifies a requires declaration (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
try	A block of code that traps exceptions	7
uses	Indicates that a module uses a service (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)

(Continues)

**Table A.1** (*Continued*)

Keyword	Meaning	See Chapter
var	Declares a variable whose type is inferred (restricted)	3
void	Denotes a method that returns no value	3
volatile	Ensures that a field is coherently accessed by multiple threads	12
with	Defines the service class in a provides statement (restricted)	9 (Vol. II)
while	A loop	3

# Index

## Symbols

- (minus sign)  
arithmetic operator, 52, 61  
printf flag, 80  
-- operator, 58, 61  
-> (in lambda expressions), 323–326  
\_ (underscore)  
as a variable name, 49  
delimiter, in number literals, 43  
in instance field names (C++), 174  
, (comma)  
operator (C++), 62  
printf flag, 80  
; (semicolon)  
for statements, 41, 48  
in class path (Windows), 189  
: (colon)  
in assertions, 399  
in class path (UNIX), 189  
inheritance token (C++), 208  
:: operator (C++), 151, 159, 211, 328  
! operator, 59, 61  
!= operator, 59, 61, 97  
? : operator, 59, 61  
/ (slash), arithmetic operator, 52, 61  
// comments, 42  
/\* . . . \*/ comments, 42  
/\*\* . . . \*/ comments, 42, 198–199

for operator hierarchy, 61–62  
[] (empty square brackets), in generics, 437  
[. . .] (square brackets), for arrays, 108, 112  
. . .{} (curly braces)  
for blocks, 40–41, 86  
for enumerated type, 52  
in lambda expressions, 324  
. . .{} (double curly braces), in inner classes, 354  
@ (at), in javadoc comments, 199–200  
\$ (dollar sign)  
delimiter, for inner classes, 346  
in variable names, 49  
printf flag, 80, 82  
\* (asterisk)  
arithmetic operator, 52, 61  
echo character, 647  
in class path, 189  
in imports, 182

- < (left angle bracket)
    - in shell syntax, 85
    - printf flag, 80, 83
    - relational operator, 59, 61
  - <? (in wildcard types), 459
  - <>, >> operators, 60–61
  - <= operator, 59, 61
  - <. . .> (angle brackets), for type parameters, 248, 435
  - > (right angle bracket)
    - in shell syntax, 85, 427
    - relational operator, 59, 61
  - >& (in shell syntax), 427
  - >= operator, 59, 61
  - = operator, 50, 58
  - == operator, 59, 61
    - for class objects, 266
    - for enumerated types, 261
    - for floating-point numbers, 97
    - for identity hash maps, 530
    - for strings, 65
    - for wrappers, 257
  - | operator, 60–61
  - || operator, 59, 61
  - 0, 0b, 0x prefixes (in integers), 43
  - 0, printf flag, 80
  - >> (in shell syntax), 427
  - 2D shapes, 579–587
  - 🍺 (beer mug), 67
  - 𝕆 (octonions), 48, 67
- A**
- Abstract classes, 225–231
    - extending, 227
    - interfaces and, 305–306
    - object variables of, 227
  - abstract keyword, 225–231
  - Abstract methods, 226
    - in functional interfaces, 326
  - AbstractAction class, 609, 613, 673, 676
  - AbstractButton class, 622–623, 674–677
    - is/isSelected methods, 677
    - setAction method, 674
    - setActionCommand method, 658
    - setDisplayedMnemonicIndex method, 680–681
    - setHorizontalTextPosition method, 675
    - setMnemonic method, 681
  - abstractClasses/Employee.java, 230
  - abstractClasses/Person.java, 229
  - abstractClasses/PersonTest.java, 229
  - abstractClasses/Student.java, 230
  - AbstractCollection class, 307, 489, 502
  - AbstractQueue class, 485
  - Accelerators (in menus), 680–681
  - accept method
    - of FileFilter (Swing), 726, 731
    - of java.io.FileFilter, 726
  - acceptEither method (CompletableFuture), 819–820
  - Access modifiers
    - checking, 271
    - final, 51, 155, 221–223, 303, 350–351, 772
    - private, 146, 187–188, 344
    - protected, 231–232, 290–291, 319
    - public, 38–39, 52, 143–146, 187–188, 297–298
    - public static final, 304
    - static, 40, 156–163
    - static final, 51
    - void, 40
  - Access order, 528
  - AccessibleObject class
    - isAccessible, trySetAccessible methods, 282
    - setAccessible method, 278, 282
  - Accessor methods, 138–141, 152–153, 461
  - Accessory components, 728
  - accumulate method (LongAccumulator), 774
  - accumulateAndGet method (AtomicType), 773
  - Action interface, 608–614, 673
    - actionPerformed method, 608
    - add/removePropertyChangeListener methods, 608–609
    - get/putValue methods, 608, 613
    - is/setEnabled methods, 608, 613
    - predefined action table names, 609
  - Action listeners, 608–614
    - ActionEvent class, 598, 622
    - getActionCommand, getModifiers methods, 622
  - ActionListener interface
    - actionPerformed method, 310–311, 322, 342, 348, 352, 599, 608–609, 622, 780
      - overriding, 673
      - implementing, 327, 599
  - ActionMap class, 612
  - Actions, 608–614
    - associating with keystrokes, 611
    - names of, 613

predefined, 609  
ActiveX, 5, 15  
Adapter classes, 605–607  
add method  
  of *ArrayList*, 249–254  
  of *BigDecimal*, *BigInteger*, 107  
  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783  
  of *ButtonGroup*, 658  
  of *Collection*, 485, 489–492  
  of *Container*, 601, 604, 639  
  of *GregorianCalendar*, 138  
  of *HashSet*, 509  
  of *JFrame*, 579  
  of *JMenu*, 672–674  
  of *JToolBar*, 689–690  
  of *List*, 492, 505  
  of *ListIterator*, 493, 499–501, 506  
  of *LongAdder*, 774  
  of *Queue*, 516  
  of *Set*, 494  
addAll method  
  of *ArrayList*, 434  
  of *Collection*, 489, 491  
  of *Collections*, 548  
  of *List*, 505  
addChoosableFileFilter method (*JFileChooser*), 730  
addExact method (*Math*), 55  
addFirst method  
  of *Deque*, 517  
  of *LinkedList*, 506  
addHandler method (*Logger*), 422  
addItem method (*JComboBox*), 662–664  
Addition operator, 52, 61  
  for different numeric types, 56  
  for objects and strings, 63, 242  
addLast method  
  of *Deque*, 517  
  of *LinkedList*, 506  
addLayoutComponent method (*LayoutManager*), 706  
addPropertyChangeListener method (*Action*), 608–609  
addSeparator method  
  of *JMenu*, 672, 674  
  of *JToolBar*, 689–690  
addShutdownHook method (*Runtime*), 180  
addSuppressed method (*Throwable*), 390, 393  
AdjustmentEvent class, 622  
*AdjustmentListener* interface, 622  
Adobe Flash, 10  
Aggregation, 129–131  
Algorithms, 126  
  for binary search, 546–547  
  for shuffling, 544  
  for sorting, 543–546  
  QuickSort, 113, 544  
  simple, in the standard library, 547–549  
  writing, 551–552  
*Algorithms + Data Structures = Programs* (Wirth), 126  
*Algorithms in C++* (Sedgewick), 544  
*Alice in Wonderland* (Carroll), 510, 512  
allOf method  
  of *CompletableFuture*, 819–820  
  of *EnumSet*, 531  
allProcesses method (*ProcessHandle*), 835, 838  
Alt+F4, in Windows, 681  
and, andNot methods (*BitSet*), 560  
Andreessen, Mark, 11  
Android, 824  
Annotations, 446  
Anonymous arrays, 108  
Anonymous inner classes, 352–355  
*anonymousInnerClass/AnonymousInnerClassTest.java*, 354  
Antisymmetry rule, 303  
anyOf method (*CompletableFuture*), 819–820  
append method  
  of *JTextArea*, 650  
  of *StringBuilder*, 74–75  
appendCodePoint method (*StringBuilder*), 75  
Applets, 9–10, 15  
  changing warning string in, 188  
  running in a browser, 9  
Application Programming Interfaces (APIs),  
  online documentation for, 68, 71–73  
Applications  
  closing by user, 570  
  compiling/launching from the command  
    line, 24–26, 39  
  debugging, 25–26, 372–380  
  extensible, 221  
  for different Java releases, 195–197  
  localization of, 132, 270, 409–410  
  managing in JVM, 429  
  responsive, 823  
  terminating, 40  
  testing, 399–403

- applyToEither method (*CompletableFuture*),  
  819–820  
arguments method (*ProcessHandle.Info*), 838  
Arguments. *See* Parameters  
Arithmetic operators, 52–53  
  accuracy of, 53  
  autoboxing with, 257  
  combining with assignment, 58  
  precedence of, 61  
Array class, 283–286  
  get, *getXxx*, set, *setXxx* methods, 286  
  getLength method, 284, 286  
  newInstance method, 283, 286  
Array lists, 108, 507  
  anonymous, 354  
  capacity of, 250  
  elements of:  
    accessing, 251–254  
    adding, 249–253  
    removing, 253  
    traversing, 253  
  generic, 248–256  
  raw vs. typed, 255–256  
Array variables, 108  
ArrayList class, 782, 787  
ArrayDeque class, 484, 516, 518  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
ArrayListException, 110, 375–377  
ArrayList class, 110, 248–256, 432–434, 496  
  add method, 249–254  
  addAll method, 434  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
  ensureCapacity method, 249, 251  
  get, set methods, 251, 254  
  iterating over, 486  
  remove method, 253–254  
  removeIf method, 328  
  size, *trimToSize* methods, 250–251  
  synchronized, 799  
  toArray method, 452  
arrayList/ArrayListTest.java, 253  
Arrays, 108–123  
  anonymous, 108  
  circular, 484–485  
  cloning, 320  
  converting to collections, 550–551  
  copying, 111–112  
    on write, 797  
  creating, 108  
elements of:  
  computing in parallel, 798  
  numbering, 109  
  remembering types of, 218  
  removing from the middle, 496–497  
  traversing, 108, 110, 118  
equality testing for, 238  
generic methods for, 283–286  
hash codes of, 241  
in command-line parameters, 112–113  
initializing, 108–109  
multidimensional, 116–121, 243  
not of generic types, 332, 448, 458  
of integers, 243  
of subclass/superclass references, 218  
of wildcard types, 448  
out-of-bounds access in, 374  
parallel operations on, 797  
printing, 118, 243  
ragged, 120–123  
size of, 110, 250, 284  
  equal to 0, 109, 551  
  increasing, 111  
  setting at runtime, 248  
sorting, 113–116, 300, 797  
type erasure and, 451–452  
Arrays class  
  asList method, 533, 540, 550  
  binarySearch method, 116, 365  
  copyOf method, 111, 116, 283  
  copyOfRange method, 116  
  deepToString method, 118, 243  
  equals method, 116, 238  
  fill method, 116  
  hashCode method, 241  
  parallelXxx methods, 797–798  
  sort method, 113–116, 297, 300, 302,  
    322, 326  
  toString method, 111, 116  
arrays/CopyOfTest.java, 285  
ArrayStoreException, 218, 448–449, 458  
Ascender, ascent (in typesetting), 591  
ASCII standard, 47  
asIterator method (*Enumeration*), 554  
asList method (*Arrays*), 533, 540, 550  
assert keyword, 399–403  
Assertions, 399–403  
  checking parameters with, 401–402  
defined, 399

- documenting assumptions with, 402–403  
enabling/disabling, 399–401
- Assignment operator, 50, 58
- Asynchronous computations, 814–831
- Asynchronous methods, 800
- AsyncTask class, 824
- atan, atan2 methods (`Math`), 54
- Atomic operations, 773–775  
client-side locking for, 769  
in concurrent hash maps, 790–794  
performance of, 774
- AtomicType classes, 773
- @author comment (javadoc), 201, 203
- Autoboxing, 256–260
- `AutoCloseable` interface, 389  
close method, 389–390
- await method (`Condition`), 741, 760–764
- AWT (Abstract Window Toolkit), 565  
event hierarchy in, 620–624  
preferred field sizes in, 643
- AWTEvent class, 620
- B**
- `\b` (backspace escape sequence), 46
- Background color  
default, 570  
setting, 588–589, 602
- BadCastException, 468
- Base classes. *See* Superclasses
- Baseline (in typesetting), 591
- Basic multilingual planes, 47
- BasicButtonUI class, 636
- Batch files, 191
- Beans, 192
- beep method (`Toolkit`), 313
- BiConsumer interface, 337
- BiFunction interface, 327, 337
- BIG-5 standard, 47
- BigDecimal, BigInteger classes, 105–107  
add, compareTo, subtract, multiply, divide, mod,  
sqrt methods, 107  
valueOf method, 105–107
- BigIntegerTest/BigIntegerTest.java, 106
- Binary search, 546–547
- BinaryOperator interface, 337
- binarySearch method  
of Arrays, 116, 365  
of Collections, 546–547
- BiPredicate interface, 337
- Bit masks, 60
- Bit sets, 559–563
- Bitcode files, 39
- BitSet interface, 482, 559–563  
methods of, 560
- Bitwise operators, 60–61
- Blank lines, printing, 41
- Blocking queues, 781–788
- BlockingDeque interface, methods of, 788
- BlockingQueue interface  
add, element, peek, remove methods, 782–783  
offer, poll, put, take methods, 782–783, 788
- blockingQueue/BlockingQueueTest.java, 784
- Blocks, 40–41, 86–87  
nested, 86
- Boolean class  
converting from boolean, 256  
hashCode method, 241
- boolean operators, 59, 61
- boolean type, 48  
default initialization of, 171  
formatting output for, 79  
no casting to numeric types for, 57
- BooleanHolder class, 259
- Border layout manager, 639–641
- BorderFactory class, `createTypeBorder` methods, 658–660
- BorderLayout class, 639–641
- Borders, 658–661  
compound, 659  
styling, 658–659  
with a title, 659
- Bounded collections, 485
- Bounding rectangle, 582–583
- Bounds checking, 112
- Box layout, 691
- break statement, 100–104  
labeled/unlabeled, 102
- Bridge methods, 444–445, 456
- Buckets (of hash tables), 508
- Bulk operations, 549–550
- button/ButtonFrame.java, 603
- ButtonGroup class, 654  
add method, 658  
getSelection method, 656, 658
- ButtonModel interface, 634  
getActionCommand method, 656, 658

- ButtonModel* interface (*continued*)  
  *getSelectedObjects* method, 656  
  properties of, 636
- Buttons  
  appearance of, 632  
  associating actions with, 610  
  clicking, 602  
  creating, 601  
  event handling for, 600–604  
  model-view-controller analysis of, 634, 636  
  rearranging automatically, 637
- ButtonUIListener* class, 636
- Byte* class  
  converting from byte, 256  
  *hashCode* method, 241  
  *toUnsignedInt* method, 44
- byte type, 43
- C**
- C programming language  
  *assert* macro in, 400  
  function pointers in, 286  
  integer types in, 6
- C# programming language, 8  
  *foreach* loop in, 86  
  polymorphism in, 222  
  useful features of, 12
- C++ programming language  
  , (comma) operator in, 62  
  :: operator in, 151, 211  
  >> operator in, 60  
  access privileges in, 154  
  algorithms in, 543  
  arrays in, 112, 122  
  bitset template in, 559  
  boolean values in, 48  
  classes in, 40  
    nested, 341  
  code units and code points in, 62  
  copy constructors in, 135  
  dynamic binding in, 213  
  dynamic casts in, 225  
  exceptions in, 375, 378–379, 383  
  fields in:  
    constructing, 173  
    static, 159  
  for loop in, 86, 96  
  function pointers in, 286
- #include in, 183
- inheritance in, 208, 217, 305
- integer types in, 6, 43
- iterators as parameters in, 554
- methods in:  
  accessor, 138  
  default, 308  
  destructor, 180  
  static, 159
- namespace, using directives in, 183
- new operator in, 147
- NULL, object pointers in, 135
- operator overloading in, 105
- passing parameters in, 165, 168
- performance of, compared to Java, 561
- polymorphism in, 222
- protected modifier in, 232
- pure virtual functions (= 0) in, 227
- references in, 135
- Standard Template Library in, 482, 487
- static member functions in, 40
- strings in, 64–66
- superclasses in, 212
- syntax of, 3
- templates in, 12, 436, 439, 442
- this pointer in, 175
- type parameters in, 438
- variables in, 51  
  redefining in nested blocks, 87
- vector template in, 250
- virtual constructors in, 267
- void\* pointer in, 233
- Calendar class, 136  
  *get/setTime* methods, 222
- Calendars  
  displaying, 138–140  
  vs. time measurement, 136
- CalendarTest/CalendarTest.java, 140
- Call by reference, 163
- Call by value, 163–170
- Callable interface, 806  
  *call* method, 800–801  
  wrapper for, 801
- Callables, 800–802
- Callbacks, 310–313
- Camel case (CamelCase), 38
- cancel method (*Future*), 801–802, 804, 826
- CancellationException, 826
- Carriage return, escape sequence for, 46

case statement, 100  
cast method (`Class`), 468  
Casts, 57, 223–225  
  bad, 374  
  checking before attempting, 224  
catch statement, 381–395  
ceiling method (`NavigableSet`), 516  
`ChangeListener` interface, `stateChanged` method, 666  
char type, 46–47  
Character class  
  converting from char, 256  
  `hashCode` method, 241  
  `isJavaIdentifierXxx` methods, 49  
Characters, formatting output for, 79  
`charAt` method (`String`), 67–68  
`checkBox/CheckBoxFrame.java`, 653  
Checkboxes, 651–654  
  in menus, 676–677  
Checked exceptions, 265–268  
  applicability of, 397  
  declaring, 375–378  
  suppressing with generics, 454–455  
Checked views, 536  
`checkedCollection` methods (`Collections`), 539  
Child classes. *See* Subclasses  
`children` method (`ProcessHandle`), 835, 838  
Choice components, 651–671  
  borders, 658–661  
  checkboxes, 651–654  
  combo boxes, 661–664  
  radio buttons, 654–658  
  sliders, 665–671  
`ChronoLocalDate` interface, 463  
Church, Alonzo, 323  
`circleLayout/CircleLayout.java`, 703  
`circleLayout/CircleLayoutFrame.java`, 706  
Circular arrays, 484–485  
Clark, Jim, 11  
`Class` class, 264–267  
  `cast` method, 468  
  `forName` method, 265, 267  
  generic, 450, 467–470  
  `getAudioClip` method, 269  
  `getClass` method, 264  
  `getComponentType` method, 284  
  `getConstructor` method, 267, 468  
  `getConstructors`, `getDeclaredConstructors` methods, 271, 276  
  `getDeclaredConstructor` method, 468  
  `getDeclaredMethods` method, 271, 275, 287  
  `getEnumConstants` method, 468  
  `getField`, `getDeclaredField` methods, 282  
  `getFields`, `getDeclaredFields` methods, 271, 275, 279, 282  
  `getGenericXxx` methods, 478  
  `getImage` method, 269  
  `getMethod` method, 287  
  `getMethods` method, 271, 275  
  `getName` method, 247, 264–266  
  `getPackageName` method, 276  
  `getResource`, `getResourceAsStream` methods, 269, 271  
  `getSuperclass` method, 247, 468  
  `getTypeParameters` method, 478  
  `newInstance` method, 266, 468  
Class constants, 51  
Class diagrams, 130–131  
.class file extension, 39  
Class files, 184, 189  
  compiling, 39  
  locating, 190–191  
  names of, 39, 143  
class keyword, 38  
Class loaders, 363, 399–400  
Class path, 189–191  
  setting, 191–192  
Class wins rule, 310  
Class<T> parameters, 469  
`ClassCastException`, 224, 283, 303, 452, 459, 537  
Classes, 127–128, 208–232  
  abstract, 225–231, 305–306  
  access privileges for, 154  
  adapter, 605–607  
  adding to packages, 184–187  
  analyzing:  
    capabilities of, 271–277  
    objects of, at runtime, 277–283  
  companion, 306–307  
  constructors for, 146  
  defining, 141–156  
    at runtime, 363  
  designing, 129, 204–206  
  documentation comments for, 199–202  
  encapsulation of, 127–128, 151–153  
  extending, 128  
  final, 221–223

- Classes (*continued*)  
generic, 248–249, 434–437, 459, 661  
helper, 696  
immutable, 155  
implementing multiple interfaces, 305  
importing, 181–183  
inner, 340–359  
instances of, 127, 132  
loading, 265, 428  
multiple source files for, 145  
names of, 25, 38, 181, 206  
    full package, 181  
number of basic types in, 204  
package scope of, 187  
parameters in, 150–151  
predefined, 131–141  
private methods in, 155  
protected, 231–232  
public, 199  
    accessing, 181  
relationships between, 129–131  
sharing, among programs, 189  
unit testing, 160  
wrapper, 256–260
- ClassLoader class, 403
- CLASSPATH environment variable, 26, 191
- Cleaner class, 180
- clear method  
    of BitSet, 560  
    of Collection, 489, 491
- clearAssertionStatus method (ClassLoader), 403
- Client-side locking, 768–769
- clone method  
    of array types, 320  
    of Object, 153, 314–321, 326
- clone/CloneTest.java, 320
- clone/Employee.java, 320
- Cloneable interface, 314–321
- CloneNotSupportedException, 318
- close method  
    of AutoCloseable, 389–390  
    of Handler, 422
- Closeable interface, close method, 389
- Closures, 334
- Code errors, 373
- Code planes, 47
- Code points, code units, 47, 66
- codePointAt, codePoints methods (String), 69
- codePointCount method (String), 67, 70
- Collection interface, 485, 492, 502  
    add method, 485, 489–492  
    addAll, clear methods, 489, 491  
    contains method, 489–490, 502  
    containsAll method, 489, 491, 502  
    equals method, 489  
    generic, 489–491  
    implementing, 307  
    isEmpty method, 307, 489–490  
    iterator method, 485, 490  
    remove, removeAll methods, 489, 491  
    removeIf method, 491, 549  
    retain method, 489  
    retainAll method, 491  
    size method, 489–490  
    stream method, 308  
    toArray method, 252, 489, 491
- Collections, 481–563  
    algorithms for, 541–543  
    bounded, 485  
    bulk operations in, 549–550  
    concrete, 494–519  
    concurrent modifications of, 501  
    converting to arrays, 550–551  
    debugging, 502  
    elements of:  
        inserting, 492  
        maximum, 541  
        removing, 488  
        traversing, 486–487  
    interfaces for, 482–492  
    legacy, 552–563  
    mutable, 533  
    ordered, 492, 498  
    performance of, 493–494, 509  
    searching in, 546–547  
    sorted, 511  
    thread-safe, 536, 781–800  
    type parameters for, 434  
    using for method parameters, 552
- Collections class, 544  
    addAll method, 548  
    binarySearch method, 546–547  
    checkedCollection methods, 539  
    copy method, 548  
    disjoint method, 549  
    emptyCollection methods, 540  
    emptySet method, 533, 540  
    enumeration method, 554–555

fill method, 548  
frequency method, 549  
`indexOfSubList`, `lastIndexOfSubList` methods, 548  
list method, 555  
`max`, `min` methods, 548  
`nCopies` method, 533, 539  
`replaceAll` method, 548  
`reverse` method, 548  
`rotate` method, 549  
`shuffle` method, 544–545  
`singleton`, `singletonXxx` methods, 533, 540  
`sort` method, 543–546  
`swap` method, 548  
`synchronizedCollection` methods, 536, 539, 800  
`unmodifiableCollection` methods, 535–536, 539

Collections framework. *See* Java collections framework (JCF)

Color class, 587–589

Colors

- background/foreground, 588
- changing, 609
- predefined/custom, 588

Columns (of a text field), 643

Combo boxes, 661–664

- adding items to, 662
- current selection in, 662

`comboBox/ComboBoxFrame.java`, 663

command method (`ProcessHandle.Info`), 838

Command line

- compiling/launching applications from, 24–26, 39
- parameters in, 112–113

`commandLine` method (`ProcessHandle.Info`), 838

Comments, 41–42

- blocks of, 42
- for automatic documentation, 42, 198–204
- not nesting, 42
- to the end of line, 42

Companion classes, 306–307

Comparable interface, 296, 365, 439, 462, 543

- `compareTo` method, 297–302

comparator method (`SortedMap`), 515, 523

Comparator interface, 313–314, 322, 339–340, 543

- chaining comparators in, 339

comparing method, 339–340

- lambdas and, 326
- `naturalOrder` method, 340
- `nullFirst/Last` methods, 340
- reversed, `reverseOrder` methods, 340, 543, 546
- `thenComparing` method, 339–340

compare method (integer types), 302, 326

compareAndSet method (`AtomicType`), 773

compareTo method

- in subclasses, 303
- of `BigDecimal`, `BigInteger`, 107
- of `Comparable`, 297–302, 439, 462
- of `Enum`, 263
- of `String`, 69

Compilation errors, 31

Compiler

- autoboxing in, 258
- bridge methods in, 444
- command-line options of, 429
- creating bytecode files in, 39
- deducting method types in, 438
- enforcing throws specifiers in, 382
- error messages in, 31, 377
- just-in-time, 6–7, 15, 151, 222, 561
- launching, 25
- optimizing method calls in, 7, 222
- overloading resolution in, 219
- shared strings in, 64–65
- translating inner classes in, 346
- translating typed array lists in, 255
- type parameters in, 433
- warnings in, 101, 255
- whitespace in, 40

CompletableFuture class, 817–823

- `acceptEither`, `applyToEither` methods, 819–820
- `allOf`, `anyOf` methods, 819–820
- `handle` method, 819
- `runAfterXxx` methods, 819–820
- `thenAccept`, `thenAcceptBoth`, `thenCombine`, `thenRun`, `whenComplete` methods, 819
- `thenApply`, `thenApplyAsync`, `thenCompose` methods, 817, 819

`completableFutures/CompletableFutureDemo.java`, 821

CompletionStage interface, 820

Component class, 623

- `getBackground/Foreground` methods, 589
- `getFont` method, 645

- Component class (*continued*)  
  getPreferredSize method, 577, 579  
  getSize method, 573  
  inheritance hierarchies of, 638  
  isVisible method, 573  
  repaint method, 576, 579  
  setBackground/Foreground methods, 588–589  
  setBounds, setLocation methods, 570,  
    572–573  
  setCursor method, 620  
  setSize method, 573  
  setVisible method, 570, 573  
  validate method, 645
- Components, 638  
  displaying information in, 574  
  labeling, 645–646
- CompoundInterest/CompoundInterest.java, 118
- Computations  
  asynchronous, 814–831  
  performance of, 53, 55  
  truncated, 53
- compute, computeIfPresent/Absent methods (*Map*),  
  524
- Concrete collections, 494–519
- Concrete methods, 226
- Concurrent hash maps  
  atomic updates in, 790–794  
  bulk operations on, 794–796  
  efficiency of, 789  
  size of, 789  
  vs. synchronization wrappers, 799
- Concurrent modification detection, 501
- Concurrent programming, 8, 733–834  
  synchronization in, 750–781
- Concurrent sets, 796–797
- ConcurrentHashMap class, 789–790  
  atomic updates in, 790–794  
  compute, computeIfXxx methods, 791–792  
  forEach method, 794–796  
  get method, 791  
  keySet, newKeySet methods, 796  
  mappingCount method, 789  
  merge method, 792  
  organizing buckets as trees in, 789  
  put, putIfAbsent methods, 791  
  reduce, reduceXxx methods, 794–796  
  replace method, 791  
  search, searchXxx methods, 794–796  
concurrentHashMap/CHMDemo.java, 792
- ConcurrentLinkedQueue class, 789–790
- ConcurrentModificationException, 501, 789, 799
- ConcurrentSkipListMap/Set classes, 789–790
- Condition interface, 764  
  await method, 741  
  signal, signalAll methods, 775  
  vs. synchronization methods, 766
- Condition objects, 758–764
- Condition variables, 758
- Conditional statements, 87–90
- config method (*Logger*), 406, 421
- Configuration files, 624–630
- Confirmation dialogs, 709
- Console class  
  reading passwords with, 77  
  readLine/Password methods, 78
- console method (*System*), 78
- Console, printing messages to, 38–41
- ConsoleHandler class, 410–415, 423
- const keyword, 52
- Constants, 51–52  
  documentation comments for, 201  
  names of, 51  
  public, 52, 157  
  static, 157–158
- Constructor class, 271  
  getDeclaringClass method, 276  
  getModifiers, getName methods, 271, 276  
  getXxxTypes methods, 276  
  newInstance method, 267, 469
- Constructor expressions, 450
- Constructor references, 332–333
- Constructors, 146–148, 170–180  
  calling another constructor in, 175  
  defined, 132  
  documentation comments for, 199  
  field initialization in:  
    default, 171  
    explicit, 173  
    final, 271  
  initialization blocks in, 175–180  
  names of, 132, 147  
  no-argument, 172, 212, 361  
  overloading, 170–171  
  parameter names in, 174  
  private, 271  
  protected, 199  
  public, 199, 271  
  with super keyword, 211

`ConstructorTest/ConstructorTest.java`, 178  
*Consumer* interface, 337  
Consumer threads, 781  
Container class, 638  
  `add` method, 601, 604, 639  
  `setLayout` method, 639  
Containers, 638  
`contains` method  
  of *Collection*, 489–490, 502  
  of *HashSet*, 509  
`containsAll` method (*Collection*), 489, 491, 502  
`containsKey/Value` methods (*Map*), 522  
Content pane, 575  
continue statement, 104  
Control flow, 86–105  
  block scope, 86–87  
  breaking, 102–105  
  conditional statements, 87–90  
  loops, 91–95  
    determinate, 95–99  
    “for each”, 110–111  
    multiple selections, 99–101  
Controllers, 632  
Conversion characters, 79  
Cooperative scheduling, 740  
Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), 136  
`copy` method (*Collections*), 548  
`copyArea` method (*Graphics*), 597  
`copyOf` method (*Arrays*), 111, 116, 283  
`copyOfRange` method (*Arrays*), 116  
`CopyOnWriteArrayList` class, 797, 799  
`CopyOnWriteArraySet` class, 797  
*Core Java* program examples, 23  
Cornell, Gary, 1  
Corruption of data, 750–754  
`cos` method (*Math*), 54  
*Count of Monte Cristo, The* (Dumas), 512, 825–827  
Covariant return types, 445  
`createTypeBorder` methods (*BorderFactory*), 658–660  
`Ctrl+\,` for thread dump, 775  
`Ctrl+C`, for program termination, 751, 761  
`Ctrl+O`, `Ctrl+S` accelerators, 680  
current method  
  of *ProcessHandle*, 835, 838  
  of *ThreadLocalRandom*, 779  
Current user, 625  
currentThread method (*Thread*), 743–746  
Cursor class, `getPredefinedCursor` method, 615  
Cursor shapes, 616  
Custom layout managers, 702–706  
Customizations. *See* Preferences

**D**

`D` suffix (double numbers), 45  
Daemon threads, 746  
Data exchange, 716–723  
Data fields  
  initializing, 175–180  
  public, 146  
Data types, 42–48  
  `boolean` type, 48  
  casting between, 57  
  `char` type, 46–47  
  conversions between, 56–57, 223–225  
  floating-point, 44–45  
  integer, 43–44  
`dataExchange/DataExchangeFrame.java`, 719  
`dataExchange/PasswordChooser.java`, 720  
Date and time  
  formatting output for, 79–82  
  no built-in types for, 132  
Date class, 136  
  `getDay/Month/Year` methods (deprecated), 137  
  `toString` method, 133  
DateInterval class, 444  
Deadlocks, 760, 775–779  
  in GUI, 780  
Debugging, 8, 425–430  
  collections, 502  
  debuggers for, 426  
  generic types, 536  
  GUI programs, 381  
  including class names in, 354  
  intermittent bugs, 65, 569  
  messages for, 380  
  reflection for, 278  
  trapping program errors in a file for, 427  
  when running applications in terminal window, 25–26  
Decrement operators, 58  
`decrementExact` method (*Math*), 55  
Deep copies, 316  
`deepToString` method (*Arrays*), 118, 243

- Default methods, 307–308
  - resolving conflicts in, 308–310
- default statement, 100, 307–308
- DefaultButtonModel class, 634, 636
- DefaultComboBoxModel class, 662
- Deferred execution, 336
- Delayed* interface, 783
  - `getDelay` method, 783, 787
- DelayQueue class, 783, 787
- delete method (`StringBuilder`), 75
- Dependence, 129–131
- Deprecated methods, 137–138
- Deque interface, 516–518
  - methods of, 517
- Deques, 516–518
- Derived classes. *See* Subclasses
- deriveFont method (`Font`), 591, 595
- descendants method (`ProcessHandle`), 835, 838
- Descender, descent (in typesetting), 591
- descendingIterator method (`NavigableSet`), 516
- destroy, destroyForcibly methods (`Process`), 834, 837
- Determinate loops, 95–99
- Development environments
  - choosing, 23–29
  - in terminal window, 25
  - integrated, 29–32
- Device errors, 373
- dialog/AboutDialog.java, 715
- dialog/DialogFrame.java, 714
- Dialogs, 706–732
  - accepting/canceling, 717
  - centering, 312
  - closing, 606, 681, 714, 717
  - confirmation, 709
  - creating, 712–716
  - data exchange in, 716–723
  - default button in, 718
  - displaying, 714
  - modal, 707–712
  - modeless, 707, 713–714
    - data exchange with, 717
  - root pane of, 718
- Diamond syntax, 248
  - with anonymous subclasses, 433
- Directories
  - starting, for a launched program, 84
  - working, for a process, 832
- directory method (`ProcessBuilder`), 832, 836
- disjoint method (`Collections`), 549
- divide method (`BigDecimal/BigInteger`), 107
- Division operator, 52
- do/while loop, 92–93
- Documentation comments, 42, 198–204
  - extracting, 203–204
  - for fields, 201
  - for methods, 200–201
  - for packages, 202
  - general, 201
  - HTML markup in, 199
  - hyperlinks in, 202
  - inserting, 199
  - links to other files in, 199
  - overview, 204
- doInBackground method (`SwingWorker`), 825–826, 831
- Do-nothing methods, 606
- Double brace initialization, 354
- Double class
  - `compare` method, 302
  - converting from `double`, 256
  - `hashCode` method, 241
  - `POSITIVE_INFINITY`, `NEGATIVE_INFINITY`, `NaN` constants, 45
- double type, 44
  - arithmetic computations with, 53
  - converting to other numeric types, 56–57
- DoubleAccumulator, DoubleAdder classes, 775
- Double-precision numbers, 44–45
- Doubly linked lists, 497
- draw method (`Graphics2D`), 580
- draw/DrawTest.java, 584
- drawImage method (`Graphics`), 597
- Drawing with mouse, 614–620
- drawString method (`Graphics/Graphics2D`), 596
- Drop-down lists, 661
- Dynamic binding, 213, 218–221
- Dynamic languages, 8
- E**
- e (exponent), in numbers, 45
- E
  - as type variable, 435
  - constant (`Math`), 55
- Echo character, 647
- Eclipse, 24, 29–32, 425
  - configuring projects in, 30

editing source files in, 31  
error messages in, 31–32  
imports in, 182  
**Effectively final variables**, 390  
**Eiffel programming language**, multiple inheritance in, 305  
**element method**  
  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783  
  of *Queue*, 517  
**Ellipse2D class**, 580, 583  
  *setFrameFromCenter* method, 583  
**Ellipse2D.Double class**, 587  
**Ellipses**, 580, 583  
  bounding rectangles of, 582–583  
  constructing, 583  
  filling with color, 588  
**else statement**, 87–89  
**else if statement**, 89–90  
**emojis**, 67  
**EmployeeTest/EmployeeTest.java**, 144  
**emptyCollection methods** (*Collections*), 540  
**emptySet method** (*Collections*), 533, 540  
**EmptyStackException**, 396–398  
**Encapsulation**, 127–128  
  benefits of, 151–153  
  protected instance fields and, 291  
**endsWith method** (*String*), 69  
**ensureCapacity method** (*ArrayList*), 249, 251  
**entering method** (*Logger*), 421  
**Enterprise Edition (Java EE)**, 12, 19  
**entry method** (*Map*), 533, 538  
**entrySet method** (*Map*), 525–526  
**Enum class**, 261–263  
  **compareTo**, **ordinal** methods, 263  
  **toString**, **valueOf** methods, 262–263  
**enum keyword**, 52  
**Enumerated types**, 52  
  equality testing for, 261  
  in switch statement, 101  
**enumeration method** (*Collections*), 554–555  
**Enumeration interface**, 482, 553–555  
  **asIterator** method, 554  
  **nextElement**, **hasMoreElements** methods, 487, 553–554  
**Enumeration maps/sets**, 529  
**Enumerations**, 261–263  
  legacy, 553–555  
**EnumMap class**, 529, 531  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
**enums/EnumTest.java**, 262  
**EnumSet class**, 529  
  **allOf**, **noneOf**, **of**, **range** methods, 531  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
**environment method** (*ProcessBuilder*), 837  
**environment variables**, modifying, 833  
**EOFException**, 378–379  
**Epoch**, 136  
**equals method**, 310  
  for wrappers, 257  
  **hashCode** method and, 239–240  
  implementing, 236  
  inheritance and, 234–238  
  of *Arrays*, 116, 238  
  of *Collection*, 489  
  of *Object*, 233–238, 247, 536  
  of proxy classes, 368  
  of *Set*, 494  
  of *String*, 65, 69  
  redefining, 239–240  
**equals/Employee.java**, 244  
**equals/EqualsTest.java**, 244  
**equals/Manager.java**, 246  
**equalsIgnoreCase method** (*String*), 65, 69  
**Error class**, 374  
**Errors**  
  checking, in mutator methods, 152  
  code, 373  
  compilation, 31  
  device, 373  
  internal, 374, 377, 401  
  messages for, 384  
  **NoClassDefFoundError**, 26  
  physical limitations, 373  
  **ThreadDeath**, 742, 749, 780  
  user input, 373  
**Escape sequences**, 46  
**Event delegation model**, 598  
**Event dispatch thread**, 569, 780–781  
**Event handling**  
  defined, 598  
  semantic vs. low-level events, 621–622  
  summary of, 620–624  
**Event listeners**, 598–599  
  with lambda expressions, 604  
**Event objects**, 598  
**Event procedures**, 598

- Event sources, 598–599  
EventObject class, 598  
    `getActionCommand`, `getSource` methods, 620  
Exception class, 374, 393  
Exception handlers, 267, 373  
Exception specification, 376  
Exceptions  
    `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`, 110, 375–377  
    `ArrayStoreException`, 218, 448–449, 458  
    `BadCastException`, 468  
    `CancellationException`, 826  
    catching, 267–268, 377, 381–395  
        multiple, 383–384  
    changing type of, 384  
    checked, 265–268, 375–378, 397  
    `ClassCastException`, 224, 283, 303, 452, 459, 537  
    classification of, 373–375  
    `CloneNotSupportedException`, 318  
    `ConcurrentModificationException`, 501, 789, 799  
    creating classes for, 379–380  
    documentation comments for, 200  
    `EmptyStackException`, 396–398  
    `EOFException`, 378–379  
    `FileNotFoundException`, 376–378  
    finally clause in, 386–389  
    generics in, 454–455  
    hierarchy of, 373, 397  
    `IllegalAccessException`, 278–279, 282  
    `IllegalStateException`, 488, 492, 506, 516–517, 783  
    `InterruptedException`, 735, 743–746, 801  
    `InvocationTargetException`, 266  
    `IOException`, 85, 376–378, 382, 389  
    logging, 407, 416  
    micromanaging, 396  
    `NoSuchElementException`, 486, 492, 506, 517  
    `NullPointerException`, 149–150, 163, 258, 330, 375, 398  
    `NumberFormatException`, 398  
    propagating, 382, 398  
    rethrowing and chaining, 384, 427  
    `RuntimeException`, 374, 397  
    `ServletException`, 384  
    squelching, 398  
    stack trace for, 391–395  
    “throw early, catch late”, 399  
    throwing, 267–268, 378–379  
    `TimeoutException`, 801  
tips for using, 396–399  
uncaught, 428, 742, 747–749  
unchecked, 268, 375–377, 397  
unexpected, 407, 416  
`UnsupportedOperationException`, 526, 535, 537, 539  
using type variables in, 453  
variables for, implicitly final, 384  
vs. simple tests, 396  
wrapping, 385  
.exe file extension, 195  
exec method (`Runtime`), 832  
Executable JAR files, 194–195  
Executable path, 20  
execute method (`SwingWorker`), 826, 831  
Execution flow, tracing, 406  
ExecutorCompletionService class, 806  
    `poll`, `submit`, `take` methods, 811  
Executors, 800–814  
    groups of tasks, controlling, 806–811  
    scheduled, 804  
Executors class  
    `newSingleThreadExecutor` method, 803–804  
    `newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor` method, 803–805  
    `newXxxThreadPool` methods, 803–805  
executors/`ExecutorDemo.java`, 808  
ExecutorService interface, 802–805  
    `invokeAny`/`All` methods, 806, 811  
    shutdown method, 804–805  
    shutdownNow method, 804, 806  
    submit method, 803–805  
Exit codes, 40  
exit method (`System`), 40  
exiting method (`Logger`), 406, 421  
exitValue method (`Process`), 834, 837  
exp method (`Math`), 55  
Explicit parameters, 150–151  
exploratory programming, 7  
exportXxx methods (`Preferences`), 626, 630  
extends keyword, 208–232, 439  
External padding, 694
- F**
- `F` suffix (float numbers), 45  
Factorial functions, 392  
Factory methods, 159  
Fair locks, 758

Fallthrough behavior, 101  
`fdlibm` (Freely Distributable Math Library), 55  
Field class, 271  
  `get` method, 277, 283  
  `getDeclaringClass` method, 276  
  `getModifiers`, `getName` methods, 271, 276  
  `getType` method, 271  
  `set` method, 283  
Field width, of numbers, 79  
Fields  
  adding, in subclasses, 211  
  default initialization of, 171  
  documentation comments for, 199, 201  
  final, 157, 222  
  instance, 127, 146–152, 155, 173, 204  
  private, 204, 210  
  protected, 199, 231, 290–291  
  public, 199, 201  
  public static final, 304  
  static, 156–157, 177, 183, 452  
  volatile, 771–772  
File dialogs, 723–732  
  adding accessory components to, 728  
FileFilter class (Swing), methods of, 726, 731  
FileFilter interface (`java.io` package), 726  
FileHandler class, 410–415, 423  
  configuration parameters of, 412  
FileNameExtensionFilter interface, 731  
FileNotFoundException, 376–378  
Files  
  filters for, 726–728  
  locating, 84  
  names of, 25, 83  
  opening/saving in GUI, 723–732  
  reading, 83  
    all words from, 390  
    in a separate thread, 825  
  writing, 84  
FileVersion class, 727  
  `getDescription`, `getName` methods, 727, 731  
  `getIcon`, `getTypeDescription` methods, 727, 732  
  `isTraversable` method, 727, 732  
fill method  
  of Arrays, 116  
  of Collections, 548  
  of Graphics2D, 588–589  
Filter interface, 414  
  `isLoggable` method, 414, 425  
final access modifier, 51, 221–223  
  checking, 271  
  for fields in interfaces, 304  
  for instance fields, 155  
  for methods in superclass, 303  
  for shared fields, 772  
  inner classes and, 350–351  
finalize method, 180  
finally clause, 386–389  
  return statements in, 388  
  unlock operation in, 755  
  without catch, 387  
Financial calculations, 45  
fine, finer, finest methods (`Logger`), 406, 421  
first method (`SortedSet`), 515  
First Person, Inc., 11  
firstKey method (`SortedMap`), 523  
FirstSample/FirstSample.java, 42  
Flash, 567  
Float class  
  converting from float, 256  
  `hashCode` method, 241  
  `POSITIVE_INFINITY`, `NEGATIVE_INFINITY`, `NaN`  
  constants, 45  
float type, 44  
  converting to other numeric types, 56–57  
Floating-point numbers, 44–45  
  arithmetic computations with, 53  
  equality of, 97  
  formatting output for, 79  
  rounding, 45, 57  
Floating-point overflow, 53  
floor method (`NavigableSet`), 516  
floorMod method (`Math`), 54  
Flow layout manager, 637  
FlowLayout class, 639  
flush method (`Handler`), 422  
FocusEvent class, 622  
  `isTemporary` method, 623  
FocusListener interface, methods of, 623  
Font class, 590–595  
  `deriveFont` method, 591, 595  
  `getFamily`, `getFontName`, `getName` methods, 595  
  `getLineMetrics` method, 592, 595  
  `getStringBounds` method, 591–592, 595  
font/FontTest.java, 593

- FontMetrics class, `getFontRenderingContext` method, 596  
Fonts, 589–596  
    checking availability of, 589  
    names of, 589–590  
    size of, 590–591  
    styles of, 590  
    typesetting properties of, 591  
“for each” loop, 108–111  
    for array lists, 253  
    for collections, 486, 799  
    for multidimensional arrays, 118  
for loop, 95–99  
    comma-separated lists of expressions in, 62  
    defining variables inside, 97  
    for collections, 486  
forEach method  
    of `ConcurrentHashMap`, 794–796  
    of `Map`, 522  
    of `StackWalker`, 394  
forEachRemaining method (`Iterator`), 485, 492  
Foreground color, specifying, 588  
Fork-join framework, 811  
`forkJoin/ForkJoinTest.java`, 813  
Format specifiers (`printf`), 79  
format, `formatTo` methods (`String`), 80  
Formattable interface, 80  
Formatter class, methods of, 415, 425  
forName method (`Class`), 265, 267  
Frame class, 567  
    `getIconImage` method, 574  
    `getTitle` method, 573  
    `isResizable` method, 573  
    `setIconImage` method, 570, 574  
    `setResizable` method, 570, 573  
    `setTitle` method, 570, 573  
Frames  
    closing by user, 570  
    creating, 567  
    displaying:  
        information in, 574–597  
        text in, 577  
    positioning, 570–574  
    properties of, 570–574  
frequency method (`Collections`), 549  
Function interface, 337  
Functional interfaces, 326–328  
    abstract methods in, 326  
    annotating, 339  
    conversion to, 326  
    generic, 327  
    using supertype bounds in, 464  
@FunctionalInterface annotation, 339  
Functions. *See* Methods  
Future interface, 806  
    cancel, `get` methods, 801–802, 804, 826  
    `isCancelled`, `isDone` methods, 801–802, 804  
Futures, 800–802  
    combining, 819–820  
    completable, 817–823  
FutureTask class, 800–802
- G**
- Garbage collection, 65, 135  
    hash maps and, 526–527  
GB18030 standard, 47  
General Public License (GPL), 15  
Generic programming, 431–479  
    classes in, 248–249, 434–437, 661  
        extending/implementing other generic classes, 459  
        no throwing or catching instances of, 453  
    collection interfaces in, 550  
    converting to raw types, 458  
    debugging, 536  
    expressions in, 442  
    in JVM, 441, 469–473  
    inheritance rules for, 457–458  
    legacy code and, 445  
    methods in, 437–438, 443–445, 489–492  
    not for arrays, 451–452  
    reflection and, 467–479  
    required skill levels for, 433  
    static fields or methods and, 452  
    type erasure in, 441–447, 451  
        clashes after, 455–456  
    type matching in, 469  
    vs. arrays, 332  
    vs. inheritance, 432–434  
    wildcard types in, 459–467  
GenericArrayType interface, 470  
    `getGenericComponentType` method, 479  
`genericReflection/GenericReflectionTest.java`, 471  
`genericReflection/TypeLiterals.java`, 474  
get method  
    of `Array`, 286

of *ArrayList*, 251, 254  
of *BitSet*, 560  
of *ConcurrentHashMap*, 791  
of *Field*, 277, 283  
of *Future*, 801–802, 804, 826  
of *LinkedList*, 502  
of *List*, 492, 505  
of *LongAccumulator*, 774  
of *Map*, 492, 520, 522  
of *Paths*, 306  
of *Preferences*, 625, 630  
of *ServiceLoader.Provider*, 361–362  
of *ThreadLocal*, 779  
of *Vector*, 769  
*getActionCommand* method  
    of *ActionEvent*, 622  
    of *ButtonModel*, 656, 658  
    of *EventObject*, 620  
*getActionMap* method (*JComponent*), 614  
*getActualTypeArguments* method  
    (*ParameterizedType*), 479  
*getAdjustable*, *getAdjustmentType* methods  
    (*AdjustmentEvent*), 622  
*getAncestorOfClass* method (*SwingUtilities*), 718, 723  
*getAndType* methods (*AtomicType*), 773  
*getAscent* method (*LineMetrics*), 596  
*getAudioClip* method (*Class*), 269  
*getAvailableFontFamilyNames* method  
    (*GraphicsEnvironment*), 589  
*getBackground* method (*Component*), 589  
*getBoolean* method (*Array*), 286  
*getBounds* method (*TypeVariable*), 478  
*getByte* method (*Array*), 286  
*getCause* method (*Throwable*), 393  
*getCenterX/Y* methods (*RectangularShape*), 582, 586  
*getChar* method (*Array*), 286  
*getClass* method  
    always returning raw types, 447  
    of *Class*, 264  
    of *Object*, 247  
*getClassName* method  
    of *StackTraceElement*, 394  
    of *StackFrame*, 395  
*getClickCount* method (*MouseEvent*), 614, 620, 623  
*getColumns* method (*JTextField*), 645  
*getComponentPopupMenu* method (*JComponent*), 679  
*getComponentType* method (*Class*), 284  
*getConstructor* method (*Class*), 267, 468  
*getConstructors* method (*Class*), 271, 276  
*getDataType* methods (*Preferences*), 625, 630  
*getDay* method (*Date*, *deprecated*), 137  
*getDayXxx* methods (*LocalDate*), 137, 141  
*getDeclaredConstructor* method (*Class*), 468  
*getDeclaredConstructors* method (*Class*), 271, 276  
*getDeclaredField* method (*Class*), 282  
*getDeclaredFields* method (*Class*), 271, 275, 279, 282  
*getDeclaredMethods* method (*Class*), 271, 275, 287  
*getDeclaringClass* method  
    of *java.lang.reflect*, 276  
    of *StackTrace*, 394  
*getDefaultToolkit* method (*Toolkit*), 313, 572, 574  
*getDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler* method  
    (*Thread*), 748  
*getDelay*, 783, 787  
*getDescent* method (*LineMetrics*), 596  
*getDescription* method  
    of *FileFilter*, 726, 731  
    of *FileView*, 727, 731  
*getDouble* method (*Array*), 286  
*getEnumConstants* method (*Class*), 468  
*getErrorStream* method (*Process*), 832–833, 837  
*getExceptionTypes* method (*Constructor*), 276  
*getFamily* method (*Font*), 595  
*getField* method (*Class*), 282  
*getFields* method (*Class*), 271, 275, 282  
*getFileName* method  
    of *StackTraceElement*, 394  
    of *StackFrame*, 395  
*getFilter* method (*Handler*, *Logger*), 422  
*getFirst* method (*Deque*), 517  
*getFloat* method (*Array*), 286  
*getFont* method (*Component*), 645  
*getFontMetrics* method (*JComponent*), 592, 596  
*getFontName* method (*Font*), 595  
*getFontRenderContext* method  
    of *FontMetrics*, 596  
    of *Graphics2D*, 591, 596  
*getForeground* method (*Component*), 589  
*getFormatter* method (*Handler*), 423  
*getGenericComponentType* method  
    (*GenericArrayType*), 479

getGenericParameterTypes, getGenericReturnType  
    methods (Method), 478  
getGenericXxx methods (Class), 478  
getGlobal method (Logger), 404, 427  
getHandlers method (Logger), 422  
getHead method (Formatter), 415, 425  
getHeight method  
    of LineMetrics, 596  
    of RectangularShape, 582, 587  
getIcon method  
    of FileView, 727, 732  
    of JLabel, 646  
getIconImage method (Frame), 574  
getImage method  
    of Class, 269  
    of ImageIcon, 574, 597  
getInheritsPopupMenu method (JComponent),  
    679  
getInputMap method (JComponent), 612, 614  
getInputStream method (Process), 832, 837  
getInstance method (StackWalker), 391, 394  
getInstant method (LogRecord), 424  
getInt method (Array), 286  
getItem, getItemSelectable methods (ItemEvent),  
    623  
getItemAt method (JComboBox), 662  
getKey method (Map.Entry), 526  
getKeyStroke method (KeyStroke), 611, 614  
getKeyXxx methods (KeyEvent), 623  
getLargestPoolSize method (ThreadPoolExecutor),  
    805  
getLast method (Deque)  
    of Deque, 517  
getLeading method (LineMetrics), 596  
getLength method (Array), 284, 286  
getLevel method  
    of Handler, 423  
    of Logger, 422  
    of LogRecord, 423  
getLineMetrics method (Font), 592, 595  
getLineNumber method  
    of StackFrame, 394  
    of StackTraceElement, 395  
getLogger method (Logger), 405, 420  
getLoggerName method (LogRecord), 423  
getLogManager method (LogManager), 424  
getLong method (Array), 286  
getLowerBounds method (WildcardType), 479  
getMaxX/Y methods (RectangularShape), 586  
getMessage method  
    of LogRecord, 424  
    of Throwable, 380  
getMethod method (Class), 287  
getMethodName method (StackTrace,  
    StackTraceElement), 395  
getMethods method (Class), 271, 275  
getMillis method (LogRecord), 424  
getMinX/Y methods (RectangularShape), 586  
getModifiers method  
    of ActionEvent, 622  
    of java.lang.reflect, 271, 276  
getMonth method (Date, deprecated), 137  
getMonthXxx methods (LocalDate), 137, 141  
getName method  
    of Class, 247, 264–266  
    of FileView, 727, 731  
    of Font, 595  
    of java.lang.reflect, 271, 276  
    of TypeVariable, 478  
getNewState, getOldState methods (WindowEvent),  
    624  
getOppositeWindow method (WindowEvent), 624  
getOrDefault method (Map), 522  
getOutputStream method (Process), 832, 837  
getOwnerType method (ParameterizedType), 479  
getPackageName method (Class), 276  
getPaint method (Graphics2D), 589  
getParameters method (LogRecord), 424  
getParameterTypes method (Method), 276  
getParent method (Logger), 422  
getPassword method (JPasswordField), 647  
getPoint method (MouseEvent), 620, 623  
getPredefinedCursor method (Cursor), 615  
getPreferredSize method (Component), 577, 579  
getProperties method (System), 556, 558  
getProperty method  
    of Properties, 556–557  
    of System, 84, 558  
getProxyClass method (Proxy), 368–369  
getRawType method (ParameterizedType), 479  
getResource, getResourceAsStream methods (Class),  
    269, 271  
getResourceBundle, getResourceBundleName methods  
    (LogRecord), 424  
getReturnType method (Method), 276  
getRootPane method (JComponent), 718, 723  
getScreenSize method (Toolkit), 572, 574  
getScrollAmount method (MouseWheelEvent), 623

getSelectedFile/Files methods (`JFileChooser`), 725, 730  
getSelectedItem method (`JComboBox`), 662–664  
getSelectedObjects method (`ItemSelectable`), 656  
getSelection method (`ButtonGroup`), 656, 658  
getSequenceNumber method (`LogRecord`), 424  
getShort method (`Array`), 286  
getSize method (`Component`), 573  
getSource method (`EventObject`), 620  
getSourceXxxName methods (`LogRecord`), 424  
getStackTrace method (`Throwable`), 391, 393  
getState method  
  of `SwingWorker`, 831  
  of `Thread`, 743  
getStateChange method (`ItemEvent`), 623  
getStringBounds method (`Font`), 591–592, 595  
getSuperclass method (`Class`), 247, 468  
getSuppressed method (`Throwable`), 390, 393  
getTail method (`Formatter`), 415, 425  
Getter/setter pairs. *See* Properties  
getText method  
  of `JLabel`, 646  
  of `JTextComponent`, 644  
getThrown, getThreadID methods (`LogRecord`), 424  
getTime method (`Calendar`), 222  
getTitle method (`Frame`), 573  
getType method (`Field`), 271  
getTypeDescription method (`FileView`), 727, 732  
getTypeParameters method (`Class, Method`), 478  
getUncaughtExceptionHandler method (`Thread`), 748  
getUpperBounds method (`WildcardType`), 479  
getUseParentHandlers method (`Logger`), 422  
getValue method  
  of `Action`, 608, 613  
  of `AdjustmentEvent`, 622  
  of `Map.Entry`, 526  
getWheelRotation method (`MouseWheelEvent`), 623  
getWidth method  
  of `Rectangle2D`, 582  
  of `RectangularShape`, 582, 587  
getWindow method (`WindowEvent`), 623  
getX/Y methods  
  of `MouseEvent`, 614, 620, 623  
  of `RectangularShape`, 587  
getYear method  
  of `Date` (deprecated), 137  
  of `LocalDate`, 137, 141  
GMT (Greenwich Mean Time), 136  
Goetz, Brian, 734, 771  
Gosling, James, 10–11  
goto statement, 86, 102  
Graphical User Interface (GUI), 565–630  
  components of, 631–732  
    choice components, 651–671  
    dialog boxes, 706–732  
    menus, 671–690  
    text input, 643–651  
    toolbars, 687–689  
    tooltips, 689–690  
    deadlocks in, 780  
    debugging, 381  
    events in, 598  
    keyboard focus in, 611  
    layout of, 636–642, 690–706  
    long-running tasks in, 823–831  
Graphics class, 579, 597  
  `copyArea, drawImage` methods, 597  
  `drawImage` method, 597  
Graphics editor applications, 614–620  
Graphics2D class, 579–587  
  `draw` method, 580  
  `drawString` method, 596  
  `fill` method, 588–589  
  `getFontRenderContext` method, 591, 596  
  `getPaint` method, 589  
  `setPaint` method, 587–589  
GraphicsEnvironment class, 589  
Green project, 10–11  
GregorianCalendar class, 138  
  `add` method, 138  
  constructors for, 136, 170–171  
Grid bag layout, 691–702  
  padding in, 694  
Grid layout, 642  
gridbag/FontFrame.java, 697  
gridbag/GBC.java, 698  
GridBagConstraints class, 693  
  `fill, anchor` parameters, 694, 701  
  `gridx/y, gridwidth/height` parameters, 693, 701  
  helper class for, 696  
  `insets` field, 694, 701–702  
  `ipadx/y` parameters, 702  
  `weightx/y` fields, 694, 701  
GridLayout class, 639, 642  
Group layout, 691  
GUI. *See* Graphical User Interface

**H**

handle method (`CompletableFuture`), 819  
**Handler** class, 413  
  close method, 422  
  flush method, 422  
  get/setFilter methods, 423  
  get/setLevel methods, 423  
  getFormatter method, 423  
  publish method, 414, 422  
  setFormatter method, 415, 423  
**Handlers**, 410–414  
Hansen, Per Brinch, 770–771  
“Has-a” relationship, 129–131  
hash method (`Objects`), 240  
Hash codes, 238–241, 507  
  default, 239  
  formatting output for, 79  
Hash collisions, 508  
Hash maps, 519  
  concurrent, 789–790  
  identity, 530–532  
  linked, 527–529  
  setting, 520  
  vs. tree maps, 520  
  weak, 526–527  
Hash sets, 507–511  
  adding elements to, 512  
  linked, 527–529  
Hash tables, 507–508  
  legacy, 553  
  load factor of, 509  
  rehashing, 509  
hashCode method, 238–241  
  equals method and, 239–240  
  null-safe, 240  
  of `Arrays`, 241  
  of `Boolean`, `Byte`, `Character`, `Double`, `Float`,  
    `Integer`, `Long`, `Short`, 241  
  of `Object`, 240, 511  
  of `Objects`, 240  
  of proxy classes, 368  
  of `Set`, 494  
  of `String`, 507  
HashMap class, 519, 522  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
HashSet class, 509–511  
  add, contains methods, 509  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
  iterating over, 486–487

**Hashtable** interface, 482, 552–553, 799–800  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
  synchronized methods, 553  
hasMoreElements method (`Enumeration`), 487,  
  553–554  
hasNext method  
  of `Iterator`, 485–487, 492  
  of `Scanner`, 77  
hasNextXxx methods (`Scanner`), 77–78  
hasPrevious method (`ListIterator`), 499, 506  
headMap method  
  of `NavigableMap`, 541  
  of `SortedMap`, 534, 541  
headSet method  
  of `NavigableSet`, 534, 541  
  of `SortedSet`, 534, 540  
Heap, 518  
Height (in typesetting), 592  
Helper classes, 696  
Helper methods, 155, 306, 465  
Hexadecimal numbers  
  formatting output for, 79  
  prefix for, 43  
higher method (`NavigableSet`), 516  
Hoare, Tony, 770  
Hold count, 756  
Holder types, 259  
HotJava browser, 11  
Hotspot just-in-time compiler, 561  
HTML (HyperText Markup Language),  
  12–13  
  in javadoc comments, 199  
  in labels, 646  
  tables in, 691  
HTML editors, 633

**I**

Icons  
  in menu items, 675–676  
  in sliders, 667  
Identity hash maps, 530–532  
identityHashCode method (`System`), 530, 532  
IdentityHashMap class, 530–532  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
IEEE 754 specification, 45, 55  
if statement, 87–90  
IFC (Internet Foundation Classes),  
  566  
IllegalAccessException, 278–279, 282

IllegalStateException, 488, 492, 506, 516–517, 783  
ImageIcon class, 572  
    getImage method, 574, 597  
Images, displaying, 597  
ImageViewer/ImageViewer.java, 27  
Immutable classes, 155  
Implementations, 482–485  
implements keyword, 298  
Implicit parameters, 150–151  
    none, in static methods, 158  
    state of, 426  
import statement, 181–183  
importPreferences method (*Preferences*), 626, 630  
Inconsistent state, 779  
increment method (*LongAdder*), 774  
Increment operators, 58  
Incremental linking, 7  
incrementAndGet method (*AtomicType*), 773  
incrementExact method (*Math*), 55  
Index (in arrays), 108  
@index comment (javadoc), 202  
indexOf method  
    of *List*, 505  
    of *String*, 69  
indexOfSubList method (*Collections*), 548  
info method  
    of *Logger*, 404, 406, 421  
    of *ProcessHandle*, 838  
Information hiding. *See* Encapsulation  
Inheritance, 129–131, 207–293  
    design hints for, 290–293  
    equality testing and, 234–238  
    hierarchies of, 216–217  
    multiple, 217, 305  
    preventing, 221–223  
    vs. type parameters, 432, 457–459  
inheritance/Employee.java, 214  
inheritance/Manager.java, 215  
inheritance/ManagerTest.java, 214  
inheritIO method (*ProcessBuilder*), 836  
initCause method (*Throwable*), 393  
Initialization blocks, 175–180  
    static, 177  
initialize method (*ThreadLocal*), 779  
Inlining, 7, 222  
Inner classes, 340–359  
    accessing object state with, 341–345  
    anonymous, 352–355  
    applicability of, 346–349  
    defined, 340  
    local, 349  
    private, 344  
    static, 341, 356–359  
    syntax of, 345–346  
    vs. lambdas, 327  
innerClass/InnerClassTest.java, 344  
Input dialogs, 710  
Input maps, 611–613  
Input, reading, 75–78  
InputTest/InputTest.java, 76  
insert method  
    of *JMenu*, 674  
    of *StringBuilder*, 75  
insertItemAt method (*JComboBox*), 662, 664  
insertSeparator method (*JMenu*), 674  
Instance fields, 127  
    final, 155  
    initializing, 204  
        explicit, 173  
    not present in interfaces, 297, 304  
    private, 146, 204  
    protected, 290–291  
    public, 146  
    shadowing, 148, 174  
    values of, 152  
    volatile, 771–772  
    vs. local variables, 148, 151, 171  
instanceof operator, 61, 224–225, 304  
Instances, 127  
    creating on the fly, 266  
int type, 43  
    converting to other numeric types, 56–57  
    fixed size for, 6  
    platform-independent, 44  
    random number generator for, 180  
Integer class  
    compare method, 302, 326  
    converting from int, 256  
    hashCode method, 241  
    intValue method, 259  
    parseInt method, 258–259  
    toString method, 259  
    valueOf method, 259  
Integer types, 43–44  
    arithmetic computations with, 52

Integer types (*continued*)  
arrays of, 243  
computations of, 55  
formatting output for, 79  
no unsigned types in Java, 44  
Integrated Development Environment (IDE), 20, 29–32  
interface keyword, 296  
Interface types, 484  
Interface variables, 303  
Interfaces, 296–313  
abstract classes and, 305–306  
binary- vs. source-compatible, 308  
callbacks and, 310–313  
constants in, 304  
defined, 296  
documentation comments for, 199  
evolution of, 308  
extending, 304  
for custom algorithms, 551–552  
functional, 326–328  
implementing, 298, 304–306  
methods in:  
    clashes between, 308–310  
    do-nothing, 606  
    nonabstract, 326  
    private, 306  
    static, 306  
no instance fields in, 297, 304  
properties of, 303–305  
public, 199  
tagging, 317, 442, 494  
vs. implementations, 482–485  
interfaces/Employee.java, 301  
interfaces/EmployeeSortTest.java, 300  
Intermittent bugs, 65, 569  
Internal errors, 374, 377, 401  
Internal padding, 694  
Internationalization. *See* Localization  
Internet Explorer browser  
    Java in, 10  
    security of, 15  
Interpreted languages, 15  
Interpreter, 7  
interrupt method (Thread), 743–746  
interrupted method (Thread), 745–746  
InterruptedException, 735, 743–746, 801  
IntHolder class, 259  
Intrinsic locks, 764, 770

Introduction to Algorithms (Cormen et al.), 512  
intValue method (Integer), 259  
Invocation handlers, 363  
InvocationHandler interface, 363, 368  
InvocationTargetException, 266  
invoke method  
    of InvocationHandler, 363, 368  
    of Method, 286–290  
invokeAny/All methods (ExecutorService), 806, 811  
IOException, 85, 376–378, 382, 389  
“Is-a” relationship, 129–131, 217, 291  
isAbstract method (Modifier), 277  
isAccessible method (AccessibleObject), 282  
isActionKey method (KeyEvent), 623  
isAlive method (Process), 834, 837  
isBlank method (String), 69  
isCancelled, isDone methods (Future), 801–804  
isDefaultButton method (JButton), 723  
isEditable method  
    of JComboBox, 664  
    of JTextField, 643  
isEmpty method  
    of Collection, 307, 489–490  
    of String, 69  
isEnabled method (Action), 608, 613  
isFinal method (Modifier), 271, 277  
isInterface method (Modifier), 277  
isInterrupted method (Thread), 743–746  
isJavaIdentifierXxx methods (Character), 49  
isLoggable method (Filter), 414, 425  
isNaN method (Double), 45  
isNative method (Modifier), 277  
isNativeMethod method (StackTraceElement), 395  
ISO 8859-1 standard, 47  
isPopupTrigger method (JPopupMenu, MouseEvent), 678  
isPrivate, isProtected, isPublic methods (Modifier), 271, 277  
isProxyClass method (Proxy), 368–369  
isResizable method (Frame), 573  
isSelected method  
    of AbstractButton, 677  
    of JCheckBox, 652, 654  
isStatic, isStrict, isSynchronized, isVolatile methods (Modifier), 277  
isTemporary method (FocusEvent), 623

- isTraversable method (*FileView*), 727, 732  
isVisible method (*Component*), 573  
*ItemEvent* class, 622  
    getXxx methods, 623  
*ItemListener* interface, *itemStateChanged* method, 623  
*ItemSelectable* interface, *getSelectedObjects* method, 656  
*Iterable* interface, 110  
*iterator* method  
    of *Collection*, 485, 490  
    of *ServiceLoader*, 362  
*Iterator* interface, 485–488  
    “for each” loop, 486  
    *forEachRemaining* method, 485, 492  
    generic, 489  
    *hasNext* method, 485–487, 492  
    *next* method, 485–488, 492  
    *remove* method, 485, 487–488, 492  
Iterators, 485–488  
    being between elements, 487  
    weakly consistent, 789  
IzPack utility, 195
- J**
- J#, J++ programming languages, 8  
Jar Bundler utility, 195  
JAR files, 189, 192–198  
    creating, 192–193  
    dropping in *jre/lib/ext* directory, 192  
    executable, 194–195  
    manifest of, 193–194  
    multi-release, 195–197  
    resources and, 268–271  
jar program, 192–193  
    command-line options of, 193–194, 197–198  
Java 2 (J2), 19  
Java 2D library, 579–587  
    floating-point coordinates in, 580  
Java browser plug-in, 10  
Java bug parade, 39  
Java collections framework (JCF), 481–563  
    algorithms in, 541–543  
    converting to/from arrays in, 550–551  
    interfaces in, 492–494  
    legacy classes in, 552–563  
    operations in:  
        bulk, 549–550  
        optional, 537  
    separating interfaces from  
        implementations in, 482–485  
        views and wrappers in, 532–541  
        vs. traditional collections libraries, 487  
*Java Concurrency in Practice* (Goetz), 734  
Java Development Kit (JDK), 6, 17–35  
    documentation in, 71–73, 613  
    downloading, 18–20  
    fonts shipped with, 590  
    installation of, 18–23, 192  
    setting up, 20–22  
.java file extension, 39  
Java Language Specification, 39  
Java look-and-feel, 611  
Java Memory Model and Thread Specification, 771  
java program, 25  
    command-line options of, 197, 400–401  
Java programming language  
    architecture-neutral object file format of, 6  
    as a programming platform, 1–2  
    available under GPL, 15  
    basic syntax of, 38–41, 142  
    calling by value in, 164  
    case-sensitivity of, 26, 38, 48–50, 553  
    design of, 2–8  
    documentation for, 23  
    dynamic, 8  
    dynamic binding in, 213, 218–221  
    garbage collection in, 65, 135  
    history of, 10–13  
    interpreter in, 7  
    libraries in, 12, 14  
        installing, 22–23  
    misconceptions about, 13–16  
    multithreading in, 8, 733–838  
    networking capabilities of, 4  
    no multiple inheritance in, 305  
    no operator overloading in, 105  
    no unsigned types in, 44  
    performance of, 7, 561  
    portability of, 6, 14, 53  
    reliability of, 4  
    reserved words in, 38, 49, 52  
    security of, 5, 15  
    simplicity of, 3–4, 323  
    strongly typed, 42, 299

- Java programming language (*continued*)  
    versions of, 11, 13, 565, 691  
    vs. C++, 3
- Java Runtime Environment (JRE), 19
- Java virtual machine (JVM), 6  
    generics in, 441, 469–473  
    launching, 25  
    managing applications in, 429  
    optimizing execution in, 406  
    precomputing method tables in, 220  
    thread priority levels in, 749  
    truncating arithmetic computations in, 53  
    watching class loading in, 428
- Java Virtual Machine Specification, 39
- java.awt.BorderLayout API, 641
- java.awt.Color API, 589
- java.awt.Component API, 573, 579, 589, 620, 645
- java.awt.Container API, 604, 639
- java.awt.event.MouseEvent API, 620, 678
- java.awt.event.WindowListener API, 607
- java.awt.event.WindowStateListener API, 607
- java.awtFlowLayout API, 639
- java.awt.Font API, 595
- java.awt.font.LineMetrics API, 596
- java.awt.FontMetrics API, 596
- java.awt.Frame API, 573–574
- java.awt.geom.RectangularShape API, 586–587
- java.awt.geom.Xxx2D.Double APIs, 587
- java.awt.Graphics API, 597
- java.awt.Graphics2D API, 589, 596
- java.awt.GridBagConstraints API, 701–702
- java.awt.GridLayout API, 642
- java.awt.LayoutManager API, 706
- java.awt.Toolkit API, 313, 574
- java.awt.Window API, 573, 579
- java.io.Console API, 78
- java.io.PrintWriter API, 85
- java.lang.Boolean API, 241
- java.lang.Byte API, 241
- java.lang.Character API, 241
- java.lang.Class API, 247, 267, 271, 275–276, 282, 468, 478
- java.lang.ClassLoader API, 403
- java.lang.Comparable API, 302
- java.lang.Double API, 241, 302
- java.lang.Enum API, 263
- java.lang.Exception API, 393
- java.lang.Float API, 241
- java.lang.Integer API, 241, 259, 302
- java.lang.Long API, 241
- java.lang.Object API, 128, 240, 247, 511, 768
- java.lang.Objects API, 240
- java.lang.Process API, 837–838
- java.lang.ProcessBuilder API, 836–837
- java.lang.ProcessHandle API, 838
- java.lang.ProcessHandle.Info API, 838
- java.lang.reflect package, 271, 283
- java.lang.reflect.AccessibleObject API, 282
- java.lang.reflect.Array API, 286
- java.lang.reflect.Constructor API, 267, 276, 469
- java.lang.reflect.Field API, 276, 283
- java.lang.reflect.GenericArrayType API, 479
- java.lang.reflect.InvocationHandler API, 368
- java.lang.reflect.Method API, 276, 290, 478
- java.lang.reflect.Modifier API, 276–277
- java.lang.reflect.ParameterizedType API, 479
- java.lang.reflect.Proxy API, 369
- java.lang.reflect.TypeVariable API, 478
- java.lang.reflect.WildcardType API, 479
- java.lang.Runnable API, 739
- java.lang.RuntimeException API, 394
- java.lang.Short API, 241
- java.lang.StackTraceElement API, 395
- java.lang.StackWalker API, 394
- java.lang.StackWalker.StackFrame API, 394–395
- java.lang.String API, 68–70
- java.lang.StringBuilder API, 74–75
- java.lang.System API, 78, 532, 558
- java.lang.Thread API, 739, 741, 743, 746–749
- java.lang.Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler API, 748
- java.lang.ThreadGroup API, 749
- java.lang.ThreadLocal API, 779
- java.lang.Throwable API, 267, 380, 393
- java.logging module, 404
- java.math.BigDecimal API, 107
- java.math.BigInteger API, 107
- java.nio.file.Path API, 86
- java.text.NumberFormat API, 260
- java.time.LocalDate API, 141
- java.util.ArrayDeque API, 518
- java.util.ArrayList API, 251, 254
- java.util.Arrays API, 116, 238, 241, 302, 540
- java.util.BitSet API, 560
- java.util.Collection API, 490–491, 549

`java.util.Collections` API, 539–540, 544–545, 547–549, 555, 800  
`java.util.Comparator` API, 546  
`java.util.concurrent` package, 755  
  efficient collections in, 789–790  
`java.util.concurrent.ArrayBlockingQueue` API, 787  
`java.util.concurrent.atomic` package, 773  
`java.util.concurrent.BlockingDeque` API, 788  
`java.util.concurrent.BlockingQueue` API, 788  
`java.util.concurrent.Callable` API, 801  
`java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentXxx` APIs, 790  
`java.util.concurrent.Delayed` API, 787  
`java.util.concurrent.DelayQueue` API, 787  
`java.util.concurrent.ExecutorCompletionService`  
  API, 811  
`java.util.concurrent.Executors` API, 804–805  
`java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService` API, 805,  
  811  
`java.util.concurrent.Future` API, 802  
`java.util.concurrent.FutureTask` API, 802  
`java.util.concurrent.LinkedBlockingDeque` API, 787  
`java.util.concurrent.LinkedBlockingQueue` API, 787  
`java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition` API, 764  
`java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock` API, 758, 763  
`java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock` API, 758  
`java.util.concurrent.PriorityBlockingQueue` API,  
  787  
`java.util.concurrent.ScheduledExecutorService` API,  
  805  
`java.util.concurrent.ThreadLocalRandom` API, 779  
`java.util.concurrent.ThreadPoolExecutor` API, 805  
`java.util.concurrent.TransferQueue` API, 788  
`java.util.Deque` API, 517  
`java.util Enumeration` API, 554  
`java.util.EnumMap` API, 531  
`java.util.EnumSet` API, 531  
`java.util.function` API, 327  
`java.util.HashMap` API, 522  
`java.util.HashSet` API, 511  
`java.util.IdentityHashMap` API, 531  
`java.util.Iterator` API, 492  
`java.util.LinkedHashMap` API, 530–531  
`java.util.LinkedHashSet` API, 530  
`java.util.LinkedList` API, 506  
`java.util.List` API, 505, 538, 540, 545, 549  
`java.util.ListIterator` API, 506  
`java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler` API, 423  
`java.util.logging.FileHandler` API, 423  
`java.util.logging.Filter` API, 425  
`java.util.logging.Formatter` API, 425  
`java.util.logging.Handler` API, 422–423  
`java.util.logging.Logger` API, 420–422  
`java.util.logging.LogManager` API, 424–425  
`java.util.logging.LogRecord` API, 423–424  
`java.util.Map` API, 522, 524, 526, 538  
`java.util.Map.Entry` API, 526  
`java.util.NavigableMap` API, 541  
`java.util.NavigableSet` API, 516, 541  
`java.util.Objects` API, 238  
`java.util.prefs.Preferences` API, 629–630  
`java.util.PriorityQueue` API, 519  
`java.util.Properties` API, 557  
`java.util.Queue` API, 516–517  
`java.util.Random` API, 180  
`java.util.Scanner` API, 77–78, 85  
`java.util.ServiceLoader` API, 362  
`java.util.ServiceLoader.Provider` API, 362  
`java.util.Set` API, 538  
`java.util.SortedMap` API, 523, 541  
`java.util.SortedSet` API, 515, 540  
`java.util.Stack` API, 559  
`java.util.TreeMap` API, 523  
`java.util.TreeSet` API, 515  
`java.util.WeakHashMap` API, 530  
`JavaBeans`, 729  
`javac` program, 25  
  command-line options of, 197–198  
  current directory in, 190  
`javadoc` program, 198–204  
  command-line options of, 203  
  comments in, 199–202  
  extracting, 203–204  
  overview, 204  
  redeclaring `Object` methods for, 326  
  HTML markup in, 199  
  hyperlinks in, 202  
  links to other files in, 199  
  online documentation of, 204  
`JavaFX` platform  
  and threads, 824  
  versions of, 195–197, 567  
`javafx.css.CssParser` class, 195–197  
`javap` program, 197, 347  
`JavaScript` programming language, 15  
`javax.swing` package, 569  
`javax.swing.AbstractAction` API, 676  
`javax.swing.AbstractButton` API, 658, 674–677,  
  681

*javax.swing.Action* API, 613  
*javax.swing.border.LineBorder* API, 661  
*javax.swing.border.SoftBevelBorder* API, 660  
*javax.swing.BorderFactory* API, 659–660  
*javax.swing.ButtonGroup* API, 658  
*javax.swing.ButtonModel* API, 658  
*javax.swing.event.MenuListener* API, 683  
*javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter* API, 731  
*javax.swing.filechooser.FileNameExtensionFilter* API, 731  
*javax.swing.filechooser.FileView* API, 731–732  
*javax.swing.ImageIcon* API, 574  
*javax.swing.JButton* API, 604, 723  
*javax.swing.JCheckBox* API, 654  
*javax.swing.JCheckBoxMenuItem* API, 676  
*javax.swing.JComboBox* API, 664  
*javax.swing.JComponent* API, 579, 596, 614, 645, 661, 679, 690, 723  
*javax.swing.JDialog* API, 716  
*javax.swing.JFileChooser* API, 730–731  
*javax.swing.JFrame* API, 579, 674  
*javax.swing.JLabel* API, 646  
*javax.swing.JMenu* API, 673–674  
*javax.swing.JMenuItem* API, 674–675, 681, 683  
*javax.swing.JOptionPane* API, 312, 710–712  
*javax.swing.JPasswordField* API, 647  
*javax.swing.JPopupMenu* API, 678  
*javax.swing.JRadioButton* API, 657  
*javax.swing.JRadioButtonMenuItem* API, 677  
*javax.swing.JRootPane* API, 723  
*javax.swing.JScrollPane* API, 651  
*javax.swing.JSlider* API, 671  
*javax.swing.JTextArea* API, 650–651  
*javax.swing.JTextField* API, 645  
*javax.swing.JToolBar* API, 690  
*javax.swing.KeyStroke* API, 614  
*javax.swing.SwingConstantsUtilities* API, 723  
*javax.swing.SwingWorker* API, 831  
*javax.swing.text.JTextComponent* API, 643  
*javax.swing.Timer* API, 313  
*JButton* class, 601, 604, 610, 635  
    `isDefaultButton` method, 723  
*JCheckBox* class, 651–654  
    `is/setSelected` methods, 652, 654  
*JCheckBoxMenuItem* class, 676–677  
*JComboBox* class, 622–623, 661–664  
    `addItem` method, 662–664  
    `getItemAt` method, 662  
    `getSelectedItem` method, 662–664  
    `insertItemAt` method, 662, 664  
    `isEditable` method, 664  
    `removeXxx` methods, 662, 664  
    `setEditable` method, 662, 664  
    `setModel` method, 662  
*JComponent* class, 575  
    action maps, 612  
    `get/setComponentPopupMenu` methods, 678–679  
    `get/setInheritsPopupMenu` methods, 678–679  
    `getActionMap` method, 614  
    `getFontMetrics` method, 592, 596  
    `getInputMap` method, 612, 614  
    `getRootPane` method, 718, 723  
    input maps, 611–613  
    `paintComponent` method, 575–577, 579, 592, 597  
    `revalidate` method, 644–645  
    `setBorder` method, 659, 661  
    `setFont` method, 645  
    `setToolTipText` method, 690  
    `jconsole` program, 429, 775  
        logging control with, 409  
*JDialog* class, 712–716  
    `setDefaultCloseOperation` method, 714  
    `setVisible` method, 714, 716–717  
*JDK*. See Java Development Kit  
*JEditorPane* class, 649  
*JFileChooser* class, 723–732  
    `addChoosableFileFilter` method, 730  
    `getSelectedFile/Files` methods, 725, 730  
    `resetChoosableFilters` method, 727, 731  
    `setAcceptAllFileFilterUsed` method, 726, 730  
    `setAccessory` method, 731  
    `setCurrentDirectory` method, 724, 730  
    `setFileFilter` method, 726, 730  
    `setSelectionMode` method, 725, 730  
    `setFileView` method, 727–728, 731  
    `setMultiSelectionEnabled` method, 725, 730  
    `setSelectedFile/Files` methods, 725, 730  
    `showDialog, showXxxDialog` methods, 718, 723, 725, 730  
*JFrame* class, 567–571, 638  
    `add` method, 579  
    internal structure of, 575  
    `setJMenuBar` method, 672, 674  
*JLabel* class, 645–646, 728  
    methods of, 646  
*JMenu* class  
    `add` method, 672–674

addSeparator method, 672, 674  
insert, insertSeparator methods, 674  
remove method, 674  
**JMenuBar** class, 672–674  
**JMenuItem** class, 674–675  
  setAccelerator method, 680–681  
  setEnabled method, 682–683  
  setIcon method, 675  
**Jmol** applet, 9  
join method (*Thread*), 70, 741–743  
**JOptionPane** class, 707–712  
  message types, 708  
  showConfirmDialog method, 707–711  
  showInputDialog method, 707–709, 712  
  showInternalConfirmDialog method, 711  
  showInternalInputDialog method, 712  
  showInternalMessageDialog method, 710  
  showInternalOptionDialog method, 711  
  showMessageDialog method, 312, 707–710  
  showOptionDialog method, 707–709, 711  
**JPanel** class, 637  
**JPasswordField** class, getPassword, setEchoChar methods, 647  
**JPopupMenu** class, 677–679  
  isPopupTrigger, show methods, 678  
**JRadioButton** class, 654–658  
**JRadioButtonMenuItem** class, 677  
**JRootPane** class, setDefaultButton method, 718, 723  
**JScrollbar** class, 622  
**JScrollPane** class, 651  
**JShell** program, 7, 32–35  
**JSlider** class, 665–671  
  setInverted method, 667  
  setLabelTable method, 445, 667, 671  
  setPaintLabels, setPaintTicks, setSnapToTicks methods, 666, 671  
  setPaintTrack method, 667, 671  
  setXxxTickSpacing methods, 671  
**JTextArea** class, 647–648  
  append method, 650  
  setColumns, setRows methods, 647, 650  
  setLineWrap method, 648, 650  
  setTabSize method, 651  
  setWrapStyleWord method, 651  
**JTextComponent** class  
  getText method, 644  
  is/setEditable methods, 643  
  setText method, 643–644  
**JTextField** class, 622, 643–645  
  getColumns method, 645  
  setColumns method, 644–645  
**JToolBar** class, 688–689  
  add, addSeparator methods, 689–690  
**JUnit** framework, 426  
Just-in-time compiler, 6–7, 15, 151, 222, 561  
JVM. *See Java virtual machine*

## K

K type variable, 435  
Key/value pairs. *See Properties*  
**Keyboard**  
  associating with actions, 611  
  focus of, 611  
  mnemonics for, 679–681  
**KeyEvent** class, 622  
  getKeyXxx, isActionKey methods, 623  
**KeyListener** interface, keyXxx methods, 623  
keys method (*Preferences*), 626, 629  
keySet method  
  of ConcurrentHashMap, 796  
  of Map, 525–526  
**KeyStroke** class, getKeyStroke method, 611, 614  
Knuth, Donald, 102  
KOI-8 standard, 47

## L

L suffix (long integers), 43  
Labeled break statement, 102  
**Labels**  
  for components, 645–646  
  for slider ticks, 666  
**Lambda expressions**, 322–340  
  accessing variables in, 333–335  
  atomic updates with, 773  
  capturing values by, 334  
  for event listeners, 604  
  functional interfaces and, 326  
  method references and, 328  
  no assigning to a variable of type Object, 327  
  parameter types of, 324  
  processing, 335–339  
  result type of, 325  
  scope of, 335  
  syntax of, 323–326  
  this keyword in, 335

- Lambda expressions (*continued*)  
    vs. inner classes, 327  
`lambda/LambdaTest.java`, 325  
Langer, Angelika, 479  
`last` method (`SortedSet`), 515  
`lastIndexOf` method  
    of `List`, 505  
    of `String`, 70  
`lastIndexOfSubList` method (`Collections`), 548  
`lastKey` method (`SortedMap`), 523  
Launch4J utility, 195  
Layout management, 636–642  
    border, 639–641  
    box, 691  
    custom, 702–706  
    flow, 637  
    grid, 642  
    grid bag, 691–702  
    group, 691  
    sophisticated, 690–706  
    spring, 691  
`layoutContainer` method (`LayoutManager`), 706  
`LayoutManager` interface  
    designing custom, 702–706  
    methods of, 706  
`LayoutManager2` interface, 703  
Leading (in typesetting), 592  
Legacy code and generics, 445–446  
Legacy collections, 552–563  
    bit sets, 559–563  
    enumerations, 553–555  
    hash tables, 553  
    property maps, 555–558  
    stacks, 558  
`length` method  
    of arrays, 110  
    of `BitSet`, 560  
    of `String`, 66–67, 70  
    of `StringBuilder`, 74  
`Line2D` class, 580, 584  
`Line2D.Double` class, 587  
`LineBorder` class, 659, 661  
Linefeed, escape sequence for, 46  
`LineMetrics` class, 592  
    `getXxx` methods, 596  
Lines, 580  
    constructing, 584  
@link comment (javadoc), 202  
Linked hash maps/sets, 527–529  
Linked lists, 496–506  
    concurrent modifications of, 501  
    doubly linked, 497  
    printing, 503  
    random access in, 502, 542  
    removing elements from, 498  
`LinkedBlockingDeque` class, 787  
`LinkedBlockingQueue` class, 782, 787  
`LinkedHashMap` class, 527–531  
    access vs. insertion order, 528  
    as a concrete collection type, 495  
    `removeEldestEntry` method, 528, 531  
`LinkedHashSet` class, 527–530  
    as a concrete collection type, 495  
`LinkedList` class, 484, 498, 502, 516  
    `addFirst/Last`, `getFirst/Last` methods, 506  
    as a concrete collection type, 495  
    `get` method, 502  
    `listIterator` method, 499  
    `next/previousIndex` methods, 503  
    `removeAll` method, 503  
    `removeFirst/Last` methods, 506  
`linkedList/LinkedListTest.java`, 504  
Linux operating system  
    Eclipse versions for, 29  
    JDK versions for, 18  
    no thread priorities in Oracle JVM for, 749  
pop-up menus in, 678  
setting paths in, 20, 189–191  
setting up JDK in, 20  
troubleshooting Java programs in, 26  
`list` method (`Collections`), 555  
`List` interface, 492  
    `add` method, 492, 505  
    `addAll` method, 505  
    `get` method, 492, 505  
    `indexOf`, `lastIndexOf` methods, 505  
    `listIterator` method, 505  
    `of` method, 532–533, 538, 540  
    `remove` method, 492, 505  
    `replaceAll` method, 549  
    `set` method, 492, 505  
    `sort` method, 545  
    `subList` method, 534, 540  
Listener interfaces, 598  
Listener objects, 598  
Listeners. *See* Action listeners, Event listeners, Window listeners

- ListIterator* interface, 502  
  add method, 493, 499–501, 506  
  hasPrevious method, 499, 506  
  next/previousIndex methods, 506  
  previous method, 499, 506  
  remove method, 501  
  set method, 501, 506  
listIterator method  
  of *LinkedList*, 499  
  of *List*, 505
- Lists, 492  
  modifiable/resizable, 544  
  with given elements, 532
- load method  
  of *Properties*, 555, 557  
  of *ServiceLoader*, 362
- Local inner classes, 349  
  accessing final variables from outer  
    methods in, 350–351
- Local variables  
  annotating, 446  
  vs. instance fields, 148, 151, 171
- LocalDate class, 135–137  
  extending, 292  
  getXxx methods, 137, 141  
  minusDays method, 141  
  now, of methods, 136, 141  
  plusDays method, 137, 141  
  processing arrays of, 463
- Locales, 409
- Localization, 132, 269–270,  
  409–410
- Lock* interface, 764  
  await method, 760–764  
  lock method, 758  
  newCondition method, 759, 763  
  signal method, 761–764  
  signalAll method, 760–764  
  tryLock method, 741  
  unlock method, 755, 758  
  vs. synchronization methods, 766
- Locks, 755–758  
  client-side, 769  
  condition objects for, 758–764  
  deadlocks, 760, 775, 779  
  fair, 758  
  hold count for, 756  
  in synchronized blocks, 768–770  
  inconsistent state and, 779
- intrinsic, 764, 770  
not with try-with-resources statement,  
  755
- reentrant, 756
- log*, *log10* methods (*Math*), 55
- Logger class  
  add/removeHandler methods, 422  
  entering, exiting methods, 406, 421  
  get/setFilter methods, 415, 422  
  get/setParent methods, 422  
  get/setUseParentHandlers methods, 422  
  getGlobal method, 404, 427  
  getHandlers method, 422  
  getLevel method, 422  
  getLogger method, 405, 420  
  info method, 404  
  log method, 406–407, 421  
  logp method, 406, 421  
  logrb method, 422  
  setLevel method, 404, 422  
  severe, warning, info, config, fine, finer, finest  
    methods, 406, 421  
  throwing method, 407, 421
- Loggers  
  configuring, 407–409  
  default, 404, 406  
  hierarchical names of, 405  
  writing your own, 405–407
- Logging, 403–425  
  advanced, 405–407  
  basic, 404  
  file pattern variables for, 413  
  file rotation for, 413  
  filters for, 414  
  formatters for, 415  
  handlers for, 410–414  
    configuring, 412  
  including class names in, 354  
  levels of, 405–406  
    changing, 408–409  
  localization of, 409–410  
  messages for, 243  
  recipe for, 415–425  
    resource bundles and, 409–410
- Logging proxy, 427
- logging/LoggingImageViewer.java, 417
- logging.properties file, 407–409
- Logical conditions, 48
- Logical “and”, “or”, 59

- LogManager class, 409  
  getLogManager method, 424  
  read/updateConfiguration methods, 408, 425
- LogRecord class, methods of, 423–424
- Long class  
  converting from long, 256  
  hashCode method, 241
- long type, 43  
  platform-independent, 44
- LongAccumulator class, methods of, 774
- LongAdder class, 774, 792  
  add, increment, sum methods, 774
- Look-and-feel  
  appearance of buttons in, 632  
  pluggable, 727
- Loops  
  break statements in, 102–105  
  continue statements in, 104  
  determinate (for), 95–99  
  “for each”, 110–111  
  while, 91–95
- LotteryArray/LotteryArray.java, 122
- LotteryDrawing/LotteryDrawing.java, 115
- LotteryOdds/LotteryOdds.java, 98
- lower method (NavigableSet), 516
- Low-level events, 621–622
- M**
- Mac OS X operating system  
  Eclipse versions for, 29  
  executing JARs in, 195  
  JDK versions for, 18  
  setting up JDK in, 20
- main method, 160–163  
  body of, 40  
  declared public, 39  
  declared static void, 40  
  loading classes from, 265  
  not defined, 141, 177  
  separate for each class, 426  
  String[] args parameter of, 112–113  
  tagged with throws, 85
- make program (UNIX), 145
- MANIFEST.MF (manifest file), 193–194  
  editing, 194  
  newline characters in, 195
- Map interface, 492  
  compute, computeIfPresent/Absent methods, 524  
  containsKey/Value methods, 522  
  entry method, 533, 538  
  entrySet, keySet methods, 525–526  
  forEach method, 522  
  get, put methods, 492, 520, 522  
  getOrDefault method, 522  
  merge method, 524  
  of method, 532–533, 538, 540  
  ofEntries method, 533, 538  
  putAll method, 522  
  putIfAbsent method, 524  
  remove method, 520  
  replaceAll method, 524  
  values method, 525–526
- map/MapTest.java, 521
- Map.Entry interface, 525  
  getKey, get/setValue methods, 526
- mappingCount method (ConcurrentHashMap), 789
- Maps, 519–532  
  adding/retrieving objects to/from, 520  
  concurrent, 789–790  
  garbage collecting, 527  
  hash vs. tree, 520  
  implementations for, 519  
  keys for, 520  
    enumerating, 525  
  subranges of, 534  
  with given key/value pairs, 532
- Marker interfaces, 317
- Math class, 54–55  
  E, PI static constants, 55, 157–158  
  floorMod method, 54  
  log, log10 methods, 55  
  pow method, 54, 158  
  round method, 57  
  sqrt method, 54  
  trigonometric functions, 54  
  xxxExact methods, 55
- Matisse, 691
- max method (Collections), 548
- Maximum value, computing, 436
- menu/MenuFrame.java, 683
- MenuItemListener interface, 682  
  menuXxx methods, 682–683
- Menus, 671–690  
  accelerators for, 680–681  
  checkboxes and radio buttons in, 676–677  
  icons in, 675–676  
  keyboard mnemonics for, 679–681

menu bar in, 671–672  
menu items in, 671–677  
    enabling/disabling, 682–686  
pop-up, 677–679  
submenus in, 671–672  
**merge** method  
    of *ConcurrentHashMap*, 792  
    of *Map*, 524  
Merge sort algorithm, 544  
**META-INF** directory, 193  
**META-INF/versions** directory, 195  
**Method** class, 271  
    **getDeclaringClass** method, 276  
    **getGenericXxx** methods, 478  
    **getModifiers**, **getName** methods, 271, 276  
    **getReturnType** method, 276  
    **getTypeParameters** method, 478  
    **getXxxTypes** methods, 276  
    **invoke** method, 286–290  
    **toString** method, 271  
Method parameters. *See* Parameters  
Method pointers, 286–288  
Method references, 328–332  
    this, super parameters in, 330  
Method tables, 220  
Methods, 127  
    abstract, 226  
        in functional interfaces, 326  
    accessor, 138–141, 152–153, 461  
    adding, in subclasses, 211  
    applying to objects, 133  
    asynchronous, 800  
    body of, 40–41  
    bridge, 444–445, 456  
    calling by reference vs. by value, 163–170  
    casting, 223–225  
    concrete, 226  
    consistent, 235  
    default, 307–308  
    deprecated, 137–138  
    destructor, 180  
    documentation comments for, 199–202  
    do-nothing, 606  
    dynamic binding for, 213, 218–221  
    error checking in, 152  
    exception specification in, 376  
    factory, 159  
    final, 220–222, 271, 303  
    generic, 437–438, 443–445, 489–492  
    helper, 155, 465  
    inlining, 7, 222  
    invoking, 41  
        arbitrary, 286–290  
    mutator, 138–141, 152, 461  
    names of, 206  
    overloading, 171  
    overriding, 210–211, 237, 292  
        exceptions and, 378  
        return type and, 443  
    package scope of, 187  
    passing objects to, 133  
    private, 155, 220, 271, 306  
    protected, 199, 231, 291, 319  
    public, 199, 271, 298  
    reflexive, 235  
    resolving conflicts in, 308–310  
    return type of, 171, 219  
    signature of, 171, 219  
    static, 158–159, 183, 220, 452  
        adding to interfaces, 306  
    symmetric, 235  
    tracing, 364  
    transitive, 235  
    utility, 306  
    varargs, 260–261  
        passing generic types to, 448–449  
    visibility of, in subclasses, 221  
**methods/MethodTableTest.java**, 288  
Micro Edition (Java ME), 4, 12, 19  
Microsoft  
    .NET platform, 6  
    ActiveX, 5, 15  
    C#, 8, 12, 222  
    Internet Explorer, 10, 15  
    J#, J++, 8  
    Visual Basic, 3, 132, 598  
    Visual Studio, 23  
    **min** method (*Collections*), 548  
Minimum value, computing, 436  
**minimumLayoutSize** method (*LayoutManager*), 706  
**minusDays** method (*LocalDate*), 141  
**mod** method (*BigDecimal/BigInteger*), 107  
Modality, 707, 713  
Model-view-controller design pattern, 632–636  
    classes in, 632  
    multiple views in, 634

- Modifier class  
  `isXxx` methods, 271, 277  
  `toString` method, 276
- Module path, 192
- Modules, 12, 188  
  unnamed, 278
- Modulus, 52
- Monitor concept, 770–771
- Mosaic browser, 11
- Mouse events, 614–620
- `mouse/MouseComponent.java`, 617
- MouseAdapter class, 617
- MouseEvent class, 622  
  `getClickCount` method, 614, 620, 623  
  `getPoint` method, 620, 623  
  `getX/Y` methods, 614, 620, 623  
  `isPopupTrigger` method, 678  
  `translatePoint` method, 623
- MouseHandler class, 617
- MouseListener interface, 615  
  `mouseClicked` method, 614, 617, 623  
  `mouseDragged` method, 616  
  `mouseEntered/Exited` methods, 617, 623  
  `mousePressed/Released` methods, 614, 623
- MouseMotionHandler class, 617
- MouseMotionListener interface, 615–617  
  `mouseDragged` method, 623  
  `mouseMoved` method, 615–617, 623
- MouseWheelEvent class, 622  
  `getScrollAmount`, `getWheelRotation` methods,  
    623
- MouseWheelListener interface, `mouseWheelMoved`  
  method, 623
- Multidimensional arrays, 116–121  
  printing, 243  
  ragged, 120–123
- Multiple inheritance, 305  
  not supported in Java, 217
- Multiple selections, 99–101
- Multiplication operator, 52
- `multiply` method (`BigDecimal/BigInteger`),  
  107
- `multiplyExact` method (`Math`), 55
- Multi-release JARs, 195–197
- Multitasking, 733
- Multithreading, 8, 733–838  
  deadlocks in, 760, 775–778  
  deferred execution in, 336  
  performance and, 758, 774, 783
- preemptive vs. cooperative scheduling  
  for, 740
- synchronization in, 750–781  
  using pools for, 800–805
- Mutator methods, 138, 461  
  error checking in, 152
- N**
- `\n` (linefeed escape sequence), 46
- NaN (not a number), 45
- `naturalOrder` method (*Comparator*), 340
- Naughton, Patrick, 10–11
- NavigableMap interface, 494  
  `subMap`, `headMap`, `tailMap` methods, 541
- NavigableSet interface, 494, 513, 534  
  `ceiling`, `floor` methods, 516  
  `descendingIterator` method, 516  
  `higher`, `lower` methods, 516  
  `pollFirst/Last` methods, 516  
  `subSet`, `headSet`, `tailSet` methods, 534, 541
- `nCopies` method (*Collections*), 533, 539
- `negateExact` method (`Math`), 55
- Negation operator, 59
- Negative infinity, 45
- .NET platform, 6
- NetBeans IDE, 20, 24, 425  
  Matisse, 691
- Netscape, 11  
  IFC library, 566  
  LiveScript/JavaScript, 15  
  Navigator browser, 10
- Networking, 4
- `new` operator, 61, 68, 132, 147  
  not for interfaces, 303  
  return value of, 134  
  with arrays, 108  
  with generic classes, 248  
  with threads, 740
- `new` keyword, in constructor references, 332
- `newCachedThreadPool` method (*Executors*),  
  803–804
- `newCondition` method (*Lock*), 759, 763
- `newFixedThreadPool` method (*Executors*), 803–804
- `newInstance` method  
  of `Array`, 283, 286  
  of `Class`, 266, 468  
  of `Constructor`, 267, 469
- `newKeySet` method (*ConcurrentHashMap*), 796
- `newProxyInstance` method (*Proxy*), 363, 368–369

newScheduledThreadPool method (`Executors`),  
  803–805  
newSingleThreadExecutor method (`Executors`),  
  803–804  
newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor method  
  (`Executors`), 803–805  
next method  
  of `Iterator`, 485–488, 492  
  of `Scanner`, 77  
nextDouble method (`Scanner`), 76–77  
nextElement method (`Enumeration`), 487,  
  553–554  
nextIndex method  
  of `LinkedList`, 503  
  of `ListIterator`, 506  
nextInt method  
  of `Random`, 180  
  of `Scanner`, 76–77  
nextLine method (`Scanner`), 76–77  
No-argument constructors, 172, 212, 361  
`NoClassDefFoundError`, 26  
node method (`Preferences`), 625, 629  
noneOf method (`EnumSet`), 531  
`NoSuchElementException`, 486, 492, 506, 517  
Notepad text editor, 26  
`notHelloWorld/NotHelloWorld.java`, 578  
notify, notifyAll methods (`Objects`), 765, 768  
now method (`LocalDate`), 136, 141  
null value, 134  
  equality testing to, 235  
nullFirst/Last methods (`Comparator`), 340  
`NullPointerException`, 149–150, 163, 258, 330,  
  375, 398  
`Number` class, 256  
`NumberFormat` class  
  factory methods, 159  
  parse method, 260  
`NumberFormatException`, 398  
Numbers  
  generated random, 180, 778  
  rounding, 107  
  unsigned, 44  
Numeric types  
  casting, 57  
  comparing, 59, 340  
  converting:  
    to other numeric types, 56–57  
    to strings, 258  
  default initialization of, 171  
  fixed sizes for, 6  
  precision of, 105  
  printing, 78

**O**

Oak programming language, 10  
`Object` class, 128, 232–247  
  clone method, 153, 314–321, 326  
  equals method, 233–238, 247, 310,  
    536  
  getClass method, 247  
  hashCode method, 239–240, 511  
  no redefining for methods of, 310  
  notify, notifyAll methods, 765, 768  
  toString method, 241–247, 310, 326  
  wait method, 741, 765, 768  
Object references  
  as method parameters, 164  
  converting, 223  
  default initialization of, 171  
  modifying, 164  
Object traversal algorithms, 530  
Object variables, 227  
  in predefined classes, 132–135  
  initializing, 134  
  setting to null, 134  
  vs. C++ object pointers, 135  
  vs. objects, 133  
`objectAnalyzer/ObjectAnalyzer.java`, 280  
`objectAnalyzer/ObjectAnalyzerTest.java`, 280  
Object-oriented programming (OOP), 4,  
  126–131, 207  
  passing objects in, 310  
  time measurement in, 136  
  vs. procedural, 126–131  
Objects, 126–129  
  analyzing at runtime, 277–283  
  applying methods to, 133  
  behavior of, 128  
  cloning, 314–321  
  comparing, 303  
  concatenating with strings, 242  
  constructing, 127, 170–180  
  damaged, 779–780  
  default hash codes of, 239  
  destruction of, 180  
  equality testing for, 233–238, 266  
  finalize method of, 180  
  identity of, 128

- Objects (*continued*)  
 implementing an interface, 304  
 in predefined classes, 132–135  
 initializing, 132  
 intrinsic locks of, 764  
 passing to methods, 133  
 references to, 134  
 runtime type identification of, 264  
 serializing, 530  
 sorting, 297  
 state of, 127–128, 341–345  
 vs. object variables, 133
- Objects class  
 hash, hashCode methods, 240  
 requireNonNull, requireNonNullElse methods, 149, 163
- Octal numbers  
 formatting output for, 79  
 prefix for, 43
- octonions, 48, 67
- of method  
 of EnumSet, 531  
 of List, Map, Set, 532–533, 538, 540  
 of LocalDate, 136, 141  
 of Path, 83, 85–86, 306  
 of ProcessHandle, 835, 838
- ofEntries method (Map), 533, 538
- offer method  
 of BlockingQueue, 782–783, 788  
 of Queue, 516
- offerFirst/Last methods  
 of BlockingDeque, 788  
 of Deque, 517
- offsetByCodePoints method (String), 67, 69
- onExit method (Process), 838
- Online documentation, 68, 71–73, 198, 203
- Operators  
 arithmetic, 52–53  
 bitwise, 60  
 boolean, 59  
 hierarchy of, 61–62  
 increment/decrement, 58  
 no overloading for, 105  
 relational, 59
- Option dialogs, 707–712
- Optional operations, 537
- or method (BitSet), 560
- Oracle, 12, 20
- Ordered collections, 492, 498  
 ordinal method (Enum), 263  
 org.omg.CORBA package, 259  
 OSGi platform, 360  
 Output statements, 63  
 Output, formatting, 78–83  
 Overloading resolution, 170–171, 219  
 @Override annotation, 237  
 overview.html, 204  
 Owner frame, 713
- P**
- p (exponent), in hexadecimal numbers, 45  
 pack method (Window), 577, 579  
 package statement, 181, 184  
 package.html, 202  
 package-info.java, 203  
 Packages, 180–192  
 accessing, 187–188  
 adding classes into, 184–187  
 documentation comments for, 199, 202  
 importing, 181  
 names of, 181, 265  
 unnamed, 184, 187, 203, 400  
 PackageTest/com/horstmann/corejava/Employee.java, 186  
 PackageTest/PackageTest.java, 185  
 paintComponent method (JComponent), 575–577, 579, 592, 597, 780  
 overriding, 621  
 pair1/PairTest1.java, 436  
 pair2/PairTest2.java, 440  
 pair3/PairTest3.java, 466  
 Parallelism threshold, 795  
 parallelXxx methods (Arrays), 797–798  
 Parameterized types. *See* Type parameters  
 ParameterizedType interface, 470  
 getXxx methods, 479  
 Parameters, 41, 163–170  
 checking, with assertions, 401–402  
 documentation comments for, 200  
 explicit, 150–151  
 implicit, 150–151, 158, 426  
 modifying, 164–167  
 names of, 174  
 string, 41  
 using collection interfaces in, 552  
 variable number of, 260–261  
 passing generic types to, 448–449

ParamTest/ParamTest.java, 168  
Parent classes. *See* Superclasses  
parse method (*NumberFormat*), 260  
parseInt method (*Integer*), 258–259  
Pascal programming language, 10  
  architecture-neutral object file format  
    of, 6  
  passing parameters in, 165  
Password fields, 647  
PasswordChooser class, 716  
Passwords  
  dialog box for, 717  
  reading from console, 77  
PATH environment variable, 20  
Path interface, of method, 83, 85–86, 306  
Paths class, get method, 306  
Payne, Jonathan, 11  
peek method  
  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783  
  of *Queue*, 517  
  of *Stack*, 559  
peekFirst/Last methods (*Deque*), 517  
Performance, 7  
  computations and, 53, 55  
  JAR files and, 189  
  measuring, 560–563  
  multithreading and, 758, 774, 783  
  of collections, 493–494, 509, 789  
  of Java vs. C++, 561  
  of simple tests vs. catching exceptions, 396  
Physical limitations, 373  
PI constant (*Math*), 55, 157–158  
pid method (*ProcessHandle*), 838  
plusDays method (*LocalDate*), 137, 141  
Point class, 582  
Point size (in typesetting), 590–591  
Point2D class, 582  
Point2D.Double class, 582  
Point2D.Float class, 582  
poll method  
  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783, 788  
  of *ExecutorCompletionService*, 811  
  of *Queue*, 517  
pollFirst/Last methods  
  of *Deque*, 517, 788  
  of *NavigableSet*, 516  
Polymorphism, 213, 217–218, 292  
pop method (*Stack*), 559  
Pop-up menus, 677–679  
Positive infinity, 45  
pow method (*Math*), 54, 158  
Precision, of numbers, 79  
Preconditions, 402  
Predefined action table names, 609  
Predefined classes, 131–141  
  mutator and accessor methods in, 138–141  
  objects and object variables in, 132–135  
Predicate interface, 327, 337  
Preemptive scheduling, 740  
Preferences  
  accessing, 625  
  enumerating keys in, 626  
  importing/exporting, 626  
Preferences class, 624–630  
  exportXxx methods, 626, 630  
  get, *getDataType* methods, 625, 630  
  importPreferences method, 626, 630  
  keys method, 626, 629  
  node method, 625, 629  
  platform-independency of, 624  
  put, *putDataType* methods, 625, 630  
  system/userNodeForPackage methods, 625, 629  
  system/userRoot methods, 625, 629  
preferences/ImageViewer.java, 627  
preferredLayoutSize method (*LayoutManager*), 706  
previous method (*ListIterator*), 499, 506  
previousIndex method  
  of *LinkedList*, 503  
  of *ListIterator*, 506  
Prime numbers, 560  
Primitive types, 42–48  
  as method parameters, 164  
  comparing, 340  
  converting to objects, 256  
  final fields of, 155  
  not for type parameters, 447  
  transforming hash map values to, 796  
  values of, not object, 233  
Princeton University, 5  
print method (*System.out*), 41, 78  
printf method (*System.out*), 79–83  
  conversion characters for, 79  
  flags for, 80  
  for date and time, 81–82  
  parameters of, 260  
println method (*System.out*), 41, 75, 328, 403

- printStackTrace method (*Throwable*), 267, 391, 427  
PrintWriter class, 84–85  
Priority queues, 518  
PriorityBlockingQueue class, 783, 787  
PriorityQueue class, 519  
    as a concrete collection type, 495  
*priorityQueue/PriorityQueueTest.java*, 518  
private access modifier, 146, 187–188, 344  
    checking, 271  
    for fields, in superclasses, 210  
    for methods, 155  
Procedures, 126  
process method (*SwingWorker*), 825–827, 831  
Process class, 831–838  
    destroy, destroyForcibly methods, 834, 837  
    exitValue method, 834, 837  
    getXXXStream methods, 832–833, 837  
    isAlive method, 834, 837  
    onExit method, 838  
    supportsNormalTermination method, 837  
    toHandle method, 835, 837  
    waitFor method, 834, 837  
ProcessBuilder class, 831–838  
    directory method, 832, 836  
    environment method, 837  
    inheritIO method, 836  
    redirectXXX methods, 833, 836  
    start method, 834, 837  
    startPipeline method, 833, 837  
Processes, 831–838  
    building, 832–834  
    killing, 834  
    running, 834–835  
    vs. threads, 734  
*ProcessHandle* interface  
    allProcesses method, 835, 838  
    children, descendants methods, 835, 838  
    current method, 835, 838  
    info method, 838  
    of method, 835, 838  
    pid method, 838  
*ProcessHandle.Info*, methods of, 838  
Producer threads, 781  
Programs. *See* Applications  
Properties, 572  
    permitted to retrieve, 558  
Properties class, 552  
    getProperty method, 556–557  
    load, store methods, 555, 557  
    setProperty method, 557  
Property maps, 555–558  
    reading/writing, 555  
*PropertyChangeListener* interface, 729  
protected access modifier, 231–232, 290–291, 319  
Proxies, 362–369  
    properties of, 368–369  
    purposes of, 364  
Proxy class, 368–369  
    get/isProxyClass methods, 368–369  
    newProxyInstance method, 363, 368–369  
*proxy/ProxyTest.java*, 366  
public access modifier, 38, 52, 143–146, 187–188, 298  
    checking, 271  
    for fields in interfaces, 304  
    for main method, 39  
    for only one class in source file, 143  
    not specified for interfaces, 297  
publish method  
    of Handler, 414, 422  
    of SwingWorker, 825–826, 831  
Pure virtual functions (C++), 227  
push method (Stack), 559  
put method  
    of BlockingQueue, 782–783, 788  
    of ConcurrentHashMap, 791  
    of Map, 492, 520, 522  
    of Preferences, 625, 630  
putAll method (Map), 522  
putData-Type methods (Preferences), 625, 630  
putFirst/Last methods (BlockingDeque), 788  
putIfAbsent method  
    of ConcurrentHashMap, 791  
    of Map, 524  
putValue method (Action), 608, 613
- Q**
- Queue interface, 516–518  
    implementing, 483–485  
    methods of, 516–517  
Queues, 482–485, 516–518  
    blocking, 781–788  
    concurrent, 789–790  
    double-ended. *See* Deques  
QuickSort algorithm, 113, 544

**R**

\r (carriage return escape sequence), 46

Race conditions, 750–754

  and atomic operations, 773

Radio buttons, 654–658

  in menus, 676–677

radioButton/RadioButtonFrame.java, 656

Ragged arrays, 120–123

Random class, 180

  nextInt method, 180

  thread-safe, 778

RandomAccess interface, 494, 544, 547

range method (*EnumSet*), 531

Raw types, 441–442

  converting type parameters to, 458

  type inquiring at runtime, 447

readConfiguration method (*LogManager*), 408,

  425

readLine/Password methods (*Console*), 78

Rectangle class, 513, 582

Rectangle2D class, 580–583

Rectangle2D.Double class, 581, 587

Rectangle2D.Float class, 581

Rectangles, 580

  comparing, 513

  drawing, 580

  filling with color, 588

RectangularShape class, 582

  getCenterX/Y methods, 582, 586

  getHeight/Width methods, 582, 587

  getMaxX/Y, getMinX/Y methods, 586

  getXY methods, 587

Recursive computations, 812

RecursiveAction, RecursiveTask classes, 812

Red-black trees, 512

redirectXxx methods (*ProcessBuilder*), 833,

  836

reduce, reduceXxx methods (*ConcurrentHashMap*),

  794–796

Redundant keywords, 304

Reentrant locks, 756

ReentrantLock class, 755–758

Reflection, 208, 264–290

  accessing nonpublic features with, 278

  analyzing:

    classes, 271–277

    objects, at runtime, 277–283

  generics and, 283–286, 467–479

  overusing, 293

reflection/ReflectionTest.java, 273

Reinhold, Mark, 12

Relational operators, 59, 61

Relative resource names, 269

remove method

  of *ArrayList*, 253–254

  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783

  of *Collection*, 489, 491

  of *Iterator*, 485, 487–488, 492

  of *JMenu*, 674

  of *List*, 492, 505

  of *ListIterator*, 501

  of *Map*, 520

  of *Queue*, 517

  of *ThreadLocal*, 779

removeAll method

  of *Collection*, 489, 491

  of *LinkedList*, 503

removeEldestEntry method (*LinkedHashMap*), 528,

  531

removeFirst/Last methods

  of *Deque*, 517

  of *LinkedList*, 506

removeHandler method (*Logger*), 422

removeIf method

  of *ArrayList*, 328

  of *Collection*, 491, 549

removeLayoutComponent method (*LayoutManager*),

  706

removePropertyChangeListener method (*Action*),

  608–609

removeXxx methods (*JComboBox*), 662, 664

repaint method

  of *Component*, 576

  of *JComponent*, 579

repeat method (*String*), 63, 70

REPL (read-evaluate-print loop), 32

replace method

  of *ConcurrentHashMap*, 791

  of *String*, 70

replaceAll method

  of *Collections*, 548

  of *List*, 549

  of *Map*, 524

requireNonNull, requireNonNullElse methods

  (Objects), 149, 163

Reserved words, 38

  forbidden for variable names, 49

  not used, 52

resetChoosableFilters method (`JFileChooser`), 727, 731  
Resource bundles, 409–410  
`ResourceBundle` class, 410  
Resources, 268–271  
    exhaustion of, 374  
    localization of, 269  
    names of, 269  
`resources/ResourceTest.java`, 270  
Restricted views, 537  
resume method (`Thread`), 743  
retain method (`Collection`), 489  
retainAll method (`Collection`), 491  
`Retirement/Retirement.java`, 93  
`Retirement2/Retirement2.java`, 94  
return statement  
    in finally blocks, 388  
    in lambda expressions, 324  
@return comment (javadoc), 200  
Return types, 219  
    covariant, 445  
    documentation comments for, 200  
    for overridden methods, 443  
Return values, 134  
revalidate method (`JComponent`), 644–645  
reverse method (`Collections`), 548  
reversed, reverseOrder methods (`Comparator`), 340, 543, 546  
rotate method (`Collections`), 549  
round method (`Math`), 57  
`RoundingMode` class, 107  
rt.jar file, 192  
run method (`Thread`), 736, 739  
runAfterXxx methods (`CompletableFuture`), 819–820  
runFinalizersOnExit method (`System`), 180  
`Runnable` interface, 337, 734  
    lambdas and, 326  
    run method, 336, 739  
Runtime  
    adding shutdown hooks at, 180  
    analyzing objects at, 277–283  
    creating classes at, 363  
    exec method, 832  
    setting the size of an array at, 248  
    type identification at, 224, 264,  
        447  
`RuntimeException`, 374, 394, 397

**S**

@SafeVarargs annotation, 449  
Scala programming language, default  
    methods in, 308  
`Scanner` class, 75–78, 83–85  
    `hasNext` method, 77  
    `hasNextXxx` methods, 77–78  
    `next` method, 77  
    `nextXxx` methods, 76–77  
Scheduled execution, 804  
`ScheduledExecutorService` class, methods of, 805  
Scroll panes, 647–651  
search, `searchXxx` methods (`ConcurrentHashMap`), 794–796  
Security, 5, 15  
@see comment (javadoc), 201–202  
Semantic events, 621–622  
Serialization, 530  
Service loaders, 360–362  
`ServiceLoader` class, 360  
    `iterator`, `load` methods, 362  
    `stream` method, 361–362  
`ServiceLoader.Provider` interface, methods of, 361–362  
Services, 360–362  
`ServletException`, 384  
Servlets, 384  
Set interface  
    `add`, `equals`, `hashCode`, methods of, 494  
    `of` method, 532–533, 538, 540  
set method  
    `of Array`, 286  
    `of ArrayList`, 251, 254  
    `of BitSet`, 560  
    `of Field`, 283  
    `of List`, 492, 505  
    `of ListIterator`, 501, 506  
    `of ThreadLocal`, 779  
    `of Vector`, 769  
`set/SetTest.java`, 510  
setAccelerator method (`JMenuItem`), 680–681  
setAcceptAllFileFilterUsed method (`JFileChooser`), 726, 730  
setAccessible method (`AccessibleObject`), 278,  
    282  
setAccessory method (`JFileChooser`), 731  
setAction method (`AbstractButton`), 674  
setActionCommand method (`AbstractButton`), 658

setBackground method (*Component*), 588–589  
setBoolean, setByte, setChar methods (*Array*),  
286  
setBorder method (*JComponent*), 659, 661  
setBounds method (*Component*), 570, 573  
  coordinates in, 572  
setCharAt method (*StringBuilder*), 75  
setClassAssertionStatus method (*ClassLoader*),  
403  
setColumns method  
  of *JTextArea*, 647, 650  
  of *JTextField*, 644–645  
setComponentPopupMenu method (*JComponent*),  
678–679  
setCurrentDirectory method (*JFileChooser*), 724,  
730  
setCursor method (*Component*), 620  
setDaemon method (*Thread*), 746–747  
setDefaultAssertionStatus method (*ClassLoader*),  
403  
setDefaultButton method (*JRootPane*), 718, 723  
setDefaultCloseOperation method (*JDialog*), 714  
setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler method  
  (*Thread*), 428, 747–748  
setDisplayMnemonicIndex method  
  (*AbstractButton*), 680–681  
setDouble method (*Array*), 286  
setEchoChar method (*JPasswordField*), 647  
setEditable method  
  of *JComboBox*, 662, 664  
  of *JTextComponent*, 643  
setEnabled method  
  of *Action*, 608, 613  
  of *JMenuItem*, 682–683  
setFileFilter method (*JFileChooser*), 726, 730  
setFileSelectionMode method (*JFileChooser*), 725,  
730  
setFileView method (*JFileChooser*), 727–728,  
731  
setFilter method  
  of *Handler*, 423  
  of *Logger*, 415, 422  
setFloat method (*Array*), 286  
setFont method (*JComponent*), 645  
setForeground method (*Component*), 588–589  
setFormatter method (*Handler*), 415, 423  
setFrameFromCenter method (*Ellipse2D*), 583  
setHorizontalTextPosition method  
  (*AbstractButton*), 675  
setIcon method  
  of *JLabel*, 646  
  of *JMenuItem*, 675  
setIconImage method (*Frame*), 570, 574  
setInheritsPopupMenu method (*JComponent*),  
678–679  
setInt method (*Array*), 286  
setInverted method (*JSlider*), 667  
setJMenuBar method (*JFrame*), 672, 674  
setLabelTable method (*JSlider*), 445, 667, 671  
setLayout method (*Container*), 639  
setLevel method  
  of *Handler*, 423  
  of *Logger*, 404, 422  
setLineWrap method (*JTextArea*), 648, 650  
 setLocation method (*Component*), 570, 573  
  coordinates in, 572  
setLocationByPlatform method (*Window*), 573  
setLong method (*Array*), 286  
setMnemonic method (*AbstractButton*), 680–681  
setModel method (*JComboBox*), 662  
setMultiSelectionEnabled method (*JFileChooser*),  
725, 730  
setOut method (*System*), 158  
setPackageAssertionStatus method (*ClassLoader*),  
403  
setPaint method (*Graphics2D*), 587–589  
setPaintLabels method (*JSlider*), 666, 671  
setPaintTicks method (*JSlider*), 666–667, 671  
setPaintTrack method (*JSlider*), 671  
setParent method (*Logger*), 422  
setPriority method (*Thread*), 749  
setProperty method  
  of *Properties*, 557  
  of *System*, 408  
setResizable method (*Frame*), 570, 573  
setRows method (*JTextArea*), 647, 650  
Sets, 509  
  concurrent, 789–790  
  intersecting, 549  
  mutating elements of, 510  
  subranges of, 534  
  thread-safe, 796–797  
  with given elements, 532  
setSelected method  
  of *AbstractButton*, 677  
  of *JCheckBox*, 652, 654  
setSelectedFile/Files methods (*JFileChooser*),  
725, 730

setShort method (*Array*), 286  
setSize method (*Component*), 573  
setSnapToTicks method (*JSlider*), 666, 671  
setTabSize method (*JTextArea*), 651  
setText method  
    of *JLabel*, 646  
    of *JTextComponent*, 643–644  
setTime method (*Calendar*), 222  
setTitle method (*JFrame*), 570, 573  
setToolTipText method (*JComponent*), 690  
setUncaughtExceptionHandler method (*Thread*), 748  
setUseParentHandlers method (*Logger*), 422  
setValue method (*Map.Entry*), 526  
setVisible method  
    of *Component*, 570, 573  
    of *JDialog*, 714, 716–717  
setWrapStyleWord method (*JTextArea*), 651  
setXxxTickSpacing methods (*JSlider*), 671  
severe method (*Logger*), 406, 421  
Shallow copies, 316–318  
*Shape* interface, 580  
Shell  
    redirection syntax of, 85  
    scripts in, 191  
Shift operators, 60  
short type, 43  
Short class  
    converting from short, 256  
    hashCode method, 241  
show method (*JPopupMenu*), 678  
showConfirmDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 707–711  
showDialog method (*JFileChooser*), 718, 725, 730  
showInputDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 707–709, 712  
showInternalConfirmDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 711  
showInternalInputDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 712  
showInternalMessageDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 710  
showInternalOptionDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 711  
showMessageDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 312, 707–710  
showOptionDialog method (*JOptionPane*), 707–709, 711  
showXxxDialog methods (*JFileChooser*), 718, 723, 725, 730  
shuffle method (*Collections*), 544–545  
shuffle/ShuffleTest.java, 545  
Shuffling, 544  
Shutdown hooks, 180  
shutdown method (*ExecutorService*), 804–805  
shutdownNow method (*ExecutorService*), 804, 806  
Sieve of Eratosthenes benchmark, 560–563  
sieve/sieve.cpp, 562  
sieve/Sieve.java, 561  
signal method (*Condition*), 761–764, 775  
signalAll method (*Condition*), 760–764, 775  
Signatures (of methods), 171, 219  
simpleframe/SimpleFrameTest.java, 568  
sin method (*Math*), 54  
singleton, singletonXxx methods (*Collections*), 533, 540  
size method  
    of *ArrayList*, 250–251  
    of *Collection*, 489–490  
    of concurrent collections, 789  
sleep method (*Thread*), 735, 739, 744  
slider/SliderFrame.java, 667  
Sliders, 665–671  
    ticks on, 666–667  
    vertical, 665  
SoftBevelBorder class, 659–660  
Software Development Kit (SDK), 19  
Solaris operating system  
    Eclipse versions for, 29  
    JDK versions for, 18  
sort method  
    of *Arrays*, 113–116, 297, 300, 302, 322, 326  
    of *Collections*, 543–546  
    of *List*, 545  
SortedMap interface, 494  
comparator, first/lastKey methods, 523  
subMap, headMap, tailMap methods, 534, 541  
SortedSet interface, 494, 534  
comparator, first, last methods, 515  
subSet, headSet, tailSet methods, 534, 540  
Sorting  
    algorithms for, 113, 543–546  
    arrays, 113–116, 300  
    assertions for, 401  
    in reverse order, 543  
    people, by name, 339–340

strings by length, 314, 322–324  
Source files, 191  
  editing in Eclipse, 31  
  installing, 22–23  
Special characters, 46  
Splash screen, 265  
Spring layout, 691  
sqrt method (`Math`), 54  
  of `BigDecimal`, `BigInteger`, 107  
`src.zip` file, 22  
`Stack` interface, 482, 552, 558  
  methods of, 559  
`Stack` trace, 391–395, 775  
`StackFrame` class  
  `getClassName` method, 394  
  `getDeclaringClass` method, 394  
  `getFileName` method, 394  
  `getLineNumber` method, 394  
  `getMethodName` method, 395  
  `isNativeMethod` method, 395  
  `toString` method, 391, 395  
Stacks, 558  
`StackTrace/StackTraceTest.java`, 392  
`StackTraceElement` class, methods of, 395  
`StackWalker` class, 391  
  `forEach` method, 394  
  `getInstance` method, 391, 394  
  `walk` method, 391, 394  
Standard Edition (Java SE), 12, 19  
Standard Java library  
  companion classes in, 306  
  online API documentation for, 68, 71–73, 198, 203  
Standard Template Library (STL), 482, 487  
start method  
  of `ProcessBuilder`, 834, 837  
  of `Thread`, 736, 739–740  
  of `Timer`, 313  
Starting directory, for a launched program, 84  
`startInstant` method (`ProcessHandle.Info`), 838  
`startPipeline` method (`ProcessBuilder`), 833, 837  
`startsWith` method (`String`), 69  
`stateChanged` method (`ChangeListener`), 666  
Statements, 41  
  compound. *See* Blocks  
static access modifier, 156–163  
  for fields in interfaces, 304  
  for main method, 40  
Static binding, 220  
Static constants, 157–158  
  documentation comments for, 201  
Static fields, 156–157  
  accessing, in static methods, 158  
  importing, 183  
  initializing, 177  
  no type variables in, 452  
static final access modifier, 51  
Static imports, 183  
Static inner classes, 341, 356–359  
Static methods, 158–159  
  accessing static fields in, 158  
  adding to interfaces, 306  
  importing, 183  
  no type variables in, 452  
Static variables, 157  
`staticInnerClass/StaticInnerClassTest.java`, 358  
`StaticTest/StaticTest.java`, 161  
stop method  
  of `Thread` (deprecated), 743, 779–781  
  of `Timer`, 313  
store method (`Properties`), 555, 557  
stream method  
  of `Collection`, 308  
  of `ServiceLoader`, 361–362  
`Stream` interface, `toArray` method, 332  
`StreamHandler` class, 413–414  
strictfp keyword, 53  
`StrictMath` class, 54–55  
`String` class, 62–75  
  `charAt` method, 67–68  
  `codePointAt`, `codePoints` methods, 69  
  `codePointCount` method, 67, 70  
  `compareTo` method, 69  
  `endsWith` method, 69  
  `equals`, `equalsIgnoreCase` methods, 65, 69  
  `format`, `formatTo` methods, 80  
  `hashCode` method, 238, 507  
  immutability of, 63, 155, 222  
  `indexOf` method, 69, 171  
  `isBlank`, `isEmpty` methods, 69  
  `join` method, 70  
  `lastIndexOf` method, 70  
  `length` method, 66–67, 70  
  `offsetByCodePoints` method, 67, 69  
  `repeat` method, 63, 70

- String class (*continued*)
  - replace method, 70
  - startsWith method, 69
  - strip method, 70
  - substring method, 62, 70, 534
  - toLowerCase, toUpperCase methods, 70
  - trim method, 70, 644
- StringBuilder class, 74–75
  - append method, 74–75
  - appendCodePoint method, 75
  - delete method, 75
  - insert method, 75
  - length method, 74
  - setCharAt method, 75
  - toString method, 74–75
- Strings, 62–75
  - building, 74–75
  - code points/code units of, 66
  - comparing, 314
  - concatenating, 63
    - with objects, 242
  - converting to numbers, 258
  - empty, 66, 69
  - equality of, 65
  - formatting output for, 78–83
  - immutability of, 63
  - length of, 62, 66
  - null, 66
  - shared, in compiler, 64–65
  - sorting by length, 314, 322–324
  - substrings of, 62
    - using "...", 41
  - strip method (String), 70
- Strongly typed languages, 42, 299
- Subclasses, 208–232
  - adding fields/methods to, 211
  - anonymous, 354, 433
  - cloning, 319
  - comparing objects from, 303
  - constructors for, 211
  - defining, 208
  - method visibility in, 221
  - no access to private fields of superclass, 231
  - overriding superclass methods in, 211
- subList method (*List*), 534, 540
- subMap method
  - of *NavigableMap*, 541
  - of *SortedMap*, 534, 541
- Submenus, 671–672
- submit method
  - of ExecutorCompletionService, 811
  - of ExecutorService, 803–805
- Subranges, 534
- subSet method
  - of *NavigableSet*, 534, 541
  - of *SortedSet*, 534, 540
- Substitution principle, 217
- substring method (String), 62, 70, 534
- subtract method (*BigDecimal/BigInteger*), 107
- subtractExact method (*Math*), 55
- Subtraction operator, 52
- sum method (*LongAdder*), 774
- Sun Microsystems, 2, 5–12, 14, 566
  - HotJava browser, 11
- super keyword, 210, 461
  - in method references, 330
  - vs. this, 211–212
- Superclass wins rule, 308
- Superclasses, 208–232
  - accessing private fields of, 210
  - common fields and methods in, 227, 290
  - overriding methods of, 237
  - throws specifiers in, 378, 383
- Supertype bounds, 461–464
- Supplementary characters, 47
- Supplier interface, 337
- supportsNormalTermination method (*Process*), 837
- @SuppressWarnings annotation, 101, 256, 446, 449, 454–455
- Surrogates area (Unicode), 47
- suspend method (*Thread*, deprecated), 743, 779–781
- swap method (*Collections*), 548
- Swing toolkit, 565–630, 824
  - building GUI with, 631–732
  - model-view-controller analysis of, 634, 636
  - starting, 569
- SwingConstants interface, 304, 646
- SwingUtilities class, getAncestorOfClass method, 718, 723
- SwingWorker class, 824
  - doInBackground method, 825–826, 831
  - execute method, 826, 831
  - getState method, 831
  - process method, 825–827, 831
  - publish method, 825–826, 831

swingWorker/SwingWorkerTest.java, 827  
switch statement, 99–101  
  enumerated constants in, 101  
synch/Bank.java, 762  
synch2/Bank.java, 766  
Synchronization, 750–781  
  condition objects, 758–764  
  final variables, 772  
  in Vector, 507  
  lock objects, 755–758  
  monitor concept, 770–771  
  race conditions, 750–754, 773  
  volatile fields, 771–772  
Synchronization wrappers, 799–800  
Synchronized blocks, 768–770  
synchronized keyword, 755, 764–770  
Synchronized views, 536  
synchronizedCollection methods (*Collections*), 536, 539, 800  
System class  
  console method, 78  
  exit method, 40  
  getProperties method, 556, 558  
  getProperty method, 84, 558  
  identityHashCode method, 530, 532  
  runFinalizersOnExit method, 180  
  setOut method, 158  
  setProperty method, 408  
System.err class, 427  
System.in class, 75  
System.out class, 41, 157, 427  
  print method, 78  
  printf method, 79–83, 260  
  println method, 75, 403  
systemNodeForPackage, systemRoot methods  
  (Preferences), 625, 629

**T**

T type variable, 435  
\t (tab escape sequence), 46  
Tab completion, 34  
Tagging interfaces, 317, 442, 494  
tailMap method  
  of *NavigableMap*, 541  
  of *SortedMap*, 534, 541  
tailSet method  
  of *NavigableSet*, 534, 541  
  of *SortedSet*, 534, 540

take method  
  of *BlockingQueue*, 782–783, 788  
  of *ExecutorCompletionService*, 811  
takeFirst/Last methods (*BlockingDeque*), 788  
tan method (*Math*), 54  
tar command, 192  
Tasks  
  controlling groups of, 806–811  
  decoupling from mechanism of running, 736  
  long-running, 823–831  
  multiple, 733  
  running asynchronously, 800  
  scheduled, 804  
  work stealing for, 813  
Template code bloat, 442  
Terminal window, 25  
Text  
  centering, 591  
  displaying, 577  
  fonts for, 589–596  
  typesetting properties of, 591  
Text areas, 647–648  
  formatted text in, 649  
  preferred size of, 648  
Text fields, 643–645  
  columns in, 643  
  creating blank, 644  
  preferred size of, 643  
Text input, 643–651  
  labels for, 645–646  
  password fields, 647  
  scroll panes, 647  
text/TextComponentFrame.java, 649  
thenAccept, thenAcceptBoth, thenCombine methods  
  (*CompletableFuture*), 819  
thenAccept, thenAcceptBoth, thenCombine, thenRun  
  methods (*CompletableFuture*), 819  
thenApply, thenApplyAsync methods  
  (*CompletableFuture*), 817, 819  
thenComparing method (*Comparator*), 339–340  
thenCompose method (*CompletableFuture*), 818–819  
this keyword, 150, 174  
  in first statement of constructor, 175  
  in inner classes, 346  
  in lambda expressions, 335  
  in method references, 330  
  vs. super, 211–212

Thread class  
  currentThread method, 743–746  
  extending, 736  
  get/setUncaughtExceptionHandler methods, 748  
  getDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler method, 748  
  getState method, 743  
  interrupt, isInterrupted methods, 743–746  
  interrupted method, 745–746  
  join method, 741–743  
  methods with timeout, 741  
  resumes method, 743  
  run method, 736, 739  
  setDaemon method, 746–747  
  setDefaultUncaughtExceptionHandler method, 428, 747–748  
  setPriority method, 749  
  sleep method, 735, 739, 744  
  start method, 736, 739–740  
  stop method (deprecated), 743, 779–781  
  suspend method (deprecated), 743, 779–781  
  yield method, 741  
Thread dump, 775  
Thread groups, 748  
Thread pools, 800–805  
  of fixed size, 802  
  *Thread.UncaughtExceptionHandler* interface, 747–749  
ThreadDeath error, 742, 749, 780  
ThreadGroup class, 748  
  uncaughtException method, 748–749  
ThreadLocal class, methods of, 779  
ThreadLocalRandom class, current method, 779  
ThreadPoolExecutor class, 802, 804  
  getLargestPoolSize method, 805  
Threads  
  accessing collections from, 536, 781–800  
  blocked, 741–742, 744  
  condition objects for, 758–764  
  daemon, 746  
  defined, 734–739  
  executing code in, 336  
  idle, 811  
  interrupting, 743–746  
  listing all, 775  
  locking, 768–770  
  new, 740  
preemptive vs. cooperative scheduling  
  for, 740  
priorities of, 749  
producer/customer, 781  
Runnable, 740–741  
states of, 739–743  
synchronizing, 750–781  
terminated, 735, 742–743  
thread-local variables in, 778–779  
timed waiting, 741–742  
unblocking, 761  
uncaught exceptions in, 747–749  
vs. processes, 734  
waiting, 741–742, 760  
work stealing for, 813  
  worker, 823–831  
threads/Bank.java, 738  
threads/ThreadTest.java, 736  
Thread-safe collections, 781–800  
  callables and futures, 800–802  
  concurrent, 789–790  
  copy on write arrays, 797  
  synchronization wrappers, 799–800  
throw keyword, 378–379  
Throwable class, 374, 397  
  add/getSuppressed methods, 390, 393  
  get/initCause methods, 393  
  getMessage method, 380  
  getStackTrace method, 391, 393  
  printStackTrace method, 267, 391, 427  
  toString method, 380  
  throwing method (Logger), 407, 421  
throws keyword, 268, 375–378  
  for main method, 85  
@throws comment (javadoc), 200  
Ticks, 666  
  icons for, 667  
  labeling, 666  
  snapping to, 666  
Time measurement vs. calendars, 136  
Timed waiting threads, 741–742  
TimeoutException, 801  
Timer class, 310, 322, 622  
  start, stop methods, 313  
timer/TimerTest.java, 312  
toArray method  
  of ArrayList, 452  
  of Collection, 252, 489, 491  
  of Stream, 332

- toHandle method (*Process*), 835, 837  
toLowerCase method (*String*), 70  
Toolbars, 687–689  
  detaching, 688  
  dragging, 687  
  title of, 689  
  vertical, 689  
Toolkit class  
  beep method, 313  
  getDefaultToolkit method, 313, 572, 574  
  getScreenSize method, 572, 574  
Tooltips, 689–690  
toString method  
  adding to all classes, 243  
  *Formattable* and, 80  
  of Arrays, 111, 116  
  of Date, 133  
  of Enum, 262–263  
  of Integer, 259  
  of Modifier, 271, 276  
  of Object, 241–247, 310  
  of proxy classes, 368  
  of StackFrame, 391, 395  
  of StackTraceElement, 395  
  of StringBuilder, 74–75  
  of Throwable, 380  
  redeclaring, 326  
  working with any class, 279  
Total ordering, 513  
totalCpuDuration method (*ProcessHandle.Info*), 838  
toUnsignedInt method (*Byte*), 44  
toUpperCase method (*String*), 70  
TraceHandler class, 364  
Tracing execution flow, 406  
TransferQueue interface, 783  
  transfer, tryTransfer methods, 788  
translatePoint method (*MouseEvent*), 623  
Tree maps, 520  
Tree sets, 511–516  
  adding elements to, 512  
  red-black, 512  
  total ordering of, 513  
  vs. priority queues, 518  
TreeMap class, 494, 519, 523  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
  vs. *HashMap*, 520  
TreeSet class, 494, 511–516  
  as a concrete collection type, 495  
treeSet/Item.java, 514  
treeSet/TreeSetTest.java, 513  
Trigonometric functions, 54  
trim method (*String*), 70, 644  
trimToSize method (*ArrayList*), 250–251  
Troubleshooting. *See* Debugging  
Truncated computations, 53  
try/catch statement, 381–386  
  generics and, 453  
  wrapping entire task in try block, 397  
try/finally statement, 386–389  
tryLock method (*Lock*), 741  
trySetAccessible method (*AccessibleObject*), 282  
try-with-resources statement, 389–391  
  effectively final variables in, 390  
  no locks with, 755  
Two-dimensional arrays, 116–121  
Type erasure, 441–447  
  clashes after, 455–456  
Type interface, 470  
type method (*ServiceLoader.Provider*), 361–362  
Type parameters, 248  
  converting to raw types, 458  
  not for arrays, 448, 458  
  not instantiated with primitive types, 447  
  vs. inheritance, 432  
Type variables  
  bounds for, 438–441  
  in exceptions, 453  
  in static fields or methods, 452  
  matching in generic methods, 469  
  names of, 435  
  no instantiating for, 450  
  replacing with bound types, 441–442  
Typesetting terms, 592  
TypeVariable interface, 470  
  getBounds, getName methods, 478
- U**
- UCSD Pascal system, 6  
UML (Unified Modeling Language)  
  notation, 130–131  
UnaryOperator interface, 337  
uncaughtException method (*ThreadGroup*), 748–749  
*UncaughtExceptionHandler* interface, 747–749  
  uncaughtException method, 748

- Unchecked exceptions, 268, 375–377  
    applicability of, 397
- Unequality operator, 59
- Unicode standard, 6, 47–48, 62  
    in char type, 46
- Unit testing, 160
- University of Illinois, 11
- UNIX operating system  
    Eclipse versions for, 29  
    setting paths in, 20, 189–191  
    setting up JDK in, 20  
    troubleshooting Java programs in, 26
- unlock method (*Lock*), 755, 758
- Unmodifiable views, 534–536
- unmodifiableCollection methods (*Collections*), 535–536, 539
- Unnamed modules, 278
- Unnamed packages, 184, 187, 203, 400
- UnsupportedOperationException, 526, 533, 535, 537, 539
- unsynch/UnsynchBankTest.java, 752
- updateAndGet method (*AtomicType*), 773
- updateConfiguration method (*LogManager*), 408, 425
- user method (*ProcessHandle.Info*), 838
- User input, 644  
    errors in, 373
- User Interface. *See* Graphical User Interface
- userNodeForPackage, userRoot methods  
    (*Preferences*), 625, 629
- “Uses-a” relationship, 129–131
- UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), 136
- UTF-8 standard, 84
- Utility classes/methods, 306–307
- V**
- V type variable, 435
- validate method (*Component*), 645
- valueOf method  
    of *BigDecimal*, *BigInteger*, 105–107  
    of *Enum*, 262–263  
    of *Integer*, 259
- values method (*Map*), 525–526
- Values, captured by lambda expressions, 334
- Varargs, 260–261  
    passing generic types to, 448–449
- VarHandle class, 279
- Variable handles, 279
- Variables, 48–50  
    accessing in lambdas, 333–335  
    annotating, 446  
    copying, 314  
    declarations of, 48  
    effectively final, 335, 390  
    final, accessing from outer methods, 350–351  
    initializing, 50, 204  
    local, 446  
    mutating in lambda expressions, 334  
    names of, 48–50  
    package scope of, 187  
    printing/logging values of, 426  
    static, 157  
    thread-local, 778–779
- Vector class, 482, 552–553, 769, 799–800  
    for dynamic arrays, 249  
    get, set methods, 769  
    synchronization in, 507
- @version comment (*javadoc*), 201, 203
- Views, 532, 632  
    bulk operations for, 550  
    checked, 536  
    restricted, 537  
    subranges of, 534  
    synchronized, 536  
    unmodifiable, 534–536
- Visual Basic programming language  
    built-in date type in, 132  
    event handling in, 598  
    syntax of, 3
- Visual Studio, 23
- void keyword, 40
- Volatile fields, 771–772
- volatile keyword, 771–773
- von der Ahé, Peter, 438
- W**
- wait method (*Object*), 741, 765, 768
- Wait sets, 760
- waitFor method (*Process*), 834, 837
- walk method (*StackWalker*), 391, 394
- warning method (*Logger*), 406, 421
- Warnings  
    fallthrough behavior, 101  
    generic types, 256, 446, 449, 454–455  
    suppressing, 449, 454–455  
    when using reflection, 278

- Weak hash maps, 526–527  
Weak references, 527  
`WeakHashMap` class, 526–527, 530  
    as a concrete collection type, 495  
Weakly consistent iterators, 789  
`WeakReference` object, 527  
Web pages  
    dynamic, 9  
    extracting links from, 817  
    reading, 818, 824  
`Welcome/Welcome.java`, 25  
`whenComplete` method (`CompletableFuture`), 819  
while loop, 91–95  
Whitespace, irrelevant to compiler, 40  
Wildcard types, 434, 459–467  
    arrays of, 448  
    capturing, 465–467  
    supertype bounds for, 461–464  
    unbounded, 464  
`WildcardType` interface, 470  
    `getLowerBounds`, `getUpperBounds` methods, 479  
`Window` class, 623  
    `pack` method, 577, 579  
    `setLocationByPlatform` method, 573  
`Window` listeners, 605–607  
`WindowClosing` event, 681  
`WindowEvent` class, 598, 606, 622  
    `getNewState`, `getOldState` methods, 624  
    `getWindow`, `getOppositeWindow`, `getScrollAmount` methods, 623  
`WindowFocusListener` interface, methods of, 624  
`WindowListener` interface, methods of,  
    606–607, 623
- Windows. *See* Dialogs  
Windows operating system  
    Alt+F4 keyboard shortcut in, 681  
    default location in, 411  
    Eclipse versions for, 29  
    executing JARs in, 195  
    JDK versions for, 18  
    pop-up menus in, 678  
    registry in, 624, 626  
    setting paths in, 20–22, 189, 191  
    setting up JDK in, 20  
    thread priority levels in, 749  
`WindowStateListener` interface, `windowStateChanged` method, 607, 624  
Wirth, Niklaus, 6, 10, 126  
`withInitial` method (`ThreadLocal`), 779  
Work stealing, 813  
Worker threads, 823–831  
Working directory, for a process, 832  
Wrappers, 256–260  
    equality testing for, 257  
    immutability of, 256
- X**
- XML (Extensible Markup Language), 12,  
    14
- `xor` method (`BitSet`), 560
- Y**
- `yield` method (`Thread`), 741
- Z**
- ZIP format, 189, 192

# Credits

Chapter 1: "As a computer language . . . existing code sets in", Cay S. Horstmann.

Chapter 1: "Simple, Object-Oriented . . . Dynamic", "The Java Language Environment: Contents, A White Paper, May 1996, James Gosling, Henry Gilton.

Chapter 1: "Simple We wanted to build a . . . very good job making it manageable", Java: an Overview, James Gosling, February 1995.

Chapter 1, Figure 1.1: Screenshot of Jmol © Jmol.

Chapter 1: "All along, the language was a tool, not the end." Interview with Java's creators in the July 1995 issue of SunWorld's online magazine.

Chapter 1: "We could build a real . . . we built a browser". Interview with Java's creators in the July 1995 issue of SunWorld's online magazine.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.1: Screenshot of Windows 10 © Microsoft 2018.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.2: Screenshot of Windows 10 © Microsoft 2018.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.5: Screenshot of Eclipse © Eclipse Foundation.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.6: Screenshot of Eclipse © Eclipse Foundation.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.7: Screenshot of Eclipse © Eclipse Foundation.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.8: Screenshot of Eclipse © Eclipse Foundation.

Chapter 2, Figure 2.9: Screenshot of Jshell © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 3, Figure 3.2: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 3, Figure 3.3: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 3, Figure 3.4: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 3, Figure 3.5: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 4, Figure 4.2: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 4, Figure 4.11: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 5, Figure 5.3: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 7, Figure 7.3: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.1: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.3: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.8: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.11: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.14: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.15: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 10, Figure 10.16: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.4: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.5: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.8: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.9: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.10: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.11: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.12: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.13: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.14: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.15: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.16: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.17: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.18: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.19: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.20: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.21: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.22: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.23: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.24: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.25: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.26: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.27: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.29: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.30: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.31: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.32: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 11, Figure 11.34: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 12: "It is astounding . . . has no merit", Java's Insecure Parallelism,  
ACM SIGPLAN Notices 34:38–45, April 1999.

Chapter 12, Figure 12.5: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Chapter 12, Figure 12.6: Screenshot of Java © Oracle Corporation.

Page 902: Photo by izusek/gettyimages.

# Core Java

Cay S. Horstmann



Expert-Led Video  
Training for  
Programming with  
Java

SAVE  
50%\*

CODE: CHVID

livelessons®

video instruction from technology experts



- 3+ Hours
- For experienced Java developers looking to get up to speed with the new features in Java SE 9, 10, and 11
- Full of practical insights and sample code
- Covers new and convenient API features to Java SE 9's long-awaited "Project Jigsaw" module system



- 11+ Hours
- No-nonsense tutorial for experienced programmers
- Learn how to do in Java what you already know in another programming language
- Covers OO programming through interface programming
- Learn enough Java to put it to work anywhere Java is used: in backend servers, desktops, mobile devices, and embedded systems



- 8+ Hours
- Covers advanced Java language features along with the most useful parts of the standard library
- Write programs that please your customers around the world by adapting to their preferences including dates, times, and time zones
- Detailed demonstration with companion source code

Save 50%\*—Use coupon code CHVID

[informat.com/horstmann](http://informat.com/horstmann)

\*Discount code CHVID confers a 50% discount off the list price of featured videos when purchased on InformIT. Offer is subject to change.



informIT®  
the trusted technology learning source

O'REILLY®  
Safari



Photo by izusek/gettyimages

## Register Your Product at [informit.com/register](http://informit.com/register)

Access additional benefits and **save 35%** on your next purchase

- Automatically receive a coupon for 35% off your next purchase, valid for 30 days. Look for your code in your InformIT cart or the Manage Codes section of your account page.
- Download available product updates.
- Access bonus material if available.\*
- Check the box to hear from us and receive exclusive offers on new editions and related products.

*\*Registration benefits vary by product. Benefits will be listed on your account page under Registered Products.*

---

### InformIT.com—The Trusted Technology Learning Source

InformIT is the online home of information technology brands at Pearson, the world's foremost education company. At InformIT.com, you can:

- Shop our books, eBooks, software, and video training
- Take advantage of our special offers and promotions ([informit.com/promotions](http://informit.com/promotions))
- Sign up for special offers and content newsletter ([informit.com/newsletters](http://informit.com/newsletters))
- Access thousands of free chapters and video lessons

**Connect with InformIT—Visit [informit.com/community](http://informit.com/community)**



Addison-Wesley • Adobe Press • Cisco Press • Microsoft Press • Pearson IT Certification • Que • Sams • Peachpit Press



## BONUS CHAPTER

# JavaFX

### In this chapter

- 13.1 A Brief History of Java GUI Programming, page 1
- 13.2 Displaying Information in a Scene, page 3
- 13.3 Event Handling, page 16
- 13.4 Layout, page 28
- 13.5 User Interface Controls, page 47
- 13.6 Properties and Bindings, page 82
- 13.7 Long-Running Tasks in User Interface Callbacks, page 91

JavaFX is a user interface toolkit for writing rich client applications with Java. It is bundled with some versions of Java 7 through 10, and is available through the OpenJFX project (<https://wiki.openjdk.java.net/display/OpenJFX/Main>) for newer versions of Java. In this chapter, you will learn the basics of JavaFX development.

### 13.1 A Brief History of Java GUI Programming

When Java was born, the Internet was in its infancy and personal computers were on every desktop. Business applications were implemented with “fat clients”—programs with lots of buttons and sliders and text fields that communicated with a server. This was considered a lot nicer than the “dumb terminal” applications from an even earlier era. Java 1.0 included the AWT,

a toolkit for graphical user interfaces, that had the distinction of being cross-platform. The idea was to serve up the fat clients over the nascent Web, eliminating the cost of managing and updating the applications on every desktop.

The AWT had a noble idea: provide a common programming interface for the native buttons, sliders, text fields, and so on of various operating systems. But it didn't work very well. There were subtle differences in the functionality of the user interface controls in each operating system, and what should have been "write once, run anywhere" turned into "write many times, debug everywhere."

Next came Swing. The central idea behind Swing was not to use the native controls, but to paint its own. That way, the user interface would look and feel the same on every platform. Or, if users preferred, they could ask for the native look-and-feel of their platform, and the Swing controls would be painted to match the native ones. Of course, all that painting was slow, and users complained. After a while, computers got faster, and users complained that Swing was ugly—indeed, it had fallen behind the native controls that had been spruced up with animations and fancy effects. More ominously, Flash was increasingly used to create user interfaces with even flashier effects that didn't use the native controls at all.

In 2007, Sun Microsystems introduced a new technology, called JavaFX, as a competitor to Flash. It ran on the Java VM but had its own programming language, called JavaFX Script. The language was optimized for programming animations and fancy effects. Programmers complained about the need to learn a new language, and they stayed away in droves. In 2011, Oracle released a new version, JavaFX 2.0, that had a Java API and no longer needed a separate programming language. As of Java 7 update 6, JavaFX 2.2 has been bundled with the JDK and JRE. Since it wouldn't be a true part of Java if it didn't have crazy jumps in version numbers, the version accompanying Java 8 was called JavaFX 8. JavaFX versions 9 and 10 were bundled with Java 9 and 10.

Of course, Flash is now a bad memory, and most user interfaces live in a browser or a mobile device. Still, there are situations where a "fat client" on a desktop makes users more productive. Also, Java now runs on ARM processors, and there are embedded systems that need user interfaces, such as kiosks and in-car displays. Why didn't Oracle just put the good parts of JavaFX into Swing? Swing would have to be redesigned from the ground up to run efficiently on modern graphics hardware. Oracle decided that it wasn't worth the trouble. In fact, as of Java 11, Oracle doesn't even think it worth the trouble bundling JavaFX with Java. Hopefully, JavaFX will continue to thrive as an open source project.

In this chapter, we go over the basics of writing user interfaces in JavaFX, focusing on boring business applications with buttons, sliders, and text fields, not the flashy effects that were the original motivation behind JavaFX.

## 13.2 Displaying Information in a Scene

In the following sections, you will learn about the basic architecture of a JavaFX application. You will also see how to write simple JavaFX programs that display text and shapes.

### 13.2.1 Our First JavaFX Application

Let's start with a simple program that shows a message (see Figure 13.1). We use a *text node* to show the message and set the *x*- and *y*-position so that the message is approximately centered. The base point of the first character in the string will start at a position 75 pixels to the right and 100 pixels down. (You will see later in this chapter how to position text precisely.)

```
Text message = new Text(75, 100, "Not a Hello World program");
```



**Figure 13.1** A window that displays information

Anything that you display in JavaFX is a *Node*. This includes both shapes and user interface controls. You collect nodes in a *Parent* (a *Node* that can organize other nodes) called the root node. If you don't need automatic positioning of nodes, use a *Pane* as the root.

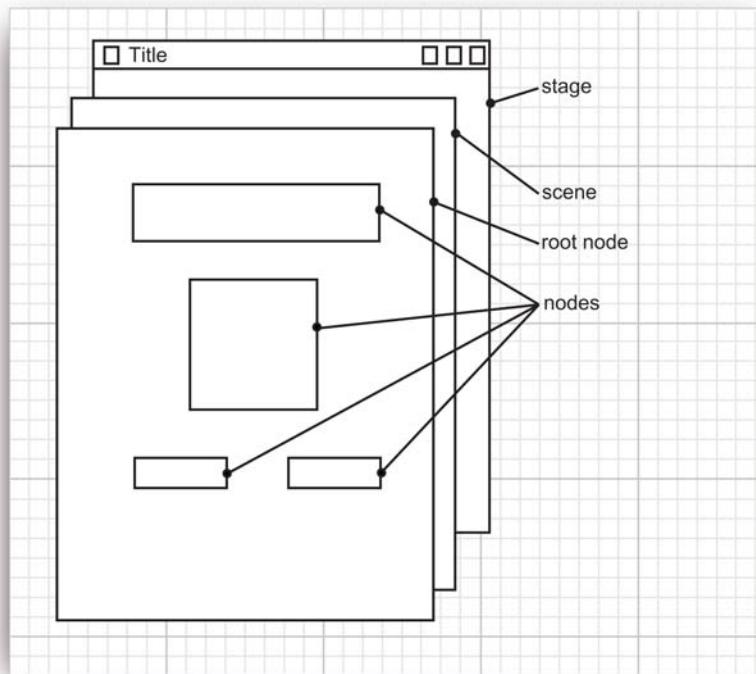
It is also a good idea to set a preferred size for the pane. Otherwise, the pane is sized to exactly hold the shapes, without a margin.

```
Pane root = new Pane(message);
root.setPrefSize(PREFERRED_WIDTH, PREFERRED_HEIGHT);
```

Then you construct a *scene* from the pane.

```
Scene scene = new Scene(root);
```

Next, the scene must reside in a *stage*, a window on a desktop (see Figure 13.2). The stage is passed as a parameter to the start method that you override in a subclass of the Application class. You can optionally set a window title. Finally, call the show method to show the window.

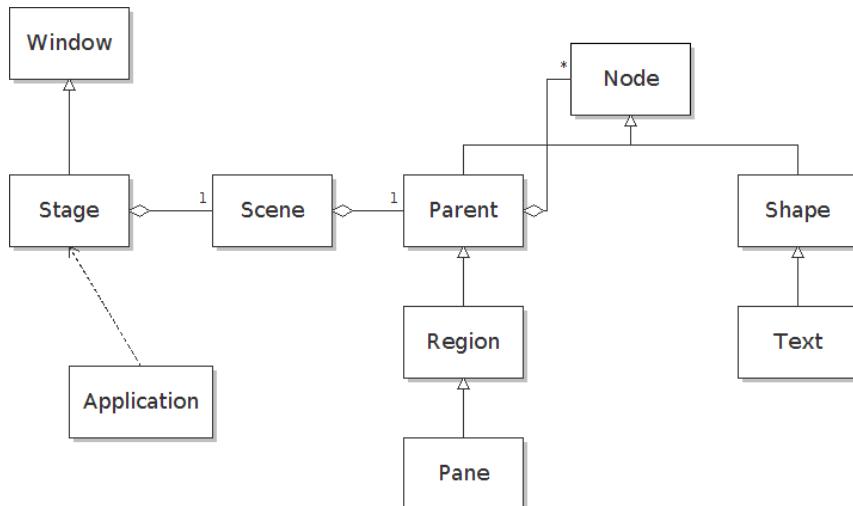


**Figure 13.2** Internal structure of a stage

```
public class NotHelloWorld extends Application
{
    public void start(Stage stage)
    {
        . .
    }
}
```

```
    stage.setScene(scene);
    stage.setTitle("NotHelloWorld");
    stage.show();
}
}
```

You can see the complete program in Listing 13.1. The UML diagram in Figure 13.3 shows the relationships between the JavaFX classes that we use in this program.



**Figure 13.3** Relationships between core JavaFX classes

#### **Listing 13.1** notHelloWorld/NotHelloWorld.java

```
1 package notHelloWorld;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.scene.*;
5 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
6 import javafx.scene.text.*;
7 import javafx.stage.*;
8
9 /**
10  * @version 1.4 2017-12-23
11  * @author Cay Horstmann
12 */
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 13.1 (Continued)**

```
13 public class NotHelloWorld extends Application
14 {
15     private static final int MESSAGE_X = 75;
16     private static final int MESSAGE_Y = 100;
17
18     private static final int PREFERRED_WIDTH = 300;
19     private static final int PREFERRED_HEIGHT = 200;
20
21     public void start(Stage stage)
22     {
23         Text message = new Text(MESSAGE_X, MESSAGE_Y,
24             "Not a Hello World program");
25
26         Pane root = new Pane(message);
27         root.setPrefSize(PREFERRED_WIDTH, PREFERRED_HEIGHT);
28
29         Scene scene = new Scene(root);
30         stage.setScene(scene);
31         stage.setTitle("NotHelloWorld");
32         stage.show();
33     }
34 }
```

---



**NOTE:** As you see from this example, no `main` method is required to launch a JavaFX application. The `java` program launcher knows about JavaFX and calls its `launch` method.

In previous versions of JavaFX, you were required to include a `main` method of the form

```
public class MyApp extends Application
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        launch(args);
    }
    . .
}
```

You can still do this if your tool chain is flustered by an absence of `public static void main`.

---

**javafx.stage.Stage**

- void setScene(Scene value)  
sets the scene to be shown on this stage.
- void setTitle(String value)  
sets the title that is shown in the window's title bar.
- void show()  
shows the window.

**javafx.scene.layout.Pane**

- Pane(Node... children)  
constructs a pane holding the given child nodes.

**javafx.scene.layout.Region**

- void setPrefSize(double prefWidth, double prefHeight)  
sets the preferred size of this region to the given width and height.

**javafx.scene.text.Text**

- Text(double x, double y, String text)  
constructs a Text node with the given position and contents.

### 13.2.2 Drawing Shapes

In JavaFX, geometric shapes are subclasses of the `Shape` class, itself a subclass of `Node`. To draw an image made up of rectangles, lines, circles, and other shapes, you simply construct the shapes and then construct a root node containing the shapes:

```
Rectangle rect = new Rectangle(leftX, topY, width, height);
Line line = new Line(centerX, centerY, centerX + radius, centerY);
Pane root = new Pane(rect, line);
```

If you need to add a node afterwards, call the `getChildren` method of the root pane, which yields a mutable `List<Node>`. By adding or removing nodes, you can update the children of the pane.

```
Circle circle = new Circle(centerX, centerY, radius);
root.getChildren().add(circle);
```



**NOTE:** Object-oriented design purists complain that methods such as `getChildren` violate the “Law of Demeter” since they give out mutable innards of an object. But this is common practice in JavaFX.

---



**NOTE:** In JavaFX, you construct circles and ellipses from the center points and radii. This is different (and more convenient) than with AWT and Swing, where you need to specify the bounding rectangle.

---



**NOTE:** To draw shapes in Swing or Android, you need to place drawing operations into a `paintComponent` or `onDraw` callback. The JavaFX API is much simpler. You simply add the nodes that you want to be drawn to the scene. If you move the nodes, the scene gets automatically redrawn.

---

### **Listing 13.2** draw/DrawTest.java

```
1 package draw;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.scene.*;
5 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
6 import javafx.scene.paint.*;
7 import javafx.scene.shape.*;
8 import javafx.stage.*;
9
10 /**
11  * @version 1.4 2017-12-23
12  * @author Cay Horstmann
13 */
14 public class DrawTest extends Application
15 {
16     private static final int PREFERRED_WIDTH = 400;
17     private static final int PREFERRED_HEIGHT = 400;
18
19     public void start(Stage stage)
20     {
21         double leftX = 100;
22         double topY = 100;
```

```
23     double width = 200;
24     double height = 150;
25
26     Rectangle rect = new Rectangle(leftX, topY, width, height);
27     rect.setFill(Color.TRANSPARENT);
28     rect.setStroke(Color.BLACK);
29     // an ellipse touching the rectangle
30     double centerX = leftX + width / 2;
31     double centerY = topY + height / 2;
32     Ellipse ellipse = new Ellipse(centerX, centerY, width / 2, height / 2);
33     ellipse.setFill(Color.PEACHPUFF);
34     // a diagonal line
35     Line diagonal = new Line(leftX, topY, leftX + width, topY + height);
36     // a circle with the same center as the ellipse
37     double radius = 150;
38     Circle circle = new Circle(centerX, centerY, radius);
39     circle.setFill(Color.TRANSPARENT);
40     circle.setStroke(Color.RED);
41     Pane root = new Pane(rect, ellipse, diagonal, circle);
42     root.setPrefSize(PREFERRED_WIDTH, PREFERRED_HEIGHT);
43     stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
44     stage.setTitle("DrawTest");
45     stage.show();
46 }
47 }
```

Nodes of type `Line`, `Path`, and `Polygon` are by default drawn in black. For a different color, call the `setStroke` method:

```
radius.setStroke(Color.RED);
```

Shapes other than `Line`, `Path`, and `Polygon` are filled with a black color. You can change the fill color:

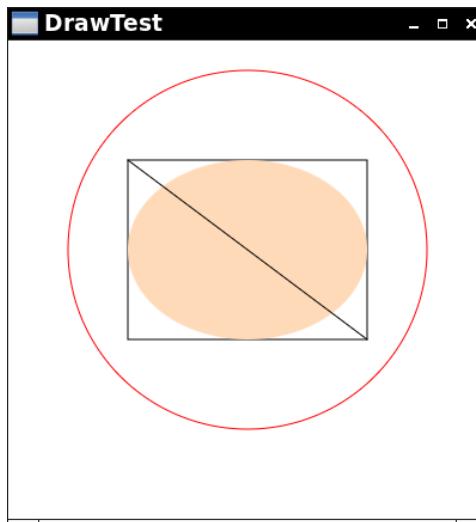
```
rect.setFill(Color.YELLOW);
```

Or, if you don't want the interior of the shape colored, choose a transparent fill. Then you need to set a stroke color for the shape's outline:

```
rect.setFill(Color.TRANSPARENT);
rect.setStroke(Color.BLACK);
```

The `setFill` and `setStroke` methods accept a `Paint` parameter type. The `Color` class is a subclass of `Paint`, as are classes for gradients and image patterns that we do not discuss here. There are predefined constants for all 147 CSS3 color names from `Color.ALICEBLUE` to `Color.YELLOWGREEN`.

Listing 13.2 contains a program that draws the shapes shown in Figure 13.4.



**Figure 13.4** Drawing geometric shapes

**javafx.scene.shape.Rectangle**

- `Rectangle(double x, double y, double width, double height)`  
constructs a rectangle with the given top left corner, width, and height.

**javafx.scene.shape.Circle**

- `Circle(double centerX, double centerY, double radius)`  
constructs a circle with the given center and radius.

**javafx.scene.shape.Ellipse**

- `Ellipse(double centerX, double centerY, double radiusX, double radiusY)`  
constructs an ellipse with the given center and radii.

**javafx.scene.shape.Line**

- `Line(double startX, double startY, double endX, double endY)`  
constructs a line with the given start and end points.

**class javafx.scene.layout.Pane**

- ObservableList<Node> getChildren()  
yields a mutable list of all children of this pane.

**javafx.scene.shape.Shape**

- void setStroke(Paint value)  
sets the paint for drawing the boundary of this shape, or in the case of Line, Polyline, and Path, the shape itself.
- void setFill(Paint value)  
sets the paint for drawing the interior of this shape.

### 13.2.3 Text and Images

The “Not a Hello World” program at the beginning of this chapter displayed a string in the “System” font at its default size. Often, you will want to show your text in a different font. Use one of the static `Font.font` methods to obtain the font, and then call the `setFont` method on the `Text` object to set the font.

```
message.setFont(Font.font("Times New Roman", 36));
```

This `Font` factory method makes a `Font` object representing the font with the given family name and point size. You can specify a bold and italic version by calling

```
Font.font("Times New Roman", FontWeight.BOLD, FontPosture.ITALIC, 36);
```

Fonts for the family names

System  
Serif  
SansSerif  
Monospaced

are always available. The JDK ships with three font families:

Lucida Bright  
Lucida Sans  
Lucida Sans Typewriter

The static method `Font.getFamilies` yields a list of all available family names.



**CAUTION:** Any number of fonts may share a given family name. For example, the Lucida Bright family has members named Lucida Bright Regular, Lucida Bright Demibold, and Lucida Bright Demibold Italic. These names are of limited utility since the JavaFX API does not allow you to choose a font by its name.

To further confuse matters, the `FontWeight` enumeration has values `THIN`, `EXTRA_LIGHT`, `LIGHT`, `NORMAL`, `MEDIUM`, `SEMI_BOLD`, `BOLD`, `EXTRA_BOLD`, and `BLACK`, and you are on your own trying to map a string such as “Demibold” to a supported weight.

---

The *y*-position of a `Text` node indicates the *baseline* of the text (see Figure 13.5). To find the extent of the text, call

```
Bounds messageBounds = message.getBoundsInParent();
```

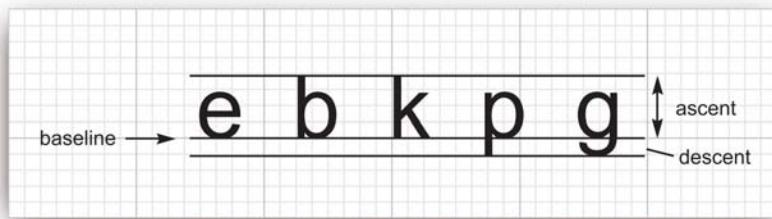
You can then compute the ascent (the distance from the baseline to the top of a letter such as ‘b’ or ‘k’) and the descent (the distance from the baseline to the bottom of a letter such as ‘p’ or ‘q’):

```
double ascent = message.getY() - messageBounds.getMinY();
double descent = messageBounds.getMaxY() - message.getY();
double width = messageBounds.getWidth();
```



**CAUTION:** The `Node` class has three methods to determine the bounds of a node: `getLayoutBounds`, `getBoundsInLocal`, and `getBoundsInParent`. Only the `getBoundsInParent` method takes stroke widths, effects, and transforms into account. Use that method whenever you want to know the extent of a node as it is actually drawn.

---



**Figure 13.5** Typesetting terms illustrated

The program in Listing 13.3 shows how to accurately position a `Text` node. We construct the text at the origin, and measure its ascent, descent, and width. Then we center the text horizontally and place the baseline at the desired position, using the `relocate` method of the `Node` class. That method



**Figure 13.6** Drawing the baseline and text bounds

relocates the top left corner, not the base point, and we need to adjust the *y*-position by the ascent.

To show that all the computations are accurate, we draw the bounding rectangle and the baseline (see Figure 13.6). We use the French version of "Hello, World!" so that the message contains a letter with a descender.

Next, we place an image directly below the text. To add an image, construct an `ImageView` from the image path or URL. You cannot specify the top left corner in the constructor. Therefore, we use the `relocate` method to move the image view.

---

**Listing 13.3** `font/FontTest.java`

---

```
1 package font;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.geometry.*;
5 import javafx.scene.*;
6 import javafx.scene.image.*;
7 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
8 import javafx.scene.paint.*;
9 import javafx.scene.shape.*;
10 import javafx.scene.text.*;
11 import javafx.stage.*;
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 13.3 (Continued)**

```
12 /**
13  * @version 1.4 2017-12-23
14  * @author Cay Horstmann
15  */
16 public class FontTest extends Application
17 {
18     private static final int PREFERRED_WIDTH = 400;
19     private static final int PREFERRED_HEIGHT = 400;
20
21     public void start(Stage stage)
22     {
23         // construct message at (0, 0)
24         Text message = new Text("Bonjour le monde!");
25         Font f = Font.font("Lucida Bright", FontWeight.BOLD, 36);
26         message.setFont(f);
27
28         // get message dimensions
29         Bounds messageBounds = message.getBoundsInParent();
30         double ascent = -messageBounds.getMinY();
31         double descent = messageBounds.getMaxY();
32         double width = messageBounds.getWidth();
33
34         // center message horizontally
35         double baseY = 100;
36         double topY = baseY - ascent;
37         double leftX = (PREFERRED_WIDTH - width) / 2;
38         message.relocate(leftX, topY);
39
40         // construct bounding rectangle and baseline
41         Rectangle rect = new Rectangle(leftX, topY, width, ascent + descent);
42         rect.setFill(Color.TRANSPARENT);
43         rect.setStroke(Color.GRAY);
44         Line baseline = new Line(leftX, baseY, leftX + width, baseY);
45         baseline.setStroke(Color.GRAY);
46
47         // center image directly below the message
48         ImageView image = new ImageView("font/world.png");
49         Bounds imageBounds = image.getBoundsInParent();
50         image.relocate((PREFERRED_WIDTH - imageBounds.getWidth()) / 2, baseY + descent);
51
52         Pane root = new Pane(message, rect, baseline, image);
53         root.setPrefSize(PREFERRED_WIDTH, PREFERRED_HEIGHT);
54         stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
55         stage.setTitle("FontTest");
56         stage.show();
57     }
58 }
59 }
```

---

**javafx.scene.text.Font**

- static Font.font(double size)
- static Font.font(String family)
- static Font.font(String family, double size)
- static Font.font(String family, FontWeight weight, double size)
- static Font.font(String family, FontPosture posture, double size)
- static Font.font(String family, FontWeight weight, FontPosture posture, double size)

obtains a font with the given family name (or “System”), weight and posture (or `FontWeight.NORMAL` and `FontPosture.REGULAR`), and point size.

**javafx.scene.text.Text**

- void setFont(Font value)  
sets this text to the given font.
- double getX()  
• double getY()

gets the *x*- and *y*-position of the basepoint of this text node.

**javafx.scene.Node**

- Bounds getBoundsInParent()  
gets the bounds of this node after applying any strokes, clips, effects, and transformations.
- void relocate(double x, double y)  
relocates this node so that its top left corner falls on the given *x*- and *y*-values.

**javafx.geometry.Bounds**

- double getMinX()
  - double getMinY()
  - double getMaxX()
  - double getMaxY()
- gets the smallest or largest *x*- and *y*-value of these bounds.
- double getWidth()  
• double getHeight()
- gets the width and height of these bounds.

**javafx.scene.image.ImageView**

- `ImageView(String url)`

constructs an image from the given `url` string. The string should either be a valid construction parameter for the `java.net.URL` class, or a path to a resource. (See Chapter 5 about resources.)

## 13.3 Event Handling

A graphical user interface environment monitors input devices for events such as keystrokes or mouse clicks and directs them to the appropriate program. The program then figures out which user interface control should process the event, translating low-level events to semantic events as appropriate. For example, when a user clicks on a button, JavaFX processes the sequence of events that consists of depressing and releasing the mouse button over the surface of the button control. That event sequence is then interpreted as a “click.”

In order for the program to react to such an event, the programmer needs to register an *event handler* with the user interface control from which the event originates.

### 13.3.1 Implementing Event Handlers

In the case of a button click, the event handler must implement the `EventHandler<ActionEvent>` interface. `EventHandler<T>` is a functional interface with a single method

```
void handle(T event)
```

You can simply use a lambda expression to specify the button action:

```
Button button = new Button("Click me!");
button.setOnAction(event -> System.out.println("I was clicked."));
```

In this case, the lambda expression did not make use of the `event` parameter. An `ActionEvent` doesn’t have many interesting properties. The most useful one is probably the event source—the control from which the action originated. In this case, we know which button is the source. However, if you share one handler among multiple controls, you can call `event.getSource()` to find out which one triggered it.

Here is another application of event handling where you are interested in the `event` object. When the user closes a window, the window gets a “close

request” event. You can install a handler in which you *consume* the event if you want to deny the request:

```
stage.setOnCloseRequest(event ->
{
    if (not OK to close) event.consume()
});
```



**NOTE:** If you need to add more than one event to a node, use the `addEventHandler` method:

```
button.addEventHandler(javafx.event.ActionEvent.ACTION,
event -> System.out.println("I was clicked"));
```

### 13.3.2 Reacting to Property Changes

Many JavaFX controls provide a different mechanism for event handling. Consider a slider, as shown in Figure 13.7. When the slider is adjusted, its value changes. However, you shouldn’t listen to the low-level events that the slider emits to indicate those changes. Instead, the slider has a JavaFX *property* called `value`, and the property emits events when it changes. We will discuss properties in detail in Section 13.6, “Properties and Bindings,” on p. 82. Here is how you can listen to the property’s events and adjust the font size of a message:

```
slider.valueProperty().addListener(property ->
message.setFont(Font.font(family, slider.getValue())));
```

Here, the `property` parameter is not very useful—it is easier to get the updated value from the slider.

Listening to properties is very common in JavaFX. For example, if you want to change a part of the user interface as a user enters text into a text field, simply add a listener to the `text` property.

The program in Listing 13.4 shows action and property change events at work. When you click on the “Random font” button, a `Text` node is set to the name of a random font and displayed in the same font—see Figure 13.7.

When the slider moves, the font size is adjusted.

When the user closes the window, the event listener checks whether the slider is at 100%. If so, the program refuses to close, assuming that the user hasn’t yet tried out the slider.

The button, slider, and text node are stacked vertically inside a `VBox`. We discuss this class in Section 13.4, “Layout,” on p. 28.



Figure 13.7 Processing action and property change events

**Listing 13.4** event/EventTest.java

```
1 package event;
2
3 import java.util.*;
4
5 import javafx.application.*;
6 import javafx.scene.*;
7 import javafx.scene.control.*;
8 import javafx.scene.control.Alert.*;
9 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
10 import javafx.scene.text.*;
11 import javafx.stage.*;
12
13 /**
14      @version 1.0 2017-12-23
15      @author Cay Horstmann
16 */
17 public class EventTest extends Application
18 {
19     public void start(Stage stage)
20     {
21         Button button = new Button("Random font");
22         Text message = new Text("Times New Roman");
23         message.setFont(Font.font("Gloucester MT Extra Condensed", 100));
24         List<String> families = Font.getFamilies();
25         Random generator = new Random();
26         button.setOnAction(event ->
27         {
28             String newFamily = families.get(
29                 generator.nextInt(families.size()));
30             message.setText(newFamily);
31             message.setFont(Font.font(
32                 newFamily, message.getFont().getSize()));
33         });
34
35         Slider slider = new Slider();
36         slider.setValue(100);
```

```
37     slider.valueProperty().addListener(property ->
38     {
39         double newSize = slider.getValue();
40         message.setFont(Font.font(
41             message.getFont().getFamily(), newSize));
42     });
43
44     VBox root = new VBox(button, slider, message);
45     Scene scene = new Scene(root);
46
47     stage.setTitle("EventTest");
48     stage.setScene(scene);
49     stage.setOnCloseRequest(event ->
50     {
51         if (slider.getValue() == 100)
52         {
53             event.consume(); // Stops window from closing
54             Alert alert = new Alert(AlertType.INFORMATION,
55                 "Move the slider before quitting.");
56             alert.showAndWait();
57         }
58     });
59     stage.show();
60 }
61 }
```

**EventHandler<T extends Event>**

- void handle(T event)  
override this method to handle the given event.

**javafx.scene.control.ButtonBase**

- void setOnAction(EventHandler<ActionEvent> value)  
sets the action event listener for this control.

**javafx.event.Event**

- void consume()  
marks this event as consumed.
- boolean isConsumed()  
returns true if this event has been marked as consumed.

**java.util.EventObject 1.1**

- `Object getSource()`  
gets the object responsible for emitting this event.

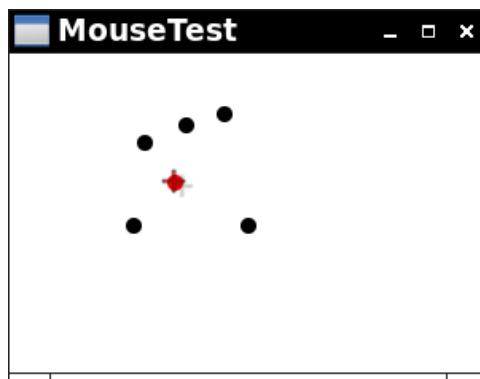
**javafx.stage.Window**

- `public final void setOnCloseRequest(EventHandler<WindowEvent> value)`  
sets the close request handler for this window. The handler should consume the event to reject the close request.

### 13.3.3 Mouse and Keyboard Events

You do not need to handle mouse events explicitly if you just want the user to be able to click on a button or drag a slider. These mouse operations are handled internally by the various controls in the user interface. However, if you want to enable the user to draw with the mouse, you will need to trap the events that happen as the user moves the mouse and clicks the mouse buttons.

In this section, we will show you a simple graphics editor application that allows the user to place, move, and erase dots on a canvas (see Figure 13.8).



**Figure 13.8** Arranging dots with the mouse and keyboard

When the user clicks a mouse button, three events are generated: “mouse pressed,” when the mouse button is first pressed; “mouse released,” when the mouse button is released; and, finally, “mouse clicked,” after pressing and releasing the button. In our example, we capture mouse presses because we don’t want to delay the visual feedback until the mouse button is released.

By using the `getX` and `getY` methods on the `MouseEvent` argument, you can obtain the *x*- and *y*-coordinates of the mouse pointer.

```
root.setOnMousePressed(event ->
    {
        double x = event.getX();
        double y = event.getY();
        Circle dot = new Circle(x, y, RADIUS);
        root.getChildren().add(dot);
    });
}
```

To distinguish between single, double, and triple (!) clicks, use the `getClickCount` method. To find out which button was pressed, call the `getButton` method:

```
if (event.getButton() == MouseButton.SECONDARY) . . . // right click
```

Some user interface designers inflict mouse click and keyboard modifier combinations, such as Control+Shift+click, on their users. We find this practice reprehensible, but if you disagree, call one of the following methods:

```
isShiftDown  
isControlDown  
isAltDown  
isMetaDown  
isShortcutDown
```

The Alt key is labeled Option (⌥) on the Mac. The Meta key is the Windows or Command (⌘) key. The `isShortcutDown` method tests for the preferred modifier of the platform—Control on Linux and Windows, Meta on the Mac.

As the mouse moves, a steady stream of mouse movement events are generated. Any node can ask to be notified when the mouse passes over it. Our test application traps mouse motion events to change the cursor to a different shape (a cross hair) when it is over a dot:

```
dot.setOnMouseEntered(event -> scene.setCursor(Cursor.CROSSHAIR));
dot.setOnMouseExited(event -> scene.setCursor(Cursor.DEFAULT));
```

Table 10.3 lists the available cursors.

**Table 13.1** Cursor Shapes

Icon	Constant	Icon	Constant
	DEFAULT		N_RESIZE
	CROSSHAIR		NE_RESIZE
	HAND		E_RESIZE
	OPEN_HAND		SE_RESIZE
	CLOSED_HAND		S_RESIZE
	MOVE		SW_RESIZE
	TEXT		W_RESIZE
	WAIT		NW_RESIZE
	DISAPPEAR		H_RESIZE
	NONE		V_RESIZE

---



**NOTE:** You can also define your own cursor types through the use of the `ImageCursor` class:

```
Image img = new Image("dynamite.gif");
Cursor dynamiteCursor = new ImageCursor(img, 10, 10);
```

The second and third parameters of the constructor give the offset of the “hot spot” of the cursor that represents the mouse position.

---

If the user presses a mouse button while the mouse is in motion, “mouse dragged” events are generated instead of “mouse moved” events. Our test application lets a user drag the dot under the cursor. We simply update the dot to be centered under the mouse position.

```
dot.setOnMouseDragged(event ->
{
    dot.setCenterX(event.getX());
    dot.setCenterY(event.getY());
});
```

A mouse event is sent to the node under the mouse cursor. But if a key event occurs, which node should be notified? The recipient is a specific node that has the *keyboard focus*. A node can request keyboard focus with the `requestFocus` method.

Similar to clicking a mouse button, key events occur as a key is pressed or released. When pressing and releasing one or more keys yields text input, a “key typed” event is generated. For example, if the user presses the Shift key, then presses and releases the A key, an uppercase ‘A’ is typed.

```
source.setOnKeyTyped(event ->
{
    String input = event.getCharacter();
    . . .
});
```

The `getCharacter` method gets the input as a string (in case some keyboard produces emoji that require two UTF-16 code units, or decomposed accents, or some other input that doesn’t fit in a single `char` value).

However, if you process cursor or function keys, you want to listen to “key pressed” events and call the `getCode` method. You get a value of the `KeyCode` enumeration, which has over 200 values with every imaginable key that can appear on someone’s keyboard, such as `KeyCode.A`, `KeyCode.DELETE`, and `KeyCode.EURO_SIGN`.

```
source.setOnKeyPressed(event ->
{
    KeyCode code = event.getCode();
    if (code == KeyCode.DELETE) . . .;
});
```

The program in Listing 13.5 demonstrates mouse and key events. Use the mouse to click on an empty space to add a new dot, or drag an existing dot to a new location. If you double-click on a dot, it is erased. The dot with keyboard focus is colored red. You can delete it with the Delete key and move it with the cursor keys. If you hold down the Shift key, it moves by a greater distance.

Note that each dot listens to “mouse entered/exited/pressed/dragged” and “key pressed” events. We simply rely on the JavaFX framework to deliver the events to the affected nodes. The “mouse pressed” event is also handled by the root pane so that we can add new dots.

A mouse event is first presented to child nodes and then to parent nodes. To avoid creating another dot, the “mouse pressed” handler of the dot consumes the event.

Alternatively, we could have implemented a single “mouse pressed” handler for the root pane. But then we would have had to check if a node is under the mouse pointer. The JavaFX way is to work as much as possible with the “scene graph” (the nodes and their parent/child relationships).

**Listing 13.5** mouse/MouseTest.java

```
1 package mouse;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.scene.*;
5 import javafx.scene.input.*;
6 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
7 import javafx.scene.paint.*;
8 import javafx.scene.shape.*;
9 import javafx.stage.*;
10
11 /**
12     @version 1.40 2017-12-27
13     @author Cay Horstmann
14 */
15 public class MouseTest extends Application
16 {
17     private static final int PREFERRED_WIDTH = 300;
18     private static final int PREFERRED_HEIGHT = 200;
19     private static final int RADIUS = 5;
20     private Scene scene;
21     private Pane root;
22     private Circle selected;
23
24     private Circle makeDot(double x, double y)
25     {
26         Circle dot = new Circle(x, y, RADIUS);
27         dot.setOnMouseEntered(event ->
28             scene.setCursor(Cursor.CROSSHAIR));
29         dot.setOnMouseExited(event ->
30             scene.setCursor(Cursor.DEFAULT));
31         dot.setOnMouseDragged(event ->
32             {
33                 dot.setCenterX(event.getX());
34                 dot.setCenterY(event.getY());
35             });
36         dot.setOnMousePressed(event ->
37             {
38                 if (event.getClickCount() > 1)
39                 {
40                     root.getChildren().remove(selected);
41                     select(null);
42                 }
43                 else
44                 {
45                     select(dot);
46                 }
47                 event.consume();
48             });
49     }
50 }
```

```
49     dot.setOnKeyPressed(event ->
50     {
51         KeyCode code = event.getCode();
52         int distance = event.isShiftDown() ? 10 : 1;
53         if (code == KeyCode.DELETE)
54             root.getChildren().remove(dot);
55         else if (code == KeyCode.UP)
56             dot.setCenterY(dot.getCenterY() - distance);
57         else if (code == KeyCode.DOWN)
58             dot.setCenterY(dot.getCenterY() + distance);
59         else if (code == KeyCode.LEFT)
60             dot.setCenterX(dot.getCenterX() - distance);
61         else if (code == KeyCode.RIGHT)
62             dot.setCenterX(dot.getCenterX() + distance);
63     });
64
65     return dot;
66 }
67
68 private void select(Circle dot)
69 {
70     if (selected == dot) return;
71     if (selected != null) selected.setFill(Color.BLACK);
72     selected = dot;
73     if (selected != null)
74     {
75         selected.requestFocus();
76         selected.setFill(Color.RED);
77     }
78 }
79
80 public void start(Stage stage)
81 {
82     root = new Pane();
83     root.setOnMousePressed(event ->
84     {
85         double x = event.getX();
86         double y = event.getY();
87         Circle dot = makeDot(x, y);
88         root.getChildren().add(dot);
89         select(dot);
90     });
91 }
92 scene = new Scene(root);
93 root.setPrefSize(PREFERRED_WIDTH, PREFERRED_HEIGHT);
94 stage.setScene(scene);
95 stage.setTitle("MouseTest");
96 stage.show();
97 }
98 }
```

**javafx.scene.Node**

- void setOnMousePressed(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseReleased(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseClicked(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseEntered(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseExited(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseMoved(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)
- void setOnMouseDragged(EventHandler<? super MouseEvent> value)  
sets the handler for the given mouse event type.
- void setOnKeyPressed(EventHandler<? super KeyEvent> value)
- void setOnKeyReleased(EventHandler<? super KeyEvent> value)
- void setOnKeyTyped(EventHandler<? super KeyEvent> value)  
sets the handler for the given key event type.
- void requestFocus()  
requests that the keyboard focus be set to this node.

**javafx.scene.input.MouseEvent**

- double getX()
- double getY()  
yields the *x*- and *y*-coordinate of the mouse pointer in the coordinate system of the event source.
- double getScreenX()
- double getScreenY()  
yields the *x*- and *y*-coordinate of the mouse pointer in the screen coordinate system.
- int getClickCount()  
gets the number of times a mouse button has been clicked (within a small region and a short amount of time).
- MouseButton getButton()  
returns one of the values PRIMARY, SECONDARY, MIDDLE, or NONE of the MouseButton enumeration.

(Continues)

**javafx.scene.input.MouseEvent (Continued)**

- boolean isShiftDown()
- boolean isControlDown()
- boolean isAltDown()
- boolean isMetaDown()
- boolean isShortcutDown()

returns true if the Shift, Control, Alt/Option, Windows/Command, or Control/Command modifier key is pressed during this event.

**javafx.scene.Scene**

- void setCursor(Cursor value)

sets the mouse cursor for this scene. See Table 10.3 for predefined cursor shapes.

**javafx.scene.ImageCursor**

- ImageCursor(Image image, double hotspotX, double hotspotY)

constructs an image cursor from the given image. The cursor will be placed so that the given hotspot offset is at the cursor position.

**javafx.scene.input.KeyEvent**

- String getCharacter()

if this is a “key typed” event, gets the input that was typed.

- KeyCode getCode()

if this is a “key pressed” or “key released” event, gets the key that was pressed or released.

- boolean isShiftDown()
- boolean isControlDown()
- boolean isAltDown()
- boolean isMetaDown()
- boolean isShortcutDown()

returns true if the Shift, Control, Alt/Option, Windows/Command, or Control/Command modifier key is pressed during this event.

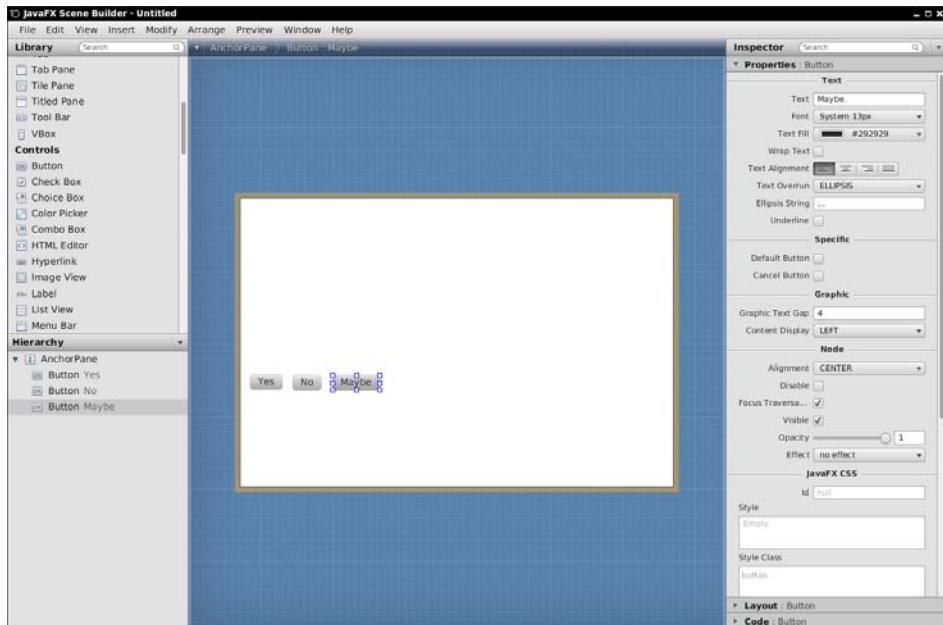
## 13.4 Layout

When a graphical user interface contains multiple controls, they need to be arranged on the screen in a functional and attractive way. One way to obtain a layout is with a design tool. The tool's user, often a graphics designer, drags images of the controls onto a design view and arranges, resizes, and configures them. However, this approach can be problematic when the sizes of the elements change—for example, because labels have different lengths in international versions of a program.

Alternatively, the layout can be achieved programmatically, by writing code in a setup method that adds the user interface controls to specific positions. That is what was done in Swing, using layout manager objects.

Another approach is to specify the layout in a declarative language. For example, web pages are laid out with HTML and CSS. Similarly, Android has an XML language for specifying layouts.

JavaFX supports all three approaches. The JavaFX Scene Builder is a visual GUI builder. You can download it from <http://gluonhq.com/products/scene-builder>. Figure 13.9 shows a screenshot.



**Figure 13.9** The JavaFX Scene Builder

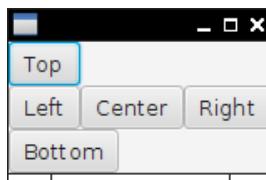
We won't discuss the Scene Builder program further. When you understand the concepts of the following sections, you will find it straightforward to use. Read on for laying out elements with layout panes and with the FXML markup language.

### 13.4.1 Layout Panes

In JavaFX, you can arrange controls with *panes*—parent nodes with a layout policy. For example, a `BorderPane` has five areas: Top, Bottom, Left, Right, and Center. Here we place a button into each:

```
BorderPane pane = new BorderPane();
pane.setTop(new Button("Top"));
pane.setRight(new Button("Right"));
pane.setBottom(new Button("Bottom"));
pane.setLeft(new Button("Left"));
pane.setCenter(new Button("Center"));
stage.setScene(new Scene(pane));
```

Figure 13.10 shows the result.



**Figure 13.10** The `BorderPane` layout



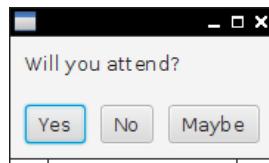
**NOTE:** With the Swing `BorderLayout`, buttons were expanded to fill each region of the layout. In JavaFX, a button does not expand past its natural size.

Now suppose you want more than one button in the bottom area. Use an `HBox` (see Figure 13.11):

```
HBox buttons = new HBox(10, yesButton, noButton, maybeButton);
// ten pixels between controls
pane.setBottom(buttons);
```

Of course, there is a `VBox` for laying out controls vertically. The layout in Figure 13.11 was achieved like this:

```
VBox pane = new VBox(10, question, buttons);
pane.setPadding(new Insets(10));
```



**Figure 13.11** Laying out buttons with an HBox

Note the padding property. Without it, the label and the buttons would touch the window border.



**CAUTION:** In JavaFX, dimensions are specified in pixels. In our example, we use ten pixels for the box spacing and padding. This is not really appropriate nowadays, when pixel densities can vary widely. One way to overcome this is to compute dimensions in rem, as you would do in CSS3. (A rem or “root em” is the height of the default font of the document root.)

```
final double rem = new Text("").getBoundsInParent().getHeight();
pane.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
```

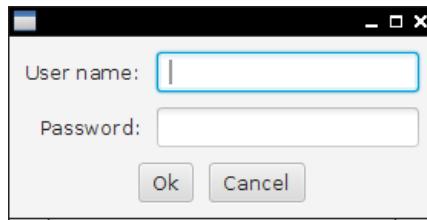
---

There is only so much you can achieve with horizontal and vertical boxes. Just as Swing had the `GridBagLayout` as “the mother of all layout managers,” JavaFX has the `GridPane`. Think of a `GridPane` as an equivalent of an HTML table. You can set the horizontal and vertical alignment of all cells. If desired, cells can span multiple rows and columns. Consider the login dialog in Figure 13.12.

Note the following:

- The labels “User name:” and “Password:” are right-aligned.
- The buttons are in an `HBox` that spans two columns.

When you add a child to a `GridPane`, specify its column and row index (in that order; think *x*- and *y*-coordinates).



**Figure 13.12** A GridPane can arrange the controls for this login dialog.

```
pane.add(usernameLabel, 0, 0);
pane.add(username, 1, 0);
pane.add(passwordLabel, 0, 1);
pane.add(password, 1, 1);
```

If a child spans multiple columns or rows, specify the spans after the positions. For example, the button panel spans two columns and one row:

```
pane.add(buttons, 0, 2, 2, 1);
```

If you want a child to span all remaining rows or columns, use `GridPane.REMAINDER`.

To set the horizontal alignment of a child, use the static `setHalignment` method, and pass the child reference and a constant `LEFT`, `CENTER`, or `RIGHT` from the `HPos` enumeration.

```
GridPane.setHalignment(usernameLabel, HPos.RIGHT);
```

Similarly, for vertical alignment, call `setValignment` and use `TOP`, `CENTER`, `BASELINE`, or `BOTTOM` from the `VPos` enumeration.



**NOTE:** These static calls look rather inelegant in Java code, but they make sense in the FXML markup language—see the next section.



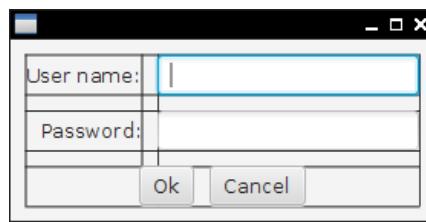
**TIP:** For debugging, it can be useful to see the cell boundaries (see Figure 13.13).

Call

```
pane.setGridLinesVisible(true);
```

If you want to see the borders of an individual child (for example, to see whether it has grown to fill the entire cell), set its border. This is most easily done with CSS:

```
buttons.setStyle("-fx-border-color: red;");
```



**Figure 13.13** Use visible grid lines when debugging a `GridPane`.



**CAUTION:** Do *not* center the `HBox` with the buttons inside the grid. That box has expanded to the full horizontal size, and centering will not change its position. Instead, tell the `HBox` to center its contents:

```
buttons.setAlignment(Pos.CENTER);
```

---

You will also want to provide some spacing around the rows and columns and some padding around the table:

```
pane.setHgap(0.8 * rem);
pane.setVgap(0.8 * rem);
pane.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
```

The layout panes that you have seen in this section should suffice for the majority of applications. Table 13.2 shows all layouts that come with JavaFX.

Listing 13.6 shows the complete program for this layout. For more information about the user interface controls that the program uses, turn to Section 13.5.1, “Text Input,” on p. 47.

**Table 13.2** JavaFX Layouts

Pane Class	Description
<code>HBox</code> , <code>VBox</code>	Lines up children horizontally or vertically.
<code>GridPane</code>	Lays out children in a tabular grid, similar to the Swing <code>GridBagLayout</code> .
<code>TilePane</code>	Lays out children in a grid, giving them all the same size, similar to the Swing <code>GridLayout</code> .
<code>BorderPane</code>	Provides the areas North, East, South, West, and Center, similar to the Swing <code>BorderLayout</code> .
<code>FlowPane</code>	Flows children in rows, making new rows when there isn't sufficient space, similar to the Swing <code>FlowLayout</code> .
<code>AnchorPane</code>	Places children in absolute positions or relative to the pane's boundaries. This is the default in the Scene Builder layout tool.
<code>StackPane</code>	Stacks children above each other. Can be useful for decorating controls, such as stacking a button over a colored rectangle.

---



**TIP:** Scala, Kotlin, and Groovy provide JavaFX bindings (<http://www.scalafx.org>, <http://tornadofx.io>, <http://groovyfx.org>) with convenient “domain-specific languages” for building user interfaces that are reminiscent of the old FX Script builder syntax.

---

**Listing 13.6** gridPane/GridPaneDemo.java

```
1 package gridPane;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.geometry.*;
5 import javafx.scene.*;
6 import javafx.scene.control.*;
7 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
8 import javafx.scene.text.*;
9 import javafx.stage.*;
10
11 public class GridPaneDemo extends Application
12 {
13     public void start(Stage stage)
14     {
15         final double rem = new Text("").getLayoutBounds().getHeight();
16
17         GridPane pane = new GridPane();
18         // uncomment for debugging
19         // pane.setGridLinesVisible(true);
20
21         pane.setHgap(0.8 * rem);
22         pane.setVgap(0.8 * rem);
23         pane.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
24         Label usernameLabel = new Label("User name:");
25         Label passwordLabel = new Label("Password:");
26         TextField username = new TextField();
27         PasswordField password = new PasswordField();
28
29         Button okButton = new Button("Ok");
30         Button cancelButton = new Button("Cancel");
31
32         HBox buttons = new HBox(0.8 * rem);
33         buttons.getChildren().addAll(okButton, cancelButton);
34         buttons.setAlignment(Pos.CENTER);
35         // uncomment for debugging
36         // buttons.setStyle("-fx-border-color: red;");
37
38         pane.add(usernameLabel, 0, 0);
39         pane.add(username, 1, 0);
40         pane.add(passwordLabel, 0, 1);
41         pane.add(password, 1, 1);
42         pane.add(buttons, 0, 2, 2, 1);
43
44         GridPane.setHalignment(usernameLabel, HPos.RIGHT);
45         GridPane.setHalignment(passwordLabel, HPos.RIGHT);
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 13.6 (Continued)**

```
46     stage.setScene(new Scene(pane));  
47     stage.show();  
48 }  
49 }
```

---

**javafx.scene.layout.BorderPane**

- `BorderPane()`  
constructs an empty border pane.
- `void setTop(Node value)`
- `void setRight(Node value)`
- `void setBottom(Node value)`
- `void setLeft(Node value)`
- `void setCenter(Node value)`  
places a node into an area of this border pane.

**javafx.scene.layout.HBox**

- `HBox(double spacing, Node... children)`  
constructs a horizontal box with the given children, separated by the number of pixels given in spacing.
- `void.setAlignment(Pos pos)`  
sets the alignment for the children. The `Pos` enumeration has values `TOP_LEFT`, `TOP_CENTER`, `TOP_RIGHT`, `CENTER_LEFT`, `CENTER`, `CENTER_RIGHT`, `BASELINE_LEFT`, `BASELINE_CENTER`, `BASELINE_RIGHT`, `BOTTOM_LEFT`, `BOTTOM_CENTER`, `BOTTOM_RIGHT`.

**javafx.scene.layout.VBox**

- `VBox(double spacing, Node... children)`  
constructs a vertical box with the given children, separated by the number of pixels given in spacing.

**class javafx.scene.layout.Region**

- `void setPaddingInsets(value)`  
sets the padding around the contents of this region.

**javafx.geometry.Insets**

- `public Insets(double topRightBottomLeft)`
- `public Insets(double top, double right, double bottom, double left)`

constructs insets with the given number of pixels to the top, right, bottom, and left.

**javafx.scene.layout.GridPane**

- `GridPane()`  
constructs an empty grid pane.
- `void add(Node child, int columnIndex, int rowIndex)`
- `void add(Node child, int columnIndex, int rowIndex, int colspan, int rowspan)`  
adds a node at the given position. The second method has the control occupy multiple grid cells. To occupy all remaining rows or columns, pass `GridPane.REMAINING`.
- `static void setHalignment(Node child, HPos value)`  
sets the horizontal alignment of the given node within its grid cell. The `HPos` enumeration has values `LEFT`, `RIGHT`, and `CENTER`.
- `static void setValignment(Node child, VPos value)`  
sets the vertical alignment of the given node within its grid cell. The `VPos` enumeration has values `TOP`, `CENTER`, `BASELINE`, and `BOTTOM`.
- `void setHgap(double value)`
- `void setVgap(double value)`  
sets the horizontal or vertical gap between rows or columns to the given number of pixels.

### 13.4.2 FXML

The markup language that JavaFX uses to describe layouts is called FXML. We discuss it in some detail because the concepts are interesting beyond the needs of JavaFX, and the implementation is fairly general.

Here is the FXML markup for the login dialog of the preceding section:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<?import java.lang.*?>
<?import java.util.*?>
<?import javafx.geometry.*?>
<?import javafx.scene.control.*?>
```

```
<?import javafx.scene.text.*?>
<?import javafx.scene.layout.*?>

<GridPane hgap="10" vgap="10">
    <padding>
        <Insets top="10" right="10" bottom="10" left="10"/>
    </padding>
    <children>
        <Label text="User name:" GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="0"
               GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
        <Label text="Password:" GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="1"
               GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
        <TextField GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
        <PasswordField GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="1"/>
        <HBox GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="2"
              GridPane.columnSpan="2" alignment="CENTER" spacing="10">
            <children>
                <Button text="Ok"/>
                <Button text="Cancel"/>
            </children>
        </HBox>
    </children>
</GridPane>
```

Have a closer look at the FXML file. Note the “processing instructions” `<?import . . .?>` for importing Java packages. (In general, XML processing instructions are an “escape hatch” for application-specific processing of XML documents.)

Now look at the structure of the document. First off, the nesting of the `GridPane`, the labels and text fields, the `HBox` and its button children reflects the nesting that we built up with Java code in the preceding section.

Most of the attributes correspond to property setters. For example,

```
<GridPane hgap="10" vgap="10">
```

means “construct a `GridPane` and then set the `hgap` and `vgap` properties.”

When an attribute starts with a class name and a static method, that method is invoked. For example,

```
<TextField GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
```

means that the static methods `GridPane.setColumnIndex(thisTextField, 1)` and `GridPane.setRowIndex(thisTextField, 0)` will be called.

When a property value is too complex to express as a string, one uses nested elements instead of attributes. Consider, for example,

```
<GridPane hgap="10" vgap="10">
    <padding>
        <Insets top="10" right="10" bottom="10" left="10"/>
    </padding>
    . . .
```

The `padding` property has type `Insets`, and the `Insets` object is constructed with an `<Insets . . .>` child element that specifies how to set its properties.

Finally, there is a special rule for list properties. For example, `children` is a list property. Calling

```
<HBox . . .>
    <children>
        <Button text="Ok" />
        <Button text="Cancel" />
    </children>
</HBox>
```

adds the buttons to the list returned by `getChildren`.



**NOTE:** You can localize text strings by using resource keys starting with %, such as `<Button text="%ok">`. Then you must provide a resource bundle that maps resource keys to localized values. We discuss resource bundles in Chapter 7 of Volume II.

You can write FXML files by hand, or you can use a GUI builder such as Scene Builder. Once you have such a file, load it like this:

```
public void start(Stage stage)
{
    try
    {
        Parent root = FXMLLoader.load(getClass().getResource("dialog.fxml"));
        stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
        stage.show();
    }
    catch (IOException e)
    {
        e.printStackTrace();
        System.exit(0);
    }
}
```

Of course, this is not yet useful by itself. The user interface is displayed, but the program cannot access the values that the user provides. One way of establishing a connection between the controls and the program is to use `id` attributes, as you would in JavaScript. Provide the `id` attributes in the FXML file:

```
<TextField id="username" GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
```

In the program, look up the control:

```
TextField username = (TextField) root.lookup("#username");
```

But there is a better way. You can use the `@FXML` annotation to “inject” the control objects into a *controller* class. The controller class must implement the `Initializable` interface. In the controller’s `initialize` method, you wire up the event handlers. Any class can be the controller, even the FX application itself.

For example, here is a controller for our login dialog:

```
public class LoginDialogController implements Initializable
{
    @FXML private TextField username;
    @FXML private PasswordField password;
    @FXML private Button okButton;
    @FXML private Button cancelButton;

    public void initialize(URL url, ResourceBundle rb)
    {
        okButton.setOnAction(event -> . . .);
        cancelButton.setOnAction(event ->
        {
            username.setText("");
            password.setText("");
        });
    }
}
```

Provide the names of the controller’s instance variables to the corresponding control elements in the FXML file, using the `fx:id` (not `id`) attribute:

```
<TextField fx:id="username" GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
<PasswordField fx:id="password" GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="1" />
<Button fx:id="okButton" text="Ok" />
```

In the root element, you also need to declare the controller class, using the `fx:controller` attribute:

```
<GridPane xmlns:fx="http://javafx.com/fxml" hgap="10" vgap="10"
fx:controller="LoginDialogController">
```

Note the `namespace` attribute to introduce the FXML namespace.

When the FXML file is loaded, the scene graph is constructed, and references to the named control objects are injected into the annotated fields of the controller object. Then its `initialize` method is called.



**NOTE:** If your controller doesn't have a default constructor (perhaps because it is being initialized with a reference to a business service), you can set it programmatically:

```
FXMLLoader loader = new FXMLLoader(getClass().getResource(. . .));
loader.setController(new Controller(service));
Parent root = loader.load();
```



**CAUTION:** If you set the controller programmatically, really use the code from the preceding note. The following code will compile, but it will invoke the static `FXMLLoader.load` method, ignoring the constructed loader:

```
FXMLLoader loader = new FXMLLoader();
loader.setController(new Controller(service));
Parent root = loader.load(getClass().getResource(. . .));
// ERROR--calls static method
```

It is even possible to do much of the initialization in the FXML file. You can define simple bindings, and you can set annotated controller methods as event listeners. It is also possible to add scripts in JavaScript or another scripting language to an FXML file. The syntax is documented at [https://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/docs/api/javafx/fxml/doc-files/introduction\\_to\\_fxml.html](https://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/docs/api/javafx/fxml/doc-files/introduction_to_fxml.html). However, let's not dwell on these features. It seems better to separate the visual design from the program behavior, so that a user interface designer can produce the design and a programmer can implement the behavior.

#### **Listing 13.7** fxml/FXMDemo.java

```
1 package fxml;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4 import java.net.*;
5 import java.util.*;
6
7 import javafx.application.*;
8 import javafx.fxml.*;
9 import javafx.scene.*;
10 import javafx.scene.control.*;
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.7 (Continued)**

```
11 import javafx.scene.control.Alert.*;
12 import javafx.stage.*;
13 /**
14  * @version 1.0 2017-12-29
15  * @author Cay Horstmann
16 */
17 public class FXMLDemo extends Application implements Initializable
18 {
19     @FXML private TextField username;
20     @FXML private PasswordField password;
21     @FXML private Button okButton;
22     @FXML private Button cancelButton;
23
24     public void initialize(URL url, ResourceBundle rb)
25     {
26         okButton.setOnAction(event ->
27         {
28             Alert alert = new Alert(AlertType.INFORMATION,
29                         "Verifying " + username.getText() + ":" + password.getText());
30             alert.showAndWait();
31         });
32         cancelButton.setOnAction(event ->
33         {
34             {
35                 username.setText("");
36                 password.setText("");
37             });
38         }
39     }
40     public void start(Stage stage)
41     {
42         try
43         {
44             Parent root = FXMLLoader.load(
45                     getClass().getResource("dialog.fxml"));
46             stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
47             stage.setTitle("FXMLDemo");
48             stage.show();
49         }
50         catch (IOException e)
51         {
52             e.printStackTrace();
53         }
54     }
55 }
```

---

**Listing 13.8 fxml/dialog.fxml**

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2
3 <?import java.lang.*?>
4 <?import java.util.*?>
5 <?import javafx.geometry.*?>
6 <?import javafx.scene.control.*?>
7 <?import javafx.scene.text.*?>
8 <?import javafx.scene.layout.*?>
9
10 <GridPane xmlns:fx="http://javafx.com/fxml" hgap="10" vgap="10"
11     fx:controller="fxml.FXMLEDemo">
12     <padding>
13         <Insets top="10" right="10" bottom="10" left="10"/>
14     </padding>
15     <children>
16         <Label text="User name:" GridPane.columnIndex="0"
17             GridPane.rowIndex="0" GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
18         <Label text="Password:" GridPane.columnIndex="0"
19             GridPane.rowIndex="1" GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
20         <TextField fx:id="username" GridPane.columnIndex="1"
21             GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
22         <PasswordField fx:id="password"
23             GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="1"/>
24         <HBox GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="2"
25             GridPane.columnSpan="2" alignment="CENTER" spacing="10">
26             <children>
27                 <Button fx:id="okButton" text="Ok"/>
28                 <Button fx:id="cancelButton" text="Cancel"/>
29             </children>
30         </HBox>
31     </children>
32 </GridPane>
```

**javafx.fxml.FXMLLoader**

- static <T> T load(URL location)
- static <T> T load(URL location, ResourceBundle resources)

returns the object described by the FXML document at the given location. The second method uses the given resource bundle for resolving resource keys prefixed by %.

(Continues)

***javafx.fxml.FXMLLoader (Continued)***

- `FXMLLoader(URL location)`
- `FXMLLoader(URL location, ResourceBundle resources)`  
constructs a loader that will load an object from the FXML document at the given location, using the given resource bundle for resolving resource keys.
- `void setController(Object controller)`  
sets the controller for the root element. This method must be called before loading the FXML document.
- `<T> T load()`  
returns the object described by the FXML document of this loader.

***javafx.fxml.Initializable***

- `void initialize(URL location, ResourceBundle resources)`

This method is called when the FXMLLoader has constructed the root element and its controller. The location and resources are those of the loader.

### 13.4.3 CSS

JavaFX lets you change the visual appearance of the user interface with CSS, which is usually more convenient than supplying FXML attributes or calling Java methods.

You can load a CSS stylesheet programmatically and have it applied to a scene graph:

```
Scene scene = new Scene(pane);
scene.getStylesheets().add("scene.css");
```

In the stylesheet, you can reference any controls that have an ID. For example, here is how you can control the appearance of a GridPane. In the code, set the ID:

```
GridPane pane = new GridPane();
pane.setId("pane");
```

Don't set any padding or spacing in the code. Instead, use CSS.

```
#pane {
    -fx-padding: 0.5em;
    -fx-hgap: 0.5em;
    -fx-vgap: 0.5em;
```

```
-fx-background-image: url("metal.jpg")
}
```

Unfortunately, you can't use the familiar CSS attributes but need to know FX-specific attributes that start with `-fx-`. The attribute names are formed by changing the property names to lowercase and using hyphens instead of camel case. For example, the `textAlignment` property turns into `-fx-text-alignment`. You can find all supported attributes in the JavaFX CSS reference at <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/9/docs/api/javafx/scene/doc-files/cssref.html>.

Using CSS is nicer than cluttering up the code with layout minutiae. Moreover, you can easily use resolution-independent em units. Of course, CSS can be used both for good and for evil (see Figure 13.14), and hopefully you will resist the temptation to apply gratuitous background textures to your login dialogs.



**Figure 13.14** Using CSS to style a user interface

Instead of styling by individual IDs, you can use style classes. Add the class to the node object:

```
HBox buttons = new HBox();
buttons.getStyleClass().add("buttonrow");
```

Then style it, using the CSS class notation:

```
.buttonrow {
    -fx-spacing: 0.5em;
}
```

Every JavaFX control and shape class belongs to a CSS class whose name is the decapitalized Java class name. For example, all `Label` nodes have class `label`. Here is how you can change the font for all labels to Comic Sans:

```
.label {
    -fx-font-family: "Comic Sans MS";
}
```

But please don't.

You can also use CSS with FXML layouts. Attach the stylesheet to the root pane:

```
<GridPane id="pane" stylesheets="scene.css">
```

Supply `id` or `styleClass` attributes in the FXML code. For example,

```
<HBox styleClass="buttonrow">
```

Then you can specify most styling in CSS, and use FXML only for layout. Unfortunately, you can't completely remove all styling from the FXML. For example, there is currently no way to specify grid cell alignment in CSS.



**NOTE:** You can also apply a CSS style programmatically, such as

```
buttons.setStyle("-fx-border-color: red;");
```

That can be handy for debugging, but in general, it's better to use an external stylesheet.

---

The program in Listing 13.9 demonstrates the use of stylesheets. The stylesheet in Listing 13.10 is loaded directly by the program. The second stylesheet (Listing 13.11) is loaded by the FXML file in Listing 13.12.

---

#### **Listing 13.9** css/CSSDemo.java

---

```
1 package css;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4 import javafx.application.*;
5 import javafx.fxml.*;
6 import javafx.scene.*;
7 import javafx.scene.control.*;
8 import javafx.stage.*;
9
10 public class CSSDemo extends Application
11 {
12     public void start(Stage stage)
13     {
14         try
15         {
16             Parent root = FXMLLoader.load(getClass().getResource("dialog.fxml"));
17             root.lookup("#username").getStyleClass().add("highlight");
18             Scene scene = new Scene(root);
19             scene.getStylesheets().add("css/scenel.css");
```

```
20         stage.setScene(scene);
21         stage.setTitle("CSSDemo");
22         stage.show();
23     }
24     catch (IOException ex)
25     {
26         ex.printStackTrace();
27         Platform.exit();
28     }
29 }
30 }
```

---

**Listing 13.10** css/scene1.css

```
1 .label {
2     -fx-text-fill: white;
3     -fx-font-family: "Comic Sans MS";
4 }
5
6 #pane {
7     -fx-padding: 0.5em;
8     -fx-hgap: 0.5em;
9     -fx-vgap: 0.5em;
10    -fx-background-image: url("metal.jpg");
11 }
12
13 .highlight:focused {
14     -fx-border-color: yellow;
15 }
```

---

**Listing 13.11** css/scene2.css

```
1 .buttonrow {
2     -fx-spacing: 0.5em;
3     -fx-alignment: center;
4 }
5
```

---

**Listing 13.12** css/dialog.fxml

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2
3 <?import java.lang.*?>
4 <?import java.util.*?>
5 <?import javafx.geometry.*?>
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.12 (Continued)**

```
6 <?import javafx.scene.control.*?>
7 <?import javafx.scene.text.*?>
8 <?import javafx.scene.layout.*?>
9
10 <GridPane id="pane" xmlns:fx="http://javafx.com/fxml" stylesheets="css/scene2.css">
11     <children>
12         <Label text="User name:" GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="0"
13             GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
14         <Label text="Password: " GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="1"
15             GridPane.halignment="RIGHT"/>
16         <TextField id="username" GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="0"/>
17         <PasswordField GridPane.columnIndex="1" GridPane.rowIndex="1"/>
18         <HBox styleClass="buttonrow" GridPane.columnIndex="0" GridPane.rowIndex="2"
19             GridPane.columnSpan="2">
20             <children>
21                 <Button text="Ok"/>
22                 <Button text="Cancel"/>
23             </children>
24         </HBox>
25     </children>
26 </GridPane>
```

---

**javafx.scene.Scene**

- `ObservableList<String> getStylesheets()`  
returns the list of URL strings for the CSS stylesheets of this scene.

**javafx.scene.Node**

- `void setId(String value)`  
sets an ID for this node. The ID can be used in CSS stylesheets.
- `void setStyle(String value)`  
sets the CSS style of this node.

**javafx.css.Styleable**

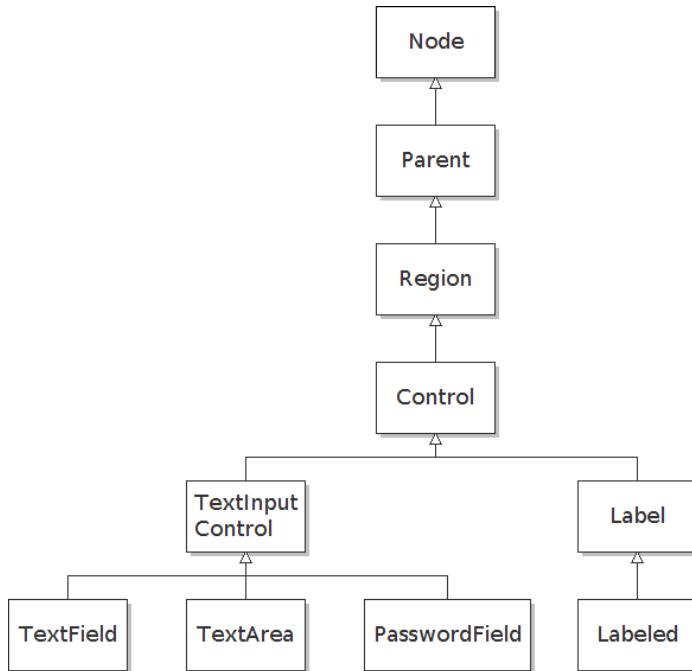
- `ObservableList<String> getStyleClass()`  
returns the list of CSS style class names for this node.

## 13.5 User Interface Controls

In the following sections, we go over common user interface controls: text controls, checkboxes, radio buttons, combo boxes, menus, and simple dialogs.

### 13.5.1 Text Input

We begin with the controls that let a user input and edit text. A `TextField` can accept only one line of text; a `TextArea` accepts multiple lines of text. As you can see in Figure 13.15, these are both subclasses of `TextInputControl`, which is itself a subclass of `Control`, the ancestor of all user interface controls in JavaFX. The `JPasswordField` class is a subclass of `TextField` and accepts one line of text without showing the contents.



**Figure 13.15** The inheritance hierarchy of text input controls

The `TextInputControl` class has methods `getText`, `setText`, and `appendText` for getting and setting the text, or appending to it.

By calling the `setPrefColumnCount` method of a `TextField`, you give a hint for the preferred size. One column is the expected width of one character in the font you are using for the text. The user can still type in longer strings, but the input scrolls when the text exceeds the width of the field. For text areas, there is also a `setPrefRowCount` method.



**NOTE:** Scrollbars automatically appear if there is more text than a text area can display, and they vanish again if text is deleted and the remaining text fits inside the area.

---

You can enable wrapping of long lines in a text area by calling

```
textArea.setWrapText(true);
```

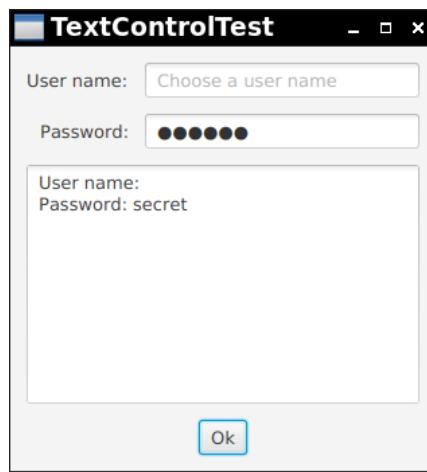
Then the text area will not use horizontal scroll bars.

All text controls can be made read-only:

```
textArea.setEditable(false);
```

A read-only text area can be used to display a large amount of information. This does not change the appearance of the text area. In contrast, a disabled control has a distinct visual appearance that indicates its disabled status to the user.

If you set the *prompt text*, it is shown in gray if the control is empty (see Figure 13.16).



**Figure 13.16** Text controls

```
username.setPromptText("Choose a user name");
```

Unlike buttons, text controls need to be labeled with an external `Label` instance that you place nearby:

```
Label usernameLabel = new Label("User name:");
```

A `Label` is similar to a `Text` node, but a `Text` is a `Shape`, meant to be used for drawing. In contrast, a `Label` is a `Control`. It inherits methods from the `Labeled` superclass for tasks such as setting a graphic decoration and controlling how the text should be truncated if there is insufficient space to display it.

Listing 13.13 demonstrates the various text controls. This program shows a text field, a password field, and a text area with scrollbars. The text field and password field are labeled. Click on “Ok” to insert the field contents into the text area.

### **Listing 13.13** `text/TextControlTest.java`

```
1 package text;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.geometry.*;
5 import javafx.scene.*;
6 import javafx.scene.control.*;
7 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
8 import javafx.scene.text.*;
9 import javafx.stage.*;
10
11 /**
12  * @version 1.5 2017-12-29
13  * @author Cay Horstmann
14 */
15 public class TextControlTest extends Application
16 {
17     public void start(Stage stage)
18     {
19         final double rem = new Text("").getLayoutBounds().getHeight();
20
21         GridPane pane = new GridPane();
22         pane.setHgap(0.8 * rem);
23         pane.setVgap(0.8 * rem);
24         pane.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
25
26         Label usernameLabel = new Label("User name:");
27         Label passwordLabel = new Label("Password:");
28 }
```

*(Continues)*

**Listing 13.13 (Continued)**

```
29     TextField username = new TextField();
30     username.setPromptText("Choose a user name");
31     PasswordField password = new PasswordField();
32     password.setPromptText("Choose a password");
33     TextArea textArea = new TextArea();
34     textArea.setPrefRowCount(10);
35     textArea.setPrefColumnCount(20);
36     textArea.setWrapText(true);
37     textArea.setEditable(false);
38
39     Button okButton = new Button("Ok");
40     okButton.setOnAction(event ->
41         textArea.appendText("User name: " + username.getText()
42             + "\nPassword: " + password.getText() + "\n"));
43
44     pane.add(usernameLabel, 0, 0);
45     pane.add(username, 1, 0);
46     pane.add(passwordLabel, 0, 1);
47     pane.add(password, 1, 1);
48     pane.add(textArea, 0, 2, 2, 1);
49     pane.add(okButton, 0, 3, 2, 1);
50
51     GridPane.setAlignment(usernameLabel, HPos.RIGHT);
52     GridPane.setAlignment(passwordLabel, HPos.RIGHT);
53     GridPane.setAlignment(okButton, HPos.CENTER);
54
55     stage.setScene(new Scene(pane));
56     stage.setTitle("TextControlTest");
57     stage.show();
58 }
59 }
60 }
```

---

**javafx.scene.Node**

- void **setDisable(boolean value)**

disables or enables this node and its children. Subclasses of Control render themselves differently when they are disabled.

**javafx.scene.control.TextInputControl**

- `String getText()`
- `void setText(String value)`  
gets or sets the text in this control.
- `void appendText(String text)`  
appends the given text to the text in this control.
- `void setEditable(boolean value)`  
makes this control editable or read-only.
- `void setPromptText(String value)`  
sets the prompt text that is displayed in the control.

**javafx.scene.control.TextField**

- `void setPrefColumnCount(int value)`  
sets the preferred column count of this text field.

**javafx.scene.control.TextArea**

- `void setPrefRowCount(int value)`
- `void setPrefColumnCount(int value)`  
sets the preferred row and column count of this text area.
- `void setWrapText(boolean value)`  
enables or disables text wrapping for lines whose length exceeds the width of this text area.

**javafx.scene.control.Label**

- `Label(String text)`  
constructs a label with the given text.

**javafx.scene.control.Labeled**

- `void setGraphic(Node value)`  
adds a decorative node to this labeled control.
- `void setTextOverrun(OverrunStyle value)`  
sets the text overrun policy to indicate where the ellipses (...) should appear when the label text needs to be truncated: not at all; at the beginning, middle or end; at character or word boundaries. Use one of the following values of the OverrunStyle enumeration: CLIP, ELLIPSIS, WORD\_ELLIPSIS, LEADING\_ELLIPSIS, LEADING\_WORD\_ELLIPSIS, CENTER\_ELLIPSIS, CENTER\_WORD\_ELLIPSIS.

### 13.5.2 Choices

You now know how to collect text input from users, but there are many occasions where you would rather give users a finite set of choices than have them enter the data in a text control. Using radio buttons or a list of items tells your users what choices they have. It also saves you the trouble of error checking. In this section, you will learn how to program checkboxes, radio buttons, and combo boxes.

In our example program, you will be able to choose the font weight, posture, size, and family, as shown in Figure 13.17.



**Figure 13.17** Choice controls for selecting a font

If you want to collect just a “yes” or “no” input, use a checkbox control. For example, a font is italic, or it isn’t. Checkboxes come with labels that identify them. Give the label text in the constructor:

```
CheckBox italic = new CheckBox("Italic");
```

The user can check the box by clicking inside it and turn off the checkmark by clicking inside the box again. Pressing the space bar when the focus is in the checkbox also toggles the checkmark.

Use the `setSelected` method to turn a checkbox on or off. For example:

```
italic.setSelected(true);
```

The `isSelected` method retrieves the current state of a checkbox. It is `false` if unchecked, `true` if checked.

When the user clicks on a checkbox, this triggers an action event. As always, you call the `setOnAction` method to attach an event handler to the checkbox. The `CheckBox` class inherits this method from the `ButtonBase` superclass.

In our example program, we offer checkboxes for bold and italic fonts. The user can check either, both, or neither of the two checkboxes.

In many cases, we want the user to check only one of several boxes. When another box is checked, the previous box is automatically unchecked. Such a group of boxes is called a radio button group because the buttons work like the station selector buttons on an old-fashioned radio. When you push in one button, the previously depressed button pops out. (Admittedly, that analogy made much more sense thirty years ago than it does now. But these controls are still called radio buttons.)

A typical example is the font size selection in our sample program. We allow the user to select a font size from among four choices—Small, Medium, Large, or Extra Large—but, of course, we will allow selecting only one size at a time.

Constructing a radio button is straightforward:

```
RadioButton small = new RadioButton("Small");
```

To get the desired behavior of having the previously selected button turn off when a new one is selected, all buttons need to be in the same *toggle group*:

```
ToggleGroup group = new ToggleGroup();
small.setToggleGroup(group);
medium.setToggleGroup(group);
...
```

You also want to make sure that one of the buttons is selected at the outset:

```
medium.setSelected(true);
```

As with checkboxes, radio buttons send action events when they are clicked. You could attach a separate event handler to each radio button, but that gets repetitive. We will share a single handler, but we want to avoid code that

checks whether the event source was the Small, Medium, Large, or Extra Large button. All we care about is the desired size of the font.

*User data* provide a convenient mechanism for transferring arbitrary data from a control to a shared handler. You can set arbitrary objects as user data of a control. We will set the desired font sizes:

```
small.setUserData(8);
medium.setUserData(14);
...
```

In the shared event handler, we retrieve the user data from the currently selected button in the toggle group:

```
int size = (int) group.getSelectedToggle().getUserData();
```

If you look again at Figure 13.17, you will note that the appearance of the radio buttons is different from that of checkboxes. Checkboxes are square and contain a checkmark when selected. Radio buttons are round and contain a dot when selected.

If you have more than a handful of alternatives, radio buttons are not a good choice because they take up too much screen space. Instead, use a combo box. When the user clicks on this control, a list of choices drops down, and the user can then select one of them (see Figure 13.18).

If the drop-down list box is set to be editable, you can edit the current selection as if it were a text field. For that reason, this control is called a combo box—it combines the flexibility of a text field with a set of predefined choices. The `ComboBox` class provides a combo box control.

Call the `setEditable` method to make the combo box editable. Note that editing affects only the selected item. It does not change the list of choices in any way.

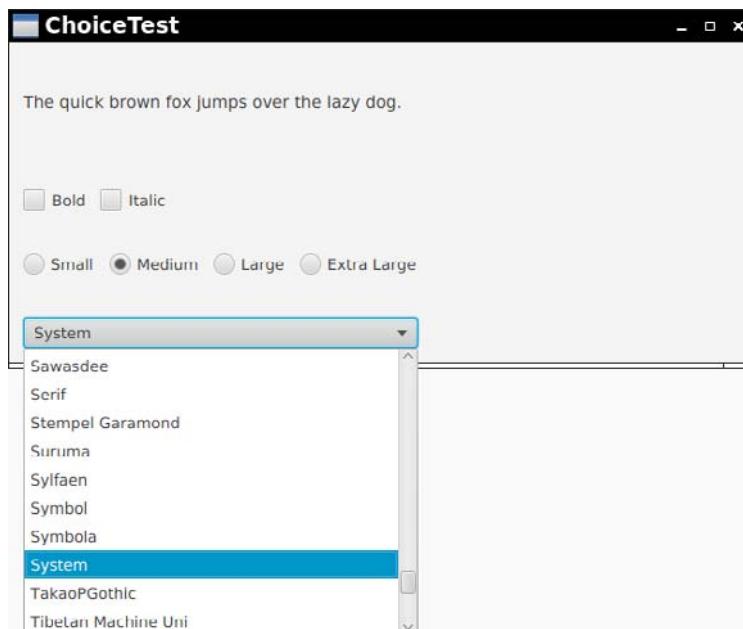
In the example program, the user can choose a font family from a list of all available families. We add all choices to the list returned by `getItems`:

```
ComboBox<String> families = new ComboBox<>();
families.getItems().addAll(Font.getFamilies());
```



**NOTE:** `ComboBox<T>` is a generic class. The type parameter denotes the type of the items. If the item type is not `String`, then a converter needs to convert between the item type and the strings that the user views and potentially edits. We take up that issue in Chapter 11 of Volume II.

---



**Figure 13.18** A combo box

You can obtain the current selection, which may have been edited if the combo box is editable, by calling the `getValue` method. Call `setValue` to specify an initial value.

As with the other choice controls, a `ComboBox` fires an action event when the user makes a selection. In our sample program, shown in Listing 13.14, it is not worth having separate event handlers for each control. Instead, all controls share a single handler that determines a font from the selected values in the checkboxes, radio buttons, and combo box.

**Listing 13.14** choices/ChoiceTest.java

```
1 package choices;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.event.*;
5 import javafx.geometry.*;
6 import javafx.scene.*;
7 import javafx.scene.control.*;
8 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.14 (Continued)**

```
9 import javafx.scene.text.*;
10 import javafx.stage.*;
11 /**
12  * @version 1.4 2017-12-29
13  * @author Cay Horstmann
14  */
15 public class ChoiceTest extends Application
16 {
17     private static final double rem = new Text("").getLayoutBounds().getHeight();
18
19     private static HBox hbox(Node... children)
20     {
21         HBox box = new HBox(0.8 * rem, children);
22         box.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
23         return box;
24     }
25 }
26
27 public void start(Stage stage)
28 {
29     Label sampleText = new Label("The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.");
30     sampleText.setPrefWidth(40 * rem);
31     sampleText.setPrefHeight(5 * rem);
32     sampleText.setFont(Font.font(14));
33
34     CheckBox bold = new CheckBox("Bold");
35     CheckBox italic = new CheckBox("Italic");
36
37     RadioButton small = new RadioButton("Small");
38     RadioButton medium = new RadioButton("Medium");
39     RadioButton large = new RadioButton("Large");
40     RadioButton extraLarge = new RadioButton("Extra Large");
41
42     small.setUserData(8);
43     medium.setUserData(14);
44     large.setUserData(18);
45     extraLarge.setUserData(36);
46
47     ToggleGroup group = new ToggleGroup();
48     small.setToggleGroup(group);
49     medium.setToggleGroup(group);
50     large.setToggleGroup(group);
51     extraLarge.setToggleGroup(group);
52     medium.setSelected(true);
53
54     ComboBox<String> families = new ComboBox<>();
55     families.getItems().addAll(Font.getFamilies());
```

```
56     families.setValue("System");
57
58     EventHandler<ActionEvent> listener = event ->
59     {
60         int size = (int) group.getSelectedToggle().getUserData();
61         Font font = Font.font(
62             families.getValue(),
63             bold.isSelected() ? FontWeight.BOLD : FontWeight.NORMAL,
64             italic.isSelected() ? FontPosture.ITALIC : FontPosture.REGULAR,
65             size);
66         sampleText.setFont(font);
67     };
68     small.setOnAction(listener);
69     medium.setOnAction(listener);
70     large.setOnAction(listener);
71     extraLarge.setOnAction(listener);
72     bold.setOnAction(listener);
73     italic.setOnAction(listener);
74     families.setOnAction(listener);
75
76     VBox root = new VBox(0.8 * rem,
77         hbox(sampleText),
78         hbox(bold, italic),
79         hbox(small, medium, large, extraLarge),
80         hbox(families));
81
82     stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
83     stage.setTitle("ChoiceTest");
84     stage.show();
85 }
86 }
```

**javafx.scene.control.CheckBox**

- `CheckBox(String text)`  
constructs a checkbox labeled with the given text.
- `boolean isSelected()`
- `void setSelected(boolean value)`  
gets or sets the selected state of this checkbox.

**javafx.scene.control.RadioButton**

- `RadioButton(String text)`  
constructs a radio button labeled with the given text.

***javafx.scene.control.ToggleButton***

- `void setToggleGroup(ToggleGroup value)`  
sets the toggle group for this button.
- `boolean isSelected()`
- `void setSelected(boolean value)`  
gets or sets the selected state of this button.

***javafx.scene.control.ToggleGroup***

- `ToggleGroup()`  
constructs an empty toggle group.
- `Toggle getSelectedToggle()`  
gets the selected item from this toggle group.

***javafx.scene.control.Toggle***

- `void setUserData(Object value)`
- `Object getUserData()`  
sets and gets a data item that is associated with this toggle control.

***javafx.scene.control.ComboBox<T>***

- `ComboBox()`  
constructs a combo box with no items.
- `ObservableList<T> getItems()`  
yields a mutable list of items in this combo box.

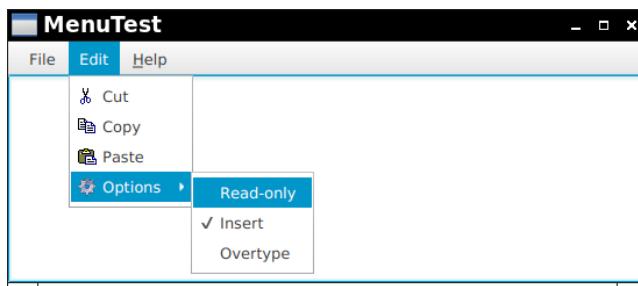
***javafx.scene.control.ComboBoxBase<T>***

- `void setValue(T)`
- `T getValue()`  
sets or gets the currently selected value.
- `void setOnAction(EventHandler<ActionEvent>)`  
sets the action event listener for this control.

### 13.5.3 Menus

We started by introducing the most common controls that you might want to place into a window, such as various kinds of buttons, text fields, and combo boxes. JavaFX also supports another type of user interface element—pull-down menus that are familiar from GUI applications.

A *menu bar* at the top of a window contains the names of the pull-down menus. Clicking on a name opens the menu containing menu items and submenus. When the user clicks on a menu item, an action event is triggered. Figure 13.19 shows a typical menu with a submenu.



**Figure 13.19** A menu with a submenu

You construct a menu item by providing the menu text and, optionally, a graphical decoration. The decoration can be any `Node`, but it is most common to provide an image.

```
MenuItem newItem = new MenuItem("New");
MenuItem cutItem = new MenuItem("Cut", new ImageView("menu/cut.gif"));
```

You construct a `Menu` object in the same way.

```
Menu editMenu = new Menu("Edit");
```

Add menu items, separators, and submenus to a menu object by adding them to the list of items:

```
editMenu.getItems().addAll(cutItem, copyItem, pasteItem);
```

Alternatively, you can provide the children when you construct the menu:

```
Menu optionsMenu = new Menu("Options", new ImageView("menu/options.gif"),
    readOnlyItem, insertItem, overtypeItem);
```

If you don't want a decoration, supply `null` as the second argument.

Add the top-level menus to a `MenuBar`, and add the menu bar to the root pane:

```
MenuBar bar = newMenuBar(fileMenu, editMenu, helpMenu);
VBox root = new VBox(bar, . . .);
```

When the user selects a menu, an action event is triggered. You need to install an event handler for each menu item:

```
exitItem.setOnAction(event -> Platform.exit());
```

`CheckMenuItem` and `RadioMenuItem` controls display a check mark next to the item. They work exactly like checkboxes and radio buttons. You must add radio buttons to a toggle group. When one of the items in a group is selected, all others are automatically deselected.

```
CheckMenuItem readOnlyItem = new CheckMenuItem("Read-only");

ToggleGroup group = new ToggleGroup();
RadioMenuItem insertItem = new RadioMenuItem("Insert");
insertItem.setToggleGroup(group);
insertItem.setSelected(true);
RadioMenuItem overtypeItem = new RadioMenuItem("Overtype");
overtypeItem.setToggleGroup(group);
```

In our sample application, checking the “Read-only” item deactivates the “Save” and “Save as” menu items. You can achieve this by installing an event listener:

```
readOnlyItem.setOnAction(event ->
{
    saveItem.setDisable(readOnlyItem.isSelected());
    saveAsItem.setDisable(readOnlyItem.isSelected());
});
```

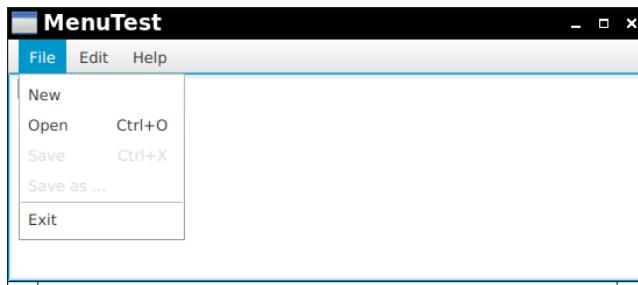
Alternatively, as you will see in Section 13.6.2, “Bindings,” on p. 84, you can use a more elegant approach and bind properties:

```
saveItem.disableProperty().bind(readOnlyItem.selectedProperty());
saveAsItem.disableProperty().bind(readOnlyItem.selectedProperty());
```

A disabled menu item is grayed out—see Figure 13.20.

*Accelerators* are keyboard shortcuts that let you select menu items without ever opening a menu. For example, many programs attach the accelerators Control+O and Control+S (or Command+O and Command+S on the Mac) to the Open and Save items in the File menu. Use the `setAccelerator` method to attach an accelerator key to a menu item.

```
openItem.setAccelerator(KeyCombination.keyCombination("Shortcut+0"));
```



**Figure 13.20** Disabled menu items

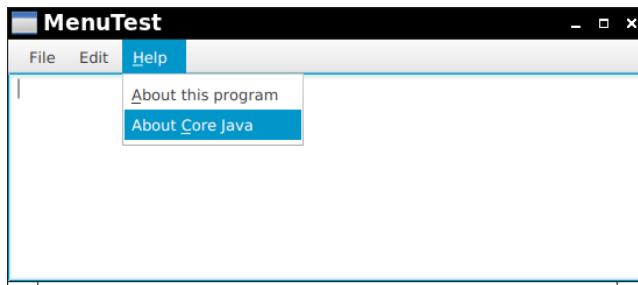
The “Shortcut” modifier denotes the Control key on Windows/Linux and the Command key on the Mac. The accelerator is displayed next to the menu item—see Figure 13.21.

Typing the accelerator key combination automatically selects the menu option and fires an action event, as if the user had selected the menu option manually. You can attach accelerators only to menu items, not to menus.



**Figure 13.21** Accelerators

There is a limited number of accelerators available, even if you add modifier keys. Besides, few users have the mental power to remember shortcuts like Control+Shift+F11. On Linux and Windows, *keyboard mnemonics* allow users to navigate menus with the keyboard by pressing the Alt key and typing underlined letters. For example, in the menu shown in Figure 13.22, hitting Alt+H C selects the Help menu and then the “About Core Java” item. Unlike keyboard shortcuts, mnemonics let you reach all menu items with key combinations that are fairly easy to remember.



**Figure 13.22** Keyboard mnemonics

You create a keyboard mnemonic for a menu or menu item by adding an underscore before the mnemonic letter in the menu item constructor:

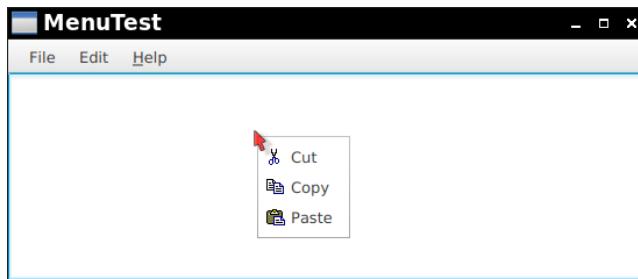
```
MenuItem aboutProgramItem = new MenuItem("_About this program");
MenuItem aboutCoreJavaItem = new MenuItem("About _Core Java");
Menu helpMenu = new Menu("_Help", null, aboutProgramItem, aboutCoreJavaItem);
```



**NOTE:** In a misguided effort to reduce “visual noise,” most user interface environments (including JavaFX) hide mnemonics until you press the Alt key. MacOS doesn’t support mnemonics at all.

A *context menu* is a menu that is not attached to a menu bar but floats somewhere (see Figure 13.23). Create a context menu just as you create a regular menu, except that a context menu has no title. Then attach the context menu to a control. The context menu pops up when you right-click on the control. (On the Mac, hold down the Control key and click.)

```
ContextMenu contextMenu = new ContextMenu(cutItem, copyItem, pasteItem);
textArea.setContextMenu(contextMenu);
```



**Figure 13.23** A context menu



**NOTE:** If you want a context menu to pop up over an arbitrary node, you have to work a bit harder and show the menu when the user right-clicks on the node.

```
node.setOnContextMenuRequested(e ->
    contextMenu.show(node, e.getScreenX(), e.getScreenY()));
```

The program in Listing 13.15 demonstrates all the features that you saw in this section: nested menus, disabled menu items, checkbox and radio menu items, a context menu, and keyboard mnemonics and accelerators.

#### **Listing 13.15** menu/MenuTest.java

```
1 package menu;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.event.*;
5 import javafx.scene.*;
6 import javafx.scene.control.*;
7 import javafx.scene.image.*;
8 import javafx.scene.input.*;
9 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
10 import javafx.stage.*;
11
12 /**
13     @version 1.3 2017-12-29
14     @author Cay Horstmann
15 */
16 public class MenuTest extends Application
17 {
18     private TextArea textArea = new TextArea();
19
20     /**
21         Makes this item or, if a menu, its descendant items, carry out the
22         given action if there isn't already an action defined.
23         @param item the menu item (which may be a menu)
24         @param action the default action
25     */
26     private void defaultAction(MenuItem item, EventHandler<ActionEvent> action)
27     {
28         if (item instanceof Menu)
29             for (MenuItem child : ((Menu) item).getItems())
30                 defaultAction(child, action);
31             else if (item.getOnAction() == null)
32                 item.setOnAction(action);
33     }
34 }
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.15 (Continued)**

```
35  public void start(Stage stage)
36  {
37      Menu fileMenu = new Menu("File");
38      MenuItem exitItem = new MenuItem("Exit");
39      exitItem.setOnAction(event -> Platform.exit());
40
41      // demonstrate accelerators
42
43      MenuItem newItem = new MenuItem("New");
44      MenuItem openItem = new MenuItem("Open ...");
45      openItem.setAccelerator(KeyCombination.keyCombination("Shortcut+O"));
46      MenuItem saveItem = new MenuItem("Save");
47      saveItem.setAccelerator(KeyCombination.keyCombination("Shortcut+S"));
48      MenuItem saveAsItem = new MenuItem("Save as ...");
49
50      fileMenu.getItems().addAll(newItem,
51          openItem,
52          saveItem,
53          saveAsItem,
54          new SeparatorMenuItem(),
55          exitItem);
56
57      // demonstrate checkbox and radio button menus
58
59      CheckMenuItem readOnlyItem = new CheckMenuItem("Read-only");
60      readOnlyItem.setOnAction(event ->
61      {
62          saveItem.setDisable(readOnlyItem.isSelected());
63          saveAsItem.setDisable(readOnlyItem.isSelected());
64      });
65      /*
66      Or use binding:
67      saveItem.disableProperty().bind(readOnlyItem.selectedProperty());
68      saveAsItem.disableProperty().bind(readOnlyItem.selectedProperty());
69      */
70
71      ToggleGroup group = new ToggleGroup();
72      RadioMenuItem insertItem = new RadioMenuItem("Insert");
73      insertItem.setToggleGroup(group);
74      insertItem.setSelected(true);
75      RadioMenuItem overtypeItem = new RadioMenuItem("Overtype");
76      overtypeItem.setToggleGroup(group);
77
78      Menu editMenu = new Menu("Edit");
79
```

```
80 // demonstrate icons
81
82 MenuItem cutItem = new MenuItem("Cut",
83     new ImageView("menu/cut.gif"));
84 MenuItem copyItem = new MenuItem("Copy",
85     new ImageView("menu/copy.gif"));
86 MenuItem pasteItem = new MenuItem("Paste",
87     new ImageView("menu/paste.gif"));
88
89 // demonstrate context menu
90
91 ContextMenu contextMenu = new ContextMenu(cutItem, copyItem, pasteItem);
92 textArea.setContextMenu(contextMenu);
93
94 editMenu.getItems().addAll(cutItem, copyItem, pasteItem);
95 // Bug or restriction--must add to context menu first
96 // http://bugs.java.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=JDK-8194270
97
98 // demonstrate nested menus
99
100 Menu optionsMenu = new Menu("Options",
101     new ImageView("menu/options.gif"), readOnlyItem,
102     insertItem, overtypeItem);
103
104 editMenu.getItems().add(optionsMenu);
105
106 // demonstrate mnemonics
107
108 MenuItem aboutProgramItem = new MenuItem("_About this program");
109 MenuItem aboutCoreJavaItem = new MenuItem("About _Core Java");
110 Menu helpMenu = new Menu("_Help", null,
111     aboutProgramItem, aboutCoreJavaItem);
112
113 // add menu bar
114
115MenuBar bar = newMenuBar(fileMenu, editMenu, helpMenu);
116 VBox root = new VBox(bar, textArea);
117 for (Menu menu : bar.getMenus()) defaultAction(menu, event ->
118 {
119     MenuItem item = (MenuItem) event.getSource();
120     textArea.appendText(item.getText() + " selected\n");
121 });
122
123 stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
124 stage.setTitle("MenuTest");
125 stage.show();
126 }
127 }
```

**javafx.scene.control.MenuItem**

- `MenuItem(String text)`
- `MenuItem(String text, Node graphic)`  
constructs a menu item with the given text and graphic.
- `public void setOnAction(EventHandler<ActionEvent> value)`  
sets the handler that is called when this item is selected.
- `Menu getParentMenu()`  
returns the menu in which this item is contained.
- `void setAccelerator(KeyCombination value)`  
sets the accelerator for this menu item.

**javafx.scene.input.KeyCombination**

- `static KeyCombination keyCombination(String name)`  
yields a key combination for the given description. Use modifiers (Shift, Ctrl, Alt, Meta, Shortcut) followed by +, then the key name, as produced by the `KeyCode.getName` method; for example, "Ctrl+Shift+F11".

**javafx.scene.control.Menu**

- `Menu(String text)`
- `Menu(String text, Node graphic)`
- `Menu(String text, Node graphic, MenuItem... items)`  
constructs a menu with the given text, graphic, and items.
- `ObservableList<MenuItem> getItems()`  
returns the mutable list of items in this menu.

**javafx.scene.controlMenuBar**

- `MenuBar(Menu... menus)`  
constructs a menu bar with the given menus.
- `ObservableList<Menu> getMenus()`  
returns the mutable list of menus in this menu bar.

**javafx.scene.control.CheckMenuItem**

- `CheckMenuItem(String text)`
- `CheckMenuItem(String text, Node graphic)`  
constructs a check menu item with the given text and graphic.
- `boolean isSelected()`  
returns true if this item is selected.

**javafx.scene.control.RadioMenuItem**

- `RadioMenuItem(String text)`
- `RadioMenuItem(String text, Node graphic)`  
constructs a radio menu item with the given text and graphic.
- `boolean isSelected()`  
returns true if this item is selected.
- `void setToggleGroup(ToggleGroup value)`  
sets the toggle group for this item.

**javafx.scene.control.ContextMenu**

- `ContextMenu(MenuItem... items)`  
constructs a context menu with the given items.

**javafx.scene.control.Control**

- `void setContextMenu(ContextMenu value)`  
sets the context menu for this control.

**javafx.scene.Node**

- `void setOnContextMenuRequested(EventHandler<? super ContextMenuEvent> value)`  
sets the handler for right-clicking on this node.

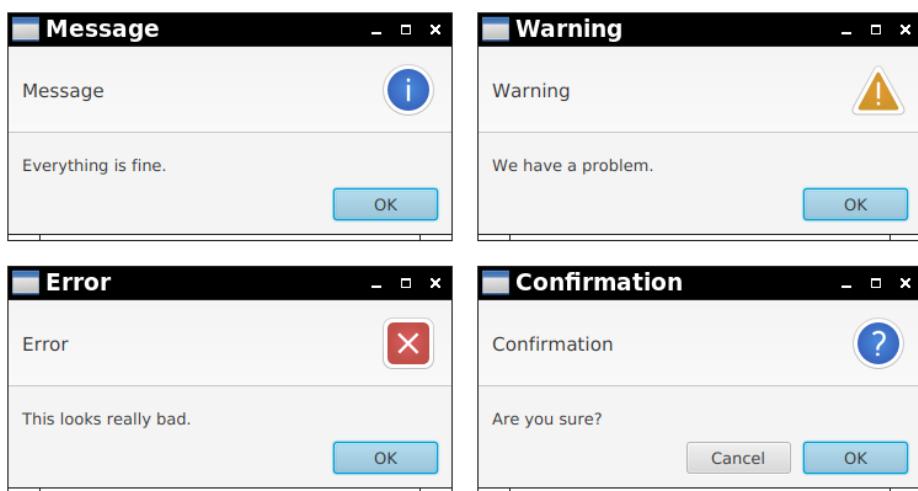
### 13.5.4 Simple Dialogs

JavaFX has a set of ready-made simple dialogs for displaying messages and for obtaining a single input.

To show a message, construct an `Alert` object by supplying the alert type and text. Then call the `showAndWait` method.

```
Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.INFORMATION,  
    "Everything is fine.");  
alert.showAndWait();
```

The dialog is displayed until the user dismisses it (by clicking the OK button, closing the window, or hitting the Escape key). By changing the type to the CONFIRMATION, WARNING, or ERROR type, the header text and image change—see Figure 13.24.



**Figure 13.24** Alert dialogs

The CONFIRMATION alert type shows two buttons. To see whether the user confirms or cancels, you need to capture the return value of the `showAndWait` method. It has type `Optional<ButtonType>`. The `ButtonType` enumeration lists the button types that are allowed in an alert dialog. The `Optional` class, which we will discuss in Chapter 1 of Volume II, denotes a value that may be present or absent. A confirmation dialog always returns `ButtonType.OK` or `ButtonType.CANCEL`, wrapped in an `Optional`. Since there is no possibility of an empty optional, you can call the `get` method to find out whether the user has clicked OK:

```
if (alert.showAndWait().get() == ButtonType.OK)  
{  
    // the user has confirmed  
    . . .  
}
```

You can add any of the supported button types into an alert—see Figure 13.25. List the button types in the constructor:

```
Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.NONE,  
    "Now what?",  
    ButtonType.NEXT, ButtonType.PREVIOUS, ButtonType.FINISH);
```

The `showAndWait` method returns the selected button type, wrapped in an `Optional`, which is never empty.



**NOTE:** If a dialog box has more than one button and no Cancel button, it cannot be closed. The user must click on one of the buttons in order to proceed.

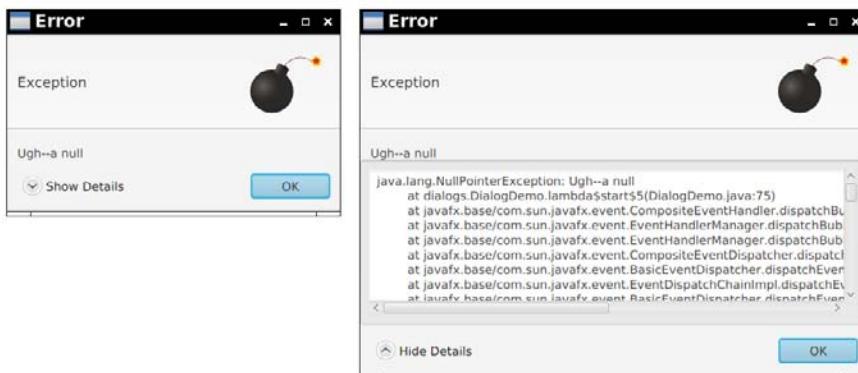


**Figure 13.25** An alert dialog with multiple buttons

The alert dialog in Figure 13.25 has alert type `NONE`. Since the header text and graphic are `null` for this type, no header is shown.

You can supply your own header text and graphic, as we do in the example shown in Figure 13.26:

```
alert.setHeaderText("Exception");  
alert.setGraphic(new ImageView("dialogs/bomb.png"));
```



**Figure 13.26** Expandable content

This dialog also shows an *expandable content* node that is revealed by clicking on "Show Details"—in our case, a text area containing an exception stack trace. Here is how you set such a node:

```
TextArea stackTrace = new TextArea();
alert.getDialogPane().setExpandableContent(stackTrace);
```

If you want to accept text input from the user, use a `TextInputDialog`, shown in Figure 13.27.



**Figure 13.27** A text input dialog

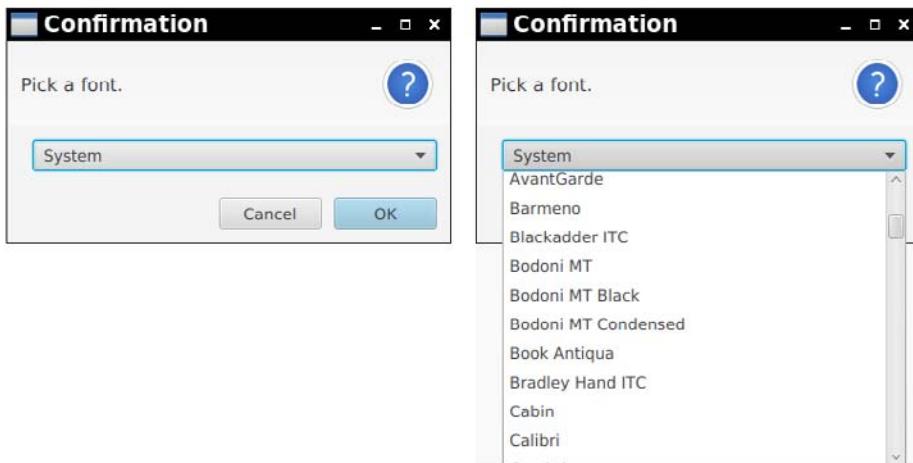
The `showAndWait` method returns an `Optional<String>`, which is empty if the user clicked the `Cancel` button or dismissed the dialog. Here is one way of processing it:

```
TextInputDialog dialog = new TextInputDialog();
dialog.setHeaderText("What is your name?");
dialog.showAndWait().ifPresentOrElse(
    result -> { do something with result },
    () -> { deal with cancellation }
);
```

The `ChoiceDialog` class is similar. You provide a default choice and an array or list of choices. If the default is not `null`, it is selected when the dialog is shown (see Figure 13.28). The `showAndWait` method returns an `Optional` that contains the selected item, or is empty if the dialog was canceled.

```
ChoiceDialog<String> dialog = new ChoiceDialog<>("System", Font.getFamilies());
dialog.setHeaderText("Pick a font.");
Optional<String> choice = dialog.showAndWait();
```

The type parameter of the generic `ChoiceDialog<T>` class is the type of the choices. You can provide choices of any type, provided that their `toString` method yields meaningful strings for the combo box.



**Figure 13.28** A choice dialog



**CAUTION:** Unlike the ComboBox<T> control, the ChoiceDialog<T> control does not allow you to set a string converter.

Finally, there is a FileChooser that allows users to pick one or more files. The dialog is native to the system and does not look like the other JavaFX dialogs. You can specify the default directory as well as filters for file extensions.

```
FileChooser dialog = new FileChooser();
dialog.setInitialDirectory(new File("images"));
dialog.getExtensionFilters().addAll(
    new FileChooser.ExtensionFilter("GIF images", "*.gif"),
    new FileChooser.ExtensionFilter("JPEG images", "*.jpg"));
File result = dialog.showSaveDialog(stage);
```

When showing the dialog, provide the Stage object, as shown. If you pass null, then input to the stage is not blocked.

The showSaveDialog method produces a dialog that lets you pick an existing file or type in a new name. The showOpenDialog method only lets you pick existing files. There is also a showOpenMultipleDialog method that returns a List of all selected files. If the dialog is canceled, all three methods return null.

To pick a directory, use a DirectoryChooser instead:

```
DirectoryChooser dialog = new DirectoryChooser();
File result = dialog.showDialog(stage);
```

Listing 13.16 lets you experiment with all the dialogs that were introduced in this section.

---

**Listing 13.16** dialogs/DialogDemo.java

---

```
1 package dialogs;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4
5 import javafx.application.*;
6 import javafx.geometry.*;
7 import javafx.scene.*;
8 import javafx.scene.control.*;
9 import javafx.scene.image.*;
10 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
11 import javafx.scene.text.*;
12 import javafx.stage.*;
13
14 /**
15      @version 1.0 2017-12-29
16      @author Cay Horstmann
17 */
18 public class DialogDemo extends Application
19 {
20     public void start(Stage stage)
21     {
22         TextArea textArea = new TextArea();
23
24         Button information = new Button("Information");
25         information.setOnAction(event ->
26             {
27                 Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.INFORMATION,
28                     "Everything is fine.");
29                 alert.showAndWait();
30             });
31
32         Button warning = new Button("Warning");
33         warning.setOnAction(event ->
34             {
35                 Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.WARNING,
36                     "We have a problem.");
37                 alert.showAndWait();
38             });
39
40         Button error = new Button("Error");
```

```
41     error.setOnAction(event ->
42     {
43         Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.ERROR,
44             "This looks really bad.");
45         alert.showAndWait();
46     });
47
48     Button confirmation = new Button("Confirmation");
49     confirmation.setOnAction(event ->
50     {
51         Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.CONFIRMATION,
52             "Are you sure?");
53         if (alert.showAndWait().get() == ButtonType.OK)
54             textArea.appendText("Confirmed\n");
55         else
56             textArea.appendText("Canceled\n");
57     });
58
59     Button multipleButtons = new Button("Multiple Buttons");
60     multipleButtons.setOnAction(event ->
61     {
62         Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.NONE,
63             "Now what?",
64             ButtonType.NEXT, ButtonType.PREVIOUS, ButtonType.FINISH);
65         alert.setTitle("Multiple Buttons");
66         textArea.appendText(alert.showAndWait() + "\n");
67     });
68
69     Button expandableContent = new Button("Expandable Content");
70     expandableContent.setOnAction(event ->
71     {
72         Throwable t = new NullPointerException("Ugh-- a null");
73         Alert alert = new Alert(Alert.AlertType.ERROR,
74             t.getMessage());
75         alert.setHeaderText("Exception");
76         alert.setGraphic(new ImageView("dialogs/bomb.png"));
77
77         TextArea stackTrace = new TextArea();
78         StringWriter out = new StringWriter();
79         t.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(out));
80         stackTrace.setText(out.toString());
81         alert.getDialogPane().setExpandableContent(stackTrace);
82
83
84         textArea.appendText(alert.showAndWait() + "\n");
85     });
86
87     Button textInput = new Button("Text input");
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.16 (Continued)**

```
88     textInput.setOnAction(event ->
89     {
90         TextInputDialog dialog = new TextInputDialog();
91         dialog.setHeaderText("What is your name?");
92         dialog.showAndWait().ifPresentOrElse(
93             result -> textArea.appendText("Name: " + result + "\n"),
94             () -> textArea.appendText("Canceled\n"));
95     });
96
97     Button choiceDialog = new Button("Choice Dialog");
98     choiceDialog.setOnAction(event ->
99     {
100         ChoiceDialog<String> dialog = new ChoiceDialog<>("System",
101             Font.getFamilies());
102         dialog.setHeaderText("Pick a font.");
103         dialog.showAndWait().ifPresentOrElse(
104             result -> textArea.appendText("Selected: " + result + "\n"),
105             () -> textArea.appendText("Canceled\n"));
106     });
107
108    Button fileChooser = new Button("File Chooser");
109    fileChooser.setOnAction(event ->
110    {
111        FileChooser dialog = new FileChooser();
112        dialog.setInitialDirectory(new File("menu"));
113        dialog.setInitialFileName("untitled.gif");
114        dialog.getExtensionFilters().addAll(
115            new FileChooser.ExtensionFilter("GIF images", "*.gif"),
116            new FileChooser.ExtensionFilter("JPEG images", "*.jpg", "*.jpeg"));
117        File result = dialog.showSaveDialog(stage);
118        if (result == null)
119            textArea.appendText("Canceled\n");
120        else
121            textArea.appendText("Selected: " + result + "\n");
122    });
123
124    Button directoryChooser = new Button("Directory Chooser");
125    directoryChooser.setOnAction(event ->
126    {
127        DirectoryChooser dialog = new DirectoryChooser();
128        File result = dialog.showDialog(stage);
129        if (result == null)
130            textArea.appendText("Canceled\n");
131        else
132            textArea.appendText("Selected: " + result + "\n");
133    });
134
135    final double rem = new Text("").getLayoutBounds().getHeight();
```

```
136     VBox buttons = new VBox(0.8 * rem,
137         information, warning, error, confirmation,
138         multipleButtons, expandableContent, textInput, choiceDialog,
139         fileChooser, directoryChooser);
140     buttons.setPadding(new Insets(0.8 * rem));
141
142     HBox root = new HBox(textArea, buttons);
143
144     stage.setScene(new Scene(root));
145     stage.setTitle("DialogDemo");
146     stage.show();
147 }
148 }
```

#### `javafx.scene.control.Alert`

- `Alert(Alert.AlertType alertType)`

constructs an alert dialog of the given type. The `Alert.AlertType` enumeration has values `INFORMATION`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `CONFIRMATION`, and `NONE`.

- `Alert(Alert.AlertType alertType, String contentText, ButtonType... buttons)`

constructs an alert dialog of the given type with the given message and buttons. The `ButtonType` enumeration has values `OK`, `CANCEL`, `YES`, `NO`, `NEXT`, `PREVIOUS`, `FINISH`, `APPLY`, and `CLOSE`. Both `CANCEL` and `CLOSE` cancel the dialog.

#### `javafx.scene.control.Dialog<T>`

- `Optional<T> showAndWait()`

shows the dialog and waits for user input. Returns an object of type `T` representing the user input, wrapped in an `Optional`, or an empty `Optional` if the dialog was dismissed.

- `void setHeaderText(String value)`

sets the text that is displayed in the header of this dialog.

- `void setGraphic(Node value)`

sets the graphic that is displayed in this dialog.

- `DialogPane getDialogPane()`

gets the pane containing all controls of this dialog.

#### `javafx.scene.control.DialogPane`

- `void setExpandableContent(Node content)`

sets a node that can be expanded and hidden.

**javafx.scene.control.TextInputDialog**

- `TextInputDialog()`  
constructs a dialog for entering a string.

**javafx.scene.control.ChoiceDialog**

- `ChoiceDialog(T defaultChoice, T... choices)`
- `ChoiceDialog(T defaultChoice, Collection<T> choices)`  
constructs a dialog for picking an item of type T. If `defaultChoice` is not null, it is selected.

**javafx.stage.FileChooser**

- `FileChooser()`  
constructs a file chooser.
- `File showOpenDialog(Window ownerWindow)`
- `List<File> showOpenMultipleDialog(Window ownerWindow)`  
returns the chosen file or null if the dialog was dismissed. The `ownerWindow` is blocked from receiving input while the dialog is displayed.
- `File showSaveDialog(Window ownerWindow)`  
shows a dialog for selecting an existing file or typing a new file and returns the chosen file or null if the dialog was dismissed. The `ownerWindow` is blocked from receiving input while the dialog is displayed.
- `void setInitialDirectory(File value)`  
sets the initial directory for this file chooser.

**FileChooser.ExtensionFilter**

- `ExtensionFilter(String description, String... extensions)`
- `ExtensionFilter(String description, List<String> extensions)`  
constructs an extension filter that accepts files with any of the given extensions. The extension strings have the format \*.extension.

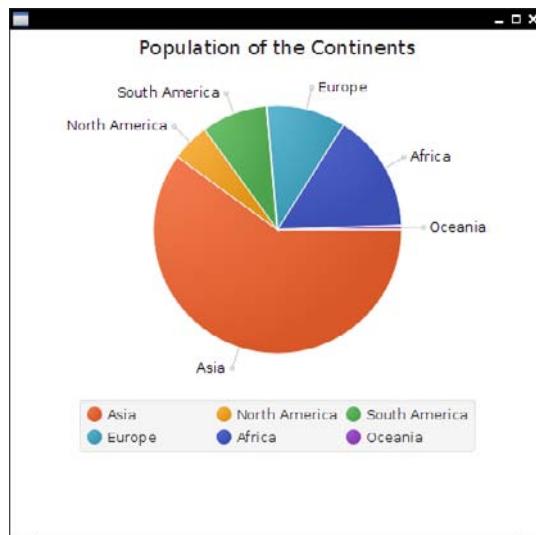
**javafx.stage.DirectoryChooser**

- `DirectoryChooser()`  
constructs a directory chooser.
- `File showDialog(Window ownerWindow)`  
shows a dialog for selecting an existing directory or creating a new one, and returns the chosen directory or `null` if the dialog was dismissed. The `ownerWindow` is blocked from receiving input while the dialog is displayed.
- `void setInitialDirectory(File value)`  
sets the initial directory for this file chooser.

### 13.5.5 Fancy Controls

Of course, JavaFX has tab panes, trees, and tables, just like Swing does, as well as a few user interface controls that Swing never got, such as a date picker and an accordion. In this section, I want to dispel any remaining Swing nostalgia by showing you three fancy controls that are far beyond anything Swing had to offer.

Figure 13.29 shows one of many charts that you can make with JavaFX, out of the box, without having to install any third-party libraries.



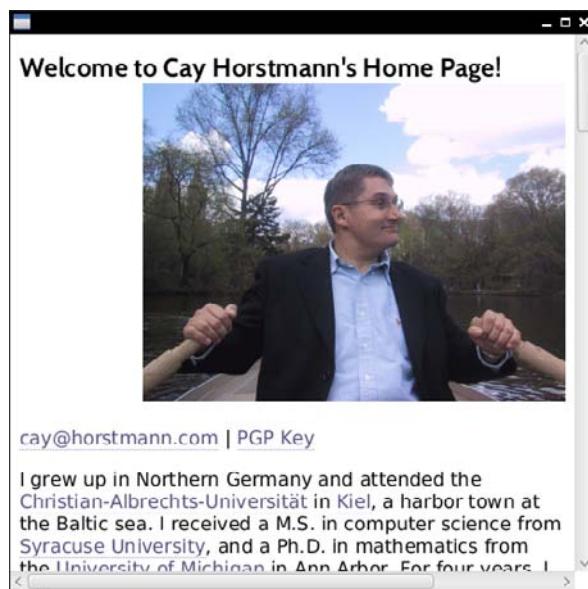
**Figure 13.29** A JavaFX pie chart

And it's easy as pie:

```
PieChart chart = new PieChart();
chart.getData().addAll(
    new PieChart.Data("Asia", 4298723000.0),
    new PieChart.Data("North America", 355361000.0),
    new PieChart.Data("South America", 616644000.0),
    new PieChart.Data("Europe", 742452000.0),
    new PieChart.Data("Africa", 1110635000.0),
    new PieChart.Data("Oceania", 38304000.0));
chart.setTitle("Population of the Continents");
```

Altogether, there are half a dozen chart types that you can use and customize. See <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/javafx/user-interface-tutorial/charts.htm> for more information.

In Swing, you could show HTML in a `JEditorPane`, but the rendering was poor for most real-world HTML. That's understandable—implementing a browser is hard work. In fact, it is so hard that most browsers are built on top of the open source WebKit engine. JavaFX does the same. A `WebView` displays an embedded native WebKit window (see Figure 13.30).



**Figure 13.30** Browsing the Web (Photo source: Cay Horstmann)

Here is the code to show a web page:

```
String location = "http://horstmann.com";
WebView browser = new WebView();
WebEngine engine = browser.getEngine();
engine.load(location);
```

The browser is live—you can click on links in the usual way. JavaScript works as well. However, if you want to display status line or popup messages from JavaScript, you need to install notification handlers and implement your own status line and popups.



**NOTE:** WebView does not support any plugins, so you cannot use it to show Flash animations or PDF documents. It also doesn't show applets.

Prior to JavaFX, media playback was pitiful in Java. A Java Media Framework was available as an optional download, but it did not get much love from the developers. Of course, implementing audio and video playback is even harder than writing a browser. Therefore, JavaFX leverages an existing toolkit: the open source GStreamer framework.

To play a video, construct a Media object from a URL string, construct a MediaPlayer to play it, and use a MediaView to show the player:

```
Path path = Paths.get("moonlanding.mp4");
Media media = new Media(path.toUri().toString());
MediaPlayer player = new MediaPlayer(media);
player.setAutoPlay(true);
MediaView video = new MediaView(player);
video.setOnError(System.out::println);
```

As you can see in Figure 13.31, the video is played—but, unfortunately, there are no video controls. You can add your own (see <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/javafx/media-tutorial/playercontrol.htm>), but it would have been nice to supply a default set of controls.



**NOTE:** Ever so often, GStreamer can't handle a particular video file. The error handler in the code sample displays GStreamer messages so that you can diagnose playback problems.

Listing 13.17 shows the complete code for all examples in this section.



**Figure 13.31** Playing a video (image source: NASA)

---

**Listing 13.17** fancy/FancyControls.java

---

```
1 package fancy;
2
3 import java.nio.file.*;
4 import javafx.application.*;
5 import javafx.geometry.*;
6 import javafx.scene.*;
7 import javafx.scene.chart.*;
8 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
9 import javafx.scene.media.*;
10 import javafx.scene.web.*;
11 import javafx.stage.*;
12
13 /**
14  * @version 1.0 2017-12-29
15  * @author Cay Horstmann
16 */
```

```
17 public class FancyControls extends Application
18 {
19     public void start(Stage stage)
20     {
21         PieChart chart = new PieChart();
22         chart.getData().addAll(
23             new PieChart.Data("Asia", 4298723000.0),
24             new PieChart.Data("North America", 355361000.0),
25             new PieChart.Data("South America", 616644000.0),
26             new PieChart.Data("Europe", 742452000.0),
27             new PieChart.Data("Africa", 1110635000.0),
28             new PieChart.Data("Oceania", 38304000.0));
29         chart.setTitle("Population of the Continents");
30
31         String location = "http://horstmann.com";
32         WebView browser = new WebView();
33         WebEngine engine = browser.getEngine();
34         engine.load(location);
35
36         Path path = Paths.get("fancy/moonlanding.mp4");
37         Media media = new Media(path.toUri().toString());
38         MediaPlayer player = new MediaPlayer(media);
39         player.setAutoPlay(true);
40         MediaView video = new MediaView(player);
41         video.setOnError(ex -> System.out.println(ex));
42
43         stage.setWidth(500);
44         stage.setHeight(500);
45         stage.setScene(new Scene(browser));
46         stage.show();
47
48         Stage stage2 = new Stage();
49         stage2.setWidth(500);
50         stage2.setHeight(500);
51         stage2.setX(stage.getX() + stage.getWidth());
52         stage2.setY(stage.getY());
53         stage2.setScene(new Scene(chart));
54         stage2.show();
55
56         HBox box = new HBox(video);
57         box.setAlignment(Pos.CENTER);
58         Stage stage3 = new Stage();
59         stage3.setWidth(500);
60         stage3.setHeight(500);
61         stage3.setX(stage.getX());
62         stage3.setY(stage.getY() + stage.getHeight());
63         stage3.setScene(new Scene(box));
64         stage3.show();
65     }
66 }
```

## 13.6 Properties and Bindings

A *property* is an attribute of a class that you can read or write. Commonly, the property is backed by a field, and the property getter and setter simply read and write that field. But the getter and setter can also take other actions, such as reading values from a database or sending out change notifications.

In JavaFX, properties are particularly important because it is easy to “bind” them so that one property is updated when another property changes. In the following sections, we will discuss properties and bindings in detail.

### 13.6.1 JavaFX Properties

In many programming languages, there is convenient syntax for invoking property getters and setters. Using the property on the right-hand side of an assignment calls the getter, and using it on the left-hand side calls the setter.

```
value = obj.property; // in many languages (but not Java), this calls the property getter  
obj.property = value; // and this calls the property setter
```

Sadly, Java does not have such syntax. But it has supported properties by convention since Java 1.1. The JavaBeans specification states that a property should be inferred from a getter/setter pair. For example, a class with methods `String getText()` and `void setText(String newValue)` is deemed to have a text property. The `Introspector` and `BeanInfo` classes in the `java.beans` package let you enumerate all properties of a class.

The JavaBeans specification also defines *bound properties*, where objects emit property change events when setters are invoked. JavaFX does not make use of this part of the specification. Instead, a JavaFX property has a third method, besides the getter and setter, that returns an object implementing the `Property` interface. For example, a JavaFX text property has three methods

```
String getText()  
void setText(String value)  
Property<String> textProperty()
```



**NOTE:** The `Node` class has over 80 JavaFX properties, and subclasses such as `Rectangle` or `Button` have well over a hundred. The Java API documentation lists them separately, before the constructors and methods.

---

You can attach a listener to the property object. That’s different from old-fashioned JavaBeans. In JavaFX, the property object, not the bean, sends out notifications. There is a good reason for this change. Implementing bound

JavaBeans properties required boilerplate code to add, remove, and fire listeners; in JavaFX it's much simpler because there are library classes that do much of that work.

Let's see how we can implement a property `text` in a class `Greeting`. Here is the simplest way to do that:

```
public class Greeting
{
    private StringProperty text = new SimpleStringProperty("");

    public final StringProperty textProperty() { return text; }
    public final void setText(String newValue) { text.set(newValue); }
    public final String getText() { return text.get(); }
}
```

The `StringProperty` class wraps a string. It has methods for getting and setting the wrapped value and for managing listeners.

As you can see, implementing a JavaFX property requires some boilerplate code, and there is unfortunately no way in Java to generate the code automatically. But at least you won't have to write the code for managing listeners.

It is not a requirement to declare property getters and setters as `final`, but the JavaFX designers recommend it.



**NOTE:** With this pattern, a property object is needed for each property, whether anyone listens to it or not. If you implement a class with many properties, and you expect that many instances of that class will be constructed, you should instantiate the property objects on demand. Use a regular field for holding the property value, and switch to a property object only when someone calls the `xxxProperty()` method.

In the preceding example, we defined a `StringProperty`. For a primitive-type property, use one of `IntegerProperty`, `LongProperty`, `DoubleProperty`, `FloatProperty`, or `BooleanProperty`. There are also `ListProperty`, `MapProperty`, and `SetProperty` classes. For everything else, use an `ObjectProperty<T>`. All these are abstract classes with concrete subclasses `SimpleIntegerProperty`, `SimpleObjectProperty<T>`, and so on.



**NOTE:** If all you care about is managing listeners and bindings, your property methods can return objects of type `ObjectProperty<T>`, or even the `Property<T>` interface. The more specialized classes are useful to make computations with the properties, as explained in the next section.

There are two kinds of listeners that can be attached to a property. A `ChangeListener` is notified when the property value has changed, and an `InvalidationListener` is called when the property value *may* have changed. The distinction matters for a property with lazy evaluation. As you will see in the next section, some properties are computed from others, and the computation is only done when necessary. The `ChangeListener` callback tells you the old and new values, which means it has to compute the new value. The `InvalidationListener` doesn't compute the new value, but that means you might get a callback when the value hasn't actually changed. In most situations, the difference between the two is immaterial.

Here is how to add an invalidation listener that is called whenever the `text` property of a greeting changes:

```
Greeting greeting = new Greeting();
greeting.setText("Hello");
greeting.textProperty().addListener(event ->
{
    System.out.println("greeting is now " + greeting.getText());
});
greeting.setText("Goodbye"); // the listener is now invoked
```

In contrast, here is how you attach a change listener:

```
greeting.textProperty().addListener((property, oldValue, newValue) ->
{
    System.out.println("greeting is now " + newValue);
});
```



**CAUTION:** It is a bit tricky to use the `ChangeListener` interface for numeric properties. One would like to call

```
slider.valueProperty().addListener((property, oldValue, newValue) ->
    message.setFont(Font.font(newValue)));
```

But that does not work. `DoubleProperty` implements `Property<Number>` and not `Property<Double>`. Therefore, the type for `oldValue` and `newValue` is `Number` and not `Double`, so you have to unbox manually:

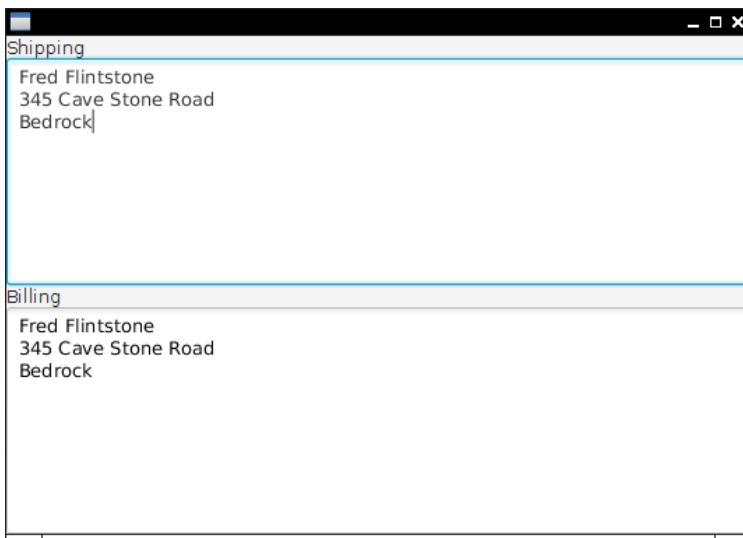
```
slider.valueProperty().addListener((property, oldValue, newValue) ->
    message.setFont(Font.font(newValue.doubleValue())));
```

---

## 13.6.2 Bindings

The raison d'être for JavaFX properties is the notion of *binding*: automatically updating one property when another one changes. Consider, for example,

the application in Figure 13.32. When the user edits the shipping address at the top, the billing address at the bottom updates, too.



**Figure 13.32** The bound text property updates automatically.

This is achieved by binding one property to the other:

```
billing.textProperty().bind(shipping.textProperty());
```

Under the hood, a change listener is added to the text property of `shipping` that sets the text property of `billing`.

You can also call

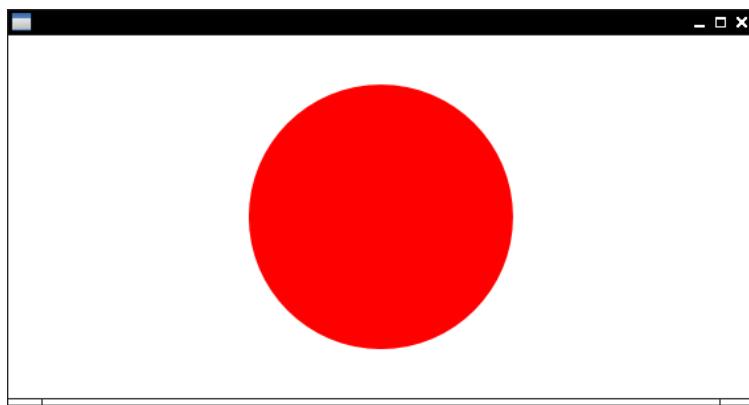
```
billing.textProperty().bindBidirectional(shipping.textProperty());
```

Now, when either of these properties changes, the other is updated.

To undo a binding, call `unbind` or `unbindBidirectional`.

The binding mechanism solves a common problem in user interface programming. For example, consider a date field and a calendar picker. When the user picks a date from the calendar, the date field should automatically update, as should be the date property of the model.

Of course, in many situations, one property depends on another, but the relationship is more complex. Consider the program shown in Figure 13.33. We always want the circle centered in the scene. That is, its `centerX` property should be one half of the `width` property of the scene.



**Figure 13.33** The center of this circle is bound to half the width and height of the scene.

To achieve this, we need to produce a computed property. The `Bindings` class has static methods for this purpose. For example, `Bindings.divide(scene.widthProperty(), 2)` is a property whose value is one half of the scene width. When the scene width changes, so does that property. All that remains is to bind that computed property to the circle's `centerX` property:

```
circle.centerXProperty().bind(Bindings.divide(scene.widthProperty(), 2));
```



**NOTE:** Alternatively, you can call `scene.widthProperty().divide(2)`. With more complex expressions, the static `Bindings` methods seems a bit easier to read, particularly if you use

```
import static javafx.beans.binding.Bindings.*;  
and write divide(scene.widthProperty(), 2).
```

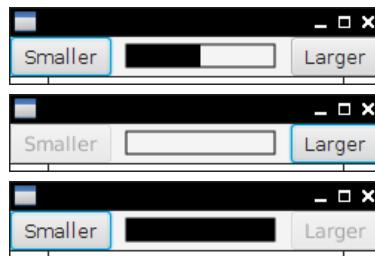
---

Here is a more realistic example. We want to disable the Smaller and Larger buttons when the gauge is too small or large (Figure 13.34).

```
smaller.disableProperty().bind(Bindings.lessThanOrEqualTo(gauge.widthProperty(), 0));  
larger.disableProperty().bind(Bindings.greaterThanOrEqualTo(gauge.widthProperty(), 100));
```

When the width is  $\leq 0$ , the Smaller button is disabled. When the width is  $\geq 100$ , the Larger button is disabled.

Table 13.3 lists all operators that the `Bindings` class provides. One or both of the arguments implement the `Observable` interface or one of its subinterfaces. The `Observable` interface provides methods for adding and removing an `InvalidationListener`. The `ObservableValue` interface adds `ChangeListener` management



**Figure 13.34** When the gauge reaches either end, a button is disabled.

and a `getValue` method. Its subinterfaces provide methods to get the value in the appropriate type. For example, the `get` method of `ObservableStringValue` returns a `String` and the `get` method of `ObservableIntegerValue` returns an `int`. The return types of the methods of the `Bindings` are subinterfaces of the `Binding` interface, itself a subinterface of the `Observable` interface. A `Binding` knows about all properties on which it depends.

In practice, you don't need to worry about all of these interfaces. You combine properties and you get something that you can bind to another property.

**Table 13.3** Operators Supplied by the `Bindings` Class

Method Name	Arguments
<code>add, subtract, multiply, divide, max, min</code>	An <code>ObservableNumberValue</code> (as first or second argument) and an <code>int, long, float, double, or another ObservableNumberValue</code> .
<code>negate</code>	An <code>ObservableNumberValue</code> .
<code>greaterThan, greaterThanOrEqual, lessThan, lessThanOrEqual</code>	An <code>ObservableNumberValue</code> and an <code>int, long, float, double, or ObservableNumberValue; or an ObservableStringValue and a String or ObservableStringValue</code> .
<code>equal, notEqual</code>	An <code>ObservableNumberValue</code> and an <code>int, long, float, double, or ObservableNumberValue; or an ObservableStringValue and a String or ObservableStringValue; or an ObservableObjectValue and a Object or ObservableObjectValue</code> .
<code>equalIgnoreCase, notEqualIgnoreCase</code>	An <code>ObservableStringValue</code> and a <code>String or ObservableStringValue</code> .
<code>isEmpty, isNotEmpty</code>	An <code>Observable(List Map Set StringValue)</code> .

(Continues)

**Table 13.3** (Continued)

Method Name	Arguments
isNull, isNotNull	An ObservableObjectValue.
length	An ObservableStringValue.
size	An Observable(List Map Set).
and, or	Two ObservableBooleanValue.
not	An ObservableBooleanValue.
convert	An ObservableValue that is converted to a string binding.
concat	A sequence of objects whose <code>toString</code> values are concatenated. If any of the objects is an ObservableValue that changes, the concatenation changes too.
format	An optional locale, a <code>MessageFormat</code> string, and a sequence of objects that are formatted. If any of the objects is an ObservableValue that changes, the formatted string changes too.
valueAt (double float integer long)ValueAt stringValueAt	An ObservableList and an index, or an ObservableMap and a key.
create(Boolean[Double Float Integer] Long Object String)Binding	A Callable and a list of dependencies.
select select(Boolean[Double Float  Integer Long String)	An Object or ObservableValue and a sequence of public property names, yielding the property <code>obj.p<sub>1</sub>.p<sub>2</sub>....p<sub>n</sub></code> .
when	Yields a builder for a conditional operator. The binding <code>when(b).then(v<sub>1</sub>).otherwise(v<sub>2</sub>)</code> yields $v_1$ or $v_2$ , depending on whether the ObservableBooleanValue $b$ is true or not. Here, $v_1$ or $v_2$ can be regular or observable values. The conditional value is recomputed whenever an observable value changes.

Building up a computed property with the methods of the `Bindings` class can get quite baroque. There is another approach for producing computed bindings that you may find easier. Simply put the expression that you want to have

computed into a lambda, and supply a list of dependent properties. When any of the properties changes, the lambda is recomputed. For example,

```
larger.disableProperty().bind  
    createBooleanBinding()  
        () -> gauge.getWidth() >= 100, // this expression is computed. . .  
        gauge.widthProperty()); // . . . when this property changes
```



**NOTE:** In the JavaFX Script language, the compiler analyzed binding expressions and automatically figured out the dependent properties. You just declared `larger.disable bind gauge.width >= 100`, and the compiler attached a listener to the `gauge.width` property. Of course, in Java, the programmer needs to supply this information.

Listings 13.18 to 13.20 show the complete programs for the three examples in this section.

#### **Listing 13.18** binding/BindingDemo1.java

```
1 package binding;  
2  
3 import javafx.application.*;  
4 import javafx.scene.*;  
5 import javafx.scene.control.*;  
6 import javafx.scene.layout.*;  
7 import javafx.stage.*;  
8  
9 /**  
10      @version 1.0 2017-12-29  
11      @author Cay Horstmann  
12 */  
13 public class BindingDemo1 extends Application  
14 {  
15     public void start(Stage stage)  
16     {  
17         TextArea shipping = new TextArea();  
18         TextArea billing = new TextArea();  
19         billing.textProperty().bindBidirectional(shipping.textProperty());  
20         VBox root = new VBox(  
21             new Label("Shipping"), shipping,  
22             new Label("Billing"), billing);  
23         Scene scene = new Scene(root);  
24         stage.setScene(scene);  
25         stage.show();  
26     }  
27 }
```

**Listing 13.19** binding/BindingDemo2.java

```
1 package binding;
2
3 import javafx.application.*;
4 import javafx.beans.binding.*;
5 import javafx.scene.*;
6 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
7 import javafx.scene.paint.*;
8 import javafx.scene.shape.*;
9 import javafx.stage.*;
10
11 /**
12  * @version 1.0 2017-12-29
13  * @author Cay Horstmann
14 */
15 public class BindingDemo2 extends Application
16 {
17     public void start(Stage stage)
18     {
19         Circle circle = new Circle(100, 100, 100);
20         circle.setFill(Color.RED);
21         Pane pane = new Pane(circle);
22         Scene scene = new Scene(pane);
23         circle.centerXProperty().bind(
24             Bindings.divide(scene.widthProperty(), 2));
25         circle.centerYProperty().bind(
26             Bindings.divide(scene.heightProperty(), 2));
27         stage.setScene(scene);
28         stage.show();
29     }
30 }
```

**Listing 13.20** binding/BindingDemo3.java

```
1 package binding;
2
3 import static javafx.beans.binding.Bindings.*;
4
5 import javafx.application.*;
6 import javafx.scene.*;
7 import javafx.scene.control.*;
8 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
9 import javafx.scene.paint.*;
10 import javafx.scene.shape.*;
11 import javafx.stage.*;
12
```

```
13 /**
14  * @version 1.0 2017-12-29
15  * @author Cay Horstmann
16 */
17 public class BindingDemo3 extends Application
18 {
19     public void start(Stage stage)
20     {
21         Button smaller = new Button("Smaller");
22         Button larger = new Button("Larger");
23         Rectangle gauge = new Rectangle(0, 5, 50, 15);
24         Rectangle outline = new Rectangle(0, 5, 100, 15);
25         outline.setFill(null);
26         outline.setStroke(Color.BLACK);
27         Pane pane = new Pane(gauge, outline);
28
29         smaller.setOnAction(
30             event -> gauge.setWidth(gauge.getWidth() - 10));
31         larger.setOnAction(
32             event -> gauge.setWidth(gauge.getWidth() + 10));
33
34         // using Bindings operator
35
36         smaller.disableProperty().bind(
37             lessThanOrEqualTo(gauge.widthProperty(), 0));
38
39         // creating a binding from a lambda
40
41         larger.disableProperty().bind(
42             createBooleanBinding(
43                 () -> gauge.getWidth() >= 100, // this lambda is computed . .
44                 gauge.widthProperty())); // . . . when this property changes
45
46         Scene scene = new Scene(new HBox(10, smaller, pane, larger));
47         stage.setScene(scene);
48         stage.show();
49     }
50 }
```

## 13.7 Long-Running Tasks in User Interface Callbacks

One of the reasons to use threads is to make your programs more responsive. This is particularly important in an application with a user interface. When your program needs to do something time consuming, you cannot do the work in the user-interface thread, or the user interface will be frozen. Instead, fire up another worker thread.

For example, if you want to read a file when the user clicks a button, don't do this:

```
Button open = new Button("Open");
open.setOnAction(event ->
{ // BAD--long-running action is executed on UI thread
    Scanner in = new Scanner(file);
    while (in.hasNextLine())
    {
        String line = in.nextLine();
        ...
    }
});
```

Instead, do the work in a separate thread.

```
open.setOnAction(event ->
{ // GOOD--long-running action in separate thread
    Runnable task = () ->
    {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(file);
        while (in.hasNextLine())
        {
            String line = in.nextLine();
            ...
        }
    };
    executor.execute(task);
});
```

However, you cannot directly update the user interface from the worker thread that executes the long-running task. User interfaces such as JavaFX, Swing, or Android are not threadsafe. You cannot manipulate user interface elements from multiple threads, or they risk becoming corrupted. In fact, JavaFX and Android check for this, and throw an exception if you try to access the user interface from a thread other than the UI thread.

Therefore, you need to schedule any UI updates to happen on the UI thread. Each user interface library provides some mechanism to schedule a `Runnable` for execution on the UI thread. For example, in JavaFX, you call

```
Platform.runLater(() -> content.appendText(line + "\n"));
```

It is tedious to implement user feedback in a worker thread, so user interface libraries provide some kind of helper class for managing the details, such as `SwingWorker` in Swing and `AsyncTask` in Android. You specify actions for the long-running task (which is run on a separate thread), as well as progress updates and the final disposition (which are run on the UI thread).

In JavaFX, you use the `Task<V>` class for long-running tasks. Conveniently, the class extends `FutureTask<V>`, so you don't have to learn yet another custom construct.

The `Task` class provides methods to update certain task properties in the worker thread. You bind the properties to user interface elements, which are then updated *in the UI thread*. The following properties are available:

```
String message  
double progress  
double workDone  
double totalWork  
String title  
V value
```

Here we bind the `message` property to a status label:

```
status.textProperty().bind(task.messageProperty());
```

In the worker thread, call the `updateMessage` method, not `setMessage`. That method coalesces property changes. That is, if several property changes come in rapid succession, only the latest change results in a corresponding property change on the user interface thread.

```
task = new Task<>()  
{  
    public Integer call()  
    {  
        while (...)  
        {  
            ...  
            lines++;  
            updateMessage(lines + " lines read");  
        }  
    }  
};
```

To cancel a `Task`, call the `cancel` method. This will interrupt the thread executing the task. In the task, periodically call `isCanceled` to check if the task was canceled.

```
task = new Task<>()  
{  
    public Integer call()  
    {  
        while (!isCanceled() && !done)  
        {  
            ...  
        }  
    }  
};
```

Install event handlers to be notified when the task is scheduled, starts running, and when it terminates with success, due to an exception, or due to cancellation. All handlers are executed on the UI thread.

```
task.isScheduled(event -> cancel.setDisable(false));
task.setOnRunning(event -> status.setText("Running"));
task.setOnSucceeded(event -> status.setText("Read " + task.getValue() + " lines"));
task.setOnFailed(event -> status.setText("Failed due to ") + task.getException());
task.setOnCancelled(event -> status.setText("Canceled"));
```

The program in Listing 13.21 has commands for opening a text file and for canceling the file loading process. You should try the program with a long file, such as the full text of *The Count of Monte Cristo*, supplied in the gutenberg directory of the book's companion code. The file is loaded in a separate thread. While the file is being read, the Open button is disabled and the Cancel button is enabled (see Figure 13.35). After each line is read, a line counter in the status bar is updated. After the reading process is complete, the Open button is reenabled, the Cancel button is disabled, and the status line text is set to a "Done" message. We added a delay of 10 milliseconds between lines so that you can clearly observe the status updates. You would not do this in your own programs.



**Figure 13.35** Reading lines from a web page in a worker thread

Pay close attention to what happens on the worker thread and the UI thread:

- The `call` method is executed on the worker thread.
- The lambda passed to `Platform.runLater` is executed on the UI thread.
- The handlers for the "on scheduled," "on running," "on failed," "on cancelled," and "on succeeded" events are executed on the UI thread.

- The call to updateMessage causes a property change on the UI thread that triggers the setter of the bound property.

**Listing 13.21** uitask/TaskDemo.java

```
1 package uitask;
2
3 import java.io.*;
4 import java.nio.charset.*;
5 import java.util.*;
6 import java.util.concurrent.*;
7
8 import javafx.application.*;
9 import javafx.concurrent.*;
10 import javafx.geometry.*;
11 import javafx.scene.*;
12 import javafx.scene.control.*;
13 import javafx.scene.layout.*;
14 import javafx.stage.*;
15
16 public class TaskDemo extends Application
17 {
18     private TextArea content = new TextArea("");
19     private Label status = new Label();
20     private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();
21     private Task<Integer> task;
22     private Button open = new Button("Open");
23     private Button cancel = new Button("Cancel");
24
25     public void start(Stage stage)
26     {
27         open.setOnAction(event -> read(stage));
28         cancel.setOnAction(event ->
29         {
30             if (task != null) task.cancel();
31         });
32         cancel.setDisable(true);
33         stage.setOnCloseRequest(event ->
34         {
35             if (task != null) task.cancel();
36             executor.shutdown();
37             Platform.exit();
38         });
39
40         HBox box = new HBox(10, open, cancel);
41         VBox pane = new VBox(10, content, box, status);
42         pane.setPadding(new Insets(10));
43         stage.setScene(new Scene(pane));
```

(Continues)

**Listing 13.21 (Continued)**

```
44     stage.setTitle("TaskDemo");
45     stage.show();
46 }
47
48 private void read(Stage stage)
49 {
50     if (task != null) return;
51     FileChooser chooser = new FileChooser();
52     chooser.setInitialDirectory(new File("../"));
53     File file = chooser.showOpenDialog(stage);
54     if (file == null) return;
55     content.setText("");
56     task = new Task<>() {
57         public Integer call() {
58             int lines = 0;
59             try (Scanner in = new Scanner(file, StandardCharsets.UTF_8)) {
60                 while (!isCancelled() && in.hasNextLine())
61                 {
62                     Thread.sleep(10); // simulate work
63                     String line = in.nextLine();
64                     Platform.runLater(() ->
65                         content.appendText(line + "\n"));
66                     lines++;
67                     updateMessage(lines + " lines read");
68                 }
69             }
70             catch (InterruptedException e) {
71                 // task was canceled in sleep
72             }
73             catch (IOException e) {
74                 throw new UncheckedIOException(null, e);
75             }
76             return lines;
77         }
78     };
79     executor.execute(task);
80     task.setOnScheduled(event ->
81     {
82         cancel.setDisable(false);
83         open.setDisable(true);
84     });
85 }
```

```
90     task.setOnRunning(event ->
91         {
92             status.setText("Running");
93             status.textProperty().bind(task.messageProperty());
94         });
95     task.setOnFailed(event ->
96         {
97             cancel.setDisable(true);
98             status.textProperty().unbind();
99             status.setText("Failed due to " + task.getException());
100            task = null;
101            open.setDisable(false);
102        });
103    task.setOnCancelled(event ->
104        {
105        cancel.setDisable(true);
106        status.textProperty().unbind();
107        status.setText("Canceled");
108        task = null;
109        open.setDisable(false);
110    });
111    task.setOnSucceeded(event ->
112        {
113        cancel.setDisable(true);
114        status.textProperty().unbind();
115        status.setText("Done reading " + task.getValue() + " lines");
116        task = null;
117        open.setDisable(false);
118    });
119 }
120 }
```

**javafx.application.Platform**

- static void runLater(Runnable runnable)  
calls runnable.run() on the UI thread.

**javafx.concurrent.Task<V>**

- protected abstract V call()  
override this method to carry out the work of the task.
- boolean cancel()  
cancels this task.

*(Continues)*

**javafx.concurrent.Task<V>** (*Continued*)

- `V getValue()`  
yields the value set by the `updateValue` method, after successful completion, the value returned by the `call` method.
- `Throwable getException()`  
yields the exception that terminated the `call` method, or `null` if none was thrown.
- `void setOnCancelled(EventHandler<WorkerStateEvent> value)`
- `void setOnFailed(EventHandler<WorkerStateEvent> value)`
- `void setOnRunning(EventHandler<WorkerStateEvent> value)`
- `void setOnScheduled(EventHandler<WorkerStateEvent> value)`
- `void setOnSucceeded(EventHandler<WorkerStateEvent> value)`  
sets the event handler for the given worker state event.
- `protected void updateMessage(String message)`
- `protected void updateProgress(double workDone, double max)`
- `protected void updateProgress(long workDone, long max)`
- `protected void updateTitle(String title)`
- `protected void updateValue(V value)`  
updates the given property. The `updateProgress` method sets the `workDone` and `totalWork` properties to the arguments and the `progress` property to the ratio of the arguments. Property updates are coalesced and later executed on the the UI thread.

That brings us to the end of this fast-paced introduction to JavaFX. JavaFX has a few rough edges, mostly due to a hurried transformation from the original scripting language. But it is certainly no harder to use than Swing, and it has many more useful and attractive controls than Swing ever had.